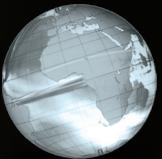


GLOBAL  
EDITION



# International Economics

## *Theory and Policy*

12th Edition

Paul R. Krugman • Maurice Obstfeld • Marc J. Melitz



# International Economics

THEORY & POLICY

TWELFTH EDITION

GLOBAL EDITION

**Paul R. Krugman**

Graduate Center of the City University of New York

**Maurice Obstfeld**

University of California, Berkeley

**Marc J. Melitz**

Harvard University



**Pearson**

---

Harlow, England • London • New York • Boston • San Francisco • Toronto • Sydney • Dubai • Singapore • Hong Kong  
Tokyo • Seoul • Taipei • New Delhi • Cape Town • São Paulo • Mexico City • Madrid • Amsterdam • Munich • Paris • Milan

Please contact <https://support.pearson.com/getsupport/s/contactsupport> with any queries on this content.

Cover Image by Aleksandr Ozerov/Shutterstock

*Pearson Education Limited*

KAO Two  
KAO Park  
Hockham Way  
Harlow  
Essex  
CM17 9SR  
United Kingdom

and Associated Companies throughout the world

Visit us on the World Wide Web at: [www.pearsonglobaleditions.com](http://www.pearsonglobaleditions.com)

© Pearson Education Limited 2023

The rights of Paul R. Krugman, Maurice Obstfeld, and Marc Melitz to be identified as the authors of this work, has been asserted by them in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

Authorized adaptation from the U.S. edition, entitled *International Economics: Theory and Policy*, 12th Edition, ISBN 978-0-135-76685-9 by Paul R. Krugman, Maurice Obstfeld, and Marc Melitz, published by Pearson Education © 2022.

PEARSON, ALWAYS LEARNING, and MYLAB are exclusive trademarks owned by Pearson Education, Inc. or its affiliates in the U.S. and/or other countries.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without either the prior written permission of the publisher or a license permitting restricted copying in the United Kingdom issued by the Copyright Licensing Agency Ltd, Saffron House, 6–10 Kirby Street, London EC1N 8TS.

All trademarks used herein are the property of their respective owners. The use of any trademark in this text does not vest in the author or publisher any trademark ownership rights in such trademarks, nor does the use of such trademarks imply any affiliation with or endorsement of this book by such owners. For information regarding permissions, request forms, and the appropriate contacts within the Pearson Education Global Rights and Permissions department, please visit [www.pearsoned.com/permissions/](http://www.pearsoned.com/permissions/).

This eBook is a standalone product and may or may not include all assets that were part of the print version. It also does not provide access to other Pearson digital products like MyLab and Mastering. The publisher reserves the right to remove any material in this eBook at any time.

**ISBN 10:** 1-292-40971-1

**ISBN 13:** 978-1-292-40971-9

**eBook ISBN 13:** 978-1-292-40979-5

**British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data**

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Typeset in by B2R Technologies Pvt. Ltd.



# Brief Contents

Contents	5
Preface	19
1 Introduction	27
<b>PART 1 International Trade Theory</b>	<b>36</b>
2 World Trade: An Overview	36
3 Labor Productivity and Comparative Advantage: The Ricardian Model	50
4 Specific Factors and Income Distribution	77
5 Resources and Trade: The Heckscher-Ohlin Model	113
6 The Standard Trade Model	149
7 External Economies of Scale and the International Location of Production	177
8 Firms in the Global Economy: Export and Foreign Sourcing Decisions and Multinational Enterprises	196
<b>PART 2 International Trade Policy</b>	<b>242</b>
9 The Instruments of Trade Policy	242
10 The Political Economy of Trade Policy	276
11 Trade Policy in Developing Countries	313
12 Controversies in Trade Policy	327
<b>PART 3 Exchange Rates and Open-Economy Macroeconomics</b>	<b>350</b>
13 National Income Accounting and the Balance of Payments	350
14 Exchange Rates and the Foreign Exchange Market: An Asset Approach	381
15 Money, Interest Rates, and Exchange Rates	417
16 Price Levels and the Exchange Rate in the Long Run	452
17 Output and the Exchange Rate in the Short Run	490
18 Fixed Exchange Rates and Foreign Exchange Intervention	543

<b>PART 4 International Macroeconomic Policy</b>	<b>589</b>
19 International Monetary Systems: A Historical Overview	589
20 Financial Globalization: Opportunity and Crisis	653
21 Optimum Currency Areas and the Euro	692
22 Developing Countries: Growth, Crisis, and Reform	732
<b>Mathematical Postscripts</b>	<b>778</b>
Postscript to Chapter 5: The Factor-Proportions Model .....	778
Postscript to Chapter 6: The Trading World Economy .....	782
Postscript to Chapter 8: The Monopolistic Competition Model.....	790
Postscript to Chapter 20: Risk Aversion and International Portfolio Diversification .....	792
<b>Index</b>	<b>804</b>



# Contents

Preface .....	19
<b>1 Introduction</b>	<b>27</b>
<b>What Is International Economics About? .....</b>	<b>29</b>
The Gains from Trade .....	30
The Pattern of Trade.....	31
How Much Trade?.....	31
Balance of Payments .....	32
Exchange Rate Determination .....	33
International Policy Coordination.....	33
The International Capital Market.....	34
<b>International Economics: Trade and Money .....</b>	<b>35</b>
<b>PART 1 International Trade Theory</b>	<b>36</b>
<b>2 World Trade: An Overview</b>	<b>36</b>
<b>Who Trades with Whom? .....</b>	<b>36</b>
Size Matters: The Gravity Model .....	37
Using the Gravity Model: Looking for Anomalies .....	39
Impediments to Trade: Distance, Barriers, and Borders .....	40
<b>The Changing Pattern of World Trade .....</b>	<b>42</b>
Has the World Gotten Smaller?.....	42
What Do We Trade? .....	44
Service Offshoring.....	46
<b>Do Old Rules Still Apply? .....</b>	<b>47</b>
Summary .....	48
<b>3 Labor Productivity and Comparative Advantage: The Ricardian Model</b>	<b>50</b>
<b>The Concept of Comparative Advantage.....</b>	<b>51</b>
<b>A One-Factor Economy .....</b>	<b>52</b>
Production Possibilities .....	53
Relative Prices and Supply.....	54
<b>Trade in a One-Factor World .....</b>	<b>55</b>
Determining the Relative Price after Trade.....	56
<b>BOX: Comparative Advantage in Practice: The Case of Usain Bolt.....</b>	<b>59</b>
The Gains from Trade .....	60
A Note on Relative Wages.....	61
<b>BOX: Economic Isolation and Autarky Over Time and Over Space .....</b>	<b>62</b>
<b>Misconceptions about Comparative Advantage .....</b>	<b>63</b>
Productivity and Competitiveness .....	63
<b>BOX: Do Wages Reflect Productivity? .....</b>	<b>64</b>
The Pauper Labor Argument .....	65
Exploitation .....	65
<b>Comparative Advantage with Many Goods .....</b>	<b>66</b>
Setting Up the Model .....	66
Relative Wages and Specialization .....	66
Determining the Relative Wage in the Multigood Model .....	68

Adding Transport Costs and Nontraded Goods .....	70
Empirical Evidence on the Ricardian Model .....	71
Summary .....	73
<b>4 Specific Factors and Income Distribution</b>	<b>77</b>
The Specific Factors Model.....	78
<b>BOX:</b> <i>What is a Specific Factor?</i> .....	79
Assumptions of the Model.....	79
Production Possibilities .....	80
Prices, Wages, and Labor Allocation .....	83
Relative Prices and the Distribution of Income .....	87
International Trade in the Specific Factors Model .....	89
Income Distribution and the Gains from Trade .....	90
The Political Economy of Trade: A Preliminary View.....	93
The Politics of Trade Protection.....	94
Trade and Unemployment.....	95
<b>CASE STUDY:</b> <i>U.S. Manufacturing Employment and Chinese Import Competition</i> .....	96
<b>BOX:</b> <i>The Trump Trade War</i> .....	98
International Labor Mobility .....	99
<b>CASE STUDY:</b> <i>Wage and Social Benefits Convergence: Migrant Mobility in China</i> .....	101
<b>CASE STUDY:</b> <i>Immigration and the U.S. Economy</i> .....	103
Summary .....	105
<b>APPENDIX TO CHAPTER 4:</b> <i>Further Details on Specific Factors</i> .....	110
Marginal and Total Product .....	110
Relative Prices and the Distribution of Income .....	111
<b>5 Resources and Trade: The Heckscher-Ohlin Model</b>	<b>113</b>
Model of a Two-Factor Economy .....	114
Prices and Production .....	114
Choosing the Mix of Inputs .....	117
Factor Prices and Goods Prices .....	119
Resources and Output .....	122
Effects of International Trade between Two-Factor Economies.....	123
Relative Prices and the Pattern of Trade.....	124
Trade and the Distribution of Income.....	125
<b>CASE STUDY:</b> <i>North-South Trade and Income Inequality</i> .....	126
Skill-Biased Technological Change and Income Inequality .....	128
<b>BOX:</b> <i>The Declining Labor Share of Income and Capital-Skill Complementarity</i> .....	132
Factor-Price Equalization.....	133
Empirical Evidence on the Heckscher-Ohlin Model .....	135
Trade in Goods as a Substitute for Trade in Factors: Factor Content of Trade .....	135
Patterns of Exports between Developed and Developing Countries .....	138
Implications of the Tests .....	141
Summary .....	141
<b>APPENDIX TO CHAPTER 5:</b> <i>Factor Prices, Goods Prices, and Production Decisions</i> .....	145
Choice of Technique .....	145
Goods Prices and Factor Prices .....	146
More on Resources and Output .....	147
<b>6 The Standard Trade Model</b>	<b>149</b>
A Standard Model of a Trading Economy .....	150
Production Possibilities and Relative Supply .....	150
Relative Prices and Demand.....	151
The Welfare Effect of Changes in the Terms of Trade .....	154

<b>BOX: U.S. Consumer Gains from Chinese Imports .....</b>	<b>155</b>
Determining Relative Prices .....	155
Economic Growth: A Shift of the <i>RS</i> Curve .....	157
Growth and the Production Possibility Frontier.....	157
World Relative Supply and the Terms of Trade .....	159
International Effects of Growth .....	159
<b>CASE STUDY: Has the Growth of Newly Industrialized Economies Hurt Advanced Nations?.....</b>	<b>161</b>
<b>BOX: The Exposure of Developing Countries to Terms of Trade Shocks and the COVID-19 Pandemic.....</b>	<b>163</b>
<b>Tariffs and Export Subsidies: Simultaneous Shifts in <i>RS</i> and <i>RD</i> .....</b>	<b>163</b>
Relative Demand and Supply Effects of a Tariff .....	164
Effects of an Export Subsidy.....	165
Implications of Terms of Trade Effects: Who Gains and Who Loses?.....	165
<b>International Borrowing and Lending .....</b>	<b>167</b>
Intertemporal Production Possibilities and Trade.....	167
The Real Interest Rate .....	168
Intertemporal Comparative Advantage .....	169
<b>Summary .....</b>	<b>170</b>
<b>APPENDIX TO CHAPTER 6: More on Intertemporal Trade.....</b>	<b>174</b>
<b>7 External Economies of Scale and the International Location of Production</b>	<b>177</b>
<b>Economies of Scale and International Trade: An Overview .....</b>	<b>178</b>
<b>Economies of Scale and Market Structure.....</b>	<b>179</b>
<b>The Theory of External Economies .....</b>	<b>180</b>
<b>Specialized Suppliers.....</b>	<b>180</b>
<b>Labor Market Pooling .....</b>	<b>181</b>
<b>Knowledge Spillovers.....</b>	<b>182</b>
External Economies and Market Equilibrium .....	183
<b>External Economies and International Trade.....</b>	<b>184</b>
External Economies, Output, and Prices .....	184
External Economies and the Pattern of Trade .....	185
Trade and Welfare with External Economies .....	187
<b>BOX: Holding the World Together .....</b>	<b>188</b>
Dynamic Increasing Returns .....	189
<b>Interregional Trade and Economic Geography .....</b>	<b>190</b>
<b>BOX: The City and the Street .....</b>	<b>192</b>
<b>Summary .....</b>	<b>193</b>
<b>8 Firms in the Global Economy: Export and Foreign Sourcing Decisions and Multinational Enterprises</b>	<b>196</b>
<b>The Theory of Imperfect Competition .....</b>	<b>197</b>
Monopoly: A Brief Review .....	198
Monopolistic Competition .....	200
<b>Monopolistic Competition and Trade .....</b>	<b>205</b>
The Effects of Increased Market Size .....	205
Gains from an Integrated Market: A Numerical Example.....	207
The Significance of Intra-Industry Trade.....	210
<b>CASE STUDY: Automobile Intra-Industry Trade within ASEAN-4: 1998–2002.....</b>	<b>212</b>
<b>Firm Responses to Trade: Winners, Losers, and Industry Performance .....</b>	<b>213</b>
Performance Differences across Producers .....	214
The Effects of Increased Market Size .....	216
<b>Trade Costs and Export Decisions.....</b>	<b>217</b>

<b>Dumping .....</b>	<b>220</b>
<b>CASE STUDY: Antidumping as Protectionism .....</b>	<b>221</b>
<b>Multinationals and Foreign Direct Investment .....</b>	<b>222</b>
Patterns of Foreign Direct Investment Flows around the World .....	224
<b>CASE STUDY: COVID-19 and Foreign Direct Investment Flows around the World .....</b>	<b>226</b>
<b>Foreign Direct Investment and Foreign Sourcing Decisions .....</b>	<b>229</b>
The Horizontal FDI Decision .....	229
The Foreign Sourcing Decision .....	230
The Outsourcing Decision: Make or Buy .....	231
<b>BOX: Whose Trade Is It? .....</b>	<b>232</b>
<b>CASE STUDY: Shipping Jobs Overseas? Offshoring and Labor Market Outcomes in Germany .....</b>	<b>233</b>
Consequences of Multinationals and Foreign Outsourcing .....	235
<b>Summary .....</b>	<b>236</b>
<b>APPENDIX TO CHAPTER 8: Determining Marginal Revenue .....</b>	<b>241</b>

## PART 2 International Trade Policy 242

<b>9 The Instruments of Trade Policy</b>	<b>242</b>
<b>Basic Tariff Analysis .....</b>	<b>242</b>
Supply, Demand, and Trade in a Single Industry .....	243
Effects of a Tariff .....	245
Measuring the Amount of Protection .....	246
<b>Costs and Benefits of a Tariff .....</b>	<b>248</b>
Consumer and Producer Surplus.....	248
Measuring the Costs and Benefits .....	250
<b>CASE STUDY: Winners and Losers of the Trump Trade War .....</b>	<b>253</b>
<b>BOX: Tariffs and Retaliation .....</b>	<b>257</b>
<b>Other Instruments of Trade Policy .....</b>	<b>258</b>
Export Subsidies: Theory .....	258
<b>BOX: The Unfriendly Skies: Settling the Longest Running Trade Dispute .....</b>	<b>259</b>
Import Quotas: Theory .....	259
<b>CASE STUDY: Tariff-Rate Quota Origin and its Application in Practice with Oilseeds .....</b>	<b>260</b>
Voluntary Export Restraints.....	264
Local Content Requirements.....	265
<b>BOX: Healthcare Protection with Local Content Requirements .....</b>	<b>266</b>
Other Trade Policy Instruments.....	267
<b>The Effects of Trade Policy: A Summary .....</b>	<b>267</b>
<b>Summary .....</b>	<b>268</b>
<b>APPENDIX TO CHAPTER 9: Tariffs and Import Quotas in the Presence of Monopoly .....</b>	<b>272</b>
The Model with Free Trade .....	272
The Model with a Tariff .....	273
The Model with an Import Quota .....	274
Comparing a Tariff and a Quota .....	274
<b>10 The Political Economy of Trade Policy</b>	<b>276</b>
<b>The Case for Free Trade .....</b>	<b>277</b>
Free Trade and Efficiency.....	277
Additional Gains from Free Trade .....	278
Rent Seeking .....	279
Political Argument for Free Trade .....	279

<b>National Welfare Arguments against Free Trade .....</b>	<b>280</b>
The Terms of Trade Argument for a Tariff .....	280
The Domestic Market Failure Argument against Free Trade.....	281
How Convincing Is the Market Failure Argument?.....	283
<b>Income Distribution and Trade Policy .....</b>	<b>284</b>
Electoral Competition .....	285
Collective Action.....	286
<b>BOX: Politicians for Sale: Evidence from the 1990s.....</b>	<b>287</b>
Modeling the Political Process.....	288
Who Gets Protected?.....	288
<b>International Negotiations and Trade Policy .....</b>	<b>290</b>
The Advantages of Negotiation .....	290
International Trade Agreements: A Brief History .....	292
The Uruguay Round .....	294
Trade Liberalization .....	294
Administrative Reforms: From the GATT to the WTO.....	295
Benefits and Costs.....	296
<b>BOX: Settling a Dispute—and Creating One.....</b>	<b>297</b>
<b>CASE STUDY: Testing the WTO's Metal.....</b>	<b>298</b>
<b>The End of Trade Agreements? .....</b>	<b>299</b>
<b>BOX: Do Agricultural Subsidies Hurt the Third World?.....</b>	<b>300</b>
Preferential Trading Agreements .....	301
<b>BOX: Free Trade Area Versus Customs Union.....</b>	<b>303</b>
<b>BOX: Brexit .....</b>	<b>304</b>
<b>CASE STUDY: Trade Diversion in South America.....</b>	<b>304</b>
The Trans-Pacific Partnership .....	305
<b>Summary .....</b>	<b>306</b>
<b>APPENDIX TO CHAPTER 10: Proving That the Optimum Tariff Is Positive .....</b>	<b>310</b>
Demand and Supply.....	310
The Tariff and Prices.....	310
The Tariff and Domestic Welfare .....	311
<b>11 Trade Policy in Developing Countries</b>	<b>313</b>
<b>Import-Substituting Industrialization .....</b>	<b>314</b>
The Infant Industry Argument.....	314
Promoting Manufacturing through Protection.....	316
<b>CASE STUDY: Export-Led Strategy.....</b>	<b>318</b>
<b>Results of Favoring Manufacturing: Problems of Import-Substituting Industrialization .....</b>	<b>319</b>
<b>Trade Liberalization since 1985.....</b>	<b>320</b>
<b>Trade and Growth: Takeoff in Asia .....</b>	<b>322</b>
<b>BOX: India's Boom.....</b>	<b>324</b>
<b>Summary .....</b>	<b>325</b>
<b>12 Controversies in Trade Policy</b>	<b>327</b>
<b>Sophisticated Arguments for Activist Trade Policy .....</b>	<b>328</b>
Technology and Externalities .....	328
Imperfect Competition and Strategic Trade Policy .....	331
<b>BOX: A Warning From Intel's Founder .....</b>	<b>333</b>
<b>CASE STUDY: When the Chips Were Up.....</b>	<b>334</b>
<b>Globalization and Low-Wage Labor.....</b>	<b>336</b>
The Anti-Globalization Movement .....	336
Trade and Wages Revisited .....	337

Labor Standards and Trade Negotiations.....	339
Environmental and Cultural Issues.....	339
The WTO and National Independence.....	340
<b>CASE STUDY:</b> <i>A Tragedy in Bangladesh</i> .....	341
<b>Globalization and the Environment.....</b>	<b>342</b>
Globalization, Growth, and Pollution .....	342
The Problem of “Pollution Havens” .....	344
The Carbon Tariff Dispute.....	345
<b>Trade Shocks and Their Impact on Communities.....</b>	<b>346</b>
Summary .....	347

### PART 3 Exchange Rates and Open-Economy Macroeconomics 350

<b>13 National Income Accounting and the Balance of Payments <span style="float: right;">350</span></b>	
<b>The National Income Accounts .....</b>	<b>352</b>
National Product and National Income.....	353
Capital Depreciation and International Transfers.....	354
Gross Domestic Product .....	355
<b>National Income Accounting for an Open Economy.....</b>	<b>355</b>
Consumption .....	355
Investment.....	355
Government Purchases.....	356
The National Income Identity for an Open Economy.....	356
An Imaginary Open Economy.....	357
The Current Account and Foreign Indebtedness.....	357
Saving and the Current Account .....	360
Private and Government Saving .....	361
<b>BOX: <i>The Mystery of the Missing Deficit</i> .....</b>	<b>361</b>
<b>The Balance of Payments Accounts.....</b>	<b>363</b>
Examples of Paired Transactions .....	364
The Fundamental Balance of Payments Identity.....	365
The Current Account, Once Again.....	366
The Capital Account .....	367
The Financial Account .....	368
Statistical Discrepancy .....	368
<b>BOX: <i>Multinationals’ Profit Shifting and Ireland’s Volatile GDP</i> .....</b>	<b>369</b>
Official Reserve Transactions .....	371
<b>CASE STUDY: <i>The Assets and Liabilities of the World’s Biggest Debtor</i> .....</b>	<b>372</b>
Summary .....	377
<b>14 Exchange Rates and the Foreign Exchange Market: An Asset Approach <span style="float: right;">381</span></b>	
<b>Exchange Rates and International Transactions .....</b>	<b>382</b>
Domestic and Foreign Prices.....	382
Exchange Rates and Relative Prices.....	384
<b>The Foreign Exchange Market .....</b>	<b>385</b>
The Actors .....	385
Characteristics of the Market.....	387
Spot Rates and Forward Rates .....	388
Foreign Exchange Swaps.....	390
Futures and Options .....	390
<b>The Demand for Foreign Currency Assets.....</b>	<b>390</b>
Assets and Asset Returns .....	391
Risk and Liquidity .....	392

Interest Rates .....	393
Exchange Rates and Asset Returns .....	393
A Simple Rule .....	395
Return, Risk, and Liquidity in the Foreign Exchange Market .....	396
<b>Equilibrium in the Foreign Exchange Market .....</b>	<b>397</b>
Interest Parity: The Basic Equilibrium Condition .....	397
How Changes in the Current Exchange Rate Affect Expected Returns .....	398
The Equilibrium Exchange Rate .....	401
Interest Rates, Expectations, and Equilibrium .....	402
The Effect of Changing Interest Rates on the Current Exchange Rate .....	403
The Effect of Changing Expectations on the Current Exchange Rate .....	404
<b>CASE STUDY: What Explains the Carry Trade?.....</b>	<b>405</b>
<b>Forward Exchange Rates and Covered Interest Parity .....</b>	<b>408</b>
Summary .....	411
<b>15 Money, Interest Rates, and Exchange Rates</b>	<b>417</b>
<b>Money Defined: A Brief Review .....</b>	<b>418</b>
Money as a Medium of Exchange.....	418
Money as a Unit of Account.....	418
Money as a Store of Value .....	419
What Is Money?.....	419
How the Money Supply Is Determined .....	419
<b>The Demand for Money by Individuals .....</b>	<b>420</b>
Expected Return.....	420
Risk.....	421
Liquidity .....	421
<b>Aggregate Money Demand.....</b>	<b>421</b>
<b>The Equilibrium Interest Rate: The Interaction of Money Supply and Demand .....</b>	<b>423</b>
Equilibrium in the Money Market .....	424
Interest Rates and the Money Supply .....	425
Output and the Interest Rate.....	426
<b>The Money Supply and the Exchange Rate in the Short Run.....</b>	<b>427</b>
Linking Money, the Interest Rate, and the Exchange Rate .....	427
U.S. Money Supply and the Dollar/Euro Exchange Rate .....	430
Europe's Money Supply and the Dollar/Euro Exchange Rate .....	430
<b>Money, the Price Level, and the Exchange Rate in the Long Run .....</b>	<b>433</b>
Money and Money Prices.....	433
The Long-Run Effects of Money Supply Changes .....	434
Empirical Evidence on Money Supplies and Price Levels .....	435
Money and the Exchange Rate in the Long Run .....	436
<b>Inflation and Exchange Rate Dynamics .....</b>	<b>437</b>
Short-Run Price Rigidity versus Long-Run Price Flexibility .....	437
<b>BOX: Money Supply Growth and Hyperinflation in Zimbabwe .....</b>	<b>439</b>
<b>Permanent Money Supply Changes and the Exchange Rate .....</b>	<b>442</b>
Exchange Rate Overshooting .....	443
<b>CASE STUDY: Inflation Targeting and Exchange Rate in Emerging Countries .....</b>	<b>445</b>
Summary .....	448
<b>16 Price Levels and the Exchange Rate in the Long Run</b>	<b>452</b>
<b>The Law of One Price.....</b>	<b>453</b>
<b>Purchasing Power Parity .....</b>	<b>454</b>
The Relationship between PPP and the Law of One Price.....	454
Absolute PPP and Relative PPP .....	455

<b>A Long-Run Exchange Rate Model Based on PPP .....</b>	<b>456</b>
The Fundamental Equation of the Monetary Approach .....	456
Ongoing Inflation, Interest Parity, and PPP .....	458
The Fisher Effect.....	459
<b>Empirical Evidence on PPP and the Law of One Price.....</b>	<b>462</b>
<b>Explaining the Problems with PPP.....</b>	<b>464</b>
Trade Barriers and Nontradables .....	464
Departures from Free Competition .....	465
Differences in Consumption Patterns and Price Level Measurement.....	466
<b>BOX: Measuring And Comparing Countries' Wealth Worldwide: The International Comparison Program (ICP) .....</b>	<b>466</b>
PPP in the Short Run and in the Long Run.....	469
<b>CASE STUDY: Why Price Levels Are Lower in Poorer Countries.....</b>	<b>470</b>
<b>Beyond Purchasing Power Parity: A General Model of Long-Run Exchange Rates.....</b>	<b>472</b>
The Real Exchange Rate.....	472
Demand, Supply, and the Long-Run Real Exchange Rate.....	474
<b>BOX: Sticky Prices and the Law of One Price: Evidence from Scandinavian Duty-Free Shops.....</b>	<b>475</b>
Nominal and Real Exchange Rates in Long-Run Equilibrium.....	477
<b>International Interest Rate Differences and the Real Exchange Rate.....</b>	<b>480</b>
<b>Real Interest Parity.....</b>	<b>481</b>
<b>Summary .....</b>	<b>482</b>
<b>APPENDIX TO CHAPTER 16: The Fisher Effect, the Interest Rate, and the Exchange Rate under the Flexible-Price Monetary Approach.....</b>	<b>487</b>
<b>17 Output and the Exchange Rate in the Short Run</b>	<b>490</b>
<b>Determinants of Aggregate Demand in an Open Economy.....</b>	<b>491</b>
Determinants of Consumption Demand .....	491
Determinants of the Current Account .....	492
How Real Exchange Rate Changes Affect the Current Account.....	493
How Disposable Income Changes Affect the Current Account .....	494
<b>The Equation of Aggregate Demand .....</b>	<b>494</b>
The Real Exchange Rate and Aggregate Demand .....	494
Real Income and Aggregate Demand .....	495
<b>How Output Is Determined in the Short Run.....</b>	<b>496</b>
<b>Output Market Equilibrium in the Short Run: The DD Schedule .....</b>	<b>497</b>
Output, the Exchange Rate, and Output Market Equilibrium.....	497
Deriving the DD Schedule.....	498
Factors That Shift the DD Schedule .....	499
<b>Asset Market Equilibrium in the Short Run: The AA Schedule .....</b>	<b>502</b>
Output, the Exchange Rate, and Asset Market Equilibrium.....	502
Deriving the AA Schedule .....	504
Factors That Shift the AA Schedule .....	504
<b>Short-Run Equilibrium for an Open Economy: Putting the DD and AA Schedules Together.....</b>	<b>505</b>
<b>Temporary Changes in Monetary and Fiscal Policy .....</b>	<b>507</b>
Monetary Policy .....	508
Fiscal Policy .....	508
Policies to Maintain Full Employment.....	509
<b>Inflation Bias and Other Problems of Policy Formulation.....</b>	<b>511</b>
<b>Permanent Shifts in Monetary and Fiscal Policy .....</b>	<b>512</b>
A Permanent Increase in the Money Supply.....	512
Adjustment to a Permanent Increase in the Money Supply .....	513

A Permanent Fiscal Expansion .....	515
<b>Macroeconomic Policies and the Current Account .....</b>	<b>516</b>
<b>Gradual Trade Flow Adjustment and Current Account Dynamics .....</b>	<b>518</b>
The J-Curve.....	518
Exchange Rate Pass-Through and Inflation .....	519
Global Value Chains and Exchange Rate Effects on Export and Import Prices.....	520
The Current Account, Wealth, and Exchange Rate Dynamics .....	522
<b>BOX: Understanding Pass-Through to Import and Export Prices.....</b>	<b>522</b>
<b>The Liquidity Trap.....</b>	<b>524</b>
<b>CASE STUDY: How Big Is the Government Spending Multiplier?.....</b>	<b>527</b>
<b>Summary .....</b>	<b>529</b>
<b>APPENDIX 1 TO CHAPTER 17: Intertemporal Trade and Consumption Demand.....</b>	<b>533</b>
<b>APPENDIX 2 TO CHAPTER 17: The Marshall-Lerner Condition and Empirical Estimates of Trade Elasticities .....</b>	<b>535</b>
<b>APPENDIX 3 TO CHAPTER 17: The IS-LM Model and the DD-AA Model.....</b>	<b>538</b>
<b>18 Fixed Exchange Rates and Foreign Exchange Intervention</b>	<b>543</b>
<b>Why Study Fixed Exchange Rates? .....</b>	<b>544</b>
<b>Central Bank Intervention and the Money Supply.....</b>	<b>545</b>
The Central Bank Balance Sheet and the Money Supply.....	545
Foreign Exchange Intervention and the Money Supply.....	547
Sterilization .....	548
The Balance of Payments and the Money Supply.....	548
<b>How the Central Bank Fixes the Exchange Rate.....</b>	<b>549</b>
Foreign Exchange Market Equilibrium under a Fixed Exchange Rate .....	550
Money Market Equilibrium under a Fixed Exchange Rate .....	550
A Diagrammatic Analysis.....	551
<b>Stabilization Policies with a Fixed Exchange Rate.....</b>	<b>552</b>
Monetary Policy.....	553
Fiscal Policy .....	554
Changes in the Exchange Rate .....	555
Adjustment to Fiscal Policy and Exchange Rate Changes .....	556
<b>Balance of Payments Crises and Capital Flight .....</b>	<b>557</b>
<b>Managed Floating and Sterilized Intervention .....</b>	<b>560</b>
Perfect Asset Substitutability and the Ineffectiveness of Sterilized Intervention.....	560
<b>CASE STUDY: Can Markets Attack a Strong Currency? The Case of Switzerland, 2011–2015....</b>	<b>561</b>
Foreign Exchange Market Equilibrium under Imperfect Asset Substitutability.....	564
The Effects of Sterilized Intervention with Imperfect Asset Substitutability .....	565
Evidence on the Effects of Sterilized Intervention .....	566
<b>Reserve Currencies in the World Monetary System.....</b>	<b>567</b>
The Mechanics of a Reserve Currency Standard .....	568
The Asymmetric Position of the Reserve Center .....	568
<b>The Gold Standard.....</b>	<b>569</b>
The Mechanics of a Gold Standard .....	569
Symmetric Monetary Adjustment under a Gold Standard.....	570
Benefits and Drawbacks of the Gold Standard .....	570
The Bimetallic Standard .....	571
The Gold Exchange Standard .....	572
<b>CASE STUDY: The Demand for International Reserves.....</b>	<b>572</b>
<b>Summary .....</b>	<b>576</b>
<b>APPENDIX 1 TO CHAPTER 18: Equilibrium in the Foreign Exchange Market with Imperfect Asset Substitutability.....</b>	<b>581</b>

Demand .....	581
Supply .....	582
Equilibrium.....	582
<b>APPENDIX 2 TO CHAPTER 18: <i>The Timing of Balance of Payments Crises</i></b> .....	<b>584</b>
<b>APPENDIX 3 TO CHAPTER 18: <i>The Monetary Approach to the Balance of Payments</i></b> .....	<b>587</b>
<b>PART 4 International Macroeconomic Policy</b>	<b>589</b>
<b>19 International Monetary Systems: A Historical Overview</b>	<b>589</b>
<b>Macroeconomic Policy Goals in an Open Economy</b> .....	<b>590</b>
Internal Balance: Full Employment and Price Level Stability .....	591
External Balance: The Optimal Level of the Current Account .....	592
<b>BOX: Can a Country Borrow Forever? The Case of New Zealand</b> .....	<b>594</b>
<b>Classifying Monetary Systems: The Open-Economy Monetary Trilemma</b> .....	<b>598</b>
<b>International Macroeconomic Policy under the Gold Standard, 1870–1914</b> .....	<b>599</b>
Origins of the Gold Standard.....	600
External Balance under the Gold Standard .....	600
The Price-Specie-Flow Mechanism .....	600
The Gold Standard “Rules of the Game”: Myth and Reality.....	601
Internal Balance under the Gold Standard .....	602
<b>CASE STUDY: The Political Economy of Exchange Rate Regimes: Conflict over America’s Monetary Standard during the 1890s</b> .....	603
<b>The Interwar Years, 1918–1939</b> .....	<b>604</b>
The Fleeting Return to Gold .....	605
International Economic Disintegration .....	605
<b>CASE STUDY: The International Gold Standard and the Great Depression</b> .....	606
<b>The Bretton Woods System and the International Monetary Fund</b> .....	<b>607</b>
Goals and Structure of the IMF .....	608
Convertibility and the Expansion of Private Financial Flows .....	609
Speculative Capital Flows and Crises .....	610
<b>Analyzing Policy Options for Reaching Internal and External Balance</b> .....	<b>611</b>
Maintaining Internal Balance.....	612
Maintaining External Balance .....	613
Expenditure-Changing and Expenditure-Switching Policies.....	613
<b>The External Balance Problem of the United States under Bretton Woods</b> .....	<b>615</b>
<b>CASE STUDY: The End of Bretton Woods, Worldwide Inflation, and the Transition to Floating Rates</b> .....	616
The Mechanics of Imported Inflation .....	617
Assessment .....	619
<b>The Case for Floating Exchange Rates</b> .....	<b>619</b>
Monetary Policy Autonomy .....	619
Symmetry .....	621
Exchange Rates as Automatic Stabilizers .....	621
Exchange Rates and External Balance .....	623
<b>CASE STUDY: The First Years of Floating Rates, 1973–1990</b> .....	623
<b>Macroeconomic Interdependence under a Floating Rate</b> .....	<b>628</b>
<b>CASE STUDY: Transformation and Crisis in the World Economy</b> .....	629
<b>BOX: The Thorny Problem of Currency Manipulation</b> .....	636
<b>CASE STUDY: The Dangers of Deflation</b> .....	638
<b>What Has Been Learned Since 1973?</b> .....	<b>640</b>
Monetary Policy Autonomy .....	640
Symmetry .....	640

The Exchange Rate as an Automatic Stabilizer .....	642
External Balance .....	642
The Problem of Policy Coordination.....	643
<b>Are Fixed Exchange Rates Even an Option for Most Countries?.....</b>	<b>643</b>
<b>Summary .....</b>	<b>644</b>
<b>APPENDIX TO CHAPTER 19: International Policy Coordination Failures.....</b>	<b>650</b>
<b>20 Financial Globalization: Opportunity and Crisis</b>	<b>653</b>
<b>The International Capital Market and the Gains from Trade .....</b>	<b>654</b>
Three Types of Gain from Trade.....	654
Risk Aversion .....	656
Portfolio Diversification as a Motive for International Asset Trade .....	656
The Menu of International Assets: Debt versus Equity.....	657
<b>International Banking and the International Capital Market .....</b>	<b>658</b>
The Structure of the International Capital Market.....	658
Offshore Banking and Offshore Currency Trading .....	659
The Shadow Banking System .....	661
<b>Banking and Financial Fragility .....</b>	<b>661</b>
The Problem of Bank Failure.....	661
Government Safeguards against Financial Instability.....	664
Moral Hazard and the Problem of “Too Big to Fail” .....	667
<b>BOX: Does the IMF Create Moral Hazard?.....</b>	<b>667</b>
<b>The Challenge of Regulating International Banking .....</b>	<b>669</b>
The Financial Trilemma .....	669
International Regulatory Cooperation through 2007.....	671
<b>CASE STUDY: The Global Financial Crisis of 2007–2009.....</b>	<b>672</b>
<b>BOX: Foreign Exchange Instability and Central Bank Swap Lines.....</b>	<b>675</b>
International Regulatory Initiatives after the Global Financial Crisis.....	677
<b>Metrics for International Capital Market Performance .....</b>	<b>679</b>
The Extent of International Portfolio Equity Diversification .....	680
The Extent of Intertemporal Trade .....	680
The Efficiency of International Asset-Price Arbitrage.....	682
The Efficiency of the Foreign Exchange Market .....	683
<b>Summary .....</b>	<b>687</b>
<b>21 Optimum Currency Areas and the Euro</b>	<b>692</b>
<b>How the European Single Currency Evolved .....</b>	<b>694</b>
What Has Driven European Monetary Cooperation? .....	694
<b>BOX: Brexit .....</b>	<b>695</b>
The European Monetary System, 1979–1998 .....	698
German Monetary Dominance and the Credibility Theory of the EMS .....	699
Market Integration Initiatives .....	701
European Economic and Monetary Union .....	701
<b>The Euro and Economic Policy in the Euro Zone .....</b>	<b>702</b>
The Maastricht Convergence Criteria and the Stability and Growth Pact .....	703
The European Central Bank and the Eurosystem.....	704
The Revised Exchange Rate Mechanism .....	704
<b>The Theory of Optimum Currency Areas .....</b>	<b>705</b>
Economic Integration and the Benefits of a Fixed Exchange Rate Area:	
The GG Schedule.....	705
Economic Integration and the Costs of a Fixed Exchange Rate Area:	
The LL Schedule .....	707
The Decision to Join a Currency Area: Putting the GG and LL Schedules Together .....	709

What Is an Optimum Currency Area? .....	711
Other Important Considerations .....	711
<b>CASE STUDY: Is Europe an Optimum Currency Area? .....</b>	<b>713</b>
<b>The Euro Crisis and the Future of EMU.....</b>	<b>716</b>
Origins of the Crisis .....	716
Self-Fulfilling Government Default and the “Doom Loop” .....	722
A Broader Crisis and Policy Responses .....	723
ECB Outright Monetary Transactions .....	725
Response to the COVID-19 Pandemic.....	725
The Future of EMU.....	726
<b>Summary .....</b>	<b>727</b>
<b>22 Developing Countries: Growth, Crisis, and Reform</b>	<b>732</b>
<b>Income, Wealth, and Growth in the World Economy .....</b>	<b>733</b>
The Gap between Rich and Poor.....	733
Has the World Income Gap Narrowed Over Time? .....	734
The Importance of Developing Countries for Global Growth.....	736
<b>Structural Features of Developing Countries .....</b>	<b>737</b>
<b>BOX: The Commodity Super Cycle.....</b>	<b>739</b>
<b>Developing-Country Borrowing and Debt .....</b>	<b>742</b>
The Economics of Financial Inflows to Developing Countries .....	743
The Problem of Default .....	744
Alternative Forms of Financial Inflow .....	746
The Problem of “Original Sin” .....	747
The Debt Crisis of the 1980s .....	749
Reforms, Capital Inflows, and the Return of Crisis .....	750
<b>East Asia: Success and Crisis .....</b>	<b>754</b>
The East Asian Economic Miracle .....	754
<b>BOX: Why Have Developing Countries Accumulated High Levels of International Reserves?.....</b>	<b>755</b>
Asian Weaknesses.....	756
<b>BOX: What Did East Asia Do Right?.....</b>	<b>758</b>
The Asian Financial Crisis .....	758
<b>Lessons of Developing-Country Crises .....</b>	<b>759</b>
<b>Reforming the World’s Financial “Architecture” .....</b>	<b>761</b>
Capital Mobility and the Trilemma of the Exchange Rate Regime.....	762
“Prophylactic” Measures .....	763
Coping with Crisis.....	764
<b>BOX: Emerging Markets and Global Financial Cycles.....</b>	<b>765</b>
<b>Understanding Global Capital Flows and the Global Distribution of Income:</b>	
<b>Is Geography Destiny?.....</b>	<b>768</b>
<b>BOX: Capital Paradoxes.....</b>	<b>769</b>
<b>Summary .....</b>	<b>773</b>
<b>Mathematical Postscripts</b>	<b>778</b>
<b>Postscript to Chapter 5: The Factor-Proportions Model.....</b>	<b>778</b>
Factor Prices and Costs.....	778
Goods Prices and Factor Prices.....	780
Factor Supplies and Outputs.....	781
<b>Postscript to Chapter 6: The Trading World Economy .....</b>	<b>782</b>
Supply, Demand, and Equilibrium .....	782
Supply, Demand, and the Stability of Equilibrium.....	784
Effects of Changes in Supply and Demand .....	786

Economic Growth .....	787
A Transfer of Income.....	788
A Tariff .....	789
<b>Postscript to Chapter 8: The Monopolistic Competition Model.....</b>	<b>790</b>
<b>Postscript to Chapter 20: Risk Aversion and International Portfolio Diversification .....</b>	<b>792</b>
An Analytical Derivation of the Optimal Portfolio.....	792
A Diagrammatic Derivation of the Optimal Portfolio .....	793
The Effects of Changing Rates of Return .....	795
<b>Merchandise Trade Flows with the United States (in 2018 U.S. dollars) .....</b>	<b>800</b>
<b>Gross National Product per Capita (in 2019 U.S. dollars) .....</b>	<b>802</b>
<b>Index .....</b>	<b>804</b>





# Preface

Nothing illustrates better than the COVID-19 pandemic how movements of people, flows of data, and commerce connect our interdependent world. Because pathogens do not respect national borders, the SARS-CoV-2 virus caused a global economic shock and a worldwide downturn, sending governments throughout the world scrambling for policies to stop the spread of the disease while supporting their economies. As this book went to press, the crisis was still underway, with the arrival of several effective vaccines giving hope of a road back to normalcy. Many lessons will be drawn from the recent pandemic experience, but one is the importance of an international perspective for analyzing events of worldwide economic significance and countries' responses. The purpose of this book is to equip students with intellectual tools for understanding the economic implications of global interdependence.

## What's New in the Twelfth Edition

We have thoroughly updated the content and extensively revised several chapters. These revisions respond both to users' suggestions and to some important developments on the theoretical and practical sides of international economics. The most far-reaching changes are the following:

- **Chapter 2, World Trade: An Overview** The world attained a high degree of economic interdependence by the eve of World War I over a century ago, but governments retreated behind trade barriers amid the Great Depression of the interwar period. A renewed trend toward economic opening—the “second great globalization”—commenced after World War II. This revised chapter uses new data to provide a better picture of long-term trends in globalization, highlighting how the world reached historically unprecedented levels of economic interconnection only after 1990.
- **Chapter 4, Specific Factors and Income Distribution** Import competition from developing countries—especially from China—is often singled out both in the press and by politicians as the main culprit for declines in manufacturing employment in the United States. This chapter updates our case study on the potential links between these two trends. It also updates our discussion of the politics of restrictions on trade in sugar. A new box introduces our coverage of the restrictive trade policies of the U.S. Trump administration starting in 2017—President Trump’s trade war.
- **Chapter 6, The Standard Trade Model** The chapter includes a new case study on the gains to U.S. consumers from Chinese imports. A new box covers the impact of terms of trade shocks on developing countries and in particular the experience during the COVID-19 pandemic.
- **Chapter 7, External Economies of Scale and the International Location of Production** Featured in this revised chapter is a new emphasis on financial centers (notably New York and London), along with discussion of the impacts of Brexit and COVID-19.
- **Chapter 8, Firms in the Global Economy: Export and Foreign Sourcing Decisions, and Multinational Enterprises** Increasingly, the goods we consume are produced in “Global Value Chains” that stretch around the world. The chapter features an extended firm-level trade model that describes how firms make global sourcing decisions. A related new empirical box details the foreign sourcing decisions of U.S. manufacturing firms.

- **Chapter 9, The Instruments of Trade Policy** In the past few years, trade policy has received an inordinate amount of attention with the coverage of the evolving cycle of U.S. trade restrictions and retaliation by its trading partners during the Trump administration. A new case study details the evolution of this trade war and quantifies its impact on U.S. consumers and producers. A new box describes how the long-running dispute between the United States and Europe over export subsidies to Boeing and Airbus was finally resolved. The chapter also features an updated discussion of the new US-Mexico-Canada trade agreement (USMCA) that has replaced NAFTA, with a focus on the implications for North American automobile supply chains.
- **Chapter 10, The Political Economy of Trade Policy** Recent years have seen some significant setbacks to the march toward freer trade. A key arena of trade conflict, likely to continue in future years, has been in free market economies' relations with China. In line with that development, this chapter now includes added focus on U.S.–China trade tensions.
- **Chapter 12, Controversies in Trade Policy** In response to political tensions over the ways in which technological change and trade are affecting trade patterns, regional development within countries, and employment prospects across different labor skill groups, a new focus on the prospects for industrial policies has emerged in both the United States and Europe. This chapter updates our prior discussion of industrial policy by concentrating on R&D-intensive products, where most of the current debate centers.
- **Chapter 13, National Income Accounting and the Balance of Payments** A notable recent trend has been the movement of intellectual property and other intangible capital across borders for the purpose of minimizing corporate tax burdens. This chapter features a new box describing how Ireland's accommodative tax regime has led to anomalies in its GDP data. While the description of cross-border profit shifting will be of substantive interest to students, the Irish example also illustrates the limitations of GDP as a measure of national economic activity or welfare.
- **Chapter 14, Exchange Rates and the Foreign Exchange Market: An Asset Approach** A striking empirical regularity of the period since the global financial crisis of 2008–2009 has been the continuing failure of covered interest parity as an empirical regularity. This revised chapter moves the material on covered interest parity from an appendix to the main text, provides added emphasis on the distinction between uncovered and covered interest parity, and foreshadows a new discussion in Chapter 20 on the reasons behind recent departures from covered interest parity.
- **Chapter 15, Money, Interest Rates, and Exchange Rates** This chapter now uses the recent hyperinflation in Venezuela as an example to underscore the long-run relationship between money supply and prices.
- **Chapter 17, Output and the Exchange Rate in the Short Run** The chapter adds material on how global value chains influence exchange rate pass-through.
- **Chapter 19, International Monetary Systems: A Historical Overview** We extend the historical narrative to cover the effects of the Trump trade war on global trade and the COVID-19 pandemic. An important addition is a new box on the question of currency manipulation—a topic that draws on much of what students will have learned up to this point in the book and is likely to retain relevance in coming years.
- **Chapter 20, Financial Globalization: Opportunity and Crisis** We link ongoing deviations from covered interest parity to changing financial regulations, and we also introduce the exchange rate disconnect puzzle.
- **Chapter 21, Optimum Currency Areas and the Euro** The chapter updates the discussion of Brexit to cover the 11th-hour partial trade deal that the EU and United Kingdom reached in December 2020 as well as the prior withdrawal agreement and its implications for the Irish border. Also included is coverage of euro area policy innovations in response to the COVID-19 pandemic.

- **Chapter 22, Developing Countries: Growth, Crisis, and Reform** A new box highlights the key role of global financial conditions in driving emerging economies' growth—the global financial cycle. Key topics explored include the motivations for emerging market economies to manage their exchange rates and the benefits of exchange rate flexibility in the face of global financial forces.

## Solving Learning and Teaching Challenges

The idea of writing this book came out of our experience in teaching international economics to undergraduates and business students since the late 1970s. We perceived two main challenges in teaching. The first was to communicate to students the exciting intellectual advances in this dynamic field. The second was to show how the development of international economic theory has traditionally been shaped by the need to understand the changing world economy and analyze actual problems in international economic policy.

We found that published textbooks did not adequately meet these challenges. Too often, international economics textbooks confront students with a bewildering array of special models and assumptions from which basic lessons are difficult to extract. Because many of these special models are outmoded, students are left puzzled about the real-world relevance of the analysis. As a result, many textbooks often leave a gap between the somewhat antiquated material to be covered in class and the exciting issues that dominate current research and policy debates. That gap has widened dramatically as the importance of international economic problems—and alongside that, enrollment in international economics courses—has grown.

This book is our attempt to provide an up-to-date and understandable analytical framework for illuminating current events and bringing the excitement of international economics into the classroom. In analyzing both the real and monetary sides of the subject, our approach has been to build up, step-by-step, a simple, unified framework for communicating the grand traditional insights as well as the newest findings and approaches. To help the student grasp and retain the underlying logic of international economics, we motivate the theoretical development at each stage by pertinent data and policy questions.

Students assimilate international economics most readily when it is presented as a method of analysis vitally linked to events in the world economy rather than as a body of abstract theorems about abstract models. Our goal has therefore been to stress concepts and their application rather than theoretical formalism. Accordingly, the book does not presuppose an extensive background in economics. Students who have had a course in economic principles will find the book accessible, but students who have taken further courses in microeconomics or macroeconomics will find an abundant supply of new material. Specialized appendices and mathematical postscripts have been included to challenge the most advanced students.

For use in a two-semester course, we follow the standard practice of dividing the book into two halves devoted to trade and to monetary questions. Although the trade and monetary portions of international economics are often treated as unrelated subjects, even within one textbook, similar themes and methods recur in both subfields. We have made it a point to illuminate connections between the trade and monetary areas when they arise. At the same time, we have made sure that the book's two halves are completely self-contained. Thus, a one-semester course on trade theory can be based on Chapters 2 through 12, and a one-semester course on international monetary economics can be based on Chapters 13 through 22.

### Our Vision

Years after the global financial crisis of 2008–2009, the world economy is still afflicted by tepid economic growth and, for many people, stagnating incomes. This bleak picture has been accentuated by the economic shock dealt by the COVID-19 pandemic.

Extensive attempts by governments to support their economies, while successful in avoiding worst-case scenarios, will leave countries worldwide with legacies of sharply higher public debts, decimated service sectors, and deeply scarred labor forces. Emerging markets remain vulnerable to the ebb and flow of global capital and the ups and downs of world commodity prices. Uncertainty weighs on investment globally, driven not least by worries about the future of the liberal international trade regime built up so painstakingly after World War II.

This twelfth edition therefore comes out at a time when we are more aware than ever before of how events in the global economy influence each country's economic fortunes, policies, and political debates. The world that emerged from World War II was one in which trade, financial, and even communication links between countries were limited. Nearly two decades into the 21st century, however, the picture is very different. Globalization has arrived big-time. International trade in goods and services has expanded steadily over the past six decades thanks to declines in shipping and communication costs, globally negotiated reductions in government trade barriers, the widespread outsourcing of production activities, and a greater awareness of foreign cultures and products. New and better communications technologies, notably the Internet, have revolutionized the way people in all countries obtain and exchange information. International trade in financial assets such as currencies, stocks, and bonds has expanded at a much faster pace even than international product trade. This process brings benefits for owners of wealth but also creates risks of contagious financial instability. Those risks were realized during the recent global financial crisis, which spread quickly across national borders and has played out at huge cost to the world economy. Of all the changes on the international scene in recent decades, however, perhaps the biggest one remains the emergence of China—a development that is already redefining the international balance of economic and political power in the coming century.

Imagine how astonished the generation that lived through the depressed 1930s as adults would have been to see the shape of today's world economy! Nonetheless, the economic concerns that drive international debate have not changed that much from those that dominated the 1930s nor indeed since they were first analyzed by economists more than two centuries ago. What are the merits of free trade among nations compared with protectionism? What causes countries to run trade surpluses or deficits with their trading partners, and how are such imbalances resolved over time? What causes banking and currency crises in open economies, what causes financial contagion between economies, and how should governments handle international financial instability? How can governments avoid unemployment and inflation, what role do exchange rates play in their efforts, and how can countries best cooperate to achieve their economic goals? As always in international economics, the interplay of events and ideas has led to new modes of analysis. In turn, these analytical advances, however abstruse they may seem at first, ultimately do end up playing a major role in governmental policies, in international negotiations, and in people's everyday lives. Globalization has made citizens of all countries much more aware than ever before of the worldwide economic forces that influence their fortunes. Despite some predictions that the recent pandemic may put the brakes on globalization, it seems more likely that most aspects of globalization will survive once the COVID-19 virus is finally vanquished. As the book illustrates, globalization can be an engine of prosperity, but like any powerful machine, it can do damage if managed unwisely. The challenge for the global community is to get the most out of globalization while coping with the challenges that it raises for economic policy.

To help students explore this complex landscape, this book covers the most important recent developments in international economics without shortchanging the enduring theoretical and historical insights that have traditionally formed the core of the subject. We have achieved this comprehensiveness by stressing how recent theories

have evolved from earlier findings in response to an evolving world economy. Both the real trade portion of the book (Chapters 2 through 12) and the monetary portion (Chapters 13 through 22) are divided into a core of chapters focused on theory, followed by chapters applying the theory to major policy questions, past and current.

In Chapter 1, we describe in some detail how this book addresses the major themes of international economics. Here we emphasize several of the topics that previous authors failed to treat in a systematic way.

**Increasing Returns and Market Structure** Even before discussing the role of comparative advantage in promoting international exchange and the associated welfare gains, we visit the forefront of theoretical and empirical research by setting out the gravity model of trade (Chapter 2). We return to the research frontier (in Chapters 7 and 8) by explaining how increasing returns and product differentiation affect trade and welfare. The models explored in this discussion capture significant aspects of reality, such as intraindustry trade and shifts in trade patterns due to dynamic scale economies. The models show, too, that mutually beneficial trade need not be based on comparative advantage.

**Firms in International Trade** Chapter 8 also summarizes exciting new research focused on the role of firms in international trade. The chapter emphasizes that different firms may fare differently in the face of globalization. The expansion of some and the contraction of others shift overall production toward more efficient producers within industrial sectors, raising overall productivity and thereby generating gains from trade. Those firms that expand in an environment of freer trade may have incentives to outsource some of their production activities abroad or take up multinational production, as we describe in the chapter.

**Politics and Theory of Trade Policy** Starting in Chapter 4, we stress the effect of trade on income distribution as the key political factor behind restrictions on free trade. This emphasis makes it clear to students why the prescriptions of the standard welfare analysis of trade policy seldom prevail in practice. Chapter 12 explores the popular notion that governments should adopt activist trade policies aimed at encouraging sectors of the economy seen as crucial. The chapter includes a theoretical discussion of such trade policy based on simple ideas from game theory.

**Asset Market Approach to Exchange Rate Determination** The modern foreign exchange market and the determination of exchange rates by national interest rates and expectations are at the center of our account of open-economy macroeconomics. The main ingredient of the macroeconomic model we develop is the interest parity relation, augmented later by risk premiums (Chapter 14). Among the topics we address using the model are exchange rate “overshooting,” inflation targeting, behavior of real exchange rates, balance-of-payments crises under fixed exchange rates, and the causes and effects of central bank intervention in the foreign exchange market (Chapters 15 through 18).

**International Macroeconomic Policy Coordination** Our discussion of international monetary experience (Chapters 19 through 22) stresses the theme that different exchange rate systems have led to different policy coordination problems for their members. Just as the competitive gold scramble of the interwar years showed how beggar-thy-neighbor policies can be self-defeating, the current float challenges national policymakers to recognize their interdependence and formulate policies cooperatively.

**The World Capital Market and Developing Countries** A broad discussion of the world capital market is given in Chapter 20, which takes up the welfare implications of international portfolio diversification as well as problems of prudential supervision of internationally active banks and other financial institutions. Chapter 22 covers the long-term growth prospects and the specific macroeconomic stabilization and liberalization problems of industrializing and newly industrialized countries. The chapter

reviews emerging market crises and places in historical perspective the interactions among developing country borrowers, developed country lenders, and official financial institutions such as the International Monetary Fund.

## Features

This book incorporates a number of special learning features that will maintain students' interest in the presentation and help them master its lessons.

**Case Studies** Case studies that perform the threefold role of reinforcing material covered earlier, illustrating its applicability in the real world, and providing important historical information often accompany theoretical discussions.

**Special Boxes** Less central topics that nonetheless offer particularly vivid illustrations of points made in the text are treated in boxes.

**Captioned Diagrams** More than 200 diagrams are accompanied by descriptive captions that reinforce the discussion in the text and help the student in reviewing the material.

**Learning Goals** A list of essential concepts sets the stage for each chapter in the book. These learning goals help students assess their mastery of the material.

**Summary and Key Terms** Each chapter closes with a summary recapitulating the major points. Key terms and phrases appear in boldface type when they are introduced in the chapter and are listed at the end of each chapter. To further aid student review of the material, key terms are italicized when they appear in the chapter summary.

**Problems** Each chapter is followed by problems intended to test and solidify students' comprehension. The problems range from routine computational drills to "big picture" questions suitable for classroom discussion. In many problems we ask students to apply what they have learned to real-world data or policy questions.

**Further Readings** For instructors who prefer to supplement the textbook with outside readings and for students who wish to probe more deeply on their own, each chapter has an annotated bibliography that includes established classics as well as up-to-date examinations of recent issues.

**Supplementary Resources** A full range of additional supplementary materials to support teaching and learning accompanies this book.

- The Online Instructor's Manual—updated by Hisham Foad of San Diego State University and K. Michael Casey of University of Central Arkansas—includes chapter overviews and answers to end-of-chapter problems.
- The Online Test Bank offers a rich array of multiple-choice and essay questions, including some mathematical and graphing problems, for each textbook chapter. It is available in Word, PDF, and TestGen formats. This Test Bank was carefully revised and updated by Van Pham of Salem State University. Rafael Alfena Zago from the University of Oklahoma performed accuracy review of the Test Bank.
- The Accessible Online PowerPoint Presentation was updated by Amy Glass of Texas A&M University. This resource contains text figures and tables and can be used for in-class presentations.

For more information and resources, visit [www.pearsonglobaleditions.com](http://www.pearsonglobaleditions.com).

## Acknowledgments

Our primary debt is to Thomas Hayward, the Pearson Content Analyst responsible for the project. We also are grateful to the Pearson Content Producer, Shweta Jain, and the Pearson Managing Producer, Alison Kalil. Kelly Murphy's efforts as Project Manager with Straive were essential and efficient. We would also like to thank the digital product team at Pearson—Noel Lotz, Courtney Kamauf, and Melissa Honig—for all their hard work on the MyLab course for the twelfth edition. Last, we thank the other editors who helped make the earlier eleven editions of this book as good as they were.

We also wish to acknowledge the sterling research assistance of Lydia Cox, Joan Jennifer Martinez, and Jianlin Wang. We thank the following reviewers, past and present, for their recommendations and insights:

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Jaleel Ahmad, <i>Concordia University</i><br/>         Lian An, <i>University of North Florida</i><br/>         Anthony Paul Andrews, <i>Governors State University</i><br/>         Myrvin Anthony, <i>University of Strathclyde, U.K.</i><br/>         Michael Arghyrou, <i>Cardiff University</i><br/>         Richard Ault, <i>Auburn University</i><br/>         Amitrajeet Batabyal, <i>Rochester Institute of Technology</i><br/>         Tibor Besedes, <i>Georgia Tech</i><br/>         George H. Borts, <i>Brown University</i><br/>         Robert F. Brooker, <i>Gannon University</i><br/>         Francisco Carrada-Bravo, <i>W.P. Carey School of Business, ASU</i><br/>         Debajyoti Chakrabarty, <i>University of Sydney</i><br/>         Adhip Chaudhuri, <i>Georgetown University</i><br/>         Jay Pil Choi, <i>Michigan State University</i><br/>         Jaiho Chung, <i>National University of Singapore</i><br/>         Jonathan Conning, <i>Hunter College and The Graduate Center, The City University of New York</i><br/>         Brian Copeland, <i>University of British Columbia</i><br/>         Kevin Cotter, <i>Wayne State University</i><br/>         Barbara Craig, <i>Oberlin College</i><br/>         Susan Dadres, <i>University of North Texas</i><br/>         Ronald B. Davies, <i>University College Dublin</i><br/>         Ann Davis, <i>Marist College</i><br/>         Gopal C. Dorai, <i>William Paterson University</i><br/>         Robert Driskill, <i>Vanderbilt University</i><br/>         Gerald Epstein, <i>University of Massachusetts at Amherst</i><br/>         JoAnne Feeney, <i>State University of New York at Albany</i><br/>         Robert Foster, <i>American Graduate School of International Management</i><br/>         Patrice Franko, <i>Colby College</i><br/>         Diana Fuguit, <i>Eckerd College</i><br/>         Byron Gangnes, <i>University of Hawaii at Manoa</i><br/>         Ranjeeta Ghiara, <i>California State University,</i></p> | <p><i>San Marcos</i><br/>         Neil Gilfedder, <i>Stanford University</i><br/>         Mark Gius, <i>Quinnipiac University</i><br/>         Amy Glass, <i>Texas A&amp;M University</i><br/>         Patrick Gormely, <i>Kansas State University</i><br/>         Thomas Grennes, <i>North Carolina State University</i><br/>         Bodil Olai Hansen, <i>Copenhagen Business School</i><br/>         Michael Hoffman, <i>U.S. Government Accountability Office</i><br/>         Henk Jager, <i>University of Amsterdam</i><br/>         Arvind Jaggi, <i>Franklin &amp; Marshall College</i><br/>         Mark Jelavich, <i>Northwest Missouri State University</i><br/>         Philip R. Jones, <i>University of Bath and University of Bristol, U.K.</i><br/>         Tsvetanka Karagyozova, <i>Lawrence University</i><br/>         Hugh Kelley, <i>Indiana University</i><br/>         Michael Kevane, <i>Santa Clara University</i><br/>         Maureen Kilkenny, <i>University of Nevada</i><br/>         Hyeongwoo Kim, <i>Auburn University</i><br/>         Stephen A. King, <i>San Diego State University, Imperial Valley</i><br/>         Faik Koray, <i>Louisiana State University</i><br/>         Corinne Krupp, <i>Duke University</i><br/>         Bun Song Lee, <i>University of Nebraska, Omaha</i><br/>         Daniel Lee, <i>Shippensburg University</i><br/>         Francis A. Lees, <i>St. Johns University</i><br/>         James Jerome Lim, <i>World Bank Group</i><br/>         Rodney Ludema, <i>Georgetown University</i><br/>         A. G. Malliaris, <i>Quinlan School of Business, Loyola University Chicago</i><br/>         Stephen V. Marks, <i>Pomona College</i><br/>         Michael L. McPherson, <i>University of North Texas</i><br/>         Marcel Mérette, <i>University of Ottawa</i><br/>         Shannon Mitchell, <i>Virginia Commonwealth University</i><br/>         Kaz Miyagiwa, <i>Emory University</i><br/>         Shahriar Mostashari, <i>Campbell University</i></p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

- Shannon Mudd, *Ursinus College*  
 Marc-Andreas Muendler, *University of California, San Diego*  
 Ton M. Mulder, *Erasmus University, Rotterdam*  
 Robert G. Murphy, *Boston College*  
 E. Wayne Nafziger, *Kansas State University*  
 Steen Nielsen, *University of Aarhus*  
 Dmitri Nizovtsev, *Washburn University*  
 Terutomo Ozawa, *Colorado State University*  
 Arvind Panagariya, *Columbia University*  
 Nina Pavcnik, *Dartmouth College*  
 Lourenco Paz, *Baylor University*  
 Iordanis Petsas, *University of Scranton*  
 Van Pham, *Salem State University*  
 Gina Pieters, *Trinity University*  
 Thitima Puttitanun, *San Diego State University*  
 Peter Rangazas, *Indiana University-Purdue University Indianapolis*  
 James E. Rauch, *University of California, San Diego*  
 Michael Ryan, *Western Michigan University*  
 Donald Schilling, *University of Missouri, Columbia*  
 Patricia Higino Schneider, *Mount Holyoke College*  
 Ronald M. Schramm, *Columbia University*
- Craig Schulman, *Texas A&M University*  
 Yochanan Shachmurove, *University of Pennsylvania*  
 Margaret Simpson, *The College of William and Mary*  
 Enrico Spolaore, *Tufts University*  
 Robert Staiger, *University of Wisconsin-Madison*  
 Jeffrey Steagall, *University of North Florida*  
 Robert M. Stern, *University of Michigan*  
 Abdulhamid Sukar, *Cameron University*  
 Rebecca Taylor, *University of Portsmouth, U.K.*  
 Scott Taylor, *University of British Columbia*  
 Aileen Thompson, *Carleton University*  
 Sarah Tinkler, *Portland State University*  
 Arja H. Turunen-Red, *University of New Orleans*  
 Dick vander Wal, *Free University of Amsterdam*  
 Gerald Willmann, *University of Kiel*  
 Susan Wolcott, *State University of New York, Binghamton*  
 Rossitza Wooster, *California State University, Sacramento*  
 Bruce Wydick, *University of San Francisco*  
 Jiawen Yang, *The George Washington University*  
 Kevin H. Zhang, *Illinois State University*

Although we have not been able to make each and every suggested change, we found reviewers' observations invaluable in revising the book. Obviously, we bear sole responsibility for its remaining shortcomings.

Paul R. Krugman  
 Maurice Obstfeld  
 Marc J. Melitz  
 September 2021

## Global Edition Acknowledgments

We want to thank the following instructors for their work on the Global Edition:

- Viktorija Cohen, *Vilnius University, Lithuania*  
 Florian Kaulich, *Vienna University of Economics and Business, Austria*  
 Archontis Pantsios, *Liverpool Hope University, the United Kingdom*  
 Gabriela Sterian, *Romanian-American University, Romania*  
 Patrick Terroir, *Sciences Po, France*  
 Valentin Cojanu, *The Bucharest Academy of Economic Studies, Romania*  
 Michael Graff, *KOF Swiss Economic Institute, Switzerland*

- Kwan Wai KO, *The Chinese University of Hong Kong, Hong Kong*  
 Carsten Küchler, *Lucerne School of Business, Switzerland*  
 Mario Pezzino, *The University of Manchester, the United Kingdom*  
 Natalie Chen, *Warwick University, the United Kingdom*  
 Zheng Cao, *Aston University, the United Kingdom*



## INTRODUCTION

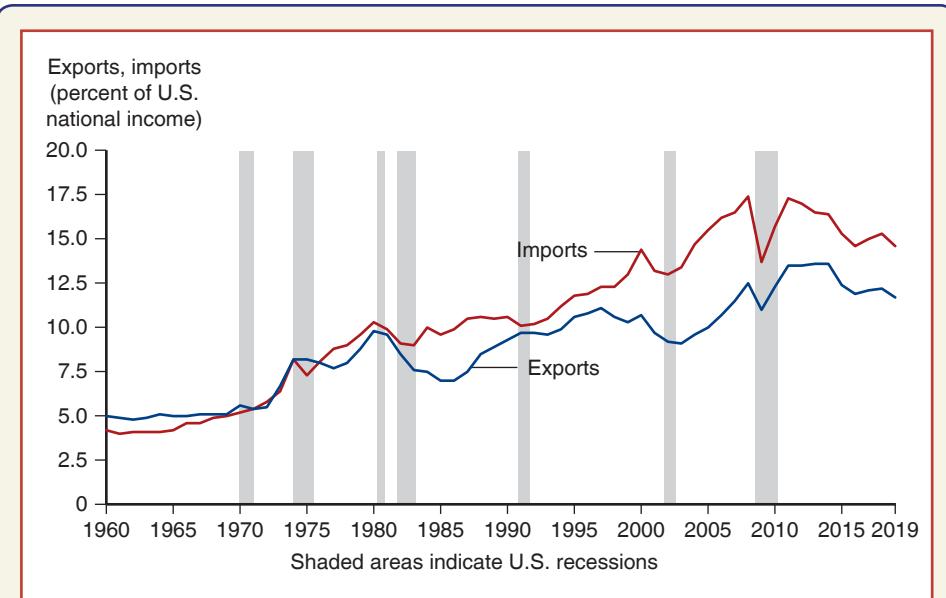
You could say that the study of international trade and finance is where the discipline of economics as we know it began. Historians of economic thought often describe the essay “Of the Balance of Trade” by the Scottish philosopher David Hume as the first real exposition of an economic model. Hume published his essay in 1758, almost 20 years before his friend Adam Smith published *The Wealth of Nations*. And the debates over British trade policy in the early 19th century did much to convert economics from a discursive, informal field to the model-oriented subject it has been ever since.

Yet the study of international economics has never been as important as it is now. In the early 21st century, nations are more closely linked than ever before through trade in goods and services, flows of money, and investment in each other’s economies. And the global economy created by these linkages is a turbulent place: Both policy makers and business leaders in every country must now pay attention to what are sometimes rapidly changing economic fortunes halfway around the world.

A look at some basic trade statistics gives us a sense of the unprecedented importance of international economic relations. Figure 1-1 shows the levels of U.S. exports and imports as shares of gross domestic product from 1960 to 2019. The most obvious feature of the figure is the long-term upward trend in both shares: International trade has roughly tripled in importance compared with the economy as a whole.

Almost as obvious is that, while both imports and exports have increased, imports have grown more, leading to a large excess of imports over exports. How is the United States able to pay for all those imported goods? The answer is that the money is supplied by large inflows of capital—money invested by foreigners willing to take a stake in the U.S. economy. Inflows of capital on that scale would once have been inconceivable; now they are taken for granted. And so the gap between imports and exports is an indicator of another aspect of growing international linkages—in this case the growing linkages between national capital markets.

Finally, notice that both imports and exports plunged temporarily in 2009, during the global economic crisis that began in 2008; they fell again in 2020, during the COVID-19 pandemic. These declines are reminders of the close links between world trade and the overall state of the world economy.

**FIGURE 1-1**

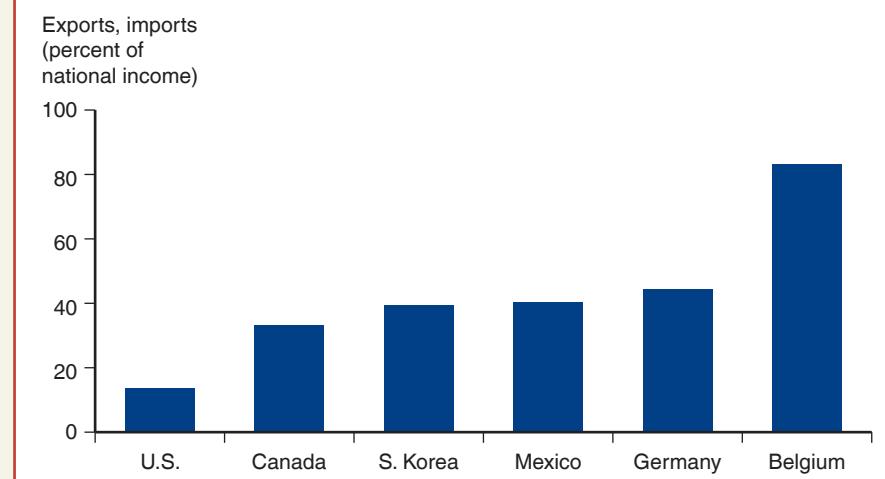
**Exports and Imports as a Percentage of U.S. National Income  
(Shaded areas indicate U.S. recessions.)**

Both imports and exports have risen as a share of the U.S. economy, but imports have risen more.

**Source:** U.S. Bureau of Economic Analysis. [research.stlouisfed.org](http://research.stlouisfed.org)

If international economic relations have become crucial to the United States, they are even more crucial to other nations. Figure 1-2 shows the average of imports and exports as a share of GDP for a sample of countries. The United States, by virtue of its size and the diversity of its resources, relies less on international trade than almost any other country.

This text introduces the main concepts and methods of international economics and illustrates them with applications drawn from the real world. Much of the text is devoted to old ideas that are still as valid as ever: The 19th-century trade theory of David Ricardo and even the 18th-century monetary analysis of David Hume remain highly relevant to the 21st-century world economy. At the same time, we have made a special effort to bring the analysis up to date. In particular, the economic crisis that began in 2007 threw up major new challenges for the global economy. Economists were able to apply existing analyses to some of these challenges, but they were also forced to rethink some important concepts. Furthermore, new approaches have emerged to old questions, such as the impacts of changes in monetary and fiscal policy. We have attempted to convey the key ideas that have emerged in recent research while stressing the continuing usefulness of old ideas.

**FIGURE 1-2****Average of Exports and Imports as Percentages of National Income in 2018**

International trade is even more important to most other countries than it is to the United States.

**Source:** World Bank.

## LEARNING GOALS

After reading this chapter, you will be able to:

- Distinguish between international and domestic economic issues.
- Explain why seven themes recur in international economics and discuss their significance.
- Distinguish between the trade and monetary aspects of international economics.

## What Is International Economics About?

International economics uses the same fundamental methods of analysis as other branches of economics because the motives and behavior of individuals are the same in international trade as they are in domestic transactions. Gourmet food shops in Florida sell coffee beans from both Mexico and Hawaii; the sequence of events that brought those beans to the shop is not very different, and the imported beans traveled a much shorter distance than the beans shipped within the United States! Yet international economics involves new and different concerns because international trade and investment occur between independent nations. The United States and Mexico are sovereign states; Florida and Hawaii are not. Mexico's coffee shipments to Florida could be disrupted if the U.S. government imposed a quota that limits imports; Mexican coffee could suddenly become cheaper to U.S. buyers if the peso were to fall in value

against the dollar. By contrast, neither of those events can happen in commerce within the United States because the Constitution forbids restraints on interstate trade and all U.S. states use the same currency.

The subject matter of international economics, then, consists of issues raised by the special problems of economic interaction between sovereign states. Seven themes recur throughout the study of international economics: (1) the gains from trade, (2) the pattern of trade, (3) protectionism, (4) the balance of payments, (5) exchange rate determination, (6) international policy coordination, and (7) the international capital market.

## The Gains from Trade

Everybody knows that some international trade is beneficial—for example, nobody thinks that Norway should grow its own oranges. Many people are skeptical, however, about the benefits of trading for goods that a country could produce for itself. Shouldn't Americans buy American goods whenever possible to help create jobs in the United States?

Probably the most important single insight in all of international economics is that there are *gains from trade*—that is, when countries sell goods and services to each other, this exchange is almost always to their mutual benefit. The range of circumstances under which international trade is beneficial is much wider than most people imagine. For example, it is a common misconception that trade is harmful if large disparities exist between countries in productivity or wages. On one side, businesspeople in less technologically advanced countries, such as India, often worry that opening their economies to international trade will lead to disaster because their industries won't be able to compete. On the other side, people in technologically advanced nations where workers earn high wages often fear that trading with less advanced, lower-wage countries will drag their standard of living down—one presidential candidate memorably warned of a “giant sucking sound” if the United States were to conclude a free trade agreement with Mexico.

Yet the first model this text presents of the causes of trade (Chapter 3) demonstrates that two countries can trade to their mutual benefit even when one of them is more efficient than the other at producing everything and when producers in the less-efficient country can compete only by paying lower wages. We'll also see that trade provides benefits by allowing countries to export goods whose production makes relatively heavy use of resources that are locally abundant while importing goods whose production makes heavy use of resources that are locally scarce (Chapter 5). International trade also allows countries to specialize in producing narrower ranges of goods, giving them greater efficiencies of large-scale production.

Nor are the benefits of international trade limited to trade in tangible goods. International migration and international borrowing and lending are also forms of mutually beneficial trade—the first a trade of labor for goods and services (Chapter 4), the second a trade of current goods for the promise of future goods (Chapter 6). Finally, international exchanges of risky assets such as stocks and bonds can benefit all countries by allowing each country to diversify its wealth and reduce the variability of its income (Chapter 20). These invisible forms of trade yield gains as real as the trade that puts fresh fruit from Latin America in Toronto markets in February.

Although nations generally gain from international trade, it is quite possible that international trade may hurt particular groups *within* nations—in other words, that international trade will have strong effects on the distribution of income. The effects of

trade on income distribution have long been a concern of international trade theorists who have pointed out that:

International trade can adversely affect the owners of resources that are “specific” to industries that compete with imports, that is, cannot find alternative employment in other industries. Examples would include specialized machinery, such as power looms made less valuable by textile imports, and workers with specialized skills, like fishermen who find the value of their catch reduced by imported seafood.

Trade can also alter the distribution of income between broad groups, such as workers and the owners of capital.

These concerns have moved from the classroom into the center of real-world policy debate as it has become increasingly clear that the real wages of less-skilled workers in the United States have been declining—even though the country as a whole is continuing to grow richer. Many commentators attribute this development to growing international trade, especially the rapidly growing exports of manufactured goods from low-wage countries. Assessing this claim has become an important task for international economists and is a major theme of Chapters 4 through 6.

## The Pattern of Trade

Economists cannot discuss the effects of international trade or recommend changes in government policies toward trade with any confidence unless they know their theory is good enough to explain the international trade that is actually observed. As a result, attempts to explain the pattern of international trade—who sells what to whom—have been a major preoccupation of international economists.

Some aspects of the pattern of trade are easy to understand. Climate and resources clearly explain why Brazil exports coffee and Saudi Arabia exports oil. Much of the pattern of trade is more subtle, however. Why does Japan export automobiles while the United States exports aircraft? In the early 19th century, English economist David Ricardo offered an explanation of trade in terms of international differences in labor productivity, an explanation that remains a powerful insight (Chapter 3). In the 20th century, however, alternative explanations also were proposed. One of the most influential explanations links trade patterns to an interaction between the relative supplies of national resources such as capital, labor, and land on one side and the relative use of these factors in the production of different goods on the other. We present this theory in Chapter 5. We then discuss how this basic model must be extended in order to generate accurate empirical predictions for the volume and pattern of trade. Also, some international economists have proposed theories that suggest a substantial random component, along with economies of scale, in the pattern of international trade, theories that are developed in Chapters 7 and 8.

## How Much Trade?

If the idea of gains from trade is the most important theoretical concept in international economics, the seemingly eternal debate over how much trade to allow is its most important policy theme. Since the emergence of modern nation-states in the 16th century, governments have worried about the effect of international competition on the prosperity of domestic industries and have tried either to shield industries from foreign competition by placing limits on imports or to help them in world competition by subsidizing exports. The single most consistent mission of international economics has been to analyze the effects of these so-called protectionist policies—and

usually, though not always, to criticize protectionism and show the advantages of freer international trade.

The debate over how much trade to allow took a new direction in the 1990s. After World War II the advanced democracies, led by the United States, pursued a broad policy of removing barriers to international trade; this policy reflected the view that free trade was a force not only for prosperity but also for promoting world peace. In the first half of the 1990s, several major free trade agreements were negotiated. The most notable were the North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA) between the United States, Canada, and Mexico, approved in 1993, and the so-called Uruguay Round agreement, which established the World Trade Organization in 1994.

Since then, however, there has been considerable backlash against “globalization.” In 2016, Britain shocked the political establishment by voting to leave the European Union, which guarantees free movement of goods and people among its members. In that same year, claims that competition from imports and unfair trade deals have cost jobs played an important role in the U.S. presidential campaign. One consequence of this anti-globalization backlash is that free trade advocates are under greater pressure than ever before to find ways to explain their views.

As befits both the historical importance and the current relevance of the protectionist issue, roughly a quarter of this text is devoted to this subject. Over the years, international economists have developed a simple yet powerful analytical framework for determining the effects of government policies that affect international trade. This framework helps predict the effects of trade policies, while also allowing for cost-benefit analysis and defining criteria for determining when government intervention is good for the economy. We present this framework in Chapters 9 and 10 and use it to discuss a number of policy issues in those chapters and in Chapters 11 and 12.

In the real world, however, governments do not necessarily do what the cost-benefit analysis of economists tells them they should. This does not mean that analysis is useless. Economic analysis can help make sense of the politics of international trade policy by showing who benefits and who loses from such government actions as quotas on imports and subsidies to exports. The key insight of this analysis is that conflicts of interest *within* nations are usually more important in determining trade policy than conflicts of interest *between* nations. Chapters 4 and 5 show that trade usually has very strong effects on income distribution within countries, whereas Chapters 10 through 12 reveal that the relative power of different interest groups within countries, rather than some measure of overall national interest, is often the main determining factor in government policies toward international trade.

## Balance of Payments

In 1998, both China and South Korea ran large trade surpluses of about \$40 billion each. In China’s case, the trade surplus was not out of the ordinary—the country had been running large surpluses for several years, prompting complaints from other countries, including the United States, that China was not playing by the rules. So is it good to run a trade surplus and bad to run a trade deficit? Not according to the South Koreans: Their trade surplus was forced on them by an economic and financial crisis, and they bitterly resented the necessity of running that surplus.

This comparison highlights the fact that a country’s *balance of payments* must be placed in the context of an economic analysis to understand what it means. It emerges in a variety of specific contexts: in discussing foreign direct investment by multinational corporations (Chapter 8), in relating international transactions to national income accounting (Chapter 13), and in discussing virtually every aspect of international

monetary policy (Chapters 17 through 22). Like the problem of protectionism, the balance of payments has become a central issue for the United States because the nation has run huge trade deficits every year since 1982.

## Exchange Rate Determination

In September 2010, Brazil's finance minister, Guido Mantegna, made headlines by declaring that the world was “in the midst of an international currency war.” The occasion for his remarks was a sharp rise in the value of Brazil's currency, the *real*, which was worth less than 45 cents at the beginning of 2009 but had risen to almost 60 cents when he spoke (and would rise to 65 cents over the next few months). Mantegna accused wealthy countries—the United States in particular—of engineering this rise, which was devastating to Brazilian exporters. However, the surge in the *real* proved short-lived; the currency began dropping in mid-2011, and by the summer of 2013 it was back down to only 45 cents.

A key difference between international economics and other areas of economics is that countries usually have their own currencies—the euro, which is shared by a number of European countries, being the exception that proves the rule. And as the example of the *real* illustrates, the relative values of currencies can change over time, sometimes drastically.

For historical reasons, the study of exchange rate determination is a relatively new part of international economics. For much of modern economic history, exchange rates were fixed by government action rather than determined in the marketplace. Before World War I, the values of the world's major currencies were fixed in terms of gold; for a generation after World War II, the values of most currencies were fixed in terms of the U.S. dollar. The analysis of international monetary systems that fix exchange rates remains an important subject. Chapter 18 is devoted to the working of fixed-rate systems, Chapter 19 to the historical performance of alternative exchange-rate systems, and Chapter 21 to the economics of currency areas such as the European monetary union. For the time being, however, some of the world's most important exchange rates fluctuate minute by minute and the role of changing exchange rates remains at the center of the international economics story. Chapters 14 through 17 focus on the modern theory of floating exchange rates.

## International Policy Coordination

The international economy comprises sovereign nations, each free to choose its own economic policies. Unfortunately, in an integrated world economy, one country's economic policies usually affect other countries as well. For example, when Germany's Bundesbank raised interest rates in 1990—a step it took to control the possible inflationary impact of the reunification of West and East Germany—it helped precipitate a recession in the rest of Western Europe. Differences in goals among countries often lead to conflicts of interest. Even when countries have similar goals, they may suffer losses if they fail to coordinate their policies. A fundamental problem in international economics is determining how to produce an acceptable degree of harmony among the international trade and monetary policies of different countries in the absence of a world government that tells countries what to do.

For almost 70 years, international trade policies have been governed by an international agreement known as the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT). Since 1994, trade rules have been enforced by an international organization, the World Trade Organization, that can tell countries, including the United States, that their policies

violate prior agreements. We discuss the rationale for this system in Chapter 9 and look at whether the current rules of the game for international trade in the world economy can or should survive.

While cooperation on international trade policies is a well-established tradition, coordination of international macroeconomic policies is a newer and more uncertain topic. Attempts to formulate principles for international macroeconomic coordination date to the 1980s and 1990s and remain controversial to this day. Nonetheless, attempts at international macroeconomic coordination are occurring with growing frequency in the real world. Both the theory of international macroeconomic coordination and the developing experience are reviewed in Chapter 19.

## The International Capital Market

In 2007, investors who had bought U.S. mortgage-backed securities—claims on the income from large pools of home mortgages—received a rude shock: As home prices began to fall, mortgage defaults soared, and investments they had been assured were safe turned out to be highly risky. Since many of these claims were owned by financial institutions, the housing bust soon turned into a banking crisis. And here's the thing: It wasn't just a U.S. banking crisis because banks in other countries, especially in Europe, had also bought many of these securities.

The story didn't end there: Europe soon had its own housing bust. And while the bust mainly took place in southern Europe, it soon became apparent that many northern European banks—such as German banks that had lent money to their Spanish counterparts—were also very exposed to the financial consequences.

In any sophisticated economy, there is an extensive capital market: a set of arrangements by which individuals and firms exchange money now for promises to pay in the future. The growing importance of international trade since the 1960s has been accompanied by a growth in the *international capital market*, which links the capital markets of individual countries. Thus in the 1970s, oil-rich Middle Eastern nations placed their oil revenues in banks in London or New York, and these banks in turn lent money to governments and corporations in Asia and Latin America. During the 1980s, Japan converted much of the money it earned from its booming exports into investments in the United States, including the establishment of a growing number of U.S. subsidiaries of Japanese corporations. Nowadays, China is funneling its own export earnings into a range of foreign assets, including dollars that its government holds as international reserves.

International capital markets differ in important ways from domestic capital markets. They must cope with special regulations that many countries impose on foreign investment; they also sometimes offer opportunities to evade regulations placed on domestic markets. Since the 1960s, huge international capital markets have arisen, most notably the remarkable London Eurodollar market, in which billions of dollars are exchanged each day without ever touching the United States.

Some special risks are associated with international capital markets. One risk is currency fluctuations: If the euro falls against the dollar, U.S. investors who bought euro bonds suffer a capital loss. Another risk is national default: A nation may simply refuse to pay its debts (perhaps because it cannot), and there may be no effective way for its creditors to bring it to court. Fears of default by highly indebted European nations have been a major concern in recent years.

The growing importance of international capital markets and their new problems demand greater attention than ever before. This text devotes two chapters to issues

arising from international capital markets: one on the functioning of global asset markets (Chapter 20) and one on foreign borrowing by developing countries (Chapter 22).

## International Economics: Trade and Money

The economics of the international economy can be divided into two broad subfields: the study of *international trade* and the study of *international money*. International trade analysis focuses primarily on the *real* transactions in the international economy, that is, transactions involving a physical movement of goods or a tangible commitment of economic resources. International monetary analysis focuses on the *monetary* side of the international economy, that is, on financial transactions such as foreign purchases of U.S. dollars. An example of an international trade issue is the conflict between the United States and Europe over Europe's subsidized exports of agricultural products; an example of an international monetary issue is the dispute over whether the foreign exchange value of the dollar should be allowed to float freely or be stabilized by government action.

In the real world, there is no simple dividing line between trade and monetary issues. Most international trade involves monetary transactions, while, as the examples in this chapter already suggest, many monetary events have important consequences for trade. Nonetheless, the distinction between international trade and international money is useful. The first half of this text covers international trade issues. Part One (Chapters 2 through 8) develops the analytical theory of international trade, and Part Two (Chapters 9 through 12) applies trade theory to the analysis of government policies toward trade. The second half of the text is devoted to international monetary issues. Part Three (Chapters 13 through 18) develops international monetary theory, and Part Four (Chapters 19 through 22) applies this analysis to international monetary policy.



## CHAPTER 2

# WORLD TRADE: AN OVERVIEW

In 2019, the world as a whole produced goods and services worth about \$88 trillion at current prices. Of this total, about 30 percent was sold across national borders: World trade in goods and services was almost \$25 trillion. That's a whole lot of exporting and importing.

In later chapters, we'll analyze why countries sell much of what they produce to other countries and why they purchase much of what they consume from other countries. We'll also examine the benefits and costs of international trade and the motivations for and effects of government policies that restrict or encourage trade.

Before we get to all that, however, let's begin by describing who trades with whom. An empirical relationship known as the *gravity model* helps to make sense of the value of trade between any pair of countries and sheds light on the impediments that continue to limit international trade even in today's global economy.

We'll then turn to the changing structure of world trade. As we'll see, recent decades have been marked by a large increase in the share of world output sold internationally, by a shift in the world's economic center of gravity toward Asia, and by major changes in the types of goods that make up that trade.

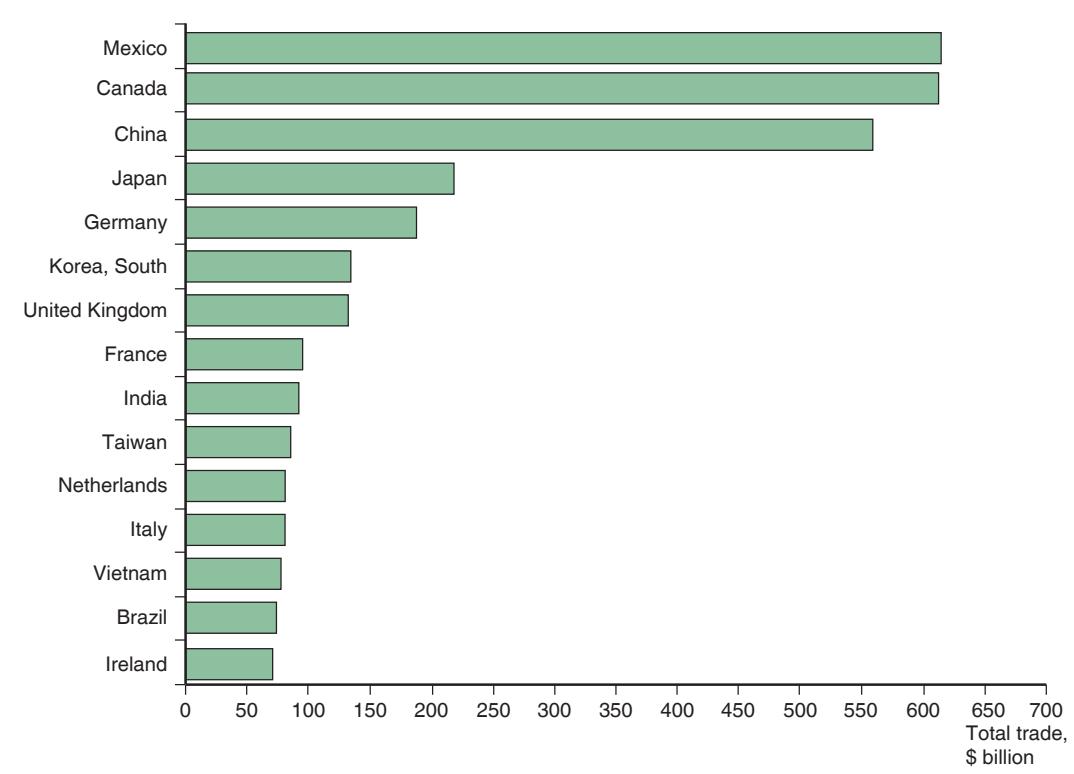
### LEARNING GOALS

After reading this chapter, you will be able to:

- Describe how the value of trade between any two countries depends on the size of these countries' economies and explain the reasons for that relationship.
- Discuss how distance and borders reduce trade.
- Describe how the share of international production that is traded has fluctuated over time and why there have been two ages of globalization.
- Explain how the mix of goods and services that are traded internationally has changed over time.

### Who Trades with Whom?

Figure 2-1 shows the total value of trade in goods—exports plus imports—between the United States and its top 15 trading partners in 2019. (Data on trade in services are less well broken down by trading partner; we'll talk about the rising importance of trade in services, and the issues raised by that trade, later in this chapter.) Taken together, these 15 countries accounted for 75 percent of the value of U.S. trade in that year.

**FIGURE 2-1****Total U.S. Trade with Major Partners, 2019**

U.S. trade—measured as the sum of imports and exports—is mostly with 15 major partners.

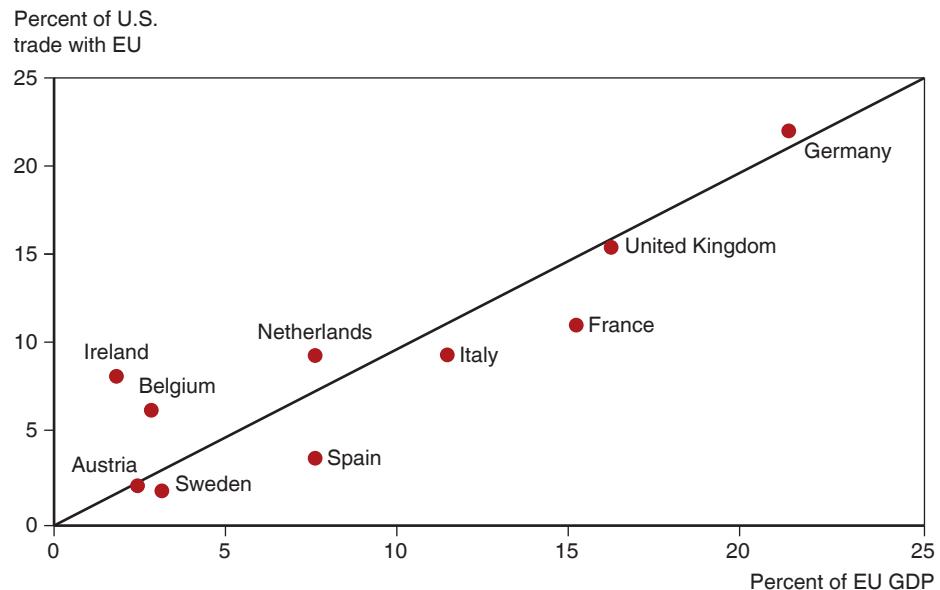
**Source:** U.S. Department of Commerce.

Why did the United States trade so much with these countries? Let's look at the factors that, in practice, determine who trades with whom.

### Size Matters: The Gravity Model

Three of the top 15 U.S. trading partners are European nations: Germany, the United Kingdom, and France. Why does the United States trade more heavily with these three European countries than with others? The answer is that these are the three largest European economies. That is, they have the highest values of **gross domestic product (GDP)**, which measures the total value of all goods and services produced in an economy. There is a strong empirical relationship between the size of a country's economy and the volume of both its imports and its exports.

Figure 2-2 illustrates this relationship by showing the correspondence between the size of different European economies—specifically, America's 10 most important Western European trading partners in 2019—and those countries' trade with the United States in that year. On the horizontal axis is each country's GDP, expressed as a percentage of the total GDP of the European Union; on the vertical axis is each country's



**FIGURE 2-2**  
**The Size of European Economies and the Value of Their Trade with the United States**

Source: U.S. Department of Commerce, European Commission.

share of the total trade of the United States with the EU. As you can see, the scatter of points is clustered around the dotted 45-degree line—that is, each country's share of U.S. trade with Europe was roughly equal to that country's share of Western European GDP. Germany has a large economy, accounting for 20 percent of Western European GDP; it also accounts for 24 percent of U.S. trade with the region. Sweden has a much smaller economy, accounting for only 3.2 percent of European GDP; correspondingly, it accounts for only 2.3 percent of U.S.–Europe trade.

Looking at world trade as a whole, economists have found that an equation of the following form predicts the volume of trade between any two countries fairly accurately,

$$T_{ij} = A \times Y_i \times Y_j / D_{ij}, \quad (2-1)$$

where  $A$  is a constant term,  $T_{ij}$  is the value of trade between country  $i$  and country  $j$ ,  $Y_i$  is country  $i$ 's GDP,  $Y_j$  is country  $j$ 's GDP, and  $D_{ij}$  is the distance between the two countries. That is, the value of trade between any two countries is proportional, other things equal, to the product of the two countries' GDPs and diminishes with the distance between the two countries.

An equation such as (2-1) is known as a **gravity model** of world trade. The reason for the name is the analogy to Newton's law of gravity: Just as the gravitational attraction between any two objects is proportional to the product of their masses and diminishes

with distance, the trade between any two countries is, other things equal, proportional to the product of their GDPs and diminishes with distance.

Economists often estimate a somewhat more general gravity model of the following form:

$$T_{ij} = A \times Y_i^a \times Y_j^b / D_{ij}^c. \quad (2-2)$$

This equation says that the three things that determine the volume of trade between two countries are the size of the two countries' GDPs and the distance between the countries, without specifically assuming that trade is proportional to the product of the two GDPs and inversely proportional to distance. Instead,  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$  are chosen to fit the actual data as closely as possible. If  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$  were all equal to 1, equation (2-2) would be the same as equation (2-1). In fact, estimates often find that (2-1) is a pretty good approximation.

**Why does the gravity model work?** Broadly speaking, large economies tend to spend large amounts on imports because they have large incomes. They also tend to attract large shares of other countries' spending because they produce a wide range of products. So, other things equal, the trade between any two economies is larger—the larger is *either* economy.

What other things *aren't* equal? As we have already noted, in practice countries spend much or most of their income at home. The United States and the European Union each account for about 25 percent of the world's GDP, but each attracts only about 2 percent of the other's spending. To make sense of actual trade flows, we need to consider the factors limiting international trade. Before we get there, however, let's look at an important reason why the gravity model is useful.

### Using the Gravity Model: Looking for Anomalies

It's clear from Figure 2-2 that a gravity model fits the data on U.S. trade with European countries pretty well—but not perfectly. In fact, one of the principal uses of gravity models is that they help us to identify anomalies in trade. Indeed, when trade between two countries is either much more or much less than a gravity model predicts, economists search for the explanation.

Looking again at Figure 2-2, we see that the Netherlands, Belgium, and Ireland trade considerably more with the United States than a gravity model would have predicted. Why might this be the case?

For Ireland, the answer lies partly in cultural affinity: Not only does Ireland share a language with the United States, but tens of millions of Americans are descended from Irish immigrants. Beyond this consideration, Ireland plays a special role as host to many U.S.-based corporations; we'll discuss the role of such *multinational corporations* in Chapter 8.

In the case of both the Netherlands and Belgium, geography and transport costs probably explain their large trade with the United States. Both countries are located near the mouth of the Rhine, Western Europe's longest river, which runs past the Ruhr, Germany's industrial heartland. So the Netherlands and Belgium have traditionally been the point of entry to much of northwestern Europe; Rotterdam in the Netherlands is the most important port in Europe, as measured by the tonnage handled, and Antwerp in Belgium ranks second. The large trade of Belgium and the Netherlands suggests, in other words, an important role of transport costs and geography in determining the volume of trade. The importance of these factors is clear when we turn to a broader example of trade data.

## Impediments to Trade: Distance, Barriers, and Borders

Figure 2-3 shows the same data as Figure 2-2—U.S. trade as a percentage of total trade with Western Europe versus GDP as a percentage of the region's total GDP—but adds two more countries: Canada and Mexico. As you can see, the two neighbors of the United States do a lot more trade with the United States than European economies of equal size. In fact, the Canadian and Mexican economies combined are only about as big as the economy of France, but they do 12 times as much trade with the United States.

Why does the United States do so much more trade with its North American neighbors than with its European partners? One main reason is the simple fact that Canada and Mexico are much closer.

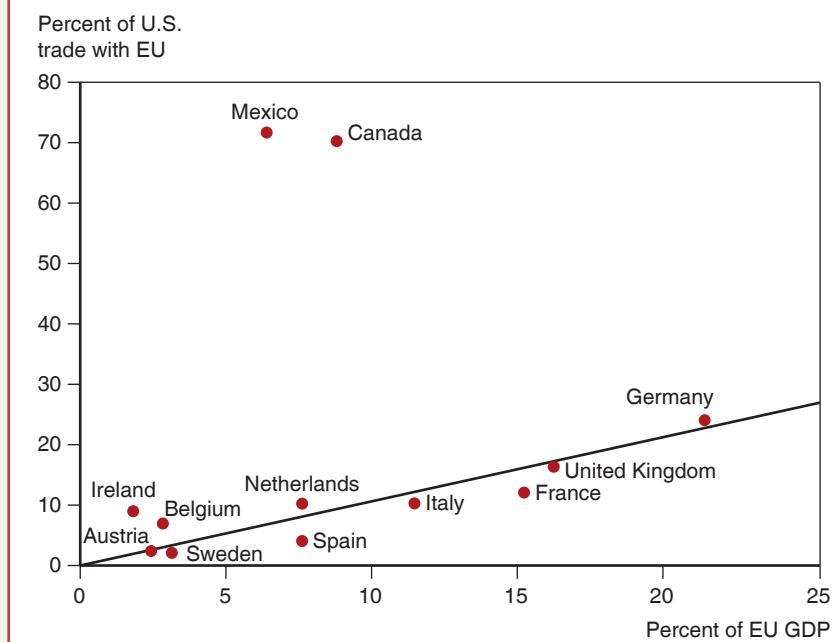
All estimated gravity models show a strong negative effect of distance on international trade; typical estimates say that a 1 percent increase in the distance between two countries is associated with a fall of 0.7 to 1 percent in the trade between those countries. This drop partly reflects increased costs of transporting goods and services. Economists also believe that less tangible factors play a crucial role: Trade tends to be intense when countries have close personal contact, and this contact tends to diminish when distances are large. For example, it's easy for a U.S. sales representative to pay a quick visit to Toronto, but it's a much bigger project for that representative to go to Paris. Unless the company is based on the West Coast, it's an even bigger project to visit Tokyo.

In addition to being U.S. neighbors, Canada and Mexico have long been part of a **trade agreement** with the United States, the North American Free Trade Agreement, or NAFTA, which was replaced in 2020 with a slightly modified agreement, the U.S.-Mexico-Canada agreement, or USMCA. This agreement ensures that most goods shipped among the three countries are not subject to tariffs or other barriers to international trade. We'll analyze the effects of barriers to international trade in Chapters 8 and 9.

**FIGURE 2-3**  
**Economic Size and Trade with the United States**

The United States does markedly more trade with its neighbors than it does with European economies of the same size.

**Source:** U.S. Department of Commerce, European Commission.



and the role of trade agreements in Chapter 10. For now, let's notice that economists use gravity models as a way of assessing the impact of trade agreements on actual international trade: If a trade agreement is effective, it should lead to significantly more trade among its partners than one would otherwise predict given their GDPs and distances from one another.

It's important to note, however, that although trade agreements often end all formal barriers to trade between countries, they rarely make national borders irrelevant. Even when most goods and services shipped across a national border pay no tariffs and face few legal restrictions, there is much more trade between regions of the same country than between equivalently situated regions in different countries. The Canadian–U.S. border is a case in point. The two countries are part of a free trade agreement (indeed, there was a Canadian–U.S. free trade agreement even before NAFTA); most Canadians speak English; and the citizens of either country are free to cross the border with a minimum of formalities. Yet data on the trade of individual Canadian provinces both with each other and with U.S. states show that, other things equal, there is much more trade between provinces than between provinces and U.S. states.

Table 2-1 illustrates the extent of the difference. It shows the total trade (exports plus imports) of the Canadian province of British Columbia, just north of the state of Washington, with other Canadian provinces and with U.S. states, measured as a percentage of each province or state's GDP. Figure 2-4 shows the location of these provinces and states. Each Canadian province is paired with a U.S. state that is roughly the same distance from British Columbia: Washington State and Alberta both border British Columbia; Ontario and Ohio are both in the Midwest; and so on. With the exception of trade with the far eastern Canadian province of New Brunswick, intra-Canadian trade drops off steadily with distance. But in each case, the trade between British Columbia and a Canadian province is much larger than trade with an equally distant U.S. state.

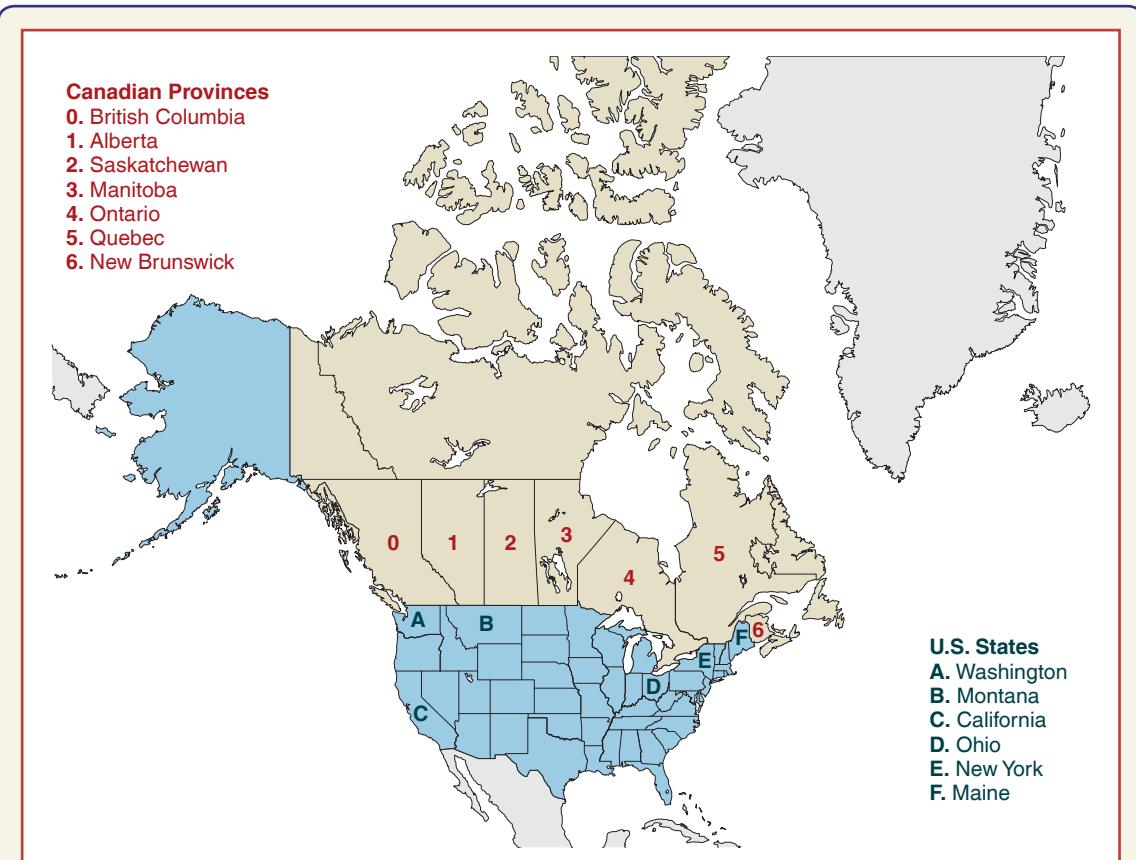
Economists have used data like those shown in Table 2-1, together with estimates of the effect of distance in gravity models, to calculate that the Canadian–U.S. border, although it is one of the most open borders in the world, has as much effect in deterring trade as if the countries were between 1,500 and 2,500 miles apart.

Why do borders have such a large negative effect on trade? That is a topic of ongoing research. Chapter 21 describes one recent focus of that research: an effort to determine how much effect the existence of separate national currencies has on international trade in goods and services.

**TABLE 2-1 Trade with British Columbia, as Percent of GDP, 2009**

Canadian Province	Trade as Percent of GDP	Trade as Percent of GDP	U.S. State at Similar Distance from British Columbia
Alberta	6.9	2.6	Washington
Saskatchewan	2.4	1.0	Montana
Manitoba	2.0	0.3	California
Ontario	1.9	0.2	Ohio
Quebec	1.4	0.1	New York
New Brunswick	2.3	0.2	Maine

**Source:** Statistics Canada, U.S. Department of Commerce.



**FIGURE 2-4**  
**Canadian Provinces and U.S. States That Trade with British Columbia**

Source: Statistics Canada, U.S. Department of Commerce.

## The Changing Pattern of World Trade

World trade is a moving target. The direction and composition of world trade is quite different today from what it was a generation ago and even more different from what it was a century ago. Let's look at some of the main trends.

### Has the World Gotten Smaller?

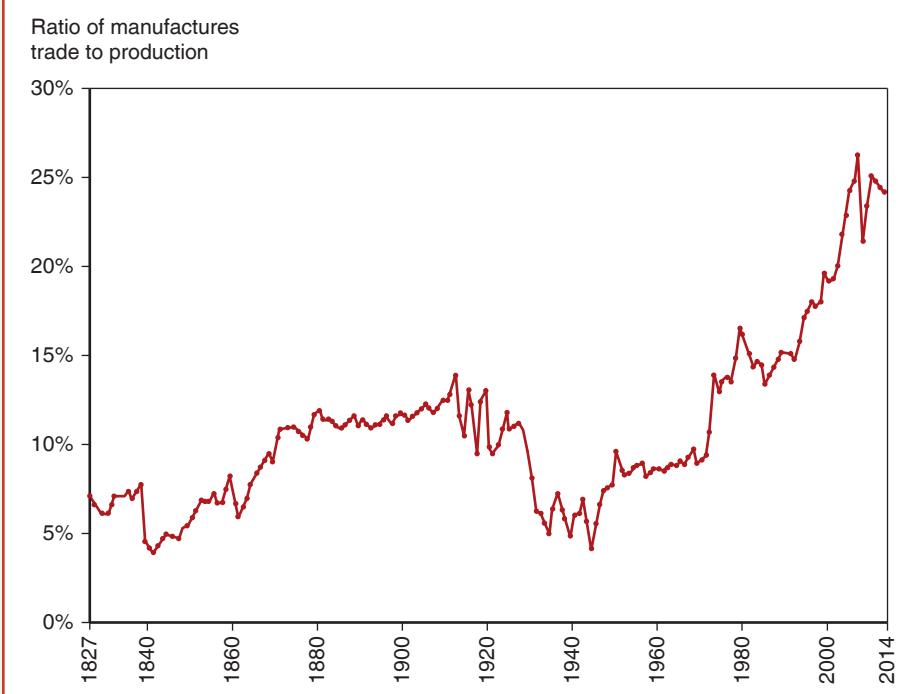
In popular discussions of the world economy, one often encounters statements that modern transportation and communications have abolished distance, so that the world has become a small place. There's clearly some truth to these statements: The Internet makes instant and almost free communication possible between people thousands of miles apart, while jet transport allows quick physical access to all parts of the globe. On the other hand, gravity models continue to show a strong negative relationship between distance and international trade. But have such effects grown weaker over time? Has the progress of transportation and communication made the world smaller?

The answer is yes—but history also shows that political forces can outweigh the effects of technology. The world got smaller between 1840 and 1914, but it got bigger again for much of the 20th century.

Economic historians tell us that a global economy, with strong economic linkages between even distant nations, is not new. In fact, there have been two great waves of globalization with the first wave relying not on jets and the Internet but on railroads, steamships, and the telegraph. In 1919, the great economist John Maynard Keynes described the results of that surge of globalization:

What an extraordinary episode in the economic progress of man that age was which came to an end in August 1914! . . . The inhabitant of London could order by telephone, sipping his morning tea in bed, the various products of the whole earth, in such quantity as he might see fit, and reasonably expect their early delivery upon his doorstep.

Notice, however, Keynes's statement that the age "came to an end" in 1914. In fact, two subsequent world wars, the Great Depression of the 1930s and widespread protectionism did a great deal to depress world trade. Figure 2-5 shows one measure of international trade: the ratio of world exports to world GDP. World trade grew rapidly



**FIGURE 2-5**

### The Fall and Rise of World Trade

The ratio of world exports to world GDP rose in the decades before World War I but fell sharply in the face of wars and protectionism. It didn't return to 1913 levels until the 1970s but has since reached new heights.

**Source:** Michel Fouquin and Jules Hugot, "Trade Globalisation in the Last Two Centuries," *Voxeu* (September 2016).

in the decades leading up to World War I but then fell significantly. As you can see, by this measure globalization didn't return to pre–World War I levels until the late 1970s.

Since then, however, world trade as a share of world production has risen to unprecedented heights. Much of this rise in the value of world trade reflects the so-called “vertical disintegration” of production: Before a product reaches the hands of consumers, it often goes through many production stages in different countries. For example, consumer electronic products—cell phones, iPhones, and so on—are often assembled in low-wage nations such as China from components produced in higher-wage nations like Japan. Because of the extensive cross-shipping of components, a \$100 product can give rise to \$200 or \$300 worth of international trade flows.

### What Do We Trade?

When countries trade, what do they trade? For the world as a whole, the main answer is that they ship manufactured goods such as automobiles, computers, and clothing to each other. However, trade in mineral products—a category that includes everything from copper ore to coal, but whose main component in the modern world is oil—remains an important part of world trade. Agricultural products such as wheat, soybeans, and cotton are another key piece of the picture, and services of various kinds play an important role and are widely expected to become more important in the future.

Figure 2-6 shows the percentage breakdown of world exports in 2017. Manufactured goods of all kinds make up the lion's share of world trade. Most of the value of mining goods consists of oil and other fuels. Trade in agricultural products, although crucial in feeding many countries, accounts for only a small fraction of the value of modern world trade.

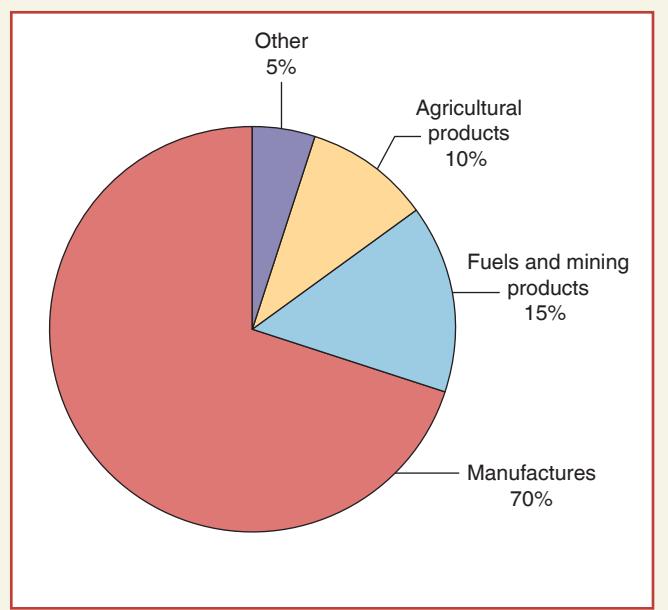
Meanwhile, service exports include traditional transportation fees charged by airlines and shipping companies, insurance fees received from foreigners, and spending by foreign tourists. In recent years, new types of service trade, made possible by modern telecommunications, have drawn a great deal of media attention. The most famous example is the rise of overseas call and help centers: If you call an 800 number for

**FIGURE 2-6**

#### The Composition of World Trade, 2017

Most world trade is in manufactured goods, but minerals—mainly oil—remain important.

Source: World Trade Organization.



information or technical help, the person on the other end of the line may well be in a distant country. (The Indian city of Bangalore is a particularly popular location.) So far, these exotic new forms of trade are still a relatively small part of the overall trade picture, but as explained later, that may change in the years ahead.

The current picture, in which manufactured goods dominate world trade, is relatively new. In the past, primary products—agricultural and mining goods—played a much more important role in world trade. Table 2-2 shows the share of manufactured goods in the exports and imports of the United Kingdom and the United States in 1910 and 2015. In the early 20th century, Britain, while it overwhelmingly exported manufactured goods (manufactures), mainly imported primary products. Today, manufactured goods dominate both sides of its trade. Meanwhile, the United States has gone from a trade pattern in which primary products were more important than manufactured goods on both sides to one in which manufactured goods dominate.

A more recent transformation has been the rise of third-world exports of manufactured goods. The terms **third world** and **developing countries** are applied to the world's poorer nations, many of which were European colonies before World War II. As recently as the 1970s, these countries mainly exported primary products. Since then, however, they have moved rapidly into exports of manufactured goods. Figure 2-7 shows the

**TABLE 2-2 Manufactured Goods as Percent of Merchandise Trade**

	United Kingdom		United States	
	Exports	Imports	Exports	Imports
1910	75.4	24.5	47.5	40.7
2015	72.3	73.6	74.8	78.4

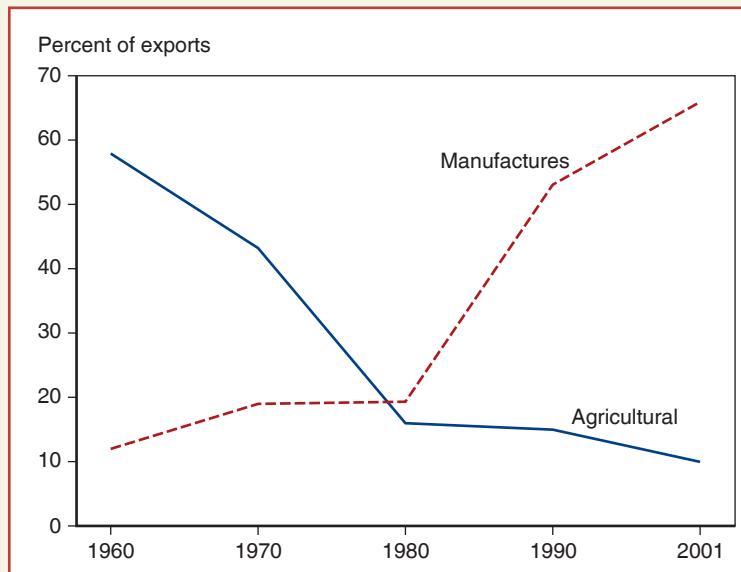
Source: 1910 data from Simon Kuznets, *Modern Economic Growth: Rate, Structure and Speed*. New Haven: Yale Univ. Press, 1966. 2015 data from World Trade Organization.

**FIGURE 2-7**

### The Changing Composition of Developing-Country Exports

Over the past 50 years, the exports of developing countries have shifted toward manufactures.

Source: United Nations Council on Trade and Development.



shares of agricultural products and manufactured goods in developing-country exports from 1960 to 2001. There has been an almost complete reversal of relative importance. For example, more than 90 percent of the exports of China, the largest developing economy and a rapidly growing force in world trade, consists of manufactured goods.

### Service Offshoring

One of the hottest disputes in international economics right now is whether modern information technology, which makes it possible to perform some economic functions at long range, will lead to a dramatic increase in new forms of international trade. We've already mentioned the example of call centers, where the person answering your request for information may be 8,000 miles away. Many other services can also be done in a remote location. When a service previously done within a country is shifted to a foreign location, the change is known as **service offshoring** (sometimes known as **service outsourcing**). In addition, producers must decide whether they should set up a foreign subsidiary to provide those services (and operate as a multinational firm) or outsource those services to another firm. In Chapter 8, we describe in more detail how firms make these important decisions.

In a famous *Foreign Affairs* article published in 2006, Alan Blinder, an economist at Princeton University, argued that

in the future, and to a great extent already in the present, the key distinction for international trade will no longer be between things that can be put in a box and things that cannot. It will, instead, be between services that can be delivered electronically over long distances with little or no degradation of quality, and those that cannot.

For example, the worker who restocks the shelves at your local grocery has to be on site, but the accountant who keeps the grocery's books could be in another country, keeping in touch over the Internet. The nurse who takes your pulse has to be nearby, but the radiologist who reads your X-ray could receive the images electronically anywhere that has a high-speed connection.

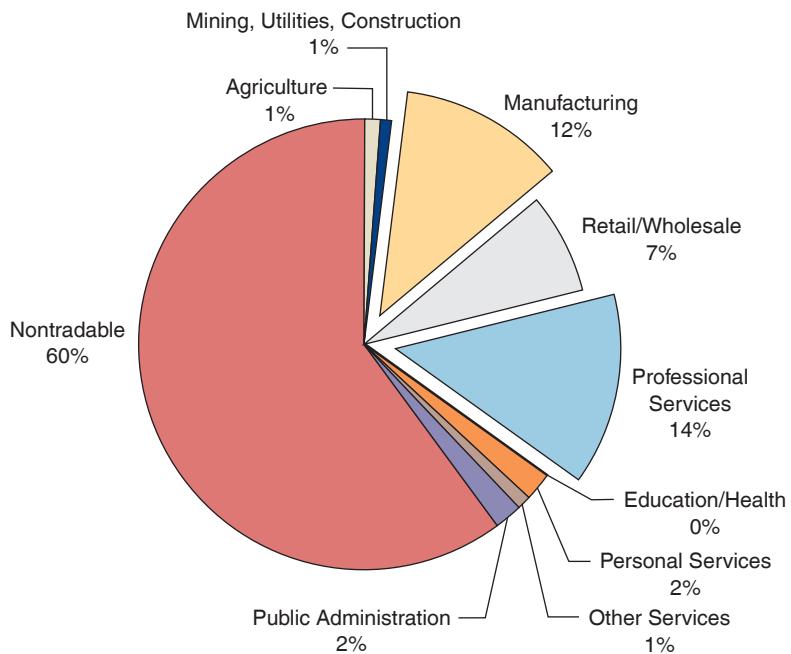
At this point, service outsourcing gets a great deal of attention precisely because it's still fairly rare. The question is how big it might become, and how many workers who currently face no international competition might see that change in the future. One way economists have tried to answer this question is by looking at which services are traded at long distances *within* the United States. For example, many financial services are provided to the nation from New York, the country's financial capital; much of the country's software publishing takes place in Seattle, home of Microsoft; much of America's (and the world's) Internet search services are provided from the Googleplex in Mountain View, California, and so on.

Figure 2-8 shows the results of one study that systematically used data on the location of industries within the United States to determine which services are and are not tradable at long distances. As the figure shows, the study concluded that about 60 percent of total U.S. employment consists of jobs that must be done close to the customer, making them nontradable. But the 40 percent of employment that is in tradable activities includes more service than manufacturing jobs. This suggests that the current dominance of world trade by manufactures, shown in Figure 2-6, may be only temporary. In the long run, trade in services, delivered electronically, may become the most important component of world trade. We discuss the implication of these trends for U.S. employment in Chapter 8.

**FIGURE 2-8****Tradable Industries' Share of Employment**

Estimates based on trade within the United States suggest that trade in services may eventually become bigger than trade in manufactures.

**Source:** J. Bradford Jensen and Lori G. Kletzer, "Tradable Services: Understanding the Scope and Impact of Services Outsourcing," Peterson Institute of Economics Working Paper 5-09, May 2005.



## Do Old Rules Still Apply?

We begin our discussion of the causes of world trade in Chapter 3 with an analysis of a model originally put forth by the British economist David Ricardo in 1819. Given all the changes in world trade since Ricardo's time, can old ideas still be relevant? The answer is a resounding yes. Even though much about international trade has changed, the fundamental principles discovered by economists at the dawn of a global economy still apply.

It's true that world trade has become harder to characterize in simple terms. A century ago, each country's exports were obviously shaped in large part by its climate and natural resources. Tropical countries exported tropical products such as coffee and cotton; land-rich countries such as the United States and Australia exported food to densely populated European nations. Disputes over trade were also easy to explain: The classic political battles over free trade versus protectionism were waged between English landowners who wanted protection from cheap food imports and English manufacturers who exported much of their output.

The sources of modern trade are more subtle. Human resources and human-created resources (in the form of machinery and other types of capital) are more important than natural resources. Political battles over trade typically involve workers whose skills are made less valuable by imports—clothing workers who face competition from imported apparel and tech workers who now face competition from Bangalore.

As we'll see in later chapters, however, the underlying logic of international trade remains the same. Economic models developed long before the invention of jet planes or the Internet remain key to understanding the essentials of 21st-century international trade.

## SUMMARY

- The *gravity model* relates the trade between any two countries to the sizes of their economies. Using the gravity model also reveals the strong effects of distance and international borders—even friendly borders like that between the United States and Canada—in discouraging trade.
- International trade is at record levels relative to the size of the world economy, thanks to falling costs of transportation and communications. However, trade has not grown in a straight line: The world was highly integrated in 1914, but trade was greatly reduced by economic depression, protectionism, and war and took decades to recover.
- Manufactured goods dominate modern trade today. In the past, however, primary products were much more important than they are now; recently, trade in services has become increasingly important.
- *Developing countries*, in particular, have shifted from being mainly exporters of primary products to being mainly exporters of manufactured goods.

## KEY TERMS

developing countries, p. 45  
gravity model, p. 38  
gross domestic product (GDP), p. 37

service offshoring (service outsourcing), p. 46

third world, p. 45  
trade agreement, p. 40

## PROBLEMS

1. The gravity model is often used not only to explain trade between two countries but also to investigate the reasons why they don't. Illustrate this anomaly with suitable examples and reasons.
2. Ireland and Belgium have very similar trading patterns. Both trade considerably more with the United States than with the European Union (EU), even though they are EU members and are closer to the EU common market than the American market. Explain this anomaly using the gravity model.
3. Equation (2-1) says that trade between any two countries is proportional to the product of their GDPs. Does this mean that if the GDP of every country in the world doubled, world trade would quadruple?
4. Over the past few decades, East Asian economies have increased their share of world GDP. Similarly, intra-East Asian trade—that is, trade among East Asian nations—has grown as a share of world trade. More than that, East Asian countries do an increasing share of their trade with each other. Explain why, using the gravity model.
5. A century ago, most British imports came from relatively distant locations: North America, Latin America, and Asia. Today, most British imports come from other European countries. How does this fit in with the changing types of goods that make up world trade?

## FURTHER READINGS

---

- Paul Bairoch. *Economics and World History*. London: Harvester, 1993. A grand survey of the world economy over time.
- Alan S. Blinder. "Offshoring: The Next Industrial Revolution?" *Foreign Affairs*, March/April 2006. An influential article by a well-known economist warning that the growth of trade in services may expose tens of millions of previously "safe" jobs to international competition. The article created a huge stir when it was published.
- Frances Cairncross. *The Death of Distance*. London: Orion, 1997. A look at how technology has made the world smaller.
- Keith Head. "Gravity for Beginners." A useful guide to the gravity model, available at <http://pacific.commerce.ubc.ca/keith/gravity.pdf>
- Harold James. *The End of Globalization: Lessons from the Great Depression*. Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 2001. A survey of how the first great wave of globalization ended.
- J. Bradford Jensen and Lori G. Kletzer. "Tradable Services: Understanding the Scope and Impact of Services Outsourcing." Peterson Institute Working Paper 5-09, May 2005. A systematic look at which services are traded within the United States with implications about the future of international trade in services.
- World Bank. *World Development Report 1995*. Each year the World Bank spotlights an important global issue; the 1995 report focused on the effects of growing world trade.
- World Trade Organization. *World Trade Report*. An annual report on the state of world trade. Each year's report has a theme; for example, the 2004 report focused on the effects on world trade of domestic policies such as spending on infrastructure.



# CHAPTER 3

## LABOR PRODUCTIVITY AND COMPARATIVE ADVANTAGE: THE RICARDIAN MODEL

Countries engage in international trade for two basic reasons, each of which contributes to their gains from trade. First, countries trade because they are different from each other. Nations, like individuals, can benefit from their differences by reaching an arrangement in which each does the things it does relatively well. Second, countries trade to achieve economies of scale in production. That is, if each country produces only a limited range of goods, it can produce each of these goods at a larger scale and hence more efficiently than if it tried to produce everything. In the real world, patterns of international trade reflect the interaction of both these motives. As a first step toward understanding the causes and effects of trade, however, it is useful to look at simplified models in which only one of these motives is present.

The next four chapters develop tools to help us to understand how differences between countries give rise to trade between them and why this trade is mutually beneficial. The essential concept in this analysis is that of comparative advantage.

Although comparative advantage is a simple concept, experience shows that it is a surprisingly hard concept for many people to understand (or accept). Indeed, the late Paul Samuelson—the Nobel laureate economist who did much to develop the models of international trade discussed in Chapters 4 and 5—once described comparative advantage as the best example he knew of an economic principle that is undeniably true yet not obvious to intelligent people.

In this chapter, we begin with a general introduction to the concept of comparative advantage and then proceed to develop a specific model of how comparative advantage determines the pattern of international trade.

### LEARNING GOALS

After reading this chapter, you will be able to:

- Explain how the *Ricardian model*, the most basic model of international trade, works and how it illustrates the principle of *comparative advantage*.

- Demonstrate *gains from trade* and refute common fallacies about international trade.
- Describe the empirical evidence that wages reflect productivity and that trade patterns reflect relative productivity.

## The Concept of Comparative Advantage

On Valentine's Day 1996, which happened to fall less than a week before the crucial February 20 primary in New Hampshire, Republican presidential candidate Patrick Buchanan stopped at a nursery to buy a dozen roses for his wife. He took the occasion to make a speech denouncing the growing imports of flowers into the United States, which he claimed were putting American flower growers out of business. And it is indeed true that a large share of the market for winter roses in the United States is supplied by imports flown in from South American countries, Colombia in particular. But is that a bad thing?

The case of winter roses offers an excellent example of the reasons why international trade can be beneficial. Consider first how hard it is to supply American sweethearts with fresh roses in February. The flowers must be grown in heated greenhouses, at great expense in terms of energy, capital investment, and other scarce resources. Those resources could be used to produce other goods. Inevitably, there is a trade-off. In order to produce winter roses, the U.S. economy must produce fewer of other things, such as computers. Economists use the term **opportunity cost** to describe such trade-offs: The opportunity cost of roses in terms of computers is the number of computers that could have been produced with the resources used to produce a given number of roses.

Suppose, for example, that the United States currently grows 10 million roses for sale on Valentine's Day and that the resources used to grow those roses could have produced 100,000 computers instead. Then the opportunity cost of those 10 million roses is 100,000 computers. (Conversely, if the computers were produced instead, the opportunity cost of those 100,000 computers would be 10 million roses.)

Those 10 million Valentine's Day roses could instead have been grown in Colombia. It seems extremely likely that the opportunity cost of those roses in terms of computers would be less than it would be in the United States. For one thing, it is a lot easier to grow February roses in the Southern Hemisphere, where it is summer in February rather than winter. Furthermore, Colombian workers are less efficient than their U.S. counterparts at making technologically advanced goods such as computers, which means that a given amount of resources used in computer production yields fewer computers in Colombia than in the United States. So the trade-off in Colombia might be something like 10 million winter roses for only 30,000 computers.

This difference in opportunity costs offers the possibility of a mutually beneficial rearrangement of world production. Let the United States stop growing winter roses and devote the resources this frees up to producing computers; meanwhile, let Colombia grow those roses instead, shifting the necessary resources out of its computer industry. The resulting changes in production would look like Table 3-1.

Look what has happened: The world is producing just as many roses as before, but it is now producing more computers. So this rearrangement of production, with the United States concentrating on computers and Colombia concentrating on roses, increases the size of the world's economic pie. Because the world as a whole is producing more, it is possible in principle to raise everyone's standard of living.

**TABLE 3-1 Hypothetical Changes in Production**

	Million Roses	Thousand Computers
United States	-10	+100
Colombia	+10	-30
Total	0	+70

The reason that international trade produces this increase in world output is that it allows each country to specialize in producing the good in which it has a comparative advantage. A country has a **comparative advantage** in producing a good if the opportunity cost of producing that good in terms of other goods is lower in that country than it is in other countries.

In this example, Colombia has a comparative advantage in winter roses and the United States has a comparative advantage in computers. The standard of living can be increased in both places if Colombia produces roses for the U.S. market while the United States produces computers for the Colombian market. We therefore have an essential insight about comparative advantage and international trade: *Trade between two countries can benefit both countries if each country exports the goods in which it has a comparative advantage.*

This is a statement about possibilities—not about what will actually happen. In the real world, there is no central authority deciding which country should produce roses and which should produce computers. Nor is there anyone handing out roses and computers to consumers in both places. Instead, international production and trade are determined in the marketplace, where supply and demand rule. Is there any reason to suppose that the potential for mutual gains from trade will be realized? Will the United States and Colombia actually end up producing the goods in which each has a comparative advantage? Will the trade between them actually make both countries better off?

To answer these questions, we must be much more explicit in our analysis. In this chapter, we will develop a model of international trade originally proposed by British economist David Ricardo, who introduced the concept of comparative advantage in the early 19th century.<sup>1</sup> This approach, in which international trade is solely due to international differences in the productivity of labor, is known as the **Ricardian model**.

## A One-Factor Economy

To introduce the role of comparative advantage in determining the pattern of international trade, we begin by imagining that we are dealing with an economy—which we call Home—that has only one factor of production. (In Chapter 4 we extend the analysis to models in which there are several factors.) We imagine that only two goods, wine and cheese, are produced. The technology of Home’s economy can be summarized by labor productivity in each industry, expressed in terms of the **unit labor requirement**, the number of hours of labor required to produce a pound of cheese or a gallon of wine. For example, it might require one hour of labor to produce a pound of cheese and two hours to produce a gallon of wine. Notice, by the way, that we’re defining unit labor requirements as the *inverse* of productivity—the more cheese or wine a worker can produce in an hour, the *lower* the unit labor requirement. For future reference,

<sup>1</sup>The classic reference is David Ricardo, *The Principles of Political Economy and Taxation*, first published in 1817.

we define  $a_{LW}$  and  $a_{LC}$  as the unit labor requirements in wine and cheese production, respectively. The economy's total resources are defined as  $L$ , the total labor supply.

## Production Possibilities

Because any economy has limited resources, there are limits on what it can produce, and there are always trade-offs; to produce more of one good, the economy must sacrifice some production of another good. These trade-offs are illustrated graphically by a **production possibility frontier** (line  $PF$  in Figure 3-1), which shows the maximum amount of wine that can be produced once the decision has been made to produce any given amount of cheese, and vice versa.

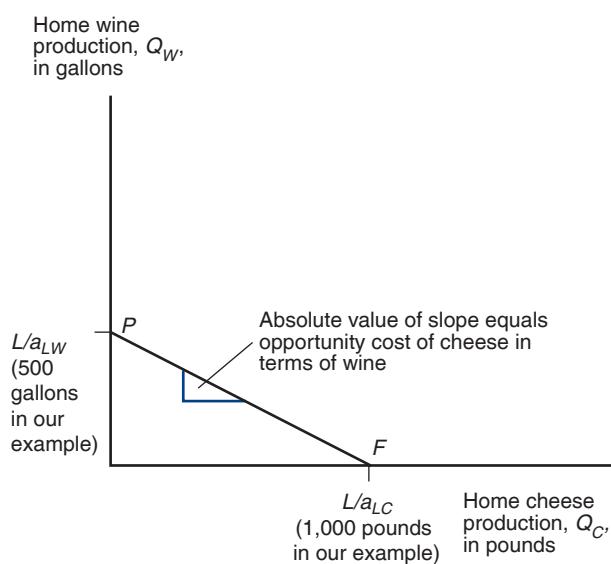
When there is only one factor of production, the production possibility frontier of an economy is simply a straight line. We can derive this line as follows: If  $Q_W$  is the economy's production of wine and  $Q_C$  its production of cheese, then the labor used in producing wine will be  $a_{LW}Q_W$ , and the labor used in producing cheese will be  $a_{LC}Q_C$ . The production possibility frontier is determined by the limits on the economy's resources—in this case, labor. Because the economy's total labor supply is  $L$ , the limits on production are defined by the inequality

$$a_{LC}Q_C + a_{LW}Q_W \leq L. \quad (3-1)$$

Suppose, for example, that the economy's total labor supply is 1,000 hours and that it takes one hour of labor to produce a pound of cheese and two hours of labor to produce a gallon of wine. Then the total labor used in production is  $(1 \times \text{pounds of cheese produced}) + (2 \times \text{gallons of wine produced})$ , and this total must be no more than the 1,000 hours of labor available. If the economy devoted all its labor to cheese production, it could, as shown in Figure 3-1, produce  $L/a_{LC}$  pounds of cheese (1,000 pounds). If it devoted all its labor to wine production instead, it could produce  $L/a_{LW}$  gallons— $1,000/2 = 500$  gallons—of wine. And it can produce any mix of wine and cheese that lies on the straight line connecting those two extremes.

**FIGURE 3-1**  
**Home's Production Possibility Frontier**

The line  $PF$  shows the maximum amount of cheese Home can produce given any production of wine, and vice versa.



When the production possibility frontier is a straight line, the *opportunity cost* of a pound of cheese in terms of wine is constant. As we saw in the previous section, this opportunity cost is defined as the number of gallons of wine the economy would have to give up in order to produce an extra pound of cheese. In this case, to produce another pound would require  $a_{LC}$  person-hours. Each of these person-hours could in turn have been used to produce  $1/a_{LW}$  gallons of wine. Thus, the opportunity cost of cheese in terms of wine is  $a_{LC}/a_{LW}$ . For example, if it takes one person-hour to make a pound of cheese and two hours to produce a gallon of wine, the opportunity cost of each pound of cheese is half a gallon of wine. As Figure 3-1 shows, this opportunity cost is equal to the absolute value of the slope of the production possibility frontier.

### Relative Prices and Supply

The production possibility frontier illustrates the different mixes of goods the economy *can* produce. To determine what the economy will actually produce, however, we need to look at prices. Specifically, we need to know the relative price of the economy's two goods, that is, the price of one good in terms of the other.

In a competitive economy, supply decisions are determined by the attempts of individuals to maximize their earnings. In our simplified economy, since labor is the only factor of production, the supply of cheese and wine will be determined by the movement of labor to whichever sector pays the higher wage.

Suppose, once again, that it takes one hour of labor to produce a pound of cheese and two hours to produce a gallon of wine. Now suppose further that cheese sells for \$4 a pound while wine sells for \$7 a gallon. What will workers produce? Well, if they produce cheese, they can earn \$4 an hour. (Bear in mind that since labor is the only input into production here, there are no profits, so workers receive the full value of their output.) On the other hand, if workers produce wine, they will earn only \$3.50 an hour, because a \$7 gallon of wine takes two hours to produce. So if cheese sells for \$4 a pound while wine sells for \$7 a gallon, workers will do better by producing cheese—and the economy as a whole will specialize in cheese production.

But what if cheese prices drop to \$3 a pound? In that case, workers can earn more by producing wine, and the economy will specialize in wine production instead.

More generally, let  $P_C$  and  $P_W$  be the prices of cheese and wine, respectively. It takes  $a_{LC}$  person-hours to produce a pound of cheese; since there are no profits in our one-factor model, the hourly wage in the cheese sector will equal the value of what a worker can produce in an hour,  $P_C/a_{LC}$ . Since it takes  $a_{LW}$  person-hours to produce a gallon of wine, the hourly wage rate in the wine sector will be  $P_W/a_{LW}$ . Wages in the cheese sector will be higher if  $P_C/P_W > a_{LC}/a_{LW}$ ; wages in the wine sector will be higher if  $P_C/P_W < a_{LC}/a_{LW}$ . Because everyone will want to work in whichever industry offers the higher wage, the economy will specialize in the production of cheese if  $P_C/P_W > a_{LC}/a_{LW}$ . On the other hand, it will specialize in the production of wine if  $P_C/P_W < a_{LC}/a_{LW}$ . Only when  $P_C/P_W$  is equal to  $a_{LC}/a_{LW}$  will both goods be produced.

What is the significance of the number  $a_{LC}/a_{LW}$ ? We saw in the previous section that it is the opportunity cost of cheese in terms of wine. We have therefore just derived a crucial proposition about the relationship between prices and production: *The economy will specialize in the production of cheese if the relative price of cheese exceeds its opportunity cost in terms of wine; it will specialize in the production of wine if the relative price of cheese is less than its opportunity cost in terms of wine.*

In the absence of international trade, Home would have to produce both goods for itself. But it will produce both goods only if the relative price of cheese is just equal to its opportunity cost. Since opportunity cost equals the ratio of unit labor requirements

in cheese and wine, we can summarize the determination of prices in the absence of international trade with a simple labor theory of value: *In the absence of international trade, the relative prices of goods are equal to their relative unit labor requirements.*

## Trade in a One-Factor World

To describe the pattern and effects of trade between two countries when each country has only one factor of production is simple. Yet the implications of this analysis can be surprising. Indeed, to those who have not thought about international trade, many of these implications seem to conflict with common sense. Even this simplest of trade models can offer some important guidance on real-world issues, such as what constitutes fair international competition and fair international exchange.

Before we get to these issues, however, let us get the model stated. Suppose there are two countries. One of them we again call Home and the other we call Foreign. Each of these countries has one factor of production (labor) and can produce two goods, wine and cheese. As before, we denote Home's labor force by  $L$  and Home's unit labor requirements in wine and cheese production by  $a_{LW}$  and  $a_{LC}$ , respectively. For Foreign, we will use a convenient notation throughout this text: When we refer to some aspect of Foreign, we will use the same symbol that we use for Home, but with an asterisk. Thus Foreign's labor force will be denoted by  $L^*$ , Foreign's unit labor requirements in wine and cheese will be denoted by  $a_{LW}^*$  and  $a_{LC}^*$ , respectively, and so on.

In general, the unit labor requirements can follow any pattern. For example, Home could be less productive than Foreign in wine but more productive in cheese, or vice versa. For the moment, we make only one arbitrary assumption: that

$$a_{LC}/a_{LW} < a_{LC}^*/a_{LW}^* \quad (3-2)$$

or, equivalently, that

$$a_{LC}/a_{LC}^* < a_{LW}/a_{LW}^*. \quad (3-3)$$

In words, we are assuming that the ratio of the labor required to produce a pound of cheese to that required to produce a gallon of wine is lower in Home than it is in Foreign. More briefly still, we are saying that Home's relative productivity in cheese is higher than it is in wine.

But remember that the ratio of unit labor requirements is equal to the opportunity cost of cheese in terms of wine; and remember also that we defined comparative advantage precisely in terms of such opportunity costs. So the assumption about relative productivities embodied in equations (3-2) and (3-3) amounts to saying that *Home has a comparative advantage in cheese*.

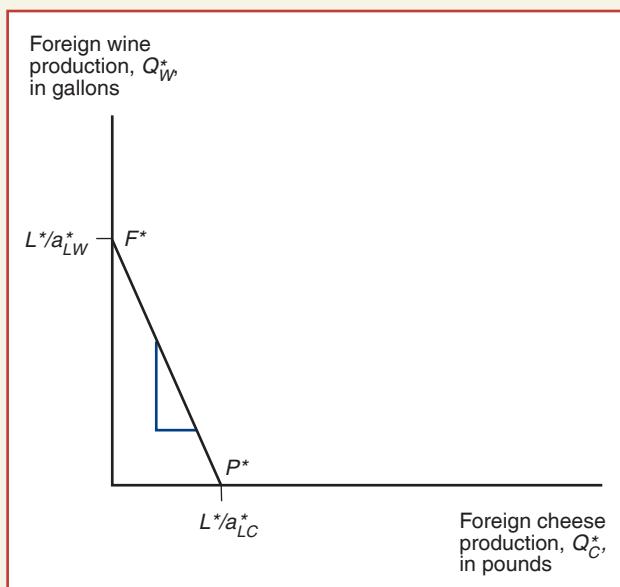
One point should be noted immediately: The condition under which Home has this comparative advantage involves all four unit labor requirements, not just two. You might think that to determine who will produce cheese, all you need to do is compare the two countries' unit labor requirements in cheese production,  $a_{LC}$  and  $a_{LC}^*$ . If  $a_{LC} < a_{LC}^*$ , Home labor is more efficient than Foreign in producing cheese. When one country can produce a unit of a good with less labor than another country, we say that the first country has an **absolute advantage** in producing that good. In our example, Home has an absolute advantage in producing cheese.

What we will see in a moment, however, is that we cannot determine the pattern of trade from absolute advantage alone. One of the most important sources of error in discussing international trade is to confuse comparative advantage with absolute advantage.

**FIGURE 3-2**

### Foreign's Production Possibility Frontier

Because Foreign's relative unit labor requirement in cheese is higher than Home's (it needs to give up many more units of wine to produce one more unit of cheese), its production possibility frontier is steeper.



Given the labor forces and the unit labor requirements in the two countries, we can draw the production possibility frontier for each country. We have already done this for Home, by drawing  $PF$  in Figure 3-1. The production possibility frontier for Foreign is shown as  $P^*F^*$  in Figure 3-2. Since the slope of the production possibility frontier equals the opportunity cost of cheese in terms of wine, Foreign's frontier is steeper than Home's.

In the absence of trade, the relative prices of cheese and wine in each country would be determined by the relative unit labor requirements. Thus, in Home the relative price of cheese would be  $a_{LC}/a_{LW}$ ; in Foreign it would be  $a_{LC}^*/a_{LW}^*$ .

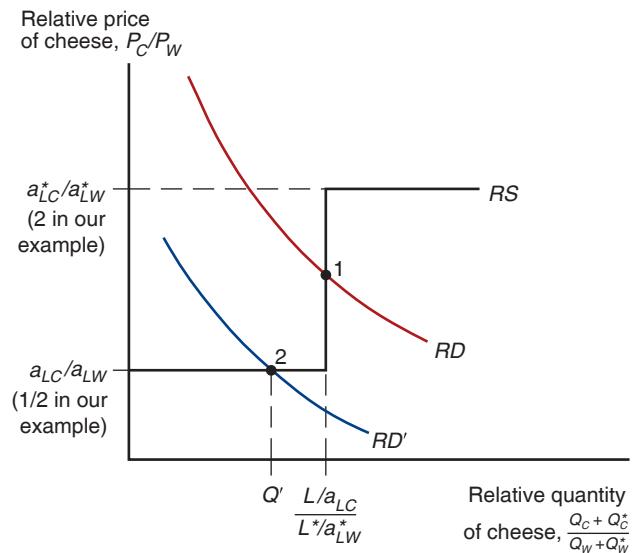
Once we allow for the possibility of international trade, however, prices will no longer be determined purely by domestic considerations. If the relative price of cheese is higher in Foreign than in Home, it will be profitable to ship cheese from Home to Foreign and to ship wine from Foreign to Home. This cannot go on indefinitely, however. Eventually, Home will export enough cheese and Foreign enough wine to equalize the relative price. But what determines the level at which that price settles?

### Determining the Relative Price after Trade

Prices of internationally traded goods, like other prices, are determined by supply and demand. In discussing comparative advantage, however, we must apply supply-and-demand analysis carefully. In some contexts, such as some of the trade policy analysis in Chapters 9 through 12, it is acceptable to focus only on supply and demand in a single market. In assessing the effects of U.S. import quotas on sugar, for example, it is reasonable to use **partial equilibrium analysis**, that is, to study a single market, the sugar market. When we study comparative advantage, however, it is crucial to keep track of the relationships between markets (in our example, the markets for wine and cheese). Since Home exports cheese only in return for imports of wine and Foreign exports wine in return for cheese, it can be misleading to look at the cheese and wine markets in isolation. What is needed is **general equilibrium analysis**, which takes account of the linkages between the two markets.

**FIGURE 3-3****World Relative Supply and Demand**

The  $RD$  and  $RD'$  curves show that the demand for cheese relative to wine is a decreasing function of the price of cheese relative to that of wine, while the  $RS$  curve shows that the supply of cheese relative to wine is an increasing function of the same relative price.



One useful way to keep track of two markets at once is to focus not just on the quantities of cheese and wine supplied and demanded but also on the *relative supply* and demand, that is, on the number of pounds of cheese supplied or demanded divided by the number of gallons of wine supplied or demanded.

Figure 3-3 shows world supply and demand for cheese relative to wine as functions of the price of cheese relative to that of wine. The **relative demand curve** is indicated by  $RD$ ; the **relative supply curve** is indicated by  $RS$ . World general equilibrium requires that relative supply equal relative demand, and thus the world relative price is determined by the intersection of  $RD$  and  $RS$ .

The striking feature of Figure 3-3 is the funny shape of the relative supply curve  $RS$ : It's a “step” with flat sections linked by a vertical section. Once we understand the derivation of the  $RS$  curve, we will be almost home-free in understanding the whole model.

First, as drawn, the  $RS$  curve shows that there would be *no* supply of cheese if the world price dropped below  $a_{LC}/a_{LW}$ . To see why, recall that we showed that Home will specialize in the production of wine whenever  $P_C/P_W < a_{LC}/a_{LW}$ . Similarly, Foreign will specialize in wine production whenever  $P_C/P_W < a_{LC}^*/a_{LW}^*$ . At the start of our discussion of equation (3-2), we made the assumption that  $a_{LC}/a_{LW} < a_{LC}^*/a_{LW}^*$ . So at relative prices of cheese below  $a_{LC}/a_{LW}$ , there would be no world cheese production.

Next, when the relative price of cheese  $P_C/P_W$  is exactly  $a_{LC}/a_{LW}$ , we know that workers in Home can earn exactly the same amount making either cheese or wine. So Home will be willing to supply any relative amount of the two goods, producing a flat section to the  $RS$  curve.

We have already seen that if  $P_C/P_W$  is above  $a_{LC}/a_{LW}$ , Home will specialize in the production of cheese. As long as  $P_C/P_W < a_{LC}^*/a_{LW}^*$ , however, Foreign will continue to specialize in producing wine. When Home specializes in cheese production, it produces  $L/a_{LC}$  pounds. Similarly, when Foreign specializes in wine, it produces  $L^*/a_{LW}^*$  gallons. So for any relative price of cheese between  $a_{LC}/a_{LW}$  and  $a_{LC}^*/a_{LW}^*$ , the relative supply of cheese is

$$(L/a_{LC})/(L^*/a_{LW}^*). \quad (3-4)$$

At  $P_C/P_W = a_{LC}^*/a_{LW}^*$ , we know that Foreign workers are indifferent between producing cheese and wine. Thus, here we again have a flat section of the supply curve.

Finally, for  $P_C/P_W > a_{LC}^*/a_{LW}^*$ , both Home and Foreign will specialize in cheese production. There will be no wine production, so that the relative supply of cheese will become infinite.

A numerical example may help at this point. Let's assume, as we did before, that in Home it takes one hour of labor to produce a pound of cheese and two hours to produce a gallon of wine. Meanwhile, let's assume that in Foreign it takes six hours to produce a pound of cheese—Foreign workers are much less productive than Home workers when it comes to cheesemaking—but only three hours to produce a gallon of wine.

In this case, the opportunity cost of cheese production in terms of wine is  $\frac{1}{2}$  in Home—that is, the labor used to produce a pound of cheese could have produced half a gallon of wine. So the lower flat section of *RS* corresponds to a relative price of  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

Meanwhile, in Foreign the opportunity cost of cheese in terms of wine is 2: The six hours of labor required to produce a pound of cheese could have produced two gallons of wine. So the upper flat section of *RS* corresponds to a relative price of 2.

The relative demand curve *RD* does not require such exhaustive analysis. The downward slope of *RD* reflects substitution effects. As the relative price of cheese rises, consumers will tend to purchase less cheese and more wine, so the relative demand for cheese falls.

The equilibrium relative price of cheese is determined by the intersection of the relative supply and relative demand curves. Figure 3-3 shows a relative demand curve *RD* that intersects the *RS* curve at point 1, where the relative price of cheese is between the two countries' pretrade prices—say, at a relative price of 1, in between the pretrade prices of  $\frac{1}{2}$  and 2. In this case, each country specializes in the production of the good in which it has a comparative advantage: Home produces only cheese, while Foreign produces only wine.

This is not, however, the only possible outcome. If the relevant *RD* curve were *RD'*, for example, relative supply and relative demand would intersect on one of the horizontal sections of *RS*. At point 2, the world relative price of cheese after trade is  $a_{LC}/a_{LW}$ , the same as the opportunity cost of cheese in terms of wine in Home.

What is the significance of this outcome? If the relative price of cheese is equal to its opportunity cost in Home, the Home economy need not specialize in producing either cheese or wine. In fact, at point 2 Home must be producing both some wine and some cheese; we can infer this from the fact that the relative supply of cheese (point *Q'* on the horizontal axis) is less than it would be if Home were in fact completely specialized. Since  $P_C/P_W$  is below the opportunity cost of cheese in terms of wine in Foreign, however, Foreign does specialize completely in producing wine. It therefore remains true that if a country does specialize, it will do so in the good in which it has a comparative advantage.

For the moment, let's leave aside the possibility that one of the two countries does not completely specialize. Except in this case, the normal result of trade is that the price of a traded good (e.g., cheese) relative to that of another good (wine) ends up somewhere in between its pretrade levels in the two countries.

The effect of this convergence in relative prices is that each country specializes in the production of that good in which it has the relatively lower unit labor requirement. The rise in the relative price of cheese in Home will lead Home to specialize in the

## COMPARATIVE ADVANTAGE IN PRACTICE: THE CASE OF USAIN BOLT

The great majority of track-and-field experts would agree that the Jamaican sprinter Usain Bolt is the greatest of all time. Bolt has won a total of eight Olympic gold medals, including the 100 m, 200 m, and 4X100 m relay races. Bolt also achieved the extraordinary feat of the “triple double,” winning gold medals in the 100 m and 200 m races in three consecutive Summer Olympics, starting in Beijing in 2008, and repeating the astounding feats in the London (2012) and Rio (2016) Olympics. He is also the first person to hold the world records for both the 100 m and 200 m races.

Bolt showed exceptional promise at a young age by excelling both as a cricket player and as a sprinter, and he has confessed that his big loves were cricket and football. Perhaps Bolt could have been very good at playing cricket or football, but he chose to focus on his exceptional talent and rare skills as a sprinter. Why? It’s all about the principles of absolute and comparative advantage. Bolt could have been a great football or cricket player but his talent as a sprinter in relative terms was even greater. He was so good at sprinting that his comparative advantage was to *specialize* in track-and-field and “run like the wind!” The football and cricket world may have lost a great star, but track-and-field world won the most brilliant

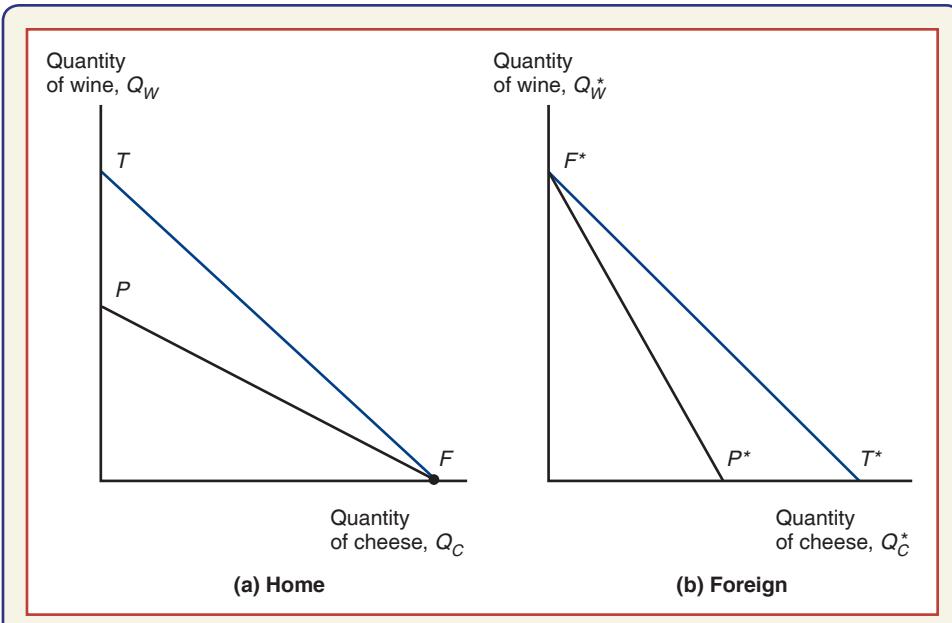
sprinter ever, setting world sprinting records that will probably remain untouched for a long time to come. Who knows, after Bolt retires from competitive running, we may see him wearing the colors of Manchester United or of the Melbourne Stars. According to Bolt, “*When I finish with track and field, I'll change sports and move on. If I can't race at the top level by 2016, then I want to turn my hand to another game—football because I can play and with enough effort I can get better.*”<sup>2</sup>

The principles of absolute and comparative advantage were also put to the test during the Beijing Olympics. While the 100 m and 200 m sprints are purely individual races, the relay races involve teamwork and strategy. Instead of choosing the traditional sequence of runners from slowest to fastest, Bolt was assigned to run in the third leg of the Jamaican team rather than the Anchor (last)one. Bolt was faster than any of his other teammates (he had an absolute advantage), but since he could only be assigned to run one leg, he was given to run the leg for which he had a *lower opportunity cost* (in other words a comparative advantage) when compared to teammate Asafa Powell who run the Anchor leg. The Jamaican team crossed the finish line first by about a full second!<sup>3</sup>

production of cheese, producing at point *F* in Figure 3-4a. The fall in the relative price of cheese in Foreign will lead Foreign to specialize in the production of wine, producing at point *F\** in Figure 3-4b.

<sup>2</sup>Mail Today Reporter, “Olympic Sprinter Bolt Dreamed of Being a Cricketing Hero... But Now has His Eye on a Football Career,” *Mail Online India*, 15 October, 2013, [www.dailymail.co.uk](http://www.dailymail.co.uk).

<sup>3</sup>For a specific calculation of the opportunity costs of the runners in the 4X100 m relay race, see Liam Lenten, “The Economics of Comparative Advantage and Usain Bolt,” *The Conversation*, July 11, 2012.



**FIGURE 3-4**

# Trade Expands Consumption Possibilities

International trade allows Home and Foreign to consume anywhere within the outer lines, which lie outside the countries' production frontiers.

## The Gains from Trade

We have now seen that countries whose relative labor productivities differ across industries will specialize in the production of different goods. We next show that both countries derive **gains from trade** from this specialization. This mutual gain can be demonstrated in two alternative ways.

The first way to show that specialization and trade are beneficial is to think of trade as an indirect method of production. Home could produce wine directly, but trade with Foreign allows it to “produce” wine by producing cheese and then trading the cheese for wine. This indirect method of “producing” a gallon of wine is a more efficient method than direct production.

Consider our numerical example yet again: In Home, we assume that it takes one hour to produce a pound of cheese and two hours to produce a gallon of wine. This means that the opportunity cost of cheese in terms of wine is  $\frac{1}{2}$ . But we know that the relative price of cheese after trade will be higher than this, say 1. So here's one way to see the gains from trade for Home: Instead of using two hours of labor to produce a gallon of wine, it can use that labor to produce two pounds of cheese, and trade that cheese for *two* gallons of wine.

More generally, consider two alternative ways of using an hour of labor. On one side, Home could use the hour directly to produce  $1/a_{LW}$  gallons of wine. Alternatively, Home could use the hour to produce  $1/a_{LC}$  pounds of cheese. This cheese could then be traded for wine, with each pound trading for  $P_C/P_W$  gallons, so our original hour of labor yields  $(1/a_{LC})(P_C/P_W)$  gallons of wine. This will be more wine than the hour could have produced directly as long as

$$(1/a_{LC})(P_C/P_W) > 1/a_{LW}, \quad (3-5)$$

or

$$P_C/P_W > a_{LC}/a_{LW}.$$

But we just saw that in international equilibrium, if neither country produces both goods, we must have  $P_C/P_W > a_{LC}/a_{LW}$ . This shows that Home can “produce” wine more efficiently by making cheese and trading it than by producing wine directly for itself. Similarly, Foreign can “produce” cheese more efficiently by making wine and trading it. This is one way of seeing that both countries gain.

Another way to see the mutual gains from trade is to examine how trade affects each country’s possibilities for consumption. In the absence of trade, consumption possibilities are the same as production possibilities (the solid lines  $PF$  and  $P^*F^*$  in Figure 3-4). Once trade is allowed, however, each economy can consume a different mix of cheese and wine from the mix it produces. Home’s consumption possibilities are indicated by the outer line  $TF$  in Figure 3-4a, while Foreign’s consumption possibilities are indicated by  $T^*F^*$  in Figure 3-4b. In each case, trade has enlarged the range of choice, and therefore it must make residents of each country better off.

### A Note on Relative Wages

Political discussions of international trade often focus on comparisons of wage rates in different countries. For example, opponents of trade between the United States and Mexico often emphasize the point that workers in Mexico are paid only about \$6.50 per hour, compared with more than \$35 per hour for the typical worker in the United States. Our discussion of international trade up to this point has not explicitly compared wages in the two countries, but it is possible in the context of our numerical example to determine how the wage rates in the two countries compare.

In our example, once the countries have specialized, all Home workers are employed producing cheese. Since it takes one hour of labor to produce one pound of cheese, workers in Home earn the value of one pound of cheese per hour of their labor. Similarly, Foreign workers produce only wine; since it takes three hours for them to produce each gallon, they earn the value of  $\frac{1}{3}$  of a gallon of wine per hour.

To convert these numbers into dollar figures, we need to know the prices of cheese and wine. Suppose that a pound of cheese and a gallon of wine both sell for \$12; then Home workers will earn \$12 per hour, while Foreign workers will earn \$4 per hour. The **relative wage** of a country’s workers is the amount they are paid per hour, compared with the amount workers in another country are paid per hour. The relative wage of Home workers will therefore be 3.

Clearly, this relative wage does not depend on whether the price of a pound of cheese is \$12 or \$20, as long as a gallon of wine sells for the same price. As long as the relative price of cheese—the price of a pound of cheese divided by the price of a gallon of wine—is 1, the wage of Home workers will be three times that of Foreign workers.

Notice that this wage rate lies between the ratios of the two countries’ productivities in the two industries. Home is six times as productive as Foreign in cheese, but only one-and-a-half times as productive in wine, and it ends up with a wage rate three times as high as Foreign’s. It is precisely because the relative wage is between the relative productivities that each country ends up with a *cost* advantage in one good. Because of its lower wage rate, Foreign has a cost advantage in wine even though it has lower productivity. Home has a cost advantage in cheese, despite its higher wage rate, because the higher wage is more than offset by its higher productivity.

We have now developed the simplest of all models of international trade. Even though the Ricardian one-factor model is far too simple to be a complete analysis of either the causes or the effects of international trade, a focus on relative labor

## ECONOMIC ISOLATION AND AUTARKY OVER TIME AND OVER SPACE

Our discussion of the gains from trade took the form of a “thought experiment” in which we compared two situations: one in which countries do not trade at all and another in which they have free trade. It’s a hypothetical case that helps us to understand the principles of international economics, but it does not have much to do with actual events. After all, countries don’t suddenly go from no trade to free trade or vice versa. Or do they?

Historical examples abound of countries that experimented with nontrade and autarky either fully or partially, either for longer or shorter time periods. Such examples include the Islamic State of Afghanistan under the Taliban rule (1996–2001), the People’s Republic of Albania (1976–1991), Myanmar (1962–1988), Cambodia under the Khmer Rouge (1975–1979), Nazi Germany (began four-year Plan in 1936), India (1950–1991), Japan (during “Edo Period” up to 1850s), Guyana under Forbes Burnham (1970–1985), South Africa, partial autarky during Apartheid period, Spain under Franco (1939–1958), the United States under President Jefferson (1807–1809). In all such cases, countries eventually opened up their economies and lifted most trade restrictions.

Spain, under Francisco Franco is a prime example of a country with closed economic borders for 15 years before taking steps to realize the potential benefits of trade and usher the era of the *“Spanish Miracle.”* Spain was embroiled in a bitter Civil War between 1936 and 1939 among the

Republicans and the Nationalists under General Franco, who staged a coup against the leftist government and ultimately established a dictatorship.

Despite assistance from Nazi Germany and Italy’s Mussolini during the Civil War, Spain remained neutral during WWII, but due to its government’s origins was shunned by the post war international political and economic order. Spain was left out of the European Recovery Plan (ERP—“Marshall Plan”) and was ostracized from numerous European and world organizations and institutions. At the same time, due to the nationalist ideology of Franco, the new regime itself followed a policy of isolation and economic self-reliance that compounded on the economic problems emanating from international ostracism.

Spain made the first timid efforts to return to the international community in the early to mid-1950s by signing the Madrid Treaty with the United States, which opened up the prospect of collaboration between the two countries. Domestic developments a few years later led to a new government formed mostly by technocrats who foresaw the advantages of a more open economy. The move from isolation to economic cooperation was crowned in 1959 when U.S. President Eisenhower paid an official visit to Spain.

It is estimated that during the 1940–1958 isolation era, the Spanish economy suffered a welfare loss equivalent to 8 percent of its total real GDP over this period.<sup>4</sup>

productivities can be a very useful tool for thinking about trade issues. In particular, the simple one-factor model is a good way to deal with several common misconceptions about the meaning of comparative advantage and the nature of the gains from free trade. These misconceptions appear so frequently in public debate about international economic policy, and even in statements by those who regard themselves as experts, that in the next section we take time out to discuss some of the most common misunderstandings about comparative advantage in light of our model.

<sup>4</sup>José Antonio Carrasco-Gallego, “The Spanish Autarky and the Marshall Plan: A Welfare Loss Analysis,” Department of Economics, University College Cork Working Paper Series, Working Paper 08-01, 2011.

## Misconceptions about Comparative Advantage

There is no shortage of muddled ideas in economics. Politicians, business leaders, and even economists frequently make statements that do not stand up to careful economic analysis. For some reason this seems to be especially true in international economics. Look at the business section of any news site and you will probably find at least one article that makes foolish statements about international trade. Three misconceptions in particular have proved highly persistent. In this section we will use our simple model of comparative advantage to see why they are incorrect.

### Productivity and Competitiveness

*Myth 1: Free trade is beneficial only if your country is strong enough to stand up to foreign competition.* This argument seems extremely plausible to many people. For example, a well-known historian once criticized the case for free trade by asserting that it may fail to hold in reality: “What if there is nothing you can produce more cheaply or efficiently than anywhere else, except by constantly cutting labor costs?” he worried.<sup>5</sup>

The problem with this commentator’s view is that he failed to understand the essential point of Ricardo’s model—that gains from trade depend on *comparative* rather than *absolute* advantage. He is concerned that your country may turn out not to have anything it produces more efficiently than anyone else—that is, that you may not have an absolute advantage in anything. Yet why is that such a terrible thing? In our simple numerical example of trade, Home has lower unit labor requirements and hence higher productivity in both the cheese and wine sectors. Yet, as we saw, both countries gain from trade.

It is always tempting to suppose that the ability to export a good depends on your country having an absolute advantage in productivity. But an absolute productivity advantage over other countries in producing a good is neither a necessary nor a sufficient condition for having a *comparative* advantage in that good. In our one-factor model, the reason that an absolute productivity advantage in an industry is neither necessary nor sufficient to yield competitive advantage is clear: *The competitive advantage of an industry depends not only on its productivity relative to the foreign industry, but also on the domestic wage rate relative to the foreign wage rate.* A country’s wage rate, in turn, depends on relative productivity in its other industries. In our numerical example, Foreign is less efficient than Home in the manufacture of wine, but it is at an even greater relative productivity disadvantage in cheese. Because of its overall lower productivity, Foreign must pay lower wages than Home, sufficiently lower that it ends up with lower costs in wine production. Similarly, in the real world, Portugal has low productivity in producing, say, clothing as compared with the United States, but because Portugal’s productivity disadvantage is even greater in other industries, it pays low enough wages to have a comparative advantage in clothing over the United States all the same.

But isn’t a competitive advantage based on low wages somehow unfair? Many people think so; their beliefs are summarized by our second misconception.

---

<sup>5</sup>Paul Kennedy, “The Threat of Modernization,” *New Perspectives Quarterly* (Winter 1995), pp. 31–33. Used by permission of John Wiley & Sons, Ltd.

## DO WAGES REFLECT PRODUCTIVITY?

In the numerical example that we use to puncture common misconceptions about comparative advantage, we assume the relative wage of the two countries reflects their relative productivity—specifically, that the ratio of Home to Foreign wages is in a range that gives each country a cost advantage in one of the two goods. This is a necessary implication of our theoretical model. But many people are unconvinced by that model. In particular, rapid increases in productivity in “emerging” economies like China have worried some Western observers, who argue that these countries will continue to pay low wages even as their productivity increases—putting high-wage countries at a cost disadvantage—and dismiss the contrary predictions of orthodox economists as unrealistic theoretical speculation. Leaving aside the logic of this position, what is the evidence?

The answer is that in the real world, national wage rates do, in fact, reflect differences in productivity. The accompanying figure compares estimates of productivity with estimates of wage rates for a selection of countries in 2015. Both measures are expressed as percentages of U.S. levels. Our estimate of productivity is GDP per worker

measured in U.S. dollars. As we’ll see in the second half of this text, that basis should indicate productivity in the production of traded goods. Wage rates are measured by wages in manufacturing.

If wages were exactly proportional to productivity, all the points in this chart would lie along the indicated 45-degree line. In reality, the fit isn’t bad. In particular, low wage rates in China and India reflect low productivity.

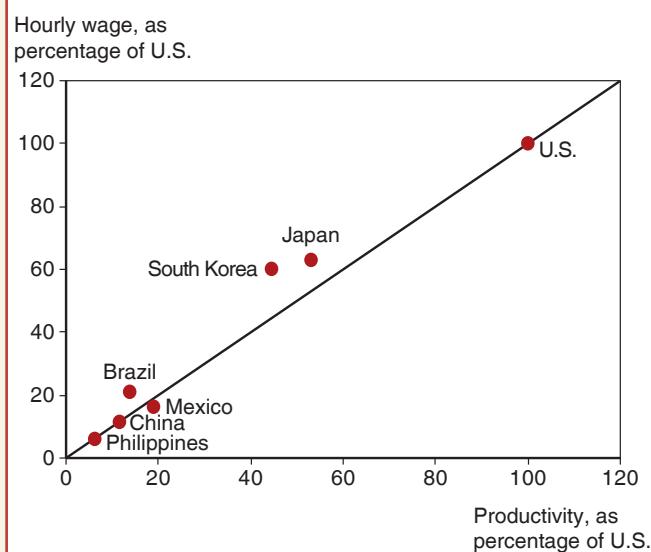
The low estimate of overall Chinese productivity may seem surprising, given all the stories one hears about Americans who find themselves competing with Chinese exports. The Chinese workers producing those exports don’t seem to have extremely low productivity. But remember what the theory of comparative advantage says: Countries export the goods in which they have relatively high productivity. So it’s only to be expected that China’s overall relative productivity is far below the level of its export industries.

The figure that follows tells us that the orthodox economists’ view that national wage rates reflect national productivity is, in fact, verified by the data at a point in time. It’s also true that in the past, rising relative productivity led to rising wages.

### Productivity and Wages

A country’s wage rate is roughly proportional to the country’s productivity.

**Source:** International Monetary Fund and The Conference Board.



Consider, for example, the case of South Korea. In 2015, South Korea's labor productivity was about half of the U.S. level, and so was its wage rate. But it wasn't always that way: In the not too distant past, South Korea was a low-productivity, low-wage economy. As recently as 1975, South

Korean wages were only 5 percent those of the United States. But when South Korea's productivity rose, so did its wage rate.

In short, the evidence strongly supports the view, based on economic models, that productivity increases are reflected in wage increases.

## The Pauper Labor Argument

*Myth 2: Foreign competition is unfair and hurts other countries when it is based on low wages.* This argument, sometimes referred to as the **pauper labor argument**, is a particular favorite of labor unions seeking protection from foreign competition. People who adhere to this belief argue that industries should not have to cope with foreign industries that are less efficient but pay lower wages. This view is widespread and has acquired considerable political influence. In 1993, Ross Perot, a self-made billionaire and former presidential candidate, warned that free trade between the United States and Mexico, with the latter's much lower wages, would lead to a "giant sucking sound" as U.S. industry moved south. In the same year, another self-made billionaire, Sir James Goldsmith, who was an influential member of the European Parliament, offered similar if less picturesquely expressed views in his book *The Trap*, which became a best seller in France.

Again, our simple example reveals the fallacy of this argument. In the example, Home is more productive than Foreign in both industries, and Foreign's lower cost of wine production is entirely due to its much lower wage rate. Foreign's lower wage rate, however, is irrelevant to the question of whether Home gains from trade. Whether the lower cost of wine produced in Foreign is due to high productivity or low wages does not matter. All that matters to Home is that it is cheaper *in terms of its own labor* for Home to produce cheese and trade it for wine than to produce wine for itself.

This is fine for Home, but what about Foreign? Isn't there something wrong with basing one's exports on low wages? Certainly it is not an attractive position to be in, but the idea that trade is good only if you receive high wages is our final fallacy.

## Exploitation

*Myth 3: Trade exploits a country and makes it worse off if its workers receive much lower wages than workers in other nations.* This argument is often expressed in emotional terms. For example, one columnist contrasted the multimillion-dollar income of the chief executive officer of the clothing chain The Gap with the low wages—often less than \$1 an hour—paid to the Central American workers who produce some of its merchandise.<sup>6</sup> It can seem hard-hearted to try to justify the terrifyingly low wages paid to many of the world's workers.

If one is asking about the desirability of free trade, however, the point is not to ask whether low-wage workers deserve to be paid more but to ask whether they and their country are worse off exporting goods based on low wages than they would be if they refused to enter into such demeaning trade. And in asking this question, one must also ask, *What is the alternative?*

<sup>6</sup>Bob Herbert, "Sweatshop Beneficiaries: How to Get Rich on 56 Cents an Hour," *New York Times* (July 24, 1995), p. A13.

Abstract though it is, our numerical example makes the point that one cannot declare that a low wage represents exploitation unless one knows what the alternative is. In that example, Foreign workers are paid much less than Home workers, and one could easily imagine a columnist writing angrily about their exploitation. Yet if Foreign refused to let itself be “exploited” by refusing to trade with Home (or by insisting on much higher wages in its export sector, which would have the same effect), real wages would be even lower: The purchasing power of a worker’s hourly wage would fall from  $\frac{1}{3}$  to  $\frac{1}{6}$  pound of cheese.

The columnist who pointed out the contrast in incomes between the executive at The Gap and the workers who make its clothes was angry at the poverty of Central American workers. But to deny them the opportunity to export and trade might well be to condemn them to even deeper poverty.

## Comparative Advantage with Many Goods

In our discussion so far, we have relied on a model in which only two goods are produced and consumed. This simplified analysis allows us to capture many essential points about comparative advantage and trade and, as we saw in the last section, gives us a surprising amount of mileage as a tool for discussing policy issues. To move closer to reality, however, it is necessary to understand how comparative advantage functions in a model with a larger number of goods.

### Setting Up the Model

Again, imagine a world of two countries, Home and Foreign. As before, each country has only one factor of production, labor. However, let’s assume that each of these countries consumes and is able to produce a large number of goods—say,  $N$  different goods altogether. We assign each of the goods a number from 1 to  $N$ .

The technology of each country can be described by its unit labor requirement for each good, that is, the number of hours of labor it takes to produce one unit of each good. We label Home’s unit labor requirement for a particular good as  $a_{Li}$ , where  $i$  is the number we have assigned to that good. If cheese is assigned the number 7,  $a_{L7}$  will mean the unit labor requirement in cheese production. Following our usual rule, we label the corresponding Foreign unit labor requirement  $a_{L_i}^*$ .

To analyze trade, we next pull one more trick. For any good, we can calculate  $a_{Li}/a_{L_i}^*$ , the ratio of Home’s unit labor requirement to Foreign’s. The trick is to relabel the goods so that the lower the number, the lower this ratio. That is, we reshuffle the order in which we number goods in such a way that

$$a_{L1}/a_{L1}^* < a_{L2}/a_{L2}^* < a_{L3}/a_{L3}^* < \dots < a_{LN}/a_{LN}^*. \quad (3-6)$$

### Relative Wages and Specialization

We are now prepared to look at the pattern of trade. This pattern depends on only one thing: the ratio of Home to Foreign wages. Once we know this ratio, we can determine who produces what.

Let  $w$  be the wage rate per hour in Home and  $w^*$  be the wage rate in Foreign. The ratio of wage rates is then  $w/w^*$ . The rule for allocating world production, then, is simply this: Goods will always be produced where it is cheapest to make them. The cost of making some good, say good  $i$ , is the unit labor requirement times the wage rate.

To produce good  $i$  in Home will cost  $wa_{Li}$ . To produce the same good in Foreign will cost  $w^*a_{Li}^*$ . It will be cheaper to produce the good in Home if

$$wa_{Li} < w^*a_{Li}^*,$$

which can be rearranged to yield

$$a_{Li}^*/a_{Li} > w/w^*.$$

On the other hand, it will be cheaper to produce the good in Foreign if

$$wa_{Li} > w^*a_{Li}^*,$$

which can be rearranged to yield

$$a_{Li}^*/a_{Li} < w/w^*.$$

Thus, we can restate the allocation rule: Any good for which  $a_{Li}^*/a_{Li} > w/w^*$  will be produced in Home, while any good for which  $a_{Li}^*/a_{Li} < w/w^*$  will be produced in Foreign.

We have already lined up the goods in increasing order of  $a_{Li}/a_{Li}^*$  [equation (3-6)]. This criterion for specialization tells us that there is a “cut” in the lineup determined by the ratio of the two countries’ wage rates,  $w/w^*$ . All the goods to the left of that point end up being produced in Home; all the goods to the right end up being produced in Foreign. (It is possible, as we will see in a moment, that the ratio of wage rates is exactly equal to the ratio of unit labor requirements for one good. In that case, this borderline good may be produced in both countries.)

Table 3-2 offers a numerical example in which Home and Foreign both consume and are able to produce five goods: apples, bananas, caviar, dates, and enchiladas.

The first two columns of this table are self-explanatory. The third column is the ratio of the Foreign unit labor requirement to the Home unit labor requirement for each good—or, stated differently, the relative Home productivity advantage in each good. We have labeled the goods in order of Home productivity advantage, with the Home advantage greatest for apples and least for enchiladas.

Which country produces which goods depends on the ratio of Home and Foreign wage rates. Home will have a cost advantage in any good for which its relative productivity is higher than its relative wage, and Foreign will have the advantage in the others. If, for example, the Home wage rate is five times that of Foreign (a ratio of Home wage to Foreign wage of five to one), apples and bananas will be produced in Home and caviar, dates, and enchiladas in Foreign. If the Home wage rate is only three times that of Foreign, Home will produce apples, bananas, and caviar, while Foreign will produce only dates and enchiladas.

**TABLE 3-2 Home and Foreign Unit Labor Requirements**

Good	Home Unit Labor Requirement $a_{Li}$	Foreign Unit Labor Requirement ( $a_{Li}^*$ )	Relative Home Productivity Advantage ( $a_{Li}^*/a_{Li}$ )
Apples	1	10	10
Bananas	5	40	8
Caviar	3	12	4
Dates	6	12	2
Enchiladas	12	9	0.75

Is such a pattern of specialization beneficial to both countries? We can see that it is by using the same method we used earlier: comparing the labor cost of producing a good directly in a country with that of indirectly “producing” it by producing another good and trading for the desired good. If the Home wage rate is three times the Foreign wage (put another way, Foreign’s wage rate is one-third that of Home), Home will import dates and enchiladas. A unit of dates requires 12 units of Foreign labor to produce, but its cost in terms of Home labor, given the three-to-one wage ratio, is only 4 person-hours ( $12/4 = 3$ ). This cost of 4 person-hours is less than the 6 person-hours it would take to produce the unit of dates in Home. For enchiladas, Foreign actually has higher productivity along with lower wages; it will cost Home only 3 person-hours to acquire a unit of enchiladas through trade, compared with the 12 person-hours it would take to produce it domestically. A similar calculation will show that Foreign also gains; for each of the goods Foreign imports, it turns out to be cheaper in terms of domestic labor to trade for the good rather than produce the good domestically. For example, it would take 10 hours of Foreign labor to produce a unit of apples; even with a wage rate only one-third that of Home workers, it will require only 3 hours of labor to earn enough to buy that unit of apples from Home.

In making these calculations, however, we have simply assumed that the relative wage rate is 3. How does this relative wage rate actually get determined?

### Determining the Relative Wage in the Multigood Model

In the two-good model, we determined relative wages by first calculating Home wages in terms of cheese and Foreign wages in terms of wine. We then used the price of cheese relative to that of wine to deduce the ratio of the two countries’ wage rates. We could do this because we knew that Home would produce cheese and Foreign wine. In the many-good case, who produces what can be determined only after we know the relative wage rate, so we need a new procedure. To determine relative wages in a multigood economy, we must look behind the relative demand for goods to the implied relative demand for labor. This is not a direct demand on the part of consumers; rather, it is a **derived demand** that results from the demand for goods produced with each country’s labor.

The relative derived demand for Home labor will fall when the ratio of Home to Foreign wages rises, for two reasons. First, as Home labor becomes more expensive relative to Foreign labor, goods produced in Home also become relatively more expensive, and world demand for these goods falls. Second, as Home wages rise, fewer goods will be produced in Home and more in Foreign, further reducing the demand for Home labor.

We can illustrate these two effects using our numerical example as illustrated in Table 3-2. Suppose we start with the following situation: The Home wage is initially 3.5 times the Foreign wage. At that level, Home would produce apples, bananas, and caviar while Foreign would produce dates and enchiladas. If the relative Home wage were to increase from 3.5 to 3.99, the pattern of specialization would not change. However, as the goods produced in Home became relatively more expensive, the relative demand for these goods would decline and the relative demand for Home labor would decline with it.

Suppose now that the relative wage increased slightly from 3.99 to 4.01. This small further growth in the relative Home wage would bring about a shift in the pattern of specialization. Because it is now cheaper to produce caviar in Foreign than in Home, the production of caviar shifts from Home to Foreign. What does this imply for the relative demand for Home labor? Clearly it implies that as the relative wage rises from a little less than 4 to a little more than 4, there is an abrupt drop-off in the relative demand,

as Home production of caviar falls to zero and Foreign acquires a new industry. If the relative wage continues to rise, relative demand for Home labor will gradually decline, then drop off abruptly at a relative wage of 8, at which point production of bananas shifts to Foreign.

We can illustrate the determination of relative wages with a diagram like Figure 3-5. Unlike Figure 3-3, this diagram does not have relative quantities of goods or relative prices of goods on its axes. Instead it shows the relative quantity of labor and the relative wage rate. The world demand for Home labor relative to its demand for Foreign labor is shown by the curve  $RD$ . The world supply of Home labor relative to Foreign labor is shown by the line  $RS$ .

The relative supply of labor is determined by the relative sizes of Home's and Foreign's labor forces. Assuming the number of person-hours available does not vary with the wage, the relative wage has no effect on relative labor supply and  $RS$  is a vertical line.

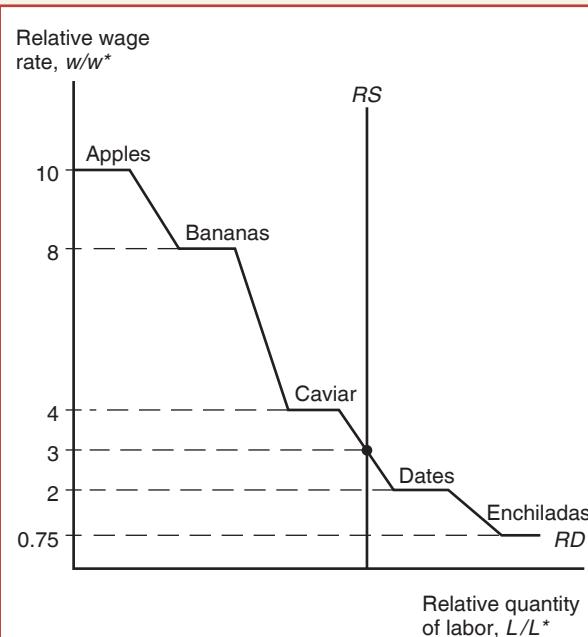
Our discussion of the relative demand for labor explains the “stepped” shape of  $RD$ . Whenever we increase the wage rate of Home workers relative to that of Foreign workers, the relative demand for goods produced in Home will decline and the demand for Home labor will decline with it. In addition, the relative demand for Home labor will drop off abruptly whenever an increase in the relative Home wage makes a good cheaper to produce in Foreign. So the curve alternates between smoothly downward-sloping sections where the pattern of specialization does not change and “flats” where the relative demand shifts abruptly because of shifts in the pattern of specialization. As shown in the figure, these “flats” correspond to relative wages that equal the ratio of Home to Foreign productivity for each of the five goods.

The equilibrium relative wage is determined by the intersection of  $RD$  and  $RS$ . As drawn, the equilibrium relative wage is 3. At this wage, Home produces apples, bananas,

**FIGURE 3-5**

### Determination of Relative Wages

In a many-good Ricardian model, relative wages are determined by the intersection of the derived relative demand curve for labor,  $RD$ , with the relative supply,  $RS$ .



and caviar while Foreign produces dates and enchiladas. The outcome depends on the relative size of the countries (which determines the position of *RS*) and the relative demand for the goods (which determines the shape and position of *RD*).

If the intersection of *RD* and *RS* happens to lie on one of the flats, both countries produce the good to which the flat applies.

## Adding Transport Costs and Nontraded Goods

We now extend our model another step closer to reality by considering the effects of transport costs. Transportation costs do not change the fundamental principles of comparative advantage or the gains from trade. Because transport costs pose obstacles to the movement of goods and services, however, they have important implications for the way a trading world economy is affected by a variety of factors such as foreign aid, international investment, and balance of payments problems. While we will not deal with the effects of these factors yet, the multigood one-factor model is a good place to introduce the effects of transport costs.

First, notice that the world economy described by the model of the last section is marked by very extreme international specialization. At most, there is one good that both countries produce; all other goods are produced either in Home or in Foreign, but not in both.

There are three main reasons why specialization in the real international economy is not this extreme:

1. The existence of more than one factor of production reduces the tendency toward specialization (as we will see in Chapters 4 and 5).
2. Countries sometimes protect industries from foreign competition (discussed at length in Chapters 9 through 12).
3. It is costly to transport goods and services; in some cases the cost of transportation is enough to lead countries into self-sufficiency in certain sectors.

In the multigood example of the last section, we found that at a relative Home wage of 3, Home could produce apples, bananas, and caviar more cheaply than Foreign, while Foreign could produce dates and enchiladas more cheaply than Home. *In the absence of transport costs*, then, Home will export the first three goods and import the last two.

Now suppose that there is a cost to transport goods and that this transport cost is a uniform fraction of production cost, say 100 percent. This transportation cost will discourage trade. Consider dates, for example. One unit of this good requires 6 hours of Home labor or 12 hours of Foreign labor to produce. At a relative wage of 3, 12 hours of Foreign labor costs only as much as 4 hours of Home labor; so in the absence of transport costs, Home imports dates. With a 100 percent transport cost, however, importing dates would cost the equivalent of 8 hours of Home labor (4 hours of labor plus the equivalent of 4 hours for the transportation costs), so Home will produce the good for itself instead.

A similar cost comparison shows that Foreign will find it cheaper to produce its own caviar than to import it. A unit of caviar requires 3 hours of Home labor to produce. Even at a relative Home wage of 3, which makes this the equivalent of 9 hours of Foreign labor, this is cheaper than the 12 hours Foreign would need to produce caviar for itself. In the absence of transport costs, then, Foreign would find it cheaper to import caviar than to make it domestically. With a 100 percent cost of transportation, however, imported caviar would cost the equivalent of 18 hours of Foreign labor and would therefore be produced locally instead.

The result of introducing transport costs in this example, then, is that Home will still export apples and bananas and import enchiladas, but caviar and dates will become **nontraded goods**, which each country will produce for itself.

In this example, we have assumed that transport costs are the same fraction of production cost in all sectors. In practice there is a wide range of transportation costs. In some cases transportation is virtually impossible: Services such as haircuts and auto repair cannot be traded internationally (except where there is a metropolitan area that straddles a border, like Detroit, Michigan–Windsor, Ontario). There is also little international trade in goods with high weight-to-value ratios, like cement. (It is simply not worth the transport cost of importing cement, even if it can be produced much more cheaply abroad.) Many goods end up being nontraded either because of the absence of strong national cost advantages or because of high transportation costs.

The important point is that nations spend a large share of their income on nontraded goods. This observation is of surprising importance in our later discussion of international monetary economics.

## Empirical Evidence on the Ricardian Model

The Ricardian model of international trade is an extremely useful tool for thinking about the reasons why trade may happen and about the effects of international trade on national welfare. But is the model a good fit to the real world? Does the Ricardian model make accurate predictions about actual international trade flows?

The answer is a heavily qualified yes. Clearly there are a number of ways in which the Ricardian model makes misleading predictions. First, as mentioned in our discussion of nontraded goods, the simple Ricardian model predicts an extreme degree of specialization that we do not observe in the real world. Second, the Ricardian model assumes away effects of international trade on the distribution of income *within* countries, and thus predicts that countries as a whole will always gain from trade; in practice, international trade has strong effects on income distribution. Third, the Ricardian model allows no role for differences in resources among countries as a cause of trade, thus missing an important aspect of the trading system (the focus of Chapters 4 and 5). Finally, the Ricardian model neglects the possible role of economies of scale as a cause of trade, which leaves it unable to explain the large trade flows between apparently similar nations—an issue discussed in Chapters 7 and 8.

In spite of these failings, however, the basic prediction of the Ricardian model—that countries should tend to export those goods in which their productivity is relatively high—has been strongly confirmed by a number of studies over the years.

Several classic tests of the Ricardian model, performed using data from the early post–World War II period, compared British with American productivity and trade.<sup>7</sup> This was an unusually illuminating comparison, because it revealed that British labor productivity was lower than American productivity in almost every sector. As a result, the United States had an absolute advantage in everything. Nonetheless, the amount of overall British exports was about as large as the amount of American exports at the time. Despite its lower absolute productivity, there must have been some sectors in which Britain had a comparative advantage. The Ricardian model would predict that these would be the sectors in which the United States' productivity advantage was smaller.

---

<sup>7</sup>The pioneering study by G. D. A. MacDougall is listed in Further Readings at the end of the chapter. A well-known follow-up study, on which we draw here, was Bela Balassa, “An Empirical Demonstration of Classical Comparative Cost Theory,” *Review of Economics and Statistics* 45 (August 1963), pp. 231–238; we use Balassa’s numbers as an illustration.

**FIGURE 3-6****Productivity and Exports**

A comparative study showed that U.S. exports were high relative to British exports in industries in which the United States had high relative labor productivity. Each dot represents a different industry.

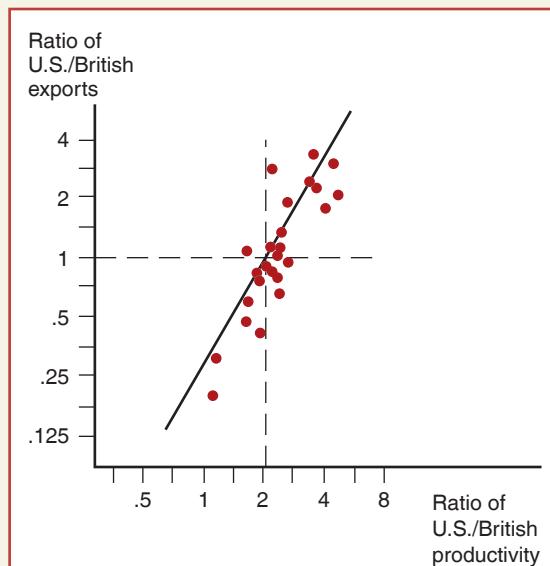


TABLE 3-3 Bangladesh versus China, 2011		
	Bangladeshi Output per Worker as % of China	Bangladeshi Exports as % of China
All industries	28.5	1.0
Apparel	77	15.5

Source: McKinsey and Company, "Bangladesh's Ready-Made Garments Industry: The Challenge of Growth," 2012; UN Monthly Bulletin of Statistics.

at a comparative disadvantage, so there is no way to measure their productivity in those sectors. For example, most countries do not produce airplanes, so there are no data on what their unit labor requirements would be if they did. Nonetheless, several pieces of evidence suggest that differences in labor productivity continue to play an important role in determining world trade patterns.

Perhaps the most striking demonstration of the continuing usefulness of the Ricardian theory of comparative advantage is the way it explains the emergence of countries with very low overall productivity as export powerhouses in some industries. Consider, for example, the case of clothing exports from Bangladesh. The Bangladeshi clothing industry received the worst kind of publicity in April 2013, when a building housing five garment factories collapsed, killing more than a thousand people. The backstory to this tragedy, however, was the growth of Bangladesh's clothing exports, which were rapidly gaining on those of China, previously the dominant supplier. This rapid growth took place even though Bangladesh is a very, very poor country, with extremely low overall productivity even compared with China, which as we have already seen is still low-productivity compared with the United States.

What was the secret of Bangladesh's success? It has fairly low productivity even in the production of clothing—but its productivity disadvantage there is much smaller than in other industries, so that the nation has a comparative advantage in clothing. Table 3-3 illustrates this point with some estimates based on 2011 data.

Compared with China, Bangladesh still has an *absolute* disadvantage in clothing production, with significantly lower productivity. But because its relative productivity in apparel is so much higher than in other industries, Bangladesh has a strong comparative advantage in apparel—and its apparel industry is giving China a run for the money.

In sum, while few economists believe that the Ricardian model is a fully adequate description of the causes and consequences of world trade, its two principal implications—that productivity differences play an important role in international trade and that it is comparative rather than absolute advantage that matters—do seem to be supported by the evidence.

## SUMMARY

- We examined the Ricardian model, the simplest model that shows how differences between countries give rise to trade and gains from trade. In this model, labor is the only factor of production, and countries differ only in the productivity of labor in different industries.
- In the Ricardian model, countries will export goods that their labor produces relatively efficiently and will import goods that their labor produces relatively inefficiently. In other words, a country's production pattern is determined by comparative advantage.

- We can show that trade benefits a country in either of two ways. First, we can think of trade as an indirect method of production. Instead of producing a good for itself, a country can produce another good and trade it for the desired good. The simple model shows that whenever a good is imported, it must be true that this indirect “production” requires less labor than direct production. Second, we can show that trade enlarges a country’s consumption possibilities, which implies gains from trade.
- The distribution of the gains from trade depends on the relative prices of the goods countries produce. To determine these relative prices, it is necessary to look at the relative world supply and demand for goods. The relative price implies a relative wage rate as well.
- The proposition that trade is beneficial is unqualified. That is, there is no requirement that a country be “competitive” or that the trade be “fair.” In particular, we can show that three commonly held beliefs about trade are wrong. First, a country gains from trade even if it has lower productivity than its trading partner in all industries. Second, trade is beneficial even if foreign industries are competitive only because of low wages. Third, trade is beneficial even if a country’s exports embody more labor than its imports.
- Extending the one-factor, two-good model to a world of many commodities does not alter these conclusions. The only difference is that it becomes necessary to focus directly on the relative demand for labor to determine relative wages rather than to work via relative demand for goods. Also, a many-commodity model can be used to illustrate the important point that transportation costs can give rise to a situation in which some goods are nontraded.
- While some of the predictions of the Ricardian model are clearly unrealistic, its basic prediction—that countries will tend to export goods in which they have relatively high productivity—has been confirmed by a number of studies.

## KEY TERMS

absolute advantage, p. 55	opportunity cost, p. 51	relative supply curve, p. 57
comparative advantage, p. 52	partial equilibrium analysis, p. 56	relative wage, p. 61
derived demand, p. 68	pauper labor argument, p. 65	Ricardian model, p. 52
gains from trade, p. 60	production possibility frontier, p. 53	unit labor requirement, p. 52
general equilibrium analysis, p. 56	relative demand curve, p. 57	
nontraded goods, p. 71		

## PROBLEMS

1. Home has 1,200 units of labor available. It can produce two goods, apples and bananas. The unit labor requirement in apple production is 3, while in banana production it is 2.
  - a. Graph Home’s production possibility frontier.
  - b. What is the opportunity cost of apples in terms of bananas?
  - c. In the absence of trade, what would be the price of apples in terms of bananas? Why?

2. Home is as described in problem 1. There is now also another country, Foreign, with a labor force of 800. Foreign's unit labor requirement in apple production is 5, while in banana production it is 1.
  - a. Graph Foreign's production possibility frontier.
  - b. Construct the world relative supply curve.
3. Now suppose world relative demand takes the following form: Demand for apples/demand for bananas = price of bananas/price of apples.
  - a. Graph the relative demand curve along with the relative supply curve.
  - b. What is the equilibrium relative price of apples?
  - c. Describe the pattern of trade.
  - d. Show that both Home and Foreign gain from trade.
4. Suppose in an hour, India and Thailand produce two products—rice and cloth. India produces 10 kgs of rice and 5 meters of cloth, and Thailand produces 5 kgs of rice and 2 meters of cloth. Using opportunity costs, explain which country should export cloth and which country should export rice.
5. Suppose Mike and Johnson produce two products—hamburgers and T-shirts. Mike produces 10 hamburgers or 3 T-shirts a day, and Johnson produces 7 hamburgers or 4 T-shirts. Assuming they can devote time to making either hamburgers or T-shirts.
  - a. Draw the production possibility curve.
  - b. Who enjoys the absolute advantage of producing both?
  - c. Who has a higher opportunity cost of making T-shirts?
  - d. Who has a comparative advantage in producing hamburgers?
6. “It has been all downhill for the West since China entered the world market; we just can't compete with hundreds of millions of people willing to work for almost nothing.” Discuss.
7. In China, local governments are responsible for setting the minimum wages. In the United States, a network of federal laws, state laws, and local laws set the minimum wages. How can this be associated with productivity and transformed into a comparative advantage?
8. Why do governments set the living standards of the people by setting the minimum wage? (Think about your answer to Problem 7.)
9. International immobility of resources is compensated by the international flow of goods. Justify the statement.
10. We have focused on the case of trade involving only two countries. Suppose that there are many countries capable of producing two goods and that each country has only one factor of production, labor. What could we say about the pattern of production and trade in this case? (Hint: Try constructing the world relative supply curve.)

## FURTHER READINGS

Donald Davis. “Intraindustry Trade: A Heckscher-Ohlin-Ricardo Approach.” *Journal of International Economics* 39 (November 1995), pp. 201–226. A recent revival of the Ricardian approach to explain trade between countries with similar resources.

Rudiger Dornbusch, Stanley Fischer, and Paul Samuelson. “Comparative Advantage, Trade and Payments in a Ricardian Model with a Continuum of Goods.” *American Economic Review* 67 (December 1977), pp. 823–839. More modern theoretical modeling in the Ricardian mode, developing the idea of simplifying the many-good Ricardian model by assuming that the number of goods is so large as to form a smooth continuum.

Giovanni Dosi, Keith Pavitt, and Luc Soete. *The Economics of Technical Change and International Trade*. Brighton: Wheatsheaf, 1988. An empirical examination that suggests that international trade in manufactured goods is largely driven by differences in national technological competencies.

Stephen Golub and Chang-Tai Hsieh. "Classical Ricardian Theory of Comparative Advantage Revisited." *Review of International Economics* 8(2), 2000, pp. 221–234. A modern statistical analysis of the relationship between relative productivity and trade patterns, which finds reasonably strong correlations.

G. D. A. MacDougall. "British and American Exports: A Study Suggested by the Theory of Comparative Costs." *Economic Journal* 61 (December 1951), pp. 697–724; 62 (September 1952), pp. 487–521. In this famous study, MacDougall used comparative data on U.S. and U.K. productivity to test the predictions of the Ricardian model.

John Stuart Mill. *Principles of Political Economy*. London: Longmans, Green, 1917. Mill's 1848 treatise extended Ricardo's work into a full-fledged model of international trade.

David Ricardo. *The Principles of Political Economy and Taxation*. Homewood, IL: Irwin, 1963. The basic source for the Ricardian model is Ricardo himself in this book, first published in 1817.



## SPECIFIC FACTORS AND INCOME DISTRIBUTION

**A**s we saw in Chapter 3, international trade can be mutually beneficial to the nations engaged in it. Yet throughout history, governments have protected sectors of the economy from import competition. Even before the recent spurt in protectionism under the Trump administration (see the box in this chapter for more details), the United States limited imports of apparel, textiles, sugar, ethanol, and dairy products, among many other commodities. During presidential reelection cycles, punitive tariffs are often imposed on import of goods produced in key political swing states.<sup>1</sup> If trade is such a good thing for the economy, why is there opposition to its effects? To understand the politics of trade, it is necessary to look at the effects of trade not just on a country as a whole but on the distribution of income within that country.

The Ricardian model of international trade developed in Chapter 3 illustrates the potential benefits from trade. In that model, trade leads to international specialization, with each country shifting its labor force from industries in which that labor is relatively inefficient to industries in which it is relatively more efficient. Because labor is the only factor of production in that model and it is assumed that labor can move freely from one industry to another, there is no possibility that individuals will be hurt by trade. The Ricardian model thus suggests not only that all *countries* gain from trade but also that every *individual* is made better off as a result of international trade because trade does not affect the distribution of income. In the real world, however, trade has substantial effects on the income distribution within each trading nation, so that in practice the benefits of trade are often distributed very unevenly.

There are two main reasons why international trade has strong effects on the distribution of income. First, resources cannot move immediately or without cost from one industry to another—a short-run consequence of trade. Second, industries differ in the factors of production they demand. A shift in the mix of goods a country produces will ordinarily reduce the demand for some factors of production while raising the demand for others—a long-run consequence of trade. For

<sup>1</sup>The scale of protection instituted by the Trump administration was unprecedented in the postwar period. But previous administrations nonetheless relied on high temporary tariffs targeted to politically important states. During his first term, President Barack Obama imposed a 35 percent tariff on tires (imported from China), and President George W. Bush imposed a 30 percent tariff on steel. Production of both steel and tires is concentrated in Ohio, a key swing state in those previous presidential elections.

both of these reasons, international trade is not as unambiguously beneficial as it appeared to be in Chapter 3. While trade may benefit a nation as a whole, it often hurts significant groups within the country in the short run and potentially, but to a lesser extent, in the long run.

We describe in greater detail later in this chapter the politics of the U.S. restrictions on sugar imports. It is substantially more expensive to farm sugar cane in the United States than in tropical countries. Eliminating those restrictions would drastically lower the price of sugar in the United States, raising standards of living as a whole. But sugar cane farmers, along with corn and beet farmers (crops that are used to produce sweeteners that substitute for sugar cane), would be hurt by freer trade: This would lead to lower prices for their crops in the United States. Those farmers could switch to other crops or find jobs in other sectors, but those transitions would be difficult and costly. Not surprisingly, those farmers are vehemently opposed to removing the sugar import restrictions. And politicians representing those farm districts consistently vote to maintain those restrictions.

A realistic analysis of trade must go beyond the Ricardian model to models in which trade can affect income distribution. In this chapter, we focus on the short-run consequences of trade on the income distribution when factors of production cannot move without cost between sectors. To keep our model simple, we assume that the sector-switching cost for some factors is high enough that such a switch is impossible in the short run. Those factors are *specific* to a particular sector.

### LEARNING GOALS

After reading this chapter, you will be able to:

- Understand how a mobile factor will respond to price changes by moving across sectors.
- Explain why trade will generate both winners and losers in the short run.
- Understand the meaning of gains from trade when there are losers.
- Discuss the reasons why trade is a politically contentious issue.
- Explain the arguments in favor of free trade despite the existence of losers.

## The Specific Factors Model

The **specific factors** model was developed by Paul Samuelson and Ronald Jones.<sup>2</sup> Like the simple Ricardian model, it assumes an economy that produces two goods and that can allocate its labor supply between the two sectors. Unlike the Ricardian model, however, the specific factors model allows for the existence of factors of production besides labor. Whereas labor is a **mobile factor** that can move between sectors, these other factors are assumed to be *specific*. That is, they can be used only in the production of particular goods.

<sup>2</sup>Paul Samuelson, “Ohlin Was Right,” *Swedish Journal of Economics* 73 (1971), pp. 365–384; and Ronald W. Jones, “A Three-Factor Model in Theory, Trade, and History,” in Jagdish Bhagwati et al., eds., *Trade, Balance of Payments, and Growth* (Amsterdam: North-Holland, 1971), pp. 3–21.

## WHAT IS A SPECIFIC FACTOR?

In the model developed in this chapter, we assume two factors of production—land and capital—are permanently tied to particular sectors of the economy. In advanced economies, however, agricultural land receives only a small part of national income. When economists apply the specific factors model to economies like those of the United States or France, they typically think of factor specificity not as a permanent condition but as a matter of time. For example, the vats used to brew beer and the stamping presses used to build auto bodies cannot be substituted for each other, and so these different kinds of equipment are industry-specific. Given time, however, it would be possible to redirect investment from auto factories to breweries or vice versa. As a result, in a long-term sense both vats and stamping presses can be considered two manifestations of a single, mobile factor called capital.

In practice, then, the distinction between specific and mobile factors is not a sharp line. Rather, it is a question of the speed of adjustment, with factors being more specific the longer it takes to redeploy them between industries. So how specific are the factors of production in the real economy?

Worker mobility varies greatly with the characteristics of the worker (such as age) and the job occupation (whether it requires general or job-specific skills). Nevertheless, one can measure an average rate of mobility by looking at the duration of unemployment following a worker's displacement. After four years, a displaced worker in the United States has the same probability of being employed as a similar worker who was not displaced.<sup>3</sup> This four-year time span compares with a lifetime of 15 or 20 years for a typical specialized machine and 30 to 50 years for structures (a shopping mall, office building, or production plant). So labor is certainly a less specific factor than most kinds of capital. However, even though most workers can find new employment in other sectors within a four-year time span, switching occupations entails additional costs: A displaced worker who is reemployed in a different occupation suffers an 18 percent permanent drop in wages (on average). This compares with a 6 percent drop if the worker does not switch occupations.<sup>4</sup> Thus, labor is truly flexible only before a worker has invested in any occupation-specific skills.

### Assumptions of the Model

Imagine an economy that can produce two goods, cloth and food. Instead of one factor of production, however, the country has *three*: labor ( $L$ ), capital ( $K$ ), and land ( $T$  for *terrain*). Cloth is produced using capital and labor (but not land), while food is produced using land and labor (but not capital). Labor is therefore a *mobile* factor that can be used in either sector, while land and capital are both *specific* factors that can be used only in the production of one good. Land can also be thought of as a different type of capital, one that is specific to the food sector (see “What Is a Specific Factor?” box).

How much of each good does the economy produce? The economy’s output of cloth depends on how much capital and labor are used in that sector. This relationship is summarized by a **production function** that tells us the quantity of cloth that can be produced given any input of capital and labor. The production function for cloth can be summarized algebraically as

$$Q_C = Q_C(K, L_C), \quad (4-1)$$

<sup>3</sup>See Bruce Fallick, “The Industrial Mobility of Displaced Workers,” *Journal of Labor Economics* 11 (April 1993), pp. 302–323.

<sup>4</sup>See Gueorgui Kambourov and Iourii Manovskii, “Occupational Specificity of Human Capital,” *International Economic Review* 50 (February 2009), pp. 63–115.

where  $Q_C$  is the economy's output of cloth,  $K$  is the economy's capital stock, and  $L_C$  is the labor force employed in cloth. Similarly, for food we can write the production function

$$Q_F = Q_F(T, L_F), \quad (4-2)$$

where  $Q_F$  is the economy's output of food,  $T$  is the economy's supply of land, and  $L_F$  is the labor force devoted to food production. For the economy as a whole, the labor employed must equal the total labor supply  $L$ :

$$L_C + L_F = L. \quad (4-3)$$

## Production Possibilities

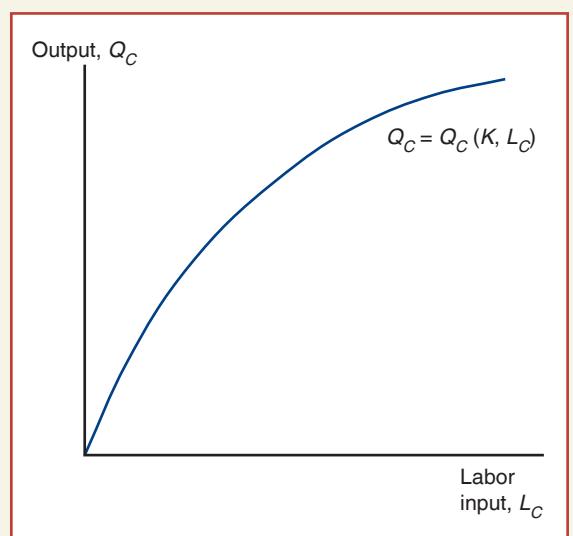
The specific factors model assumes that each of the specific factors, capital and land, can be used in only one sector, cloth and food, respectively. Only labor can be used in either sector. Thus, to analyze the economy's production possibilities, we need only to ask how the economy's mix of output changes as labor is shifted from one sector to the other. This can be done graphically, first by representing the production functions (4-1) and (4-2) and then by putting them together to derive the **production possibility frontier**.

Figure 4-1 illustrates the relationship between labor input and output of cloth. The larger the input of labor for a given capital supply, the larger the output. In Figure 4-1, the slope of  $Q_C(K, L_C)$  represents the **marginal product of labor**, that is, the addition to output generated by adding one more person-hour. However, if labor input is increased without increasing capital, there will normally be **diminishing returns**: Because adding a worker means that each worker has less capital to work with, each successive increment of labor will add less to production than the last. Diminishing returns are reflected in the shape of the production function:  $Q_C(K, L_C)$  gets flatter as we move to the right, indicating that the marginal product of labor declines as more labor is used.<sup>5</sup>

**FIGURE 4-1**

### The Production Function for Cloth

The more labor employed in the production of cloth, the larger the output. As a result of diminishing returns, however, each successive person-hour increases output by less than the previous one; this is shown by the fact that the curve relating labor input to output gets flatter at higher levels of employment.



<sup>5</sup>Diminishing returns to a single factor does not imply diminishing returns to scale when all factors of production are adjusted. Thus, diminishing returns to labor is entirely consistent with constant returns to scale in both labor and capital.

**FIGURE 4-2**

### The Marginal Product of Labor

The marginal product of labor in the cloth sector, equal to the slope of the production function shown in Figure 4-1, is lower the more labor the sector employs.

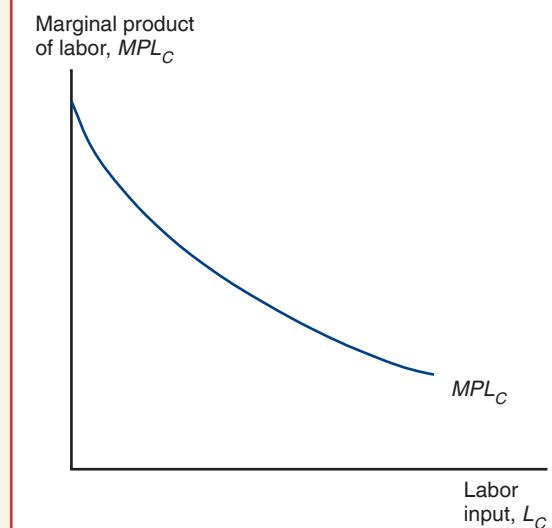


Figure 4-2 shows the same information a different way. In this figure, we directly plot the marginal product of labor as a function of the labor employed. (In the appendix to this chapter, we show that the area under the marginal product curve represents the total output of cloth.)

A similar pair of diagrams can represent the production function for food. These diagrams can then be combined to derive the production possibility frontier for the economy, as illustrated in Figure 4-3. As we saw in Chapter 3, the production possibility frontier shows what the economy is capable of producing; in this case, it shows how much food it can produce for any given output of cloth and vice versa.

Figure 4-3 is a four-quadrant diagram. In the lower-right quadrant, we show the production function for cloth illustrated in Figure 4-1. This time, however, we turn the figure on its side: A movement downward along the vertical axis represents an increase in the labor input to the cloth sector, while a movement to the right along the horizontal axis represents an increase in the output of cloth. In the upper-left quadrant, we show the corresponding production function for food; this part of the figure is also flipped around, so that a movement to the left along the horizontal axis indicates an increase in labor input to the food sector, while an upward movement along the vertical axis indicates an increase in food output.

The lower-left quadrant represents the economy's allocation of labor. Both quantities are measured in the reverse of the usual direction. A downward movement along the vertical axis indicates an increase in the labor employed in cloth; a leftward movement along the horizontal axis indicates an increase in labor employed in food. Since an increase in employment in one sector must mean that less labor is available for the other, the possible allocations are indicated by a downward-sloping line. This line, labeled  $AA$ , slopes downward at a 45-degree angle; that is, it has a slope of  $-1$ . To see why this line represents the possible labor allocations, notice that if all labor were employed in food production,  $L_F$  would equal  $L$ , while  $L_C$  would equal 0. If one were then to move labor gradually into the cloth sector, each person-hour moved would increase  $L_C$  by one unit while reducing  $L_F$  by one unit, tracing a line with a slope

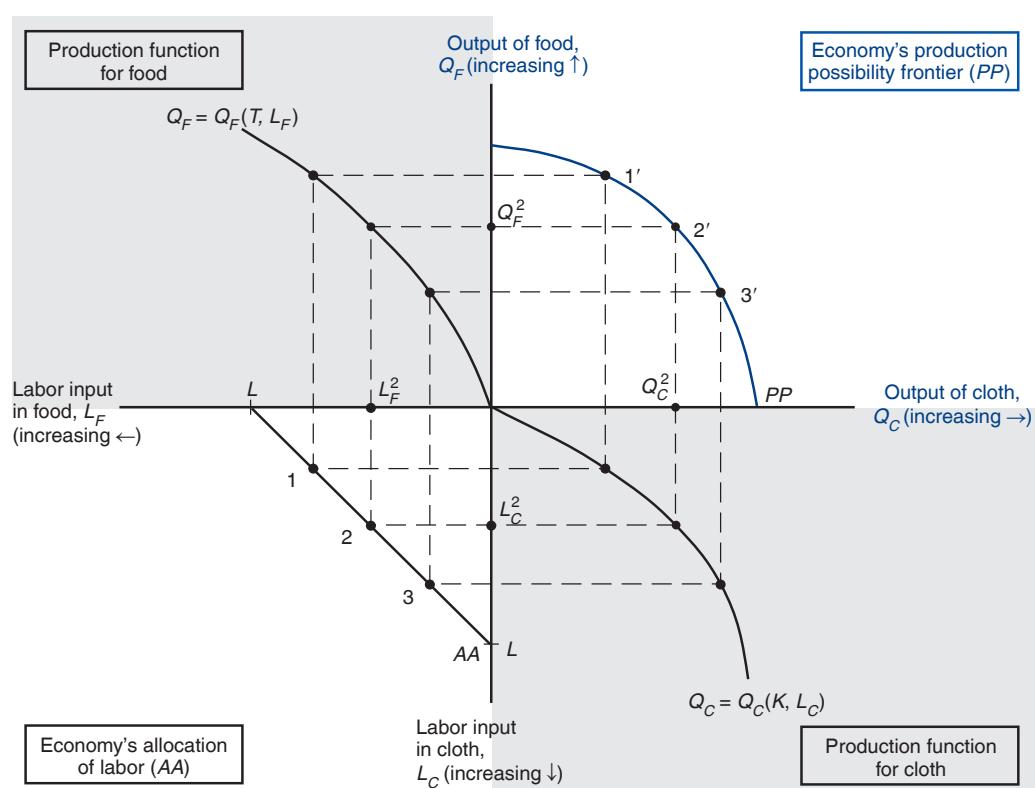


FIGURE 4-3

### The Production Possibility Frontier in the Specific Factors Model

Production of cloth and food is determined by the allocation of labor. In the lower-left quadrant, the allocation of labor between sectors can be illustrated by a point on line  $AA$ , which represents all combinations of labor input to cloth and food that sum up to the total labor supply  $L$ . Corresponding to any particular point on  $AA$ , such as point 2, is a labor input to cloth ( $L_C^2$ ) and a labor input to food ( $L_F^2$ ). The curves in the lower-right and upper-left quadrants represent the production functions for cloth and food, respectively; these allow determination of output ( $Q_C^2$ ,  $Q_F^2$ ) given labor input. Then in the upper-right quadrant, the curve  $PP$  shows how the output of the two goods varies as the allocation of labor is shifted from food to cloth, with the output points 1', 2', 3' corresponding to the labor allocations 1, 2, 3. Because of diminishing returns,  $PP$  is a bowed-out curve instead of a straight line.

of  $-1$ , until the entire labor supply  $L$  is employed in the cloth sector. Any particular allocation of labor between the two sectors can then be represented by a point on  $AA$ , such as point 2.

We can now see how to determine production given any particular allocation of labor between the two sectors. Suppose the allocation of labor were represented by point 2 in the lower-left quadrant, that is, with  $L_C^2$  hours in cloth and  $L_F^2$  hours in food. Then we can use the production function for each sector to determine output:  $Q_C^2$  units of cloth,  $Q_F^2$  units of food. Using coordinates  $Q_C^2$ ,  $Q_F^2$ , point 2' in the upper-right quadrant of Figure 4-3 shows the resulting outputs of cloth and food.

To trace the whole production possibility frontier, we simply imagine repeating this exercise for many alternative allocations of labor. We might start with most of the labor allocated to food production, as at point 1 in the lower-left quadrant, and then gradually increase the amount of labor used in cloth until very few workers are employed in food, as at point 3; the corresponding points in the upper-right quadrant will trace out the curve running from 1' to 3'. Thus,  $PP$  in the upper-right quadrant shows the economy's production possibilities for given supplies of land, labor, and capital.

In the Ricardian model, where labor is the only factor of production, the production possibility frontier is a straight line because the opportunity cost of cloth in terms of food is constant. In the specific factors model, however, the addition of other factors of production changes the shape of the production possibility frontier  $PP$  to a curve. The curvature of  $PP$  reflects diminishing returns to labor in each sector; these diminishing returns are the crucial difference between the specific factors and the Ricardian models.

Notice that when tracing  $PP$ , we shift labor from the food to the cloth sector. If we shift one person-hour of labor from food to cloth, however, this extra input will increase output in that sector by the marginal product of labor in cloth,  $MPL_C$ . To increase cloth output by one unit, then, we must increase labor input by  $1/MPL_C$  hours. Meanwhile, each unit of labor input shifted out of food production will lower output in that sector by the marginal product of labor in food,  $MPL_F$ . To increase output of cloth by one unit, then, the economy must reduce output of food by  $MPL_F/MPL_C$  units. The slope of  $PP$ , which measures the opportunity cost of cloth in terms of food—that is, the number of units of food output that must be sacrificed to increase cloth output by one unit—is therefore

$$\text{Slope of production possibilities curve} = -MPL_F/MPL_C.$$

We can now see why  $PP$  has the bowed shape it does. As we move from 1' to 3',  $L_C$  rises and  $L_F$  falls. We saw in Figure 4-2, however, that as  $L_C$  rises, the marginal product of labor in cloth falls; correspondingly, as  $L_F$  falls, the marginal product of labor in food rises. As more and more labor is moved to the cloth sector, each additional unit of labor becomes less valuable in the cloth sector and more valuable in the food sector: The opportunity cost (foregone food production) of each additional cloth unit rises, and  $PP$  thus gets steeper as we move down it to the right.

We have shown how output is determined, given the allocation of labor. The next step is to ask how a market economy determines what the allocation of labor should be.

## Prices, Wages, and Labor Allocation

How much labor will be employed in each sector? To answer this, we need to look at supply and demand in the labor market. The demand for labor in each sector depends on the price of output and the wage rate. In turn, the wage rate depends on the combined demand for labor by food and cloth producers. Given the prices of cloth and food together with the wage rate, we can determine each sector's employment and output.

First, let's focus on the demand for labor. In each sector, profit-maximizing employers will demand labor up to the point where the value produced by an additional person-hour equals the cost of employing that hour. In the cloth sector, for example, the value of an additional person-hour is the marginal product of labor in cloth multiplied by the price of one unit of cloth:  $MPL_C \times P_C$ . If  $w$  is the wage rate of labor, employers will therefore hire workers up to the point where

$$MPL_C \times P_C = w. \quad (4-4)$$

But the marginal product of labor in cloth, already illustrated in Figure 4-2, slopes downward because of diminishing returns. So for any given price of cloth  $P_C$ , the value of that marginal product,  $MPL_C \times P_C$ , will also slope down. We can therefore think of equation (4-4) as defining the demand curve for labor in the cloth sector: If the wage rate falls, other things equal, employers in the cloth sector will want to hire more workers.

Similarly, the value of an additional person-hour in food is  $MPL_F \times P_F$ . The demand curve for labor in the food sector may therefore be written

$$MPL_F \times P_F = w. \quad (4-5)$$

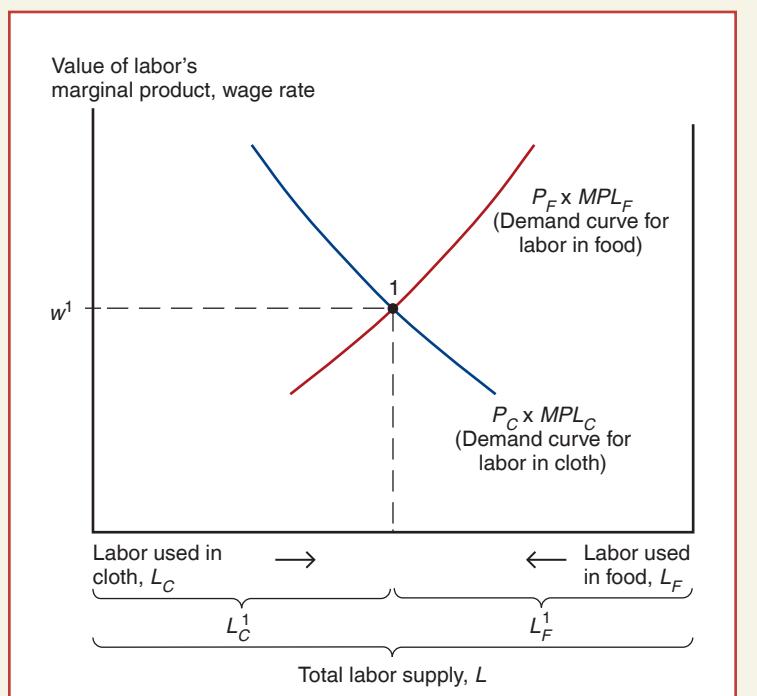
The wage rate  $w$  must be the same in both sectors because of the assumption that labor is freely mobile between sectors. That is, because labor is a mobile factor, it will move from the low-wage sector to the high-wage sector until wages are equalized. The wage rate, in turn, is determined by the requirement that total labor demand (total employment) equals total labor supply. This equilibrium condition for labor is represented in equation (4-3).

By representing these two labor demand curves in a diagram (Figure 4-4), we can see how the wage rate and employment in each sector are determined given the prices of food and cloth. Along the horizontal axis of Figure 4-4, we show the total labor supply  $L$ . Measuring from the left of the diagram, we show the value of the marginal product of labor in cloth, which is simply the  $MPL_C$  curve from Figure 4-2 multiplied by  $P_C$ . This is the demand curve for labor in the cloth sector. Measuring from the right, we show the value of the marginal product of labor in food, which is the demand for labor in food. The equilibrium wage rate and allocation of labor between the two sectors is

**FIGURE 4-4**

### The Allocation of Labor

Labor is allocated so that the value of its marginal product ( $P \times MPL$ ) is the same in the cloth and food sectors. In equilibrium, the wage rate is equal to the value of labor's marginal product.



represented by point 1. At the wage rate  $w^1$ , the sum of labor demanded in the cloth ( $L_C^1$ ) and food ( $L_F^1$ ) sectors just equals the total labor supply  $L$ .

A useful relationship between relative prices and output emerges clearly from this analysis of labor allocation; this relationship applies to more general situations than that described by the specific factors model. Equations (4-4) and (4-5) imply that

$$MPL_C \times P_C = MPL_F \times P_F = w$$

or, rearranging, that

$$-MPL_F/MPL_C = -P_C/P_F. \quad (4-6)$$

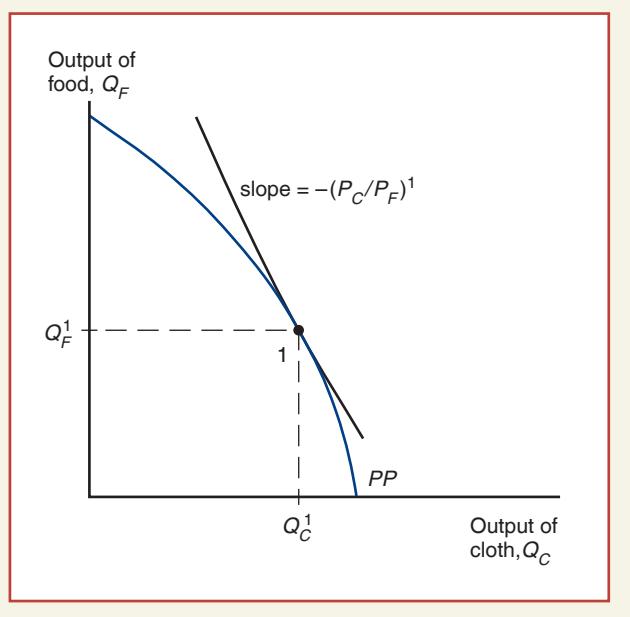
The left side of equation (4-6) is the slope of the production possibility frontier at the actual production point; the right side is minus the relative price of cloth. This result tells us that *at the production point, the production possibility frontier must be tangent to a line whose slope is minus the price of cloth divided by that of food.* As we will see in the following chapters, this is a very general result that characterizes production responses to changes in relative prices along a production possibility frontier. It is illustrated in Figure 4-5: If the relative price of cloth is  $(P_C/P_F)^1$ , the economy produces at point 1.

What happens to the allocation of labor and the distribution of income when the prices of food and cloth change? Notice that any price change can be broken into two parts: an equal-proportional change in both  $P_C$  and  $P_F$  and a change in only one price. For example, suppose the price of cloth rises 17 percent and the price of food rises 10 percent. We can analyze the effects of this by first asking what happens if cloth and food prices both rise by 10 percent and then by finding out what happens if only cloth prices rise by 7 percent. This allows us to separate the effect of changes in the overall price level from the effect of changes in relative prices.

**FIGURE 4-5**

### Production in the Specific Factors Model

The economy produces at the point on its production possibility frontier ( $PP$ ) where the slope of that frontier equals minus the relative price of cloth.



**An Equal-Proportional Change in Prices** Figure 4-6 shows the effect of an equal-proportional increase in  $P_C$  and  $P_F$ .  $P_C$  rises from  $P_C^1$  to  $P_C^2$ ;  $P_F$  rises from  $P_F^1$  to  $P_F^2$ . If the prices of both goods increase by 10 percent, the labor demand curves will also shift up by 10 percent. As you can see from the diagram, these shifts lead to a 10 percent increase in the wage rate from  $w^1$  (point 1) to  $w^2$  (point 2). However, the allocation of labor between the sectors and the outputs of the two goods does not change.

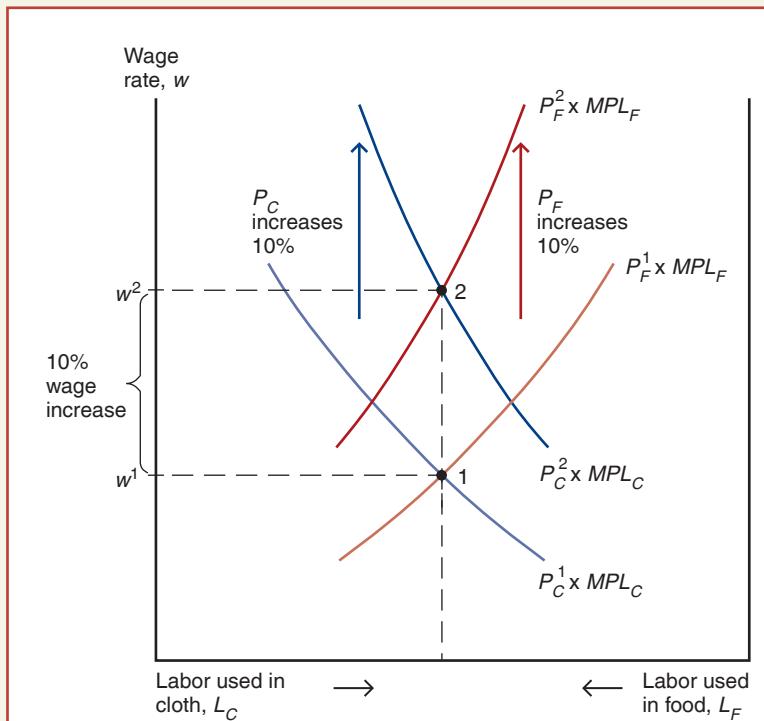
In fact, when  $P_C$  and  $P_F$  change in the same proportion, no real changes occur. The wage rate rises in the same proportion as the prices, so *real* wage rates, the ratios of the wage rate to the prices of goods, are unaffected. *With the same amount of labor employed in each sector, receiving the same real wage rate, the real incomes of capital owners and landowners also remain the same. So everyone is in exactly the same position as before.* This illustrates a general principle: Changes in the overall price level have no real effects, that is, do not change any physical quantities in the economy. Only changes in relative prices—which in this case means the price of cloth relative to the price of food,  $P_C/P_F$ —affect welfare or the allocation of resources.

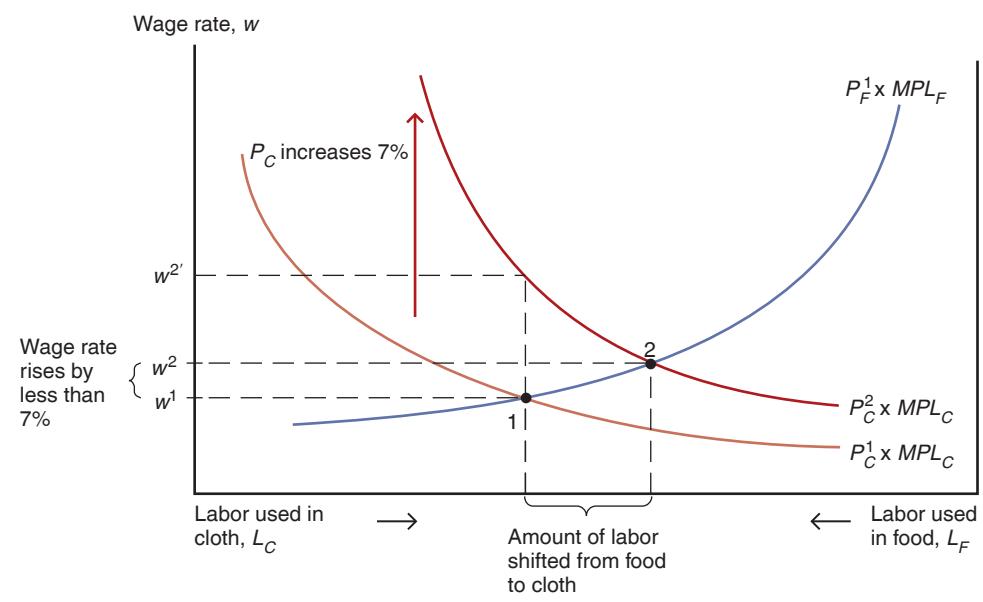
**A Change in Relative Prices** Consider the effect of a price change that *does* affect relative prices. Figure 4-7 shows the effect of a change in the price of only one good, in this case a 7 percent rise in  $P_C$  from  $P_C^1$  to  $P_C^2$ . The increase in  $P_C$  shifts the cloth labor demand curve in the same proportion as the price increase and shifts the equilibrium from point 1 to point 2. Notice two important facts about the results of this shift. First, although the wage rate rises, it rises by *less* than the increase in the price of cloth. If wages had risen in the same proportion as the price of cloth (7 percent increase), then wages would have risen from  $w^1$  to  $w^{1'}$ . Instead, wages rise by a smaller proportion, from  $w^1$  to  $w^2$ .

**FIGURE 4-6**

### An Equal-Proportional Increase in the Prices of Cloth and Food

The labor demand curves in cloth and food both shift up in proportion to the rise in  $P_C$  from  $P_C^1$  to  $P_C^2$  and the rise in  $P_F$  from  $P_F^1$  to  $P_F^2$ . The wage rate rises in the same proportion, from  $w^1$  to  $w^2$ , but the allocation of labor between the two sectors does not change.



**FIGURE 4-7****A Rise in the Price of Cloth**

The cloth labor demand curve rises in proportion to the 7 percent increase in  $P_C$ , but the wage rate rises less than proportionately. Labor moves from the food sector to the cloth sector. Output of cloth rises; output of food falls.

Second, when only  $P_C$  rises, in contrast to a simultaneous rise in  $P_C$  and  $P_F$ , labor shifts from the food sector to the cloth sector and the output of cloth rises while that of food falls. (This is why  $w$  does not rise as much as  $P_C$ . Because cloth employment rises, the marginal product of labor in that sector falls.)

The effect of a rise in the relative price of cloth can also be seen directly by looking at the production possibility curve. In Figure 4-8, we show the effects of the same rise in the price of cloth, which raises the *relative* price of cloth from  $(P_C/P_F)^1$  to  $(P_C/P_F)^2$ . The production point, which is always located where the slope of  $PP$  equals minus the relative price, shifts from 1 to 2. Food output falls and cloth output rises as a result of the rise in the relative price of cloth.

Since higher relative prices of cloth lead to a higher output of cloth relative to that of food, we can draw a relative supply curve showing  $Q_C/Q_F$  as a function of  $P_C/P_F$ . This relative supply curve is shown as  $RS$  in Figure 4-9. As we showed in Chapter 3, we can also draw a relative demand curve, which is illustrated by the downward-sloping line  $RD$ . In the absence of international trade, the equilibrium relative price  $(P_C/P_F)^1$  and output  $(Q_C/Q_F)^1$  are determined by the intersection of relative supply and demand.

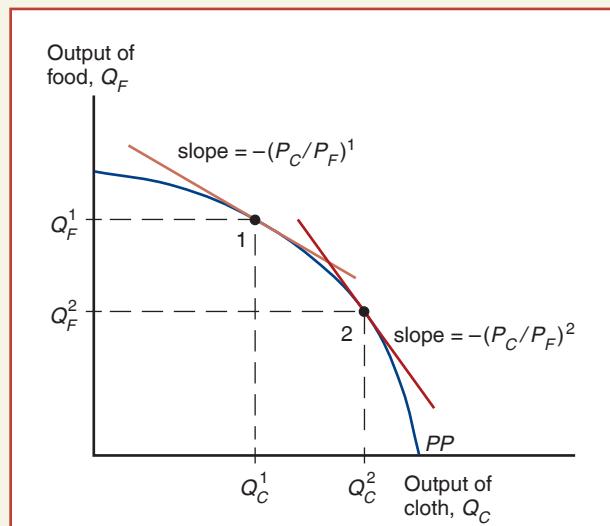
**Relative Prices and the Distribution of Income**

So far, we have examined the following aspects of the specific factors model: (1) the determination of production possibilities given an economy's resources and technology and (2) the determination of resource allocation, production, and relative prices in a

**FIGURE 4-8**

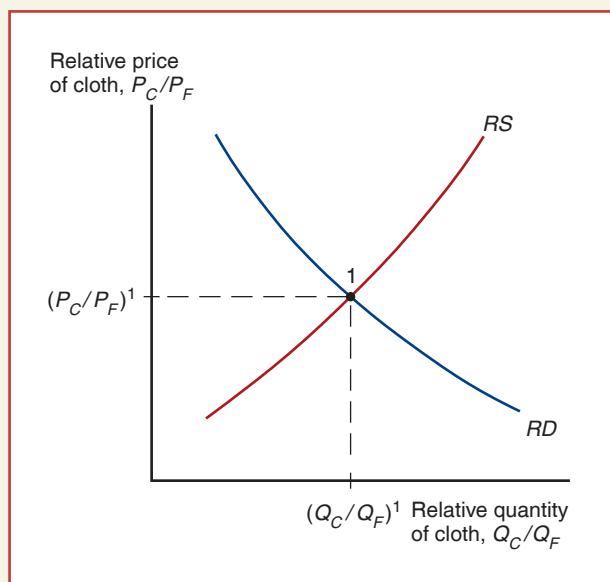
### The Response of Output to a Change in the Relative Price of Cloth

The economy always produces at the point on its production possibility frontier ( $PP$ ) where the slope of  $PP$  equals minus the relative price of cloth. Thus, an increase in  $P_C/P_F$  causes production to move down and to the right along the production possibility frontier corresponding to higher output of cloth and lower output of food.

**FIGURE 4-9**

### Determination of Relative Prices

In the specific factors model, a higher relative price of cloth will lead to an increase in the output of cloth relative to that of food. Thus, the relative supply curve  $RS$  is upward sloping. Equilibrium relative quantities and prices are determined by the intersection of  $RS$  with the relative demand curve  $RD$ .



market economy. Before turning to the effects of international trade, we must consider the effect of changes in relative prices on the distribution of income.

Look again at Figure 4-7, which shows the effect of a rise in the price of cloth. We have already noted that the demand curve for labor in the cloth sector will shift upward in proportion to the rise in  $P_C$ , so that if  $P_C$  rises by 7 percent, the curve defined by  $P_C \times MPL_C$  also rises by 7 percent. We have also seen that unless the price of food also

rises by at least 7 percent,  $w$  will rise by *less* than  $P_C$ . Thus, if only cloth prices rise by 7 percent, we would expect the wage rate to rise by only, say, 3 percent.

Let's look at what this outcome implies for the incomes of three groups: workers, owners of capital, and owners of land. Workers find that their wage rate has risen but less than in proportion to the rise in  $P_C$ . Thus, their real wage in terms of cloth (the amount of cloth they can buy with their wage income),  $w/P_C$ , falls, while their real wage in terms of food,  $w/P_F$ , rises. Given this information, we cannot say whether workers are better or worse off; this depends on the relative importance of cloth and food in workers' consumption (determined by the workers' preferences), a question we will not pursue further.

Owners of capital, however, are definitely better off. The real wage rate in terms of cloth has fallen, so the profits of capital owners in terms of what they produce (cloth) rises. That is, the income of capital owners will rise more than proportionately with the rise in  $P_C$ . Since  $P_C$  in turn rises relative to  $P_F$ , the income of capitalists clearly goes up in terms of both goods. Conversely, landowners are definitely worse off. They lose for two reasons: The real wage in terms of food (the good they produce) rises, squeezing their income, and the rise in cloth price reduces the purchasing power of any given income. (The chapter appendix describes the welfare changes of capitalists and landowners in further detail.)

If the relative price had moved in the opposite direction and the relative price of cloth had *decreased*, then the predictions would be reversed: Capital owners would be worse off, and landowners would be better off. The change in the welfare of workers would again be ambiguous because their real wage in terms of cloth would rise, but their real wage in terms of food would fall. The effect of a relative price change on the distribution of income can be summarized as follows:

- The factor specific to the sector whose relative price increases is definitely better off.
- The factor specific to the sector whose relative price decreases is definitely worse off.
- The change in welfare for the mobile factor is ambiguous.

## International Trade in the Specific Factors Model

We just saw how changes in relative prices have strong repercussions for the distribution of income, creating both winners and losers. We now want to link this relative price change with international trade and match up the predictions for winners and losers with the trade orientation of a sector.

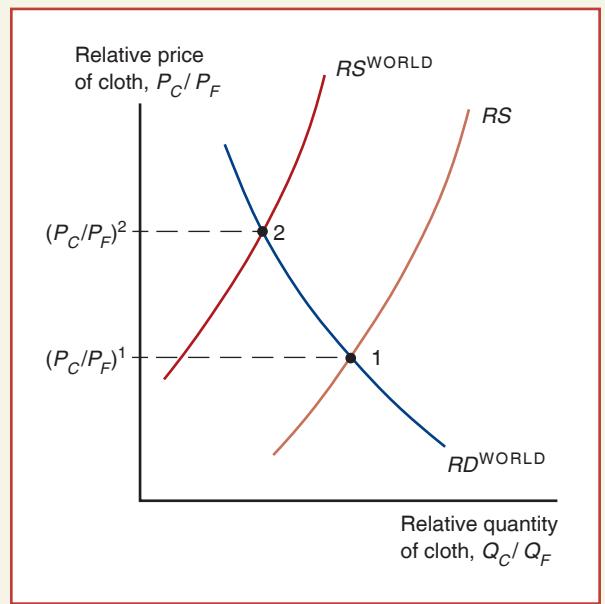
For trade to take place, a country must face a world relative price that differs from the relative price that would prevail in the absence of trade. Figure 4-9 shows how this relative price was determined for our specific factors economy. In Figure 4-10, we also add a relative supply curve for the world.

Why might the relative supply curve for the world be different from that for our specific factors economy? The other countries in the world could have different technologies, as in the Ricardian model. Now that our model has more than one factor of production, however, the other countries could also differ in their resources: the total amounts of land, capital, and labor available. What is important here is that the economy faces a different relative price when it is open to international trade.

The change in relative price is shown in Figure 4-10. When the economy is open to trade, the relative price of cloth is determined by the relative supply and demand for the world; this corresponds to the relative price ( $P_C/P_F$ )<sup>2</sup>. If the economy could not

**FIGURE 4-10****Trade and Relative Prices**

The figure shows the relative supply curve for the specific factors economy along with the world relative supply curve. The differences between the two relative supply curves can be due to either technology or resource differences across countries. There are no differences in relative demand across countries. Opening up to trade induces an increase in the relative price from  $(P_C/P_F)^1$  to  $(P_C/P_F)^2$ .



trade, then the relative price would be lower, at  $(P_C/P_F)^1$ .<sup>6</sup> The increase in the relative price from  $(P_C/P_F)^1$  to  $(P_C/P_F)^2$  induces the economy to produce relatively more cloth. (This is also shown as the move from point 1 to point 2 along the economy's production possibility frontier in Figure 4-8.) At the same time, consumers respond to the higher relative price of cloth by demanding relatively more food. At the higher relative price  $(P_C/P_F)^2$ , the economy thus exports cloth and imports food.

If opening up to trade had been associated with a decrease in the relative price of cloth, then the changes in relative supply and demand would be reversed, and the economy would become a food exporter and a cloth importer. We can summarize both cases with the intuitive prediction that—when opening up to trade—an economy exports the good whose relative price has increased and imports the good whose relative price has decreased.<sup>7</sup>

## Income Distribution and the Gains from Trade

We have seen how production possibilities are determined by resources and technology, how the choice of what to produce is determined by the relative price of cloth, how changes in the relative price of cloth affect the real incomes of different factors of production, and how trade affects both relative prices and the economy's response to those price changes. Now we can ask the crucial question: Who gains and who loses from international trade? We begin by asking how the welfare of particular groups is affected and then how trade affects the welfare of the country as a whole.

To assess the effects of trade on particular groups, the key point is that international trade shifts the relative price of the goods traded. We just saw in the previous section

<sup>6</sup>In the figure, we assumed there were no differences in preferences across countries, so we have a single relative demand curve for each country and the world as a whole.

<sup>7</sup>We describe how changes in relative prices affect a country's pattern of trade in more detail in Chapter 6.

that opening to trade will increase the relative price of the good in the new export sector. We can link this prediction with our results regarding how relative price changes translate into changes in the distribution of income. More specifically, we saw that the specific factor in the sector whose relative price increases will gain and that the specific factor in the other sector (whose relative price decreases) will lose. We also saw that the welfare changes for the mobile factor are ambiguous.

The general outcome, then, is simple: *Trade benefits the factor specific to the export sector of each country but hurts the factor specific to the import-competing sectors, with ambiguous effects on mobile factors.*

Do the gains from trade outweigh the losses? One way to try to answer this question would be to sum up the gains of the winners and the losses of the losers and compare them. The problem with this procedure is that we are comparing welfare, which is inherently subjective. A better way to assess the overall gains from trade is to ask a different question: Could those who gain from trade compensate those who lose and still be better off themselves? If so, then trade is *potentially* a source of gain to everyone.

In order to show aggregate gains from trade, we need to state some basic relationships among prices, production, and consumption. In a country that cannot trade, the output of a good must equal its consumption. If  $D_C$  is consumption of cloth and  $D_F$  consumption of food, then in a closed economy,  $D_C = Q_C$  and  $D_F = Q_F$ . International trade makes it possible for the mix of cloth and food consumed to differ from the mix produced. While the amounts of each good that a country consumes and produces may differ, however, a country cannot spend more than it earns: The *value* of consumption must be equal to the value of production. That is,

$$P_C \times D_C + P_F \times D_F = P_C \times Q_C + P_F \times Q_F. \quad (4-7)$$

Equation (4-7) can be rearranged to yield the following:

$$D_F - Q_F = (P_C/P_F) \times (Q_C - D_C). \quad (4-8)$$

$D_F - Q_F$  is the economy's food *imports*, the amount by which its consumption of food exceeds its production. The right-hand side of the equation is the product of the relative price of cloth and the amount by which production of cloth exceeds consumption, that is, the economy's *exports* of cloth. The equation, then, states that imports of food equal exports of cloth times the relative price of cloth. While it does not tell us how much the economy will import or export, the equation does show that the amount the economy can afford to import is limited, or constrained, by the amount it exports. Equation (4-8) is therefore known as a **budget constraint**.<sup>8</sup>

Figure 4-11 illustrates two important features of the budget constraint for a trading economy. First, the slope of the budget constraint is minus  $P_C/P_F$ , the relative price of cloth. The reason is that consuming one less unit of cloth saves the economy  $P_C$ ; this is enough to purchase  $P_C/P_F$  extra units of food. In other words, one unit of cloth can be exchanged on world markets for  $P_C/P_F$  units of food. Second, the budget constraint is tangent to the production possibility frontier at the chosen production point (shown as point 2 here). Thus, the economy can always afford to consume what it produces.

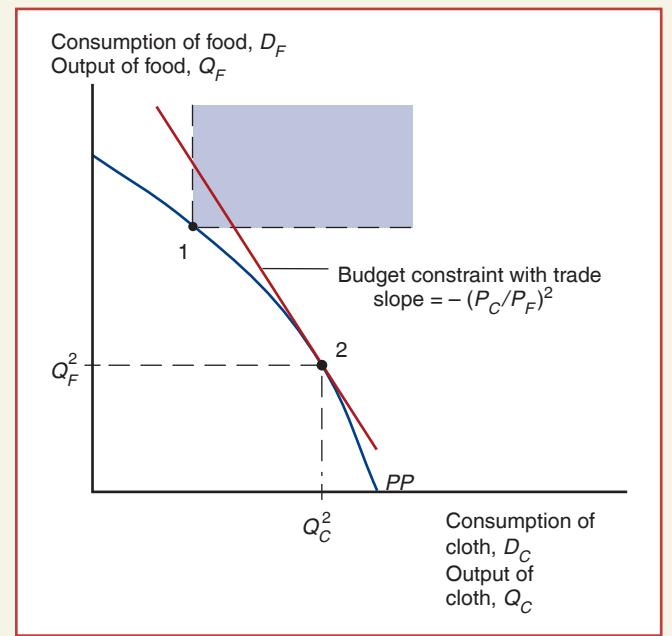
---

<sup>8</sup>The constraint that the value of consumption equals that of production (or, equivalently, that imports equal exports in value) may not hold when countries can borrow from other countries or lend to them. For now, we assume that these possibilities are not available and that the budget constraint [equation (4-8)] therefore holds. International borrowing and lending are examined in Chapter 6, which shows that an economy's consumption over time is still constrained by the necessity of paying its debts to foreign lenders.

**FIGURE 4-11**

### Budget Constraint for a Trading Economy and Gains from Trade

Point 2 represents the economy's production. The economy can choose its consumption point along its budget constraint (a line that passes through point 2 and has a slope equal to minus the relative price of cloth). Before trade, the economy must consume what it produces, such as point 1 on the production possibility frontier (PP). The portion of the budget constraint in the colored region consists of feasible post-trade consumption choices, with consumption of both goods higher than at pretrade point 1.



To illustrate that trade is a source of potential gain for everyone, we proceed in three steps:

1. First, we notice that in the absence of trade, the economy would have to produce what it consumed, and vice versa. Thus, the *consumption* of the economy in the absence of trade would have to be a point on the *production* possibility frontier. In Figure 4-11, a typical pretrade consumption point is shown as point 1.
2. Next, we notice that it is possible for a trading economy to consume more of *both* goods than it would have in the absence of trade. The budget constraint in Figure 4-11 represents all the possible combinations of food and cloth that the country could consume given a world relative price of cloth equal to  $(P_C/P_F)^2$ . Part of that budget constraint—the part in the colored region—represents situations in which the economy consumes more of both cloth and food than it could in the absence of trade. Notice that this result does not depend on the assumption that pretrade production and consumption is at point 1; unless pretrade production is at point 2, so that trade has no effect on production at all, there is always a part of the budget constraint that allows the consumption of more of both goods.
3. Finally, observe that if the economy as a whole consumes more of both goods, then it is possible in principle to give each *individual* more of both goods. This would make everyone better off. This shows, then, that it is possible to ensure that everyone is better off as a result of trade. Of course, everyone might be even better off if they had less of one good and more of the other, but this only reinforces the conclusion that everyone has the potential to gain from trade.

The fundamental reason why trade potentially benefits a country is that it *expands the economy's choices*. This expansion of choice means that it is always possible to redistribute income in such a way that everyone gains from trade.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>9</sup>The argument that trade is beneficial because it enlarges an economy's choices is much more general than this specific example. For a thorough discussion, see Paul Samuelson, "The Gains from International Trade Once Again," *Economic Journal* 72 (1962), pp. 820–829.

That everyone *could* gain from trade unfortunately does not mean that everyone actually does. In the real world, the presence of losers as well as winners from trade is one of the most important reasons why trade is not free.

## The Political Economy of Trade: A Preliminary View

Trade often produces losers as well as winners. This insight is crucial to understanding the considerations that actually determine trade policy in the modern world economy. Our specific factors model informs us that those who stand to lose most from trade (at least in the short run) are the immobile factors in the import-competing sector. In the real world, this includes not only the owners of capital but also a portion of the labor force in those importing-competing sectors. Some of those workers (especially lower-skilled workers) have a hard time transitioning from the import-competing sectors (where trade induces reductions in employment) to export sectors (where trade induces increases in employment). Some suffer unemployment spells as a result. In the United States, workers in the import-competing sectors earn wages substantially below the average wage, and those workers earning the lowest wage face the highest risk of separation from their current employer due to import competition. (For example, the average wage of production workers in the apparel sector in 2019 was 25 percent below the average wage for all production workers.) One result of this disparity in wages is widespread sympathy for the plight of those workers and, consequently, for restrictions on apparel imports. The gains that more affluent consumers would realize if more imports were allowed and the associated increases in employment in the export sectors (which hire, on average, relatively higher-skilled workers) do not matter as much.

Does this mean that trade should be allowed only if it doesn't hurt lower-income people? Few international economists would agree. In spite of the real importance of income distribution, most economists remain strongly in favor of more or less free trade. There are three main reasons why economists do *not* generally stress the income distribution effects of trade:

1. Income distribution effects are not specific to international trade. Every change in a nation's economy—including technological progress, shifting consumer preferences, exhaustion of old resources and discovery of new ones, and so on—affects income distribution. Why should an apparel worker, who suffers an unemployment spell due to increased import competition, be treated differently from an unemployed printing machine operator (whose newspaper employer shuts down due to competition from Internet news providers) or an unemployed construction worker laid off due to a housing slump?
2. It is always better to allow trade and compensate those who are hurt by it than to prohibit the trade. All modern industrial countries provide some sort of “safety net” of income support programs (such as unemployment benefits and subsidized retraining and relocation programs) that can cushion the losses of groups hurt by trade. Economists would argue that if this cushion is felt to be inadequate, more support rather than less trade is the answer. (This support can also be extended to all those in need instead of indirectly assisting only those workers affected by trade).<sup>10</sup>
3. Those who stand to lose from increased trade are typically better organized than those who stand to gain (because the former are more concentrated within regions and industries). This imbalance creates a bias in the political process that requires a

<sup>10</sup>An op-ed by Robert Z. Lawrence and Matthew J. Slaughter in the *New York Times*, “More Trade and More Aid,” argues this point (June 8, 2011).

counterweight, especially given the aggregate gains from trade. Many trade restrictions tend to favor the most organized groups, which are often not the most in need of income support (in many cases, quite the contrary).

Most economists, while acknowledging the effects of international trade on income distribution, believe it is more important to stress the overall potential gains from trade than the possible losses to some groups in a country. Economists do not, however, often have the deciding voice in economic policy, especially when conflicting interests are at stake. Any realistic understanding of how trade policy is determined must look at the actual motivations of that policy.

### The Politics of Trade Protection

It is easy to see why groups that lose from trade lobby their governments to restrict trade and protect their incomes. You might expect those who gain from trade would lobby as strongly as those who lose from it, but this is rarely the case. In the United States and most other countries, those who want trade limited are more effective politically than those who want it extended. Typically, those who gain from trade in any particular product are a much less concentrated, informed, and organized group than those who lose.

A good example of this contrast between the two sides is the U.S. sugar industry. The United States has limited imports of sugar for many years; over the past 30 years, the average price of sugar in the U.S. market has been more than twice the average price on the world market. (See the Case Study in Chapter 9 for more details.) In 2015, those higher sugar prices associated with the import restrictions resulted in an annual loss to U.S. consumers of \$3.5 billion, representing \$30 for every U.S. household. This is not just an income transfer from U.S. consumers to producers. Although some of that does go to the U.S. sugar producers, their gains are substantially smaller because the import restrictions also generate distortions in the sugar market and foreign producers who are assigned the rights to sell sugar to the United States keep the difference between the higher U.S. price and the lower world price.

If U.S. producers and consumers were equally able to get their interests represented, this policy would never have been enacted. In absolute terms, however, each consumer suffers very little. Thirty dollars a year is not much; furthermore, most of the cost is hidden because most sugar is consumed as an ingredient in other foods rather than purchased directly. As a result, most consumers are unaware that the import quota even exists, let alone that it reduces their standard of living. Even if they were aware, \$30 is not a large enough sum to provoke people into organizing protests and writing letters to their congressional representatives.

The situation of the sugar producers (those who would lose from increased trade) is quite different. The higher profits from the import quota are highly concentrated in a small number of producers. (Seventeen sugar cane farms generate more than half of the profits for the whole sugar cane industry.) Those producers are organized in trade associations that actively lobby on their members' behalf and make large campaign contributions. (The American Sugar Alliance has spent over \$20 million in lobbying expenses since 2005, leading to the 2014 congressional vote on the U.S. Farm Bill, which reauthorized the restrictions on U.S. imports of sugar.)

As one would expect, most of the gains from the sugar import restrictions go to that small group of sugar cane farm owners and not to their employees. Of course, the trade restrictions do prevent job losses for those workers, but the consumer cost per job saved is astronomically high: over \$3 million per job saved. In addition, the sugar import restrictions also reduce employment in other sectors that rely on large quantities of sugar in their production processes. In response to the high sugar prices in the United States, for example, candy-making firms have shifted their production sites to

Canada, where sugar prices are substantially lower. (There are no sugar farmers in Canada and hence no political pressure for restrictions on sugar imports.) On net, the sugar restrictions thus generate employment *losses* for U.S. workers.

### Trade and Unemployment

Protection for the sugar industry represents a rather extreme outcome due to the vast imbalance between the entrenched political power and concentration of the industry relative to those who are hurt by high sugar prices. As we previously described, the pressure for protection in many cases arises from concern regarding job losses in the import-competing sectors. Some of those affected workers have difficulty finding new jobs in other sectors (including the growing export sectors) and become unemployed. The **U.S. Trade Adjustment Assistance program** provides extended unemployment coverage for an additional year and tuition reimbursement for new job skill acquisitions to some of those workers: those who can show that their displacement was caused by import competition or an overseas relocation to a country receiving preferential access to the United States. However, relatively few workers are able to qualify for this program, which is severely underfunded. And those that do often need longer-lasting unemployment coverage. Because this program unfairly discriminates against workers who are displaced due to economic forces other than trade, many economists advocate for a social insurance program that would be extended to all displaced workers. This would represent a substantial increase in the number of displaced workers covered by such a program.

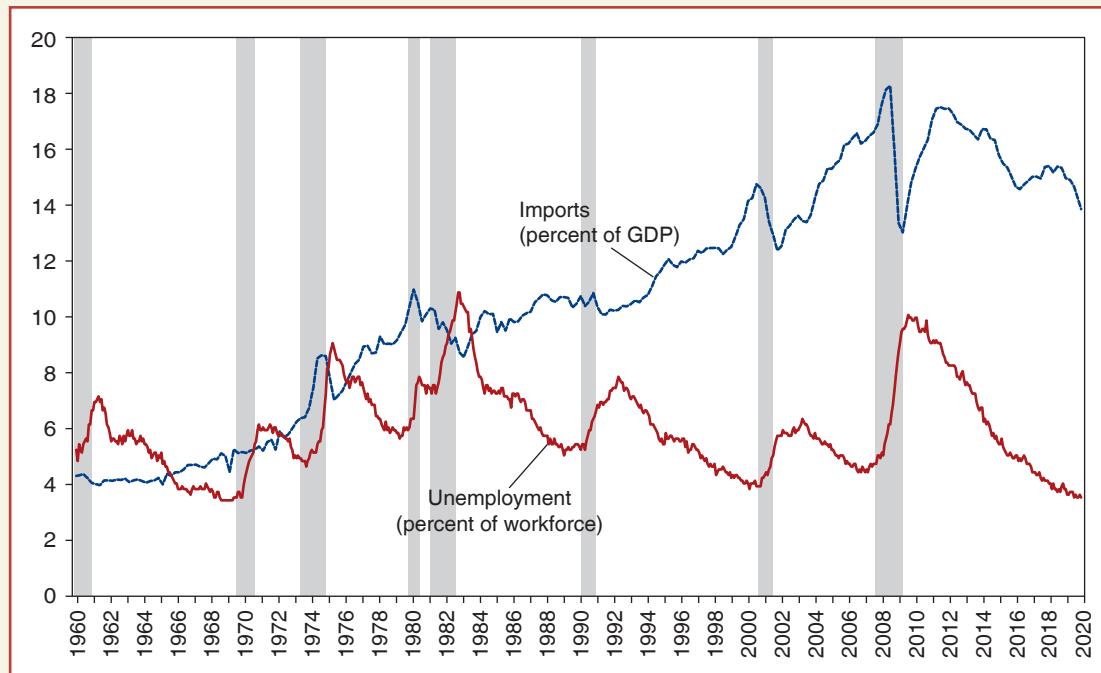
Although highly publicized, those plant closures due to import competition or overseas plant relocations account for a very small proportion of involuntary worker displacements. The U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics tracks the primary cause of all extended mass layoffs, defined as an unemployment spell lasting more than 30 days and affecting more than 50 workers from the same employer. Over the past several decades, unemployment spells caused by either import competition or overseas relocations accounted for less than 2 percent of total involuntary displacements associated with extended mass layoffs.

In our theoretical model of trade in the short run, job losses in the import-competing sectors are replaced by new jobs in the export sectors. In the U.S. economy, some of those new export sector jobs are outside of manufacturing (such as firms providing business services to foreign customers). And because many imported goods are used as intermediate inputs, new jobs are also created at firms that benefit from cheaper inputs in their production process.<sup>11</sup> It is much harder to trace all those new jobs created by trade. Not surprisingly, the job losses generated by trade receive much more public attention. This often leaves the impression that opening to trade, or globalization more generally, is responsible for increases in overall unemployment—rather than a change in the composition of jobs across sectors.

Figure 4-12 shows that, over the past 60 years in the United States, there is no evidence of a positive correlation between the unemployment rate and imports (relative to U.S. GDP).<sup>12</sup> (In fact, the correlation between changes in unemployment and imports is negative.) On the other hand, the figure clearly shows how unemployment is a macroeconomic phenomenon that responds to overall economic conditions: Unemployment peaks during the highlighted recession years (and imports sharply drop during the recent recessions). Thus, economists recommend the use of macroeconomic policy, rather than trade policy, to address concerns regarding unemployment.

<sup>11</sup>We discuss service exports and the impact of imported intermediate goods in further detail in Chapter 8.

<sup>12</sup>The main exception to this trend occurs between 2012 and 2016 when both imports and unemployment drop significantly. However, the drop in imports is entirely driven by the drop in world oil prices. Non-oil imports (as a share of U.S. GDP) were flat during that period.

**FIGURE 4-12****Unemployment and Import Penetration in the United States**

The highlighted years are recession years, as determined by the National Bureau of Economic Research.

**Source:** U.S. Bureau of Economic Analysis for imports and U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics for unemployment.

## CASE STUDY

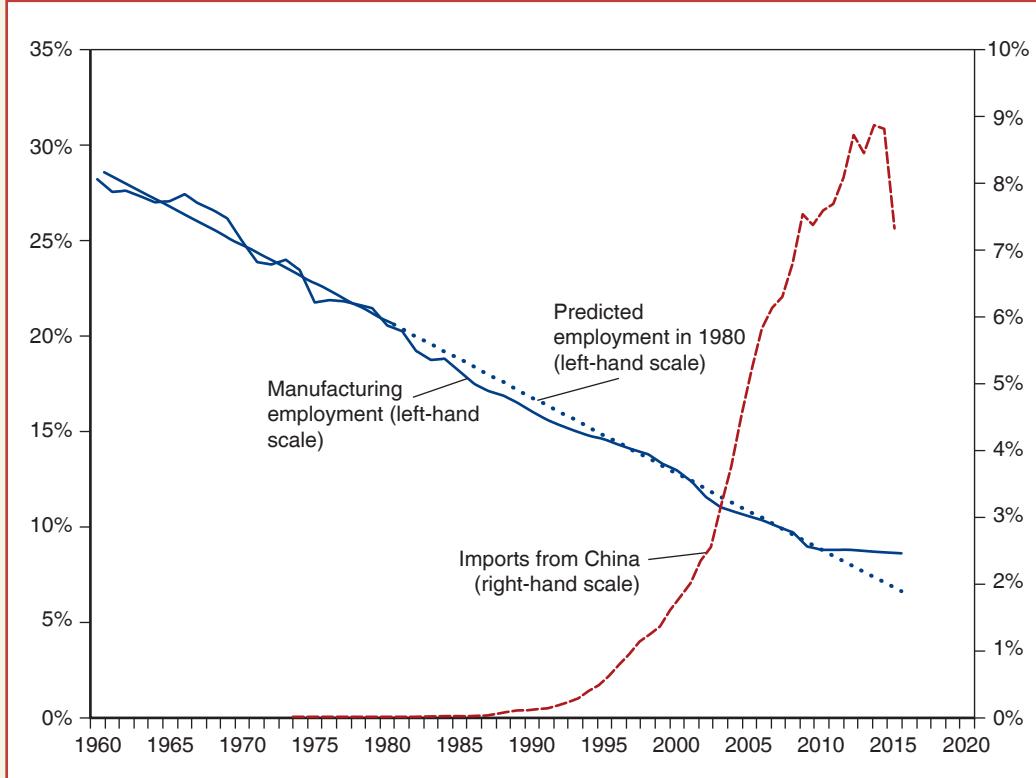
### U.S. Manufacturing Employment and Chinese Import Competition

What about the impact of trade on employment in the manufacturing sector more specifically? Import competition from developing countries—especially from China—is often singled out in both the press and by politicians as the main culprit for declines in manufacturing employment in the United States. Rigorous studies have also shown that those U.S. industries that compete most heavily with Chinese imports tend to suffer the most severe employment losses. Those studies also document the high cost of these employment losses (as we noted earlier in the chapter), especially for workers with relatively lower education levels whose skills are closely tied to a sector in decline in the United States. Many of those workers suffer long unemployment spells and face large drops in wages when they do find another employment. And because manufacturing employment in those

hard-hit sectors is geographically concentrated, this impact of import competition also translates into prolonged negative shocks for some of the affected regions.

As we discussed, these job losses are mitigated by increases in employment in export-oriented sectors and by other employers who benefit from cheaper imported intermediate goods. Since some of those new jobs will be in the growing service sectors outside of manufacturing, there is some reason for concern that the employment losses from Chinese import competition represent an aggregate loss for U.S. manufacturing employment. Would shutting off the United States from trade with China help to increase the share of employment in U.S. manufacturing?<sup>13</sup>

Figure 4-13 shows that this manufacturing employment share has been steadily decreasing since 1960s, though it has stabilized between 8.5 and



**FIGURE 4-13**

### U.S. Manufacturing Employment and Imports from China

Manufacturing employment is measured as a percent of total U.S. non-farm employment. Imports from China are measured as a percent of the U.S. manufacturing production.

<sup>13</sup>The Trump administration has waged a trade war mostly targeted at China, promising that this would bring back millions of factory jobs. We discuss the impact of that trade war on U.S. employment in the following box.

9 percent since 2010. Over this time period, the U.S. manufacturing sector was still producing the same quantity of goods, but it was achieving those production levels with fewer and fewer workers.<sup>14</sup> The dotted line shows the forecasted manufacturing employment share after 1980 using only the data points before 1980 (a linear fit of the employment share from 1960 to 1980). Thus, if in 1980 we had predicted the share of U.S. employment in manufacturing for 2010—based on its decline from 1960 to 1980—we would have predicted an employment share of 8.8 percent: almost exactly what the actual employment share was in 2010. But during the two decades from 1960 to 1980, imports from China were virtually nil. Figure 4-13 highlights the explosive growth of those imports (measured relative to total U.S. manufacturing production) later on, which was especially strong after 2001 when China joined the World Trade Organization (WTO). It is therefore hard to make the case that the decline in the U.S. manufacturing share down to 8.8 percent in 2010 was driven by the growth in Chinese imports. After all, this is exactly what we had predicted for this share back in 1980 when the United States had virtually no trading relationship with China. We also see the impact of the Trump administration's trade war with China, resulting in the sharp decrease in imports for 2019 (U.S. exports to China decreased by an even bigger percentage following the Chinese retaliation against U.S. exports). We discuss this trade war in more detail in the following box. In any event, neither the increase in Chinese imports prior to the trade war nor the subsequent decrease has changed the stabilization in the share of U.S. manufacturing employment, which started in 2010.

## THE TRUMP TRADE WAR

As we discussed, the job losses from import competition are much more visible—and much more directly connected with trade policy—than the jobs gains from trade in other sectors. This generates substantial political pressure to protect the affected import-competing sectors, even if this leads to aggregate losses. As we discussed in the introduction to this chapter, several newly elected U.S. presidents have bowed to this pressure. But this protection was awarded sparingly to just a few of the hardest-hit

sectors. One reason is to limit the number of imported intermediate goods affected: Protecting those goods raises their prices and has a direct negative impact on employment by U.S. producers who rely on those inputs. Another reason is that trading partners retaliate with trade protections of their own. Again, this has a direct negative impact on employment by U.S. exporters to those trading partners. We discuss those political economy aspects of trade policy in more detail in Chapter 10.

<sup>14</sup>This trend is very similar to the one observed for the share of U.S. farm workers, which steadily declined from over 40 percent at the turn of the 20th century to below 2 percent a century later.

The Trump administration broke with this tradition for limited intervention and enacted a vast set of tariffs on solar panels, washing machines, steel, aluminum, and an additional expanding list of manufactured goods produced in China—in order to protect manufacturing jobs in those sectors, which are concentrated in politically strategic states. As predicted, governments in China and other countries that export those affected goods to the United States retaliated with tariffs of their own imposed on U.S. exporters. (See Chapter 9 for details of those tariffs and retaliations and the overall effects for the U.S. economy.) Those countries recognized the political calculations behind the tariffs and carefully crafted their tariff responses to specifically target goods that are important to the districts of congressional leaders and several other predominantly Republican districts (with strong support for the Trump administration's protectionist policies).<sup>15</sup>

In addition, many of the protected sectors contained a high proportion of intermediate goods imported by U.S. producers: For example, virtually all of the imported steel and aluminum are used as intermediate goods. And the jobs affected in those so-called “downstream” sectors (users of steel and aluminum, for example) vastly outnumber the jobs in the protected sectors. A recent study by Lydia Cox and Kadee Russ estimates that jobs in steel-using downstream sectors outnumber jobs in the steel-producing sector by a ratio of 80 to 1.<sup>16</sup>

It is therefore not surprising that those Trump tariffs have led to job losses in manufacturing—the exact opposite from their purported goal. A recent study by Aaron Flaaen and Justin Pierce estimates that those tariffs generated job losses in downstream U.S. manufacturing sectors that were double the number of jobs gained in the sectors protected by the tariffs. And the job losses caused by the retaliatory tariffs were more than triple that number of jobs gained.<sup>17</sup>

## International Labor Mobility

In this section, we will show how the specific factors model can be adapted to analyze the effects of labor mobility. In the modern world, restrictions on the flow of labor are legion—just about every country imposes restrictions on immigration. Thus, labor mobility is less prevalent in practice than capital mobility. However, the analysis of physical capital movements is more complex, as it is embedded along with other factors in a multinational's decision to invest abroad (see Chapter 8). Still, it is important to understand the international economic forces that drive *desired* migration of workers across borders and the short-run consequences of those migration flows whenever they are realized. We will also explore the long-run consequences of changes in a country's labor and capital endowments in the next chapter (Chapter 5).

In the previous sections, we saw how workers move between the cloth and food sectors within one country until the wages in the two sectors are equalized. Whenever international migration is possible, workers will also want to move from the low-wage to the high-wage country.<sup>18</sup> To keep things simple and to focus on international migration, let's

<sup>15</sup>A few examples of those targeted tariffs are whiskey (produced in Kentucky, the home state of the Senate leader at the time, Mitch McConnell) and cranberries and motorcycles (produced in Wisconsin, the home state of the House leader at the time, Paul Ryan).

<sup>16</sup>See Lydia Cox and Kadee Russ, “Will Steel Tariffs Put U.S. Jobs at Risk?,” <http://econofact.org/will-steel-tariffs-put-u-s-jobs-at-risk>.

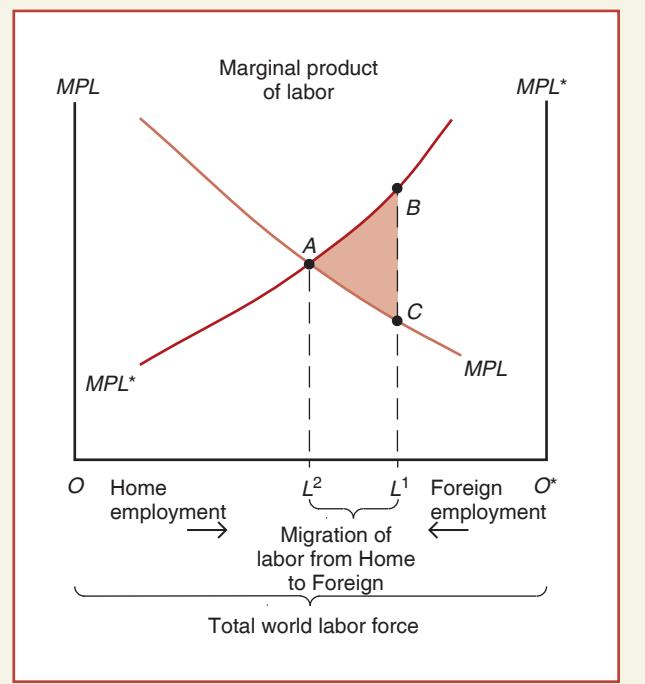
<sup>17</sup>See Aaron Flaaen and Justin Pierce, “Disentangling the Effects of the 2018–2019 Tariffs on a Globally Connected U.S. Manufacturing Sector,” Finance and Economics Discussion Series, Federal Reserve Board, Washington, D.C.

<sup>18</sup>We assume workers' tastes are similar, so location decisions are based on wage differentials. Actual wage differentials across countries are very large—large enough that, for many workers, they outweigh personal tastes for particular countries.

**FIGURE 4-14**

### Causes and Effects of International Labor Mobility

Initially,  $OL^1$  workers are employed in Home, while  $L^1O^*$  workers are employed in Foreign. Labor migrates from Home to Foreign until  $OL^2$  workers are employed in Home,  $L^2O^*$  in Foreign, and wages are equalized.



assume that two countries produce a single good with labor and an immobile factor, land. Since there is only a single good, there is no reason to trade it; however, there will be “trade” in labor services when workers move in search of higher wages. In the absence of migration, wage differences across countries can be driven by technology differences or, alternatively, by differences in the availability of land relative to labor.

Figure 4-14 illustrates the causes and effects of international labor mobility. It is very similar to Figure 4-4, except that the horizontal axis now represents the total world labor force (instead of the labor force in a given country). The two marginal product curves now represent production of the same good in different countries (instead of the production of two different goods in the same country). We do not multiply those curves by the prices of the good; instead, we assume the wages measured on the vertical axis represent real wages (the wage divided by the price of the unique good in each country). Initially, we assume there are  $OL^1$  workers in Home and  $L^1O^*$  workers in Foreign. Given those employment levels, technology and land endowment differences are such that real wages are higher in Foreign (point B) than in Home (point C).

Now suppose that workers are able to move between these two countries. Workers will move from Home to Foreign. This movement will reduce the Home labor force and thus raise the real wage in Home while increasing the labor force and reducing the real wage in Foreign. If there are no obstacles to labor movement, this process will continue until the real wage rates are equalized. The eventual distribution of the world's labor force will be one with  $OL^2$  workers in Home and  $L^2O^*$  workers in Foreign (point A).

Three points should be noted about this redistribution of the world's labor force.

1. It leads to a convergence of real wage rates. Real wages rise in Home and fall in Foreign.

2. It increases the world's output as a whole. Foreign's output rises by the area under its marginal product curve from  $L^1$  to  $L^2$ , while Home's falls by the corresponding area under its marginal product curve. (See appendix for details.) We see from the figure that Foreign's gain is larger than Home's loss, by an amount equal to the colored area *ABC* in the figure.
3. Despite this gain, some people are hurt by the change. Those who would originally have worked in Home receive higher real wages, but those who would originally have worked in Foreign receive lower real wages. Landowners in Foreign benefit from the larger labor supply, but landowners in Home are made worse off.

As in the case of the gains from international trade, then, international labor mobility, while allowing everyone to be made better off in principle, leaves some groups worse off in practice. This main result would not change in a more complex model where countries produce and trade different goods, so long as some factors of production are immobile in the short run. However, we will see in Chapter 5 that this result need not hold in the long run when all factors are mobile across sectors. Changes in a country's labor endowment, so long as the country is integrated into world markets through trade, can leave the welfare of all factors unchanged. This has very important implications for immigration in the long run and has been shown to be empirically relevant in cases where countries experience large immigration increases.

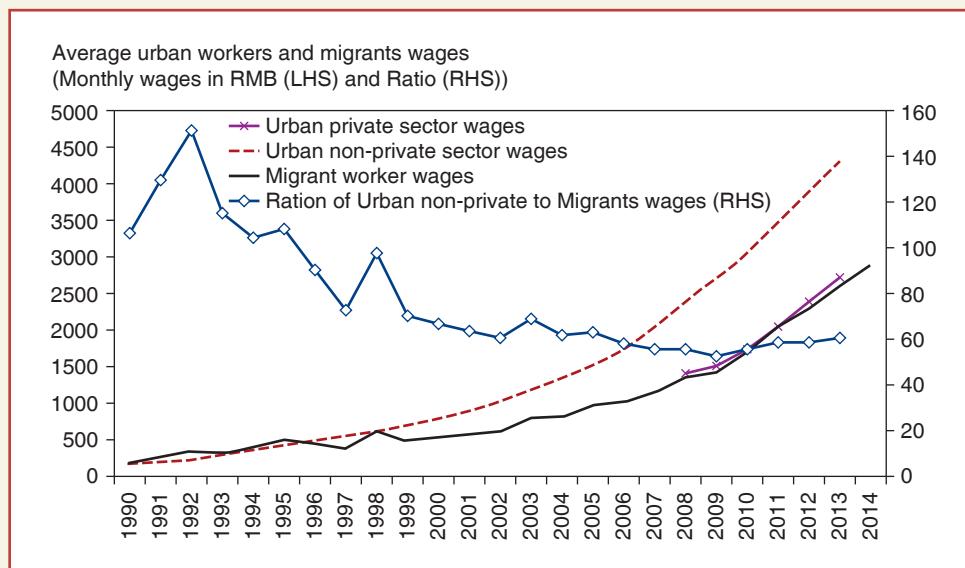
## CASE STUDY

### Wage and Social Benefits Convergence: Migrant Mobility in China

Although China is a unified country, its government enforces Hukou, an internal registration system under which every Chinese citizen is registered as a resident of a specific region in the country. Established in 1958, this system is meant to ensure sufficient agricultural workforce and therefore enough sufficient production of food grains to support the urban industrial sector as well as to regulate the security of cities. It has led to the erection of a wall between the urban and rural areas and resulted in differences in social statuses in terms of access to healthcare, education, or retirement benefits.

However, by the turn of the millennium, China's rapid modernization and international trade interaction increased the demand for labor in the industrial sector. This, in turn, led to increased rural to urban migration, which was already attractive by the wage differentials in favor of the latter. In 1978, the rural population accounted for over 80 percent of the total population. Thus, number fell to 63 percent in 2001 and finally halved to around 40 percent in 2019. It is worth noting that during the same period, the total population grew from 956 million to 1,400 million. Migrant workers are thus at the core of China's economic development; in 2013, almost 270 million laborers migrated from the countryside for urban employment, constituting about a third of China's total labor force and occupied one half of its urban employment.

Has this process been associated with wage convergence as predicted by our model of labor mobility? Indeed, it has. Figure 4-15 plots the relative wage between migrants and urban workers between 1990 and 2014. We can see a clear trend of convergence in spite of the income inequality that occurred after the economy opened up in 1992. The wages of migrant workers increased sixfold and the wage gap differential (the ratio of urban to migrant wages in the figure) closed by more than 50 percent.

**FIGURE 4-15****Average Urban Workers and Migrants Wages**

(Monthly wages in RMB (LHS) and Ratio (RHS))

**Source:** IMF Working Paper; China's Labor Market in the "New Normal"; W. Raphael Lam, Xiaoguang Liu, and Alfred Schipke, July 2015 <https://www.imf.org/external/pubs/ft/wp/2015/wp15151.pdf>

However, since the turn of the millennium, migrant wages have remained more or less stagnant at about 60 percent of urban workers' wages. This could be partially explained by the differences in education and qualification between the two populations. While these remaining gaps are still an engine of growth for labor market dynamics, they could also become a rigidity in the future by slowing down adequate allocation of the workforce across regions. These concerns led to the Hukou system being gradually relaxed. Reforms in 2014 aimed to completely liberalize it by granting "urban Hukou" status to all those who ask for it and closing the rural-urban gap in access to healthcare, education, and other benefits.

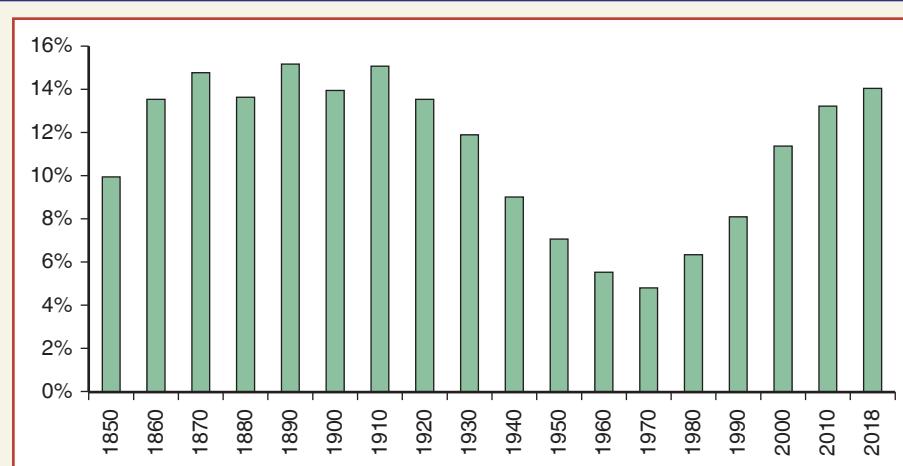
## CASE STUDY

### Immigration and the U.S. Economy

As Figure 4-16 shows, the share of immigrants in the U.S. population has varied greatly over the past two centuries. At the turn of the 20th century, the number of foreign-born U.S. residents increased dramatically due to vast immigration from Eastern and Southern Europe. Tight restrictions on immigration imposed in the 1920s brought an end to this era, and by the 1960s immigrants were a minor factor on the American scene. A new wave of immigration began around 1970, this time with most immigrants coming from Latin America and Asia. Although the share of immigrants has been steadily increasing ever since, it is still below the levels reached during the first wave of immigration.

How has this new wave of immigration affected the U.S. economy? The most direct effect is that immigration has expanded the workforce. As of 2019, foreign-born workers make up 17.4 percent of the U.S. labor force—that is, without immigrants the United States would have 17.4 percent fewer workers.

Other things equal, we would expect this increase in the workforce to reduce wages. One widely cited estimate is that average wages in the United States are 3 percent lower than they would be in the absence of immigration.<sup>19</sup> However, comparisons of average wages can be misleading because immigrants to the United States have a very different education profile relative to the overall U.S. population.



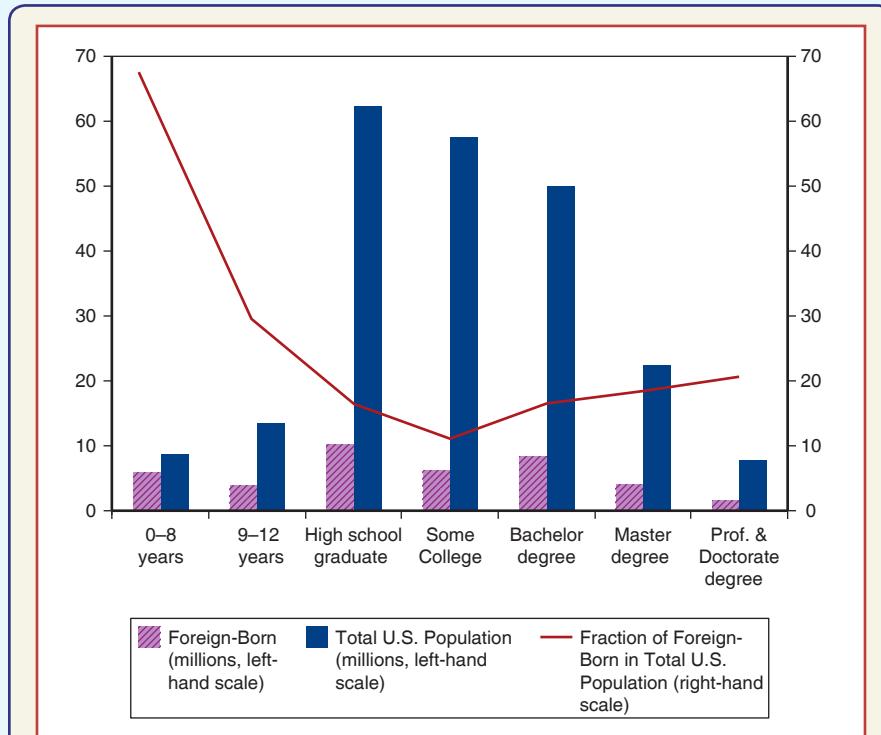
**FIGURE 4-16**

#### Foreign-Born Population as a Percentage of the U.S. Population

Restrictions on immigration in the 1920s led to a sharp decline in the foreign-born population in the mid-20th century, but immigration has risen sharply again in recent decades.

**Source:** U.S. Census Bureau.

<sup>19</sup>George Borjas, "The Labor Demand Curve Is Downward Sloping: Reexamining the Impact of Immigration on the Labor Market," *Quarterly Journal of Economics* 118 (November 2003), pp. 1335–1374.

**FIGURE 4-17**

### Foreign-Born and Total U.S. Population Over 25 Years Old by Educational Attainment

Relative to native-born workers, foreign-born workers are concentrated in both the highest and lowest educational groups.

**Source:** U.S. Census Bureau.

Those differences are highlighted in Figure 4-17, which tabulates both the foreign-born and the total U.S. population over 25 years of age by education for 2019 (left-hand scale). The line represents the ratio between the two (the fraction of foreign born within an educational group on the right-hand scale). That ratio shows how foreign-born workers are concentrated in both the lowest and highest educational groups—relative to native-born workers. At one end of the educational scale, foreign-born workers with professional and doctorate degrees provide the U.S. economy with much needed skills, especially in fields such as science, technology, engineering, and mathematics (STEM). Among workers with doctorate degrees in those STEM fields, 55 percent were foreign born in 2013, and so were 70 percent of software engineers in Silicon Valley in that same year. In 2016, then president Barack Obama congratulated the six U.S.-based scientists who had just received the Nobel prize—and noted that all of them were immigrants.

Foreign-born workers are also concentrated in the lowest educational groups: In 2019, 24.3 percent of the immigrant labor force had not completed high school

or its equivalent, compared with only 9.9 percent of native-born workers. Because workers with different education levels represent different inputs into production (and cannot easily be substituted for one another), most estimates suggest that immigration has actually raised the wages of the vast majority of native-born Americans. Any negative effects on wages fall on less-educated Americans. There is, however, considerable dispute among economists about how large these negative wage effects are. In the short run, the impact on native-born high-school dropouts ranges from a 1 to 8 percent decline.

What about the overall effects on America's income? America's gross domestic product—the total value of all goods and services produced here—is clearly larger because of immigrant workers. However, much of this increase in the value of production is used to pay wages to the immigrants themselves. Estimates of the “immigration surplus”—the difference between the gain in GDP and the cost in wages paid to immigrants—are generally small, on the order of 0.1 percent of GDP.<sup>20</sup>

There's one more complication in assessing the economic effects of immigration: the effects on tax revenue and government spending. On one side, immigrants pay taxes, helping cover the cost of government. On the other side, they impose costs on the government because their cars need roads to drive on, their children need schools to study in, and so on. Because many immigrants earn low wages and hence pay low taxes, some estimates suggest that immigrants cost more in additional spending than they pay in. However, estimates of the net fiscal cost, like estimates of the net economic effects, are small, again on the order of 0.1 percent of GDP.

Immigration is, of course, an extremely contentious political issue. The economics of immigration, however, probably doesn't explain this contentiousness. Instead, it may be helpful to recall what Swiss author Max Frisch once said about the effects of immigration into his own country, which at one point relied heavily on workers from other countries: “We asked for labor, but people came.” And it's the fact that immigrants are people that makes the immigration issue so difficult.

## SUMMARY

- International trade often has strong effects on the distribution of income within countries, so that it often produces losers as well as winners. Income distribution effects arise for two reasons: Factors of production cannot move instantaneously and costlessly from one industry to another, and changes in an economy's output mix have differential effects on the demand for different factors of production.
- A useful model of income distribution effects of international trade is the *specific factors* model, which allows for a distinction between general-purpose factors that can move between sectors and factors specific to particular uses. In this model, differences in resources can cause countries to have different relative supply curves and thus cause international trade.

<sup>20</sup>See Gordon Hanson, “Challenges for Immigration Policy,” in C. Fred Bergsten, ed., *The United States and the World Economy: Foreign Economic Policy for the Next Decade*, Washington, D.C.: Institute for International Economics, 2005, pp. 343–372.

- In the specific factors model, factors specific to export sectors in each country gain from trade, while factors specific to import-competing sectors lose. Mobile factors that can work in either sector may either gain or lose.
- Trade nonetheless produces overall gains in the limited sense that those who gain could in principle compensate those who lose while still remaining better off than before.
- Most economists do not regard the effects of international trade on income distribution a good reason to limit this trade. In its distributional effects, trade is no different from many other forms of economic change, which are not normally regulated. Furthermore, economists would prefer to address the problem of income distribution directly rather than by interfering with trade flows.
- Nonetheless, in the actual politics of trade policy, income distribution is of crucial importance. This is true in particular because those who lose from trade are usually a much more informed, cohesive, and organized group than those who gain.
- International factor movements can sometimes substitute for trade, so it is not surprising that international migration of labor is similar in its causes and effects to international trade. Labor moves from countries where it is abundant to countries where it is scarce. This movement raises total world output, but it also generates strong income distribution effects, so that some groups are hurt as a result.

## KEY TERMS

budget constraint, p. 91	mobile factor, p. 78	specific factors, p. 78
diminishing returns, p. 80	production function, p. 79	U.S. Trade Adjustment
marginal product of labor, p. 80	production possibility frontier, p. 80	Assistance program, p. 95

## PROBLEMS

1. Why would a country opt for free trade when some workers remain unemployed in the import-competing sector? Given the real wage rate in Thailand is higher than that in Bangladesh, how would international trade affect real wages between them under a perfectly mobile labor movement?
2. An economy can produce good 1 using labor and capital and good 2 using labor and land. The total supply of labor is 100 units. Given the supply of capital, the outputs of the two goods depend on labor input as follows:

Labor Input to Good 1	Output of Good 1	Labor Input to Good 2	Output of Good 2
0	0.0	0	0.0
10	25.1	10	39.8
20	38.1	20	52.5
30	48.6	30	61.8
40	57.7	40	69.3
50	66.0	50	75.8
60	73.6	60	81.5
70	80.7	70	86.7
80	87.4	80	91.4
90	93.9	90	95.9
100	100	100	100

- a. Graph the production functions for good 1 and good 2.  
 b. Graph the production possibility frontier. Why is it curved?  
 3. The marginal product of labor curves corresponding to the production functions in problem 2 are as follows:

Workers Employed	MPL in Sector 1	MPL in Sector 2
10	1.51	1.59
20	1.14	1.05
30	1.00	.82
40	.87	.69
50	.78	.60
60	.74	.54
70	.69	.50
80	.66	.46
90	.63	.43
100	.60	.40

- a. Suppose the price of good 2 relative to that of good 1 is 2. Determine graphically the wage rate and the allocation of labor between the two sectors.  
 b. Using the graph drawn for problem 2, determine the output of each sector. Then confirm graphically that the slope of the production possibility frontier at that point equals the relative price.  
 c. Suppose the relative price of good 2 falls to 1.3. Repeat (a) and (b).  
 d. Calculate the effects of the price change from 2 to 1.3 on the income of the specific factors in sectors 1 and 2.
4. Consider two countries (Home and Foreign) that produce goods 1 (with labor and capital) and 2 (with labor and land) according to the production functions described in problems 2 and 3. Initially, both countries have the same supply of labor (100 units each), capital, and land. The capital stock in Home then grows. This change shifts out both the production curve for good 1 as a function of labor employed (described in problem 2) and the associated marginal product of labor curve (described in problem 3). Nothing happens to the production and marginal product curves for good 2.
- a. Show how the increase in the supply of capital for Home affects its production possibility frontier.  
 b. On the same graph, draw the relative supply curve for both the Home and the Foreign economy.  
 c. If those two economies open up to trade, what will be the pattern of trade (i.e., which country exports which good)?  
 d. Describe how opening up to trade affects all three factors (labor, capital, land) in both countries.
5. In Home and Foreign, there are two factors each of production, land, and labor used to produce only one good. The land supply in each country and the technology of production are exactly the same. The marginal product of labor in each country depends on employment as follows:

Number of Workers Employed	Marginal Product of Last Worker
1	20
2	19

Number of Workers Employed	Marginal Product of Last Worker
3	18
4	17
5	16
6	15
7	14
8	13
9	12
10	11
11	10

Initially, there are 11 workers employed in Home but only 3 workers in Foreign.

Find the effect of free movement of labor from Home to Foreign on employment, production, real wages, and the income of landowners in each country.

6. Using the numerical example in problem 5, assume now that Foreign limits immigration so that only two workers can move there from Home. Calculate how the movement of these two workers affects the income of five different groups:
  - a. Workers who were originally in Foreign
  - b. Foreign landowners
  - c. Workers who stay in Home
  - d. Home landowners
  - e. The workers who do move
7. Studies of the effects of immigration into the United States from Mexico tend to find that the big winners are the immigrants themselves. Explain this result in terms of the example in problem 6. How might things change if the border were open with no restrictions on immigration?

## FURTHER READINGS

David Card. "Immigration and Inequality." *American Economic Review* 99 (2) (2009), pp. 1–21.  
 Avinash Dixit and Victor Norman. *Theory of International Trade*. Cambridge: Cambridge

University Press, 1980. The problem of establishing gains from trade when some people may be made worse off has been the subject of a long debate. Dixit and Norman show it is always possible in principle for a country's government to use taxes and subsidies to redistribute income in such a way that everyone is better off with free trade than with no trade.

Lawrence Edwards and Robert Z. Lawrence. 2013. *Rising Tide: Is Growth in Emerging Economies Good for the United States?* Peterson Institute for International Economics, 2013. An accessible book that examines how increased trade with emerging economies (such as China and India) has affected the United States and its workers.

Gordon H. Hanson. "The Economic Consequences of the International Migration of Labor." *Annual Review of Economics* 1 (1) (2009), pp. 179–208. A survey paper reviewing how increased migration has affected both sending and recipient countries.

Douglas A. Irwin. *Free Trade under Fire*, 3rd edition. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2009. An accessible book that provides numerous details and supporting data for the argument that freer trade generates overall welfare gains. Chapter 4 discusses the connection between trade and unemployment in detail (an issue that was briefly discussed in this chapter).

- Douglas A. Irwin. "The Truth About Trade." *Foreign Affairs* 95 (2016), pp. 84–95. An international trade economist responds to the strong rhetoric against trade exhibited in the U.S. 2016 presidential election.
- Robert A. Mundell. "International Trade and Factor Mobility." *American Economic Review* 47 (1957), pp. 321–335. This is the paper that first laid out the argument that trade and factor movement can substitute for each other.
- Michael Mussa. "Tariffs and the Distribution of Income: The Importance of Factor Specificity, Substitutability, and Intensity in the Short and Long Run." *Journal of Political Economy* 82 (1974), pp. 1191–1204. An extension of the specific factors model that relates it to the factor proportions model of Chapter 5.
- J. Peter Neary. "Short-Run Capital Specificity and the Pure Theory of International Trade." *Economic Journal* 88 (1978), pp. 488–510. A further treatment of the specific factors model that stresses how differing assumptions about mobility of factors between sectors affect the model's conclusions.
- Mancur Olson. *The Logic of Collective Action*. Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 1965. A highly influential book that argues the proposition that in practice, government policies favor small, concentrated groups over large ones.
- David Ricardo. *The Principles of Political Economy and Taxation*. Homewood, IL: Irwin, 1963. While Ricardo's *Principles* emphasizes the national gains from trade at one point, elsewhere in his book the conflict of interest between landowners and capitalists is a central issue.



## APPENDIX TO CHAPTER 4

### Further Details on Specific Factors

The specific factors model developed in this chapter is such a convenient tool of analysis that we take the time here to spell out some of its details more fully. We give a fuller treatment of two related issues: (1) the relationship between marginal and total product within each sector and (2) the income distribution effects of relative price changes.

#### Marginal and Total Product

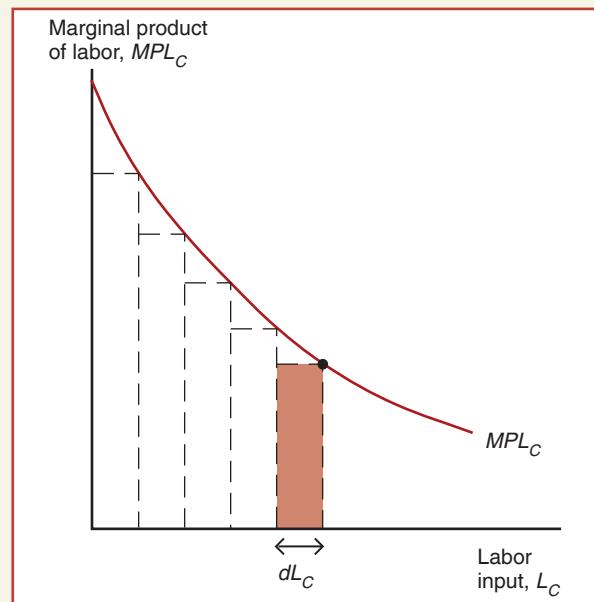
In the text, we illustrated the production function of cloth in two different ways. In Figure 4-1, we showed total output as a function of labor input, holding capital constant. We then observed that the slope of that curve is the marginal product of labor and illustrated that marginal product in Figure 4-2. We now want to demonstrate that the total output is measured by the area under the marginal product curve. (Students familiar with calculus will find this obvious: Marginal product is the derivative of total, so total is the integral of marginal. Even for these students, however, an intuitive approach can be helpful.)

In Figure 4A-1, we show once again the marginal product curve in cloth production. Suppose we employ  $L_C$  person-hours. How can we show the total output of cloth? Let's approximate this using the marginal product curve. First, let's ask what would happen if we used slightly fewer person-hours, say  $dL_C$  fewer. Then output would be less. The fall in output would be approximately

$$dL_C \times MPL_C,$$

**FIGURE 4A-1**  
**Showing That Output Is Equal to the Area under the Marginal Product Curve**

By approximating the marginal product curve with a series of thin rectangles, one can show that the total output of cloth is equal to the area under the curve.



that is, the reduction in the workforce times the marginal product of labor at the initial level of employment. This reduction in output is represented by the area of the rectangle in Figure 4A-1. Now subtract another few person-hours; the output loss will be another rectangle. This time the rectangle will be taller because the marginal product of labor rises as the quantity of labor falls. If we continue this process until all the labor is gone, our approximation of the total output loss will be the sum of all the rectangles shown in the figure. When no labor is employed, however, output will fall to zero. So we can approximate the total output of the cloth sector by the sum of the areas of all the rectangles under the marginal product curve.

This is, however, only an approximation because we used the marginal product of only the first person-hour in each batch of labor removed. We can get a better approximation if we take smaller groups—the smaller the better. As the groups of labor removed get infinitesimally small, however, the rectangles get thinner and thinner, and we approximate ever more closely the total area under the marginal product curve. In the end, then, we find the total output of cloth produced with labor  $L_C$ ,  $Q_C$ , is equal to the area under the marginal product of labor curve  $MPL_C$  up to  $L_C$ .

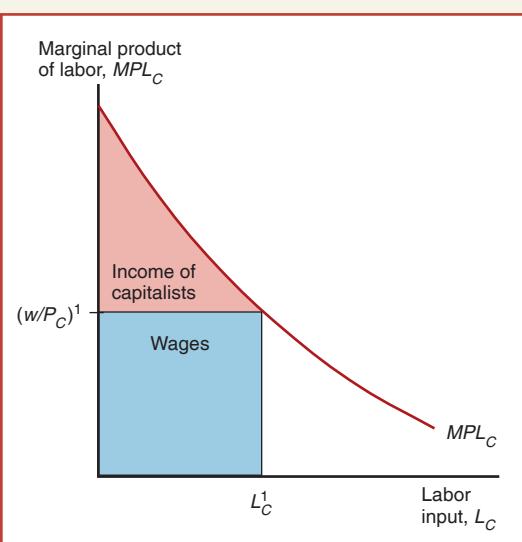
### Relative Prices and the Distribution of Income

Figure 4A-2 uses the result we just found to show the distribution of income within the cloth sector. We saw that cloth employers hire labor  $L_C$  until the value of the workers' marginal product,  $P_C \times MPL_C$ , is equal to the wage  $w$ . We can rewrite this in terms of the real wage of cloth as  $MPL_C = w/P_C$ . Thus, at a given real wage, say  $(w/P_C)^1$ , the marginal product curve in Figure 4A-2 tells us that  $L_C^1$  worker-hours will be employed. The total output produced with those workers is given by the area under the marginal product curve up to  $L_C^1$ . This output is divided into the real income (in terms of cloth) of workers and capital owners. The portion paid to workers is the real wage  $(w/P_C)^1$  times the employment level  $L_C^1$ , which is the area of the rectangle shown. The remainder is the real income of the capital owners. We can determine the distribution of food production between labor and landowners in the same way, as a function of the real wage in terms of food,  $w/P_F$ .

**FIGURE 4A-2**

#### The Distribution of Income within the Cloth Sector

Labor income is equal to the real wage times employment. The rest of output accrues as income to the owners of capital.



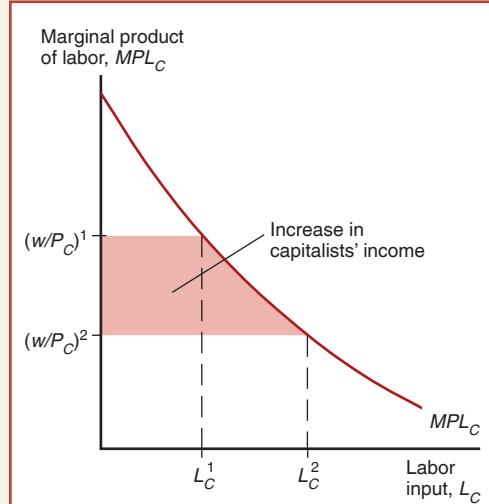
Suppose the relative price of cloth now rises. We saw in Figure 4-7 that a rise in  $P_C/P_F$  lowers the real wage in terms of cloth (because the wage rises by less than  $P_C$ ) while raising it in terms of food. The effects of this on the income of capitalists and landowners can be seen in Figures 4A-3 and 4A-4. In the cloth sector, the real wage falls from  $(w/P_C)^1$  to  $(w/P_C)^2$ ; as a result, capitalists receive increased real income in terms of cloth. In the food sector, the real wage rises from  $(w/P_F)^1$  to  $(w/P_F)^2$ , and landowners receive less real income in terms of food.

This effect on real income is reinforced by the change in  $P_C/P_F$  itself. The real income of capital owners in terms of food rises by more than their real income in terms of cloth—because food is now relatively cheaper than cloth. Conversely, the real income of landowners in terms of cloth drops by more than their real income in terms of food—because cloth is now relatively more expensive.

**FIGURE 4A-3**

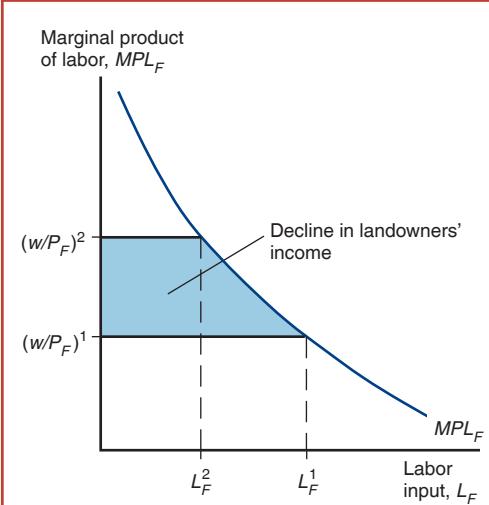
### A Rise in $P_C$ Benefits the Owners of Capital

The real wage in terms of cloth falls, leading to a rise in the income of capital owners.

**FIGURE 4A-4**

### A Rise in $P_C$ Hurts Landowners

The real wage in terms of food rises, reducing the income of land.





## RESOURCES AND TRADE: THE HECKSCHER-OHLIN MODEL

If labor were the only factor of production, as the Ricardian model assumes, comparative advantage could arise only because of international differences in labor productivity. In the real world, however, while trade is partly explained by differences in labor productivity, it also reflects differences in countries' resources. Canada exports forest products to the United States not because its lumberjacks are more productive relative to their U.S. counterparts but because sparsely populated Canada has more forested land per capita than the United States. Thus, a realistic view of trade must allow for the importance not just of labor but also of other factors of production such as land, capital, and mineral resources.

To explain the role of resource differences in trade, this chapter examines a model in which resource differences are the *only* source of trade. This model shows that comparative advantage is influenced by the interaction between nations' resources (the relative abundance of factors of production, called **factor abundance**) and the technology of production (which influences the relative intensity with which different factors of production, called **factor intensity**, are used in the production of different goods). Some of these ideas were presented in the specific factors model of Chapter 4, but the model we study in this chapter puts the interaction between abundance and intensity in sharper relief by looking at long-run outcomes when all factors of production are mobile across sectors.

That international trade is largely driven by differences in countries' resources is one of the most influential theories in international economics. Developed by two Swedish economists, Eli Heckscher and Bertil Ohlin (Ohlin received the Nobel Prize in economics in 1977), the theory is often referred to as the **Heckscher-Ohlin theory**. Because the theory emphasizes the interplay between the proportions in which different factors of production are available in different countries and the proportions in which they are used in producing different goods, it is also referred to as the **factor-proportions theory**.

To develop the factor-proportions theory, we begin by describing an economy that does not trade and then ask what happens when two such economies trade with each other. We will see that as opposed to the Ricardian model with a single factor of production, trade can affect the distribution of income across factors,

even in the long run. We discuss the extent to which trade may be contributing to increases in wage inequality in developed countries. We then conclude with a further review of the empirical evidence for (and against) the predictions of the factor-proportions theory of trade.

## LEARNING GOALS

After reading this chapter, you will be able to:

- Explain how differences in resources generate a specific pattern of trade.
- Discuss why the gains from trade will not be equally spread even in the long run and identify the likely winners and losers.
- Understand the possible links between increased trade and rising wage inequality in the developed world.
- See how empirical patterns of trade and factor prices support some (but not all) of the predictions of the factor-proportions theory.

## Model of a Two-Factor Economy

In this chapter, we'll focus on the simplest version of the factor-proportions model, sometimes referred to as "2 by 2 by 2": two countries, two goods, two factors of production. In our example, we'll call the two countries Home and Foreign. We will stick with the same two goods, cloth (measured in yards) and food (measured in calories), that we used in the specific factors model of Chapter 4. The key difference is that in this chapter, we assume that the immobile factors that were specific to each sector (capital in cloth, land in food) are now mobile in the long run. Thus, land used for farming can be used to build a textile plant; conversely, the capital used to pay for a power loom can be used to pay for a tractor. To keep things simple, we model a single additional factor that we call capital, which is used in conjunction with labor to produce either cloth or food. In the long run, both capital and labor can move across sectors, thus equalizing their returns (rental rate and wage) in both sectors.

### Prices and Production

Both cloth and food are produced using capital and labor. The amount of each good produced, given how much capital and labor are employed in each sector, is determined by a production function for each good:

$$\begin{aligned} Q_C &= Q_C(K_C, L_C), \\ Q_F &= Q_F(K_F, L_F), \end{aligned}$$

where  $Q_C$  and  $Q_F$  are the output levels of cloth and food,  $K_C$  and  $L_C$  are the amounts of capital and labor employed in cloth production, and  $K_F$  and  $L_F$  are the amounts of capital and labor employed in food production. Overall, the economy has a fixed supply of capital  $K$  and labor  $L$  that is divided between employment in the two sectors.

We define the following expressions that are related to the two production technologies:

- $a_{KC}$  = capital used to produce one yard of cloth
- $a_{LC}$  = labor used to produce one yard of cloth
- $a_{KF}$  = capital used to produce one calorie of food
- $a_{LF}$  = labor used to produce one calorie of food

These unit input requirements are very similar to the ones defined in the Ricardian model (for labor only). However, there is one crucial difference: In these definitions, we speak of the quantity of capital or labor *used* to produce a given amount of cloth or food rather than the quantity *required* to produce that amount. The reason for this change from the Ricardian model is that when there are two factors of production, there may be some room for choice in the use of inputs.

In general, those choices will depend on the factor prices for labor and capital. However, let's first look at a special case in which there is only one way to produce each good. Consider the following numerical example: Production of one yard of cloth requires a combination of two work-hours and two machine-hours. The production of food is more automated; as a result, production of one calorie of food requires only one work-hour along with three machine-hours. Thus, all the unit input requirements are fixed at  $a_{KC} = 2$ ;  $a_{LC} = 2$ ;  $a_{KF} = 3$ ;  $a_{LF} = 1$ ; and there is no possibility of substituting labor for capital or vice versa. Assume that an economy is endowed with 3,000 units of machine-hours along with 2,000 units of work-hours. In this special case of no factor substitution in production, the economy's production possibility frontier can be derived using those two resource constraints for capital and labor. Production of  $Q_C$  yards of cloth requires  $2Q_C = a_{KC} \times Q_C$  machine-hours and  $2Q_C = a_{LC} \times Q_C$  work-hours. Similarly, production of  $Q_F$  calories of food requires  $3Q_F = a_{KF} \times Q_F$  machine-hours and  $1Q_F = a_{LF} \times Q_F$  work-hours. The total machine-hours used for both cloth and food production cannot exceed the total supply of capital:

$$a_{KC} \times Q_C + a_{KF} \times Q_F \leq K \text{ or } 2Q_C + 3Q_F \leq 3,000. \quad (5-1)$$

This is the resource constraint for capital. Similarly, the resource constraint for labor states that the total work-hours used in production cannot exceed the total supply of labor:

$$a_{LC} \times Q_C + a_{LF} \times Q_F \leq L \text{ or } 2Q_C + Q_F \leq 2,000. \quad (5-2)$$

Figure 5-1 shows the implications of (5-1) and (5-2) for the production possibilities in our numerical example. Each resource constraint is drawn in the same way we drew the production possibility line for the Ricardian case in Figure 3-1. In this case, however, the economy must produce subject to *both* constraints, so the production possibility frontier is the solid line. If the economy specializes in food production (point 1), then it can produce 1,000 calories of food. At that production point, there is spare labor capacity: Only 1,000 work-hours out of 2,000 are employed. Conversely, if the economy specializes in cloth production (point 2), then it can produce 1,000 yards of cloth. At that production point, there is spare capital capacity: Only 2,000 machine-hours out of 3,000 are employed. At production point 3, the economy is employing all of its labor and capital resources (1,500 machine-hours and 1,500 work-hours in cloth production, and 1,500 machine-hours along with 500 work-hours in food production).<sup>1</sup>

The important feature of this production possibility frontier is that the opportunity cost of producing an extra yard of cloth in terms of food is not constant. When the economy is producing mostly food (to the left of point 3), then there is spare labor capacity. Producing two fewer units of food releases six machine-hours that can be

---

<sup>1</sup>The case of no factor substitution is a special one in which there is only a single production point that fully employs both factors; some factors are left unemployed at all the other production points on the production possibilities frontier. In the more general case below with factor substitution, this peculiarity disappears, and both factors are fully employed along the entire production possibility frontier.

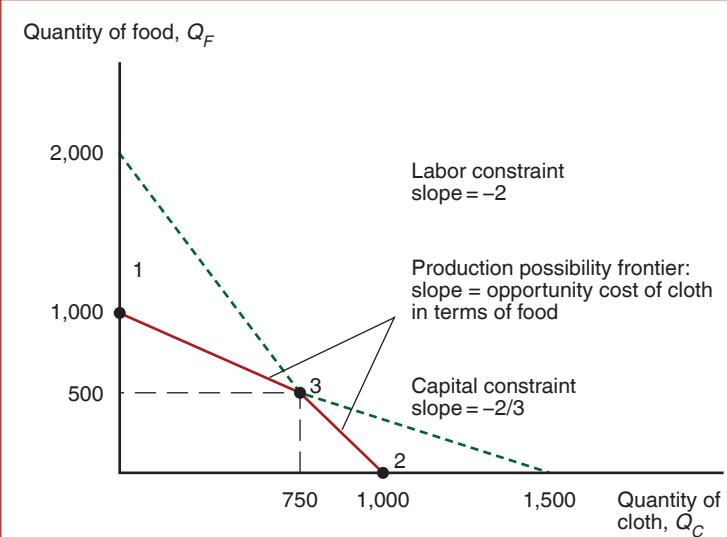


FIGURE 5-1

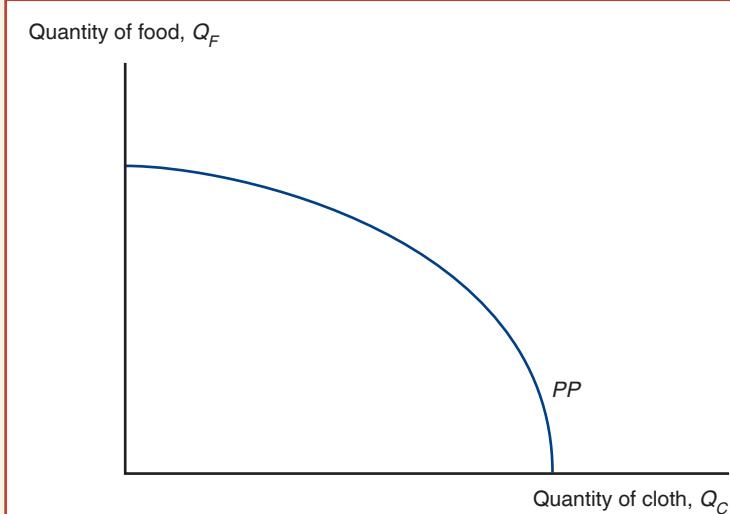
### The Production Possibility Frontier without Factor Substitution: Numerical Example

If capital cannot be substituted for labor or vice versa, the production possibility frontier in the factor-proportions model would be defined by two resource constraints: The economy can't use more than the available supply of labor (2,000 work-hours) or capital (3,000 machine-hours). So the production possibility frontier is defined by the solid line in this figure. At point 1, the economy specializes in food production, and not all available work-hours are employed. At point 2, the economy specializes in cloth, and not all available machine-hours are employed. At production point 3, the economy employs all of its labor and capital resources. The important feature of the production possibility frontier is that the opportunity cost of cloth in terms of food isn't constant: It rises from  $\frac{2}{3}$  to 2 when the economy's mix of production shifts toward cloth.

used to produce three yards of cloth: The opportunity cost of cloth is  $\frac{2}{3}$ . When the economy is producing mostly cloth (to the right of point 3), then there is spare capital capacity. Producing two fewer units of food releases two work-hours that can be used to produce one yard of cloth: The opportunity cost of cloth is 2. Thus, the opportunity cost of cloth is higher when more units of cloth are being produced.

Now let's make the model more realistic and allow the possibility of substituting capital for labor and vice versa in production. This substitution removes the kink in the production possibility frontier; instead, the frontier  $PP$  has the bowed shape shown in Figure 5-2. The bowed shape tells us that the opportunity cost in terms of food of producing one more unit of cloth rises as the economy produces more cloth and less food. That is, our basic insight about how opportunity costs change with the mix of production remains valid.

Where on the production possibility frontier does the economy produce? It depends on prices. Specifically, the economy produces at the point that maximizes the value

**FIGURE 5-2****The Production Possibility Frontier with Factor Substitution**

If capital can be substituted for labor and vice versa, the production possibility frontier no longer has a kink. But it remains true that the opportunity cost of cloth in terms of food rises as the economy's production mix shifts toward cloth and away from food.

of production. Figure 5-3 shows what this implies. The value of the economy's production is

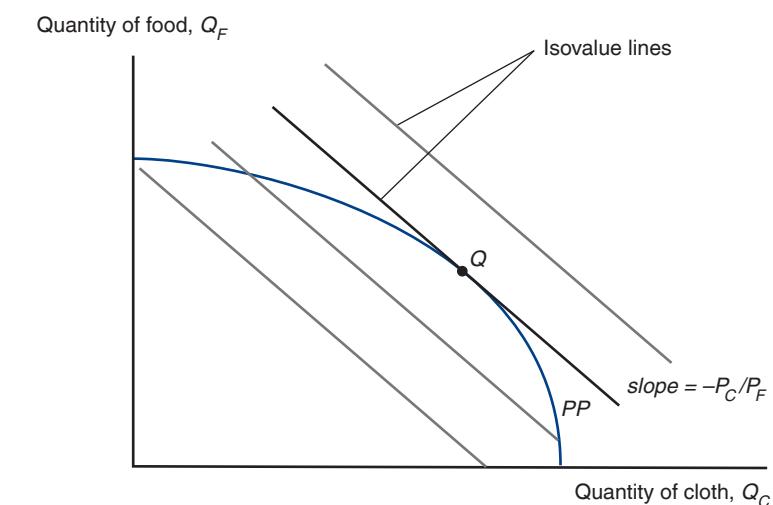
$$V = P_C \times Q_C + P_F \times Q_F$$

where  $P_C$  and  $P_F$  are the prices of cloth and food, respectively. An iso-value line—a line along which the value of output is constant—has a slope of  $-P_C/P_F$ . The economy produces at the point  $Q$ , the point on the production possibility frontier that touches the highest possible iso-value line. At that point, the slope of the production possibility frontier is equal to  $-P_C/P_F$ . So the opportunity cost in terms of food of producing another unit of cloth is equal to the relative price of cloth.

### Choosing the Mix of Inputs

As we have noted, in a two-factor model producers may have room for choice in the use of inputs. A farmer, for example, can choose between using relatively more mechanized equipment (capital) and fewer workers, or vice versa. Thus, the farmer can choose how much labor and capital to use per unit of output produced. In each sector, then, producers will face not fixed input requirements (as in the Ricardian model) but trade-offs like the one illustrated by curve  $II$  in Figure 5-4, which shows alternative input combinations that can be used to produce one calorie of food.

What input choice will producers actually make? It depends on the relative costs of capital and labor. If capital rental rates are high and wages low, farmers will choose to produce using relatively little capital and a lot of labor; on the other hand, if the

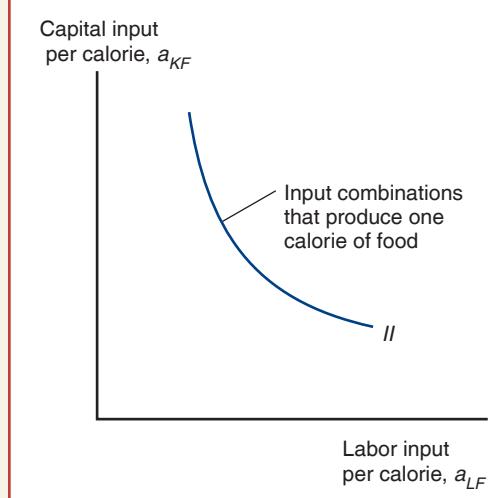


**FIGURE 5-3**  
**Prices and Production**

The economy produces at the point that maximizes the value of production given the prices it faces; this is the point on the highest possible isovalue line. At that point, the opportunity cost of cloth in terms of food is equal to the relative price of cloth,  $P_C/P_F$ .

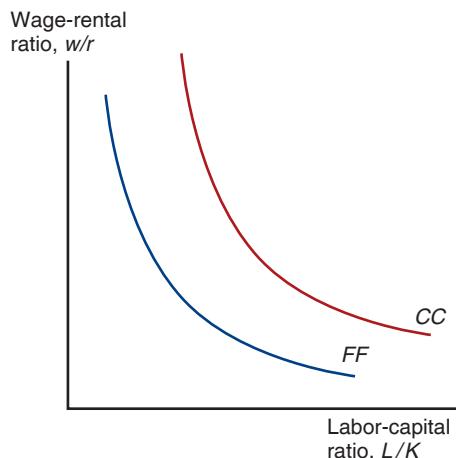
**FIGURE 5-4**  
**Input Possibilities in Food Production**

A farmer can produce a calorie of food with less capital if he or she uses more labor, and vice versa.



**FIGURE 5-5****Factor Prices and Input Choices**

In each sector, the ratio of labor to capital used in production depends on the cost of labor relative to the cost of capital,  $w/r$ . The curve  $FF$  shows the labor-capital ratio choices in food production, while the curve  $CC$  shows the corresponding choices in cloth production. At any given wage-rental ratio, cloth production uses a higher labor-capital ratio; when this is the case, we say that cloth production is *labor-intensive* and that food production is *capital-intensive*.



rental rates are low and wages high, they will save on labor and use a lot more capital. If  $w$  is the wage rate and  $r$  the rental cost of capital, then the input choice will depend on the ratio of these two **factor prices**,  $w/r$ .<sup>2</sup> The relationship between factor prices and the ratio of labor to capital used in production of food is shown in Figure 5-5 as the curve  $FF$ .

There is a corresponding relationship between  $w/r$  and the labor-capital ratio in cloth production. This relationship is shown in Figure 5-5 as the curve  $CC$ . As drawn,  $CC$  is shifted out relative to  $FF$ , indicating that at any given factor prices, production of cloth will always use more labor relative to capital than will production of food. When this is true, we say that production of cloth is *labor-intensive*, while production of food is *capital-intensive*. Notice that the definition of intensity depends on the ratio of labor to capital used in production, not the ratio of labor or capital to output. Thus a good cannot be both capital- and labor-intensive.

The  $CC$  and  $FF$  curves in Figure 5-5 are called relative factor demand curves; they are very similar to the relative demand curve for goods. Their downward slope characterizes the substitution effect in the producers' factor demand. As the wage  $w$  rises relative to the rental rate  $r$ , producers substitute capital for labor in their production decisions. The previous case we considered with no factor substitution is a limiting case, where the relative demand curve is a vertical line: The ratio of labor to capital demanded is fixed and does not vary with changes in the wage-rental ratio  $w/r$ . In the remainder of this chapter, we consider the more general case with factor substitution, where the relative factor demand curves are downward sloping.

**Factor Prices and Goods Prices**

Suppose for a moment the economy produces both cloth and food. (This need not be the case if the economy engages in international trade because it might specialize completely in producing one good or the other, but let us temporarily ignore this

<sup>2</sup>The optimal choice of the labor-capital ratio is explored at greater length in the appendix to this chapter.

possibility.) Then competition among producers in each sector will ensure that the price of each good equals its cost of production. The cost of producing a good depends on factor prices: If wages rise—other things equal—the price of any good whose production uses labor will also rise.

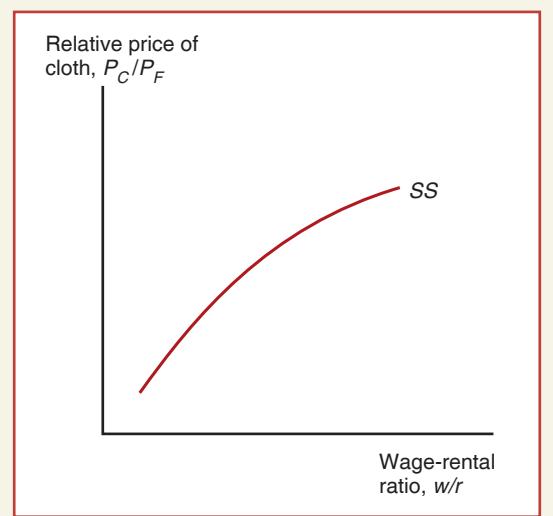
The importance of a particular factor's price to the cost of producing a good depends, however, on how much of that factor the good's production involves. If food production makes use of very little labor, for example, then a rise in the wage will not have much effect on the price of food, whereas if cloth production uses a great deal of labor, a rise in the wage *will* have a large effect on the price. We can therefore conclude that there is a one-to-one relationship between the ratio of the wage rate to the rental rate,  $(w/r)$ , and the ratio of the price of cloth to that of food,  $P_C/P_F$ . This relationship is illustrated by the upward-sloping curve  $SS$  in Figure 5-6.<sup>3</sup>

Let's look at Figures 5-5 and 5-6 together. In Figure 5-7, the left panel is Figure 5-6 (of the  $SS$  curve) turned counterclockwise 90 degrees, while the right panel reproduces Figure 5-5. By putting these two diagrams together, we see what may seem at first to be a surprising linkage of the prices of goods to the ratio of labor to capital used in the production of each good. Suppose the relative price of cloth is  $(P_C/P_F)^1$  (left panel of Figure 5-7); if the economy produces both goods, the ratio of the wage rate to the capital rental rate must equal  $(w/r)^1$ . This ratio then implies that the ratios of labor to capital employed in the production of cloth and food must be  $(L_C/K_C)^1$  and  $(L_F/K_F)^1$ , respectively (right panel of Figure 5-7). If the relative price of cloth were to rise to the level indicated by  $(P_C/P_F)^2$ , the ratio of the wage rate to the capital rental rate would rise to  $(w/r)^2$ . Because labor is now relatively more expensive, the ratios of labor to

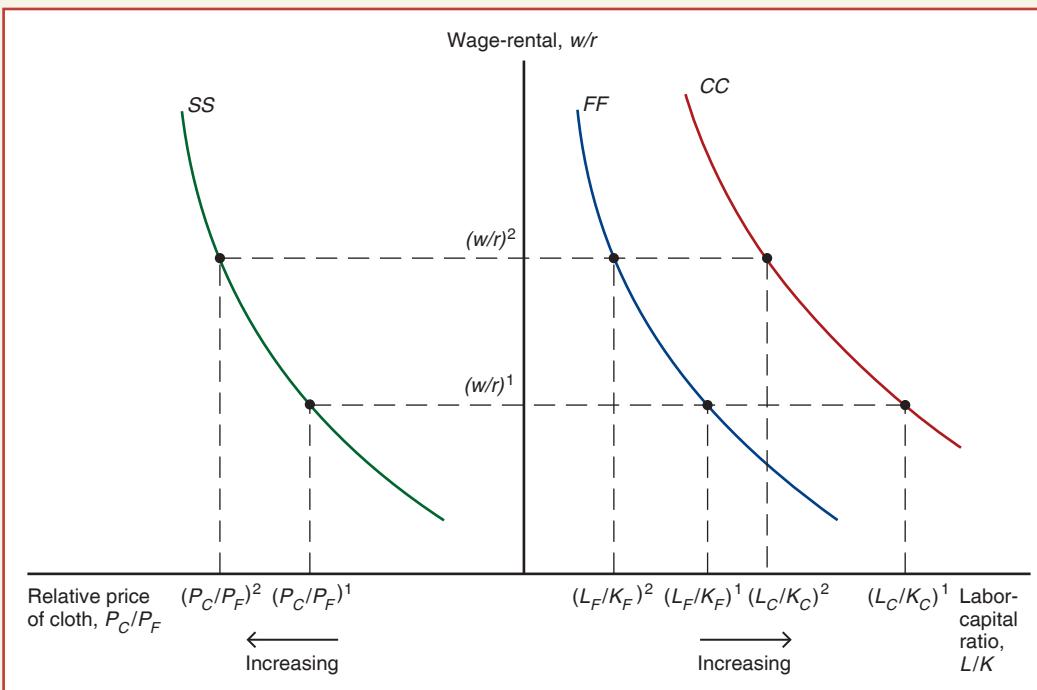
**FIGURE 5-6**

### Factor Prices and Goods Prices

Because cloth production is labor-intensive while food production is capital-intensive, there is a one-to-one relationship between the factor price ratio  $w/r$  and the relative price of cloth  $P_C/P_F$ ; the higher the relative cost of labor, the higher must be the relative price of the labor-intensive good. The relationship is illustrated by the curve  $SS$ .



<sup>3</sup>This relationship holds only when the economy produces both cloth and food, which is associated with a given range for the relative price of cloth. If the relative price rises beyond a given upper-bound level, then the economy specializes in cloth production; conversely, if the relative price drops below a lower-bound level, then the economy specializes in food production.

**FIGURE 5-7****From Goods Prices to Input Choices**

Given the relative price of cloth ( $P_C/P_F$ )<sup>1</sup>, the ratio of the wage rate to the capital rental rate must equal  $(w/r)$ <sup>1</sup>. This wage-rental ratio then implies that the ratios of labor to capital employed in the production of cloth and food must be  $(L_C/K_C)$ <sup>1</sup> and  $(L_F/K_F)$ <sup>1</sup>. If the relative price of cloth rises to  $(P_C/P_F)$ <sup>2</sup>, the wage-rental ratio must rise to  $(w/r)$ <sup>2</sup>. This will cause the labor-capital ratio used in the production of both goods to drop.

capital employed in the production of cloth and food would therefore drop to  $(L_C/K_C)$ <sup>2</sup> and  $(L_F/K_F)$ <sup>2</sup>.

We can learn one more important lesson from this diagram. The left panel already tells us that an increase in the price of cloth relative to that of food will raise the income of workers relative to that of capital owners. But it is possible to make a stronger statement: Such a change in relative prices will unambiguously raise the purchasing power of workers and lower the purchasing power of capital owners by raising real wages and lowering real rents in terms of *both* goods.

How do we know this? When  $P_C/P_F$  increases, the ratio of labor to capital falls in both cloth and food production. But in a competitive economy, factors of production are paid their marginal product—the real wage of workers in terms of cloth is equal to the marginal productivity of labor in cloth production, and so on. When the ratio of labor to capital falls in producing either good, the marginal product of labor in terms of that good increases—so workers find their real wage higher in terms of both goods. On the other hand, the marginal product of capital falls in both industries, so capital owners find their real incomes lower in terms of both goods.

In this model, then, as in the specific factors model, changes in relative prices have strong effects on income distribution. Not only does a change in the prices of goods change the distribution of income; it always changes it so much that owners of one factor of production gain while owners of the other are made worse off.<sup>4</sup>

## Resources and Output

We can now complete the description of a two-factor economy by describing the relationship between goods prices, factor supplies, and output. In particular, we investigate how changes in resources (the total supply of a factor) affect the allocation of factors across sectors and the associated changes in output produced.

Suppose we take the relative price of cloth as given. We know from Figure 5-7 that a given relative price of cloth, say  $(P_C/P_F)^1$ , is associated with a fixed wage-rental ratio  $(w/r)^1$  (so long as both cloth and food are produced). That ratio, in turn, determines the ratios of labor to capital employed in both the cloth and the food sectors:  $(L_C/K_C)^1$  and  $(L_F/K_F)^1$ , respectively. Now we assume that the economy's labor force grows, which implies that the economy's aggregate labor to capital ratio,  $L/K$ , increases. At the given relative price of cloth  $(P_C/P_F)^1$ , we just saw that the ratios of labor to capital employed in both sectors remain constant. How can the economy accommodate the increase in the aggregate relative supply of labor  $L/K$  if the relative labor demanded in each sector remains constant at  $(L_C/K_C)^1$  and  $(L_F/K_F)^1$ ? In other words, how does the economy employ the additional labor hours? The answer lies in the allocation of labor and capital across sectors: The labor-capital ratio in the cloth sector is higher than that in the food sector, so the economy can increase the employment of labor to capital (holding the labor-capital ratio fixed in each sector) by allocating more labor and capital to the production of cloth (which is labor-intensive).<sup>5</sup> As labor and capital move from the food sector to the cloth sector, the economy produces more cloth and less food.

The best way to think about this result is in terms of how resources affect the economy's production possibilities. In Figure 5-8, the curve  $TT^1$  represents the economy's production possibilities before the increase in labor supply. Output is at point 1, where the slope of the production possibility frontier equals minus the relative price of cloth,  $-P_C/P_F$ , and the economy produces  $Q_C^1$  and  $Q_F^1$  of cloth and food. The curve  $TT^2$  shows the production possibility frontier after an increase in the labor supply. The production possibility frontier shifts out to  $TT^2$ . After this increase, the economy can produce more of both cloth and food than before. The outward shift of the frontier is, however, much larger in the direction of cloth than of food—that is, there is a **biased expansion of production possibilities**, which occurs when the production possibility frontier shifts out much more in one direction than in the other. In this case, the expansion is so strongly biased toward cloth production that at unchanged relative prices, production moves from point 1 to point 2, which involves an actual fall in food output from  $Q_F^1$  to  $Q_F^2$  and a large increase in cloth output from  $Q_C^1$  to  $Q_C^2$ .

The biased effect of increases in resources on production possibilities is the key to understanding how differences in resources give rise to international trade.<sup>6</sup> An increase

---

<sup>4</sup>This relationship between goods prices and factor prices (and the associated welfare effects) was clarified in a classic paper by Wolfgang Stolper and Paul Samuelson, "Protection and Real Wages," *Review of Economic Studies* 9 (November 1941), pp. 58–73, and is therefore known as the *Stolper-Samuelson effect*.

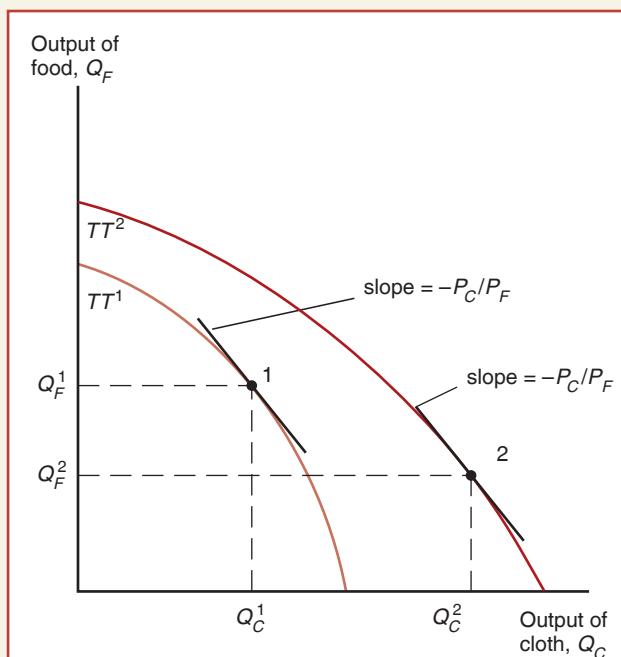
<sup>5</sup>See the appendix for a more formal derivation of this result and additional details.

<sup>6</sup>The biased effect of resource changes on production was pointed out in a paper by the Polish economist T. M. Rybczynski, "Factor Endowments and Relative Commodity Prices," *Economica* 22 (November 1955), pp. 336–341. It is therefore known as the *Rybczynski effect*.

**FIGURE 5-8**

### Resources and Production Possibilities

An increase in the supply of labor shifts the economy's production possibility frontier outward from  $TT^1$  to  $TT^2$  but does so disproportionately in the direction of cloth production. The result is that at an unchanged relative price of cloth (indicated by the slope  $-P_C/P_F$ ), food production actually declines from  $Q_F^1$  to  $Q_F^2$ .



in the supply of labor expands production possibilities disproportionately in the direction of cloth production, while an increase in the supply of capital expands them disproportionately in the direction of food production. Thus, an economy with a high relative supply of labor to capital will be relatively better at producing cloth than an economy with a low relative supply of labor to capital. *Generally, an economy will tend to be relatively effective at producing goods that are intensive in the factors with which the country is relatively well endowed.*

We will further see later some empirical evidence confirming that changes in a country's resources lead to growth that is biased toward the sectors that intensively use the factor whose supply has increased. We document this for the Chinese economy, which has recently experienced substantial growth in its supply of skilled labor.

## Effects of International Trade between Two-Factor Economies

Having outlined the production structure of a two-factor economy, we can now look at what happens when two such economies, Home and Foreign, trade. As always, Home and Foreign are similar along many dimensions. They have the same tastes and therefore have identical relative demands for food and cloth when faced with the same relative prices of the two goods. They also have the same technology: A given amount of labor and capital yields the same output of either cloth or food in the two countries. The only difference between the countries is in their resources: Home has a higher ratio of labor to capital than Foreign does.

## Relative Prices and the Pattern of Trade

Since Home has a higher ratio of labor to capital than Foreign, Home is *labor-abundant* and Foreign is *capital-abundant*. Note that abundance is defined in terms of a ratio and not in absolute quantities. For example, the total number of workers in the United States is roughly three times higher than that in Mexico, but Mexico would still be considered labor-abundant relative to the United States since the U.S. capital stock is more than three times higher than the capital stock in Mexico. “Abundance” is always defined in relative terms, by comparing the ratio of labor to capital in the two countries; thus no country is abundant in everything.

Since cloth is the labor-intensive good, Home’s production possibility frontier relative to Foreign’s is shifted out more in the direction of cloth than in the direction of food. Thus, other things equal, Home tends to produce a higher ratio of cloth to food.

Because trade leads to a convergence of relative prices, one of the other things that will be equal is the price of cloth relative to that of food. Because the countries differ in their factor abundances, however, for any given ratio of the price of cloth to that of food, Home will produce a higher ratio of cloth to food than Foreign will: Home will have a larger *relative supply* of cloth. Home’s relative supply curve, then, lies to the right of Foreign’s.

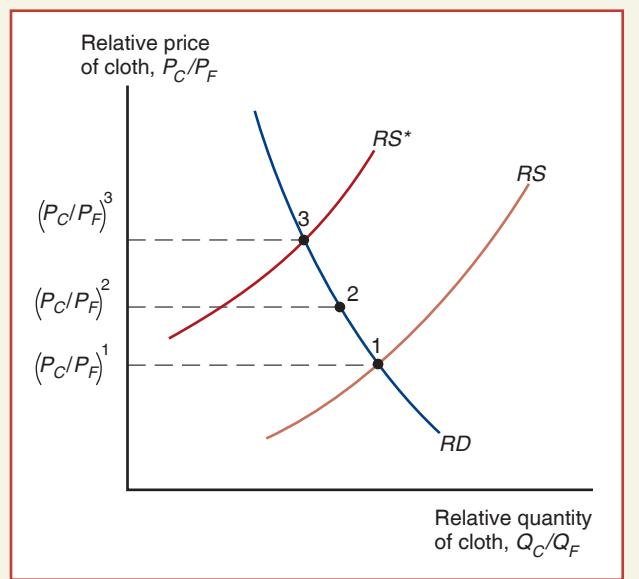
The relative supply schedules of Home ( $RS$ ) and Foreign ( $RS^*$ ) are illustrated in Figure 5-9. The relative demand curve, which we have assumed to be the same for both countries, is shown as  $RD$ . If there were no international trade, the equilibrium for Home would be at point 1, and the relative price of cloth would be  $(P_C/P_F)^1$ . The equilibrium for Foreign would be at point 3, with a relative price of cloth given by  $(P_C/P_F)^3$ . Thus, in the absence of trade, the relative price of cloth would be lower in Home than in Foreign.

When Home and Foreign trade with each other, their relative prices converge. The relative price of cloth rises in Home and declines in Foreign, and a new world relative price of cloth is established at a point somewhere between the pretrade relative prices,

**FIGURE 5-9**

### Trade Leads to a Convergence of Relative Prices

In the absence of trade, Home’s equilibrium would be at point 1, where domestic relative supply  $RS$  intersects the relative demand curve  $RD$ . Similarly, Foreign’s equilibrium would be at point 3. Trade leads to a world relative price that lies between the pretrade prices  $(P_C/P_F)^1$  and  $(P_C/P_F)^3$ , such as  $(P_C/P_F)^2$  at point 2.



say at  $(P_C/P_F)^2$ . In Chapter 4, we discussed how an economy responds to trade based on the direction of the change in the relative price of the goods: The economy exports the good whose relative price increases. Thus, Home will export cloth (the relative price of cloth rises in Home), while Foreign will export food. (The relative price of cloth declines in Foreign, which means that the relative price of food rises there.)

Home becomes an exporter of cloth because it is labor-abundant (relative to Foreign) and because the production of cloth is labor-intensive (relative to food production). Similarly, Foreign becomes an exporter of food because it is capital-abundant and because the production of food is capital-intensive. These predictions for the pattern of trade (in the two-good, two-factor, two-country version that we have studied) can be generalized as the following theorem, named after the original developers of this model of trade:

**Heckscher-Ohlin Theorem:** *The country that is abundant in a factor exports the good whose production is intensive in that factor.*

In the more realistic case with multiple countries, factors of production, and numbers of goods, we can generalize this result as a correlation between a country's abundance in a factor and its exports of goods that use that factor intensively: *Countries tend to export goods whose production is intensive in factors with which the countries are abundantly endowed.*<sup>7</sup>

### Trade and the Distribution of Income

We have just discussed how trade induces a convergence of relative prices. Previously, we saw that changes in relative prices, in turn, have strong effects on the relative earnings of labor and capital. A rise in the price of cloth raises the purchasing power of labor in terms of both goods while lowering the purchasing power of capital in terms of both goods. A rise in the price of food has the reverse effect. Thus, international trade can have a powerful effect on the distribution of income, even in the long run. In Home, where the relative price of cloth rises, people who get their incomes from labor gain from trade, but those who derive their incomes from capital are made worse off. In Foreign, where the relative price of cloth falls, the opposite happens: Laborers are made worse off and capital owners are made better off.

The resource of which a country has a relatively large supply (labor in Home, capital in Foreign) is the **abundant factor** in that country, and the resource of which it has a relatively small supply (capital in Home, labor in Foreign) is the **scarce factor**. The general conclusion about the income distribution effects of international trade in the long run is: *Owners of a country's abundant factors gain from trade, but owners of a country's scarce factors lose.*

In our analysis of the specific factors case, we found that factors of production that are “stuck” in an import-competing industry lose from the opening of trade. Here, we find that factors of production that are used intensively by the import-competing industry are hurt by the opening of trade—regardless of the industry in which they are employed. Still, the theoretical argument regarding the aggregate gains from trade is identical to the specific factors case: Opening to trade expands an economy's consumption possibilities (see Figure 4-11), so there is a way to make everybody better

<sup>7</sup>See Alan Deardorff, “The General Validity of the Heckscher-Ohlin Theorem,” *American Economic Review* 72 (September 1982), pp. 683–694, for a formal derivation of this extension to multiple goods, factors, and countries.

off. However, one crucial difference exists regarding the income distribution effects in these two models. The specificity of factors to particular industries is often only a temporary problem: Garment makers cannot become computer manufacturers overnight, but given time the U.S. economy can shift its manufacturing employment from declining sectors to expanding ones. Thus, income distribution effects that arise because labor and other factors of production are immobile represent a temporary, transitional problem (which is not to say that such effects are not painful to those who lose). In contrast, effects of trade on the distribution of income among land, labor, and capital are more or less permanent.

Compared with the rest of the world, the United States is abundantly endowed with highly skilled labor while low-skilled labor is correspondingly scarce. This means that international trade has the potential to make low-skilled workers in the United States worse off—not just temporarily, but on a sustained basis. The negative effect of trade on low-skilled workers poses a persistent political problem, one that cannot be remedied by policies that provide temporary relief (such as unemployment insurance). Consequently, the potential effect of increased trade on income inequality in advanced economies such as the United States has been the subject of a large amount of empirical research. We review some of that evidence in the Case Study that follows, and conclude that trade has been, at most, a contributing factor to the measured increases in income inequality in the United States.

## CASE STUDY

### North-South Trade and Income Inequality

The distribution of wages in the United States has become considerably more unequal since the 1970s. In 1970, a male worker with a wage at the 90th percentile of the wage distribution (earning more than the bottom 90 percent but less than the top 10 percent of wage earners) earned 3.2 times the wage of a male worker at the bottom 10th percentile of the distribution. By 2016, that worker at the 90th percentile earned more than 5.5 times the wage of the worker at the bottom 10th percentile. Wage inequality for female workers has increased at a similar rate over that same time span. Much of this increase in wage inequality was associated with a rise in the premium attached to education, especially since the 1980s. In 1980, a worker with a college degree earned 40 percent more than a worker with just a high school education. This education premium rose steadily through the 1980s and 1990s to 80 percent. Since then, it has been roughly flat (though wage disparities among college graduates continued rising).

Why has wage inequality increased? Many observers attribute the change to the growth of world trade and in particular to the growing exports of manufactured goods from newly industrializing economies (NIEs) such as Mexico and China. Until the 1970s, trade between advanced industrial nations and less-developed economies—often referred to as “North-South” trade because most advanced nations are still in the temperate zone of the Northern Hemisphere—consisted overwhelmingly of an exchange of Northern manufactures for Southern raw materials and agricultural goods, such as oil and coffee. From 1970 onward, however, former raw material exporters increasingly began to sell manufactured

goods to high-wage countries like the United States. As we learned in Chapter 2, developing countries have dramatically changed the kinds of goods they export, moving away from their traditional reliance on agricultural and mineral products to a focus on manufactured goods. While NIEs also provided a rapidly growing market for exports from the high-wage nations, the exports of the newly industrializing economies obviously differed greatly in factor intensity from their imports. Overwhelmingly, NIE exports to advanced nations consisted of clothing, shoes, and other relatively unsophisticated products (“low-tech goods”) whose production is intensive in unskilled labor, while advanced-country exports to the NIEs consisted of capital- or skill-intensive goods such as chemicals and aircraft (“high-tech goods”).

To many observers, the conclusion seemed straightforward: What was happening was a move toward factor-price equalization. Trade between advanced countries that are abundant in capital and skill and NIEs with their abundant supply of unskilled labor was raising the wages of highly skilled workers and lowering the wages of less-skilled workers in the skill- and capital-abundant countries, just as the factor-proportions model predicts.

This is an argument with much more than purely academic significance. If one regards the growing inequality of income in advanced nations as a serious problem, as many people do, and if one also believes that growing world trade is the main cause of that problem, it becomes difficult to maintain economists’ traditional support for free trade. (As we have previously argued, in principle, taxes and government payments can offset the effect of trade on income distribution, but one may argue that this is unlikely to happen in practice.) Some influential commentators have argued that advanced nations will have to restrict their trade with low-wage countries if they want to remain basically middle-class societies.

While some economists believe that growing trade with low-wage countries has been the main cause of rising income inequality in the United States, most empirical researchers believed at the time of this writing that international trade has been at most a contributing factor to that growth and that the main causes lie elsewhere.<sup>8</sup> This skepticism rests on three main observations.

First, the factor-proportions model says that international trade affects income distribution via a change in relative prices of goods. So if international trade was the main driving force behind growing income inequality, there ought to be clear evidence of a rise in the prices of skill-intensive products compared with those of unskilled-labor-intensive goods. Studies of international price data, however, have failed to find clear evidence of such a change in relative prices.

Second, the model predicts that relative factor prices should converge across countries: If wages of skilled workers are rising and those of unskilled workers

---

<sup>8</sup>Among the important entries in the discussion of the impact of trade on income distribution have been Robert Lawrence and Matthew Slaughter, “Trade and U.S. Wages: Giant Sucking Sound or Small Hiccup?” *Brookings Papers on Economic Activity: Microeconomic* 2 (1993), pp. 161–226; Jeffrey D. Sachs and Howard Shatz, “Trade and Jobs in U.S. Manufacturing,” *Brookings Papers on Economic Activity* 1 (1994), pp. 1–84; and Adrian Wood, *North-South Trade, Employment, and Income Inequality* (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1994). For a survey of this debate and related issues, see Chapter 9 in Lawrence Edwards and Robert Z. Lawrence, *Rising Tide: Is Growth in Emerging Economies Good for the United States?* (Peterson Institute for International Economics, 2013).

are falling in the skill-abundant country, the reverse should be happening in the labor-abundant country. Studies of income distribution in developing countries that have opened themselves to trade have shown that at least in some cases, the reverse is true. In Mexico, in particular, careful studies have shown that the transformation of the country's trade in the late 1980s—when Mexico opened itself to imports and became a major exporter of manufactured goods—was accompanied by rising wages for skilled workers and growing overall wage inequality, closely paralleling developments in the United States. More recently, China has gone through a similar transformation since joining the World Trade Organization (WTO) in 2001; and there too, this transformation has been associated with rising wage inequality.

Third, although trade between advanced countries and NIEs has grown rapidly, it still constitutes only a small percentage of total spending in the advanced nations. As a result, estimates of the “factor content” of this trade—the skilled labor exported, in effect, by advanced countries embodied in skill-intensive exports and the unskilled labor, in effect, imported in labor-intensive imports—are still only a small fraction of the total supplies of skilled and unskilled labor. This suggests that these trade flows couldn't have had a very large impact on income distribution.

What, then, *is* responsible for the growing gap between skilled and unskilled workers in the United States? The view of the majority is that the villain is not trade but rather new production technologies that put a greater emphasis on worker skills (such as the widespread introduction of computers and other advanced technologies in the workplace). This is often referred to as a technology-skill complementarity or **skill-biased technological change**.<sup>9</sup>

We discuss the links between this type of technological change and rising wage inequality in the following section.

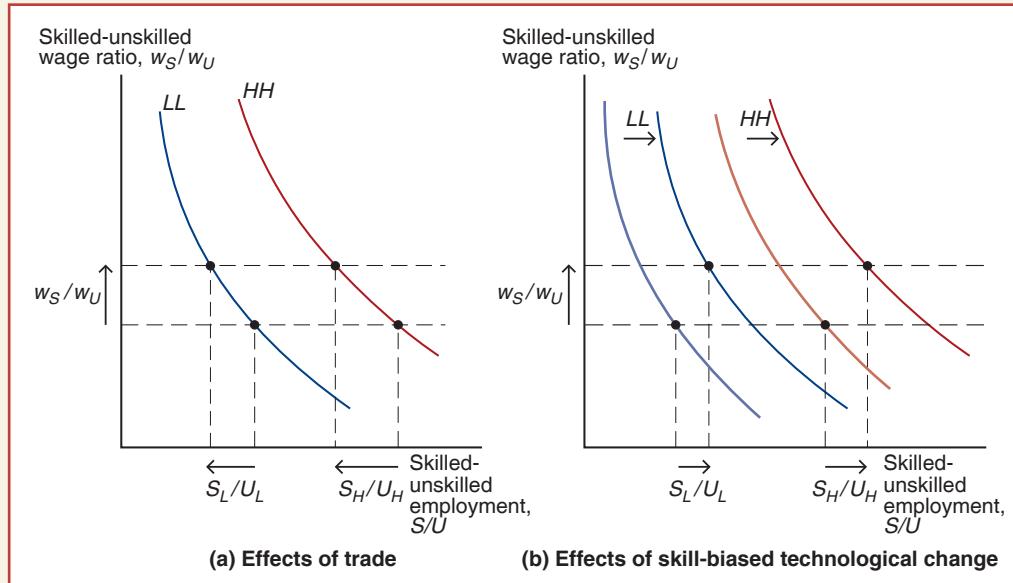
## Skill-Biased Technological Change and Income Inequality

We now extend our two-factor production model to incorporate technological change that is skill-biased. We discuss how this provides a much better fit for the empirical patterns associated with rising wage inequality in the United States. We also describe some new research that links back portions of this technological change to trade and outsourcing.

Consider the variant of our two-good, two-factor model where skilled and unskilled labor are used to produce “high-tech” and “low-tech” goods. Figure 5-10 shows the relative factor demands for producers in both sectors: the ratio of skilled-unskilled workers employed as a function of the skilled-unskilled wage ratio (*LL* curve for low-tech and *HH* for high-tech).

We have assumed that production of high-tech goods is skilled-labor intensive, so the *HH* curve is shifted out relative to the *LL* curve. In the background, an *SS* curve (see Figures 5-6 and 5-7) determines the skilled-unskilled wage ratio as an increasing function of the relative price of high-tech goods (with respect to low-tech goods).

<sup>9</sup>See Claudia Goldin and Lawrence F. Katz, “The Origins of Technology-Skill Complementarity,” *The Quarterly Journal of Economics* (1998), pp. 693–732.



**FIGURE 5-10**

## **Increased Wage Inequality: Trade- or Skill-Biased Technological Change?**

The  $LL$  and  $HH$  curves show the skilled-unskilled employment ratio,  $S/U$ , as a function of the skilled-unskilled wage ratio,  $w_S/w_U$ , in the low-tech and high-tech sectors. The high-tech sector is more skill-intensive than the low-tech sector, so the  $HH$  curve is shifted out relative to the  $LL$  curve. Panel (a) shows the case where increased trade with developing countries leads to a higher skilled-unskilled wage ratio. Producers in both sectors respond by *decreasing* their relative employment of skilled workers:  $S_L/U_L$  and  $S_H/U_H$  both decrease. Panel (b) shows the case where skill-biased technological change leads to a higher skilled-unskilled wage ratio. The  $LL$  and  $HH$  curves shift out (increased relative demand for skilled workers in both sectors). However, in this case producers in both sectors respond by *increasing* their relative employment of skilled workers:  $S_L/U_L$  and  $S_H/U_H$  both increase.

In panel (a), we show the case where increased trade with developing countries generates an increase in wage inequality (the skilled-unskilled wage ratio) in those countries (via an increase in the relative price of high-tech goods). The increase in the relative cost of skilled workers induces producers in both sectors to *reduce* their employment of skilled workers relative to unskilled workers.

In panel (b), we show the case where technological change in both sectors generates an increase in wage inequality. This technology change is classified as “skill-biased” because it shifts out the relative demand for skilled workers in both sectors (both the  $LL$  and the  $HH$  curves shift out). It also induces larger productivity gains in the high-tech sector due to its complementarity with skilled workers. Thus, for any given relative price of high-tech goods, the technology change is associated with a higher skilled-unskilled wage ratio (the  $SS$  curve shifts). Even though skilled labor is relatively more expensive, producers in both sectors respond to the technological change by *increasing* their employment of skilled workers relative to unskilled workers. [Note that the trade explanation in panel (a) predicts an opposite response for employment in both sectors.]

We can now examine the relative merits of the trade versus skill-biased technological change explanations for the increase in wage inequality by looking at the changes in the

skilled-unskilled employment ratio within sectors in the United States. A widespread increase in these employment ratios for all different kinds of sectors (both skilled-labor-intensive and unskilled-labor-intensive sectors) in the U.S. economy points to the skill-biased technological explanation. This is exactly what has been observed in the United States over the last half-century.

In Figure 5-11, sectors are separated into four groups based on their skill intensity. U.S. firms do not report their employment in terms of skill but use a related categorization of production and non-production workers. With a few exceptions, non-production positions require higher levels of education—and so we measure the skilled-unskilled employment ratio in a sector as the ratio of non-production employment to production employment.<sup>10</sup> Sectors with the highest non-production

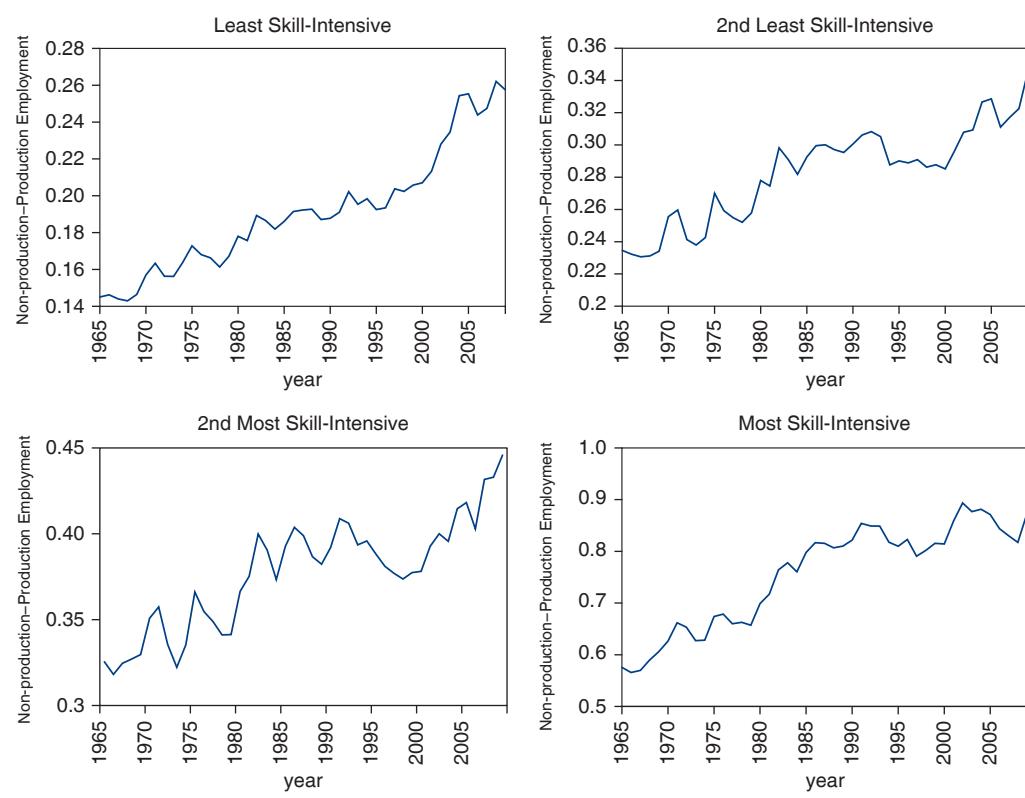


FIGURE 5-11

### Evolution of U.S. Non-production–Production Employment Ratios in Four Groups of Sectors

Sectors are grouped based on their skill intensity. The non-production–production employment ratio has increased over time in all four sector groups.

**Source:** NBER-CES Manufacturing Productivity Database.

<sup>10</sup>On average, the wage of a non-production worker is 60 percent higher than that of a production worker.

to production employment ratios are classified as most skill-intensive. Each quadrant of Figure 5-11 shows the evolution of this employment ratio over time for each group of sectors (the average employment ratio across all sectors in the group). Although there are big differences in average skill intensity across the groups, we clearly see that the employment ratios are increasing over time for all four groups. This widespread increase across most sectors of the U.S. economy is one of the main pieces of evidence pointing to the technology explanation for the increases in U.S. wage inequality.

Yet, even though most economists agree that skill-biased technological change has occurred, recent research has uncovered some new ways in which trade has been an indirect contributor to the associated increases in wage inequality, by accelerating this process of technological change. These explanations are based on the principle that firms have a choice of production methods that is influenced by openness to trade and foreign investment. For example, some studies show that firms that begin to export also upgrade to more skill-intensive production technologies. On the import side, other studies have shown that competition from NIEs can also trigger innovations in more skill-intensive technologies (such as automation). Trade liberalization can then generate widespread technological change by inducing a large proportion of firms to make such technology-upgrade choices.

Another example is related to foreign outsourcing and the liberalization of trade and foreign investment. In particular, the North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA) described in Chapter 2, recently renamed as the U.S.-Mexico-Canada agreement (USMCA), has made it substantially easier for firms to move different parts of their production processes (research and development, component production, assembly, marketing) across different locations in North America. Because production worker wages are substantially lower in Mexico, U.S. firms have an incentive to move the processes that use production workers more intensively to Mexico (such as component production and assembly). The processes that rely more intensively on higher-skilled, non-production workers (such as research and development and marketing) tend to stay in the United States (or Canada). From the U.S. perspective, this break-up of the production process increases the relative demand for skilled workers and is very similar to skill-biased technological change. One study finds that this outsourcing process from the United States to Mexico can explain 21 to 27 percent of the increase in the wage premium between non-production and production workers.<sup>11</sup>

Thus, some of the observed skill-biased technological change, and its effect on increased wage inequality, can be traced back to increased openness to trade and foreign investment. And, as we have mentioned, increases in wage inequality in advanced economies are a genuine concern. However, the use of trade restrictions targeted at limiting technological innovations—because those innovations favor relatively higher-skilled workers—is particularly problematic: Those innovations also bring substantial aggregate gains (along with the standard gains from trade) that would then be foregone. Consequently, economists favor longer-term policies that ease the skill-acquisition process for all workers so that the gains from the technological innovations can be spread as widely as possible.

---

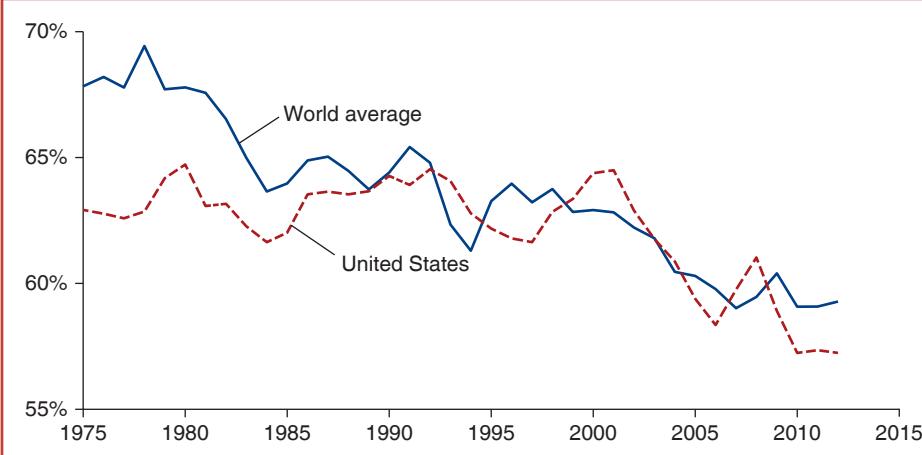
<sup>11</sup>See Robert Feenstra and Gordon Hanson, “The Impact of Outsourcing and High-Technology Capital on Wages: Estimates for the United States, 1979–1990,” *Quarterly Journal of Economics* 144 (August 1999), pp. 907–940.

## THE DECLINING LABOR SHARE OF INCOME AND CAPITAL-SKILL COMPLEMENTARITY

In the previous Case Study, we documented the divergence in wages for American workers over the past half-century. Skilled workers were not the only factor of production who experienced compensation gains during this time period. Over that same time span, the compensation of capital owners also increased. We can measure this by looking at the share of total income going to labor compensation: The remainder of the total income is the returns (compensation) to capital. Figure 5-12 shows how this labor income share for American workers declined from 65 percent in 1975 to 60 percent in 2012 (in other words, the return to capital owners increased from 35 to 40 percent).<sup>12</sup>

One possible explanation for this trend—just as it was for the increasing compensation of skilled workers—is increased trade with the

labor-abundant newly industrializing economies (NIEs). This would induce a move toward factor-price equalization for the compensation of capital and labor: The compensation of capital would increase for capital-abundant United States, while it would decrease for the labor-abundant NIEs. Once again, the evidence strongly contradicts this prediction. Figure 5-12 also shows the average world trend for the labor share based on a wide sample of 59 countries (with available data from 1975 to 2012). The trend toward lower labor income share (and higher capital shares) is a worldwide phenomenon that has been experienced in labor-abundant countries (including China, India, and Mexico) to the same extent as it has been for capital-abundant countries such as the United States. Thus, once again, the evidence



**FIGURE 5-12  
U.S. and Average World Corporate Labor Share**

Unweighted world average for all 59 countries with available data.

**Source:** Loukas Karabarbounis and Brent Neiman, "The Global Decline of the Labor Share," *The Quarterly Journal of Economics* 129.1 (2014), pp. 61–103.

<sup>12</sup>Because of difficulties in separating wage and capital income for the self-employed and partnerships, the figure is based on income measures for incorporated firms.

supports an explanation based on technological changes within sectors (the increases in the return to capital also occur predominantly within sectors).

One popular way of modeling this type of technological change in recent research is to introduce a production function with three factors (skilled and unskilled labor, and capital) where capital is a much closer substitute for unskilled labor than for skilled labor. This is referred to as **capital-skill complementarity** (because the low substitution between skilled workers and capital

makes those factors complements in production). Technological change takes the form of new and better machines (capital) that displace unskilled workers but still require skilled workers. This generates higher returns for both capital and skilled workers while depressing the returns to unskilled workers. This type of technological change (automation) can explain the observed worldwide increases in both wage inequality and the returns to capital as well as the within-sector increases in the employment share of (relatively skilled) non-production workers (see previous Case Study).

## Factor-Price Equalization

In the absence of trade, labor would earn less in Home than in Foreign, and capital would earn more. Without trade, labor-abundant Home would have a lower relative price of cloth than capital-abundant Foreign, and the difference in relative prices of *goods* implies an even larger difference in the relative prices of *factors*.

When Home and Foreign trade, the relative prices of goods converge. This convergence, in turn, causes convergence of the relative prices of capital and labor. Thus, there is clearly a tendency toward **equalization of factor prices**. How far does this tendency go?

The surprising answer is that in the model, the tendency goes all the way. International trade leads to complete equalization of factor prices. Although Home has a higher ratio of labor to capital than Foreign, once they trade with each other, the wage rate and the capital rent rate are the same in both countries. To see this, refer back to Figure 5-6, which shows that given the prices of cloth and food, we can determine the wage rate and the rental rate without reference to the supplies of capital and labor. If Home and Foreign face the same relative prices of cloth and food, they will also have the same factor prices.

To understand how this equalization occurs, we have to realize that when Home and Foreign trade with each other, more is happening than a simple exchange of goods. In an indirect way, the two countries are in effect trading factors of production. Home lets Foreign use some of its abundant labor, not by selling the labor directly but by trading goods produced with a high ratio of labor to capital for goods produced with a low labor-capital ratio. The goods that Home sells require more labor to produce than the goods it receives in return; that is, more labor is *embodied* in Home's exports than in its imports. Thus Home exports its labor, embodied in its labor-intensive exports. Conversely, since Foreign's exports embody more capital than its imports, Foreign is indirectly exporting its capital. When viewed this way, it is not surprising that trade leads to equalization of the two countries' factor prices.

Although this view of trade is simple and appealing, there is a major problem with it: In the real world, factor prices are *not* equalized. For example, there is an extremely wide range of wage rates across countries (Table 5-1). While some of these differences may reflect differences in the quality of labor, they are too wide to be explained away on this basis alone.

**TABLE 5-1 Comparative International Wage Rates (United States = 100)**

Country	Hourly Compensation of Manufacturing Workers, 2016 (United States = 100)
Switzerland	154.64
Germany	110.63
<b>United States</b>	<b>100.00</b>
United Kingdom	72.79
Japan	67.80
South Korea	58.87
Argentina	42.97
Greece	40.22
Portugal	28.08
Czech Republic	27.43
Poland	21.85
Brazil	20.45
Turkey	15.61
Mexico	10.02
Philippines	5.27

Source: The Conference Board, International Labor Comparisons.

To understand why the model doesn't give us an accurate prediction, we need to look at its assumptions. Three assumptions crucial to the prediction of factor-price equalization are in reality certainly untrue. These are the assumptions that (1) technologies are the same, (2) costless trade equalizes the prices of goods in the two countries, and (3) both countries produce both goods.

1. The proposition that trade equalizes factor prices will not hold if countries have different technologies of production. For example, a country with superior technology might have both a higher wage rate and a higher rental rate than a country with an inferior technology.
2. Complete factor-price equalization also depends on complete convergence of the prices of goods. In the real world, prices of goods are not fully equalized by international trade. This lack of convergence is due to both natural barriers (such as transportation costs) and barriers to trade such as tariffs, import quotas, and other restrictions.
3. Even if all countries use the same technologies and face the same goods prices, factor-price equalization still depends on the assumption that countries produce the same set of goods. We assumed this when we derived the wage and rental rates from the prices of cloth and food in Figure 5-6. However, countries may be induced to specialize in the production of different goods. A country with a very high ratio of labor to capital might produce only cloth, while a country with a very high ratio of capital to labor might produce only food. This implies that factor-price equalization occurs only if the countries involved are sufficiently similar in their relative factor endowments. (A more thorough discussion of this point is given in the appendix to this chapter.) Thus, factor prices need not be equalized between countries with radically different ratios of capital to labor or of skilled to unskilled labor.

## Empirical Evidence on the Heckscher-Ohlin Model

The essence of the Heckscher-Ohlin model is that trade is driven by differences in factor abundance across countries. We just saw how this leads to the natural prediction that goods trade is substituting for factor trade, and hence that goods trade across countries should *embody* those factor differences. This prediction, based on the **factor content of trade**, is very powerful and can be tested empirically. However, we will see that the empirical success of this strict test is very limited—mainly due to the same reasons that undermine the prediction for factor-price equalization. Does this mean that differences in factor abundance do *not* help explain the observed patterns of trade across countries? Not at all. First, we will show that relaxing the assumptions generating factor-price equalization vastly improves the predictive success for the factor content of trade. Second, we will look directly at the pattern of goods traded between developed and developing countries—and we will see how well they fit with the predictions of the Heckscher-Ohlin model.

### Trade in Goods as a Substitute for Trade in Factors: Factor Content of Trade

**Tests on U.S. Data** Until recently, and to some extent even now, the United States has been a special case among countries. Until a few years ago, the United States was much wealthier than other countries, and U.S. workers visibly worked with more capital per person than their counterparts in other countries. Even now, although some Western European countries and Japan have caught up, the United States continues to be high on the scale of countries as ranked by capital-labor ratios.

One would then expect the United States to be an exporter of capital-intensive goods and an importer of labor-intensive goods. Surprisingly, however, this was not the case in the 25 years after World War II. In a famous study published in 1953, economist Wassily Leontief (winner of the Nobel Prize in 1973) found that U.S. exports were less capital-intensive than U.S. imports.<sup>13</sup> This result is known as the **Leontief paradox**.

Table 5-2 illustrates the Leontief paradox as well as other information about U.S. trade patterns. We compare the factors of production used to produce \$1 million worth of 1962 U.S. exports with those used to produce the same value of 1962 U.S. imports. As the first two lines in the table show, Leontief's paradox was still present in that year: U.S. exports were produced with a lower ratio of capital to labor than U.S. imports.

**TABLE 5-2 Factor Content of U.S. Exports and Imports for 1962**

	Imports	Exports
Capital per million dollars	\$2,132,000	\$1,876,000
Labor (person-years) per million dollars	119	131
Capital-labor ratio (dollars per worker)	\$17,916	\$14,321
Average years of education per worker	9.9	10.1
Proportion of engineers and scientists in work force	0.0189	0.0255

**Source:** Robert Baldwin, "Determinants of the Commodity Structure of U.S. Trade," *American Economic Review* 61 (March 1971), pp. 126–145.

<sup>13</sup>See Wassily Leontief, "Domestic Production and Foreign Trade: The American Capital Position Re-Examined," *Proceedings of the American Philosophical Society* 7 (September 1953), pp. 331–349.

As the rest of the table shows, however, other comparisons of imports and exports are more in line with what one might expect. The United States exported products that were more *skilled-labor-intensive* than its imports, as measured by average years of education. We also tended to export products that were “technology-intensive,” requiring more scientists and engineers per unit of sales. These observations are consistent with the position of the United States as a high-skill country, with a comparative advantage in sophisticated products. Why then do we observe the Leontief paradox? Is it limited to the United States and/or the types of factors considered? The short answer is no.

**Tests on Global Data** A study by Harry P. Bowen, Edward E. Leamer, and Leo Sveikauskas<sup>14</sup> extended Leontief’s predictions for the factor content of trade to 27 countries and 12 factors of production. Based on the factor content of a country’s exports and imports, they checked whether a country was a net exporter of a factor of production whenever it was relatively abundantly endowed with that factor (and conversely, whether the country was a net importer for the other factors). They assessed factor abundance by comparing a country’s endowment of a factor (as a share of the world’s supply of that factor) with the country’s share of world GDP. For example, the United States has about 24 percent of world income in 2019 but only about 4 percent of the world’s workers. This yields Leontief’s original prediction that the factor content of U.S. trade should show net imports of labor. Bowen et al. tallied the success/failure of this sign test across the 27 countries and 12 factors in their study. They ended up with a success rate of only 61 percent—not much better than what one would obtain from a random coin toss! In other words, the factor content of trade ran in the opposite direction to the prediction of the factor proportions theory in 39 percent of the cases.

These results confirmed that the Leontief paradox was not an isolated case. However, this negative empirical performance is perhaps not surprising—given that it represents a demanding test of a theory that also predicts factor-price equalization (which is clearly at odds with the empirical evidence on cross-country wage differences). As we discussed, the assumption of common technology across countries plays a crucial role in delivering this prediction.

**The Case of the Missing Trade** Another indication of large technology differences across countries comes from discrepancies between the observed volumes of trade and those predicted by the Heckscher-Ohlin model. In an influential paper, Daniel Trefler<sup>15</sup> at the University of Toronto pointed out that the Heckscher-Ohlin model can also be used to derive predictions for a country’s volume of trade based on differences in that country’s factor abundance with that of the rest of the world (since, in this model, trade in goods is substituting for trade in factors). In fact, factor trade turns out to be substantially smaller than the Heckscher-Ohlin model predicts.

A large part of the reason for this disparity comes from a false prediction of large-scale trade in labor between rich and poor nations. Consider our example for the United States in 2011, with 25 percent of world income but only 5 percent of the world’s workers. Our simple factor-proportions theory should not only predict that U.S. trade should embody net imports of labor—but that the *volume* of those imported labor services should be huge because they need to account for the United States’ very low

---

<sup>14</sup>See Harry P. Bowen, Edward E. Leamer, and Leo Sveikauskas, “Multicountry, Multifactor Tests of the Factor Abundance Theory,” *American Economic Review* 77 (December 1987), pp. 791–809.

<sup>15</sup>Daniel Trefler, “The Case of the Missing Trade and Other Mysteries,” *American Economic Review* 85 (December 1995), pp. 1029–1046.

**TABLE 5-3 Estimated Technological Efficiency, 1983 (United States = 1)**

Country	
Bangladesh	0.03
Thailand	0.17
Hong Kong	0.40
Japan	0.70
West Germany	0.78

**Source:** Daniel Trefler, "The Case of the Missing Trade and Other Mysteries," *American Economic Review* 85 (December 1995), pp. 1029–1046.

abundance of labor relative to the rest of the world. In fact, the volume of factor content of trade between labor- and capital-abundant countries is several orders of magnitude smaller than the volume predicted by the factor proportions theory (based on the observed differences in factor abundance across countries).

Trefler showed that allowing for technology differences across countries helped to resolve the predictive success of both the sign test for the direction of the factor content of trade as well as the missing trade (although there was still plenty of trade left missing). The way this resolution works is roughly as follows: If workers in the United States are much more efficient than the world average, then the “effective” labor supply in the United States is correspondingly larger—and hence the expected volume of imported labor services into the United States is correspondingly lower.

If one makes the working assumption that technological differences between countries take a simple multiplicative form—that is, a given set of inputs in any country produces a multiple or fraction of the output produced in the United States—it is possible to use data on factor trade to estimate the relative efficiency of production in different countries. Table 5-3 shows Trefler’s estimates for a sample of countries (the multiplicative constant relative to the United States); they suggest that technological differences are in fact very large.

**A Better Empirical Fit for the Factor Content of Trade** Subsequently, an important study by Donald Davis and David Weinstein at Columbia University showed that if one relaxes this assumption on common technologies along with the remaining two assumptions underlying factor-price equalization (countries produce the same set of goods and costless trade equalizes goods prices), then the predictions for the direction and volume of the factor content of trade line up substantially better with the empirical evidence—ultimately generating a good fit. Table 5-4 shows the improvement in the empirical fit, measured both by the predictive success for the sign test (the direction of the factor content of trade) and the missing trade ratio: the ratio of the actual volume of factor content trade to the predicted volume (if one, then there is no missing trade; as the ratio decreases below one, an increasing proportion of predicted trade is missing). For this study, the required data (which included detailed information on the technologies used by each country) was only available for two factors (labor and capital) and 10 countries.

In the first column of Table 5-4, all three assumptions behind factor-price equalization are imposed (same technologies across countries, countries produce the same set of goods, and costless trade equalizes goods prices). This test is very similar to the one performed by Bowen et al., though the predictive success for the sign test is substantially

**TABLE 5-4 A Better Empirical Fit for the Factor Content of Trade**

	Assumptions Dropped*			
	None	Drop (1)	Drop (1)–(2)	Drop (1)–(3)
Predictive Success (sign test)	0.32	0.50	0.86	0.91
Missing Trade (observed/predicted)	0.0005	0.008	0.19	0.69

\*Assumptions: (1) common technologies across countries; (2) countries produce the same set of goods; and (3) costless trade equalizes goods prices.

**Source:** Donald R. Davis and David Weinstein, “An Account of Global Factor Trade,” *American Economic Review* (2001), pp. 1423–1453.

worse (32 percent success versus 61 percent reported by Bowen et al.). This is due to the different sample of countries and factors considered, and data cleaning procedures based on the newly available information on production techniques. We also see the extent of the missing trade: Virtually all of the predicted volume of factor trade is missing. These results confirm once more that this strict test for the Heckscher-Ohlin model performs very poorly.

The results in the second column were obtained once the assumption of common technologies was dropped, as in the study by Trefler. There is a substantial improvement in both empirical tests, although their overall predictive success is still quite weak. In the third column, the assumption that countries produce the same set of goods is also dropped. We see how this induces a massive improvement for the predictive success of the sign test for the direction of the factor content of trade (up to 86 percent success). The extent of missing trade is also vastly reduced, though the observed trade volume still represents only 19 percent of predicted trade. In the fourth and last column, the assumption of goods-price equalization via costless trade is also dropped. The predictive success for the direction of trade increases further to 91 percent. At this point, we can say that the Leontief paradox is relegated to a statistical anomaly. Column four also shows a huge improvement in the extent of missing trade: The observed trade now represents 69 percent of predicted trade.

Overall, Table 5-4 highlights vast differences in the predictive success of the factor-proportions theory for the direction and volume of the factor content of trade. At one end (column one), we find virtually no support for the prediction of the Heckscher-Ohlin model; however, we also see how this failure is driven by particular assumptions built into our “pure” Heckscher-Ohlin model. When those assumptions are dropped, we can reformulate a model of trade based on differences in factor proportions that fits the observed pattern of factor content of trade quite well (column four).

### Patterns of Exports between Developed and Developing Countries

Another way to see how differences in factor proportions shape empirical trade patterns is to contrast the exports of labor-abundant, skill-scarce nations in the developing world with the exports of skill-abundant, labor-scarce nations. In our “2 by 2 by 2” theoretical model (2 goods, 2 countries, 2 factors), we obtained the Heckscher-Ohlin theorem stating that the country abundant in a factor exports the good whose production is intensive in that factor. A paper by John Romalis at

the University of Sydney<sup>16</sup> showed how this prediction for the pattern of exports can be extended to multiple countries producing multiple goods: As a country's skill abundance increases, its exports are increasingly concentrated in sectors with higher skill intensity. We now see how this prediction holds when comparing the exports of countries at opposite ends of the skill-abundance spectrum as well as when we compare how exports change when a country such as China grows and becomes relatively more skill-abundant.

Figure 5-13 contrasts the exports of three developing countries (Bangladesh, Cambodia, and Haiti) at the lower end of the skill-abundance spectrum with the three largest European economies (Germany, France, and the United Kingdom) at the upper end of the skill-abundance spectrum. The countries' exports to the United States by sector are partitioned into four groups in increasing order of skill intensity. These are the same four sector groups used in Figure 5-11.<sup>17</sup> Figure 5-13 clearly shows how the exports of the three developing countries to the United States are overwhelmingly concentrated in sectors with the lowest skill-intensity. Their exports in high skill-intensity

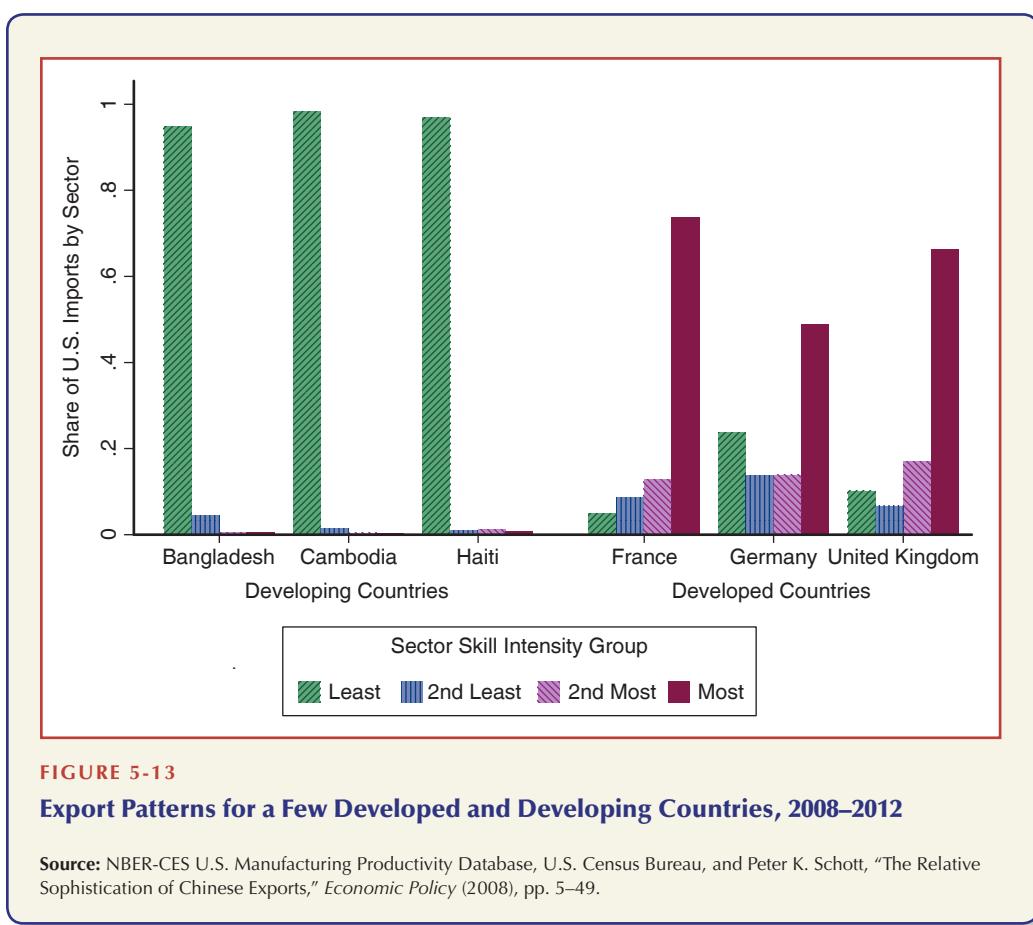


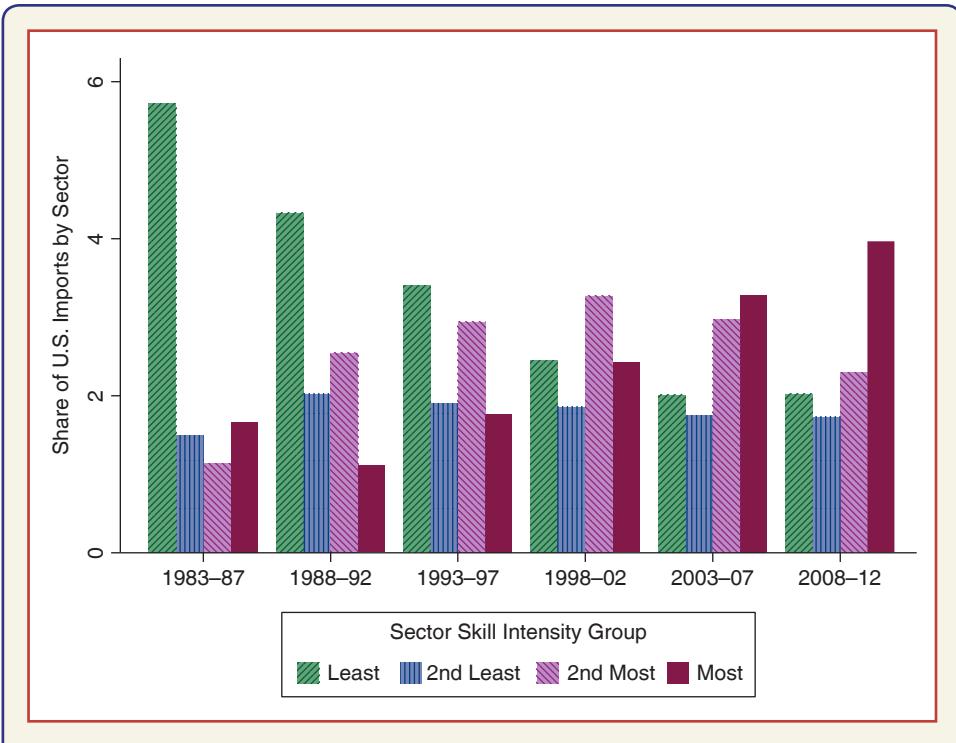
FIGURE 5-13

**Export Patterns for a Few Developed and Developing Countries, 2008–2012**

**Source:** NBER-CES U.S. Manufacturing Productivity Database, U.S. Census Bureau, and Peter K. Schott, "The Relative Sophistication of Chinese Exports," *Economic Policy* (2008), pp. 5–49.

<sup>16</sup>John Romalis, "Factor Proportions and the Structure of Commodity Trade," *American Economic Review* 94 (March 2004), pp. 67–97.

<sup>17</sup>As previously discussed, a sector's skill intensity is measured by the ratio of non-production to production workers in that sector.

**FIGURE 5-14****Changing Pattern of Chinese Exports over Time**

**Source:** NBER-CES U.S. Manufacturing Productivity Database, U.S. Census Bureau, and Peter K. Schott, "The Relative Sophistication of Chinese Exports," *Economic Policy* (2008), pp. 5–49.

sectors are virtually nil. The contrast with the export pattern for the three European countries is apparent: The exports to the United States for those skill-abundant countries are concentrated in sectors with higher skill intensity.

Changes over time also follow the predictions of the Heckscher-Ohlin model. Consider the experience of China over the last three decades, where high growth (especially in the last decade and a half) has been associated with substantial increases in skill abundance. Figure 5-14 shows how the pattern of Chinese exports to the United States by sector has changed over time. Exports are partitioned into the same four groups as Figure 5-13, ordered by the sectors' skill intensity. We clearly see how the pattern of Chinese exports has fundamentally shifted: As predicted by the Chinese change in factor proportions, the concentration of exports in high-skill sectors steadily increases over time. In the most recent years, we see how the greatest share of exports is transacted in the highest skill-intensity sectors—whereas exports were concentrated in the lowest skill-intensity sectors in the earlier years.<sup>18</sup>

<sup>18</sup>Comparing Figures 5-13 and 5-14 (latest years), we see that the pattern of Chinese exports to the United States is not (yet) as concentrated in high skill-intensity sectors as it is for the three European economies. However, Chinese exports are still remarkably concentrated in high-skill sectors considering China's current GDP per capita. See Peter K. Schott, "The Relative Sophistication of Chinese Exports," *Economic Policy* (2008), pp. 5–49.

## Implications of the Tests

We do not observe factor-price equalization across countries. When we test the “pure” version of the Heckscher-Ohlin model that maintains all the assumptions behind factor-price equalization, we find that a country’s factor content of trade bears little resemblance to the theoretical predictions based on that country’s factor abundance. However, a less restrictive version of the factor proportions model fits the predicted patterns for the factor content of trade. The pattern of goods trade between developed and developing countries also fits the predictions of the model quite well.

Lastly, the Heckscher-Ohlin model remains vital for understanding the *effects* of trade, especially on the distribution of income. Indeed, the growth of North-South trade in manufactures—a trade in which the factor intensity of the North’s imports is very different from that of its exports—has brought the factor-proportions approach into the center of practical debates over international trade policy.

## SUMMARY

- To understand the role of resources in trade, we develop a model in which two goods are produced using two factors of production. The two goods differ in their *factor intensity*; that is, at any given wage-rental ratio, production of one of the goods will use a higher ratio of capital to labor than production of the other.
- As long as a country produces both goods, there is a one-to-one relationship between the relative prices of *goods* and the relative prices of *factors* used to produce the goods. A rise in the relative price of the labor-intensive good will shift the distribution of income in favor of labor and will do so very strongly: The real wage of labor will rise in terms of both goods, while the real income of capital owners will fall in terms of both goods.
- An increase in the supply of one factor of production expands production possibilities, but in a strongly *biased* way: At unchanged relative goods prices, the output of the good intensive in that factor rises while the output of the other good actually falls.
- A country with a large supply of one resource relative to its supply of other resources is *abundant* in that resource. A country will tend to produce relatively more of goods that use its abundant resources intensively. The result is the basic Heckscher-Ohlin theory of trade: Countries tend to export goods that are intensive in the factors with which they are abundantly supplied.
- Because changes in relative prices of goods have very strong effects on the relative earnings of resources and because trade changes relative prices, international trade has strong income distribution effects. The owners of a country’s abundant factors gain from trade, but the owners of scarce factors lose. In theory, however, there are still gains from trade, in the limited sense that the winners *could* compensate the losers and everyone would be better off.
- Increasing trade integration between developed and developing countries could *potentially* explain rising wage inequality in developed countries. However, little empirical evidence supports this direct link. Rather, the empirical evidence suggests that technological change rewarding worker skill has played a much greater role in driving wage inequality.
- In an idealized model, international trade would actually lead to equalization of the prices of factors such as labor and capital between countries. In reality, complete

*factor-price equalization* is not observed because of wide differences in resources, barriers to trade, and international differences in technology.

- Empirical evidence is mixed on the Heckscher-Ohlin model. Yet a less restrictive version of the model fits the predicted patterns for the factor content of trade quite well. Also, the Heckscher-Ohlin model does a good job of predicting the pattern of trade between developed and developing countries.

## KEY TERMS

abundant factor, p. 125	factor abundance, p. 113	Heckscher-Ohlin theory, p. 113
biased expansion of production possibilities, p. 122	factor content of trade, p. 135	Leontief paradox, p. 135
capital-skill complementarity, p. 133	factor intensity, p. 113	scarce factor, p. 125
equalization of factor prices, p. 133	factor prices, p. 119	skill-biased technological change, p. 128
	factor-proportions theory, p. 113	

## PROBLEMS

1. Go back to the numerical example with no factor substitution that leads to the production possibility frontier in Figure 5-1.
  - a. What is the range for the relative price of cloth such that the economy produces both cloth and food? Which good is produced if the relative price is outside this range?

For parts (b) through (f), assume the price range is such that both goods are produced.

  - b. Write down the unit cost of producing one yard of cloth and one calorie of food as a function of the price of one machine-hour,  $r$ , and one work-hour,  $w$ . In a competitive market, those costs will be equal to the prices of cloth and food. Solve for the factor prices  $r$  and  $w$ .
  - c. What happens to those factor prices when the price of cloth rises? Who gains and who loses from this change in the price of cloth? Why? Do those changes conform to the changes described for the case with factor substitution?
  - d. Now assume the economy's supply of machine-hours increases from 3,000 to 4,000. Derive the new production possibility frontier.
  - e. How much cloth and food will the economy produce after this increase in its capital supply?
  - f. Describe how the allocation of machine-hours and work-hours between the cloth and food sectors changes. Do those changes conform with the changes described for the case with factor substitution?
2. In the United States, where Internet services are cheap, the ratio of capital to labor used is higher than that of capital used in accounting services. But in other countries, where Internet services are expensive and labor is cheap, it is common to use less capital and more labor than in the United States. Can we still say that Internet services are capital intensive compared to accounting services? Why or why not?
3. “The world’s poorest countries cannot find anything to export. There is no resource that is abundant—certainly not capital or land, and in small poor nations not even labor is abundant.” Discuss.

4. Most U.S. immigrants are represented by Mexican blue-collar workers that are more likely to work in risky jobs than U.S.-born workers with positive effect on productivity. Limiting immigration is a shortsighted or a rational policy in view of the interests of union members? How does the answer depend on the model of trade?
5. Offshore accounting services, especially to India, are becoming an increasingly attractive option for many U.S. companies. This shift has led to huge startup and communication costs, and the employment situation is further affected by general downsizing of corporations, as well as an increase in productivity. Are the exports of white-collar jobs to India necessarily a loss for the United States?
6. Explain why the Leontief paradox and the more recent Bowen, Leamer, and Sveikauskas results reported in the text contradict the factor-proportions theory.
7. Will free trade and perfect competition lead to an equalization of wage rate internationally? Explain. Why would the wage rate greatly vary between developed and developing countries, in the same sector in a real-world situation, even after the adoption of free trade?

## FURTHER READINGS

- Donald R. Davis and David E. Weinstein. "An Account of Global Factor Trade." *American Economic Review* 91 (December 2001), pp. 1423–1453. This paper confirms the results from earlier studies that the empirical performance of a "pure" Heckscher-Ohlin model is very poor. It then shows how the empirical success of a modified version of the model is vastly improved.
- Alan Deardorff. "Testing Trade Theories and Predicting Trade Flows," in Ronald W. Jones and Peter B. Kenen, eds. *Handbook of International Economics*. Vol. 1. Amsterdam: North-Holland, 1984. A survey of empirical evidence on trade theories, especially the factor-proportions theory.
- Lawrence Edwards and Robert Z. Lawrence, *Rising Tide: Is Growth in Emerging Economies Good for the United States?* (Peterson Institute for International Economics, 2013). A new book discussing the impact for the United States of increased integration with rapidly growing countries in the developing world.
- Gordon Hanson and Ann Harrison. "Trade and Wage Inequality in Mexico." *Industrial and Labor Relations Review* 52 (1999), pp. 271–288. A careful study of the effects of trade on income inequality in our nearest neighbor, showing that factor prices have moved in the opposite direction from what one might have expected from a simple factor-proportions model. The authors also put forward hypotheses about why this may have happened.
- Ronald W. Jones. "Factor Proportions and the Heckscher-Ohlin Theorem." *Review of Economic Studies* 24 (1956), pp. 1–10. Extends Samuelson's 1948–1949 analysis (also cited in this Further Readings section), which focuses primarily on the relationship between trade and income distribution, into an overall model of international trade.
- Ronald W. Jones. "The Structure of Simple General Equilibrium Models." *Journal of Political Economy* 73 (December 1965), pp. 557–572. A restatement of the Heckscher-Ohlin-Samuelson model in terms of elegant algebra.
- Ronald W. Jones and J. Peter Neary. "The Positive Theory of International Trade," in Ronald W. Jones and Peter B. Kenen, eds. *Handbook of International Economics*. Vol. 1. Amsterdam: North-Holland, 1984. An up-to-date survey of many trade theories, including the factor-proportions theory.
- Bertil Ohlin. *Interregional and International Trade*. Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 1933. The original Ohlin book presenting the factor-proportions view of trade remains

interesting—its complex and rich view of trade contrasts with the more rigorous and simplified mathematical models that followed.

John Romalis. “Factor Proportions and the Structure of Commodity Trade.” *The American Economic Review* 94 (March 2004), pp. 67–97. A paper showing that a modified version of the Heckscher-Ohlin model has a lot of explanatory power.

Paul Samuelson. “International Trade and the Equalisation of Factor Prices.” *Economic Journal* 58 (1948), pp. 163–184; and “International Factor Price Equalisation Once Again.” *Economic Journal* 59 (1949), pp. 181–196. The most influential formalizer of Ohlin’s ideas is Paul Samuelson (again!), whose two *Economic Journal* papers on the subject are classics.

John Van Reenen. “Wage Inequality, Technology and Trade: 21st Century Evidence.” *Labour Economics* (December 2011), pp. 30–741. A recent survey discussing how trade and new technologies are linked to increases in wage inequality for the United States and the United Kingdom.



## Factor Prices, Goods Prices, and Production Decisions

In the main body of this chapter, we made three assertions that are true but not carefully derived. First was the assertion, embodied in Figure 5-5, that the ratio of labor to capital employed in each industry depends on the wage-rental ratio  $w/r$ . Second was the assertion, embodied in Figure 5-6, that there is a one-to-one relationship between relative goods prices  $P_C/P_F$  and the wage-rental ratio. Third was the assertion that an increase in a country's labor supply (at a given relative goods price  $P_C/P_F$ ) will lead to movements of both labor and capital from the food sector to the cloth sector (the labor-intensive sector). This appendix briefly demonstrates those three propositions.

### Choice of Technique

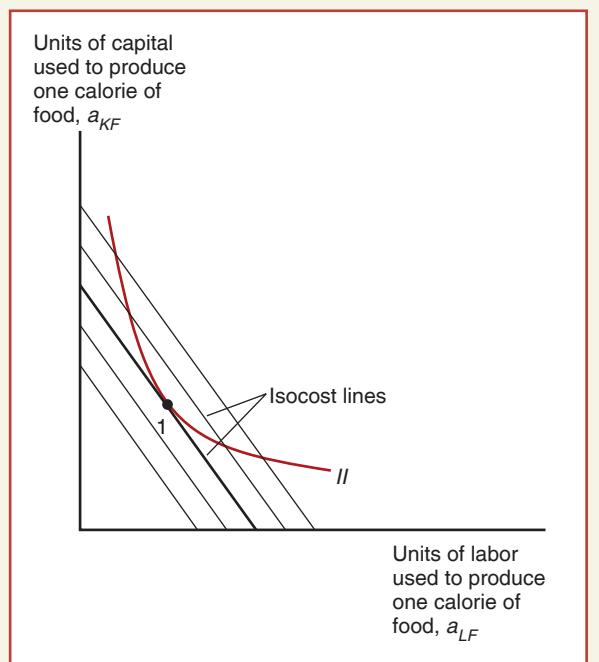
Figure 5A-1 illustrates again the trade-off between labor and capital input in producing one unit of food—the *unit isoquant* for food production shown in curve *II*. It also, however, illustrates a number of *isocost lines*: combinations of capital and labor input that cost the same amount.

An isocost line may be constructed as follows: The cost of purchasing a given amount of labor  $L$  is  $wL$ ; the cost of renting a given amount of capital  $K$  is  $rK$ . So if

**FIGURE 5A-1**

#### Choosing the Optimal Labor-Capital Ratio

To minimize costs, a producer must get to the lowest possible isocost line; this means choosing the point on the unit isoquant (curve *II*) where the slope is equal to minus the wage-rental ratio  $w/r$ .



one is able to produce a unit of food using units of labor and units of capital, the total cost of producing that unit,  $c$ , is

$$c = wa_{LF} + ra_{KF}.$$

A line showing all combinations of  $a_{LF}$  and  $a_{KF}$  with the same cost has the equation

$$a_{KF} = (c/r) - (w/r)a_{LF}.$$

That is, it is a straight line with a slope of  $-w/r$ .

The figure shows a family of such lines, each corresponding to a different level of costs; lines farther from the origin indicate higher total costs. A producer will choose the lowest possible cost given the technological trade-off outlined by curve  $II$ . Here, this occurs at point 1, where  $II$  is tangent to the isocost line and the slope of  $II$  equals  $-w/r$ . (If these results seem reminiscent of the proposition in Figure 4-5 that the economy produces at a point on the production possibility frontier whose slope equals minus  $P_C/P_F$ , you are right: The same principle is involved.)

Now compare the choice of labor-capital ratio for two different factor-price ratios. In Figure 5A-2, we show input choices given a low relative price of labor ( $w/r$ )<sup>1</sup> and a high relative price of labor ( $w/r$ )<sup>2</sup>. In the former case, the input choice is at 1; in the latter case at 2. That is, the higher relative price of labor leads to the choice of a lower labor-capital ratio, as assumed in Figure 5-5.

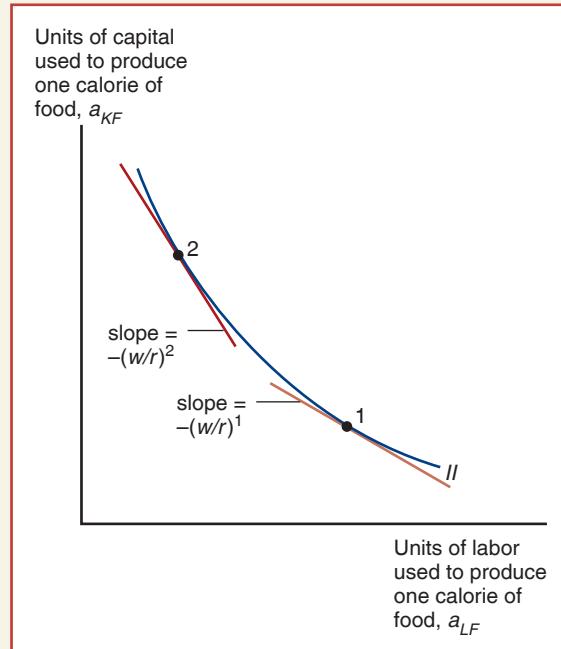
## Goods Prices and Factor Prices

We now turn to the relationship between goods prices and factor prices. There are several equivalent ways of approaching this problem; here, we follow the analysis introduced by Abba Lerner in the 1930s.

**FIGURE 5A-2**

### Changing the Wage-Rental Ratio

A rise in  $w/r$  shifts the lowest-cost input choice from point 1 to point 2; that is, it leads to the choice of a lower labor-capital ratio.



**FIGURE 5A-3****Determining the Wage-Rental Ratio**

The two isoquants  $CC$  and  $FF$  show the inputs necessary to produce one dollar's worth of cloth and food, respectively. Since price must equal the cost of production, the inputs into each good must also cost one dollar. This means that the wage-rental ratio must equal minus the slope of a line tangent to both isoquants.

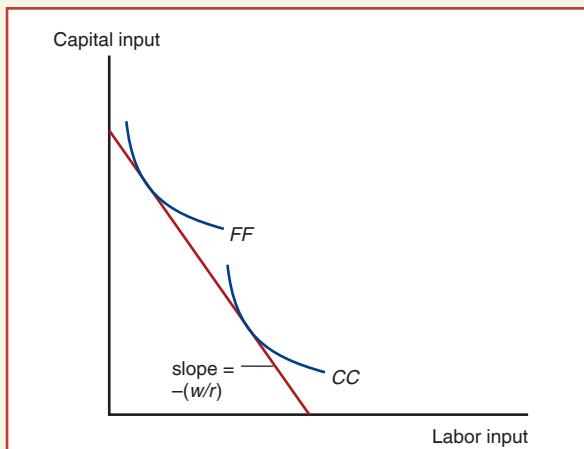


Figure 5A-3 shows capital and labor inputs into both cloth and food production. In previous figures, we have shown the inputs required to produce one unit of a good. In this figure, however, we show the inputs required to produce one dollar's worth of each good. (Actually, any dollar amount will do as long as it is the same for both goods.) Thus, the isoquant for cloth,  $CC$ , shows the possible input combinations for producing  $1/P_C$  units of cloth; the isoquant for food,  $FF$ , shows the possible combinations for producing  $1/P_F$  units of food. Notice that as drawn, cloth production is labor-intensive (and food production is capital-intensive): For any given  $w/r$ , cloth production will always use a higher labor-capital ratio than food production.

If the economy produces both goods, then it must be the case that the cost of producing one dollar's worth of each good is, in fact, one dollar. Those two production costs will be equal to one another only if the minimum-cost points of production for both goods lie on the *same* isocost line. Thus, the slope of the line shown, which is just tangent to both isoquants, must equal (minus) the wage-rental ratio  $w/r$ .

Finally, now, consider the effects of a rise in the price of cloth on the wage-rental ratio. If the price of cloth rises, it is necessary to produce fewer yards of cloth in order to have one dollar's worth. Thus, the isoquant corresponding to a dollar's worth of cloth shifts inward. In Figure 5A-4, the original isoquant is shown as  $CC^1$ , the new isoquant as  $CC^2$ .

Once again, we must draw a line just tangent to both isoquants; the slope of that line is minus the wage-rental ratio. It is immediately apparent from the increased steepness of the isocost line [slope =  $-(w/r)^2$ ] that the new  $w/r$  is higher than the previous one: A higher relative price of cloth implies a higher wage-rental ratio.

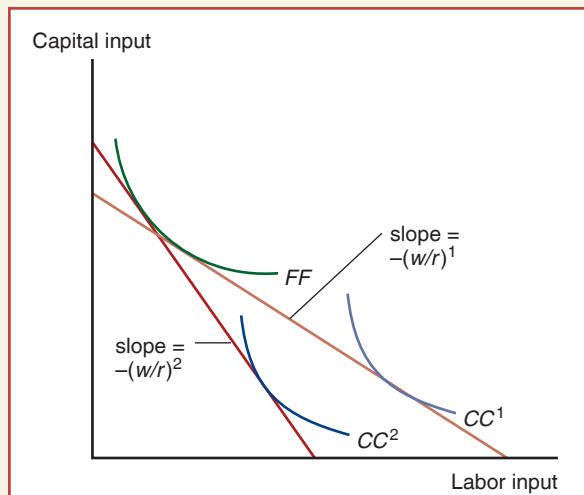
### More on Resources and Output

We now examine more rigorously how a change in resources—holding the prices of cloth and food constant—affects the allocation of those factors of production across sectors and how it thus affects production responses. The aggregate employment of labor to capital  $L/K$  can be written as a weighted average of the labor-capital employed in the cloth sector ( $L_C/K_C$ ) and in the food sector ( $L_F/K_F$ ):

$$\frac{L}{K} = \frac{K_C}{K} \frac{L_C}{K_C} + \frac{K_F}{K} \frac{L_F}{K_F} \quad (5A-1)$$

**FIGURE 5A-4****A Rise in the Price of Cloth**

If the price of cloth rises, a smaller output is now worth one dollar, so  $CC^1$  is replaced by  $CC^2$ . The implied wage-rental ratio must therefore rise from  $(w/r)^1$  to  $(w/r)^2$ .



Note that the weights in this average,  $K_C/K$  and  $K_F/K$ , add up to 1 and are the proportions of capital employed in the cloth and food sectors. We have seen that a given relative price of cloth is associated with a given wage-rental ratio (so long as the economy produces both cloth and food), which in turn is associated with given labor-capital employment levels in both sectors ( $L_C/K_C$  and  $L_F/K_F$ ). Now consider the effects of an increase in the economy's labor supply  $L$  at a given relative price of cloth:  $L/K$  increases while  $L_C/K_C$  and  $L_F/K_F$  both remain constant. For equation (5A-1) to hold, the weight on the higher labor-capital ratio,  $L_C/K_C$ , must increase. This implies an increase in the weight  $K_C/K$  and a corresponding decrease in the weight  $K_F/K$ . Thus, capital moves from the food sector to the cloth sector (since the total capital supply  $K$  remains constant in this example). Furthermore, since  $L_F/K_F$  remains constant, the decrease in  $K_F$  must also be associated with a decrease in labor employment  $L_F$  in the food sector. This shows that the increase in the labor supply, at a given relative price of cloth, must be associated with movements of *both* labor and capital from the food sector to the cloth sector. The expansion of the economy's production possibility frontier is so biased toward cloth that—at a constant relative price of cloth—the economy produces *less* food.

As the economy's labor supply increases, the economy concentrates more and more of both factors in the labor-intensive cloth sector. If enough labor is added, then the economy specializes in cloth production and no longer produces any food. At that point, the one-to-one relationship between the relative goods price  $P_C/P_F$  and the wage-rental ratio  $w/r$  is broken; further increases in the labor supply  $L$  are then associated with decreases in the wage-rental ratio along the  $CC$  curve in Figure 5-7.

A similar process would occur if the economy's capital supply were to increase—again holding the relative goods price  $P_C/P_F$  fixed. So long as the economy produces both cloth and food, the economy responds to the increased capital supply by concentrating production in the food sector (which is capital-intensive): Both labor and capital move to the food sector. The economy experiences growth that is strongly biased toward food. At a certain point, the economy completely specializes in the food sector, and the one-to-one relationship between the relative goods price  $P_C/P_F$  and the wage-rental ratio  $w/r$  is broken once again. Further increases in the capital supply  $K$  are then associated with increases in the wage-rental ratio along the  $FF$  curve in Figure 5-7.



## THE STANDARD TRADE MODEL

Previous chapters developed several different models of international trade, each of which makes different assumptions about the determinants of production possibilities. To bring out important points, each of these models leaves out aspects of reality that the others stress. These models are:

- *The Ricardian model.* Production possibilities are determined by the allocation of a single resource, labor, between sectors. This model conveys the essential idea of comparative advantage but does not allow us to talk about the distribution of income.
- *The specific factors model.* This model includes multiple factors of production, but some are specific to the sectors in which they are employed. It also captures the short-run consequences of trade on the distribution of income.
- *The Heckscher-Ohlin model.* The multiple factors of production in this model can move across sectors. Differences in resources (the availability of those factors at the country level) drive trade patterns. This model also captures the long-run consequences of trade on the distribution of income.

When we analyze real problems, we want to base our insights on a mixture of these models. For example, in the past two decades one of the central changes in world trade was the rapid growth in exports from newly industrializing economies. These countries experienced rapid productivity growth; to discuss the implications of this productivity growth, we may want to apply the Ricardian model of Chapter 3. The changing pattern of trade has differential effects on different groups in the United States; to understand the effects of increased trade on the U.S. income distribution, we may want to apply the specific factors (for the short-run effects) or the Heckscher-Ohlin models (for the long-run effects) of Chapters 4 and 5.

In spite of the differences in their details, our models share a number of features:

1. The productive capacity of an economy can be summarized by its production possibility frontier, and differences in these frontiers give rise to trade.
2. Production possibilities determine a country's relative supply schedule.
3. World equilibrium is determined by world relative demand and a *world* relative supply schedule that lies between the national relative supply schedules.

Because of these common features, the models we have studied may be viewed as special cases of a more general model of a trading world economy. There are

many important issues in international economics whose analysis can be conducted in terms of this general model, with only the details depending on which special model you choose. These issues include the effects of shifts in world supply resulting from economic growth and simultaneous shifts in supply and demand resulting from tariffs and export subsidies.

This chapter stresses those insights from international trade theory that are not strongly dependent on the details of the economy's supply side. We develop a standard model of a trading world economy, of which the models of Chapters 3 through 5 can be regarded as special cases, and use this model to ask how a variety of changes in underlying parameters affect the world economy.

## LEARNING GOALS

After reading this chapter, you will be able to:

- Understand how the components of the standard trade model, production possibilities frontiers, isovalue lines, and indifference curves fit together to illustrate how trade patterns are established by a combination of supply-side and demand-side factors.
- Recognize how changes in the terms of trade and economic growth affect the welfare of nations engaged in international trade.
- Understand the effects of tariffs and subsidies on trade patterns and the welfare of trading nations and on the distribution of income within countries.
- Relate international borrowing and lending to the standard trade model, where goods are exchanged over time.

## A Standard Model of a Trading Economy

The **standard trade model** is built on four key relationships: (1) the relationship between the production possibility frontier and the relative supply curve, (2) the relationship between relative prices and relative demand, (3) the determination of world equilibrium by world relative supply and world relative demand, and (4) the effect of the **terms of trade**—the price of a country's exports divided by the price of its imports—on a nation's welfare.

### Production Possibilities and Relative Supply

For the purposes of our standard model, we assume that each country produces two goods, food ( $F$ ) and cloth ( $C$ ), and that each country's production possibility frontier is a smooth curve like that illustrated by  $TT$  in Figure 6-1.<sup>1</sup> The point on its production possibility frontier at which an economy actually produces depends on the price of cloth relative to food,  $P_C/P_F$ . At given market prices, a market economy will choose production levels that maximize the value of its output  $P_CQ_C + P_FQ_F$ , where  $Q_C$  is the quantity of cloth produced and  $Q_F$  is the quantity of food produced.

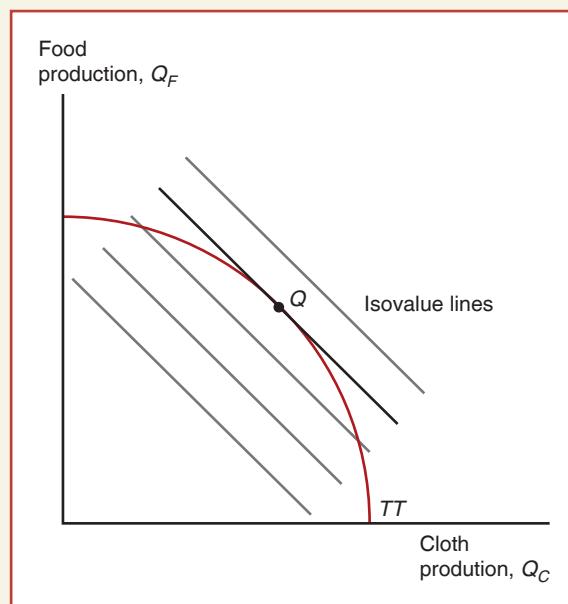
---

<sup>1</sup>We have seen that when there is only one factor of production, as in Chapter 3, the production possibility frontier is a straight line. For most models, however, it will be a smooth curve, and the Ricardian result can be viewed as an extreme case.

**FIGURE 6-1**

### Relative Prices Determine the Economy's Output

An economy whose production possibility frontier is  $TT$  will produce at  $Q$ , which is on the highest possible iso-value line.



We can indicate the market value of output by drawing a number of **iso-value lines**—that is, lines along which the value of output is constant. Each of these lines is defined by an equation of the form  $P_C Q_C + P_F Q_F = V$ , or, by rearranging,  $Q_F = V/P_F - (P_C/P_F)Q_C$ , where  $V$  is the value of output. The higher  $V$  is, the farther out an iso-value line lies; thus iso-value lines farther from the origin correspond to higher values of output. The slope of an iso-value line is  $-P_C/P_F$ . In Figure 6-1, the highest value of output is achieved by producing at point  $Q$ , where  $TT$  is just tangent to an iso-value line.

Now suppose that  $P_C/P_F$  were to rise (cloth becomes more valuable relative to food). Then the iso-value lines would be steeper than before. In Figure 6-2, the highest iso-value line the economy could reach before the change in  $P_C/P_F$  is shown as  $VV^1$ ; the highest line after the price change is  $VV^2$ , the point at which the economy produces shifts from  $Q^1$  to  $Q^2$ . Thus, as we might expect, a rise in the relative price of cloth leads the economy to produce more cloth and less food. The relative supply of cloth will therefore rise when the relative price of cloth rises. This relationship between relative prices and relative production is reflected in the economy's relative supply curve shown in Figure 6-2b.

### Relative Prices and Demand

Figure 6-3 shows the relationship among production, consumption, and trade in the standard model. As we pointed out in Chapter 5, the value of an economy's consumption equals the value of its production:

$$P_C Q_C + P_F Q_F = P_C D_C + P_F D_F = V,$$

where  $D_C$  and  $D_F$  are the consumption of cloth and food, respectively. The equation above says that production and consumption must lie on the same iso-value line.

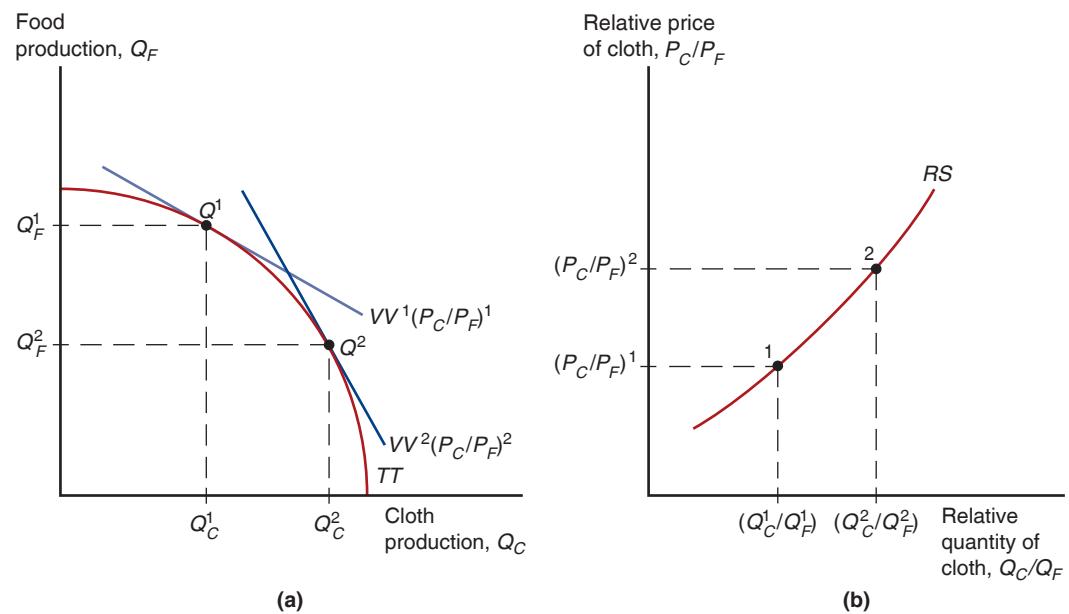


FIGURE 6-2

**How an Increase in the Relative Price of Cloth Affects Relative Supply**

In panel (a), the isovalue lines become steeper when the relative price of cloth rises from  $(P_C/P_F)^1$  to  $(P_C/P_F)^2$  (shown by the rotation from  $VV^1$  to  $VV^2$ ). As a result, the economy produces more cloth and less food and the equilibrium output shifts from  $Q^1$  to  $Q^2$ . Panel (b) shows the relative supply curve associated with the production possibilities frontier  $TT$ . The rise from  $(P_C/P_F)^1$  to  $(P_C/P_F)^2$  leads to an increase in the relative production of cloth from  $Q_C^1/Q_F^1$  to  $Q_C^2/Q_F^2$ .

The economy's choice of a point on the isovalue line depends on the tastes of its consumers. For our standard model, we assume the economy's consumption decisions may be represented as if they were based on the tastes of a single representative individual.<sup>2</sup>

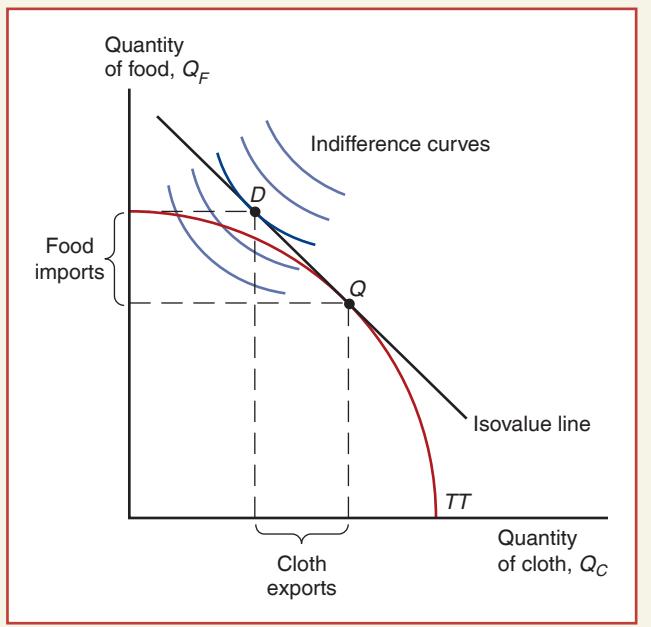
The tastes of an individual can be represented graphically by a series of **indifference curves**. An indifference curve traces a set of combinations of cloth ( $C$ ) and food ( $F$ ) consumption that leave the individual equally well off. As illustrated in Figure 6-3, indifference curves have three properties:

1. They are downward sloping: If an individual is offered less food ( $F$ ), then to be made equally well off, she must be given more cloth ( $C$ ).
2. The farther up and to the right an indifference curve lies, the higher the level of welfare to which it corresponds: An individual will prefer having more of both goods to less.
3. Each indifference curve gets flatter as we move to the right (they are bowed-out to the origin): The more  $C$  and the less  $F$  an individual consumes, the more valuable a unit of  $F$  is at the margin compared with a unit of  $C$ , so more  $C$  will have to be provided to compensate for any further reduction in  $F$ .

<sup>2</sup>Several sets of circumstances can justify this assumption. One is that all individuals have the same tastes and the same share of all resources. Another is that the government redistributes income so as to maximize its view of overall social welfare. Essentially, the assumption requires that effects of changing income distribution on demand not be too important.

**FIGURE 6-3****Production, Consumption, and Trade in the Standard Model**

The economy produces at point  $Q$ , where the production possibility frontier is tangent to the highest possible isovalue line. It consumes at point  $D$ , where that isovalue line is tangent to the highest possible indifference curve. The economy produces more cloth than it consumes and therefore exports cloth; correspondingly, it consumes more food than it produces and therefore imports food.



As you can see in Figure 6-3, the economy will choose to consume at the point on the isovalue line that yields the highest possible welfare. This point is where the isovalue line is tangent to the highest reachable indifference curve, shown here as point  $D$ . Notice that at this point, the economy exports cloth (the quantity of cloth produced exceeds the quantity of cloth consumed) and imports food.

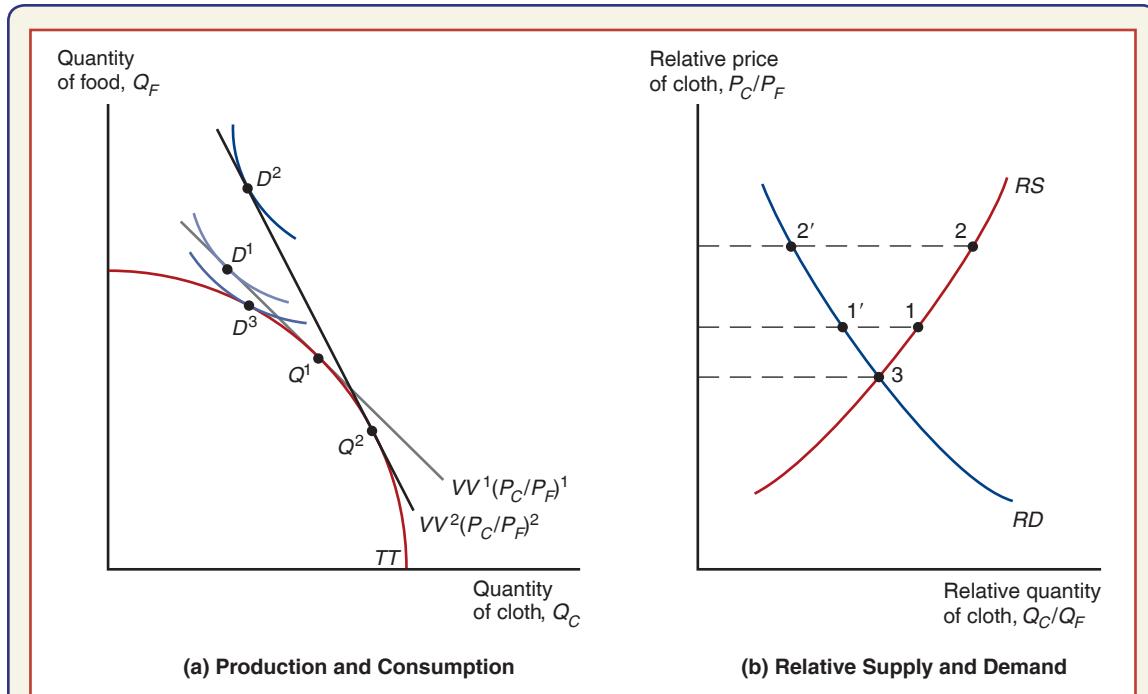
Now consider what happens when  $P_C/P_F$  increases. Panel (a) in Figure 6-4 shows the effects. First, the economy produces more  $C$  and less  $F$ , shifting production from  $Q^1$  to  $Q^2$ . This shifts, from  $VV^1$ , to  $VV^2$ , the isovalue line on which consumption must lie. The economy's consumption choice therefore also shifts, from  $D^1$  to  $D^2$ .

The move from  $D^1$  to  $D^2$  reflects two effects of the rise in  $P_C/P_F$ . First, the economy has moved to a higher indifference curve, meaning that it is better off. The reason is that this economy is an exporter of cloth. When the relative price of cloth rises, the economy can trade a given amount of cloth for a larger amount of food imports. Thus, the higher relative price of its export good represents an advantage. Second, the change in relative prices leads to a shift along the indifference curve, toward food and away from cloth (since cloth is now relatively more expensive).

These two effects are familiar from basic economic theory. The rise in welfare is an *income effect*; the shift in consumption at any given level of welfare is a *substitution effect*. The income effect tends to increase consumption of both goods, while the substitution effect acts to make the economy consume less  $C$  and more  $F$ .

Panel (b) in Figure 6-4 shows the relative supply and demand curves associated with the production possibilities frontier and the indifference curves.<sup>3</sup> The graph shows how the increase in the relative price of cloth induces an increase in the relative production

<sup>3</sup>For general preferences, the relative demand curve will depend on the country's total income. We assume throughout this chapter that the relative demand curve is independent of income. This is the case for a widely used type of preferences called homothetic preferences.

**FIGURE 6-4****Effects of a Rise in the Relative Price of Cloth and Gains from Trade**

In panel (a), the slope of the iso-value lines is equal to minus the relative price of cloth,  $P_C/P_F$ . As a result, when that relative price rises, all iso-value lines become steeper. In particular, the maximum-value line rotates from  $VV^1(P_C/P_F)^1$  to  $VV^2(P_C/P_F)^2$ . Production shifts from  $Q^1$  to  $Q^2$  and consumption shifts from  $D^1$  to  $D^2$ . If the economy cannot trade, then it produces and consumes at point  $D^3$ . Panel (b) shows the effects of the rise in the relative price of cloth on relative production (move from 1 to 2) and relative demand (move from  $1'$  to  $2'$ ). If the economy cannot trade, then it consumes and produces at point 3.

of cloth (move from point 1 to 2) as well as a decrease in the relative consumption of cloth (move from point  $1'$  to  $2'$ ). This change in relative consumption captures the substitution effect of the price change. If the income effect of the price change were large enough, then consumption levels of both goods could rise ( $D_C$  and  $D_F$  both increase); but the substitution effect of demand dictates that the *relative* consumption of cloth,  $D_C/D_F$ , decrease. If the economy cannot trade, then it consumes and produces at point 3, associated with the relative price  $(P_C/P_F)^3$ .

**The Welfare Effect of Changes in the Terms of Trade**

When  $P_C/P_F$  increases, a country that initially exports cloth is made better off, as illustrated by the movement from  $D^1$  to  $D^2$  in panel (a) of Figure 6-4. Conversely, if  $P_C/P_F$  were to decline, the country would be made worse off; for example, consumption might move back from  $D^2$  to  $D^1$ .

If the country were initially an exporter of food instead of cloth, the direction of this effect would be reversed. An increase in  $P_C/P_F$  would mean a fall in  $P_F/P_C$  and the country would be worse off: The relative price of the good it exports (food) would drop.

## U.S. CONSUMER GAINS FROM CHINESE IMPORTS

One of the major components of the aggregate gains from trade is driven by consumers' access to cheaper imported goods. Much of the attention generated by increased trade between the United States and China has focused on the repercussions for workers in the United States, which we discussed back in Chapter 4. At the same time, U.S. consumers have enjoyed increases in their purchasing power due to lower prices driven by that increased import competition from China. A recent study has examined the impact of that competition on the prices of hundreds of thousands of products consumed in the United States.<sup>4</sup> The authors find that increased trade

with China between 2000 and 2007 induced large reductions in those prices, generating substantial increases in the purchasing power of U.S. households. On average those gains represented \$1,500 per household per year. Over half of those gains were generated by price reductions of U.S. produced goods in response to the increased competition from Chinese imports. And because those price decreases were more pronounced for goods consumed by relatively poorer households with annual incomes below \$30,000, the average \$1,500 gain was 36 percent higher for those households relative to richer households with income above \$100,000.

We cover all these cases by defining the terms of trade as the price of the good a country initially exports divided by the price of the good it initially imports. The general statement, then, is that *a rise in the terms of trade increases a country's welfare, while a decline in the terms of trade reduces its welfare*.

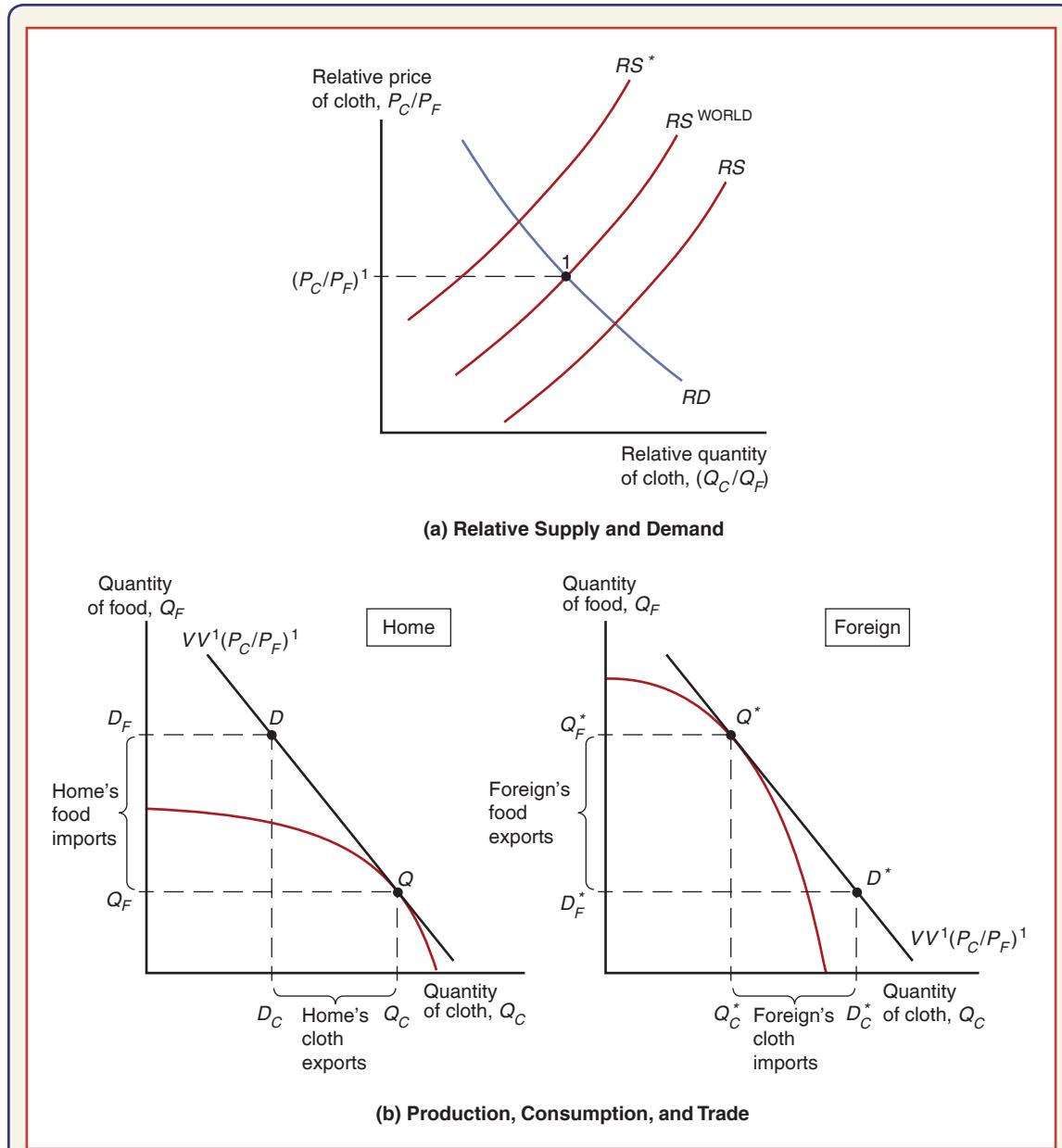
Note, however, that changes in a country's terms of trade can never decrease the country's welfare below its welfare level in the absence of trade (represented by consumption at  $D^3$ ). The gains from trade mentioned in Chapters 3, 4, and 5 still apply to this more general approach. The same disclaimers previously discussed also apply: Aggregate gains are rarely evenly distributed, leading to both gains and losses for individual consumers.

### Determining Relative Prices

Let's now suppose that the world economy consists of two countries once again named Home (which exports cloth) and Foreign (which exports food). Home's terms of trade are measured by  $P_C/P_F$ , while Foreign's are measured by  $P_F/P_C$ . We assume these trade patterns are induced by differences in Home's and Foreign's production capabilities, as represented by the associated relative supply curves in panel (a) of Figure 6-5. We also assume the two countries share the same preferences and hence have the same relative demand curve. At any given relative price  $P_C/P_F$ , Home will produce quantities of cloth and food  $Q_C$  and  $Q_F$ , while Foreign produces quantities  $Q_C^*$  and  $Q_F^*$  where  $Q_C/Q_F > Q_C^*/Q_F^*$ . The relative supply for the world is then obtained by summing those production levels for both cloth and food and taking the ratio:  $(Q_C + Q_C^*)/(Q_F + Q_F^*)$ . By construction, this relative supply curve for the world must lie in between the relative supply curves for both countries.<sup>5</sup> Relative demand for the world also aggregates the demands for cloth and food across the two countries:  $(D_C + D_C^*)/(D_F + D_F^*)$ . Since there are no differences in

<sup>4</sup>See Xavier Jaravel and Erick Sager, "What Are the Price Effects of Trade? Evidence from the U.S. and Implications for Quantitative Trade Models," Finance and Economics Discussion Series 2019-068. Washington: Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, 2019.

<sup>5</sup>For any positive numbers  $X_1, X_2, Y_1, Y_2$ , if  $X_1/Y_1 < X_2/Y_2$ , then  $X_1/Y_1 < (X_1 + X_2)/(Y_1 + Y_2) < X_2/Y_2$ .

**FIGURE 6-5****Equilibrium Relative Price with Trade and Associated Trade Flows**

Panel (a) shows the relative supply of cloth in Home ( $RS$ ), in Foreign ( $RS^*$ ), and for the world. Home and Foreign have the same relative demand, which is also the relative demand for the world. The equilibrium relative price  $(P_C/P_F)^1$  is determined by the intersection of the world relative supply and demand curves. Panel (b) shows the associated equilibrium trade flows between Home and Foreign. At the equilibrium relative price  $(P_C/P_F)^1$ , Home's exports of cloth equal Foreign's imports of cloth; and Home's imports of food equal Foreign's exports of food.

preferences across the two countries, the relative demand curve for the world overlaps with the same relative demand curve for each country.

The equilibrium relative price for the world (when Home and Foreign trade) is then given by the intersection of world relative supply and demand at point 1. This relative price determines how many units of Home's cloth exports are exchanged for Foreign's food exports. At the equilibrium relative price, Home's desired exports of cloth,  $Q_C - D_C$ , match up with Foreign's desired imports of cloth,  $D_C^* - Q_C^*$ . The food market is also in equilibrium so that Home's desired imports of food,  $D_F - Q_F$ , match up with Foreign's desired food exports,  $Q_F^* - D_F^*$ . The production possibility frontiers for Home and Foreign, along with the budget constraints and associated production and consumption choices at the equilibrium relative price ( $P_C/P_F$ )<sup>1</sup>, are illustrated in panel (b).

Now that we know how relative supply, relative demand, the terms of trade, and welfare are determined in the standard model, we can use it to understand a number of important issues in international economics.

### Economic Growth: A Shift of the RS Curve

The effects of economic growth in a trading world economy are a perennial source of concern and controversy. The debate revolves around two questions. First, is economic growth in other countries good or bad for our nation? Second, is growth in a country more or less valuable when that nation is part of a closely integrated world economy?

In assessing the effects of growth in other countries, commonsense arguments can be made on either side. On one side, economic growth in the rest of the world may be good for our economy because it means larger markets for our exports and lower prices for our imports. On the other side, growth in other countries may mean increased competition for our exporters and domestic producers, who need to compete with foreign exporters.

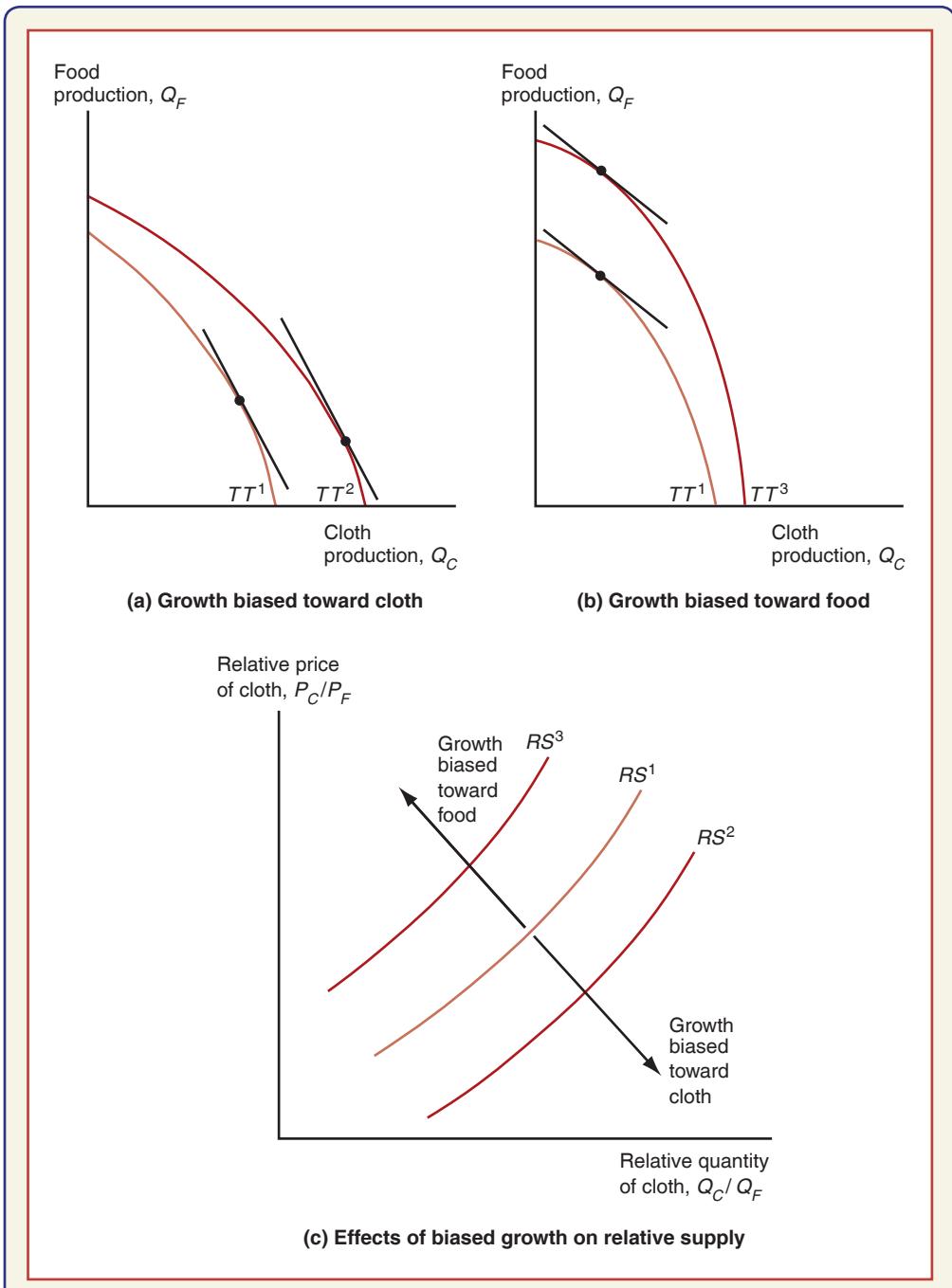
We can find similar ambiguities when we look at the effects of growth at Home. On one hand, growth in an economy's production capacity should be more valuable when that country can sell some of its increased production to the world market. On the other hand, the benefits of growth may be passed on to foreigners in the form of lower prices for the country's exports rather than retained at home.

The standard model of trade developed in the last section provides a framework that can cut through these seeming contradictions and clarify the effects of economic growth in a trading world.

### Growth and the Production Possibility Frontier

Economic growth means an outward shift of a country's production possibility frontier. This growth can result either from increases in a country's resources or from improvements in the efficiency with which these resources are used.

The international trade effects of growth result from the fact that such growth typically has a *bias*. **Biased growth** takes place when the production possibility frontier shifts out more in one direction than in the other. Panel (a) of Figure 6-6 illustrates growth biased toward cloth (shift from  $TT^1$  to  $TT^2$ ), while panel (b) shows growth biased toward food (shift from  $TT^1$  to  $TT^3$ ).



**FIGURE 6-6**  
**Biased Growth**

Growth is biased when it shifts production possibilities out more toward one good than toward another. In case (a), growth is biased toward cloth (shift from  $TT^1$  to  $TT^2$ ), while in case (b), growth is biased toward food (shift from  $TT^1$  to  $TT^3$ ). The associated shifts in the relative supply curve are shown in panel (c): shift to the right (from  $RS^1$  to  $RS^2$ ) when growth is biased toward cloth and shift to the left (from  $RS^1$  to  $RS^3$ ) when growth is biased toward food.

Growth may be biased for two main reasons:

1. The Ricardian model of Chapter 3 showed that technological progress in one sector of the economy will expand the economy's production possibilities in the direction of that sector's output.
2. The Heckscher-Ohlin model of Chapter 5 showed that an increase in a country's supply of a factor of production—say, an increase in the capital stock resulting from saving and investment—will produce biased expansion of production possibilities. The bias will be in the direction of either the good to which the factor is specific or the good whose production is intensive in the factor whose supply has increased. Thus, the same considerations that give rise to international trade will also lead to biased growth in a trading economy.

The biases of growth in panels (a) and (b) are strong. In each case the economy is able to produce more of both goods. However, at an unchanged relative price of cloth, the output of food actually falls in panel (a), while the output of cloth actually falls in panel (b). Although growth is not always as strongly biased as it is in these examples, even growth that is more mildly biased toward cloth will lead, *for any given relative price of cloth*, to a rise in the output of cloth *relative* to that of food. In other words, the country's relative supply curve shifts to the right. This change is represented in panel (c) as the transition from  $RS^1$  to  $RS^2$ . When growth is biased toward food, the relative supply curve shifts to the left, as shown by the transition from  $RS^1$  to  $RS^3$ .

### World Relative Supply and the Terms of Trade

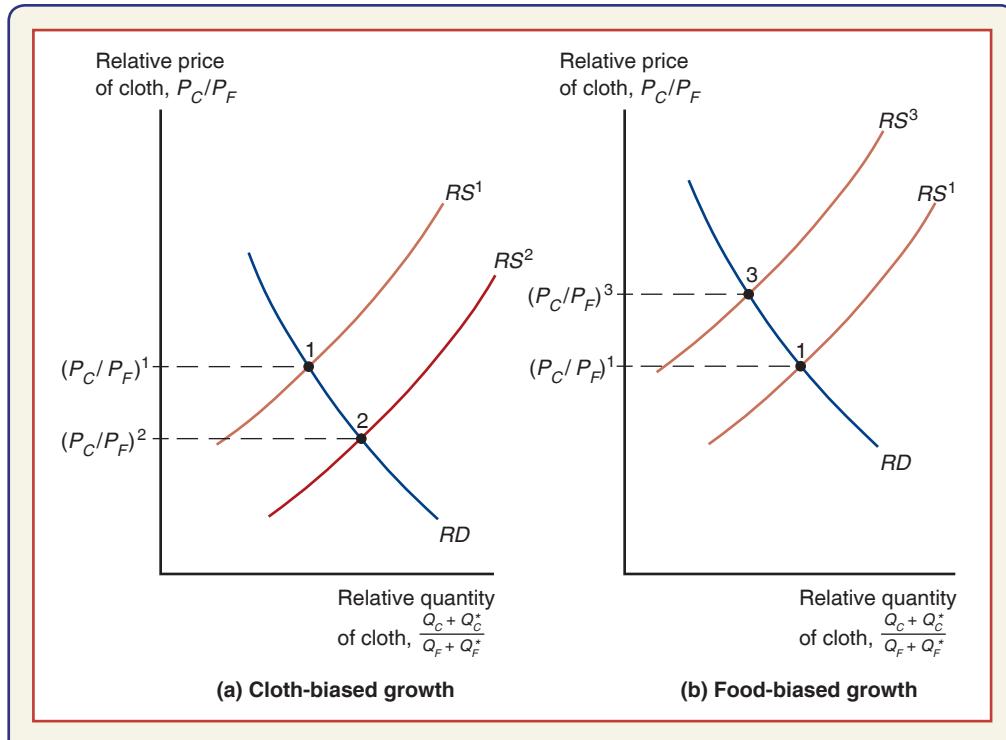
Suppose now that Home experiences growth strongly biased toward cloth, so that its output of cloth rises at any given relative price of cloth, while its output of food declines [as shown in panel (a) of Figure 6-6]. Then the output of cloth relative to food will rise at any given price for the world as a whole, and the world relative supply curve will shift to the right, just like the relative supply curve for Home. This shift in the world relative supply is shown in panel (a) of Figure 6-7 as a shift from  $RS^1$  to  $RS^2$ . It results in a decrease in the relative price of cloth from  $(P_C/P_F)^1$  to  $(P_C/P_F)^2$ , a worsening of Home's terms of trade and an improvement in Foreign's terms of trade.

Notice that the important consideration here is not *which* economy grows but rather the bias of that growth. If Foreign had experienced growth strongly biased toward cloth, the effect on the world relative supply curve and thus on the terms of trade would have been similar. On the other hand, either Home or Foreign growth strongly biased toward food will lead to a *leftward* shift of the  $RS$  curve ( $RS^1$  to  $RS^3$ ) for the *world* and thus to a rise in the relative price of cloth from  $(P_C/P_F)^1$  to  $(P_C/P_F)^3$  [as shown in panel (b)]. This relative price increase is an improvement in Home's terms of trade but a worsening of Foreign's.

Growth that disproportionately expands a country's production possibilities in the direction of the good it exports (cloth in Home, food in Foreign) is **export-biased growth**. Similarly, growth biased toward the good a country imports is **import-biased growth**. Our analysis leads to the following general principle: *Export-biased growth tends to worsen a growing country's terms of trade to the benefit of the rest of the world; import-biased growth tends to improve a growing country's terms of trade at the rest of the world's expense.*

### International Effects of Growth

Using this principle, we are now in a position to resolve our questions about the international effects of growth. Is growth in the rest of the world good or bad for our country? Does the fact that our country is part of a trading world economy increase

**FIGURE 6-7****Growth and World Relative Supply**

Growth biased toward cloth shifts the  $RS$  curve for the world to the right (a), while growth biased toward food shifts it to the left (b).

or decrease the benefits of growth? In each case the answer depends on the *bias* of the growth. Export-biased growth in the rest of the world is good for us, improving our terms of trade, while import-biased growth abroad worsens our terms of trade. Export-biased growth in our own country worsens our terms of trade, reducing the direct benefits of growth, while import-biased growth leads to an improvement of our terms of trade, a secondary benefit.

During the 1950s, many economists from poorer countries believed that their nations, which primarily exported raw materials, were likely to experience steadily declining terms of trade over time. They believed that growth in the industrial world would be marked by an increasing development of synthetic substitutes for raw materials, while growth in the poorer nations would take the form of a further extension of their capacity to produce what they were already exporting rather than a move toward industrialization. That is, the growth in the industrial world would be import-biased, while that in the less-developed world would be export-biased.

Some analysts even suggested that growth in the poorer nations would actually be self-defeating. They argued that export-biased growth by poor nations would worsen their terms of trade so much that they would be worse off than if they had not grown at all. This situation is known to economists as the case of **immiserizing growth**.

In a famous paper published in 1958, economist Jagdish Bhagwati of Columbia University showed that such perverse effects of growth can in fact arise within a

rigorously specified economic model.<sup>6</sup> However, the conditions under which immiserizing growth can occur are extreme: Strongly export-biased growth must be combined with very steep *RS* and *RD* curves, so that the change in the terms of trade is large enough to offset the direct favorable effects of an increase in a country's productive capacity. Most economists now regard the concept of immiserizing growth as more a theoretical point than a real-world issue.

While growth at home normally raises our own welfare even in a trading world, this is by no means true of growth abroad. Import-biased growth is not an unlikely possibility, and whenever the rest of the world experiences such growth, it worsens our terms of trade. In the following Case Study, we investigate whether the United States has suffered some loss of real income (deterioration in its terms of trade) over the past four decades as some of its important trading partners experienced periods of rapid growth. We then discuss, in the following box, the case of some developing countries that are substantially more exposed to income losses generated by deteriorations in their terms of trade.

## CASE STUDY

### Has the Growth of Newly Industrialized Economies Hurt Advanced Nations?

In two previous case studies, we explored the impact of increased trade with newly industrializing economies (NIEs) for workers in the short run (displaced workers in import-competing sectors; Chapter 4) and in the long run (higher income inequality; Chapter 5). As we have repeatedly stressed, trade has the potential to induce both winners and losers (income distribution effects) within a country—even though the aggregate income gains are positive.

Since the losses from trade tend to be more visible and concentrated than the gains (at least in developed countries), it is not surprising that in some countries the perception of international trade is unfavorable. In its 2014 survey on trade perception, the Pew research center discovered that while people in developing and emerging economies generally believe that international commercial activity is beneficial, people in advanced economies, particularly in France, Italy, Japan, and the United States, tend to be skeptical of international trade.<sup>7</sup>

In this Case Study, we explore whether the European Union (E.U.) has experienced deterioration in its terms of trade (represented by an aggregate income loss) between 1995 and 2018, the same time period as some of its main trading partners—Turkey and India—experienced significant growth. These countries are, respectively, the sixth and tenth largest trading partners of the E.U. and, respectively, grew by 9 percent and 5.5 percent on average each year in this period.

We can examine whether the growth of Turkey and India between 1996 and 2018 has generated aggregate losses for the E.U. economy via a long-term decline in the E.U. terms of trade (and conversely, an appreciation in the Turkish and

<sup>6</sup>“Immiserizing Growth: A Geometrical Note,” *Review of Economic Studies* 25 (June 1958), pp. 201–205.

<sup>7</sup>Pew research center, Faith and Skepticism about Trade, 2014, <https://www.pewresearch.org/global/2014/09/16/faith-and-skepticism-about-trade-foreign-investment/>

Indian terms of trade). In the mathematical postscript to this chapter, we show that the percentage real income effect of a change in the terms of trade is approximately equal to the percent change in the terms of trade, multiplied by the share of imports in income.

For the European Union, with a 25 percent share of imports in GDP, a 1 percent decline in the terms of trade would reduce real income by only about 0.25 percent. So, the terms of trade would have to decline by several percent a year to be a noticeable drag on economic growth.

Figure 6-8 shows the evolution of the terms of trade for the European Union, Turkey, and India between 1995 and 2018. Those terms of trade are measured empirically by averaging the prices of the basket of exported goods and dividing by a similar average for the basket of imported goods. We see that the magnitude of the yearly fluctuations in the terms of trade for the European Union is small, with no clear trend over time. The European Union terms of trade in 2018 was essentially at the same level that it was in 1995. Thus, there is no evidence that the European Union has suffered any kind of sustained loss from a long-term deterioration in its terms of trade.

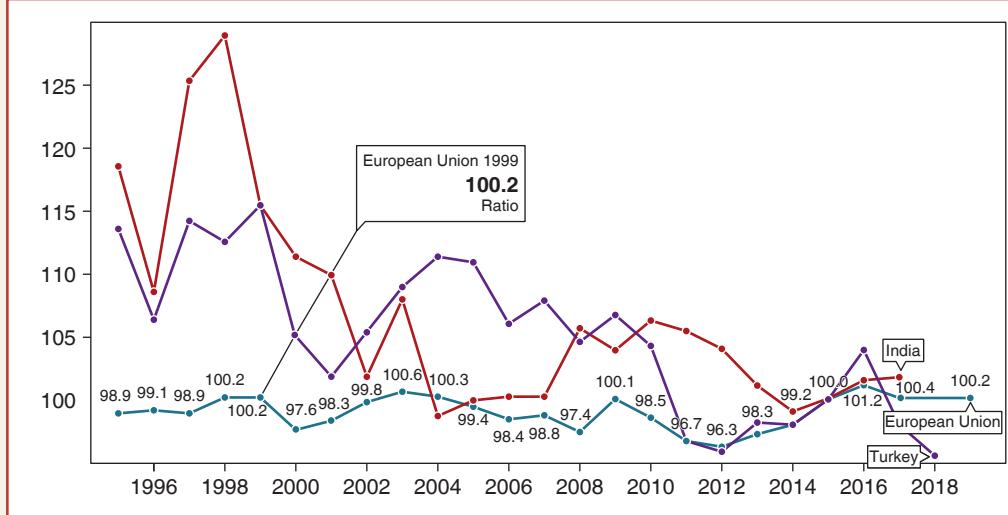


FIGURE 6-8

Source: Evolution of the Terms of trade European Union, India, Turkey 1995–2018, OECD <https://data.oecd.org/trade/terms-of-trade.htm>

## THE EXPOSURE OF DEVELOPING COUNTRIES TO TERMS OF TRADE SHOCKS AND THE COVID-19 PANDEMIC

As we illustrated for the United States in Figure 6-8, most developed countries tend to experience mild swings in their terms of trade, around 1 percent or less a year (on average). However, some developing countries' exports are heavily concentrated in mineral and agricultural sectors. The prices of those goods on world markets are very volatile, leading to large swings in the terms of trade. These swings in turn translate into substantial changes in welfare because trade is concentrated in a small number of sectors and represents a substantial percentage of GDP. Consider the set of 38 low-income and emerging economies with GDP per capita below \$25,000 (in 2005 U.S. dollars, adjusted for differences in purchasing power) tracked by the World Bank. In half of those countries, exports of just their top three commodities represent over half of their country's aggregate exports. Because the prices of

those commodities are so volatile, a recent study estimated that the induced terms of trade movements accounted for 40 percent of GDP fluctuations on average for all those 38 countries.<sup>8</sup>

Beyond the direct public health impact of COVID-19, the worldwide pandemic has also induced large fluctuations in commodity prices that are hitting some developing countries particularly hard. The price of oil tumbled as factories around the world closed during lockdowns. For a brief period in April 2020, the price of crude oil turned *negative*: oil "sellers" had to pay "buyers" to offload their oil supplies. Prior to the pandemic, oil represented 80 percent of Nigeria's exports and 50 percent of its overall government revenues. According to the World Bank, the fall in oil prices induced by the pandemic has caused the worst recession in four decades for the Nigerian economy.

## Tariffs and Export Subsidies: Simultaneous Shifts in *RS* and *RD*

**Import tariffs** (taxes levied on imports) and **export subsidies** (payments given to domestic producers who sell a good abroad) are not usually put in place to affect a country's terms of trade. These government interventions in trade usually take place for income

---

<sup>8</sup>See F. DiPace, L. Juvenal, and I. Petrella, *Terms-of-Trade Shocks Are Not All Alike*. London: Centre for Economic Policy Research, 2020.

distribution, for the promotion of industries thought to be crucial to the economy, or for balance of payments. (Note: We will examine these motivations in Chapters 10, 11, and 12.) Whatever the motive for tariffs and subsidies, however, they *do* have effects on terms of trade that can be understood by using the standard trade model.

The distinctive feature of tariffs and export subsidies is that they create a difference between prices at which goods are traded on the world market and prices at which those goods can be purchased within a country. The direct effect of a tariff is to make imported goods more expensive inside a country than they are outside the country. An export subsidy gives producers an incentive to export. It will therefore be more profitable to sell abroad than at home unless the price at home is higher, so such a subsidy raises the prices of exported goods inside a country. Note that this is very different from the effects of a production subsidy, which also lowers domestic prices for the affected goods (since the production subsidy does not discriminate based on the sales destination of the goods).

When countries are big exporters or importers of a good (relative to the size of the world market), the price changes caused by tariffs and subsidies change both relative supply and relative demand on world markets. The result is a shift in the terms of trade, both of the country imposing the policy change and of the rest of the world.

### Relative Demand and Supply Effects of a Tariff

Tariffs and subsidies drive a wedge between the prices at which goods are traded internationally (**external prices**) and the prices at which they are traded within a country (**internal prices**). This means that we have to be careful in defining the terms of trade, which are intended to measure the ratio at which countries exchange goods; for example, how many units of food can Home import for each unit of cloth that it exports? This means that the terms of trade correspond to external, rather than internal, prices. When analyzing the effects of a tariff or export subsidy, therefore, we want to know how that tariff or subsidy affects relative supply and demand *as a function of external prices*.

If Home imposes a 20 percent tariff on the value of food imports, for example, the internal price of food relative to cloth faced by Home producers and consumers will be 20 percent higher than the external relative price of food on the world market. Equivalently, the internal relative price of cloth on which Home residents base their decisions will be lower than the relative price on the external market.

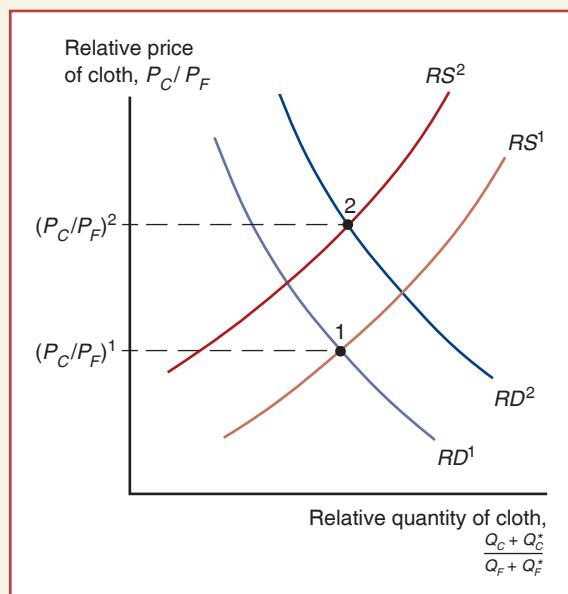
At any given world relative price of cloth, then, Home producers will face a lower relative cloth price and therefore will produce less cloth and more food. At the same time, Home consumers will shift their consumption toward cloth and away from food. From the point of view of the world as a whole, the relative supply of cloth will fall (from  $RS^1$  to  $RS^2$  in Figure 6-9) while the relative demand for cloth will rise (from  $RD^1$  to  $RD^2$ ). Clearly, the world relative price of cloth rises from  $(P_C/P_F)^1$  to  $(P_C/P_F)^2$ , and thus Home's terms of trade improve at Foreign's expense.

The extent of this terms of trade effect depends on how large the country imposing the tariff is relative to the rest of the world: If the country is only a small part of the world, it cannot have much effect on world relative supply and demand and therefore cannot have much effect on relative prices. If the United States, a very large country, were to impose a 20 percent tariff, some estimates suggest that the U.S. terms of trade might rise by 15 percent. That is, the price of U.S. imports relative to exports might fall by 15 percent on the world market, while the relative price of imports would rise only 5 percent inside the United States. On the other hand, if Luxembourg or Paraguay were to impose a 20 percent tariff, the terms of trade effect would probably be too small to measure.

**FIGURE 6-9**

### Effects of a Food Tariff on the Terms of Trade

An import tariff on food imposed by Home both reduces the relative supply of cloth (from  $RS^1$  to  $RS^2$ ) and increases the relative demand (from  $RD^1$  to  $RD^2$ ) for the world as a whole. As a result, the relative price of cloth must rise from  $(P_C/P_F)^1$  to  $(P_C/P_F)^2$ .



### Effects of an Export Subsidy

Tariffs and export subsidies are often treated as similar policies, since they both seem to support domestic producers, but they have opposite effects on the terms of trade. Suppose that Home offers a 20 percent subsidy on the value of any cloth exported. For any given world prices, this subsidy will raise Home's internal price of cloth relative to that of food by 20 percent. The rise in the relative price of cloth will lead Home producers to produce more cloth and less food, while leading Home consumers to substitute food for cloth. As illustrated in Figure 6-10, the subsidy will increase the world relative supply of cloth (from  $RS^1$  to  $RS^2$ ) and decrease the world relative demand for cloth (from  $RD^1$  to  $RD^2$ ), shifting equilibrium from point 1 to point 2. A Home export subsidy worsens Home's terms of trade and improves Foreign's.

### Implications of Terms of Trade Effects: Who Gains and Who Loses?

If Home imposes a tariff, it improves its terms of trade at Foreign's expense. Thus, tariffs hurt the rest of the world. The effect on Home's welfare is not quite as clear-cut. The terms of trade improvement benefits Home; however, a tariff also imposes costs by distorting production and consumption incentives within Home's economy (see Chapter 9). The terms of trade gains will outweigh the losses from distortion only as long as the tariff is not too large. We will see later how to define an optimum tariff that maximizes net benefit. (For small countries that cannot have much impact on their terms of trade, the optimum tariff is near zero.)

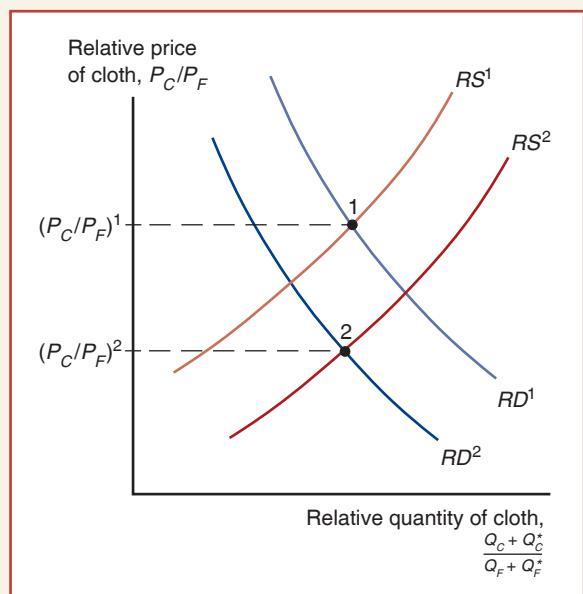
The effects of an export subsidy are quite clear. Foreign's terms of trade improve at Home's expense, leaving it clearly better off. At the same time, Home loses from terms of trade deterioration and from the distorting effects of its policy.

This analysis seems to show that export subsidies never make sense. In fact, it is difficult to come up with situations where export subsidies would serve the national interest. The use of export subsidies as a policy tool usually has more to do with the peculiarities of trade politics than with economic logic.

**FIGURE 6-10**

### Effects of a Cloth Subsidy on the Terms of Trade

An export subsidy on cloth has the opposite effects on relative supply and demand than the tariff on food. Relative supply of cloth for the world rises, while relative demand for cloth falls. Home's terms of trade decline as the relative price of cloth falls from  $(P_C/P_F)^1$  to  $(P_C/P_F)^2$ .



Are foreign tariffs always bad for a country and foreign export subsidies always beneficial? Not necessarily. Our model is of a two-country world, where the other country exports the good we import and vice versa. In the real, multination world, a foreign government may subsidize the export of a good that competes with U.S. exports; this foreign subsidy will obviously hurt the U.S. terms of trade. A good example of this effect is European subsidies to agricultural exports (see Chapter 9). Alternatively, a country may impose a tariff on something the United States also imports, lowering its price and benefiting the United States. We thus need to qualify our conclusions from a two-country analysis: Subsidies to exports of things *the United States imports* help us, while tariffs *against U.S. exports* hurt us.

The view that subsidized foreign sales to the United States are good for us is not a popular one. When foreign governments are charged with subsidizing sales in the United States, the popular and political reaction is that this is unfair competition. Thus, when the Commerce Department determined in 2012 that the Chinese government was subsidizing exports of solar panels to the United States, it responded by imposing a tariff on solar panel imports from China.<sup>9</sup> The standard model tells us that lower prices for solar panels are a good thing for the U.S. economy (which is a net importer of solar panels). On the other hand, some models based on imperfect competition and increasing returns to scale in production point to some potential welfare losses from the Chinese subsidy. Nevertheless, the subsidy's biggest impact falls on the distribution of income within the United States. If China subsidizes exports of solar panels to the United States, most U.S. residents gain from cheaper solar power, and the world benefits from lower carbon emissions. However, workers and investors in the U.S. solar panel industry are hurt by the lower import prices. (Yet those workers are outnumbered by a ratio of nearly 6 to 1 by workers employed in the sales, distribution, and installation of

<sup>9</sup>See “U.S. Will Place Tariffs on Chinese Solar Panels,” *New York Times*, October 10, 2012.

solar panels, who benefit from lower import prices.) Another consequence of the U.S. tariffs on imports of solar panels from China was trade diversion: The higher price of solar panels from China fueled an investment boom in the production of solar panels in Malaysia.<sup>10</sup> By 2016, Malaysia supplanted China as the leading import source of U.S. solar panels. In 2018, the United States imposed a 30 percent tariff on imports of solar panels from all countries.

## International Borrowing and Lending

Up to this point, all of the trading relationships we have described were not referenced by a time dimension: One good, say cloth, is exchanged for a different good, say food. In this section, we show how the standard model of trade we have developed can also be used to analyze another very important kind of trade between countries that occurs over time: international borrowing and lending. Any international transaction that occurs over time has a financial aspect, and this aspect is one of the main topics we address in the second half of this book. However, we can also abstract from those financial aspects and think of borrowing and lending as just another kind of trade: Instead of trading one good for another at a point in time, we exchange goods today in return for some goods in the future. This kind of trade is known as **intertemporal trade**; we will have much more to say about it later in this text, but for now we will analyze it using a variant of our standard trade model with a time dimension.<sup>11</sup>

### Intertemporal Production Possibilities and Trade

Even in the absence of international capital movements, any economy faces a trade-off between consumption now and consumption in the future. Economies usually do not consume all of their current output; some of their output takes the form of investment in machines, buildings, and other forms of productive capital. The more investment an economy undertakes now, the more it will be able to produce and consume in the future. To invest more, however, an economy must release resources by consuming less (unless there are unemployed resources, a possibility we temporarily disregard). Thus, there is a trade-off between current and future consumption.

Let's imagine an economy that consumes only one good and will exist for only two periods, which we will call *current* and *future*. Then there will be a trade-off between current and future production of the consumption good, which we can summarize by drawing an **intertemporal production possibility frontier**. Such a frontier is illustrated in Figure 6-11. It looks just like the production possibility frontiers between two goods at a point in time that we have been drawing.

The shape of the intertemporal production possibility frontier will differ among countries. Some countries will have production possibilities that are biased toward current output, while others are biased toward future output. We will ask in a moment what real differences these biases correspond to, but first let's simply suppose that there are two countries, Home and Foreign, with different intertemporal production possibilities. Home's possibilities are biased toward current consumption, while Foreign's are biased toward future consumption.

Reasoning by analogy, we already know what to expect. In the absence of international borrowing and lending, we would expect the relative price of future consumption

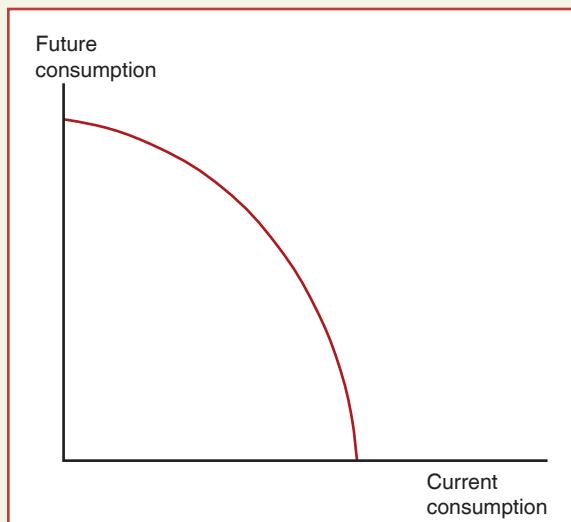
<sup>10</sup>See “Solar Rises in Malaysia During Trade Wars Over Panels,” *New York Times*, December 11, 2014.

<sup>11</sup>See Appendix for additional details and derivations.

**FIGURE 6-11**

### The Intertemporal Production Possibility Frontier

A country can trade current consumption for future consumption in the same way that it can produce more of one good by producing less of another.



to be higher in Home than in Foreign, and thus if we open the possibility of trade over time, we would expect Home to export current consumption and import future consumption.

This may, however, seem a little puzzling. What is the relative price of future consumption, and how does one trade over time?

### The Real Interest Rate

How does a country trade over time? Like an individual, a country can trade over time by borrowing or lending. Consider what happens when an individual borrows: She is initially able to spend more than her income or, in other words, to consume more than her production. Later, however, she must repay the loan with interest, and therefore in the future she consumes *less* than she produces. By borrowing, then, she has in effect traded future consumption for current consumption. The same is true of a borrowing country.

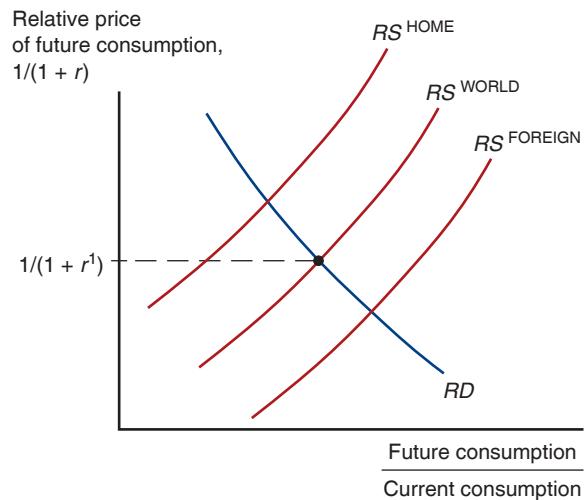
Clearly the price of future consumption in terms of current consumption has something to do with the interest rate. As we will see in the second half of this book, in the real world the interpretation of interest rates is complicated by the possibility of changes in the overall price level. For now, we bypass that problem by supposing that loan contracts are specified in “real” terms: When a country borrows, it gets the right to purchase some quantity of consumption now in return for repayment of some larger quantity in the future. Specifically, the quantity of repayment in the future will be  $(1 + r)$  times the quantity borrowed in the present, where  $r$  is the **real interest rate** on borrowing. Since the trade-off is one unit of current consumption for  $(1 + r)$  units in the future, the relative price of future consumption is  $1/(1 + r)$ .

When this relative price of future consumption rises (that is, the real interest rate  $r$  falls), a country responds by investing more; this increases the supply of future consumption relative to current consumption (a leftward movement along the intertemporal production possibility frontier in Figure 6-11) and implies an upward-sloping relative supply curve for future consumption. We previously saw how a consumer’s

**FIGURE 6-12**

### Equilibrium Interest Rate with Borrowing and Lending

Foreign's relative supply of future consumption (relative to current consumption) is shifted out relative to Home's relative supply. Home and Foreign have the same relative demand for future consumption, which is also the relative demand for the world. The equilibrium interest rate  $1/(1 + r^1)$  is determined by the intersection of world relative supply and demand.



preferences for cloth and food could be represented by a relative demand curve relating relative consumption to the relative prices of those goods. Similarly, a consumer will also have preferences over time that capture the extent to which she is willing to substitute between current and future consumption. Those substitution effects are also captured by an intertemporal relative demand curve that relates the relative demand for future consumption (the ratio of future consumption to current consumption) to its relative price  $1/(1 + r)$ .

The parallel with our standard trade model is now complete. If borrowing and lending are allowed, the relative price of future consumption, and thus the world real interest rate, will be determined by the world relative supply and demand for future consumption. The determination of the equilibrium relative price  $1/(1 + r^1)$  is shown in Figure 6-12 [notice the parallel with trade in goods and panel (a) of Figure 6-5]. The intertemporal relative supply curves for Home and Foreign reflect how Home's production possibilities are biased toward current consumption whereas Foreign's production possibilities are biased toward future consumption. In other words, Foreign's relative supply for future consumption is shifted out relative to Home's relative supply. At the equilibrium real interest rate, Home will export current consumption in return for imports of future consumption. That is, Home will lend to Foreign in the present and receive repayment in the future.

### Intertemporal Comparative Advantage

We have assumed that Home's intertemporal production possibilities are biased toward current production. But what does this mean? The sources of intertemporal comparative advantage are somewhat different from those that give rise to ordinary trade.

A country that has a comparative advantage in future production of consumption goods is one that in the absence of international borrowing and lending would have a low relative price of future consumption, that is, a high real interest rate. This high real interest rate corresponds to a high return on investment, that is, a high return to diverting resources from current production of consumption goods to production of

capital goods, construction, and other activities that enhance the economy's future ability to produce. So countries that borrow in the international market will be those where highly productive investment opportunities are available relative to current productive capacity, while countries that lend will be those where such opportunities are not available domestically.

## SUMMARY

- The standard trade model derives a world relative supply curve from production possibilities and a world relative demand curve from preferences. The price of exports relative to imports, a country's terms of trade, is determined by the intersection of the world relative supply and demand curves. Other things equal, a rise in a country's terms of trade increases its welfare. Conversely, a decline in a country's terms of trade will leave the country worse off.
- Economic growth means an outward shift in a country's production possibility frontier. Such growth is usually biased; that is, the production possibility frontier shifts out more in the direction of some goods than in the direction of others. The immediate effect of biased growth is to lead, other things equal, to an increase in the world relative supply of the goods toward which the growth is biased. This shift in the world relative supply curve in turn leads to a change in the growing country's terms of trade, which can go in either direction. If the growing country's terms of trade improve, this improvement reinforces the initial growth at home but hurts the growth in the rest of the world. If the growing country's terms of trade worsen, this decline offsets some of the favorable effects of growth at home but benefits the rest of the world.
- The direction of the terms of trade effects depends on the nature of the growth. Growth that is export-biased (growth that expands the ability of an economy to produce the goods it was initially exporting more than it expands the economy's ability to produce goods that compete with imports) worsens the terms of trade. Conversely, growth that is import-biased, disproportionately increasing the ability to produce import-competing goods, improves a country's terms of trade. It is possible for import-biased growth abroad to hurt a country.
- Import tariffs and export subsidies affect both relative supply and relative demand. A tariff raises relative supply of a country's import good while lowering relative demand. A tariff unambiguously improves the country's terms of trade at the rest of the world's expense. An export subsidy has the reverse effect, increasing the relative supply and reducing the relative demand for the country's export good, and thus worsening the terms of trade. The terms of trade effects of an export subsidy hurt the subsidizing country and benefit the rest of the world, while those of a tariff do the reverse. This suggests that export subsidies do not make sense from a national point of view and that foreign export subsidies should be welcomed rather than countered. Both tariffs and subsidies, however, have strong effects on the distribution of income within countries, and these effects often weigh more heavily on policy than the terms of trade concerns.
- International borrowing and lending can be viewed as a kind of international trade, but one that involves trade of current consumption for future consumption rather than trade of one good for another. The relative price at which this intertemporal trade takes place is 1 plus the real rate of interest.

## KEY TERMS

biased growth, p. 157	import tariff, p. 163	isovalue lines, p. 151
export-biased growth, p. 159	indifference curves, p. 152	real interest rate, p. 168
export subsidies, p. 163	internal price, p. 164	standard trade model, p. 150
external price, p. 164	intertemporal production	terms of trade, p. 150
immiserizing growth, p. 160	possibility frontier, p. 167	
import-biased growth, p. 159	intertemporal trade, p. 167	

## PROBLEMS

1. Assume Norway and Sweden trade with each other, with Norway exporting fish to Sweden, and Sweden exporting Volvos (automobiles) to Norway. Illustrate the gains from trade between the two countries using the standard trade model, assuming first that tastes for the goods are the same in both countries, but that the production possibility frontiers differ: Norway has a long coast that borders on the north Atlantic, making it relatively more productive in fishing. Sweden has a greater endowment of capital, making it relatively more productive in automobiles.
2. Assume Indonesia and China are trading partners. Indonesia initially exports palm oil to and imports lubricants from China. Using the standard trade model, explain how an increase in the relative price of palm oil, in relation to lubricant prices, would affect production and consumption of palm oil for Indonesia (assuming that the taste for both goods is the same in both countries). If the income effect of price change of palm oil is greater than the substitution effect, what would happen to palm oil consumption in Indonesia?
3. In some economies, relative supply may be unresponsive to changes in prices. For example, if factors of production were completely immobile between sectors, the production possibility frontier would be right-angled, and output of the two goods would not depend on their relative prices. Is it still true in this case that a rise in the terms of trade increases welfare? Analyze graphically.
4. The counterpart to immobile factors on the supply side would be lack of substitution on the demand side. Imagine an economy where consumers always buy goods in rigid proportions—for example, one yard of cloth for every pound of food—regardless of the prices of the two goods. Show that an improvement in the terms of trade benefits this economy as well.
5. The Netherlands primarily exports agricultural products, while importing raw materials such as natural gas, metal ores, and grains. Analyze the impact of the following events on the Netherland's terms of trade:
  - a. Farm pollution in China is worsening.
  - b. Egypt is planning to import large quantities of liquefied natural gas.
  - c. Germany has a sustainable development strategy for raw materials and energy productivity.
  - d. OPEC's agreement with Russia cut oil production and pushing oil prices higher.
  - e. A rise in the Netherland's tariffs on imported iron and steel.
6. Access to adequate food is the primary concern for most countries; thus, agriculture is one of the most important industries in the world. The security and health of population has lowered the price of manufactured products relative to agricultural products. Brazil is among the top exporters of agricultural products in the whole world, an area in which the United States had been a major exporter. Using

manufactured goods and agricultural products as tradable goods, create a standard trade model for the United States and Brazilian economies that show how a decline in relative prices can reduce welfare in the United States and increase it in Brazil.

7. Countries A and B have two factors of production, capital and labor, with which they produce two goods,  $X$  and  $Y$ . Technology is the same in the two countries.  $X$  is capital-intensive; A is capital-abundant.  
Analyze the effects on the terms of trade and on the two countries' welfare of the following:
  - a. An increase in A's capital stock.
  - b. An increase in A's labor supply.
  - c. An increase in B's capital stock.
  - d. An increase in B's labor supply.
8. Economic growth is just as likely to worsen a country's terms of trade as it is to improve them. Why, then, do most economists regard immiserizing growth, where growth actually hurts the growing country, as unlikely in practice?
9. Singapore and Korea are somewhat similar in adopting eco-innovation policies: both are highly innovative economies, with similar patterns of comparative advantage in producing eco-friendly goods and services. Korea was the first to adopt instruments for eco-innovation. Singapore is now adopting its own instruments in this direction. How would you expect this to affect the welfare of Korea? Of the United States? (Hint: Think of adding a new economy identical to that of Korea to the world economy.)
10. Suppose Country X subsidizes its exports and Country Y imposes a "countervailing" tariff that offsets the subsidy's effect, so that in the end, relative prices in Country Y are unchanged. What happens to the terms of trade? What about welfare in the two countries? Suppose, on the other hand, that Country Y retaliates with an export subsidy of its own. Contrast the result.
11. Explain the analogy between international borrowing and lending and ordinary international trade.
12. Which of the following countries would you expect to have intertemporal production possibilities, biased toward current consumption goods, and which would be biased toward future consumption goods?
  - a. A country like Egypt that has discovered large reserves of natural gas that can be exploited with massive investments.
  - b. A country like India that is catching up technologically due to massive outsourcing services, especially from wealthy countries.
  - c. A country like Germany or the United States where a ban on immigration means a limited inflow of immigrants.
  - d. A country like Indonesia that started developing its infrastructure to make industries more productive and cost-efficient.
  - e. A country like the Netherlands that aims to reduce energy and gas consumption with low investment in the use of biofuels.

## FURTHER READINGS

Rudiger Dornbusch, Stanley Fischer, and Paul Samuelson. "Comparative Advantage, Trade, and Payments in a Ricardian Model with a Continuum of Goods." *American Economic Review* 67 (1977). This paper, cited in Chapter 3, also gives a clear exposition of the role of nontraded goods in establishing the presumption that a transfer improves the recipient's terms of trade.

Lawrence Edwards and Robert Z. Lawrence, *Rising Tide: Is Growth in Emerging Economies Good for the United States?* (Peterson Institute for International Economics, 2013), Chapter 5. This chapter provides a detailed analysis of the question raised in the Case Study on the effects of developing country growth on overall U.S. welfare.

Irving Fisher. *The Theory of Interest*. New York: Macmillan, 1930. The “intertemporal” approach described in this chapter owes its origin to Fisher.

J. R. Hicks. “The Long Run Dollar Problem.” *Oxford Economic Papers* 2 (1953), pp. 117–135. The modern analysis of growth and trade has its origins in the fears of Europeans, in the early years after World War II, that the United States had an economic lead that could not be overtaken. (This sounds dated today, but many of the same arguments have now resurfaced about Japan.) The paper by Hicks is the most famous exposition.

Harry G. Johnson. “Economic Expansion and International Trade.” *Manchester School of Social and Economic Studies* 23 (1955), pp. 95–112. The paper that laid out the crucial distinction between export- and import-biased growth.

Paul Krugman. “Does Third World Growth Hurt First World Prosperity?” *Harvard Business Review* 72 (July–August 1994), pp. 113–121. An analysis that attempts to explain why growth in developing countries need not hurt advanced countries in principle and probably does not do so in practice.

Jeffrey Sachs. “The Current Account and Macroeconomic Adjustment in the 1970s.” *Brookings Papers on Economic Activity*, 1981. A study of international capital flows that views such flows as intertemporal trade.



## APPENDIX TO CHAPTER 6

### More on Intertemporal Trade

This appendix contains a more detailed examination of the two-period intertemporal trade model described in the chapter. First consider Home, whose intertemporal production possibility frontier is shown in Figure 6A-1. Recall that the quantities of current and future consumption goods produced at Home depend on the amount of current consumption goods invested to produce future goods. As currently available resources are diverted from current consumption to investment, production of current consumption,  $Q_C$ , falls and production of future consumption,  $Q_F$ , rises. Increased investment therefore shifts the economy up and to the left along the intertemporal production possibility frontier.

The chapter showed that the price of future consumption in terms of current consumption is  $1/(1 + r)$ , where  $r$  is the real interest rate. Measured in terms of current consumption, the value of the economy's total production over the two periods of its existence is therefore

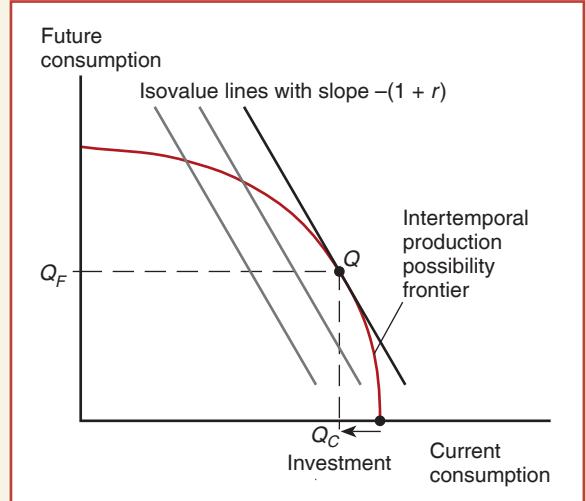
$$V = Q_C + Q_F/(1 + r).$$

Figure 6A-1 shows the isovalue lines corresponding to the relative price  $1/(1 + r)$  for different values of  $V$ . These are straight lines with slope  $-(1 + r)$  (because future consumption is on the vertical axis). As in the standard trade model, firms' decisions lead to a production pattern that maximizes the value of production at market prices  $Q_C + Q_F/(1 + r)$ . Production therefore occurs at point  $Q$ . The economy invests

**FIGURE 6A-1**

#### Determining Home's Intertemporal Production Pattern

At a world real interest rate of  $r$ , Home's investment level maximizes the value of production over the two periods that the economy exists.



the amount shown, leaving  $Q_C$  available for current consumption and producing an amount  $Q_F$  of future consumption when the first-period investment pays off. (Notice the parallel with Figure 6-1 where production levels of cloth and food are chosen for a single period in order to maximize the value of production.)

At the chosen production point  $Q$ , the extra future consumption that would result from investing an additional unit of current consumption just equals  $(1 + r)$ . It would be inefficient to push investment beyond point  $Q$  because the economy could do better by lending additional current consumption to foreigners instead. Figure 6A-1 implies that a rise in the world real interest rate  $r$ , which steepens the iso-value lines, causes investment to fall.

Figure 6A-2 shows how Home's consumption pattern is determined for a given world interest rate. Let  $D_C$  and  $D_F$  represent the demands for current and future consumption goods, respectively. Since production is at point  $Q$ , the economy's consumption possibilities over the two periods are limited by the *intertemporal budget constraint*:

$$D_C + D_F/(1 + r) = Q_C + Q_F/(1 + r).$$

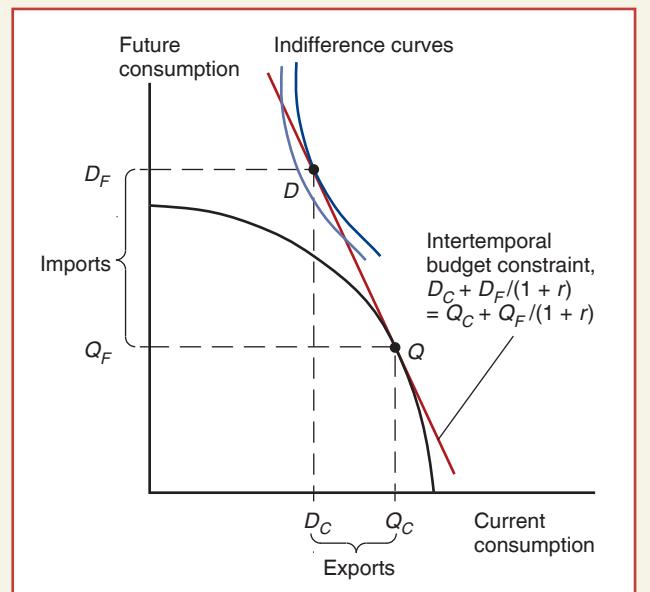
This constraint states that the value of Home's consumption over the two periods (measured in terms of current consumption) equals the value of consumption goods produced in the two periods (also measured in current consumption units). Put another way, production and consumption must lie on the same iso-value line.

Point  $D$ , where Home's budget constraint touches the highest attainable indifference curve, shows the current and future consumption levels chosen by the economy. Home's demand for current consumption,  $D_C$ , is smaller than its production of current consumption,  $Q_C$ , so it exports (that is, lends)  $Q_C - D_C$  units of current consumption to Foreign. Correspondingly, Home imports  $D_F - Q_F$  units of future consumption from abroad when its first-period loans are repaid to it with interest. The intertemporal budget constraint implies that  $D_F - Q_F = (1 + r) \times (Q_C - D_C)$ , so trade is

**FIGURE 6A-2**

### Determining Home's Intertemporal Consumption Pattern

Home's consumption places it on the highest indifference curve touching its intertemporal budget constraint. The economy exports  $Q_C - D_C$  units of current consumption and imports  $D_F - Q_F = (1 + r) \times (Q_C - D_C)$  units of future consumption.



*intertemporally* balanced. (Once again, note the parallel with Figure 6-3, where the economy exports cloth in return for imports of food.)

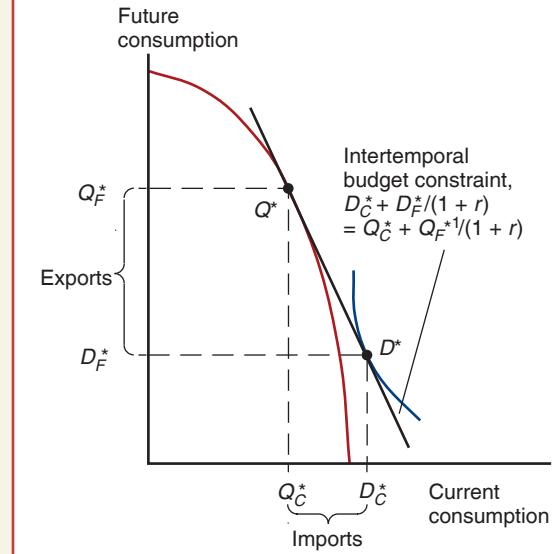
Figure 6A-3 shows how investment and consumption are determined in Foreign. Foreign is assumed to have a comparative advantage in producing *future* consumption goods. The diagram shows that at a real interest rate of  $r$ , Foreign borrows consumption goods in the first period and repays this loan using consumption goods produced in the second period. Because of its relatively rich domestic investment opportunities and its relative preference for current consumption, Foreign is an importer of current consumption and an exporter of future consumption.

The differences between Home and Foreign's production possibility frontiers lead to the differences in the relative supply curves depicted in Figure 6-11. At the equilibrium interest rate  $1/(1 + r)$ , Home's desired export of current consumption equals Foreign's desired import of current consumption. Put another way, at that interest rate, Home's desired first-period lending equals Foreign's desired first-period borrowing. Supply and demand are therefore equal in both periods.

**FIGURE 6A-3**

### Determining Foreign's Intertemporal Production and Consumption Patterns

Foreign produces at point  $Q^*$  and consumes at point  $D^*$ , importing  $D_C^* - Q_C^*$  units of current consumption and exporting  $Q_F^* - D_F^* = (1 + r) \times (D_C^* - Q_C^*)$  units of future consumption.





# EXTERNAL ECONOMIES OF SCALE AND THE INTERNATIONAL LOCATION OF PRODUCTION

In Chapter 3, we pointed out that there are two reasons why countries specialize and trade. First, countries differ either in their resources or in their technology and specialize in the things they do relatively well; second, economies of scale (or increasing returns) make it advantageous for each country to specialize in the production of only a limited range of goods and services. Chapters 3 through 6 considered models in which all trade is based on comparative advantage; that is, differences between countries are the only reason for trade. This chapter introduces the role of economies of scale.

The analysis of trade based on economies of scale presents certain problems that we have avoided so far. Until now, we have assumed markets are perfectly competitive, so that all monopoly profits are always competed away. When there are increasing returns, however, large firms may have an advantage over small ones, so that markets tend to be dominated by one firm (monopoly) or, more often, by a few firms (oligopoly). If this happens, our analysis of trade has to take into account the effects of imperfect competition.

However, economies of scale need not lead to imperfect competition if they take the form of *external* economies, which apply at the level of the industry rather than at the level of the individual firm. In this chapter, we will focus on the role of such external economies of scale in trade, reserving the discussion of internal economies for Chapter 8.

## LEARNING GOALS

After reading this chapter, you will be able to:

- Recognize why international trade often occurs from increasing returns to scale.
- Understand the differences between internal and external economies of scale.
- Discuss the sources of external economies.
- Discuss the roles of external economies and knowledge spillovers in shaping comparative advantage and international trade patterns.

## Economies of Scale and International Trade: An Overview

The models of comparative advantage already presented were based on the assumption of constant returns to scale. That is, we assumed that if inputs to an industry were doubled, industry output would double as well. In practice, however, many industries are characterized by **economies of scale** (also referred to as *increasing returns*), so that production is more efficient the larger the scale at which it takes place. Where there are economies of scale, doubling the inputs to an industry will more than double the industry's production.

A simple example can help convey the significance of economies of scale for international trade. Table 7-1 shows the relationship between input and output of a hypothetical industry. Widgets are produced using only one input, labor; the table shows how the amount of labor required depends on the number of widgets produced. To produce 10 widgets, for example, requires 15 hours of labor, while to produce 25 widgets requires 30 hours. The presence of economies of scale may be seen from the fact that doubling the input of labor from 15 to 30 more than doubles the industry's output—in fact, output increases by a factor of 2.5. Equivalently, the existence of economies of scale may be seen by looking at the average amount of labor used to produce each unit of output: If output is only 5 widgets, the average labor input per widget is 2 hours, while if output is 25 units, the average labor input falls to 1.2 hours.

We can use this example to see why economies of scale provide an incentive for international trade. Imagine a world consisting of two countries, the United States and Britain, both of which have the same technology for producing widgets. Suppose each country initially produces 10 widgets. According to the table, this requires 15 hours of labor in each country, so in the world as a whole, 30 hours of labor produce 20 widgets. But now suppose we concentrate world production of widgets in one country, say the United States, and let the United States employ 30 hours of labor in the widget industry. In a single country, these 30 hours of labor can produce 25 widgets. So by concentrating production of widgets in the United States, the world economy can use the same amount of labor to produce 25 percent more widgets.

But where does the United States find the extra labor to produce widgets, and what happens to the labor that was employed in the British widget industry? To get the labor to expand its production of some goods, the United States must decrease or abandon the production of others; these goods will then be produced in Britain instead, using the labor formerly employed in the industries whose production has expanded in the United States. Imagine there are many goods subject to economies of scale in production, and give them numbers 1, 2, 3, . . . . To take advantage of economies of scale, each of the countries must concentrate on producing only a limited number of goods. Thus, for example, the United States might produce goods 1, 3, 5, and so on, while Britain

**TABLE 7-1 Relationship of Input to Output for a Hypothetical Industry**

Output	Total Labor Input	Average Labor Input
5	10	2
10	15	1.5
15	20	1.333333
20	25	1.25
25	30	1.2
30	35	1.166667

produces 2, 4, 6, and so on. If each country produces only some of the goods, then each good can be produced at a larger scale than would be the case if each country tried to produce everything. As a result, the world economy can produce more of each good.

How does international trade enter the story? Consumers in each country will still want to consume a variety of goods. Suppose industry 1 ends up in the United States and industry 2 ends up in Britain; then American consumers of good 2 will have to buy goods imported from Britain, while British consumers of good 1 will have to import it from the United States. International trade plays a crucial role: It makes it possible for each country to produce a restricted range of goods and to take advantage of economies of scale without sacrificing variety in consumption. Indeed, as we will see in Chapter 8, international trade typically leads to an increase in the variety of goods available.

Our example, then, suggests how mutually beneficial trade can arise as a result of economies of scale. Each country specializes in producing a limited range of products, which enables it to produce these goods more efficiently than if it tried to produce everything for itself; these specialized economies then trade with each other to be able to consume the full range of goods.

Unfortunately, to go from this suggestive story to an explicit model of trade based on economies of scale is not that simple. The reason is that economies of scale may lead to a market structure other than that of perfect competition, and we need to be careful about analyzing this market structure.

## Economies of Scale and Market Structure

In the example in Table 7-1, we represented economies of scale by assuming the labor input per unit of production is smaller the more units produced; this implies that at a given wage rate per hour, the average cost of production falls as output rises. We did not say how this production increase was achieved—whether existing firms simply produced more or whether there was instead an increase in the number of firms. To analyze the effects of economies of scale on market structure, however, one must be clear about what kind of production increase is necessary to reduce average cost. **External economies of scale** occur when the cost per unit depends on the size of the industry but not necessarily on the size of any one firm. **Internal economies of scale** occur when the cost per unit depends on the size of an individual firm but not necessarily on that of the industry.

The distinction between external and internal economies can be illustrated with a hypothetical example. Imagine an industry that initially consists of 10 firms, each producing 100 widgets, for a total industry production of 1,000 widgets. Now consider two cases. First, suppose the industry were to double in size, so that it now consists of 20 firms, each one still producing 100 widgets. It is possible that the costs of each firm will fall as a result of the increased size of the industry; for example, a bigger industry may allow more efficient provision of specialized services or machinery. If this is the case, the industry exhibits external economies of scale. That is, the efficiency of firms is increased by having a larger industry, even though each firm is the same size as before.

Second, suppose the industry's output is held constant at 1,000 widgets, but that the number of firms is cut in half so that each of the remaining five firms produces 200 widgets. If the costs of production fall in this case, then there are internal economies of scale: A firm is more efficient if its output is larger.

External and internal economies of scale have different implications for the structure of industries. An industry where economies of scale are purely external (that is, where there are no advantages to large firms) will typically consist of many small firms and be

perfectly competitive. Internal economies of scale, by contrast, give large firms a cost advantage over small firms and lead to an imperfectly competitive market structure.

Both external and internal economies of scale are important causes of international trade. Because they have different implications for market structure, however, it is difficult to discuss both types of scale economy-based trade in the same model. We will therefore deal with them one at a time. In this chapter, we focus on external economies; in Chapter 8, on internal economies.

## The Theory of External Economies

As we have already pointed out, not all scale economies apply at the level of the individual firm. For a variety of reasons, it is often the case that concentrating production of an industry in one or a few locations reduces the industry's costs even if the individual firms in the industry remain small. When economies of scale apply at the level of the industry rather than at the level of the individual firm, they are called *external economies*. The analysis of external economies goes back more than a century to the British economist Alfred Marshall, who was struck by the phenomenon of "industrial districts"—geographical concentrations of industry that could not be easily explained by natural resources. In Marshall's time, the most famous examples included such concentrations of industry as the cluster of cutlery manufacturers in Sheffield and the cluster of hosiery firms in Northampton.

There are many modern examples of industries where there seem to be powerful external economies. In the United States, these examples include the semiconductor industry, concentrated in California's famous Silicon Valley; the investment banking industry, concentrated in New York; and the entertainment industry, concentrated in Hollywood. In the rising manufacturing industries of developing countries such as China, external economies are pervasive—for example, one town in China accounts for a large share of the world's underwear production; another produces nearly all of the world's cigarette lighters; yet another produces a third of the world's magnetic tape heads; and so on. External economies have also played a key role in India's emergence as a major exporter of information services, with a large part of this industry still clustered in and around the city of Bangalore.

Marshall argued that there are three main reasons why a cluster of firms may be more efficient than an individual firm in isolation: the ability of a cluster to support **specialized suppliers**, the way that a geographically concentrated industry allows **labor market pooling**, and the way that a geographically concentrated industry helps foster **knowledge spillovers**. These same factors continue to be valid today.

## Specialized Suppliers

In many industries, the production of goods and services—and, to an even greater extent, the development of new products—requires the use of specialized equipment or support services; yet an individual company does not provide a large enough market for these services to keep the suppliers in business. A localized industrial cluster can solve this problem by bringing together many firms that collectively provide a large enough market to support a wide range of specialized suppliers. This phenomenon has been extensively documented in Silicon Valley: A 1994 study recounts how, as the local industry grew,

engineers left established semiconductor companies to start firms that manufactured capital goods such as diffusion ovens, step-and-repeat cameras, and testers, and materials and components such as photomasks, testing jigs, and specialized

chemicals. . . . This independent equipment sector promoted the continuing formation of semiconductor firms by freeing individual producers from the expense of developing capital equipment internally and by spreading the costs of development. It also reinforced the tendency toward industrial localization, as most of these specialized inputs were not available elsewhere in the country.

As the quote suggests, the availability of this dense network of specialized suppliers has given high-technology firms in Silicon Valley some considerable advantages over firms elsewhere. Key inputs are cheaper and more easily available because there are many firms competing to provide them, and firms can concentrate on what they do best, contracting out other aspects of their business. For example, some Silicon Valley firms that specialize in providing highly sophisticated computer chips for particular customers have chosen to become “fabless,” that is, they do not have any factories in which chips can be fabricated. Instead, they concentrate on designing the chips and then hire another firm to actually fabricate them.

A company that tried to enter the industry in another location—for example, in a country that did not have a comparable industrial cluster—would be at an immediate disadvantage because it would lack easy access to Silicon Valley’s suppliers and would either have to provide them for itself or be faced with the task of trying to deal with Silicon Valley-based suppliers at long distance.

## Labor Market Pooling

A second source of external economies is the way that a cluster of firms can create a pooled market for workers with highly specialized skills. Such a pooled market is to the advantage of both the producers and the workers, as the producers are less likely to suffer from labor shortages and the workers are less likely to become unemployed.

The point can best be made with a simplified example. Imagine there are two companies that both use the same kind of specialized labor, say, two film studios that make use of experts in computer animation. Both employers are, however, uncertain about how many workers they will want to hire: If demand for their product is high, both companies will want to hire 150 workers, but if it is low, they will want to hire only 50. Suppose also that there are 200 workers with this special skill. Now compare two situations: one with both firms and all 200 workers in the same city, the other with the firms, each with 100 workers, in two different cities. It is straightforward to show that both the workers and their employers are better off if everyone is in the same place.

First, consider the situation from the point of view of the companies. If they are in different locations, whenever one of the companies is doing well, it will be confronted with a labor shortage: It will want to hire 150 workers, but only 100 will be available. If the firms are near each other, however, it is at least possible that one will be doing well when the other is doing badly, so both firms may be able to hire as many workers as they want. By locating near each other, the companies increase the likelihood that they will be able to take advantage of business opportunities.

From the workers’ point of view, having the industry concentrated in one location is also an advantage. If the industry is divided between two cities, then whenever one of the firms has a low demand for workers, the result will be unemployment: The firm will be willing to hire only 50 of the 100 workers who live nearby. But if the industry is concentrated in a single city, low labor demand from one firm will at least sometimes

be offset by high demand from the other. As a result, workers will have a lower risk of unemployment.

Again, these advantages have been documented for Silicon Valley, where it is common both for companies to expand rapidly and for workers to change employers. The same study of Silicon Valley that was quoted previously notes that the concentration of firms in a single location makes it easy to switch employers. One engineer is quoted as saying that “it wasn’t that big a catastrophe to quit your job on Friday and have another job on Monday. . . . You didn’t even necessarily have to tell your wife. You just drove off in another direction on Monday morning.”<sup>1</sup> This flexibility makes Silicon Valley an attractive location both for highly skilled workers and for the companies that employ them.

## Knowledge Spillovers

It is by now a cliché that in the modern economy, knowledge is at least as important an input as are factors of production like labor, capital, and raw materials. This is especially true in highly innovative industries, where being even a few months behind the cutting edge in production techniques or product design can put a company at a major disadvantage.

But where does the specialized knowledge that is crucial to success in innovative industries come from? Companies can acquire technology through their own research and development efforts. They can also try to learn from competitors by studying their products and, in some cases, by taking them apart to “reverse engineer” their design and manufacture. An important source of technical know-how, however, is the informal exchange of information and ideas that takes place at a personal level. And this kind of informal diffusion of knowledge often seems to take place most effectively when an industry is concentrated in a fairly small area, so that employees of different companies mix socially and talk freely about technical issues.

Marshall described this process memorably when he wrote that in a district with many firms in the same industry,

The mysteries of the trade become no mystery, but are as it were in the air. . . . Good work is rightly appreciated, inventions and improvements in machinery, in processes and the general organization of the business have their merits promptly discussed: If one man starts a new idea, it is taken up by others and combined with suggestions of their own; and thus it becomes the source of further new ideas.

A journalist described how these knowledge spillovers worked during the rise of Silicon Valley (and also gave an excellent sense of the amount of specialized knowledge involved in the industry) as follows:

Every year there was some place, the Wagon Wheel, Chez Yvonne, Rickey’s, the Roundhouse, where members of this esoteric fraternity, the young men and women of the semiconductor industry, would head after work to have a drink and gossip and trade war stories about phase jitters, phantom circuits, bubble memories, pulse trains, bounces contacts, burst modes, leapfrog tests, p-n junctions, sleeping sickness modes, slow-death episodes, RAMs, NAKs, MOSeS, PCMs, PROMs, PROM blowers, PROM blasters, and teramagnitudes. . . .<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Saxenian, p. 35.

<sup>2</sup>Tom Wolfe, quoted in Saxenian, p. 33.

This kind of informal information flow means it is easier for companies in the Silicon Valley area to stay near the technological frontier than it is for companies elsewhere; indeed, many multinational firms have established research centers and even factories in Silicon Valley simply in order to keep up with the latest technology.

### External Economies and Market Equilibrium

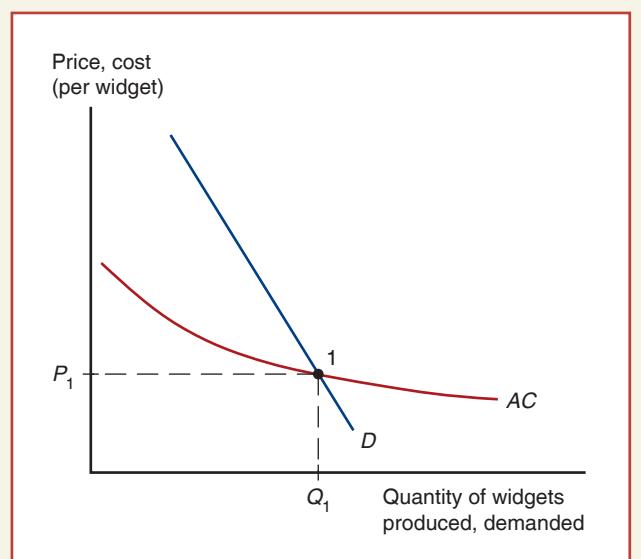
As we've just seen, a geographically concentrated industry is able to support specialized suppliers, provide a pooled labor market, and facilitate knowledge spillovers in a way that a geographically dispersed industry cannot. But the strength of these economies presumably depends on the industry's size: Other things equal, a bigger industry will generate stronger external economies. What does this say about the determination of output and prices?

While the details of external economies in practice are often quite subtle and complex (as the example of Silicon Valley shows), it can be useful to abstract from the details and represent external economies simply by assuming that the larger the industry, the lower the industry's costs. If we ignore international trade for the moment, then market equilibrium can be represented with a supply-and-demand diagram like Figure 7-1, which illustrates the market for widgets. In an ordinary picture of market equilibrium, the demand curve is downward sloping, while the supply curve is upward sloping. In the presence of external economies of scale, however, there is a **forward-falling supply curve**: the larger the industry's output, the lower the price at which firms are willing to sell, because their **average cost of production** falls as industry output rises.

In the absence of international trade, the unusual slope of the supply curve in Figure 7-1 doesn't seem to matter much. As in a conventional supply-and-demand analysis, the equilibrium price,  $P_1$ , and output,  $Q_1$ , are determined by the intersection of the demand curve and the supply curve. As we'll see next, however, external economies of scale make a huge difference to our view of the causes and effects of international trade.

**FIGURE 7-1**  
**External Economies and Market Equilibrium**

When there are external economies of scale, the average cost of producing a good falls as the quantity produced rises. Given competition among many producers, the downward-sloping average cost curve  $AC$  can be interpreted as a *forward-falling supply curve*. As in ordinary supply-and-demand analysis, market equilibrium is at point 1, where the supply curve intersects the demand curve,  $D$ . The equilibrium level of output is  $Q_1$ , the equilibrium price  $P_1$ .



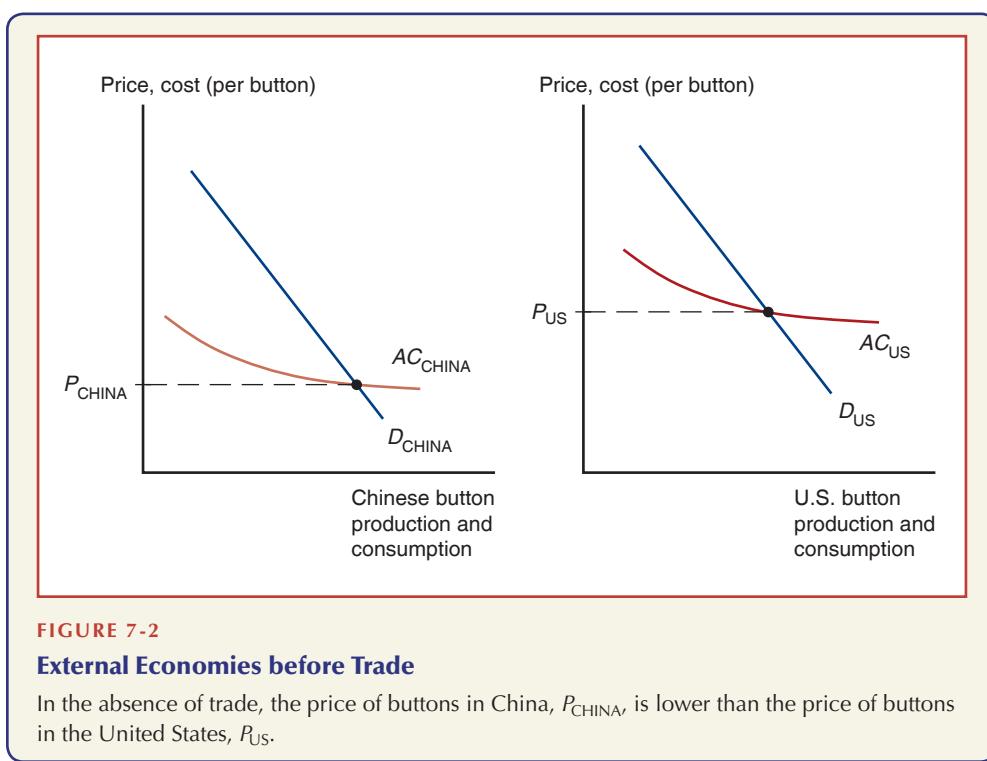
## External Economies and International Trade

External economies drive a lot of trade both within and between countries. For example, New York exports financial services to the rest of the United States, largely because external economies in the investment industry have led to a concentration of financial firms in Manhattan. Similarly, Britain exports financial services to the rest of Europe, largely because those same external economies have led to a concentration of financial firms in London. But what are the implications of this kind of trade? We'll look first at the effects of trade on output and prices, then at the determinants of the pattern of trade, and finally at the effects of trade on welfare.

### External Economies, Output, and Prices

Imagine, for a moment, we live in a world in which it is impossible to trade buttons across national borders. Assume, also, there are just two countries in this world: China and the United States. Finally, assume button production is subject to external economies of scale, which lead to a forward-falling supply curve for buttons in each country. (As the “Holding the World Together” box shows, this is actually true of the button industry.)

In that case, equilibrium in the world button industry would look like the situation shown in Figure 7-2.<sup>3</sup> In both China and the United States, equilibrium prices and output would be at the point where the domestic supply curve intersects the domestic



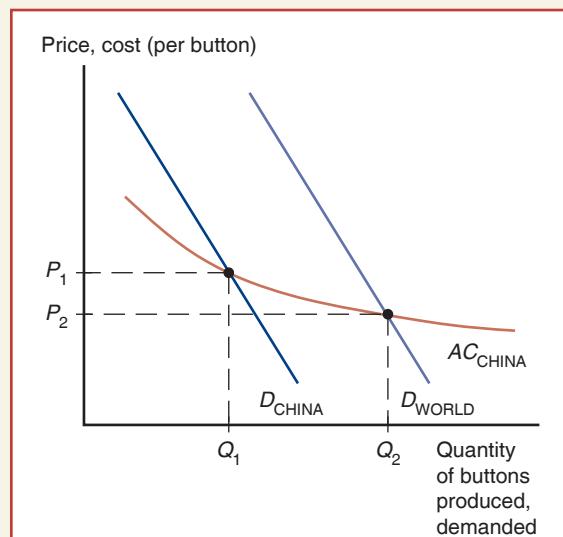
**FIGURE 7-2**  
**External Economies before Trade**

In the absence of trade, the price of buttons in China,  $P_{CHINA}$ , is lower than the price of buttons in the United States,  $P_{US}$ .

<sup>3</sup>In this exposition, we focus for simplicity on *partial equilibrium* in the market for buttons rather than on general equilibrium in the economy as a whole. It is possible, but much more complicated, to carry out the same analysis in terms of general equilibrium.

**FIGURE 7-3****Trade and Prices**

When trade is opened, China ends up producing buttons for the world market, which consists both of its own domestic market and of the U.S. market. Output rises from  $Q_1$  to  $Q_2$ , leading to a fall in the price of buttons from  $P_1$  to  $P_2$ , which is lower than the price of buttons in either country before trade.



demand curve. In the case shown in Figure 7-2, Chinese button prices in the absence of trade would be lower than U.S. button prices.

Now suppose we open up the potential for trade in buttons. What will happen?

It seems clear that the Chinese button industry will expand while the U.S. button industry will contract. And this process will feed on itself: As the Chinese industry's output rises, its costs will fall further; as the U.S. industry's output falls, its costs will rise. In the end, we can expect all button production to be concentrated in China.

The effects of this concentration are illustrated in Figure 7-3. Before the opening of trade, China supplied only its own domestic button market. After trade, it supplies the world market, producing buttons for both Chinese and U.S. consumers.

Notice the effects of this concentration of production on prices. Because China's supply curve is forward-falling, increased production as a result of trade leads to a button price that is lower than the price before trade. And bear in mind that Chinese button prices were lower than American button prices before trade. What this tells us is that trade leads to button prices that are lower than the prices in *either* country before trade.

This is very different from the implications of models without increasing returns. In the standard trade model, as developed in Chapter 6, relative prices converge as a result of trade. If cloth is relatively cheap in Home and relatively expensive in Foreign before trade opens, the effect of trade will be to raise cloth prices in Home and reduce them in Foreign. In our button example, by contrast, the effect of trade is to reduce prices everywhere. The reason for this difference is that when there are external economies of scale, international trade makes it possible to concentrate world production in a single location and therefore to reduce costs by reaping the benefits of even stronger external economies.

### External Economies and the Pattern of Trade

In our example of world trade in buttons, we simply assumed the Chinese industry started out with lower production costs than the American industry. What might lead to such an initial advantage?

One possibility is comparative advantage—underlying differences in technology and resources. For example, there's a good reason why Silicon Valley is in California

rather than in Mexico. High-technology industries require a highly skilled workforce, and such a workforce is much easier to find in the United States, where 40 percent of the working-age population is college-educated, than in Mexico, where the number is below 16 percent. Similarly, there's a good reason why world button production is concentrated in China rather than in Germany. Button production is a labor-intensive industry, which is best conducted in a country where the average manufacturing worker earns around \$5 an hour rather than in a country where hourly compensation is among the highest in the world.

However, in industries characterized by external economies of scale, comparative advantage usually provides only a partial explanation of the pattern of trade. It was probably inevitable that most of the world's buttons would be made in a relatively low-wage country, but it's not clear that this country necessarily had to be China, and it certainly wasn't necessary that production be concentrated in any particular location within China.

So what does determine the pattern of specialization and trade in industries with external economies of scale? The answer, often, is historical contingency: Something gives a particular location an initial advantage in a particular industry, and this advantage gets "locked in" by external economies of scale even after the circumstances that created the initial advantage are no longer relevant. The financial centers in London and New York are clear examples. London became Europe's dominant financial center in the 19th century, when Britain was the world's leading economy and the center of a world-spanning empire. It has retained that role even though the empire is long gone and modern Britain is only a middle-sized economic power. New York became America's financial center thanks to the Erie Canal, which made it the nation's leading port. It has retained that role even though the canal currently is used mainly by recreational boats.

Often sheer accident plays a key role in creating an industrial concentration. Geographers like to tell the tale of how a tufted bedspread, crafted as a wedding gift by a 19th-century teenager, gave rise to the cluster of carpet manufacturers around Dalton, Georgia. Silicon Valley's existence may owe a lot to the fact that a couple of Stanford graduates named Hewlett and Packard decided to start a business in a garage in that area. Bangalore might not be what it is today if vagaries of local politics had not led Texas Instruments to choose, back in 1984, to locate an investment project there rather than in another Indian city.

One consequence of the role of history in determining industrial location is that industries aren't always located in the "right" place: Once a country has established an advantage in an industry, it may retain that advantage even if some other country could potentially produce the goods more cheaply.

Figure 7-4, which shows the cost of producing buttons as a function of the number of buttons produced annually, illustrates this point. Two countries are shown: China and Vietnam. The Chinese cost of producing a button is shown as  $AC_{CHINA}$ , the Vietnamese cost as  $AC_{VIETNAM}$ .  $D_{WORLD}$  represents the world demand for buttons, which we assume can be satisfied either by China or by Vietnam.

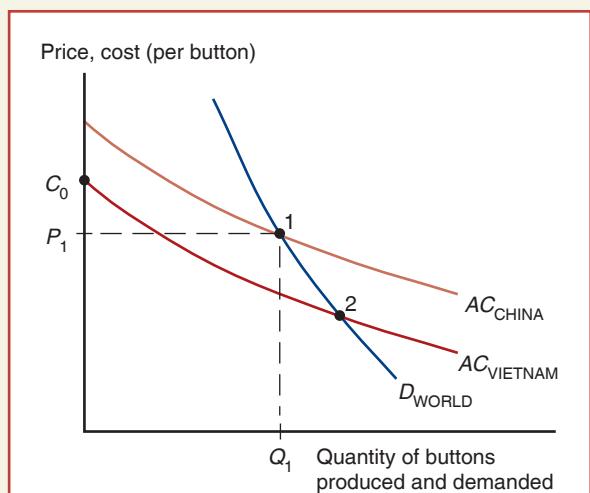
Suppose the economies of scale in button production are entirely external to firms. Since there are no economies of scale at the level of the firm, the button industry in each country consists of many small, perfectly competitive firms. Competition therefore drives the price of buttons down to its average cost.

We assume the Vietnamese cost curve lies below the Chinese curve because, say, Vietnamese wages are lower than Chinese wages. This means that at any given level of production, Vietnam could manufacture buttons more cheaply than China. One might hope that this would always imply that Vietnam will in fact supply the world market. Unfortunately, this need not be the case. Suppose China, for historical reasons, establishes its button industry first. Then, initially, world button equilibrium will be

**FIGURE 7-4**

### The Importance of Established Advantage

The average cost curve for Vietnam,  $AC_{VIETNAM}$ , lies below the average cost curve for China,  $AC_{CHINA}$ . Thus Vietnam could potentially supply the world market more cheaply than China. If the Chinese industry gets established first, however, it may be able to sell buttons at the price  $P_1$ , which is below the cost  $C_0$  that an individual Vietnamese firm would face if it began production on its own. So a pattern of specialization established by historical accident may persist even when new producers could potentially have lower costs.



established at point 1 in Figure 7-4, with Chinese production of  $Q_1$  units per year and a price of  $P_1$ . Now introduce the possibility of Vietnamese production. If Vietnam could take over the world market, the equilibrium would move to point 2. However, if there is no initial Vietnamese production ( $Q = 0$ ), any individual Vietnamese firm considering manufacture of buttons will face a cost of production of  $C_0$ . As we have drawn it, this cost is above the price at which the established Chinese industry can produce buttons. So although the Vietnamese industry could potentially make buttons more cheaply than China's industry, China's head start enables it to hold on to the industry.

As this example shows, external economies potentially give a strong role to historical accident in determining who produces what, and may allow established patterns of specialization to persist even when they run counter to comparative advantage.

### Trade and Welfare with External Economies

In general, we can presume that external economies of scale lead to gains from trade over and above those from comparative advantage. The world is more efficient and thus richer because international trade allows nations to specialize in different industries and thus reap the gains from external economies as well as from comparative advantage.

However, there are a few possible qualifications to this presumption. As we saw in Figure 7-4, the importance of established advantage means that there is no guarantee that the right country will produce a good subject to external economies. In fact, it is possible that trade based on external economies may actually leave a country worse off than it would have been in the absence of trade.

An example of how a country can actually be worse off with trade than without is shown in Figure 7-5. In this example, we imagine that Thailand and Switzerland could both manufacture watches, that Thailand could make them more cheaply, but that Switzerland has gotten there first.  $D_{WORLD}$  is the world demand for watches, and, given that Switzerland produces the watches, the equilibrium is at point 1. However, we now add to the figure the Thai demand for watches,  $D_{THAI}$ . If no trade in watches were allowed and Thailand were forced to be self-sufficient, then the Thai equilibrium would be at point 2. Because of its lower average cost curve, the price of Thai-made watches at point 2,  $P_2$ , is actually lower than the price of Swiss-made watches at point 1,  $P_1$ .

## HOLDING THE WORLD TOGETHER

If you are reading this while fully clothed, the odds are that crucial parts of your outfit—specifically, the parts that protect you from a wardrobe malfunction—came from the Chinese town of Qiaotou, which produces 60 percent of the world's buttons and a large proportion of its zippers.

The Qiaotou fastener industry fits the classic pattern of geographical concentration driven by external economies of scale. The industry's origins lie in historical accident: In 1980, three brothers spotted some discarded buttons in the street, retrieved and sold them, and then realized there was money to be made in the button business. There clearly aren't strong internal economies of scale: The town's button and zipper production is carried out by hundreds of small, family-owned firms. Yet there are obviously advantages to each of these small producers in operating in close proximity to the others.

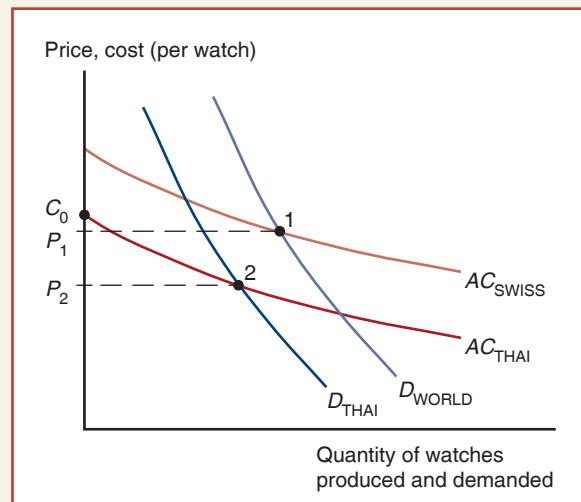
Qiaotou isn't unique. As a fascinating article on the town's industry<sup>4</sup> put it, in China,

many small towns, not even worthy of a speck on most maps, have also become world-beaters by focusing on labour-intensive niches. . . . Start at the toothbrush town of Hang Ji, pass the tie mecca of Sheng Zhou, head east to the home of cheap cigarette lighters in Zhang Qi, slip down the coast to the giant shoe factories of Wen Ling, then move back inland to Yiwu, which not only makes more socks than anywhere else on earth, but also sells almost everything under the sun.

At a broad level, China's role as a huge exporter of labor-intensive products reflects comparative advantage: China is clearly labor-abundant compared with advanced economies. Many of those labor-intensive goods, however, are produced by highly localized industries, which benefit strongly from external economies of scale.

**FIGURE 7-5**  
**External Economies and Losses from Trade**

When there are external economies, trade can potentially leave a country worse off than it would be in the absence of trade. In this example, Thailand imports watches from Switzerland, which is able to supply the world market ( $D_{WORLD}$ ) at a price ( $P_1$ ) low enough to block entry by Thai producers, who must initially produce the watches at cost  $C_0$ . Yet if Thailand were to block all trade in watches, it would be able to supply its domestic market ( $D_{THAI}$ ) at the lower price,  $P_2$ .



<sup>4</sup>"The Tiger's Teeth," *The Guardian*, May 25, 2005.

We have presented a situation in which the price of a good that Thailand imports would actually be lower if there were no trade and the country were forced to produce the good for itself. Clearly in this situation, trade leaves the country worse off than it would be in the absence of trade.

There is an incentive in this case for Thailand to protect its potential watch industry from foreign competition. Before concluding that this justifies protectionism, however, we should note that in practice, identifying cases like that shown in Figure 7-5 is far from easy. Indeed, as we will emphasize in Chapters 10 and 11, the difficulty of identifying external economies in practice is one of the main arguments against activist government policies toward trade.

It is also worth pointing out that while external economies can sometimes lead to disadvantageous patterns of specialization and trade, it's virtually certain that it is still to the benefit of the *world* economy to take advantage of the gains from concentrating industries. Canada might be better off if Silicon Valley were near Toronto instead of San Francisco; Germany might be better off if the City (London's financial district, which, along with Wall Street, dominates world financial markets) could be moved to Frankfurt. But overall, it's better for the world that each of these industries be concentrated *somewhere*.

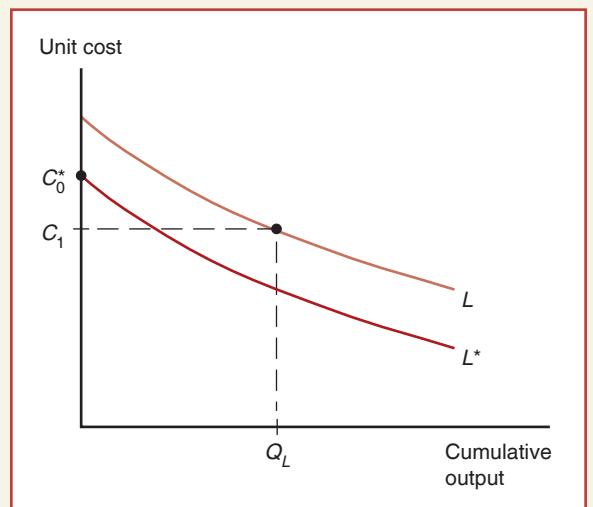
### Dynamic Increasing Returns

Some of the most important external economies probably arise from the accumulation of knowledge. When an individual firm improves its products or production techniques through experience, other firms are likely to imitate the firm and benefit from its knowledge. This spillover of knowledge gives rise to a situation in which the production costs of individual firms fall as the industry as a whole accumulates experience.

Notice that external economies arising from the accumulation of knowledge differ somewhat from the external economies considered so far, in which industry costs depend on current output. In this alternative situation, industry costs depend on experience, usually measured by the cumulative output of the industry to date. For example, the cost of producing a ton of steel might depend negatively on the total number of tons of steel produced by a country since the industry began. This kind of relationship is often summarized by a **learning curve** that relates unit cost to cumulative output. Such learning curves are illustrated in Figure 7-6. They are downward sloping because of

**FIGURE 7-6**  
**The Learning Curve**

The learning curve shows that unit cost is lower the greater the cumulative output of a country's industry to date. A country that has extensive experience in an industry ( $L$ ) may have a lower unit cost than a country with little or no experience, even if that second country's learning curve ( $L^*$ ) is lower—for example, because of lower wages.



the effect on costs of the experience gained through production. When costs fall with cumulative production over time rather than with the current rate of production, this is referred to as a case of **dynamic increasing returns**.

Like ordinary external economies, dynamic external economies can lock in an initial advantage or head start in an industry. In Figure 7-6, the learning curve  $L$  is that of a country that pioneered an industry, while  $L^*$  is that of a country that has lower input costs—say, lower wages—but less production experience. Provided the first country has a sufficiently large head start, the potentially lower costs of the second country may not allow the second country to enter the market. For example, suppose the first country has a cumulative output of  $Q_L$  units, giving it a unit cost of  $C_1$ , while the second country has never produced the good. Then the second country will have an initial start-up cost,  $C_0^*$ , that is higher than the current unit cost,  $C_1$ , of the established industry.

Dynamic scale economies, like external economies at a point in time, potentially justify protectionism. Suppose a country could have low enough costs to produce a good for export if it had more production experience, but given the current lack of experience, the good cannot be produced competitively. Such a country might increase its long-term welfare either by encouraging the production of the good by a subsidy or by protecting it from foreign competition until the industry can stand on its own feet. The argument for temporary protection of industries to enable them to gain experience is known as the **infant industry argument**; this argument has played an important role in debates over the role of trade policy in economic development. We will discuss the infant industry argument at greater length in Chapter 10, but for now, we simply note that situations like that illustrated in Figure 7-6 are just as hard to identify in practice as those involving nondynamic increasing returns.

## Interregional Trade and Economic Geography

External economies play an important role in shaping the pattern of international trade, but they are even more decisive in shaping the pattern of **interregional trade**—trade that takes place between regions *within* countries.

To understand the role of external economies in interregional trade, we first need to discuss the nature of regional economics—that is, how the economies of regions within a nation fit into the national economy. Studies of the location of U.S. industries suggest that more than 60 percent of U.S. workers are employed by industries whose output is nontradable even within the United States—that is, it must be supplied locally. Table 7-2 shows some examples of tradable and nontradable industries. Thus, aircraft made in Seattle are sold around the world, but the concrete used to pour foundations is produced only a few miles away. Teams of programmers in Silicon Valley create

**TABLE 7-2 Some Examples of Tradable and Nontradable Industries**

Tradable Industries	Nontradable Industries
Aircraft manufacturing	Ready-mix concrete manufacturing
Software publishing	Tax preparation services

**Source:** Antoine Gervais and J. Bradford Jensen, “The Tradability of Services: Geographic Concentration and Trade Costs,” working paper, Peterson Institute for International Economics, 2015.

applications used across America, but the accountants who help with your Form 1040 are likely to be in your city if not your neighborhood.

As you might expect, the share of nontradable industries in employment is pretty much the same across the United States. For example, restaurants employ about 5 percent of the workforce in every major U.S. city. On the other hand, tradable industries vary greatly in importance across regions. Manhattan accounts for only about 2 percent of America's total employment, but it accounts for a quarter of those employed in trading stocks and bonds and about one-seventh of employment in the advertising industry.

But what determines the location of tradable industries? In some cases, natural resources play a key role—for example, Houston is a center for the oil industry because east Texas is where the oil is. However, factors of production such as labor and capital play a less decisive role in interregional trade than in international trade, for the simple reason that such factors are highly mobile within countries. As a result, factors tend to move to where the industries are rather than the other way around. For example, California's Silicon Valley, near San Francisco, has a very highly educated labor force, with a high concentration of engineers and computer experts. That's not because California trains lots of engineers; it's because engineers move to Silicon Valley to take jobs in the region's high-tech industry.

Resources, then, play a secondary role in interregional trade. What largely drives specialization and trade, instead, is external economies. Why, for example, are so many advertising agencies located in New York? The answer is because so many *other* advertising agencies are located in New York. As one study put it,

Information sharing and information diffusion are critical to a team and an agency's success. . . . In cities like New York, agencies group in neighborhood clusters. Clusters promote localized networking, to enhance creativity; agencies share information and ideas and in doing this face-to-face contact is critical.<sup>5</sup>

In fact, the evidence suggests the external economies that support the advertising business are *very* localized: To reap the benefits of information spillovers, ad agencies need to be located within about 300 yards of each other!

But if external economies are the main reason for regional specialization and interregional trade, what explains how a particular region develops the external economies that support an industry? The answer, in general, is that accidents of history play a crucial role. As noted earlier, a century and a half ago, New York was America's most important port city because it had access to the Great Lakes via the Erie Canal. That led to New York's becoming America's financial center; it remains America's financial center today thanks to the external economies the financial industry creates for itself. Los Angeles became the center of the early film industry when films were shot outdoors and needed good weather; it remains the center of the film industry today, even though many films are shot indoors or on location.

A question you might ask is whether the forces driving interregional trade are really all that different from those driving international trade. The answer is that they are not, especially when one looks at trade between closely integrated national economies, such as those of Western Europe. Indeed, as explained in the following box, London plays a

---

<sup>5</sup>J. Vernon Henderson, "What Makes Big Cities Tick? A Look at New York," mimeo, Brown University, 2004.

role as Europe's financial capital similar to the role played by New York as America's financial capital. Indeed, there has been a growing movement among economists to model interregional and international trade, as well as such phenomena as the rise of cities, as different aspects of the same phenomenon—economic interaction across space. Such an approach is often referred to as **economic geography**.

## THE CITY AND THE STREET

Tens of trillions of dollars' worth of goods and services flow across national borders every year. What keeps these products flowing? Transportation—all those container ships and cargo aircraft—is only part of the story. Information—all the data zipping along the fiber-optic cables that run under the world's oceans—is another part of the story. But the whole enterprise also runs on money. Businesses need to raise funds and transfer them, often to players literally on the other side of the world.

Managing those kinds of financial transactions is itself an industry that requires special skills and resources, so trade in financial services—in which residents of one country pay residents of another country to do their banking, structure their deals, and so on—is a significant part of world trade. The United States is the biggest player in this field, with exports of \$136 billion in 2019. But the United Kingdom, by most measures, runs a close second.

But in a way it's misleading to talk about "Britain" or "America" exporting financial services. Britain's financial industry is very much concentrated in London, especially the financial district known as "the City." The U.S. picture is more diverse, but sophisticated finance is still concentrated in New York and especially the City's counterpart, Wall Street.

Why do the City and the Street play such a prominent role in world trade in financial services? Both established dominant roles in the distant past, when the British Empire ruled much of the world and New York had a unique advantage as the terminus of the Erie Canal. Both may benefit a bit from being located in English-speaking countries, since English remains the dominant language of international business.

Mainly, however, both London and New York derive their advantages from external economies. Financing international business requires people with a wide variety of highly specialized skills, from industry analysts to money managers, accountants to tax experts familiar with different national systems, informational technology people with the right expertise, and maybe even smart executives. Historically, the financial industry has found that these diverse skills can be brought to bear most effectively if the relevant people can easily hold face-to-face meetings—which is most easily done in existing financial centers where there already are many people with the relevant skills.

In other words, historically, if you wanted to do the kind of fancy finance that underlies globalization, you wanted to do it in New York or London.

Will London and New York retain their special roles in the years ahead? At the time of writing (2020), there were some doubts. In 2016, Britain voted to leave the European Union, which will inhibit the movement of people between London and other European cities. And in 2020, the COVID-19 pandemic led to a major shift away from face-to-face meetings toward various forms of remote interaction.

If it turns out that much of the business formerly conducted in urban high-rises can be done equally well from home offices, the great financial centers, which are in a way monuments to the power of external economies of scale, may emerge much diminished. Most observers remain skeptical—there are early indications that online interaction is losing some of its initial attractions, and management is eager to get people back in personal contact. But we'll know more in a couple of years.

**SUMMARY**

- Trade need not be the result of comparative advantage. Instead, it can result from increasing returns or economies of scale, that is, from a tendency of unit costs to be lower with larger output. Economies of scale give countries an incentive to specialize and trade even in the absence of differences in resources or technology between countries. Economies of scale can be internal (depending on the size of the firm) or external (depending on the size of the industry).
- Economies of scale can lead to a breakdown of perfect competition, unless they take the form of external economies, which occur at the level of the industry instead of the firm.
- External economies give an important role to history and accident in determining the pattern of international trade. When external economies are important, a country starting with a large advantage may retain that advantage even if another country could potentially produce the same goods more cheaply. When external economies are important, countries can conceivably lose from trade.

**KEY TERMS**

average cost of production, p. 183	forward-falling supply curve, p. 183	labor market pooling, p. 180
dynamic increasing returns, p. 190	infant industry argument, p. 190	learning curve, p. 189
economic geography, p. 192	internal economies of scale, p. 179	specialized suppliers, p. 180
economies of scale, p. 178	interregional trade, p. 190	
external economies of scale, p. 179	knowledge spillovers, p. 180	

**PROBLEMS**

1. For each of the following examples, explain whether it is a case of external or internal economies of scale:
  - a. Almost all Hermes products are manufactured in France.
  - b. Apple has its displays mainly made in Japan, and some made in Korea.
  - c. All Toyota Land Cruiser and Prius sold in the United States market are assembled in Japan.
  - d. Gerber used to be an American-owned company, now a subsidiary of the Nestlé Group, headquartered in Fremont, Michigan.
2. It is often argued that the existence of increasing returns is a source of conflict between countries, since each country is better off if it can increase its production in those industries characterized by economies of scale. Evaluate this view in terms of the external economy model.
3. Give two examples of products that are traded on international markets for which there are dynamic increasing returns. In each of your examples, show how innovation and learning-by-doing are important to the dynamic increasing returns in the industry.

4. Evaluate the relative importance of economies of scale and comparative advantage in causing the following:
  - a. Most of the world's gold is produced in South Africa or Tanzania.
  - b. Half of the world's production of uranium comes from just ten mines in six countries.
  - c. Most beef meat comes from either Australia or Argentina.
  - d. Most Champagne comes from France.
  - e. Much of the world's coffee beans come from Brazil.
5. Consider a situation similar to that in Figure 7-3, in which two countries that can produce a good are subject to forward-falling supply curves. In this case, however, suppose the two countries have the same costs, so that their supply curves are identical.
  - a. What would you expect to be the pattern of international specialization and trade? What would determine who produces the good?
  - b. What are the *benefits* of international trade in this case? Do they accrue only to the country that gets the industry?
6. It is fairly common for an industrial cluster to break up and for production to move to locations with lower wages when the technology of the industry is no longer rapidly improving—when it is no longer essential to have the absolutely most modern machinery, when the need for highly skilled workers has declined, and when being at the cutting edge of innovation conveys only a small advantage. Explain this tendency of industrial clusters to break up in terms of the theory of external economies.
7. Recently, a growing labor shortage has been causing Chinese wages to rise. If this trend continues, what would you expect to see happen to external economy industries currently dominated by China? Consider, in particular, the situation illustrated in Figure 7-4. How would change take place?
8. In our discussion of labor market pooling, we stressed the advantages of having two firms in the same location: If one firm is expanding while the other is contracting, it's to the advantage of both workers and firms that they be able to draw on a single labor pool. But it might happen that both firms want to expand or contract at the same time. Does this constitute an argument against geographical concentration? (Think through the numerical example carefully.)
9. As we saw in the text, the Chinese town of Qiaotou produces 60 percent of the world's buttons. One problem is that Qiaotou is a relatively small village and its production is carried out by small, family-owned businesses. What does this tell you about the comparative advantage versus the external economies in the production of buttons?

## FURTHER READINGS

Frank Graham. "Some Aspects of Protection Further Considered." *Quarterly Journal of Economics* 37 (1923), pp. 199–227. An early warning that international trade may be harmful in the presence of external economies of scale.

Li & Fung Research Centre. *Industrial Cluster Series*, 2006–2010. Li & Fung, a Hong Kong-based trading group, has published a series of reports on rising industrial concentrations in Chinese manufacturing.

Staffan Burenstam Linder. *An Essay on Trade and Transformation*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1961. An early and influential statement of the view that trade in manufactures among advanced countries mainly reflects forces other than comparative advantage.

- Michael Porter. *The Competitive Advantage of Nations*. New York: Free Press, 1990. A best-selling book that explains national export success as the result of self-reinforcing industrial clusters, that is, external economies.
- Annalee Saxenian. *Regional Advantage*. Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 1994. A fascinating comparison of two high-technology industrial districts, California's Silicon Valley and Boston's Route 128.
- World Bank. *World Development Report 2009*. A huge survey of the evidence on economic geography, with extensive discussion of industrial clusters in China and other emerging economies.



# CHAPTER 8

## FIRMS IN THE GLOBAL ECONOMY: EXPORT AND FOREIGN SOURCING DECISIONS AND MULTINATIONAL ENTERPRISES

In this chapter, we continue to explore how economies of scale generate incentives for international specialization and trade. We now focus on economies of scale that are internal to the firm. As mentioned in Chapter 7, this form of increasing returns leads to a market structure that features imperfect competition.

**Internal economies of scale** imply that a firm's average cost of production decreases the more output it produces. Perfect competition that drives the price of a good down to marginal cost would imply losses for those firms because they would not be able to recover the higher costs incurred from producing the initial units of output.<sup>1</sup> As a result, perfect competition would force those firms out of the market, and this process would continue until an equilibrium featuring imperfect competition is attained.

Modeling imperfect competition means that we will explicitly consider the behavior of individual firms. This will allow us to introduce two additional characteristics of firms that are prevalent in the real world: (1) In most sectors, firms produce goods that are differentiated from one another. In the case of certain goods (such as bottled water and staples), those differences across products may be small, while in others (such as cars and cell phones), the differences are much more significant. (2) Performance measures (such as size and profits) vary widely across firms. We will incorporate this first characteristic (product differentiation) into our analysis throughout this chapter. To ease exposition and build intuition, we will initially consider the case when there are no performance differences between firms. We will thus see how internal economies of scale and product differentiation combine to generate some new sources of gains of trade via economic integration.

---

<sup>1</sup>Whenever average cost is decreasing, the cost of producing one extra unit of output (marginal cost) is lower than the average cost of production (since that average includes the cost of those initial units that were produced at higher unit costs).

We will then introduce differences across firms so that we can analyze how firms respond differently to international forces. We will see how economic integration generates both winners and losers among different types of firms. The better-performing firms thrive and expand, while the worse-performing firms contract. This generates one additional source of gain from trade: As production is concentrated toward better-performing firms, the overall efficiency of the industry improves. Lastly, we will study why those better-performing firms have a greater incentive to engage in the global economy, either by exporting, by sourcing some of their intermediate production processes abroad, or by becoming multinationals and operating in multiple countries.

### LEARNING GOALS

After reading this chapter, you will be able to:

- Understand how internal economies of scale and product differentiation lead to international trade and intra-industry trade.
- Recognize the new types of welfare gains from intra-industry trade.
- Describe how economic integration can lead to both winners and losers among firms in the same industry.
- Explain why economists believe that “dumping” should not be singled out as an unfair trade practice and why the enforcement of antidumping laws leads to protectionism.
- Explain why firms that engage in the global economy (exporters, outsourcers, multinationals) are substantially larger and perform better than firms that do not interact with foreign markets.
- Understand theories that explain the existence of multinationals and the motivation for foreign direct investment across economies.

## The Theory of Imperfect Competition

In a perfectly competitive market—a market in which there are many buyers and sellers, none of whom represents a large part of the market—firms are *price takers*. That is, they are sellers of products who believe they can sell as much as they like at the current price but cannot influence the price they receive for their product. For example, a wheat farmer can sell as much wheat as she likes without worrying that if she tries to sell more wheat, she will depress the market price. The reason she need not worry about the effect of her sales on prices is that any individual wheat grower represents only a tiny fraction of the world market.

When only a few firms produce a good, however, the situation is different. To take perhaps the most dramatic example, the aircraft manufacturing giant Boeing shares the market for large jet aircraft with only one major rival, the European firm Airbus. As a result, Boeing knows that if it produces more aircraft, it will have a significant effect on the total supply of planes in the world and will therefore significantly drive down the price of airplanes. Or to put it another way, Boeing knows that if it wants to sell more airplanes, it can do so only by significantly reducing its price. In **imperfect competition**, then, firms are aware that they can influence the prices of their products and that they can sell more only by reducing their price. This situation occurs in one

of two ways: when there are only a few major producers of a particular good, or when each firm produces a good that is differentiated (in the eyes of the consumer) from that of rival firms. As we mentioned in the introduction, this type of competition is an inevitable outcome when there are economies of scale at the level of the firm: The number of surviving firms is forced down to a small number and/or firms must develop products that are clearly differentiated from those produced by their rivals. Under these circumstances, each firm views itself as a *price setter*, choosing the price of its product, rather than a price taker.

When firms are not price takers, it is necessary to develop additional tools to describe how prices and outputs are determined. The simplest imperfectly competitive market structure to examine is that of a **pure monopoly**, a market in which a firm faces no competition; the tools we develop for this structure can then be used to examine more complex market structures.

### Monopoly: A Brief Review

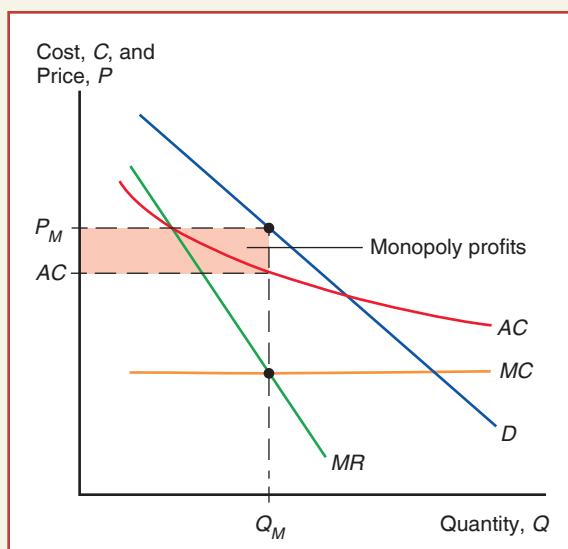
Figure 8-1 shows the position of a single monopolistic firm. The firm faces a downward-sloping demand curve, shown in the figure as  $D$ . The downward slope of  $D$  indicates that the firm can sell more units of output only if the price of the output falls. As you may recall from basic microeconomics, a **marginal revenue** curve corresponds to the demand curve. Marginal revenue is the extra or marginal revenue the firm gains from selling an additional unit. Marginal revenue for a monopolist is always less than the price because to sell an additional unit, the firm must lower the price of *all* units (not just the marginal one). Thus, for a monopolist, the marginal revenue curve,  $MR$ , always lies below the demand curve.

**Marginal Revenue and Price** For our analysis of the monopolistic competition model later in this section, it is important for us to determine the relationship between the price the monopolist receives per unit and marginal revenue. Marginal revenue is always less than the price—but how much less? The relationship between marginal revenue and

FIGURE 8-1

#### Monopolistic Pricing and Production Decisions

A monopolistic firm chooses an output at which marginal revenue, the increase in revenue from selling an additional unit, equals marginal cost, the cost of producing an additional unit. This profit-maximizing output is shown as  $Q_M$ ; the price at which this output is demanded is  $P_M$ . The marginal revenue curve  $MR$  lies below the demand curve  $D$  because, for a monopoly, marginal revenue is always less than the price. The monopoly's profits are equal to the area of the shaded rectangle, the difference between price and average cost times the amount of output sold.



price depends on two things. First, it depends on how much output the firm is already selling: A firm not selling very many units will not lose much by cutting the price it receives on those units. Second, the gap between price and marginal revenue depends on the slope of the demand curve, which tells us how much the monopolist has to cut his price to sell one more unit of output. If the curve is very flat, then the monopolist can sell an additional unit with only a small price cut. As a result, he will not have to lower the price by very much on the units he would otherwise have sold, so marginal revenue will be close to the price per unit. On the other hand, if the demand curve is very steep, selling an additional unit will require a large price cut, implying that marginal revenue will be much less than the price.

We can be more specific about the relationship between price and marginal revenue if we assume that the demand curve the firm faces is a straight line. When this is the case, the dependence of the monopolist's total sales on the price it charges can be represented by an equation of the form

$$Q = A - B \times P, \quad (8-1)$$

where  $Q$  is the number of units the firm sells,  $P$  is the price it charges per unit, and  $A$  and  $B$  are constants. We show in the appendix to this chapter that in this case, marginal revenue is

$$\text{Marginal revenue} = MR = P - Q/B, \quad (8-2)$$

implying that

$$P - MR = Q/B.$$

Equation (8-2) reveals that the gap between price and marginal revenue depends on the initial sales,  $Q$ , of the firm and the slope parameter,  $B$ , of its demand curve. If sales quantity,  $Q$ , is higher, marginal revenue is lower because the decrease in price required to sell a greater quantity costs the firm more. In other words, the greater is  $B$ , the more sales fall for any given increase in price and the closer the marginal revenue is to the price of the good. Equation (8-2) is crucial for our analysis of the monopolistic competition model of trade in the upcoming section.

**Average and Marginal Costs** Returning to Figure 8-1,  $AC$  represents the firm's **average cost** of production, that is, its total cost divided by its output. The downward slope reflects our assumption that there are economies of scale, so the larger the firm's output, the lower its costs per unit.  $MC$  represents the firm's **marginal cost** (the amount it costs the firm to produce one extra unit). In the figure, we assumed the firm's marginal cost is constant (the marginal cost curve is flat). The economies of scale must then come from a fixed cost (unrelated to the scale of production). This fixed cost pushes the average cost above the constant marginal cost of production, though the difference between the two becomes smaller and smaller as the fixed cost is spread over an increasing number of output units.

If we denote  $c$  as the firm's marginal cost and  $F$  as the fixed cost, then we can write the firm's total cost ( $C$ ) as

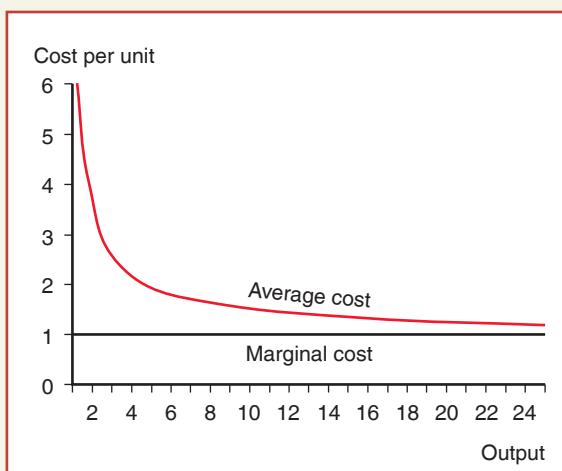
$$C = F + c \times Q, \quad (8-3)$$

where  $Q$  is once again the firm's output. Given this linear cost function, the firm's average cost is

$$AC = C/Q = (F/Q) + c. \quad (8-4)$$

**FIGURE 8-2****Average versus Marginal Cost**

This figure illustrates the average and marginal costs corresponding to the total cost function  $C = 5 + x$ . Marginal cost is always 1; average cost declines as output rises.



As we have discussed, this average cost is always greater than the marginal cost  $c$  and declines with output produced  $Q$ .

If, for example,  $F = 5$  and  $c = 1$ , the average cost of producing 10 units is  $(5/10) + 1 = 1.5$ , and the average cost of producing 25 units is  $(5/25) + 1 = 1.2$ . These numbers may look familiar because they were used to construct Table 7-1 in Chapter 7. (However, in this case, we assume a unit wage cost for the labor input, and that the technology now applies to a firm instead of an industry.) The marginal and average cost curves for this specific numeric example are plotted in Figure 8-2. Average cost approaches infinity at zero output and approaches marginal cost at very large output.

The profit-maximizing output of a monopolist is that at which marginal revenue (the revenue gained from selling an extra unit) equals marginal cost (the cost of producing an extra unit), that is, at the intersection of the  $MC$  and  $MR$  curves. In Figure 8-1, we can see that the price at which the profit-maximizing output  $Q_M$  is demanded is  $P_M$ , which is greater than average cost. When  $P > AC$ , the monopolist is earning some monopoly profits, as indicated by the shaded box.<sup>2</sup>

### Monopolistic Competition

Monopoly profits rarely go uncontested. A firm making high profits normally attracts competitors. Thus, situations of pure monopoly are rare in practice. In most cases, competitors do not sell the same products—either because they cannot (for legal or technological reasons) or because they would rather carve out their own product niche. This leads to a market where competitors sell **differentiated products**. Thus, even when there are many competitors, **product differentiation** allows firms to remain price setters for their own individual product “variety” or brand. However, more competition implies lower sales for any given firm at any chosen price: Each firm’s demand curve

<sup>2</sup>The economic definition of *profits* is not the same as that used in conventional accounting, where any revenue over and above labor and material costs is called a profit. A firm that earns a rate of return on its capital less than what that capital could have earned in other industries is not making profits; from an economic point of view, the normal rate of return on capital represents part of the firm’s costs, and only returns over and above that normal rate of return represent profits.

shifts in when there are more competitors (we will model this more explicitly in the following sections). Lower demand, in turn, translates into lower profits.

The incentive for additional new competitors persists so long as such entry is profitable. Once competition reaches a certain level, additional entry would no longer be profitable, and a long-run equilibrium is attained. In some cases, this occurs when there are only a small number of competing firms in the market (such as the market for large jet aircraft). This leads to a market structure called **oligopoly**. In this situation, a single firm has enough market share to influence market aggregates such as total industry output and average industry price.<sup>3</sup> This in turn affects the demand conditions for the other firms. They will therefore have an incentive to adjust their prices in response to the pricing decision of the large firm and vice versa when the other firms are large, too. Thus, pricing decisions of firms are *interdependent* in an oligopoly market structure: Each firm in an oligopoly will consider the expected responses of competitors when setting their price. These responses, however, depend in turn on the competitors' expectations about the firm's behavior—and we are therefore in a complex game in which firms are trying to second-guess each other's strategies. We will briefly discuss an example of an oligopoly model with two firms in Chapter 12.

Let's focus on a much simpler case of imperfect competition known as **monopolistic competition**. This market structure arises when the equilibrium number of competing firms is large and no firm attains a substantial market share. Then, the pricing decision of any given firm will not affect market aggregates and the demand conditions for the other firms, so the pricing decisions of the firms are no longer interrelated. Each firm sets its price given those market aggregates, knowing that the response of any other individual firm would be inconsequential. We next develop such a model of monopolistic competition. We then introduce trade under this market structure in the following section.

**Assumptions of the Model** We begin by describing the demand facing a typical monopolistically competitive firm. In general, we would expect a firm to sell more, the larger the total demand for its industry's product and the higher the prices charged by its rivals. On the other hand, we would expect the firm to sell less the greater the number of firms in the industry and the higher its own price. A particular equation for the demand facing a firm that has these properties is<sup>4</sup>

$$Q = S \times [1/n - b \times (P - \bar{P})], \quad (8-5)$$

where  $Q$  is the quantity of output demanded,  $S$  is the total output of the industry,  $n$  is the number of firms in the industry,  $b$  is a positive constant term representing the responsiveness of a firm's sales to its price,  $P$  is the price charged by the firm itself, and  $\bar{P}$  is the average price charged by its competitors. Equation (8-5) may be given the following intuitive justification: If all firms charge the same price, each will have a market share  $1/n$ . A firm charging more than the average of other firms will have a smaller market share, whereas a firm charging less will have a larger share.<sup>5</sup>

---

<sup>3</sup>This typically occurs when the fixed cost  $F$  is high relative to demand conditions: Each firm must operate at a large scale in order to bring average cost down and be profitable, and the market is not big enough to support many such large firms.

<sup>4</sup>Equation (8-5) can be derived from a model in which consumers have different preferences and firms produce varieties tailored to particular segments of the market. See Stephen Salop, "Monopolistic Competition with Outside Goods," *Bell Journal of Economics* 10 (1979), pp. 141–156, for a development of this approach.

<sup>5</sup>Equation (8-5) may be rewritten as  $Q = (S/n) - S \times b \times (P - \bar{P})$ . If  $P = \bar{P}$ , this equation reduces to  $Q = S/n$ . If  $P < \bar{P}$ ,  $Q > S/n$ , while if  $P > \bar{P}$ ,  $Q < S/n$ .

It is helpful to assume that total industry output  $S$  is unaffected by the average price  $\bar{P}$  charged by firms in the industry. That is, we assume that firms can gain customers only at each other's expense. This is an unrealistic assumption, but it simplifies the analysis and helps us focus on the competition among firms. In particular, it means that  $S$  is a measure of the size of the market and that if all firms charge the same price, each sells  $S/n$  units.<sup>6</sup>

Next, we turn to the costs of a typical firm. Here we simply assume that total and average costs of a typical firm are described by equations (8-3) and (8-4). Note that in this initial model, we assume all firms are *symmetric* even though they produce differentiated products: They all face the same demand curve (8-5) and have the same cost function (8-3). We will relax this assumption in the next section.

**Market Equilibrium** When the individual firms are symmetric, the state of the industry can be described without describing any of the features of individual firms: All we really need to know to describe the industry is how many firms there are and what price the typical firm charges. To analyze the industry—for example, to assess the effects of international trade—we need to determine the number of firms  $n$  and the average price they charge  $\bar{P}$ . Once we have a method for determining  $n$  and  $\bar{P}$ , we can ask how they are affected by international trade.

Our method for determining  $n$  and  $\bar{P}$  involves three steps. (1) First, we derive a relationship between the number of firms and the *average cost* of a typical firm. We show that this relationship is upward sloping; that is, the more firms there are, the lower the output of each firm—and thus the higher each firm's cost per unit of output. (2) We next show the relationship between the number of firms and the price each firm charges, which must equal  $\bar{P}$  in equilibrium. We show that this relationship is downward sloping: The more firms there are, the more intense is the competition among firms, and as a result the lower the prices they charge. (3) Finally, we introduce firm entry and exit decisions based on the profits that each firm earns. When price exceeds average cost, firms earn positive profits and additional firms will enter the industry; conversely, when the price is less than average cost, profits are negative and those losses induce some firms to exit. In the long run, this entry and exit process drives profits to zero. So the price  $\bar{P}$  set by each firm must equal the average cost from step (1).

1. *The number of firms and average cost.* As a first step toward determining  $n$  and  $\bar{P}$ , we ask how the average cost of a typical firm depends on the number of firms in the industry. Since all firms are symmetric in this model, in equilibrium they all will charge the same price. But when all firms charge the same price, so that  $P = \bar{P}$ , equation (8-5) tells us that  $Q = S/n$ ; that is, each firm's output  $Q$  is a  $1/n$  share of the total industry sales  $S$ . But we saw in equation (8-4) that average cost depends inversely on a firm's output. We therefore conclude that average cost depends on the size of the market and the number of firms in the industry:

$$AC = F/Q + c = (n \times F/S) + c. \quad (8-6)$$

Equation (8-6) tells us that other things equal, *the more firms there are in the industry, the higher is average cost*. The reason is that the more firms there are, the less each firm produces. For example, imagine an industry with total sales of 1 million widgets annually. If there are five firms in the industry, each will sell 200,000

---

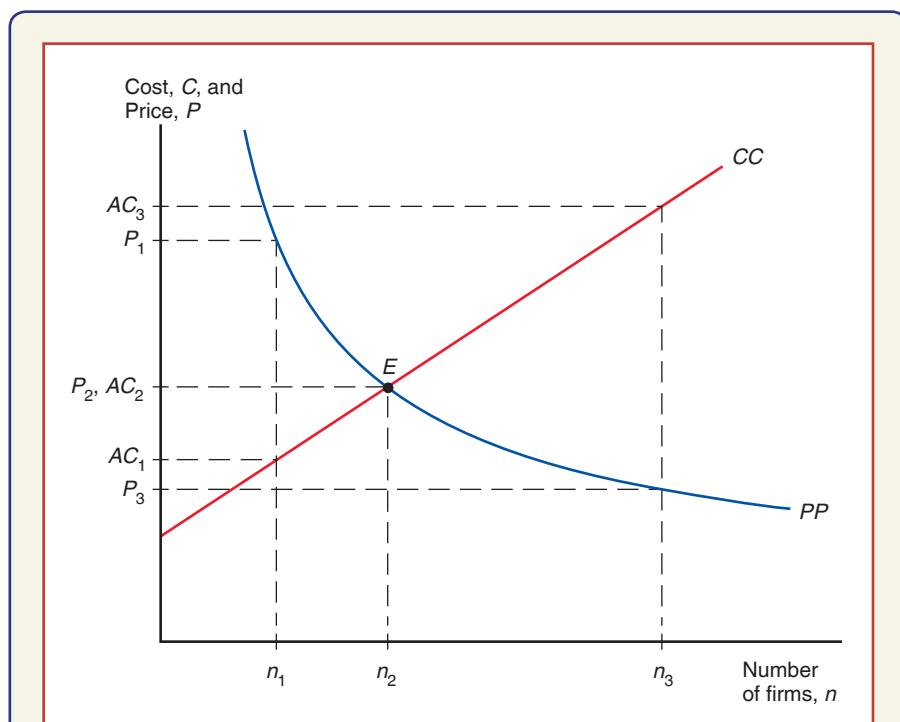
<sup>6</sup>Even if firms set different prices, the demand equation (8-5) ensures that the sum of  $Q$  over firms is always equal to total output  $S$  (because the sum of  $P - \bar{P}$  over firms must be zero).

annually. If there are 10 firms, each will sell only 100,000, and therefore each firm will have higher average cost. The upward-sloping relationship between  $n$  and average cost is shown as  $CC$  in Figure 8-3.

2. *The number of firms and the price.* Meanwhile, the price the typical firm charges also depends on the number of firms in the industry. In general, we would expect that the more firms there are, the more intense will be the competition among them, and hence the lower the price. This turns out to be true in this model, but proving it takes a moment. The basic trick is to show that each firm faces a straight-line demand curve of the form we showed in equation (8-1), and then to use equation (8-2) to determine prices.

First recall that in the monopolistic competition model, firms are assumed to take each other's prices as given; that is, each firm ignores the possibility that if it changes its price, other firms will also change theirs. If each firm treats  $\bar{P}$  as given, we can rewrite the demand curve (8-5) in the form

$$Q = [(S/n) + S \times b \times \bar{P}] - S \times b \times P, \quad (8-7)$$



**FIGURE 8-3**  
**Equilibrium in a Monopolistically Competitive Market**

The number of firms in a monopolistically competitive market, and the prices they charge, are determined by two relationships. On one side, the more firms there are, the more intensely they compete, and hence the lower is the industry price. This relationship is represented by  $PP$ . On the other side, the more firms there are, the less each firm sells and therefore the higher is the industry's average cost. This relationship is represented by  $CC$ . If price exceeds average cost (that is, if the  $PP$  curve is above the  $CC$  curve), the industry will be making profits and additional firms will enter the industry; if price is less than average cost, the industry will be incurring losses and firms will leave the industry. The equilibrium price and number of firms occurs when price equals average cost, at the intersection of  $PP$  and  $CC$ .

where  $b$  is the parameter in equation (8-5) that measured the sensitivity of each firm's market share to the price it charges. Now this equation is in the same form as (8-1), with  $(S/n) + S \times b \times \bar{P}$  in place of the constant term  $A$  and  $S \times b$  in place of the slope coefficient  $B$ . If we plug these values back into the formula for marginal revenue, (8-2), we obtain the marginal revenue for a typical firm of

$$MR = P - Q/(S \times b). \quad (8-8)$$

Profit-maximizing firms will set marginal revenue equal to their marginal cost,  $c$ , so that

$$MR = P - Q/(S \times b) = c,$$

which can be rearranged to give the following equation for the price charged by a typical firm:

$$P = c + Q/(S \times b). \quad (8-9)$$

We have already noted, however, that if all firms charge the same price, each will sell an amount  $Q = S/n$ . Plugging this back into (8-9) gives us a relationship between the number of firms and the price each firm charges:

$$P = c + 1/(b \times n). \quad (8-10)$$

Equation (8-10) says algebraically that *the more firms there are in an industry, the lower the price each firm will charge*. This is because each firm's **markup over marginal cost**,  $P - c = 1/(b \times n)$ , decreases with the number of competing firms. Equation (8-10) is shown in Figure 8-3 as the downward-sloping curve  $PP$ .

3. *The equilibrium number of firms.* Let us now ask what Figure 8-3 means. We have summarized an industry by two curves. The downward-sloping curve  $PP$  shows that the more firms there are in the industry, the lower the price each firm will charge: The more firms there are, the more competition each firm faces. The upward-sloping curve  $CC$  tells us that the more firms there are in the industry, the higher the average cost of each firm: If the number of firms increases, each firm will sell less, so firms will not be able to move as far down their average cost curve.

The two schedules intersect at point  $E$ , corresponding to the number of firms  $n_2$ . The significance of  $n_2$  is that it is the *zero-profit* number of firms in the industry. When there are  $n_2$  firms in the industry, their profit-maximizing price is  $P_2$ , which is exactly equal to their average cost  $AC_2$ . This is the long-run monopolistic competition equilibrium that we previously described.

To see why, suppose that  $n$  were less than  $n_2$ , say  $n_1$ . Then the price charged by firms would be  $P_1$ , while their average cost would be only  $AC_1$ . Thus, firms would be earning positive profits.<sup>7</sup> Conversely, suppose that  $n$  were greater than  $n_2$ , say  $n_3$ . Then firms would charge only the price  $P_3$ , while their average cost would be  $AC_3$ . Firms would be suffering losses (profit is negative). Over time, firms will enter an industry that is

---

<sup>7</sup>Recall that this represents *economic* profit, which nets out all fixed and capital costs—as opposed to *accounting* profit (which does not).

profitable and exit one in which they lose money. The number of firms will rise over time if it is less than  $n_2$ , fall if it is greater, leading to the equilibrium price  $P_2$  with  $n_2$  firms.<sup>8</sup>

We have just developed a model of a monopolistically competitive industry in which we can determine the equilibrium number of firms and the average price that firms charge. We now use this model to derive some important conclusions about the role of economies of scale in international trade.

## Monopolistic Competition and Trade

Underlying the application of the monopolistic competition model to trade is the idea that trade increases market size. In industries where there are economies of scale, both the variety of goods that a country can produce and the scale of its production are constrained by the size of the market. By trading with each other, and therefore forming an integrated world market that is bigger than any individual national market, nations are able to loosen these constraints. Each country can thus specialize in producing a narrower range of products than it would in the absence of trade; yet by buying from other countries the goods that it does not make, each nation can simultaneously increase the variety of goods available to its consumers. As a result, trade offers an opportunity for mutual gain even when countries do not differ in their resources or technology.

Suppose, for example, there are two countries, each with an annual market for 1 million automobiles. By trading with each other, these countries can create a combined market of 2 million autos. In this combined market, more varieties of automobiles can be produced, at lower average costs, than in either market alone.

The monopolistic competition model can be used to show how trade improves the trade-off between scale and variety that individual nations face. We will begin by showing how a larger market leads to both a lower average price and the availability of a greater variety of goods in the monopolistic competition model. Applying this result to international trade, we observe that trade creates a world market larger than any of the national markets that comprise it. Integrating markets through international trade therefore has the same effects as growth of a market within a single country.

### The Effects of Increased Market Size

The number of firms in a monopolistically competitive industry and the prices they charge are affected by the size of the market. In larger markets there usually will be both more firms and more sales per firm; consumers in a large market will be offered both lower prices and a greater variety of products than consumers in small markets.

To see this in the context of our model, look again at the  $CC$  curve in Figure 8-3, which showed that average costs per firm are higher the more firms there are in the industry. The definition of the  $CC$  curve is given by equation (8-6):

$$AC = F/Q + c = n \times F/S + c.$$

Examining this equation, we see that an increase in total industry output  $S$  will reduce average costs for any given number of firms  $n$ . The reason is that if the market grows

---

<sup>8</sup>This analysis slips past a slight problem: The number of firms in an industry must, of course, be a whole number like 5 or 8. What if  $n_2$  turns out to equal 6.37? The answer is that there will be six firms in the industry, all earning a small positive profit. That profit is not challenged by new entrants because everyone knows that a seven-firm industry would lose money. In most examples of monopolistic competition, this whole-number or “integer constraint” problem turns out not to be very important, and we ignore it here.

while the number of firms is held constant, output per firm will increase and the average cost of each firm will therefore decline. Thus, if we compare two markets, one with higher  $S$  than the other, the  $CC$  curve in the larger market will be below that in the smaller one.

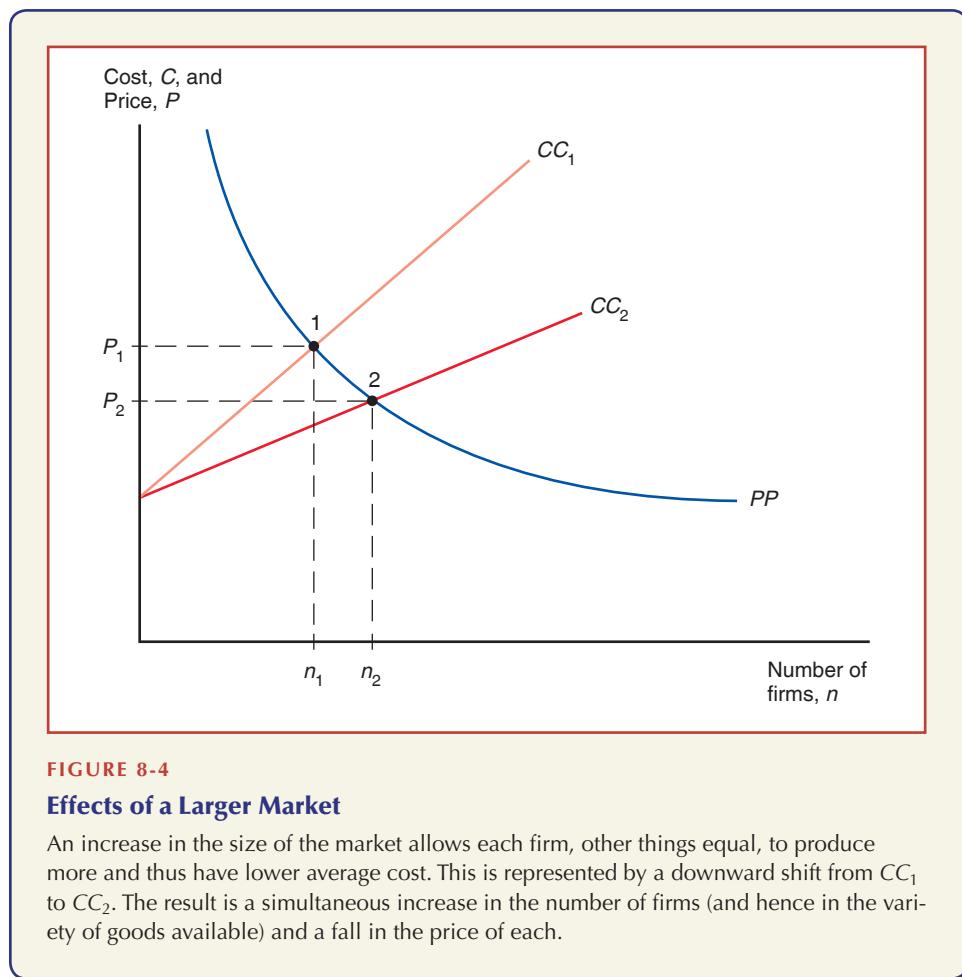
Meanwhile, the  $PP$  curve in Figure 8-3, which relates the price charged by firms to the number of firms, does not shift. The definition of that curve was given in equation (8-10):

$$P = c + 1/(b \times n).$$

The size of the market does not enter into this equation, so an increase in  $S$  does not shift the  $PP$  curve.

Figure 8-4 uses this information to show the effect of an increase in the size of the market on long-run equilibrium. Initially, equilibrium is at point 1, with a price  $P_1$  and a number of firms  $n_1$ . An increase in the size of the market, measured by industry sales  $S$ , shifts the  $CC$  curve down from  $CC_1$  to  $CC_2$ , while it has no effect on the  $PP$  curve. The new equilibrium is at point 2: The number of firms increases from  $n_1$  to  $n_2$ , while the price falls from  $P_1$  to  $P_2$ .

Clearly, consumers would prefer to be part of a large market rather than a small one. At point 2, a greater variety of products is available at a lower price than at point 1.



## Gains from an Integrated Market: A Numerical Example

International trade can create a larger market. We can illustrate the effects of trade on prices, scale, and the variety of goods available with a specific numerical example.

Suppose automobiles are produced by a monopolistically competitive industry. The demand curve facing any given producer of automobiles is described by equation (8-5), with  $b = 1/30,000$  (this value has no particular significance; it was chosen to make the example come out neatly). Thus, the demand facing any one producer is given by

$$Q = S \times [(1/n) - (1/30,000) \times (P - \bar{P})],$$

where  $Q$  is the number of automobiles sold per firm,  $S$  is the total number sold for the industry,  $n$  is the number of firms,  $P$  is the price that a firm charges, and  $\bar{P}$  is the average price of other firms. We also assume that the cost function for producing automobiles is described by equation (8-3), with a fixed cost  $F = \$750,000,000$  and a marginal cost  $c = \$5,000$  per automobile (again, these values were chosen to give nice results). The total cost is

$$C = 750,000,000 + (5,000 \times Q).$$

The average cost curve is therefore

$$AC = (750,000,000/Q) + 5,000.$$

Now suppose there are two countries, Home and Foreign. Home has annual sales of 900,000 automobiles; Foreign has annual sales of 1.6 million. The two countries are assumed, for the moment, to have the same costs of production.

Figure 8-5a shows the  $PP$  and  $CC$  curves for the Home auto industry. We find that in the absence of trade, Home would have six automobile firms, selling autos at a price of \$10,000 each. (It is also possible to solve for  $n$  and  $P$  algebraically, as shown in the Mathematical Postscript to this chapter.) To confirm that this is the long-run equilibrium, we need to show that the pricing equation (8-10) is satisfied and that the price equals average cost.

Substituting the actual values of the marginal cost  $c$ , the demand parameter  $b$ , and the number of Home firms  $n$  into equation (8-10), we find

$$\begin{aligned} P &= \$10,000 = c + 1/(b \times n) = \$5,000 + 1/[(1/30,000) \times 6] \\ &= \$5,000 + \$5,000, \end{aligned}$$

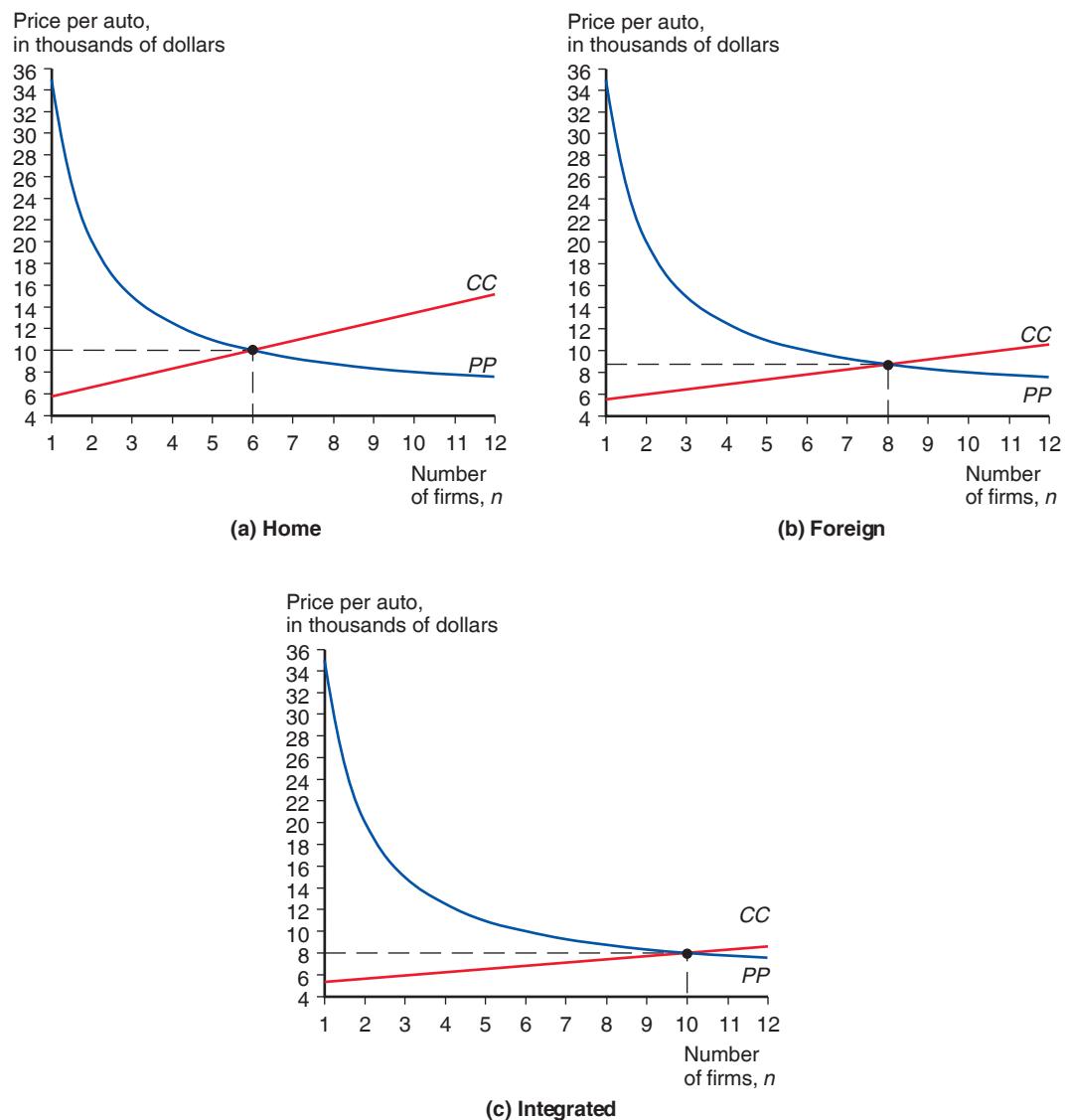
so the condition for profit maximization—marginal revenue equaling marginal cost—is satisfied. Each firm sells 900,000 units/6 firms = 150,000 units/firm. Its average cost is therefore

$$AC = (\$750,000,000/150,000) + \$5,000 = \$10,000.$$

Since the average cost of \$10,000 per unit is the same as the price, all monopoly profits have been competed away. Thus six firms, selling each unit at a price of \$10,000, with each firm producing 150,000 cars, is the long-run equilibrium in the Home market.

What about Foreign? By drawing the  $PP$  and  $CC$  curves [panel (b) in Figure 8-5], we find that when the market is for 1.6 million automobiles, the curves intersect at  $n = 8$ ,  $P = 8,750$ . That is, in the absence of trade, Foreign's market would support eight firms, each producing 200,000 automobiles, and selling them at a price of \$8,750. We can again confirm that this solution satisfies the equilibrium conditions:

$$P = \$8,750 = c + 1/(b \times n) = \$5,000 + 1/[(1/30,000) \times 8] = \$5,000 + \$3,750,$$

**FIGURE 8-5****Equilibrium in the Automobile Market**

(a) The Home market: With a market size of 900,000 automobiles, Home's equilibrium, determined by the intersection of the  $PP$  and  $CC$  curves, occurs with six firms and an industry price of \$10,000 per auto. (b) The Foreign market: With a market size of 1.6 million automobiles, Foreign's equilibrium occurs with eight firms and an industry price of \$8,750 per auto. (c) The combined market: Integrating the two markets creates a market for 2.5 million autos. This market supports 10 firms, and the price of an auto is only \$8,000.

and

$$AC = (\$750,000,000/200,000) + \$5,000 = \$8,750.$$

Now suppose it is possible for Home and Foreign to trade automobiles costlessly with one another. This creates a new, integrated market [panel (c) in Figure 8-5] with total sales of 2.5 million. By drawing the *PP* and *CC* curves one more time, we find that this integrated market will support 10 firms, each producing 250,000 cars and selling them at a price of \$8,000. The conditions for profit maximization and zero profits are again satisfied:

$$\begin{aligned} P &= 8,000 = c + 1/(b \times n) = 5,000 + 1/[(1/30,000) \times 10] \\ &= \$5,000 + \$3,000, \end{aligned}$$

and

$$AC = (\$750,000,000/250,000) + \$5,000 = \$8,000.$$

We summarize the results of creating an integrated market in Table 8-1. The table compares each market alone with the integrated market. The integrated market supports more firms, each producing at a larger scale and selling at a lower price than either national market does on its own.

Clearly everyone is better off as a result of integration. In the larger market, consumers have a wider range of choices, yet each firm produces more and is therefore able to offer its product at a lower price. To realize these gains from integration, the countries must engage in international trade. To achieve economies of scale, each firm must concentrate its production in one country—either Home or Foreign. Yet it must sell its output to customers in both markets. So each product will be produced in only one country and exported to the other.

This numerical example highlights two important new features about trade with monopolistic competition relative to the models of trade based on comparative advantage that we covered in Chapters 3 through 6: (1) First, the example shows how product differentiation and internal economies of scale lead to trade between similar countries with no comparative advantage differences between them. This is a very different kind of trade than the one based on comparative advantage, where each country exports its comparative advantage good. Here, both Home and Foreign export autos to one another. Home pays for the imports of some automobile models (those produced by firms in Foreign) with exports of different types of models (those produced by firms in Home)—and vice versa. This leads to what is called **intra-industry trade**: two-way

**TABLE 8-1 Hypothetical Example of Gains from Market Integration**

	Home Market, before Trade	Foreign Market, before Trade	Integrated Market, after Trade
Industry output (# of autos)	900,000	1,600,000	2,500,000
Number of firms	6	8	10
Output per firm (# of autos)	150,000	200,000	250,000
Average cost	\$10,000	\$8,750	\$8,000
Price	\$10,000	\$8,750	\$8,000

exchanges of similar goods. (2) Second, the example highlights two new channels for welfare benefits from trade. In the integrated market after trade, both Home and Foreign consumers benefit from a greater variety of automobile models (10 versus 6 or 8) at a lower price (\$8,000 versus \$8,750 or \$10,000) as firms are able to consolidate their production destined for both locations and take advantage of economies of scale.<sup>9</sup>

Empirically, is intra-industry trade relevant, and do we observe gains from trade in the form of greater product variety and consolidated production at lower average cost? The answer is yes.

### The Significance of Intra-Industry Trade

The proportion of intra-industry trade in world trade has steadily grown over the last half-century. The measurement of intra-industry trade relies on an industrial classification system that categorizes goods into different industries. Depending on the coarseness of the industrial classification used (hundreds of different industry classifications versus thousands), intra-industry trade accounts for one-quarter to nearly one-half of all world trade flows. Intra-industry trade plays an even more prominent role in the trade of manufactured goods among advanced industrial nations, which accounts for the majority of world trade.

Table 8-2 shows measures of the importance of intra-industry trade for a number of U.S. manufacturing industries in 2009. The measure shown is intra-industry trade as a proportion of overall trade.<sup>10</sup> The measure ranges from 0.97 for metalworking machinery and inorganic chemicals—industries where U.S. exports and imports are nearly equal—to 0.10 for footwear, an industry in which the United States has large imports but virtually no exports. The measure would be 0 for an industry in which the United States is only an exporter or only an importer, but not both; it would be 1 for an industry in which U.S. exports exactly equal U.S. imports.

Table 8-2 shows that intra-industry trade is a very important component of trade for the United States in many different industries. Those industries tend to be ones that produce sophisticated manufactured goods, such as chemicals, pharmaceuticals, and specialized machinery. These goods are exported principally by advanced nations and are probably subject to important economies of scale in production. At the other end of the scale are the industries with very little intra-industry trade, which typically produce labor-intensive products such as footwear and apparel. These are goods that the United States imports primarily from less-developed countries, where comparative advantage is the primary determinant of U.S. trade with these countries.

---

<sup>9</sup>Also note that Home consumers gain more than Foreign consumers from trade integration. This is a standard feature of trade models with increasing returns and product differentiation: A smaller country stands to gain more from integration than a larger country. This is because the gains from integration are driven by the associated increase in market size; the country that is initially smaller benefits from a bigger increase in market size upon integration.

<sup>10</sup>To be more precise, the standard formula for calculating the importance of intra-industry trade within a given industry is

$$I = \frac{\min \{ \text{exports, imports} \}}{(\text{exports} + \text{imports})/2},$$

where  $\min \{ \text{exports, imports} \}$  refers to the smallest value between exports and imports. This is the amount of two-way exchanges of goods reflected in *both* exports and imports. This number is measured as a proportion of the average trade flow (average of exports and imports). If trade in an industry flows in only one direction, then  $I = 0$  since the smallest trade flow is zero: There is no intra-industry trade. On the other hand, if a country's exports and imports within an industry are equal, we get the opposite extreme of  $I = 1$ .

**TABLE 8-2 Indexes of Intra-Industry Trade for U.S. Industries, 2009**

Metalworking Machinery	0.97
Inorganic Chemicals	0.97
Power-Generating Machines	0.86
Medical and Pharmaceutical Products	0.85
Scientific Equipment	0.84
Organic Chemicals	0.79
Iron and Steel	0.76
Road Vehicles	0.70
Office Machines	0.58
Telecommunications Equipment	0.46
Furniture	0.30
Clothing and Apparel	0.11
Footwear	0.10

What about the new types of welfare gains via increased product variety and economies of scale? A study by Christian Broda at Duquesne Capital Management and David Weinstein at Columbia University estimates that the number of available products in U.S. imports tripled in the 30-year time span from 1972 to 2001. They further estimate that this increased product variety for U.S. consumers represented a welfare gain equal to 2.6 percent of U.S. GDP!<sup>11</sup>

Table 8-1 from our numerical example showed that the gains from integration generated by economies of scale were most pronounced for the smaller economy: Prior to integration, production there was particularly inefficient, as the economy could not take advantage of economies of scale in production due to the country's small size. This is exactly what happened when the United States and Canada followed a path of increasing economic integration starting with the North American Auto Pact in 1964. That trade agreement was then broadened to include Mexico and most traded goods across North America (first as the North American Free Trade Agreement, NAFTA, which was recently renegotiated as the U.S.-Mexico-Canada agreement, USMCA). The Case Study that follows describes how this integration led to consolidation and efficiency gains in the automobile sector—particularly on the Canadian side (whose economy is one-tenth the size of the U.S. economy).

Similar gains from trade have also been measured for other real-world examples of closer economic integration. One of the most prominent examples has taken place in Europe over the last half-century. In 1957, the major countries of Western Europe established a free trade area in manufactured goods called the Common Market, or European Economic Community (EEC). (The United Kingdom entered the EEC later, in 1973.) The result was a rapid growth of trade that was dominated by intra-industry trade. Trade within the EEC grew twice as fast as world trade as a whole during the 1960s. This integration slowly expanded into what has become the European Union. When a subset of these countries (mostly, those countries that had formed the EEC) adopted the common euro currency in 1999, intra-industry trade among those countries further increased (even relative to that of the other countries in the European Union). Recent studies have also found that the adoption of the euro has led to a substantial increase in the number of different products that are traded within the Eurozone.

<sup>11</sup>See Christian Broda and David E. Weinstein, "Globalization and the Gains from Variety," *Quarterly Journal of Economics* 121 (April 2006), pp. 541–585.

## CASE STUDY

### Automobile Intra-Industry Trade within ASEAN-4: 1998–2002

ASEAN—the Association of Southeast Asian Nations was formed in 1967 in order to promote political, socioeconomic and cultural cooperation among its members. Over the last 50 years, there has been a steady increase in the proportion of intra-industry trade across the world. In this context, the growth in the automobile industry within the ASEAN-4—Indonesia, Malaysia, the Philippines, and Thailand—between 1998 and 2002, is an example of the role of economies of scale in generating beneficial international trade.<sup>12</sup> While the case does not fit our model exactly since it involves multinational firms, it does show that the basic concepts we have developed are useful in the real world.

The automobile industry in ASEAN-4 was propelled by a series of deregulation and liberalization measures, including trade liberalization steps like AFTA (the ASEAN Free Trade Agreement in 1998), and it experienced significant growth. Since 2002, it has recovered its losses due to the 1997 Asian crisis, and has reached a level of production of 1.4 million automobiles. Within the ASEAN-4, Thailand had assumed a leading role as an export-hub, with other countries concentrating mostly on production of automobile parts. European countries were the main destination for the ASEAN-4 automotive exports, attracting 60 percent of total automotive exports; Australia was also becoming a major destination for the trade relations.

In 2001, intra-ASEAN-4 exports in automobile parts accounted for about 14 percent of total exports, with the European Union (EU), Japan, and NAFTA (the North American Free Trade Agreement among the United States, Canada, and Mexico) comprising other hefty export markets, with the regional markets acquiring rising importance over time. While lower in the ASEAN-4 when compared to other major trading blocs like the EU, NAFTA, and MERCOSUR, intra-industry trade in automobile parts seemed to be on the rise in all these regions.

Automobile intra-industry trade reflects the standard dichotomy between quality differentiation (vertical differentiation) and attribute differentiation (horizontal differentiation). For the ASEAN-4 countries, there seemed to be significant differences relating to the importance of this vertical and horizontal differentiation. While the share of horizontal differentiation in automobile parts exhibited a low and constant amount, vertical differentiation rose by a robust 50 percent and placed the ASEAN-4, with a share of 63.5 percent, at the top of the list of major trading blocks in terms of vertical differentiation. With the constant share of horizontal differentiation, the rapid rise in vertical differentiation took place at the expense of mainly one-way trade. In terms of comparison, the total share of intra-industry trade was still below those observed in other major trading blocks.

There are interesting findings when one looks into intra-industry trends among the ASEAN-4 countries. Again, horizontal intra-industry trade remained relatively stable; however, vertical intra-industry trade exhibited remarkable growth, increasing

---

<sup>12</sup>Keito Ito and Masaru Umemoto, "Intra-Industry Trade in the ASEAN Region: The Case of the Automotive Industry," *ASEAN-Auto Project* No. 04-8, Working Paper Series Vol. 2004-23, September 2004. ([http://www.agi.or.jp/user04/756\\_196\\_20110622173800.pdf](http://www.agi.or.jp/user04/756_196_20110622173800.pdf)).

overall shares of intra-industry trade for all the ASEAN-4 members, except the Philippines, to 70 percent by 2002. The most important automobile components traded among the ASEAN-4 countries were engines and engine parts, and transmissions and machinery, ranging from 21 percent to 36 percent (interestingly, the generic component “other auto parts” that makes up half of all trade in automobile components is all accounted by intra-industry trade). Of course, trade characteristics for the various automobile components are not uniform, for example, one-way trade is dominant for transmissions and machinery, while intra-industry trade dominates trade in engines and engine parts. Trade differences also existed among countries; for example, Indonesia’s main export was electric parts, which accounted mostly for one-way trade, while Malaysia’s main exports were transmission and machinery, which accounted primarily for intra-industry trade.

It is not surprising that economies of scale explain a good part of intra-industry trade in automobiles and automobile components for the ASEAN-4 countries. For example, the total market size, the declining differences in market sizes, and the size of the automobile industry itself all contributed positively to the overall automobile intra-industry growth. For the ASEAN-4 countries, deeper economic integration was not a determinant of intra-industry growth; this may be due to the fact that the period under consideration did not include important trade liberalization measures that took effect after 2002. This made market and industry size characteristics (economies of scale) the major determinants of automobile intra industry growth rather than regional ones during the 1998–2002 period.

## Firm Responses to Trade: Winners, Losers, and Industry Performance

In our numerical example of the auto industry with two countries, we saw how economic integration led to an increase in competition between firms. Of the 14 firms producing autos before trade (6 in Home and 8 in Foreign), only 10 firms “survive” after economic integration; however, each of those firms now produces at a bigger scale (250,000 autos produced per firm versus either 150,000 for Home firms or 200,000 for Foreign firms before trade). In that example, the firms were assumed to be symmetric, so exactly which firms exited and which survived and expanded was inconsequential. In the real world, however, performance varies widely across firms, so the effects of increased competition from trade are far from inconsequential. As one would expect, increased competition tends to hurt the worst-performing firms the hardest because they are the ones who are forced to exit. If the increased competition comes from trade (or economic integration), then it is also associated with sales opportunities in new markets for the surviving firms. Again, as one would expect, it is the best-performing firms that take greatest advantage of those new sales opportunities and expand the most.

These composition changes have a crucial consequence at the level of the industry: When the better-performing firms expand and the worse-performing ones contract or exit, then overall industry performance improves. This means that trade and economic integration can have a direct impact on industry performance: It is as if there were technological growth at the level of the industry. Empirically, these composition changes generate substantial improvements in industry productivity.

Take the example of Canada's closer economic integration with the United States (see the preceding Case Study and the discussion in Chapter 2). We discussed how this integration led the automobile producers to consolidate production in a smaller number of Canadian plants, whose production levels rose dramatically. The Canada-U.S. Free Trade Agreement, which went into effect in 1989, extended the auto pact to most manufacturing sectors. A similar process of consolidation occurred throughout the affected Canadian manufacturing sectors. However, this was also associated with a selection process: The worst-performing producers shut down while the better-performing ones expanded via large increases in exports to the U.S. market. Daniel Trefler at the University of Toronto has studied the effects of this trade agreement in great detail, examining the varied responses of Canadian firms.<sup>13</sup> He found that productivity in the most affected Canadian industries rose by a dramatic 14 to 15 percent (replicated economy-wide, a 1 percent increase in productivity translates into a 1 percent increase in GDP, holding employment constant). On its own, the contraction and exit of the worst-performing firms in response to increased competition from U.S. firms accounted for half of the 15 percent increase in those sectors.

### Performance Differences across Producers

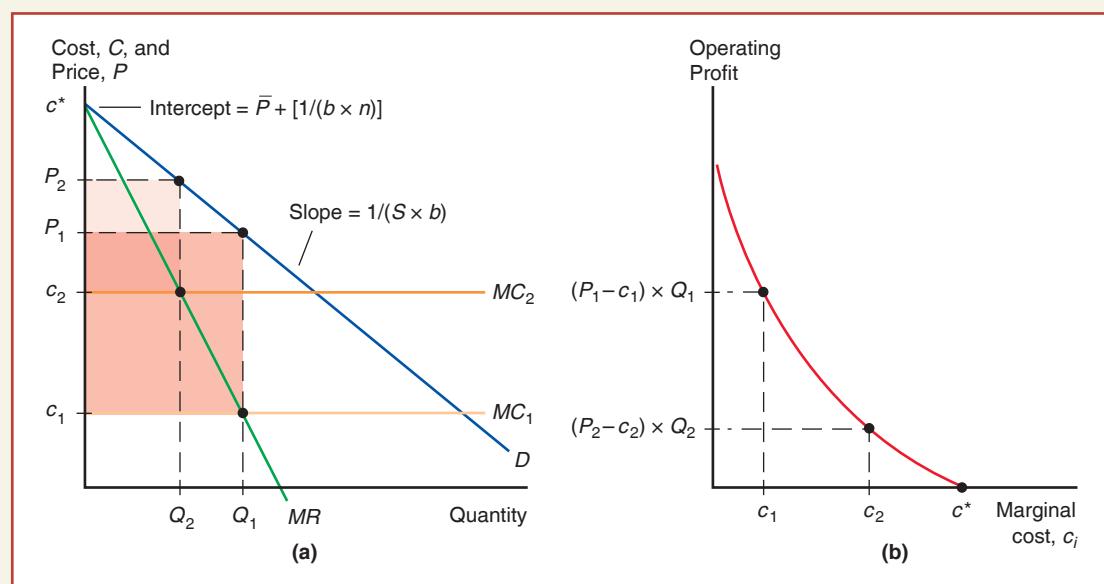
We now relax the symmetry assumption we imposed in our previous development of the monopolistic competition model so that we can examine how competition from increased market size affects firms differently.<sup>14</sup> The symmetry assumption meant that all firms had the same cost curve (8-3) and the same demand curve (8-5). Suppose now that firms have different cost curves because they produce with different marginal cost levels  $c_i$ . We assume all firms still face the same demand curve. Product-quality differences between firms would lead to very similar predictions for firm performance as the ones we now derive for cost differences.

Figure 8-6 illustrates the performance differences between firms 1 and 2 when  $c_1 < c_2$ . In panel (a), we have drawn the common demand curve (8-5) as well as its associated marginal revenue curve (8-8). Note that both curves have the same intercept on the vertical axis [plug  $Q = 0$  into (8-8) to obtain  $MR = P$ ]; this intercept is given by the price  $P$  from (8-5) when  $Q = 0$ , which is the slope of the demand curve  $1/(S \times b)$ . As we previously discussed, the marginal revenue curve is steeper than the demand curve. Firms 1 and 2 choose output levels  $Q_1$  and  $Q_2$ , respectively, to maximize their profits. This occurs where their respective marginal cost curves intersect the common marginal revenue curve. They set prices  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  that correspond to those output levels on the common demand curve. We immediately see that firm 1 will set a lower price and produce a higher output level than firm 2. Since the marginal revenue curve is steeper than the demand curve, we also see that firm 1 will set a higher markup over marginal cost than firm 2:  $P_1 - c_1 > P_2 - c_2$ .

The shaded areas represent operating profits for both firms, equal to revenue  $P_i \times Q_i$  minus operating costs  $c_i \times Q_i$  (for both firms,  $i = 1$  and  $i = 2$ ). Here, we have assumed the fixed cost  $F$  (assumed to be the same for all firms) cannot be recovered and does

<sup>13</sup>See Daniel Trefler, "The Long and Short of the Canada-U.S. Free Trade Agreement," *American Economic Review* 94 (September 2004), pp. 870–895, and the summary of this work in the *New York Times*: "What Happened When Two Countries Liberalized Trade? Pain, Then Gain," by Virginia Postel (January 27, 2005); and Marc J. Melitz and Daniel Trefler, "Gains from Trade When Firms Matter," *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 26 (2012), pp. 91–118.

<sup>14</sup>A more detailed exposition of this model is presented in Marc J. Melitz and Daniel Trefler, "Gains from Trade When Firms Matter," *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 26 (2012), pp. 91–118.

**FIGURE 8-6****Performance Differences across Firms**

(a) Demand and cost curves for firms 1 and 2. Firm 1 has a lower marginal cost than firm 2:  $c_1 < c_2$ . Both firms face the same demand curve and marginal revenue curve. Relative to firm 2, firm 1 sets a lower price and produces more output. The shaded areas represent operating profits for both firms (before the fixed cost is deducted). Firm 1 earns higher operating profits than firm 2. (b) Operating profits as a function of a firm's marginal cost  $c_i$ . Operating profits decrease as the marginal cost increases. Any firm with marginal cost above  $c^*$  cannot operate profitably and shuts down.

not enter into operating profits (that is, it is a sunk cost). Since operating profits can be rewritten as the product of the markup times the number of output units sold,  $(P_i - c_i) \times Q_i$ , we can determine that firm 1 will earn higher profits than firm 2 (recall that firm 1 sets a higher markup and produces more output than firm 2). We can thus summarize all the relevant performance differences based on marginal cost differences across firms. Compared to a firm with a higher marginal cost, a firm with a lower marginal cost will (1) set a lower price but at a higher markup over marginal cost; (2) produce more output; and (3) earn higher profits.<sup>15</sup>

Panel (b) in Figure 8-6 shows how a firm's operating profits vary with its marginal cost  $c_i$ . As we just mentioned, this will be a decreasing function of marginal cost. Going back to panel (a), we see that a firm can earn a positive operating profit so long as its marginal cost is below the intercept of the demand curve on the vertical axis at  $\bar{P} + [1/(b \times n)]$ . Let  $c^*$  denote this cost cutoff. A firm with a marginal cost  $c_i$  above this cutoff is effectively "priced out" of the market and would earn negative operating profits if it were to produce any output. Such a firm would choose to shut down and not produce (incurring an overall profit loss equal to the fixed cost  $F$ ). Why would such a firm enter in the first place? Clearly, it wouldn't if it knew about its high cost  $c_i$  prior to entering and paying the fixed cost  $F$ .

<sup>15</sup>Recall that we have assumed that all firms face the same nonrecoverable fixed cost  $F$ . If a firm earns higher operating profits, then it also earns higher overall profits (that deduct the fixed cost  $F$ ).

We assume that entrants face some randomness about their future production cost  $c_i$ . This randomness disappears only after  $F$  is paid and is sunk. Thus, some firms will regret their entry decision if their overall profit (operating profit minus the fixed cost  $F$ ) is negative. On the other hand, some firms will discover that their production cost  $c_i$  is very low and that they earn high positive overall profit levels. Entry is driven by a similar process as the one we described for the case of symmetric firms. In that previous case, firms entered until profits for all firms were driven to zero. Here, there are profit differences between firms, and entry occurs until *expected* profits across all potential cost levels  $c_i$  are driven to zero.

### The Effects of Increased Market Size

Panel (b) of Figure 8-6 summarizes the industry equilibrium given a market size  $S$ . It tells us which firms survive and produce (with cost  $c_i$  below  $c^*$ ) and how their profits will vary with their cost levels  $c_i$ . What happens when economies integrate into a single larger market? As was the case with symmetric firms, a larger market can support a larger number of firms than can a smaller market. This leads to more competition in addition to the direct effect of increased market size  $S$ . As we will see, these changes will have very different repercussions on firms with different production costs.

Figure 8-7 summarizes those repercussions induced by market integration. In panel (a), we start with the demand curve  $D$  faced by each firm. All else equal, we expect increased competition to shift demand in for each firm. On the other hand, we also expect a bigger market size  $S$ , on its own, to move demand out. This intuition is correct and leads to the overall change in demand from  $D$  to  $D'$  shown in panel (a). Notice how the demand curve rotates, inducing an inward shift for the smaller firms (with lower output quantities) as well as an outward shift for the larger firms. In essence, the effects of increased competition dominate for those smaller firms whereas the effects of increased market size are dominant for the larger firms.

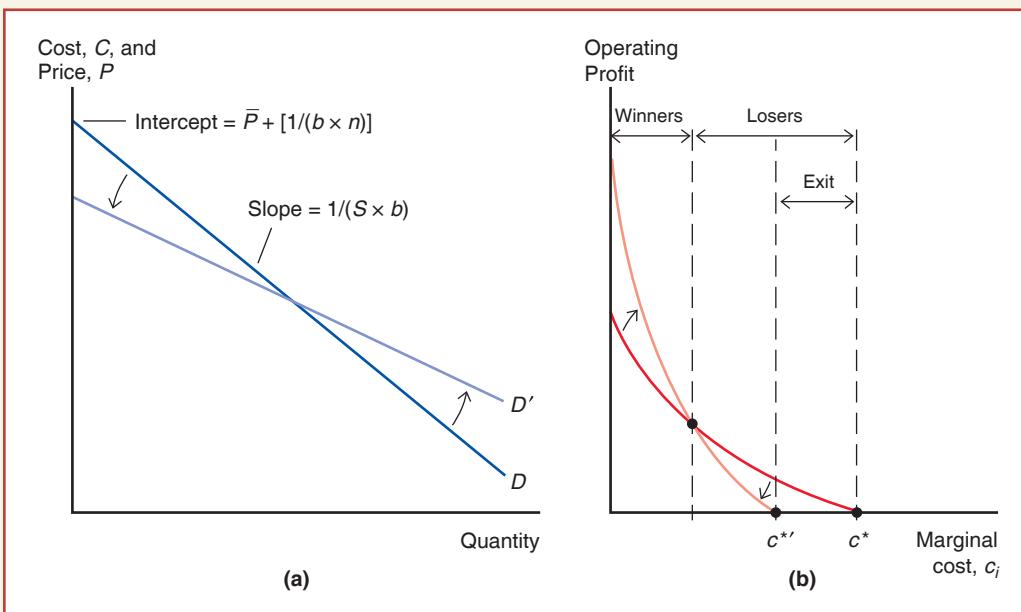
We can also analytically characterize the effects of increased competition and market size on the demand curve  $D$ . Recall that the vertical intercept of this demand curve is  $\bar{P} + [1/(b \times n)]$ , while its slope is  $1/(S \times b)$ . Increased competition (a higher number of firms  $n$ ) holding market size  $S$  constant lowers the vertical intercept for demand, leaving its slope unchanged: This is the induced inward shift from more competition.<sup>16</sup> The direct effect of increased market size  $S$  flattens the demand curve (lower slope), leaving the intercept unchanged: This generates an outward rotation of demand. Combining these two effects, we obtain the new demand curve  $D'$ , which has a lower vertical intercept and is flatter than the original demand curve  $D$ .

Panel (b) of Figure 8-7 shows the consequences of this demand change for the operating profits of firms with different cost levels  $c_i$ . The decrease in demand for the smaller firms translates into a new, lower-cost cutoff,  $c^{**}$ : Some firms with the high cost levels above  $c^{**}$  cannot survive the decrease in demand and are forced to exit. On the other hand, the flatter demand curve is advantageous to some firms with low cost levels: They can adapt to the increased competition by lowering their markup (and hence their price) and gain some additional market share.<sup>17</sup> This translates into increased profits for some of the best-performing firms with the lowest cost levels  $c_i$ .<sup>18</sup>

<sup>16</sup>In equilibrium, increased competition also leads to a lower average price  $\bar{P}$ , which will further decrease the intercept.

<sup>17</sup>Recall that the lower the firm's marginal cost  $c_i$ , the higher its markup over marginal cost  $P_i - C_i$ . High-cost firms are already setting low markups and cannot lower their prices to induce positive demand, as this would mean pricing below their marginal cost of production.

<sup>18</sup>Another way to deduce that profit increases for some firms is to use the entry condition that drives average profits to zero: If profit decreases for some of the high-cost firms, then it must increase for some of the low-cost firms, since the average across all firms must remain equal to zero.

**FIGURE 8-7****Winners and Losers from Economic Integration**

- (a) The demand curve for all firms changes from  $D$  to  $D'$ . It is flatter, and has a lower vertical intercept.  
 (b) Effects of the shift in demand on the operating profits of firms with different marginal cost  $c_i$ . Firms with marginal cost between the old cutoff,  $c^*$ , and the new one,  $c^{**}$ , are forced to exit. Some firms with the lowest marginal cost levels gain from integration and their profits increase.

Figure 8-7 illustrates how increased market size generates both winners and losers among firms in an industry. The low-cost firms thrive and increase their profits and market shares, while the high-cost firms contract and the highest-cost firms exit. These composition changes imply that overall productivity in the industry is increasing as production is concentrated among the more productive (low-cost) firms. This replicates the findings for Canadian manufacturing following closer integration with U.S. manufacturing, as we previously described. These effects tend to be most pronounced for smaller countries that integrate with larger ones, but it is not limited to those small countries. Even for a big economy such as the United States, increased integration via lower trade costs leads to important composition effects and productivity gains.<sup>19</sup>

## Trade Costs and Export Decisions

Up to now, we have modeled economic integration as an increase in market size. This implicitly assumes that this integration occurs to such an extent that a single combined market is formed. In reality, integration rarely goes that far: Trade costs among countries are reduced, but they do not disappear. In Chapter 2, we discussed how these trade

<sup>19</sup>See A. B. Bernard, J. B. Jensen, and P. K. Schott, "Trade Costs, Firms and Productivity," *Journal of Monetary Economics* 53 (July 2006), pp. 917–937.

costs are manifested even for the case of the two very closely integrated economies of the United States and Canada. We saw how the U.S.–Canada border substantially decreases trade volumes between Canadian provinces and U.S. states.

Trade costs associated with this border crossing are also a salient feature of firm-level trade patterns: Very few firms in the United States reach Canadian customers. In fact, most U.S. firms do not report *any* exporting activity at all (because they sell only to U.S. customers). In 2007, only 4 percent of the 5.5 million firms operating in the United States reported any export sales. Firms in the manufacturing sector are substantially more likely to export (trade costs are relatively lower than in the agricultural, mining, and service sectors). Yet, even within this sector most predisposed to exporting, only 35 percent of manufacturing firms export. Table 8-3 shows the breakdown of this percentage by specific industries within the manufacturing sector. We see that there is some substantial variation in the proportion of exporting firms across industries. This variation is related to the comparative advantage of the U.S. industries (as we described in detail in Chapter 5): U.S. exports are concentrated in relatively capital-intensive and skill-intensive industries, and firms in those industries are substantially more likely to export. However, even in the most export-oriented industries, a substantial proportion of firms report no exporting activity (they only sell to U.S. consumers). This highlights one major reason why trade costs associated with national borders reduce trade so much: Those costs drastically cut down the number of firms willing or able to reach customers across the border. (The other reason is that the trade costs also reduce the export sales of firms that do reach those customers across the border.)

In our integrated economy without any trade costs, firms were indifferent as to the location of their customers. We now introduce trade costs to explain why firms actually do care about the location of their customers and why so many firms choose not to reach customers in another country. As we will see shortly, this will also allow us to explain important differences between those firms that choose to incur the trade costs and export, and those that do not. Why would some firms choose not to export? Simply put, the trade costs reduce the profitability of exporting for all firms. For some, that reduction in profitability makes exporting unprofitable. We now formalize this argument.

To keep things simple, we will consider the response of firms in a world with two identical countries (Home and Foreign). Let the market size parameter  $S$  now reflect the size of each market, so that  $2 \times S$  now reflects the size of the world market. We cannot analyze this world market as a single market of size  $2 \times S$  because this market is no longer perfectly integrated due to trade costs.

**TABLE 8-3 Proportion of U.S. Firms Reporting Export Sales by Industry, 2007**

Printing	15%
Furniture	16%
Wood Products	21%
Apparel	22%
Fabricated Metals	30%
Petroleum and Coal	34%
Transportation Equipment	57%
Machinery	61%
Chemicals	65%
Electrical Equipment and Appliances	70%
Computer and Electronics	75%

**Source:** Bernard, Andrew B., J. Bradford Jensen, Stephen J. Redding, and Peter K. Schott. "Global Firms." *Journal of Economic Literature* 56, no. 2 (June 2018): 565–619.

Specifically, assume that a firm must incur an additional cost  $t$  for each unit of output that it sells to customers across the border. We now have to keep track of the firm's behavior in each market separately. Due to the trade cost  $t$ , firms will set different prices in their export market relative to their domestic market. This will lead to different quantities sold in each market and ultimately to different profit levels earned in each market. As each firm's marginal cost is constant (does not vary with production levels), those decisions regarding pricing and quantity sold in each market can be separated: A decision regarding the domestic market will have no impact on the profitability of different decisions for the export market.

Consider the case of firms located in Home. Their situation regarding their domestic (Home) market is exactly as was illustrated in Figure 8-6, except that all the outcomes, such as price, output, and profit, relate to the domestic market only.<sup>20</sup> Now consider the decisions of firms 1 and 2 (with marginal costs  $c_1$  and  $c_2$ ) regarding the export (Foreign) market. They face the same demand curve in Foreign as they do in Home (recall that we assumed the two countries are identical). The only difference is that the firms' marginal cost in the export market is shifted up by the trade cost  $t$ . Figure 8-8 shows the situation for the two firms in both markets.

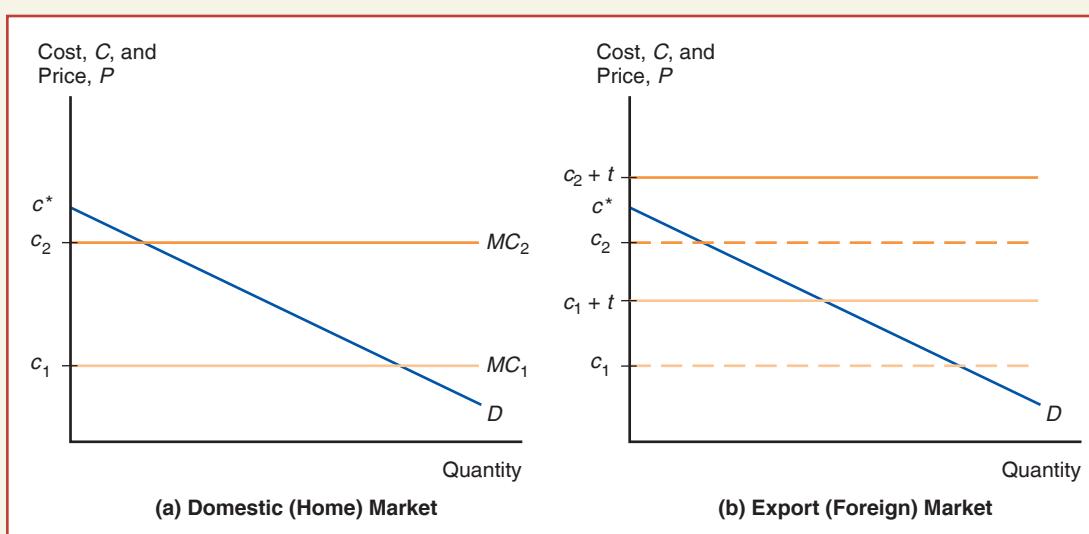
What are the effects of the trade cost on the firms' decisions regarding the export market? We know from our previous analysis that a higher marginal cost induces a firm to raise its price, which leads to a lower output quantity sold and lower profits. We also know that if marginal cost is raised above the threshold level  $c^*$ , then a firm cannot profitably operate in that market. This is what happens to firm 2 in Figure 8-8. Firm 2 can profitably operate in its domestic market because its cost there is below the threshold:  $c_2 \leq c^*$ . However, it cannot profitably operate in the export market because its cost there is above the threshold:  $c_2 + t > c^*$ . Firm 1, on the other hand, has a low enough cost that it can profitably operate in both the domestic and the export markets:  $c_1 + t \leq c^*$ . We can extend this prediction to all firms based on their marginal cost  $c_i$ . The lowest-cost firms with  $c_i \leq c^* - t$  export; the higher-cost firms with  $c^* - t < c_i \leq c^*$  still produce for their domestic market but do not export; the highest-cost firms with  $c_i > c^*$  cannot profitably operate in either market and thus exit.

We just saw how the modeling of trade costs added two important predictions to our model of monopolistic competition and trade: Those costs explain why only a subset of firms export, and they also explain why this subset of firms will consist of relatively larger and more productive firms (those firms with lower marginal cost). Empirical analyses of firms' export decisions from numerous countries have provided overwhelming support for this prediction that exporting firms are bigger and more productive than firms in the same industry that do not export. In the United States in a typical manufacturing industry, an exporting firm is on average more than twice as large as a firm that does not export. The average exporting firm also produces 21 percent more value added (output minus intermediate inputs) per worker than the average nonexporting firm. Similar differences across exporters and non-exporters are also observed in European countries.<sup>21</sup>

---

<sup>20</sup>The number of firms  $n$  is the total number of firms selling in the Home market. (This includes both firms located in Home as well as the firms located in Foreign that export to Home.)  $\bar{P}$  is the average price across all those firms selling in Home.

<sup>21</sup>See Andrew B. Bernard, J. Bradford Jensen, Stephen J. Redding, and Peter K. Schott, "Global Firms," *Journal of Economic Literature* 56, no. 2 (June 2018), pp. 565–619; and Thierry Mayer and Gianmarco I. P. Ottaviano, "The Happy Few: The Internationalisation of European Firms: New Facts Based on Firm-Level Evidence," *Intereconomics* 43 (May/June 2008), pp. 135–148.

**FIGURE 8-8****Export Decisions with Trade Costs**

(a) Firms 1 and 2 both operate in their domestic (Home) market. (b) Only firm 1 chooses to export to the Foreign market. It is not profitable for firm 2 to export given the trade cost  $t$ .

## Dumping

Adding trade costs to our model of monopolistic competition also added another dimension of realism: Because markets are no longer perfectly integrated through costless trade, firms can choose to set different prices in different markets. The trade costs also affect how a firm responds to competition in a market. Recall that a firm with a higher marginal cost will choose to set a lower markup over marginal cost (this firm faces more intense competition due to its lower market share). This means that an exporting firm will respond to the trade cost by lowering its markup for the export market.

Consider the case of firm 1 in Figure 8-8. It faces a higher marginal cost  $c_1 + t$  in the Foreign export market. Let  $P_1^D$  and  $P_1^X$  denote the prices that firm 1 sets on its domestic (Home) market and export (Foreign) market, respectively. Firm 1 sets a lower markup  $P_1^X - (c_1 + t)$  on the export market relative to its markup  $P_1^D - c_1$  on the domestic market. This in turn implies that  $P_1^X - t < P_1^D$  and that firm 1 sets an export price (net of trade costs) lower than its domestic price.

That is considered **dumping** by firm 1 and is regarded by most countries as an “unfair” trade practice. Any firm from Foreign can appeal to its local authorities (in the United States, the Commerce Department and the International Trade Commission are the relevant authorities) and seek punitive damages against firm 1. This usually takes the form of an **antidumping duty** imposed on firm 1 and would usually be scaled to the price difference between  $P_1^D$  and  $P_1^X - t$ .<sup>22</sup>

<sup>22</sup>  $P_1^X - t$  is called firm 1's *ex factory* price for the export market (the price at the “factory gate” before the trade costs are incurred). If firm 1 incurred some transport or delivery cost in its domestic market, then those costs would be deducted from its domestic price  $P_1^D$  to obtain an ex factory price for the domestic market. Anti-dumping duties are based on differences between a firm's ex factory prices in the domestic and export markets.

Dumping is a controversial issue in trade policy (see the case study below). For now, we just note that firm 1 is not behaving any differently than the foreign firms it is competing against in the Foreign market. In that market, firm 1 sets exactly the same markup over marginal cost as Foreign firm 2 with marginal cost  $c_2 = c_1 + t$ . Firm 2's pricing behavior is perfectly legal, so why is firm 1's export pricing decision considered to represent an "unfair" trade practice? This is one major reason why economists believe that the enforcement of dumping claims is misguided (see the Case Study for a further discussion) and that there is no good economic justification for dumping to be considered particularly harmful.

Our model of monopolistic competition highlighted how trade costs have a natural tendency to induce firms to lower their markups in export markets, where they face more intense competition due to their reduced market share. This makes it relatively easy for domestic firms to file a dumping complaint against exporters in their markets. In practice, those antidumping laws can then be used to erect barriers to trade by discriminating against exporters in a market.

## CASE STUDY

### Antidumping as Protectionism

Economists have never been very happy with the idea of singling out dumping as a prohibited practice. For one thing, setting different prices for different customers is a perfectly legitimate business strategy—like the discounts that airlines offer to students, senior citizens, and travelers who are willing to stay over a weekend, all falling under the rubric of "price discrimination." Also, the legal definition of dumping deviates substantially from the economic definition. Since it is often difficult to prove that foreign firms charge higher prices to domestic than to export customers, affected nations instead often try to calculate a supposedly fair price based on estimates of foreign production costs. This "fair price" rule can interfere with perfectly normal business practices: A firm may well be willing to sell a product for a loss while it is lowering its costs through experience or breaking into a new market. Even absent such dynamic considerations, our model highlighted how monopolistically competitive firms have an incentive to lower their markups in export markets due to competition effects associated with trade costs.

Most countries have in place a regulatory framework dealing with dumping complaints. In the United States, this involves the Commerce Department and eventually the International Trade Commission. In the European Union, dumping falls under the jurisdiction of the European Commission and the Directorate General Trade and various Committees. In India, dumping falls under the purview of the Customs and Tariffs Acts and the Anti-Dumping Rules. Opinions differ as to whether dumping constitutes "fair" competition and within the framework of WTO rules, many governments around the world are allowed by WTO rules to take action against dumping (despite being allowed as a practice, "condemned but not prohibited"), by following a specific set of procedures whereby "material injury" needs to be established and sets forth three methods by which a good's "normal" value is calculated.

In spite of almost universally negative assessments from economists, however, formal complaints about dumping have been filed with growing frequency since about 1970. In the early 1990s, the bulk of anti-dumping complaints were directed at developed countries. But since 1995, developing countries have accounted for the majority of anti-dumping complaints. And among those countries, China has attracted a particularly large number of complaints.

There are two main reasons behind this trend. First and foremost has been China's massive export growth. No firm enjoys facing stiff increases in competition, and anti-dumping laws allow firms to insulate themselves from this competition by raising their competitors' costs. Second, proving unfair pricing by a Chinese firm is relatively easier than for exporters from other countries. Most developed countries (including the United States) facing this surge in Chinese exports have labeled China a "nonmarket" economy. A *BusinessWeek* story describes the difference that this description makes when a U.S. firm files an antidumping complaint against a Chinese exporter:

That means the United States can simply ignore Chinese data on costs on the assumption they are distorted by subsidized loans, rigged markets, and the controlled yuan. Instead, the government uses data from other developing nations regarded as market economies. In the TV and furniture cases, the United States used India—even though it is not a big exporter of these goods. Since India's production costs were higher, China was ruled guilty of dumping.<sup>23</sup>

As the quote suggests, China has been subject to antidumping duties on TVs and furniture, along with a number of other products including crepe paper, hand trucks, shrimp, ironing tables, plastic shopping bags, iron pipe fittings, saccharin, solar panels, and most recently tires and cold-rolled steel. These duties are high. As high as 78 percent on color TVs, 266 percent for cold-rolled steel, and 330 percent on saccharin.

## Multinationals and Foreign Direct Investment

When is a corporation **multinational**? In U.S. statistics, a U.S. company is considered foreign-controlled, and therefore a subsidiary of a foreign-based multinational, if 10 percent or more of its stock is held by a foreign company; the idea is that 10 percent is enough to convey effective control. Similarly, a U.S.-based company is considered multinational if it owns more than 10 percent of a foreign firm. The controlling (owning) firm is called the *multinational parent*, while the "controlled" firms are called the *multinational affiliates*.

When a U.S. firm buys more than 10 percent of a foreign firm, or when a U.S. firm builds a new production facility abroad, that investment is considered a U.S. outflow of **foreign direct investment (FDI)**. The latter is called *greenfield FDI*, while the former is called *brownfield FDI* (or cross-border mergers and acquisitions). Conversely, investments by foreign firms in production facilities in the United States are considered U.S. FDI inflows. We describe the worldwide patterns of FDI flows in the following section.

<sup>23</sup>“Wielding a Heavy Weapon Against China,” *BusinessWeek*, 21 June, 2004

For now, we focus on the decision of a firm to become a multinational parent. Why would a firm choose to operate an affiliate in a foreign location?

The answer depends, in part, on the production activities that the affiliate carries out. These activities fall into two main categories: (1) The affiliate replicates the production process (that the parent firm undertakes in its domestic facilities) elsewhere in the world; and (2) the production chain is broken up, and parts of the production processes are transferred to the affiliate location. Investing in affiliates that do the first type of activities is categorized as **horizontal FDI**. Investing in affiliates that do the second type of activities is categorized as **vertical FDI**.<sup>24</sup>

Vertical FDI is mainly driven by production cost differences between countries (for those parts of the production process that can be performed in another location). What drives those cost differences between countries? This is just the outcome of the theory of comparative advantage that we developed in Chapters 3 through 7. For example, Intel (the world's largest computer chip manufacturer) has broken up the production of chips into wafer fabrication, assembly, and testing. Wafer fabrication and the associated research and development are very skill-intensive, so Intel still performs most of those activities in the United States as well as in Ireland and Israel (where skilled labor is still relatively abundant).<sup>25</sup> On the other hand, chip assembly and testing are labor-intensive, and Intel has moved those production processes to countries where labor is relatively abundant, such as Malaysia, the Philippines, Costa Rica, and China. This type of vertical FDI is one of the fastest-growing types of FDI and is behind the large increase in FDI inflows to developing countries (see Figure 8-9).

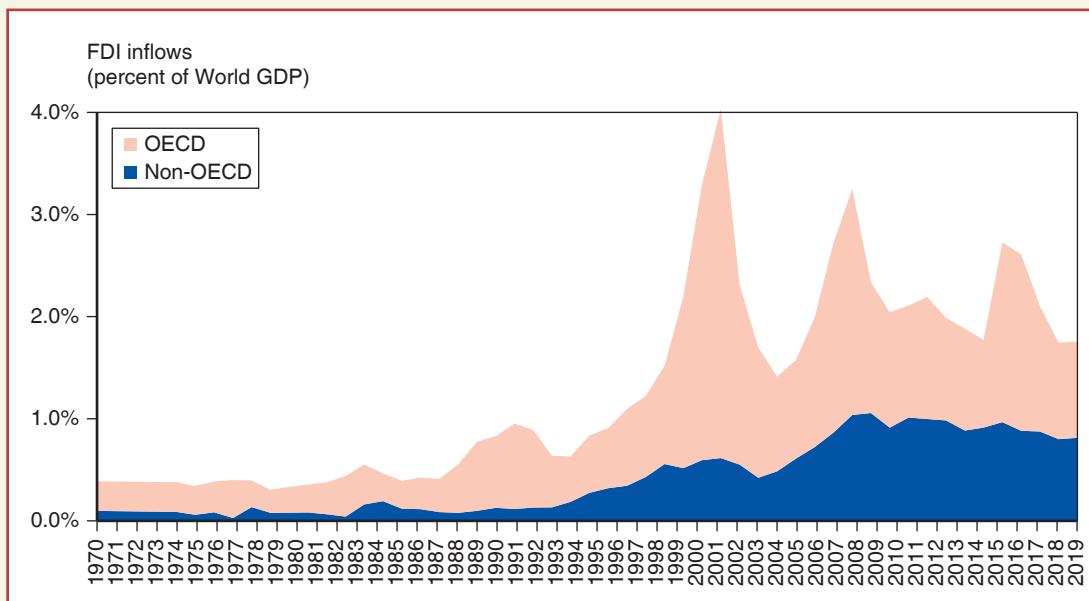
When a multinational engages in vertical FDI, it will then ship intermediate goods across its network of domestic and foreign affiliates. The resulting trade is classified as intra-firm trade. It represents roughly one-third of worldwide trade and over 40 percent of U.S. trade.

In contrast to vertical FDI, horizontal FDI is dominated by flows between developed countries; that is, both the multinational parent and the affiliates are located in developed countries. The main reason for this type of FDI is to locate production near a firm's large customer bases. Hence, trade and transport costs play a much more important role than production cost differences for these FDI decisions. Consider the example of Toyota, which is the world's largest motor vehicle producer (at least, at the time of writing, though Volkswagen is a close second). At the start of the 1980s, Toyota produced almost all of its cars and trucks in Japan and exported them throughout the world, but mostly to North America and Europe. High trade costs to those markets (in large part due to trade restrictions; see Chapter 9) and rising demand levels there induced Toyota to slowly expand its production overseas. By 2009, Toyota produced over half of its vehicles in assembly plants abroad. Toyota has replicated the production process for its most popular car model, the Corolla, in assembly plants in Brazil, Canada, China, India, Japan, Pakistan, South Africa, Taiwan, Thailand, Turkey, the United States, the United Kingdom, Vietnam, and Venezuela: This is horizontal FDI in action.

---

<sup>24</sup>In reality, the distinctions between horizontal and vertical FDI can be blurred. Some large multinational parents operate large networks of affiliates that replicate parts of the production process, but are also vertically connected to other affiliates in the parent's network. This is referred to as "complex" FDI.

<sup>25</sup>In 2010, Intel opened a new wafer fabrication plant in Dalian, China, where older chip models are produced.

**FIGURE 8-9****Inflows of Foreign Direct Investment, 1970–2019 (Percent of World GDP)**

Worldwide flows of FDI have significantly increased since the mid-1990s, though the rates of increase have been very uneven. Historically, most of the inflows of FDI have gone to the developed countries in the OECD. However, the proportion of FDI inflows going to developing and transition economies has steadily increased over time and accounted for roughly half of worldwide FDI flows since 2009.

**Source:** United Nations Conference on Trade and Development, *World Investment Report*, 2019.

### Patterns of Foreign Direct Investment Flows around the World

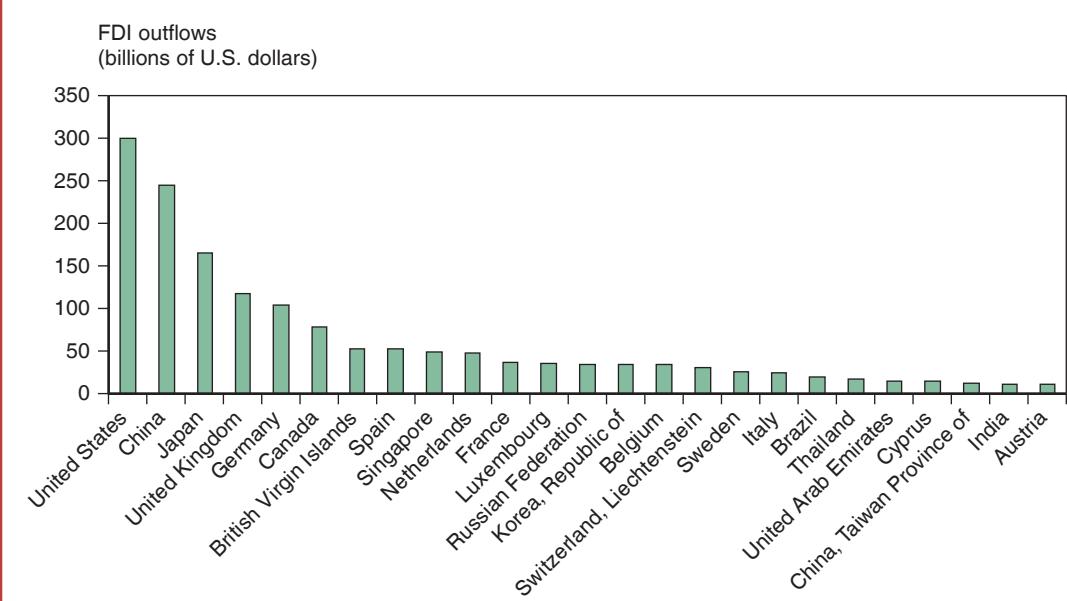
Figure 8-9 shows how the magnitude of worldwide FDI flows has evolved over the last 50 years. We first examine patterns for the world, where FDI flows must be balanced: Hence world inflows are equal to world outflows. We see that there was a massive increase in multinational activity in the mid- to late-1990s, when worldwide FDI flows more than quadrupled relative to world GDP. We also see that the growth rate of FDI is very uneven, with huge peaks and troughs. Those peaks and troughs correlate with the gyrations of stock markets worldwide (strongly dominated by fluctuations in the U.S. stock market) and the related waves of cross-border mergers and acquisitions (greenfield FDI is much more stable over time). The financial collapse in 2000 (the bursting of the dot-com bubble) and the most recent financial crisis in 2007–2009 also induced huge crashes in worldwide FDI flows. Fluctuations in FDI flows are also strongly influenced by changes in corporate tax policy. The U.S. “Tax Cuts and Jobs Act” enacted in 2017 strongly cut the corporate tax rate for U.S. multinationals. In response, those multinationals repatriated a substantial proportion of their foreign earnings, which led to a sharp reduction in the value of their foreign investments and a drop in the value of world FDI.

Looking at the distribution of FDI inflows across groups of countries, we see that historically, the richest OECD countries have been the biggest recipients of inward FDI. However, we also see that those inflows are much more volatile (this is where the FDI related to mergers and acquisitions is concentrated) than the FDI going to the remaining countries with lower incomes. Finally, we also see that there has been a steady expansion

in the share of FDI that flows to those countries outside the OECD. This accounted for roughly half of worldwide FDI flows since 2009. The BRICS countries (Brazil, the Russian Federation, India, China, and South Africa) have accounted for a substantial portion of this increase: FDI flows to those countries have tripled in the past two decades.

Figure 8-10 shows the list of the top 25 countries whose firms engage in FDI outflows. Because those flows are very volatile, they have been averaged over the past three years (2017–2019). We see that FDI outflows are still dominated by the developed economies; but we also see that big developing countries, most notably China (including Hong Kong), are playing an increasingly important role. In fact, one of the fastest-growing FDI segments is flows *from* developing countries *into* other developing countries. Multinationals in both China and India play a prominent role in this relatively new type of FDI. We also see that international tax policies can shape the location of FDI. For example, the British Virgin Islands would not figure in that top 25 list were it not for its status as an international tax haven.<sup>26</sup> Firms from that location that engage in FDI are mainly offshore companies: They are incorporated in the British Virgin Islands, but their productive activities are located elsewhere in the world.

FDI flows are not the only way to measure the presence of multinationals in the world economy. Other measures are based on economic activities such as sales, value



**FIGURE 8-10**

### Outward Foreign Direct Investment for Top 25 Countries, Yearly Average for 2017–2019 (billions of dollars)

Developed countries dominate the list of the top countries whose firms engage in outward FDI. More recently, firms from some big developing countries such as China and India have performed significantly more FDI.

**Source:** United Nations Conference on Trade and Development, *World Investment Report*, 2019.

<sup>26</sup>The British Virgin Islands, as well as the Cayman Islands, are also disproportionate recipients (relative to the size of their economies) of inward FDI: They are both among the top 25 recipients of FDI in the world.

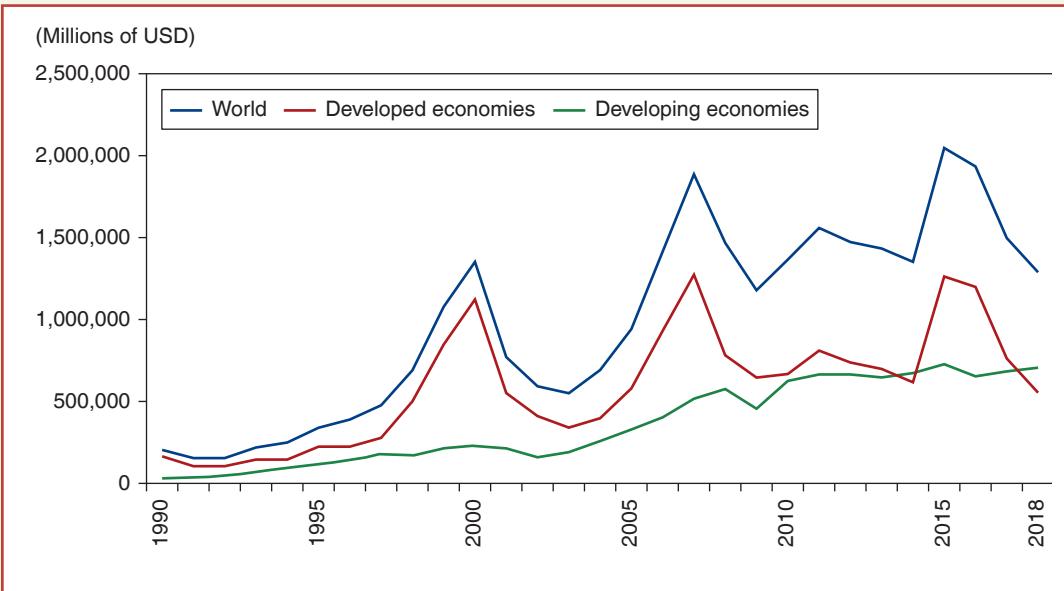
added (sales minus purchased intermediate goods), and employment. Sales of FDI affiliates are often used as the benchmark of multinational activity. This provides the relevant benchmark when comparing the activities of multinationals to export volumes. However, the sales of multinationals are also often compared to country GDPs showing, for example, that the big multinationals have higher sales volumes than the GDPs of many countries in the world. For the world as a whole in 2015, the total sales of the largest 100 multinationals amounted to 10.7 percent of world GDP.

However striking, this comparison is misleading and overstates the influence of multinationals because country GDP is measured in terms of value added: Intermediate goods used in final production are not double-counted in this GDP measure. On the other hand, the intermediate goods that one multinational sells to another are double-counted in the multinationals' sales totals (once in the sales of the producer of the intermediate goods and another time as part of the final value of the goods sold by the user of the intermediate goods). As a result, the appropriate comparison between multinationals and GDPs should be based on value added. (See the box on "Whose Trade Is It?" in the next section for a further discussion of this important measurement issue.) Since value added by multinationals is roughly 20 percent of their total sales, using this metric reduces the contribution of the largest 100 multinationals to around 2 percent of world GDP. This percentage is still nonnegligible, but not as eye-catching as the measure based on total sales.

## CASE STUDY

### COVID-19 and Foreign Direct Investment Flows around the World

Figure 8-11 shows how the magnitude of worldwide FDI flows has evolved over the last 30 years. We first examine patterns for the world, where FDI flows must be balanced: Hence world inflows are equal to world outflows. We see that there was a massive increase in multinational activity in the mid- to late-1990s, when worldwide FDI flows more than quintupled and then again in the early 2000s. We also see that the growth rate of FDI is very uneven, with huge peaks and troughs. Significant world financial and currency events during this period, not all of which having affected adversely FDI flows, include the asset price bubble in Japan (1986–2003), the ERM crisis of the early 1990s (that led to the Black Wednesday of 16th September, 1992, when the United Kingdom was forced to withdraw the pound sterling from the ERM), the early 1990s world recession, the savings and loan crisis of the 1990s in the United States, the Finnish and Swedish banking crises of the 1990s, the 1994 speculative peso crisis in Mexico, the 1997 Asian financial crisis, the 1998 Russian financial crisis, the economic crisis in Argentina (1998–2002), the dot-com crisis and the late 2000s world financial crisis. Among the above, the early 1990s ERM crisis and the worldwide recession, the Argentinian crisis and the financial collapse in 2000 (the burst of the dotcom bubble) and the most recent financial crisis in 2007–2009 seem to have induced slowdowns or huge crashes in worldwide FDI flows. Global FDI flows rose modestly in 2019 at \$1.54 trillion, following the sizable decline registered in 2017 and again in 2018, when they plummeted to below-average levels.



**FIGURE 8-11**  
**Global FDI inflows, 1990–2018**

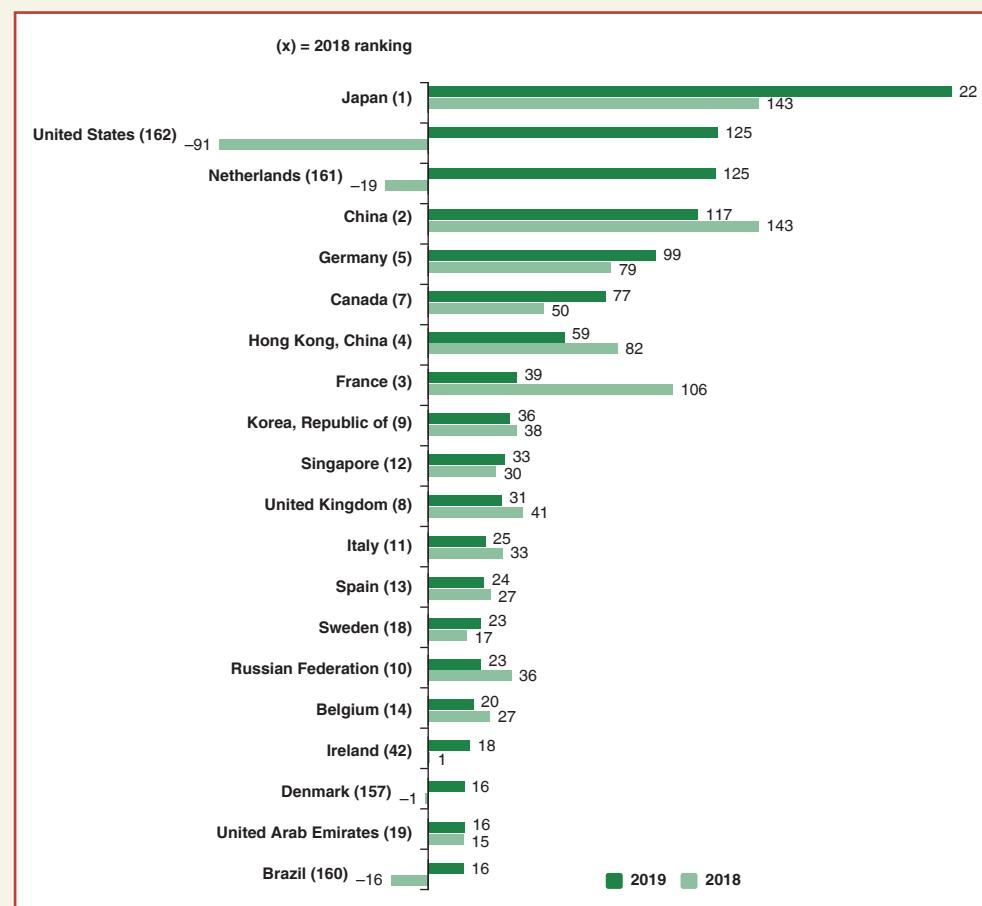
**Source:** United Nations Conference on Trade and Development, *World Investment Report*, 2015.

Looking at the distribution of FDI inflows across groups of countries, historically the richest OECD countries have been the biggest recipients of inward FDI (\$800 billion in 2019, mostly toward the United States, the Netherlands, and the United Kingdom), but those inflows are much more volatile than those flowing into countries with lower incomes. For developing economies, FDI remains the largest external source of finance (\$685 billion in 2019). It makes up around 39 percent of total incoming finance in all developing economies considered as a group (made up of countries mostly from Asia and Latin America).

Figure 8-12 shows the list of the top 20 countries whose firms participate in FDI outflows. While FDI outflows are still dominated by the developed economies, big developing countries, most notably China (including Hong Kong), are playing an increasingly important role. Flows among developing countries is emerging as one of the fastest growing elements of FDI. Multinational firms in both China and India play a prominent role in this.

Other measures of the presence of multinational firms in the world economy are based on economic activities such as sales, value added (sales minus purchased intermediate goods), and employment.

As of June 2020, the crisis caused by the COVID-19 pandemic is expected to have an immediate impact on FDI amount: the physical closure of places of business to contain the spread of the virus causes immediate delays in the implementation of investment projects. Progress on several greenfield projects and many mergers and acquisitions is also temporarily suspended.

**FIGURE 8-12****FDI Outflows, Top 20 Home Economies, 2018 and 2019 (Billions of Dollars)**

Source: United Nations Conference on Trade and Development, *World Investment Report*, 2020.

In the long term, the pandemic is likely to force multinational firms into finding supply chain resilience. It could also lead to a policy push for more domestic self-sufficiency in essential items, which may include industrial capacity in general. Tighter restrictions on international trade and investment have already emerged as a result of the pandemic. The trend toward rationalization of international operations, reshoring, nearshoring, and regionalization is likely to accelerate, leading to downward pressure on FDI.

Consequently, developing economies are expected to see a further decrease in FDI in the range of 30 percent to 45 percent. Unlike with the global financial crisis, developing economies appear more vulnerable to this crisis since their production and investments are less diversified and therefore more exposed to systemic risks.

Source: United Nations Conference on Trade and Development, *World Investment Report*, and UNTAD data <https://unctadstat.unctad.org/wds/TableViewer/tableView.aspx>

## Foreign Direct Investment and Foreign Sourcing Decisions

We now apply the model we developed to analyze the firms' export decisions to additional decisions regarding their operations in a global marketplace. Firms may choose to invest in foreign production sites located closer to their foreign customers; in other words to engage in horizontal FDI. On the purchasing side, firms may choose to source some of their intermediate inputs in Foreign locations. This is vertical FDI whenever the firms take an ownership stake in their foreign suppliers. (We discuss later the additional firm decision to integrate with its suppliers.)

### The Horizontal FDI Decision

As we previously mentioned, firms have an incentive to locate a production facility near their foreign customers in order to avoid the high trade costs associated with exports to that foreign destination. On the other hand, there are also increasing returns to scale in production. As a result, it is not cost effective to replicate the production process too many times and operate facilities that produce too little output to take advantage of those increasing returns. This is called the *proximity-concentration* trade-off for FDI. Empirical evidence on the extent of FDI across sectors strongly confirms the relevance of this trade-off: FDI activity is concentrated in sectors where trade costs are high (such as the automobile industry); however, when increasing returns to scale are important and average plant sizes are large, one observes higher export volumes relative to FDI. Empirical evidence also shows that there is an even stronger sorting pattern for FDI at the firm level *within* industries: Multinationals tend to be substantially larger and more productive than non-multinationals in the same country. Even when one compares multinationals to the subset of exporting firms in a country, one still finds a large size and productivity differential in favor of the multinationals.

Our theoretical model of firm export decisions captured in Figure 8-8 can also be used to explain those different responses to the proximity-concentration trade-off across firms. There, if a firm wants to reach customers in Foreign, it has only one possibility: Export and incur the trade cost  $t$  per unit exported. Let's now introduce the choice of becoming a multinational via horizontal FDI: A firm could avoid the trade cost  $t$  by building a production facility in Foreign. Of course, building this production facility is costly and implies incurring the fixed cost  $F$  again for the foreign affiliate. (Note, however, that this additional fixed cost need not equal the fixed cost of building the firm's original production facility in Home; characteristics specific to the individual country will affect this cost.) For simplicity, continue to assume that Home and Foreign are similar countries so that this firm could build a unit of a good at the same marginal cost in this foreign facility. (Recall that horizontal FDI mostly involves developed countries with similar factor prices.)

The firm's export versus FDI choice will then involve a trade-off between the per-unit export cost  $t$  and the fixed cost  $F$  of setting up an additional production facility. Any such trade-off between a per-unit and a fixed cost boils down to scale. If the firm sells  $Q$  units in the foreign market, then it incurs a total trade-related cost  $Q \times t$  to export; this is weighed against the alternative of the fixed cost  $F$ . If  $Q > F/t$ , then exporting is more expensive, and FDI is the profit-maximizing choice.

This leads to a scale cutoff for FDI. This cutoff summarizes the proximity-concentration trade-off: Higher trade costs on one hand and lower fixed production costs on the other hand both lower the FDI cutoff. The firm's scale, however, depends

on its performance measure. A firm with low enough cost  $c_i$  will want to sell more than  $Q$  units to foreign customers. The most cost-effective way to do this is to build an affiliate in Foreign and become a multinational. Some firms with intermediate cost levels will still want to serve customers in Foreign, but their intended sales  $Q$  are low enough that exports, rather than FDI, will be the most cost-effective way to reach those customers.

### The Foreign Sourcing Decision

A firm's decision to break up its production chain and move parts of that chain to a foreign supplier will also involve a trade-off between per-unit and fixed costs—so the scale of the firm's activity will again be a crucial element determining this outcome. When it comes to **foreign sourcing**, the key cost saving is not related to the shipment of goods across borders; rather, it involves production cost differences for the parts of the production chain that are being moved. As we previously discussed, those cost differences stem mostly from comparative advantage forces.

We will not discuss those cost differences further here, but rather ask why—given those cost differences—all firms do not choose to operate affiliates in low-wage countries to perform the activities that are most labor-intensive and can be performed in a different location. The reason is that, as with the case of horizontal FDI, foreign sourcing requires a substantial fixed cost investment in a relationship with a foreign supplier in a country with the appropriate characteristics.<sup>27</sup> Again, as with the case of horizontal FDI, there will be a scale cutoff for foreign sourcing that depends on the production cost differentials on one hand, and the fixed cost of coordinating with a foreign supplier on the other hand.<sup>28</sup> Only those firms operating at a scale above that cutoff will choose to source from a foreign supplier.

This sorting scheme for firms to import intermediate goods is similar to the one we described for the firm's export and horizontal FDI choice: Only a subset of relatively more productive (lower-cost) firms will choose to foreign-source and import some intermediate goods.

And again, there is overwhelming empirical support for this prediction regarding foreign sourcing: Manufacturing firms that import intermediate goods are substantially bigger and more productive than firms in the same industries that do not import. In the United States in a typical manufacturing industry, an importing firm is two and a half times larger than a firm that does not import. And the average importing firm is also 25 percent more productive—as measured by valued-added per worker.<sup>29</sup> These so-called performance premia associated with foreign sourcing are even larger than the ones we previously mentioned associated with exporting. And as would be expected, there is a huge overlap between those sets of firms that foreign source and

---

<sup>27</sup>Clearly, factor prices such as wages are a crucial component, but other country characteristics, such as its transportation/public infrastructure, the quality of its legal institutions, and its tax/regulation policies toward multinationals, can be critical as well.

<sup>28</sup>Manufacturing firms often make significant investments in their major suppliers, even when they do not have any formal ownership stakes—as with vertical FDI. They “embed” their own employees at their suppliers’ locations that are responsible for major components and systems; and more generally devote significant resources to monitoring those suppliers.

<sup>29</sup>See Andrew B. Bernard, J. Bradford Jensen, Stephen J. Redding, and Peter K. Schott, “Global Firms,” *Journal of Economic Literature* 56, no. 2 (June 2018), pp. 565–619.

export—because both of those activities involve a trade-off in favor of a larger scale. And amongst this selected subset of firms, the largest and most productive are overwhelmingly multinationals. For the world as a whole, multinationals are responsible for 80 percent of all trade flows.

### The Outsourcing Decision: Make or Buy

Our discussion of multinationals up to this point has neglected an important motive. We discussed the **location motive** for production facilities that leads to multinational formation. However, we did not discuss why the parent firm chooses to *own* the affiliate in that location and operate as a single multinational firm. This is known as the **internalization motive**.

As a substitute for horizontal FDI, a parent could license an independent firm to produce and sell its products in a foreign location; as a substitute for vertical FDI, a parent could contract with an independent firm (supplier) to perform specific parts of the production process in the foreign location with the best cost advantage.

What are the key elements that determine this make-or-buy internalization choice? Control over a firm's proprietary technology offers one clear advantage for internalization. Licensing another firm to perform the entire production process in another location (as a substitute for horizontal FDI) often involves a substantial risk of losing some proprietary technology. On the other hand, there are no clear reasons why an independent firm should be able to replicate that production process at a lower cost than the parent firm. This gives internalization a strong advantage; so horizontal FDI is widely favored over the alternative of technology licensing to replicate the production process.

The trade-off between foreign sourcing and vertical FDI is much less clear-cut. There are many reasons why an independent firm could produce some parts of the production process at lower cost than the parent firm (in the same location). First and foremost, an independent firm can specialize in exactly that narrow part of the production process. As a result, it can also benefit from economies of scale if it performs those processes for many different parent firms.<sup>30</sup> Other reasons stress the advantages of local ownership in the alignment and monitoring of managerial incentives at the production facility.

But internalization also provides its own benefits when it comes to vertical integration between a firm and its supplier of a critical input to production: This avoids (or at least lessens) the potential for a costly renegotiation conflict after an initial agreement has been reached. Such conflicts can arise regarding many specific attributes of the input that cannot be specified in (or enforced by) a legal contract written at the time of the initial agreement. This can lead to a holdup of production by either party. For example, the buying firm can claim that the quality of the part is not exactly as specified and demand a lower price. The supplying firm can claim that some changes demanded by the buyer led to increased costs and demand a higher price at delivery time.

Much progress has been made in recent research formalizing those trade-offs. This research explains how this important internalization choice is made, by describing when a firm chooses to integrate with its suppliers via vertical FDI and when it chooses an

---

<sup>30</sup>Companies that provide outsourced goods and services have expanded their list of clients to such an extent that they have now become large multinationals themselves. They specialize in providing a narrow set of services (or parts of the production process) but replicate this many times over for client companies across the globe.

independent contractual relationship with those suppliers abroad.<sup>31</sup> Developing those theories is beyond the scope of this text; ultimately, many of those theories also boil down to different trade-offs between production cost savings and the fixed cost of moving parts of the production process abroad.

## WHOSE TRADE IS IT?

When a U.S. consumer purchases the new (at the time of writing) iPhone 11 Pro Max from Apple, this transaction is recorded as a \$490 import from China (where the iPhone is assembled and tested). That is the total manufacturing cost of this unit. Of course, this consumer will pay much more than that for the phone (the unsubsidized price ranges between \$1,100–\$1,450). This difference is not a pure profit for Apple as it covers the cost of Apple's U.S. workforce involved in the marketing, design, and engineering for the phone (Apple employs over 50,000 nonretail workers in addition to the 26,000 workers in their retail stores).<sup>32</sup> Given the dozens of millions of iPhones bought by U.S. consumers, the \$490 per phone import price represents tens of billions of dollars' worth of imports from China that contributes to



Chikena/Shutterstock

the large trade deficit between the United States and China. This bilateral trade deficit (totaling \$344 billion in 2019) accounts for 56 percent of the overall U.S. trade deficit (in goods and services) with the rest of the world and is prominently featured in the press and by politicians (often as a sign of unfair trade practices).<sup>33</sup>

However, the rise in intermediate good trade (see also the following Case Study) makes these aggregate statistics very misleading. Take the iPhone example. Less than \$10 of the \$490 total cost represents assembly and testing costs (performed in China). The remaining cost represents the iPhone's component costs, which are overwhelmingly produced outside of China (the battery for the iPhone is now produced in China, but that adds just another \$10 of Chinese

valued added). The manufacturing of these components is spread throughout Asia (Korea, Japan, and Taiwan are the largest suppliers), Europe, and the Americas. This last region includes 75 sites in the United States that contribute to the production of iPhone components and employ 257,000 U.S. workers.<sup>34</sup> For example, the glass screens are produced in Kentucky and the Face ID chips in Texas. And many of the component producers outside the United States employ U.S. researchers and engineers. For example, the

<sup>31</sup>See Pol Antràs, *Global Production: Firms, Contracts, and Trade Structure*, Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2015.

<sup>32</sup>Hence the motto on the back of each unit: "Designed by Apple in California. Assembled in China."

<sup>33</sup>In a 2015 Pew Research Center Survey, 52 percent of U.S. respondents thought that the trade deficit with China was a very serious concern.

<sup>34</sup>"How and Where iPhone Is Made: A Surprising Report on How Much of Apple's Top Product Is US-Manufactured," *Finances Online*, July 30, 2013.

Korean company Samsung—one of the largest suppliers of iPhone components (by value)—operates research facilities in Texas and California that employ several thousand workers.

Thus, the reported U.S. iPhone imports from China actually represent imports from many other countries—including the United States—that export iPhone components to China. This entails a decomposition of the \$490 gross import cost by value added based on location (the country where the value was added).<sup>35</sup> Using this more accurate measure of trade at value added, only a tiny fraction of the \$490 import cost represents an import from China. The tens of billions worth of U.S. iPhone imports from China therefore grossly inflate the true value of the bilateral deficit between the two countries.

A similar decomposition from gross value to value added can be performed for all U.S. trade (exports and imports) with all of its trading partners. These bilateral trade flows and trade deficits

can then be converted from gross value (the way they are typically reported) to value added. This accounting change leaves the overall U.S. trade deficit (with the rest of the world) unchanged but can drastically affect the measures of the bilateral trade deficits across various trading partners. And the measure of bilateral trade deficit with China is the most profoundly affected: A recent paper calculates that the true bilateral deficit between the United States and China (at value added) is roughly half of the reported bilateral trade deficit based on gross value.<sup>36</sup> Conversely, the trade deficits with Germany, Japan, and Korea are magnified when measured as value added because those countries manufacture many of the components that are assembled in China and then imported as final goods into the United States.

In a world where production chains increasingly stretch around the world, measures of bilateral trade deficits based on standard trade flows (at gross value) are quickly losing their relevance.

## CASE STUDY

### Shipping Jobs Overseas? Offshoring and Labor Market Outcomes in Germany

When a company offshores part of its production chain abroad, it is then importing an intermediate good or service. For example, a company may import a part, component, or even an entire assembled product; or it may import business services by using accountants and/or call centers located abroad. As we discuss in the next section, the overall effects of trade in such intermediates are very similar to the trade in final goods that we have focused on up to now. Yet, when it comes to the effects of offshoring on employment, there is one additional dimension: The lower price of the imported intermediates not only benefits a firm's owners and their consumers, it also benefits the firm's remaining workers—because the lower price induces firms to increase their purchases of intermediates, which improves the productivity of the remaining workers.<sup>37</sup> This productivity effect also induces the offshoring firm to hire additional workers dedicated to the remaining parts of the production process.

<sup>35</sup>This accounting method based on value added is the same one used to measure a country's GDP output.

<sup>36</sup>Robert C. Johnson, "Five Facts about Value-Added Exports and Implications for Macroeconomics and Trade Research," *The Journal of Economic Perspectives* 28 (2014), pp. 119–142.

<sup>37</sup>For a discussion of this additional dimension of offshoring, and its effects for low-skilled workers, see Gene M. Grossman and Esteban Rossi-Hansberg, "The Rise of Offshoring: It's Not Wine for Cloth Anymore," *The New Economic Geography: Effects and Policy Implications*, 2006, pp. 59–102.

There exist numerous studies that examine the impact of offshore outsourcing on labor market outcomes. In many cases, the overall employment effect for the offshoring firm is either neutral or positive: Several studies of multinationals have found that when they expand their overseas employment, they concurrently also expand their domestic employment.<sup>38</sup> At a macroeconomic level, studies have found evidence that in advanced economies (Australia, Canada, France, Germany, Japan, the Netherlands, the United Kingdom, and the United States), while total employment growth has by far surpassed a mostly stagnating employment picture in low-skilled intensive sectors, no apparent slowdown in aggregate employment has been observed since 1981 and that any possible initial losses in low-skilled occupations was offset by skill premium gains made by shifts toward high-skilled activities and by the creation of new jobs due to offshoring cost-saving effects.<sup>39</sup> In other words, employment growth may be induced by higher productivity and competitiveness of firms.

A recent study on the labor market effects of offshoring on the German economy offers interesting insights on how offshoring affects workers' labor market transitions.<sup>40</sup> The study is of particular interest as its results are based on individual, daily information on workers' job histories and flows ("separations") amongst various employment categories, that is, from employment to another job, to unemployment, and to dropping from the labor force (non-participation). The German economy is the largest in the European Union, with a vibrant export-sector leading to significant trade surpluses and with a growing offshoring share in recent years, mostly in manufacturing but also in the service sector as of late, affected by developments in information and communication technology.

Results from a vast, micro data set (1991–2000) representing 2 percent of German employees are rather revealing: while offshoring seems to affect negatively worker flows from manufacturing employment to nonparticipation, overall job stability in the manufacturing industry is not affected either by "narrow" or "wider" measures of offshoring. For the service sector, overall job stability is actually strengthened by both offshoring measures. Therefore, economy-wide labor market effects of offshoring seem to be at worse neutral. At a disaggregated level, manufacturing medium-skilled workers seem to be the ones most prone to be driven to nonparticipation as a result of offshoring. In the service sector, those workers who benefit most from offshoring seem to be the high-skilled ones, whose job stability rises. In addition, offshoring effects also seem to be heterogeneous by age: in manufacturing, for example, offshoring seems to increase the unemployment risk for older workers but reduce it for middle-aged ones.

---

<sup>38</sup>See Mihir Desai, C. Fritz Foley, and James R Hines, "Domestic Effects of the Foreign Activities of US Multinationals," *American Economic Journal: Economic Policy* (January 2009).

<sup>39</sup>Calista Cheung et al, "Offshoring and Its Effects on the Labour Market and Productivity: A Survey of Recent Literature," *Bank of Canada Review*, Autumn 2008.

<sup>40</sup>Ronald Bachman and Sebastian Braun, "The Impact of International Outsourcing on Labour Market Dynamics in Germany," Seminar Paper, 27 December, 2008.

Given all these facts on the impact of offshoring for employment, the view that offshoring simply amounts to “shipping jobs overseas” is misleading. True, when a firm based in Germany, Canada, or the United States moves a call center to India, or moves the assembly of its product to China, then some specific jobs that used to be performed in the United States are now performed in India or China. However, the evidence shows that in terms of overall employment, those jobs are replaced by other ones in the origin countries: some related to the expansion effect at the offshoring firms and others by firms providing intermediate goods and services to firms located abroad (in shoring). Yet, just as with other forms of trade, trade in intermediates has substantial consequences for the distribution of income. Those call center or manufacturing workers displaced by offshoring are often not the ones who are hired by the expanding firms. Their plight is not made any easier by the gains that accrue to other workers. We discuss these overall welfare consequences in the next section.

## Consequences of Multinationals and Foreign Outsourcing

Earlier in this chapter, we mentioned that internal economies of scale, product differentiation, and performance differences across firms combined to deliver some new channels for the gains from trade: Increased product variety and higher industry performance as firms move down their average cost curve and production is concentrated in the larger, more productive firms. What are the consequences for welfare of the expansion in multinational production and outsourcing?

We just saw how multinationals and firms that outsource take advantage of cost differentials that favor moving production (or parts thereof) to particular locations. In essence, this is very similar to the relocation of production that occurred *across* sectors when opening to trade. As we saw in Chapters 3 through 6, the location of production then shifts to take advantage of cost differences generated by comparative advantage.

We can therefore predict similar welfare consequences for the case of multinationals and outsourcing: Relocating production to take advantage of cost differences leads to overall gains from trade, but it is also likely to induce income distribution effects that leave some people worse off. We discussed one potential long-run consequence of outsourcing for income inequality in developed countries in Chapter 5.

Yet some of the most visible effects of multinationals and offshoring more generally occur in the short run, as some firms expand employment while others reduce employment in response to increased globalization. In Chapter 4, we described the substantial costs associated with involuntary worker displacements linked to inter-industry trade (especially for lower-skilled workers). The costs associated with displacements linked to offshoring are just as severe for workers with similar characteristics. As we argued in Chapter 4, the best policy response to this serious concern is still to provide an adequate safety net to unemployed workers without discriminating based on the economic force that induced their involuntary unemployment. Policies that impede firms’ abilities to relocate production and take advantage of these cost differences may prevent these short-run costs for some, but they also forestall the accumulation of long-run economy-wide gains.

**SUMMARY**

- Trade need not be the result of comparative advantage. Instead, it can result from increasing returns or economies of scale, that is, from a tendency of unit costs to be lower with larger output. Economies of scale give countries an incentive to specialize and trade even in the absence of differences between countries in their resources or technology. Economies of scale can be internal (depending on the size of the firm) or external (depending on the size of the industry).
- Economies of scale internal to firms lead to a breakdown of perfect competition; models of imperfect competition must be used instead to analyze the consequences of increasing returns at the level of the firm. An important model of this kind is the monopolistic competition model, which is widely used to analyze models of firms and trade.
- In monopolistic competition, an industry contains a number of firms producing differentiated products. These firms act as individual monopolists, but additional firms enter a profitable industry until monopoly profits are competed away. Equilibrium is affected by the size of the market: A large market will support a larger number of firms, each producing at a larger scale and thus a lower average cost, than a small market.
- International trade allows for the creation of an integrated market that is larger than any one country's market. As a result, it is possible to simultaneously offer consumers a greater variety of products and lower prices. The type of trade generated by this model is intra-industry trade.
- When firms differ in terms of their performance, economic integration generates winners and losers. The more productive (lower-cost) firms thrive and expand, while the less productive (higher-cost) firms contract. The least-productive firms are forced to exit.
- In the presence of trade costs, markets are no longer perfectly integrated through trade. Firms can set different prices across markets. These prices reflect trade costs as well as the level of competition perceived by the firm. When there are trade costs, only a subset of more productive firms choose to export; the remaining firms serve only their domestic market.
- Dumping occurs when a firm sets a lower price (net of trade costs) on exports than it charges domestically. A consequence of trade costs is that firms will feel competition more intensely on export markets because the firms have smaller market shares in those export markets. This leads firms to reduce markups for their export sales relative to their domestic sales; this behavior is characterized as dumping. Dumping is viewed as an unfair trade practice, but it arises naturally in a model of monopolistic competition and trade costs where firms from both countries behave in the same way. Policies against dumping are often used to discriminate against foreign firms in a market and erect barriers to trade.
- Some multinationals replicate their production processes in foreign facilities located near large customer bases. This is categorized as horizontal foreign direct investment (FDI). An alternative is to export to a market instead of operating a foreign affiliate in that market. The trade-off between exports and FDI involves a lower per-unit cost for FDI (no trade cost) but an additional fixed cost associated with the foreign facility. Only firms that operate at a big enough scale will choose the FDI option over exports.
- Some multinationals break up their production chain and perform some parts of that chain in their foreign facilities. This is categorized as vertical foreign direct

investment (FDI). One alternative is to outsource those parts of the production chain to an independent foreign firm. Both of those modes of operation are categorized as offshoring. Relative to the option of no offshoring, offshoring involves lower production costs but an additional fixed cost. Only firms that operate at a big enough scale will choose to offshore.

- Multinational firms and firms that outsource parts of production to foreign countries take advantage of cost differences across production locations. This is similar to models of comparative advantage where production at the level of the industry is determined by differences in relative costs across countries. The welfare consequences are similar as well: There are aggregate gains from increased multinational production and outsourcing, but also changes in the income distribution that leaves some people worse off.

## KEY TERMS

antidumping duty, p. 220	internal economies of scale, p. 196	monopolistic competition, p. 201
average cost, p. 199	internalization motive, p. 231	multinational, p. 222
differentiated products, p. 200	intra-industry trade, p. 209	oligopoly, p. 201
dumping, p. 220	location motive, p. 231	product differentiation, p. 200
foreign direct investment (FDI), p. 222	marginal cost, p. 199	pure monopoly, p. 198
foreign sourcing, p. 230	marginal revenue, p. 198	vertical FDI, p. 223
horizontal FDI, p. 223	markup over marginal cost, p. 204	
imperfect competition, p. 197		

## PROBLEMS

1. In perfect competition, firms set price equal to marginal cost. Why can't firms do this when there are internal economies of scale?
2. Suppose the two countries we considered in the numerical example on pages 208–212 were to integrate their automobile market with a third country and a fourth country, which have an annual market for 2 million and 1 million automobiles, respectively. Find the number of firms, the output per firm, and the price per automobile in the new integrated market after trade.
3. Suppose that fixed costs for a firm in the automobile industry (start-up costs of factories, capital equipment, and so on) are \$7.5 billion and that variable costs are equal to \$20,000 per finished automobile. Because more firms increase competition in the market, the market price falls as more firms enter an automobile market or specifically,  $P = 20,000 + 200/n$ , where  $n$  represents the number of firms in a market. Assume that the initial size of the U.S. and the European automobile markets are 400 million and 650 million people, respectively.
  - a. Calculate the equilibrium number of firms in the U.S. and European automobile markets *without* trade.
  - b. What is the equilibrium price of automobiles in the United States and Europe if the automobile industry is closed to foreign trade?

- c. Now suppose the United States decides on free trade in automobiles with Europe. The trade agreement with the Europeans adds 533 million consumers to the automobile market, in addition to the 300 million in the United States. How many automobile firms will there be in the United States and Europe combined? What will be the new equilibrium price of automobiles?
  - d. Why are prices in the United States different in (c) and (b)? Are consumers better off with free trade? In what ways?
4. Go back to the model with firm performance differences in a single integrated market (pp. 214–216). Now assume a new technology becomes available. Any firm can adopt the new technology, but its use requires an additional fixed-cost investment. The benefit of the new technology is that it reduces a firm's marginal cost of production by a given amount.
- a. Could it be profit maximizing for some firms to adopt the new technology but not profit maximizing for other firms to adopt that same technology? Which firms would choose to adopt the new technology? How would they be different from the firms that choose not to adopt it?
  - b. Now assume there are also trade costs. In the new equilibrium with both trade costs and technology adoption, firms decide whether to export and also whether to adopt the new technology. Would exporting firms be more or less likely to adopt the new technology relative to nonexporters? Why?
5. In the chapter, we described a situation where dumping occurs between two symmetric countries. Briefly describe how things would change if the two countries had different sizes.
- a. How would the number of firms competing in a particular market affect the likelihood that an exporter to that market would be accused of dumping? (Assume the likelihood of a dumping accusation is related to the firm's price difference between its domestic price and its export price: the higher the price difference, the more likely the dumping accusation.)
  - b. Would a firm from a small country be more or less likely to be accused of dumping when it exports to a large country (relative to a firm from the large country exporting to the small country)?
6. Which of the following are foreign direct investments?
- a. A Chinese company pays \$6.49 million for a stake in the Hilton.
  - b. A Russian businessman buys \$44 billion on FOREX.
  - c. An American company buys another American company; stockholders in the bought U.S. company sell their shares on FOREX.
  - d. A Turkish company builds a factory in Ethiopia and manages the factory as a contractor to the Turkish government.
7. For each of the following, specify whether the foreign direct investment is horizontal or vertical; in addition, describe whether that investment represents an FDI inflow or outflow from the countries that are mentioned.
- a. Vodafone (a U.K.-based company) plans to improve its network and services in Romania after the results in this market lagged behind other countries.
  - b. General Electric (an American company) buys Alstom (another American company) energy assets.

- c. Exxon (an American company) plans the construction of new delayed coker unit in Belgium.
- d. Petro China (a Chinese company) plans to invest in global oil and natural gas assets in a venture in Western Australia.
- 8. If there are internal economies of scale, why would it ever make sense for a firm to produce the same good in more than one production facility?
- 9. Most firms in the apparel and footwear industries choose to outsource production to countries where labor is abundant (primarily, Southeast Asia and the Caribbean)—but those firms do not integrate with their suppliers there. On the other hand, firms in many capital-intensive industries choose to integrate with their suppliers. What could be some differences between the labor-intensive apparel and footwear industries on the one hand and capital-intensive industries on the other hand that would explain these choices?
- 10. Consider the example of industries in problem 9. What would those choices imply for the extent of *intra-firm* trade across industries? That is, in what industries would a greater proportion of trade occur within firms?

## FURTHER READINGS

---

- Pol Antràs. *Global Production: Firms, Contracts, and Trade Structure*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2015. An excellent reference book on the theory and empirics of offshoring, outsourcing, and global value chains.
- Andrew B. Bernard, J. Bradford Jensen, Stephen J. Redding, and Peter K. Schott. “Firms in International Trade.” *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 21 (Summer 2007), pp. 105–130. A nontechnical description of empirical patterns of trade at the firm level that focuses on U.S. firms.
- Andrew B. Bernard, J. Bradford Jensen, and Peter K. Schott. “Importers, Exporters, and Multinationals: A Portrait of Firms in the US that Trade Goods,” in T. Dunne, J. B. Jensen, and M. J. Roberts, eds. *Producer Dynamics: New Evidence from Micro Data*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2009. A nontechnical description of empirical patterns of trade at the firm level that focuses on U.S. firms and multinationals operating in the United States.
- Robert Feenstra. “Integration of Trade and Disintegration of Production in the Global Economy.” *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 12 (Fall 1998), pp. 32–50. A description of how the supply chain has been broken up into many processes that are then performed in different locations.
- Gordon Hanson, Raymond Mataloni, and Matthew Slaughter. “Vertical Production Networks in Multinational Firms.” *Review of Economics and Statistics* 87 (March 2005), pp. 664–678. An empirical description of vertical FDI patterns based on multinationals operating in the United States.
- Keith Head. *Elements of Multinational Strategy*. New York: Springer, 2007. A textbook focused on multinationals.
- Elhanan Helpman. “Trade, FDI, and the Organization of Firms.” *Journal of Economic Literature* 44 (September 2006), pp. 589–630. A technical survey of recent research on models that incorporate firm performance differences and on multinationals and outsourcing.
- Elhanan Helpman. *Understanding Global Trade*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 2011. A nontechnical book that covers both comparative advantage theories of trade and more recent theories of trade based on the firm.

- Elhanan Helpman and Paul R. Krugman. *Market Structure and Foreign Trade*. Cambridge: MIT Press, 1985. A technical presentation of monopolistic competition and other models of trade with economies of scale.
- J. Bradford Jensen. *Global Trade in Services: Fear, Facts, and Offshoring*. Washington, DC: Peterson Institute for International Economics, 2011. A nontechnical book focusing on the effects of increased trade in services for the U.S. economy.
- James Markusen. "The Boundaries of Multinational Enterprises and the Theory of International Trade." *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 9 (Spring 1995), pp. 169–189. A nontechnical survey of models of trade and multinationals.
- Thierry Mayer and Gianmarco I. P. Ottaviano. "The Happy Few: The Internationalisation of European Firms: New Facts Based on Firm-Level Evidence." *Intereconomics* 43 (May/June 2008), pp. 135–148.
- Marc J. Melitz and Daniel Trefler. "Gains from Trade When Firms Matter." *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 26 (2012), pp. 91–118. A nontechnical survey that develops the monopolistic competition model with performance differences across firms in greater detail than in this chapter. The paper also contains a detailed description of the associated evidence for Canadian firms following implementation of the Canada–U.S. Free Trade Agreement.



## Determining Marginal Revenue

In our exposition of monopoly and monopolistic competition, we found it useful to have an algebraic statement of the marginal revenue faced by a firm given the demand curve it faced. Specifically, we asserted that if a firm faces the demand curve

$$Q = A - B \times P, \quad (8A-1)$$

its marginal revenue is

$$MR = P - (1/B) \times Q. \quad (8A-2)$$

In this appendix, we demonstrate why this is true.

Notice first that the demand curve can be rearranged to state the price as a function of the firm's sales rather than the other way around. By rearranging (8A-1), we get

$$P = (A/B) - (1/B) \times Q. \quad (8A-3)$$

The revenue of a firm is simply the price it receives per unit multiplied by the number of units it sells. Letting  $R$  denote the firm's revenue, we have

$$R = P \times Q = [(A/B) - (1/B) \times Q] \times Q. \quad (8A-4)$$

Let us next ask how the revenue of a firm changes if it changes its sales. Suppose the firm decides to increase its sales by a small amount,  $dQ$ , so that the new level of sales is  $Q' = Q + dQ$ . Then the firm's revenue after the increase in sales,  $R'$ , will be

$$\begin{aligned} R' &= P' \times Q' = [(A/B) - (1/B) \times (Q + dQ)] \times (Q + dQ) \\ &= [(A/B) - (1/B) \times Q] \times Q + [(A/B) - (1/B) \times Q] \times dQ \\ &\quad - (1/B) \times Q \times dQ - (1/B) \times (dQ)^2. \end{aligned} \quad (8A-5)$$

Equation (8A-5) can be simplified by substituting in from (8A-1) and (8A-4) to get

$$R' = R + P \times dQ - (1/B) \times Q \times dQ - (1/B) \times (dQ)^2. \quad (8A-6)$$

When the change in sales  $dQ$  is small, however, its square  $(dQ)^2$  is very small (e.g., the square of 1 is 1, but the square of 1/10 is 1/100). So for a small change in  $Q$ , the last term in (8A-6) can be ignored. This gives us the result that the *change* in revenue from a small change in sales is

$$R' = R = [P - (1/B) \times Q] \times dQ. \quad (8A-7)$$

So the increase in revenue *per unit of additional sales*—which is the definition of marginal revenue—is

$$MR = (R' - R)/dQ = P - (1/B) \times Q,$$

which is just what we asserted in equation (8A-2).



# CHAPTER 9

## THE INSTRUMENTS OF TRADE POLICY

Previous chapters have answered the question “Why do nations trade?” by describing the causes and effects of international trade and the functioning of a trading world economy. While this question is interesting in itself, its answer is even more interesting if it also helps answer the question “What should a nation’s trade policy be?” For example, the grittiest part of the Brexit, Britain’s withdrawal from the European Union (EU) negotiations is over trade. Its tariff, quota, and subsidy rules are fixed by its EU membership. Thus, the EU, Britain, and certain third countries are faced with a dilemma of possibilities of trade. Outside the customs union of the EU, Britain would face tariffs and non-tariff barriers, which could add between 2 and 15 percent to the cost of exports, depending on the product.

This chapter examines the policies that governments adopt toward international trade, policies that involve a number of different actions. These actions include taxes on some international transactions, subsidies for other transactions, legal limits on the value or volume of particular imports, and many other measures. The chapter thus provides a framework for understanding the effects of the most important instruments of trade policy.

### LEARNING GOALS

After reading this chapter, you will be able to:

- Evaluate the costs and benefits of tariffs, their welfare effects, and winners and losers of tariff policies.
- Discuss what export subsidies and agricultural subsidies are and explain how they affect trade in agriculture in the United States and the European Union.
- Recognize the effect of voluntary export restraints (VERs) on both importing and exporting countries and describe how the welfare effects of these VERs compare with tariff and quota policies.

### Basic Tariff Analysis

A tariff, the simplest of trade policies, is a tax levied when a good is imported. **Specific tariffs** are levied as a fixed charge for each unit of goods imported (for example, \$3 per barrel of oil). **Ad valorem tariffs** are taxes that are levied as a fraction of the value of the imported goods. In either case, the effect of the tariff is to raise the cost of shipping goods to a country.

Tariffs are the oldest form of trade policy and have traditionally been used as a source of government income. Until the introduction of the income tax, for instance, the U.S. government raised most of its revenue from tariffs. Their true purpose, however, has usually been twofold: to provide revenue and to protect particular domestic sectors. In the early 19th century, for example, the United Kingdom used tariffs (the famous Corn Laws that led David Ricardo to develop his theory of comparative advantage; see Chapter 3) to protect its agriculture from import competition. In the late 19th century, both Germany and the United States protected their new industrial sectors by imposing tariffs on imports of manufactured goods. In the late 19th century, protection was a trade policy instrument used in Europe's development. In Europe, tariffs had a positive impact on a country's growth, specifically on infant industry grounds. For example, Sweden, Italy, and France adopted rather severe agricultural protection policies. Germany adopted protectionist policies in both agriculture and manufacturing and experienced strong growth of its infant industries with set higher tariffs. Also, countries of the New World, such as Canada, Australia, and the United States also chose to protect its manufacturing and infant industries from European competition. The importance of tariffs has declined in modern times because modern governments usually prefer to protect domestic industries through a variety of **nontariff barriers**, such as **import quotas** (limitations on the quantity of imports) and **export restraints** (limitations on the quantity of exports—usually imposed by the exporting country at the importing country's request) and direct subsidies to producers. Nonetheless, tariffs are still used by virtually all nations. And the Trump administration's trade war started in 2018 (see Chapter 4 and the case study in this chapter) shows how quickly those tariff declines can be reversed. Thus, an understanding of the effects of a tariff remains vital, both because they are still used and often threatened and because the effects of other trade policies are often evaluated against the benchmark effects of a tariff.

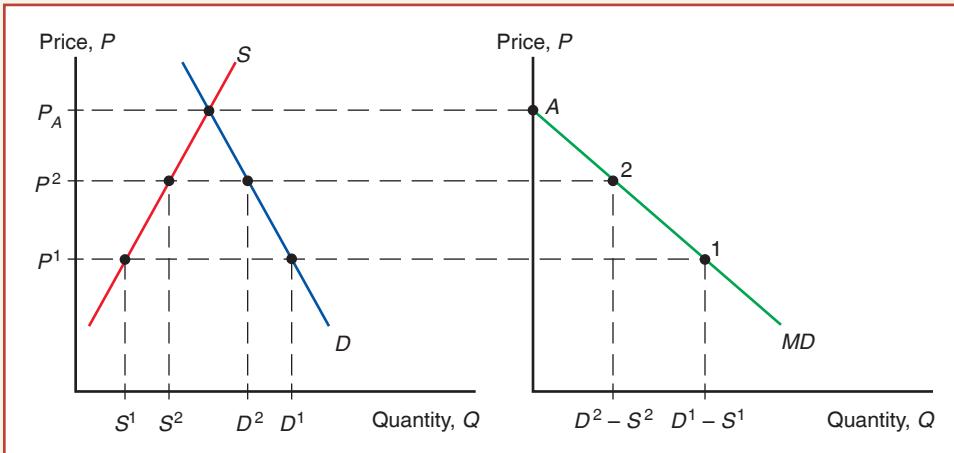
In developing the theory of trade in Chapters 3 through 8, we adopted a *general equilibrium* perspective. That is, we were keenly aware that events in one part of the economy have repercussions elsewhere. However, in many (though not all) cases, trade policies toward one sector can be reasonably well understood without going into detail about those policies' repercussions on the rest of the economy. For the most part, then, trade policy can be examined in a *partial equilibrium* framework. When the effects on the economy as a whole become crucial, we will refer back to general equilibrium analysis.

### Supply, Demand, and Trade in a Single Industry

Let's suppose there are two countries, Home and Foreign, both of which consume and produce wheat, which can be costlessly transported between the countries. In each country, wheat is a simple competitive industry in which the supply and demand curves are functions of the market price. Normally, Home supply and demand will depend on the price in terms of Home currency, and Foreign supply and demand will depend on the price in terms of Foreign currency. However, we assume the exchange rate between the currencies is not affected by whatever trade policy is undertaken in this market. Thus, we quote prices in both markets in terms of Home currency.

Trade will arise in such a market if prices are different in the absence of trade. Suppose that in the absence of trade, the price of wheat is higher in Home than it is in Foreign. Now let's allow foreign trade. Since the price of wheat in Home exceeds the price in Foreign, shippers begin to move wheat from Foreign to Home. The export of wheat raises its price in Foreign and lowers its price in Home until the difference in prices has been eliminated.

To determine the world price and the quantity traded, it is helpful to define two new curves: the Home **import demand curve** and the Foreign **export supply curve**, which are derived from the underlying domestic supply and demand curves. Home import demand is the excess

**FIGURE 9-1****Deriving Home's Import Demand Curve**

As the price of the good increases, Home consumers demand less, while Home producers supply more, so that the demand for imports declines.

of what Home consumers demand over what Home producers supply; Foreign export supply is the excess of what Foreign producers supply over what Foreign consumers demand.

Figure 9-1 shows how the Home import demand curve is derived. At the price  $P^1$ , Home consumers demand  $D^1$ , while Home producers supply only  $S^1$ . As a result, Home import demand is  $D^1 - S^1$ . If we raise the price to  $P^2$ , Home consumers demand only  $D^2$ , while Home producers raise the amount they supply to  $S^2$ , so import demand falls to  $D^2 - S^2$ . These price–quantity combinations are plotted as points 1 and 2 in the right-hand panel of Figure 9-1. The import demand curve  $MD$  is downward sloping because as price increases, the quantity of imports demanded declines. At  $P_A$ , Home supply and demand are equal in the absence of trade, so the Home import demand curve intercepts the price axis at  $P_A$  (import demand = zero at  $P_A$ ).

Figure 9-2 shows how the Foreign export supply curve  $XS$  is derived. At  $P^1$  Foreign producers supply  $S^{*1}$ , while Foreign consumers demand only  $D^{*1}$ , so the amount of the total supply available for export is  $S^{*1} - D^{*1}$ . At  $P^2$  Foreign producers raise the quantity they supply to  $S^{*2}$  and Foreign consumers lower the amount they demand to  $D^{*2}$ , so the quantity of the total supply available to export rises to  $S^{*2} - D^{*2}$ . Because the supply of goods available for export rises as the price rises, the Foreign export supply curve is upward sloping. At  $P_A^*$ , supply and demand would be equal in the absence of trade, so the Foreign export supply curve intersects the price axis at  $P_A^*$  (export supply = zero at  $P_A^*$ ).

World equilibrium occurs when Home import demand equals Foreign export supply (Figure 9-3). At the price  $P_W$  where the two curves cross, world supply equals world demand. At the equilibrium point 1 in Figure 9-3,

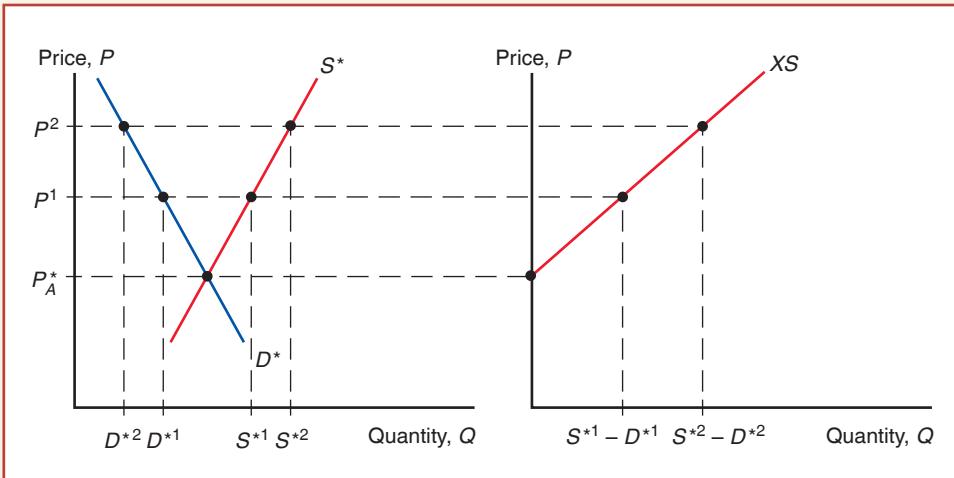
$$\text{Home demand} - \text{Home supply} = \text{Foreign supply} - \text{Foreign demand}.$$

By adding and subtracting from both sides, this equation can be rearranged to say that

$$\text{Home demand} + \text{Foreign demand} = \text{Home supply} + \text{Foreign supply}$$

or, in other words,

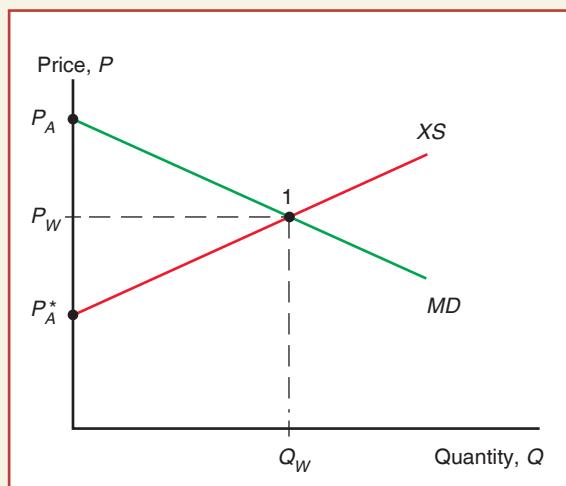
$$\text{World demand} = \text{World supply}.$$

**FIGURE 9-2****Deriving Foreign's Export Supply Curve**

As the price of the good rises, Foreign producers supply more while Foreign consumers demand less, so that the supply available for export rises.

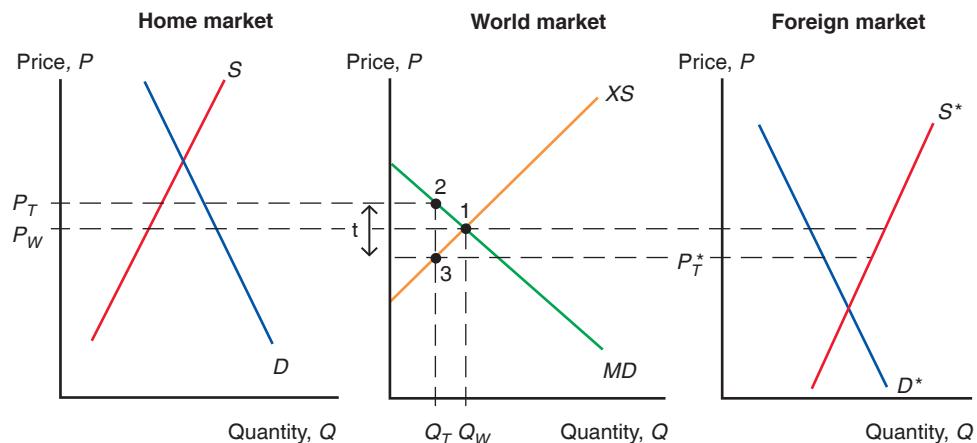
**FIGURE 9-3****World Equilibrium**

The equilibrium world price is where Home import demand ( $MD$  curve) equals Foreign export supply ( $XS$  curve).

**Effects of a Tariff**

From the point of view of someone shipping goods, a tariff is just like a cost of transportation. If Home imposes a tax of \$2 on every bushel of wheat imported, shippers will be unwilling to move the wheat unless the price difference between the two markets is at least \$2.

Figure 9-4 illustrates the effects of a specific tariff of  $t$  per unit of wheat (shown as  $t$  in the figure). In the absence of a tariff, the price of wheat would be equalized at  $P_W$  in both Home and Foreign, as seen at point 1 in the middle panel, which illustrates the world market. With the tariff in place, however, shippers are not willing to move wheat from Foreign to Home unless the Home price exceeds the Foreign price by at least  $t$ .



**FIGURE 9-4**  
**Effects of a Tariff**

A tariff raises the price in Home while lowering the price in Foreign. The volume traded thus declines.

If no wheat is being shipped, however, there will be an excess demand for wheat in Home and an excess supply in Foreign. Thus, the price in Home will rise and that in Foreign will fall until the price difference is  $t$ .

Introducing a tariff, then, drives a wedge between the prices in the two markets. The tariff raises the price in Home to  $P_T$  and lowers the price in Foreign to  $P_T^* = P_T - t$ . In Home, producers supply more at the higher price, while consumers demand less, so that fewer imports are demanded (as you can see in the move from point 1 to point 2 on the  $MD$  curve). In Foreign, the lower price leads to reduced supply and increased demand, and thus a smaller export supply (as seen in the move from point 1 to point 3 on the  $XS$  curve). Thus, the volume of wheat traded declines from  $Q_W$ , the free trade volume, to  $Q_T$ , the volume with a tariff. At the trade volume  $Q_T$ , Home import demand equals Foreign export supply when  $P_T - P_T^* = t$ .

The increase in the price in Home, from  $P_W$  to  $P_T$ , is less than the amount of the tariff because part of the tariff is reflected in a decline in Foreign's export price and thus is not passed on to Home consumers. This is the normal result of a tariff and of any trade policy that limits imports. The size of this effect on the exporters' price, however, is often very small in practice. When a small country imposes a tariff, its share of the world market for the goods it imports is usually minor to begin with, so that its import reduction has very little effect on the world (foreign export) price.

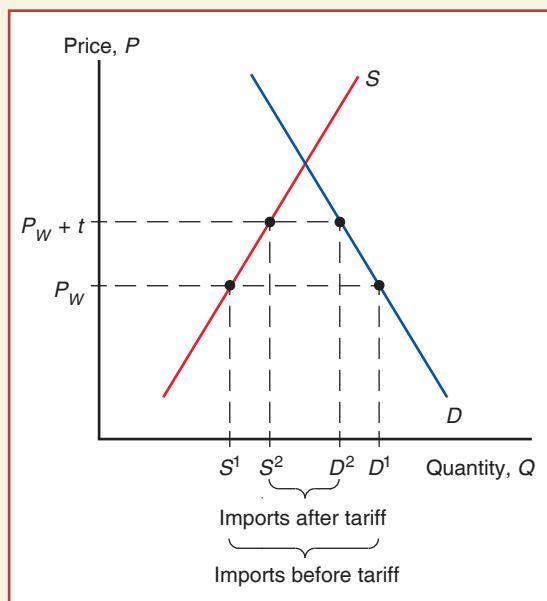
The effects of a tariff in the “small country” case where a country cannot affect foreign export prices are illustrated in Figure 9-5. In this case, a tariff raises the price of the imported good in the country imposing the tariff by the full amount of the tariff, from  $P_W$  to  $P_W + t$ . Production of the imported good rises from  $S^1$  to  $S^2$ , while consumption of the good falls from  $D^1$  to  $D^2$ . As a result of the tariff, then, imports fall in the country imposing the tariff.

### Measuring the Amount of Protection

A tariff on an imported good raises the price received by domestic producers of that good. This effect is often the tariff's principal objective—to *protect* domestic producers from the low prices that would result from import competition. In analyzing trade

**FIGURE 9-5****A Tariff in a Small Country**

When a country is small, a tariff it imposes cannot lower the foreign price of the good it imports. As a result, the price of the import rises from  $P_W$  to  $P_W + t$  and the quantity of imports demanded falls from  $D_1 - S_1$  to  $D_2 - S_2$ .



policy in practice, it is important to ask how much protection a tariff or other trade policy actually provides. The answer is usually expressed as a percentage of the price that would prevail under free trade. An import quota on sugar could, for example, raise the price received by U.S. sugar producers by 35 percent.

Measuring protection would seem to be straightforward in the case of a tariff: If the tariff is an ad valorem tax proportional to the value of the imports, the tariff rate itself should measure the amount of protection; if the tariff is specific, dividing the tariff by the price net of the tariff gives us the ad valorem equivalent.

However, there are two problems with trying to calculate the rate of protection this simply. First, if the small-country assumption is not a good approximation, part of the effect of a tariff will be to lower foreign export prices rather than to raise domestic prices. This effect of trade policies on foreign export prices is sometimes significant.

The second problem is that tariffs may have very different effects on different stages of production of a good. A simple example illustrates this point.

Suppose an automobile sells on the world market for \$8,000, and the parts out of which that automobile is made sell for \$6,000. Let's compare two countries: one that wants to develop an auto assembly industry and one that already has an assembly industry and wants to develop a parts industry.

To encourage a domestic auto industry, the first country places a 25 percent tariff on imported autos, allowing domestic assemblers to charge \$10,000 instead of \$8,000. In this case, it would be wrong to say that the assemblers receive only 25 percent protection. Before the tariff, domestic assembly would take place only if it could be done for \$2,000 (the difference between the \$8,000 price of a completed automobile and the \$6,000 cost of parts) or less; now it will take place even if it costs as much as \$4,000 (the difference between the \$10,000 price and the cost of parts). That is, the 25 percent tariff rate provides assemblers with an **effective rate of protection** of 100 percent.

Now suppose the second country, to encourage domestic production of parts, imposes a 10 percent tariff on imported parts, raising the cost of parts of domestic assemblers from \$6,000 to \$6,600. Even though there is no change in the tariff on

assembled automobiles, this policy makes it less advantageous to assemble domestically. Before the tariff, it would have been worth assembling a car locally if it could be done for \$2,000 ( $\$8,000 - \$6,000$ ); after the tariff, local assembly takes place only if it can be done for \$1,400 ( $\$8,000 - \$6,600$ ). The tariff on parts, then, while providing positive protection to parts manufacturers, provides negative effective protection to assembly at the rate of -30 percent ( $-600/2,000$ ).

Reasoning similar to that seen in this example has led economists to make elaborate calculations to measure the degree of effective protection actually provided to particular industries by tariffs and other trade policies. Trade policies aimed at promoting economic development, for example (Chapter 11), often lead to rates of effective protection much higher than the tariff rates themselves.<sup>1</sup>

## Costs and Benefits of a Tariff

A tariff raises the price of a good in the importing country and lowers it in the exporting country. As a result of these price changes, consumers lose in the importing country and gain in the exporting country. Producers gain in the importing country and lose in the exporting country. In addition, the government imposing the tariff gains revenue. To compare these costs and benefits, it is necessary to quantify them. The method for measuring costs and benefits of a tariff depends on two concepts common to much microeconomic analysis: consumer and producer surplus.

### Consumer and Producer Surplus

**Consumer surplus** measures the amount a consumer gains from a purchase by computing the difference between the price he actually pays and the price he would have been willing to pay. If, for example, a consumer would have been willing to pay \$8 for a bushel of wheat but the price is only \$3, the consumer surplus gained by the purchase is \$5.

Consumer surplus can be derived from the market demand curve (Figure 9-6). For example, suppose the maximum price at which consumers will buy 10 units of a good is \$10. Then the 10th unit of the good purchased must be worth \$10 to consumers. If it were worth less, they would not purchase it; if it were worth more, they would have been willing to purchase it even if the price were higher. Now suppose that in order to get consumers to buy 11 units, the price must be cut to \$9. Then the 11th unit must be worth only \$9 to consumers.

Suppose the price is \$9. Then consumers are willing to purchase only the 11th unit of the good and thus receive no consumer surplus from their purchase of that unit. They would have been willing to pay \$10 for the 10th unit, however, and thus receive \$1 in consumer surplus from that unit. They would also have been willing to pay \$12 for the 9th unit; in that case, they would have received \$3 of consumer surplus on that unit, and so on.

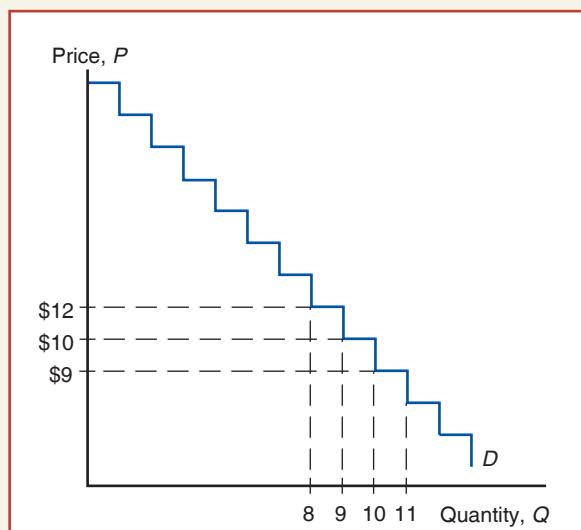
Generalizing from this example, if  $P$  is the price of a good and  $Q$  the quantity demanded at that price, then consumer surplus is calculated by subtracting  $P$  times

<sup>1</sup>The effective rate of protection for a sector is formally defined as  $(V_T - V_W)/V_W$ , where  $V_W$  is value added in the sector at world prices and  $V_T$  is value added in the presence of trade policies. In terms of our example, let  $P_A$  be the world price of an assembled automobile,  $P_C$  the world price of its components,  $t_A$  the ad valorem tariff rate on imported autos, and  $t_C$  the ad valorem tariff rate on components. You can check that if the tariffs don't affect world prices, they provide assemblers with an effective protection rate of

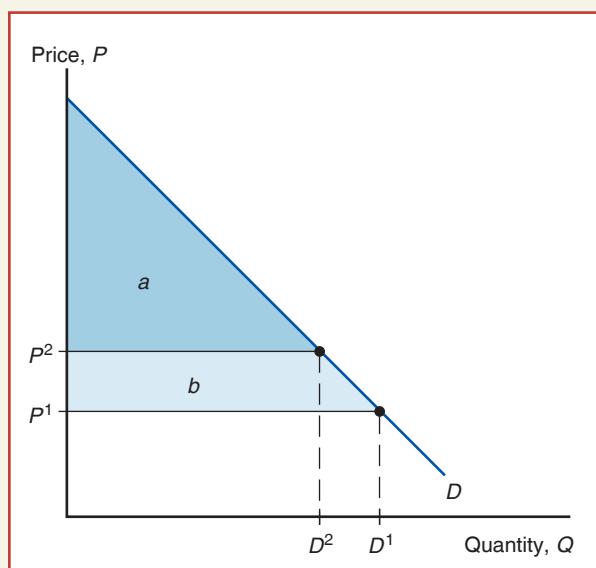
$$\frac{V_T - V_W}{V_W} = t_A + P_C \left( \frac{t_A - t_C}{P_A - P_C} \right).$$

**FIGURE 9-6****Deriving Consumer Surplus from the Demand Curve**

Consumer surplus on each unit sold is the difference between the actual price and what consumers would have been willing to pay.

**FIGURE 9-7****Geometry of Consumer Surplus**

Consumer surplus is equal to the area under the demand curve and above the price.

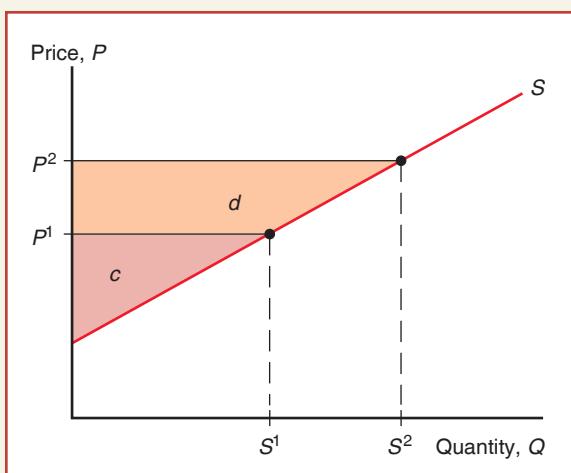


$Q$  from the area under the demand curve up to  $Q$  (Figure 9-7). If the price is  $P^1$ , the quantity demanded is  $D^1$  and the consumer surplus is measured by the areas labeled  $a$  plus  $b$ . If the price rises to  $P^2$ , the quantity demanded falls to  $D^2$  and consumer surplus falls by  $b$  to equal just  $a$ .

**Producer surplus** is an analogous concept. A producer willing to sell a good for \$2 but receiving a price of \$5 gains a producer surplus of \$3. The same procedure used to derive consumer surplus from the demand curve can be used to derive producer surplus

**FIGURE 9-8****Geometry of Producer Surplus**

Producer surplus is equal to the area above the supply curve and below the price.



from the supply curve. If  $P$  is the price and  $Q$  the quantity supplied at that price, then producer surplus is  $P$  times  $Q$  minus the area under the supply curve up to  $Q$  (Figure 9-8). If the price is  $P^1$ , the quantity supplied will be  $S^1$ , and producer surplus is measured by area  $c$ . If the price rises to  $P^2$ , the quantity supplied rises to  $S^2$ , and producer surplus rises to equal  $c$  plus the additional area  $d$ .

Some of the difficulties related to the concepts of consumer and producer surplus are technical issues of calculation that we can safely disregard. More important is the question of whether the direct gains to producers and consumers in a given market accurately measure the *social* gains. Additional benefits and costs not captured by consumer and producer surplus are at the core of the case for trade policy activism discussed in Chapter 10. For now, however, we will focus on costs and benefits as measured by consumer and producer surplus.

### Measuring the Costs and Benefits

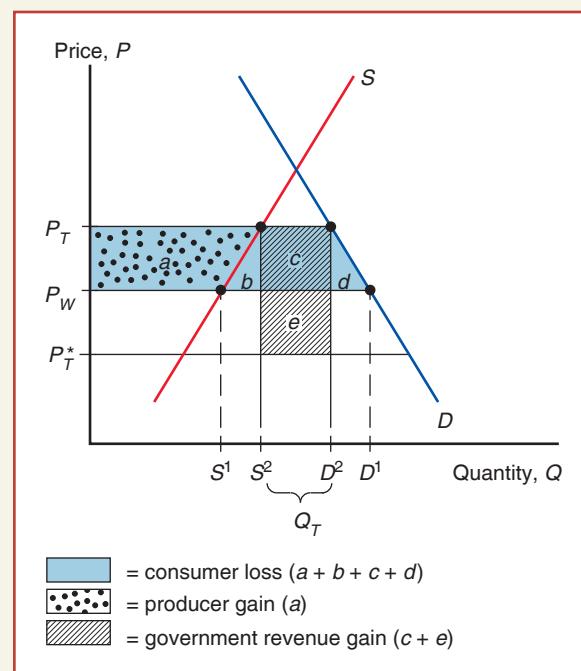
Figure 9-9 illustrates the costs and benefits of a tariff for the importing country. The tariff raises the domestic price from  $P_W$  to  $P_T$  but lowers the foreign export price from  $P_W$  to  $P_T^*$  (refer back to Figure 9-4). Domestic production rises from  $S^1$  to  $S^2$  while domestic consumption falls from  $D^1$  to  $D^2$ . The costs and benefits to different groups can be expressed as sums of the areas of five regions, labeled  $a$ ,  $b$ ,  $c$ ,  $d$ ,  $e$ .

Consider first the gain to domestic producers. They receive a higher price and therefore have higher producer surplus. As we saw in Figure 9-8, producer surplus is equal to the area below the price but above the supply curve. Before the tariff, producer surplus was equal to the area below  $P_W$  but above the supply curve; with the price rising to  $P_T$ , this surplus rises by the area labeled  $a$ . That is, producers gain from the tariff.

Domestic consumers also face a higher price, which makes them worse off. As we saw in Figure 9-7, consumer surplus is equal to the area above the price but below the demand curve. Since the price consumers face rises from  $P_W$  to  $P_T$ , the consumer surplus falls by the area indicated by  $a + b + c + d$ . So consumers are hurt by the tariff.

**FIGURE 9-9****Costs and Benefits of a Tariff for the Importing Country**

The costs and benefits to different groups can be represented as sums of the five areas  $a$ ,  $b$ ,  $c$ ,  $d$ , and  $e$ .



There is a third player here as well: the government. The government gains by collecting tariff revenue. This is equal to the tariff rate  $t$  times the volume of imports  $Q_T = D^2 - S^2$ . Since  $t = P_T - P_T^*$ , the government's revenue is equal to the sum of the two areas  $c$  and  $e$ .

Since these gains and losses accrue to different people, the overall cost-benefit evaluation of a tariff depends on how much we value a dollar's worth of benefit to each group. If, for example, the producer gain accrues mostly to wealthy owners of resources, while consumers are poorer than average, the tariff will be viewed differently than if the good is a luxury bought by the affluent but produced by low-wage workers. Further ambiguity is introduced by the role of the government: Will it use its revenue to finance vitally needed public services or waste that revenue on \$1,000 toilet seats? Despite these problems, it is common for analysts of trade policy to attempt to compute the net effect of a tariff on national welfare by assuming that at the margin, a dollar's worth of gain or loss to each group is of the same social worth.

Let's look, then, at the net effect of a tariff on welfare. The net cost of a tariff is

$$\text{Consumer loss} - \text{producer gain} - \text{government revenue}, \quad (9-1)$$

or, replacing these concepts by the areas in Figure 9-9,

$$(a + b + c + d) - a - (c + e) = b + d - e. \quad (9-2)$$

That is, there are two “triangles” whose area measures loss to the nation as a whole and a “rectangle” whose area measures an offsetting gain. A useful way to interpret these gains and losses is the following: The triangles represent the **efficiency loss**

that arises because a tariff distorts incentives to consume and produce, while the rectangle represents the **terms of trade gain** that arise because a tariff lowers foreign export prices.

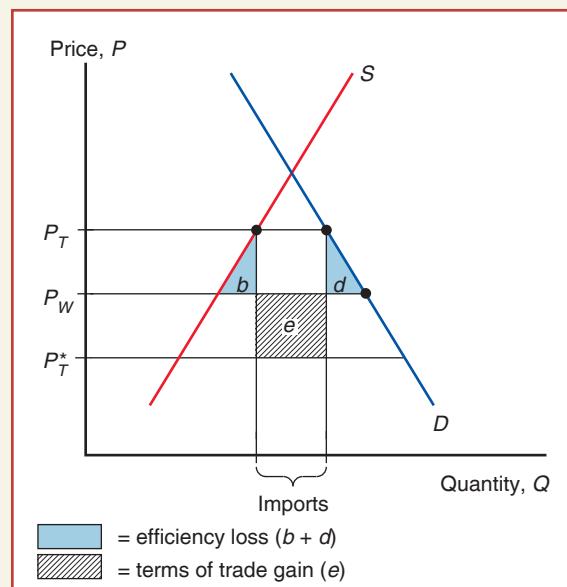
The gain depends on the ability of the tariff-imposing country to drive down foreign export prices. If the country cannot affect world prices (the small-country case illustrated in Figure 9-5), region *e*, which represents the terms of trade gain, disappears, and it is clear that the tariff reduces welfare. A tariff distorts the incentives of both producers and consumers by inducing them to act as if imports were more expensive than they actually are. The cost of an additional unit of consumption to the economy is the price of an additional unit of imports, yet because the tariff raises the domestic price above the world price, consumers reduce their consumption to the point at which that marginal unit yields them welfare equal to the tariff-inclusive domestic price. This means that the value of an additional unit of production to the economy is the price of the unit of imports it saves, yet domestic producers expand production to the point at which the marginal cost is equal to the tariff-inclusive price. Thus, the economy produces at home additional units of the good that it could purchase more cheaply abroad.

The net welfare effects of a tariff are summarized in Figure 9-10. The negative effects consist of the two triangles *b* and *d*. The first triangle is the **production distortion loss** resulting from the fact that the tariff leads domestic producers to produce too much of this good. The second triangle is the domestic **consumption distortion loss** resulting from the fact that a tariff leads consumers to consume too little of the good. Against these losses must be set the terms of trade gain measured by the rectangle *e*, which results from the decline in the foreign export price caused by a tariff. In the important case of a small country that cannot significantly affect foreign prices, this last effect drops out; thus, the costs of a tariff unambiguously exceed its benefits.

**FIGURE 9-10**

### Net Welfare Effects of a Tariff

The colored triangles represent efficiency losses, while the rectangle represents a terms of trade gain.

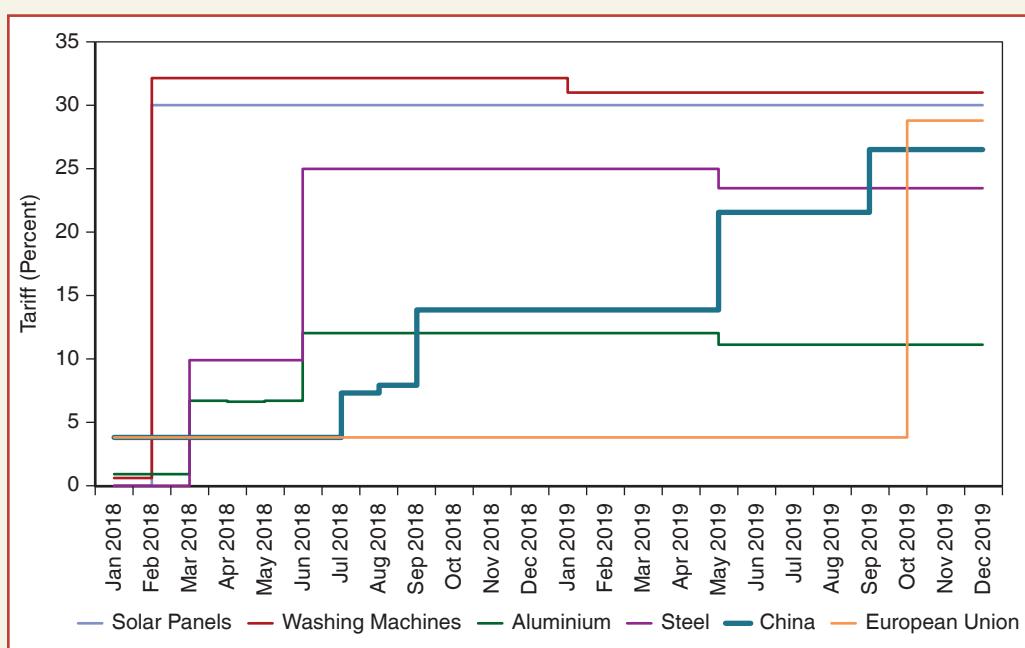


## CASE STUDY

### Winners and Losers of the Trump Trade War

In Chapter 4, we discussed the political economy considerations behind the Trump administration's trade war. Even though the trade protections were intended to boost U.S. manufacturing employment, we detailed why the negative employment impacts massively outweighed the positive ones. In this case study, we examine the welfare consequences of that trade war in more detail using the cost-benefit analysis that we developed in this chapter.

Figure 9-11 shows the timeline of the average tariffs imposed by the Trump administration in 2018–2019. Some tariffs on specific goods (solar panels, washing machines, steel, and aluminum) were imposed on a large set of exporting countries; while some tariffs were targeted at specific countries (mostly China but also the European Union later on) and covered many different goods. By 2019, over 66 percent of Chinese exports to the United States were hit by the tariffs shown in Figure 9-11. The tariffs imposed on the European Union were on a much more limited set of goods as retaliation for a different trade dispute. (See the separate box later on in this chapter on the Boeing-Airbus dispute.)



**FIGURE 9-11**

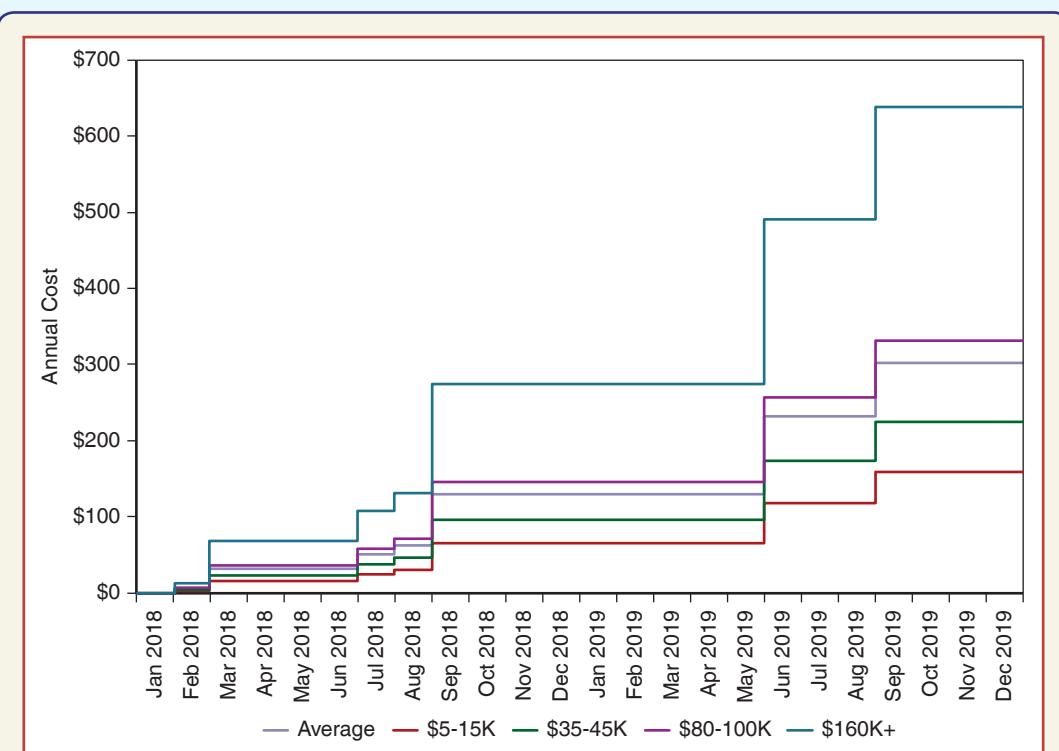
#### Average Tariffs on U.S. Imports

Over the 2018–2019 period, the Trump administration drastically increased tariffs targeted both at specific goods as well as specific trading partners.

**Source:** 2019 update of Pablo D. Fajgelbaum, Pinelopi K. Goldberg, Patrick J. Kennedy, and Amit K. Khandelwal, "The Return to Protectionism," *The Quarterly Journal of Economics* 135, no. 1 (February 1, 2020), pp. 1–55.

Several different studies have examined how those tariff increases have affected the prices of goods consumed in the United States.<sup>2</sup> Because the United States is large (the small-country assumption does not hold), the tariffs could potentially pressure the exporters to the United States to lower their prices. This is the terms of trade gain of a tariff. Indeed, the proponents of the trade war claimed that U.S. consumers (and firms buying intermediate goods) would not face much of a price increase because those foreign exporters would absorb a large portion of the tariff into lower export prices. However, the evidence from those studies has unequivocally found that those potential terms of trade gains were negligible. Thus, the entire brunt of the tariffs has been borne by U.S. firms and consumers.

Figure 9-12 shows how the annual cost of those higher import prices increased in line with the tariffs for U.S. households. After the last round of



**FIGURE 9-12**

### Annual Cost of Higher U.S. Import Prices by Household Income

The higher prices for imported goods due to the new tariffs represented a substantial annual cost increase for U.S. households.

**Source:** Kirill Borusyak and Xavier Jaravel, "The Distributional Effects of Trade: Theory and Evidence from the United States," SSRN Scholarly Paper, October 6, 2018.

<sup>2</sup>See Mary Amiti, Stephen J. Redding, and David E. Weinstein, "The Impact of the 2018 Tariffs on Prices and Welfare," *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 33, no. 4 (November 2019), pp. 187–210; Kirill Borusyak and Xavier Jaravel, "The Distributional Effects of Trade: Theory and Evidence from the United States," SSRN Scholarly Paper, October 6, 2018; and Pablo D. Fajgelbaum, Pinelopi K. Goldberg, Patrick J. Kennedy, and Amit K. Khan-delwal, "The Return to Protectionism," *The Quarterly Journal of Economics* 135, no. 1 (February 1, 2020), pp. 1–55.

tariff increases in 2019, the average annual cost for a U.S. household was above \$300. However, this does not reflect the full cost of the tariffs for U.S. consumers. Some of the imported goods are bought by the U.S. government and lead to higher costs for government services. Some of the imported goods represent capital investment purchases by U.S. firms. Ultimately, those also lead to higher costs for the goods produced with that capital. And lastly, the tariffs also lead to higher prices for U.S. produced goods that compete with the imported goods hit by the tariff.

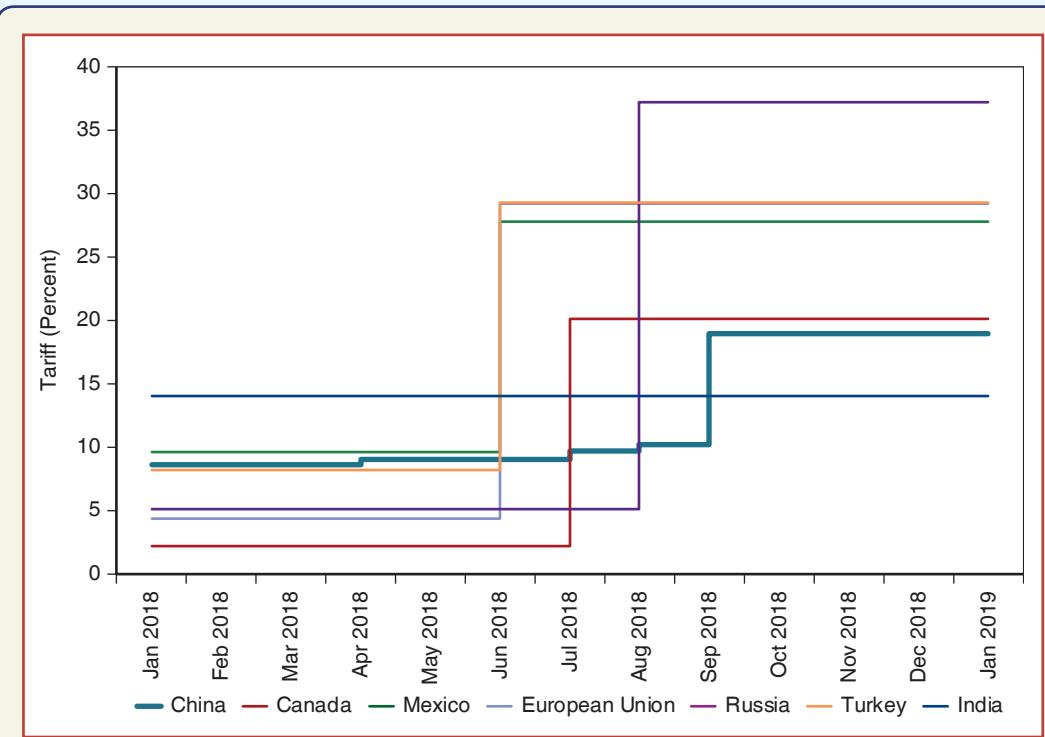
Incorporating those additional costs nearly triples the average annual cost per U.S. household to \$891. This is where the losses from the trade war are concentrated, along with the firms who use the affected goods as intermediate inputs. In the aggregate, this consumer surplus loss, represented by the areas  $a + b + c + d$  in Figure 9-9, totals \$114.1 billion per year for the U.S. economy.<sup>3</sup> As highlighted in the figure, some of that loss for consumers is offset by gains for some U.S. producers from the higher prices. Those are the firms producing steel, aluminum, solar panels, and washing machines—as well as others producing products that competed directly with Chinese imports. They benefit from the higher prices driven by the increased protection: They are the winners from the trade war. The associated increase in their producer surplus, area  $a$ , was estimated at \$31.8 billion per year. And lastly, some of the higher prices paid by U.S. consumers were collected by the U.S. government as tariff revenue. This revenue, area  $c + e$ , amounted to \$65.9 billion. As we previously mentioned, area  $e$ —which would represent a terms of trade gain for the U.S. economy—was nil. Thus, the higher U.S. tariffs from the Trump trade war generated an overall efficiency loss, area  $b + d$ , equal to  $\$114.1 - \$31.8 - \$65.9 = \$16.4$  billion per year for the U.S. economy.

And as we discussed back in Chapter 4, the new tariffs imposed by the United States inevitably led to retaliation by its trading partners. The welfare impacts of those retaliatory tariffs are not included in the costs we just mentioned. Figure 9-13 shows the progression of those retaliatory tariffs (averaged over the set of targeted goods) over time. China responded with higher tariffs in lock-step with the higher tariffs imposed by the United States. And the major steel and aluminum exporters to the United States (other than China) responded to the tariffs on those goods with tariffs on various U.S. imports.<sup>4</sup> All those retaliatory tariffs overwhelmingly targeted agricultural products. (The Chinese tariffs covered virtually all U.S. agricultural exports.)

In contrast to the case for an importing country setting a tariff, the welfare impacts for the exporting country are entirely absorbed by the producers for the targeted goods: Consumers are not affected, and the government does not collect any tariff revenue. In the case of those retaliatory tariffs, U.S. farmers

<sup>3</sup>All of the estimates on the welfare breakdown across consumers, producers, and tariff revenue is based on the 2019 update of Pablo D. Fajgelbaum, Pinelopi K. Goldberg, Patrick J. Kennedy, and Amit K. Khandelwal, “The Return to Protectionism,” *The Quarterly Journal of Economics* 135, no. 1 (February 1, 2020), pp. 1–55.

<sup>4</sup>The European Union was preparing a round of tariff responses to those imposed by the United States in connection with the Boeing–Airbus dispute. But an agreement was negotiated before those tariffs took effect.

**FIGURE 9-13****Average Retaliatory Tariffs on U.S. Exports**

All of the United States' major trading partners responded to the tariffs on their exports with tariffs of their own targeting U.S. exports.

**Source:** 2019 update of Pablo D. Fajgelbaum, Pinelopi K. Goldberg, Patrick J. Kennedy, and Amit K. Khandelwal, "The Return to Protectionism," *The Quarterly Journal of Economics* 135, no. 1 (February 1, 2020), pp. 1–55.

and ranchers were especially hard hit. Following their imposition starting in 2018, exports of U.S. agricultural products to China dropped 63 percent. The Trump administration was concerned about the political repercussions of those tariffs (given that they were so clearly connected to the prior tariffs imposed by the United States on those same countries) and authorized an unprecedented new program at the U.S. Department of Agriculture (the "Market Facilitation Program") to cover direct payments to farmers impacted by the retaliatory tariffs. In 2018 and 2019, those payments totaled just under \$20 billion. The total losses for farmers due to the trade war were likely much larger: Despite those direct government payouts, the number of farm bankruptcies increased by 24 percent in 2019.

## TARIFFS AND RETALIATION

We just saw how a tariff can be used to increase producer surplus at the expense of a loss in consumer surplus. However, there are many other indirect costs of tariffs. In an indefinite economic environment, it is usually quite challenging to spot whether the cause of import decline is due to improved efficiency of companies in the sector, or due to some “covered” government incentives.<sup>5</sup> Nevertheless, imposed tariffs by one country in most cases would be followed by retaliation of another. If country A imposes a tariff, exporting producers of country B are hurt and the country loses out due to the tariff burden. Thus, country B may retaliate with a tariff of its own and form a broader violation of the free trade’s philosophies. As a result of this tariff war, both countries are more likely to end up worse off by the reduced volume trade.

In June 2013, a “solar dispute” occurred between the world’s biggest economies and the world’s biggest trading partners, the European Union (EU) and China. The EU is China’s biggest international trading partner, and China is the EU’s second biggest partner, after U.S.. The trade dispute between Beijing and Brussels was one of the biggest in history. The European Commission, after a nine-month investigation, started a formal complaint from a group of more than 20 European producers, imposed provisional tariffs on solar panels imported from China, and accused subsidized exporters of flooding the EU at prices below production cost. China became the largest producer of solar panels due to a rise in the world’s economy, influencing global trade by lowering prices in the manufacturing sector. Nearly 80 percent of the produced solar panels in China are exported to the EU market. However, according to EU trade commissioner Karel de Gucht, under a fair price the Chinese solar panels would be 88 percent higher than the current price. The inflow of Chinese solar panels became a big issue for local producers and competitors. There were opposing opinions between EU member states, because there were uncertainties about the impact

of the tariff on the sector and the fact that the EU solar industry supports 265,000 jobs across Europe.

Nevertheless, a tariff of 11.8 percent was set to be applied to Chinese solar imports to Europe from June 6, 2013, and was set to rise to an average of 47.6 percent within two months, imposing these duties for up to five years. Although the tariff was set to be applied to imports of solar panels, which value was €21 billion a year, this would have created a negative effect on the entire trading relationship worth about €480 billion and would have undermined the confidence of Chinese companies doing business in Europe.

China, as opposed to the EU solar restraint, took steps to defend its interests and Beijing launched anti-dumping and anti-subsidy probes into imports of European wine. At the same time, exporters of luxury cars were also threatened as China was about to conduct another probe in the EU luxury cars industry. The wine industry is not the EU’s core industry. However, some EU countries, such as France, Italy, and Spain, would definitely experience a negative and damaging impact. China’s total bottled wine imports from 2002 to 2012 skyrocketed to around 15,000 percent and China is the number one importer of French wine. China’s local wine suppliers are the ones who would have benefited the most out of this tariff war.

Nonetheless, China and the EU agreed to settle the dispute through negotiations rather than continuing to heat up the trade war. Trade between these two partners is estimated at €1 billion per day. As a result of this tariff war, the volume of trade between these two countries would be reduced, hurting the economies of both countries.

In July 2013, per the settlement on the solar panel dispute both parties reached an agreement—a minimum price of €0.56 per watt peak for the solar panels until the end of 2015 and a limitation on the export volume. Nearly 90 percent of China’s solar manufacturers agreed to the terms of this settlement.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>5</sup>WTO, “Trade and Public Policies: A Closer Look at Non-Tariff Measures in the 21st Century,” World trade report 2012, [https://www.wto.org/english/res\\_e/booksp\\_e/anrep\\_e/wtr12-2e\\_e.pdf](https://www.wto.org/english/res_e/booksp_e/anrep_e/wtr12-2e_e.pdf)

<sup>6</sup>Yu-Chen, “EU-China Solar Panels Trade Dispute: Settlement and challenges to the EU,” EU-Asia at a Glance, European Institute for Asian Studies, June 2015, <http://www.eias.org>

## Other Instruments of Trade Policy

Tariffs are the simplest trade policies, but in the modern world, most government intervention in international trade takes other forms, such as export subsidies, import quotas, voluntary export restraints, and local content requirements. Fortunately, once we have understood tariffs, it is not too difficult to understand these other trade instruments.

### Export Subsidies: Theory

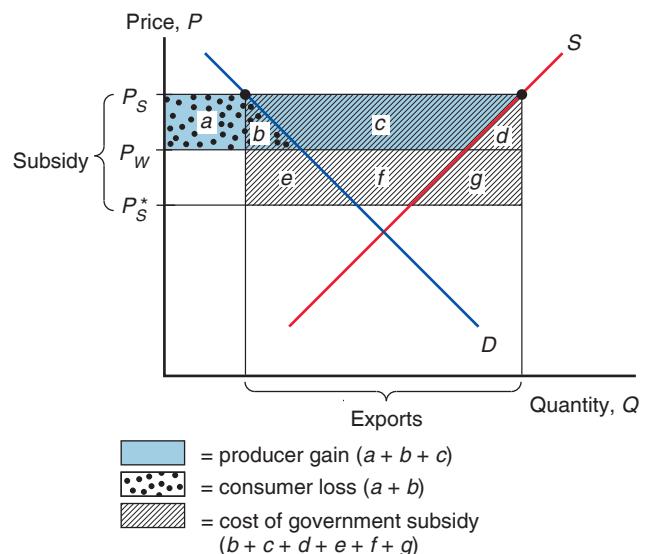
An **export subsidy** is a payment to a firm or individual that ships a good abroad. Like a tariff, an export subsidy can be either specific (a fixed sum per unit) or ad valorem (a proportion of the value exported). When the government offers an export subsidy, shippers will export the good up to the point at which the domestic price exceeds the foreign price by the amount of the subsidy.

The effects of an export subsidy on prices are exactly the reverse of those of a tariff (Figure 9-14). The price in the exporting country rises from  $P_W$  to  $P_S$ , but because the price in the importing country falls from  $P_W$  to  $P_S^*$ , the price increase is less than the subsidy. In the exporting country, consumers are hurt, producers gain, and the government loses because it must expend money on the subsidy. The consumer loss is the area  $a + b$ ; the producer gain is the area  $a + b + c$ ; the government subsidy (the amount of exports times the amount of the subsidy) is the area  $b + c + d + e + f + g$ . The net welfare loss is therefore the sum of the areas  $b + d + e + f + g$ . Of these,  $b$  and  $d$  represent consumption and production distortion losses of the same kind that a tariff produces. In addition, and in contrast to a tariff, the export subsidy *worsens* the terms of trade because it lowers the price of the export in the foreign market from  $P_W$  to  $P_S^*$ . This leads to the additional terms of trade loss  $e + f + g$ , which is equal to  $P_W - P_S^*$  times the quantity exported with the subsidy. So an export subsidy unambiguously leads to costs that exceed its benefits.

**FIGURE 9-14**

#### Effects of an Export Subsidy

An export subsidy raises prices in the exporting country while lowering them in the importing country.



## THE UNFRIENDLY SKIES: SETTLING THE LONGEST RUNNING TRADE DISPUTE

The WTO prohibits subsidies that are contingent on export performance.<sup>7</sup> But what about more general production subsidies to companies that export—even if the subsidies are not directly tied to export performance? (This is the case we described in our theoretical model of export subsidies.) When it can be shown that those subsidies harm producers in other countries, the WTO labels those subsidies “actionable” and allows the impacted countries to impose countervailing duties (tariffs) against the subsidizing country.

In 2021, the United States and the European Union finally agreed to end their 17-year trade dispute regarding the production subsidies received by Boeing and Airbus (the world’s two largest passenger airplane manufacturers). In 2004, the United States filed a case with the WTO complaining that European-owned Airbus had received favorable loan agreements for the development of their new A380 and A350 jumbo jets. The European Union immediately filed

a counterclaim that Boeing received tax rebates and favorable contracting terms from the U.S. government. Both governments claimed that the assistance received by the airplane manufacturers amounted to actionable export subsidies—given the global nature of the market for passenger jets and the intense competition between those two firms. Eventually, after 14 years of legal wrangling and multiple rounds of appeals, the WTO ruled in favor of both cases, allowing both the United States and the European Union to impose countervailing duties.

In 2019, the United States imposed tariffs on European wines and specialty food items. The European Union retaliated with tariffs on U.S. whiskey, nuts, and tobacco. After several additional retaliatory tariff rounds and a change in U.S. administrations, the Biden administration and the European Union agreed in 2021 to remove the tariffs and address the favorable financial treatments received by both airline manufacturers.



Hergel Josef/Shutterstock

### Import Quotas: Theory

An import quota is a direct restriction on the quantity of some good that may be imported. The restriction is usually enforced by issuing licenses to some group of individuals or firms. For example, the United States has a quota on imports of foreign cheese. The only firms allowed to import cheese are certain trading companies, each of which is allocated the right to import a maximum number of pounds of cheese each year; the size of each firm’s quota is based on the amount of cheese it imported in the past. In some important cases, notably sugar and apparel, the right to sell in the United States is given directly to the governments of exporting countries. Another example is the European Union applying tariff quotas to imports of a specified origin.<sup>8</sup>

It is important to avoid having the misconception that import quotas somehow limit imports without raising domestic prices. The truth is that *an import quota always*

<sup>7</sup>Exceptions were initially allowed for developing countries that were supporting key agricultural sectors, but a 2015 agreement commits to ending those exceptions.

<sup>8</sup>European Commission

*raises the domestic price of the imported good.* When imports are limited, the immediate result is that at the initial price, the demand for the good exceeds domestic supply plus imports. This causes the price to be bid up until the market clears. In the end, an import quota will raise domestic prices by the same amount as a tariff that limits imports to the same level (except in the case of domestic monopoly, in which the quota raises prices more than this; see the appendix to this chapter).

The difference between a quota and a tariff is that with a quota, the government receives no revenue. When a quota instead of a tariff is used to restrict imports, the sum of money that would have appeared with a tariff as government revenue is collected by whoever receives the import licenses. License holders are thus able to buy imports and resell them at a higher price in the domestic market. The profits received by the holders of import licenses are known as **quota rents**. In assessing the costs and benefits of an import quota, it is crucial to determine who gets the rents. When the rights to sell in the domestic market are assigned to governments of exporting countries, as is often the case, the transfer of rents abroad makes the costs of a quota substantially higher than the equivalent tariff.

## CASE STUDY

### Tariff-Rate Quota Origin and its Application in Practice with Oilseeds

In international trade, oilseed products are one of the most highly traded agricultural products (others include grains and meat), making this trade one of crucial importance for many countries, either through production or utilization. Oilseeds are crops that have high oil content such as soybeans, rapeseed, sunflower, flax, and cottonseed. In 2001, about 80 percent of the world imports of oilseeds consisted of 11 percent soybeans, 9 percent rapeseed, and other types of oilseeds. Tariff quotas for these goods are more often applied than those for the traditionally protected products like dairy or sugar.

In practice, in 1990s world trade in oilseeds generally was characterized by “low to moderate” applied tariffs and bound tariff rates. The bound tariff rate, which is the maximum allowable rate under a country’s WTO commitments, in most cases is quite high, particularly in developing countries. For instance, the highest tariffs were imposed by Colombia (and Venezuela) with a 15 percent duty to its imports of soybeans in 2001, but it had a bound tariff rate of 97 percent under the WTO commitment. India had a 40 percent applied tariff, but imposed a 100 percent bound tariff rate. In general, tariff rates on oilseed products (for example, vegetable oils and oilseed meal) were much higher than those on whole oilseeds. This situation is called *tariff escalation* and its practice was designed for two main reasons: to protect both domestic oilseed crushing industry and vegetable oil refineries, and to discourage the development of processing activities in the countries of its origin.

In Japan, for example, with limited domestic oilseed production, there was no tariff on whole oilseeds. However, a tariff of 12.9 yen/kg for soy oil/rape oil was imposed with intention to protect local crushers.<sup>9</sup> The EU applied a tariff on soybean oil of 30 percent ad valorem, and had a bound tariff of 45 percent, for soybean meal a tariff was 5 percent (with a bound tariff of 10 percent). Although the duty on soybeans imports was bound duty-free under WTO commitment, all other oilseeds and oilseed meals imports also had free of duty import status under the Dillon round. An alternative measure in the form of non-tariff policies, specifically domestic price support and subsidies, served producers as a substitute. These policies encouraged excess production and distorted trade flows as well as reduced world imports, increased export subsidies, and encouraged low-price selling on world markets. EU oilseed production subsidies, real price supports, budgetary expenditures or oilseed crops increased dramatically (by 1985, the budgetary expenditure on oilseeds and protein crops exceeded 10 percent of the EU's total annual spending on agriculture) for domestic growers resulted in oilseeds production increase.<sup>10</sup> The EU nearly tripled oilseed production between 1980 and 1990, which contributed to a 53 percent drop in the volume of US soybean and soybean meals export for the same period, displacing and impairing US exports to the EU. This led to an oilseeds dispute between the United States and the EU in the end of 1980s, which was later solved by the Blair House agreement on oilseeds.<sup>11</sup>

Uruguay's Round Agreement on Agriculture (URAA) had greatly influenced the process of trade barriers reduction and the major achievement was cut in tariff levels on agricultural products, lowering the volume of and expenditures on subsidized export and reducing domestic programs for agriculture. Participating developed countries in URAA were required to reduce existing tariffs on agricultural products on an average of 36 percent. Whereas developing countries had committed to smaller average tariff reductions of 24 percent and longer transition period compared to developed countries. Another important requirement was to convert existing non-tariff agricultural trade barriers to tariffs, establishing a tariff-rate quota (TRQ).

<sup>9</sup>Mitchell D. A note on rising food prices, The World Bank's Development prospects group, July 2008, Policy research working paper 4682; and *Oils Crop Situation and Outlook Yearbook / OCS-2006/May 2006*, Economic Research Service, USDA.

<sup>10</sup>Ames Glenn C.W., Gunter L., Davis C.D. (1996) Analysis of USA-European Community oilseeds agreement, *Agriculture Economics* 15, p.97–112.

<sup>11</sup>Oilseed dispute narrowed. During GATT Uruguay Round in 1992 a memorandum of Understanding on oilseeds (often referred to as the “Blair House Agreement”) was negotiated with the U.S., resolving a dispute over EU domestic support programs that weakened the U.S. access to the EU oilseeds market. As of the agreement, a number of restrictions on production support of oilseeds was established. The EU oilseeds planting area of certain type was limited (specifically rapeseed, sunflower seed and soybeans), while certain support allowance of the production of some oilseeds to continue. The limitation included on area that should not have exceeded 5.482 million hectares. The agreement also allowed for modification of the supported area in regards to EU enlargement. While the original maximum base was set at 5.128 million hectares, it was modified to cover EU15 in 1995 with no amendments for subsequent EU enlargement.

The idea by TRQ was to impose a lower tariff rate to imports below a certain quantitative limit and higher tariffs to imports above that initial limit. As of URAA tariffs were to be reduced from the base levels to a bound level. According to URAA, the size of quota was aimed to be equal or greater than actual import levels during a recent period and required that out-of-quota bound tariff rates be reduced from the based tariff rates. In 1997 40 percent of 1,366 TRQs were supposed to increase their quotas, indicating easier market access.<sup>12</sup> Of these TRQs, 124 (which is 9 percent) were applied to oilseeds and products. The 21 member states of the WTO notified having at least one TRQ on oilseeds or oilseed products. For instance, Iceland had 22 TRQs—Colombia, 20; Venezuela, 19; South Africa, 8; Guatemala, 7; and Thailand and Morocco had 6.<sup>13</sup> The URAA fixed an upper bound on tariff levels for agricultural commodities, however these limits were often quite high, varying by country.

**FIGURE 9-15**  
**World Oilseed Tariff Rates in cents per kg**

**Source:** *Oil Crops Situation and Outlook Yearbook*, May 2007, Economic Research Service, USDA.

Country	Base Tariff Rate	Bound Tariff Rate (Rate of Over Quota Tariff)	Applied Tariff (TRQ)
USA	0.7	0.45	0.53
Mexico	25	22.5	15
Columbia, Venezuela	108	97	15
Poland	10	5	3
India	100	100	40
Malaysia	13	10	0

The establishment of TRQ aimed to bring more transparency of non-tariff barriers to trade and though was a major achievement, the level of trade creation resulting from these TRQs were quite modest. For TRQ quotas to be more effective and for the trade to be more liberalized, reduced tariffs (or elimination) on imports above the quota or increasing the quota level would be far better options for overall trade. The modest result was mostly linked to high over-quotas tariff rates,

<sup>12</sup>*Oils Crop Situation and Outlook Yearbook / OCS-2006/May 2006*, Economic Research Service, USDA.

<sup>13</sup>As of URRA requirement, imports that meet a minimum of 5 percent of domestic consumption by the end of the implementation period. Countries that already import over that amount are not required to raise their quota level.

which was a barrier to trade in oilseeds and products. Overall tariff-rate quota became a more often used form of domestic market protection and in a way a gradual alternative to international trade liberalization form.

### PERSPECTIVE ON EU OILSEED MARKET

The EU is one of the top importers of oilseeds products, and oilseeds consumption is higher than the net production minus exports. In fact, the EU is highly dependent on imports of oilseed and its products (protein meals and vegetable oils). Oilseeds (rapeseed, sunflower seed, soybeans, and linseed) are grown in the European Union for food, feed, fuel and industrial purposes. Nearly all oilseeds are crushed and processed to produce oil and meal.<sup>14</sup> Vegetable oils are used in the food industry, biodiesel and other industries. Oilseeds meals are also essential protein-rich animal feed ingredient. Some oilseeds have limited or no domestic production (such as soybeans, soybean products and palm oil). Around 54 percent of soybean meal, around 50 percent of sunflower meal and more than 80 percent of soybeans for crush are imported to meet the domestic demand. In the EU, cereal production represents the most important use of arable land, whereas 5.4 million ha are allocated to the production of oilseeds. Currently, about 2/3 of the oilseeds consumed within the European Union each year are produced in the EU and the rest is being imported. Since 2012, there are no specific domestic support measures for the production of oilseeds in the EU and no longer any restriction on the EU's oilseed area.

**FIGURE 9-16**

**Tariffs on oilseeds as well as oilseed meals are set at zero, some duties vegetable oils (except olive oil) range from 0 to 12.8 percent.**

Oilseeds and protein crops in the EU, Directorate-General for Agriculture and Rural Development, Unit C5, European Commission, 2011.<sup>15</sup>

Description	Duty percent
Oilseeds	0
Vegetable oils, other than olive oil	0–12.8
Oilseed meals	0

<sup>14</sup>OECD (2003) Agriculture, Trade and the Environment: The Arable Crop Sector.

<sup>15</sup>For the olive oil market, the European Commission can provide private storage aid in case of disturbances in the olive oil market or the average price for the following products are recorded during a two weeks' period: Eur 1,779/tonne for extra virgin olive oil, Eur 1,710/tonne for virgin olive oil, Eur 1,524/tonne for lampante olive oil; and the European Commission, Directorate-General for Agriculture and Rural Development, Unit C5, October, 2011.

From January 2002 to June 2008, the world's food prices saw a drastic growth due to several factors. The rapid increase in oilseed prices was mostly caused by a large increase in biofuels production from grains and oilseeds both in the US and EU. The growth in the EU poultry sector was mostly responsible for the growing demand for protein feed. With mandatory use of biofuels in the EU by 2020 (as stated by the 2009 Renewable Energy Directive)<sup>16</sup>, the use of vegetable oils in the EU also increased, causing prices to rise as well as pushing the domestic oilseed production to grow.

## Voluntary Export Restraints

A variant on the import quota is the **voluntary export restraint (VER)**, also known as a voluntary restraint agreement (VRA). (Welcome to the bureaucratic world of trade policy, where everything has a three-letter symbol!) A VER is a quota on trade imposed from the exporting country's side instead of the importer's. The most famous example is the limitation on auto exports to the United States enforced by Japan after 1981. The oil crisis in 1979 drastically raised oil prices and caused demand in the U.S. market to shift abruptly toward smaller cars. The cost advantage in favor of Japanese-produced cars was especially salient in this segment of the car market, and U.S. imports of Japanese cars soared as U.S. production declined. Strong political forces in the United States demanded protection. Rather than act unilaterally and risk creating a trade war, the U.S. and Japanese governments negotiated a "voluntary" limit on Japanese car exports to the United States.

As in this example, voluntary export restraints are generally imposed at the request of the importer and are agreed to by the exporter to forestall other trade restrictions. As we will see in Chapter 10, certain political and legal advantages have made VERs preferred instruments of trade policy in some cases. From an economic point of view, however, a voluntary export restraint is exactly like an import quota where the licenses are assigned to foreign governments and is therefore very costly to the importing country. A VER is always more costly to the importing country than a tariff that limits imports by the same amount. The difference is that what would have been revenue under a tariff becomes rents earned by foreigners under the VER, so that the VER clearly produces a loss for the importing country. The U.S. government estimated that the VER with Japan cost U.S. auto consumers \$3.2 billion in 1984 alone with no offsetting tariff revenue collected by the U.S. government.

<sup>16</sup>Directive 2009/28/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 23 April 2009 on the promotion of the use of energy from renewable sources and amending and subsequently repealing Directives 2001/77/EC and 2003/30/EC.

Some voluntary export agreements cover more than one country. The most famous multilateral agreement is the Multi-Fiber Arrangement, which limited textile exports from 22 countries until the beginning of 2005. Such multilateral voluntary restraint agreements are known by yet another three-letter abbreviation: OMA, for “orderly marketing agreement.” Since then, the WTO has changed its rules and no longer allows VERs. However, this only applies to an agreement negotiated by governments and imposed onto exporters. In 2013, a European Union–China trade dispute over a surge in Chinese exports of solar panels was resolved by the Chinese producers “agreeing” to limit their exports to EU countries below 7 gigawatts-worth of solar panels per year—along with a minimum price floor for those units.

### Local Content Requirements

A **local content requirement** (also called *rules of origin*) is a regulation that requires some specified fraction of a final good to be produced domestically. In some cases, this fraction is specified in physical units, like the U.S. oil import quota in the 1960s. In other cases, the requirement is stated in value terms by requiring that some minimum share of the price of a good represent domestic value added.

From the point of view of the domestic producers of parts, a local content regulation provides protection in the same way an import quota does. From the point of view of the firms that must buy locally, however, the effects are somewhat different. Local content does not place a strict limit on imports. Instead, it allows firms to import more, provided that they also buy more domestically. This means that the effective price of inputs to the firm is an average of the price of imported and domestically produced inputs.

Consider, for instance, the earlier automobile example in which the cost of imported parts is \$6,000. Suppose purchasing the same parts domestically would cost \$10,000, but assembly firms are required to use 50 percent domestic parts. Then they will face an average cost of parts of  $\$8,000 = (0.5 \times \$6,000 + 0.5 \times \$10,000)$ , which will be reflected in the final price of the car.

The important point is that a local content requirement does not produce either government revenue or quota rents. Instead, the difference between the prices of imports and domestic goods in effect gets averaged in the final price and is passed on to consumers.

Local content requirements are very common in certain industries, such as the automotive sector. When the North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA; see the case study in Chapter 8) was recently renegotiated as the United States-Mexico-Canada Agreement (USMCA) in 2020, the regional content requirements for vehicles was increased from 62.5 to 75 percent. This means that any car or truck exported within North America must contain at least 75 percent of content produced within the region. And an additional requirement was added stipulating that 45 percent of the content must be made by workers earning at least \$16 an hour. This effectively excludes most of the auto parts made in Mexico, where the wages are below that threshold. As we discuss in Chapter 10 (see the box on free trade area versus customs union), it is common for free trade areas such as NAFTA-USMCA to include local content requirements to address differences in each country’s tariffs with trading partners outside the region. However, those content restrictions are much more stringent than those needed to ensure that importers do not exploit differences in automotive tariffs between the North American countries. For example, the cost share of vehicle assembly (labor and capital services) is below 20 percent. A content requirement of 75 percent does much more than ensure that a vehicle is assembled in North America; it requires that most of the parts used

in the assembly process be produced in North America and that 45 percent of them be produced in either the United States or Canada—given the wage requirement. The U.S. negotiators of the new USMCA treaty made clear that their intent was to impose additional restrictions on vehicles assembled in Mexico intended for sale in the U.S. market. In contrast, a vehicle assembled and sold in the United States need not satisfy any of those content restrictions.

As we describe in the following box, governments also face local content requirements for their own purchases.

## HEALTHCARE PROTECTION WITH LOCAL CONTENT REQUIREMENTS

Local content requirements (LCR) are attracting more and more attention as a non-tariff form of protectionism providing domestic producers additional benefits over the foreign competitors. In fact, both developed and developing countries have turned their interest towards this policy. While LCR has been around for a long period of time, in recent years a substantial increase has been witnessed in the use of these restrictions, especially after the financial crisis of 2008. Using LCR, various governments have put in efforts to improve domestic employment and industrial performance.

For example, the healthcare sector in Brazil is divided into three groups: medical services and hospitals, medical devices, and pharmaceuticals. While hospitals and other providers of medical services in Brazil cannot be owned by foreign companies, foreign companies are actively engaged in other healthcare sector groups: imported medical devices make around 60 percent and pharmaceuticals, 24 percent of Brazilian market. In 2011, the Brazilian pharmaceutical market was around \$30 billion, while the medical devices sector was more than 10 times bigger and made roughly \$4 billion. The Brazilian Ministry of Health controls the market of healthcare products and services through a licensing system. In order to sell either

pharmaceutical or healthcare products, a producer (regardless the origin of the goods) must receive approval of the products registration as well as obtain a license.

The idea of these requirements is to set a population's sanitary control of production and marketing. As a result, it creates additional costs and requires additional time for foreign companies to register medical devices in the Brazilian market. Although registration requirements do not fall into the discriminative policy, it generates delays in business while waiting for approvals, permissions, and additional costs. Around 70 percent of Brazilian pharmaceuticals are manufactured by foreign companies, thus, foreign companies tend to acquire Brazilian companies or construct green field production plants because of the local content requirements and other aspects. In addition, with the target to create demand for domestic products and positively influence economy and increase employment rate in 2012, the Brazilian government established a LCR policy—up to 25 percent preferences for Brazilian medical devices and medicine in government contracts. This local content requirement obviously has a discriminative nature for those devices and medication produced abroad.<sup>17</sup>

---

<sup>17</sup>Hufbauer G.C., Schott J.J., Cimino C., Vieiro M, Wada E. Local content requirements: Report on a global problem, Peterson Institute for International Economics (June 28, 2013).

## Other Trade Policy Instruments

Governments influence trade in many other ways. We list some of them briefly.

1. *Export credit subsidies.* This is like an export subsidy except that it takes the form of a subsidized loan to the buyer. The United States, like most other countries, has a government institution, the Export-Import Bank, devoted to providing at least slightly subsidized loans to aid exports.
2. *National procurement.* Purchases by the government or strongly regulated firms can be directed toward domestically produced goods even when these goods are more expensive than imports. In many countries, the major firms operating in sectors such as telecommunication, power generation and distribution, transportation, and mining are either partially or fully owned by the government. Those firms often face pressure to source from domestic suppliers.
3. *Red-tape barriers.* Sometimes a government wants to restrict imports without doing so formally. Fortunately or unfortunately, it is easy to twist normal health, safety, and customs procedures in order to place substantial obstacles in the way of trade. The classic example is the French decree in 1982 that all Japanese videocassette recorders had to pass through the tiny customs house at Poitiers (an inland city nowhere near a major port)—effectively limiting the actual imports to a handful.

## The Effects of Trade Policy: A Summary

The effects of the major instruments of trade policy are usefully summarized by Table 9-1, which compares the effect of four major kinds of trade policy on the welfare of consumers.

Effects of Alternative Trade Policies				
Policy	Tariff	Export Subsidy	Import Quota	Voluntary Export Restraint
Producer surplus	Increases	Increases	Increases	Increases
Consumer surplus	Falls	Falls	Falls	Falls
Government revenue	Increases	Falls (government spending rises)	No change (rents to license holders)	No change (rents to foreigners)
Overall national welfare	Ambiguous (falls for small country)	Falls	Ambiguous (falls for small country)	Falls

This table certainly does not look like an advertisement for interventionist trade policy. All four trade policies benefit producers and hurt consumers. The effects of the policies on economic welfare are at best ambiguous; two of the policies definitely hurt the nation as a whole, while tariffs and import quotas are potentially beneficial only for large countries that can drive down world prices.

Why, then, do governments so often act to limit imports or promote exports? We turn to this question in Chapter 10.

## SUMMARY

1. In contrast to our earlier analysis, which stressed the general equilibrium interaction of markets, for analysis of trade policy it is usually sufficient to use a partial equilibrium approach.
2. A tariff drives a wedge between foreign and domestic prices, raising the domestic price but by less than the tariff rate. An important and relevant special case, however, is that of a “small” country that cannot have any substantial influence on foreign prices. In the small-country case, a tariff is fully reflected in domestic prices.
3. The costs and benefits of a tariff or other trade policy may be measured using the concepts of consumer surplus and producer surplus. Using these concepts, we can show that the domestic producers of a good gain because a tariff raises the price they receive; the domestic consumers lose, for the same reason. There is also a gain in government revenue.
4. If we add together the gains and losses from a tariff, we find that the net effect on national welfare can be separated into two parts: On one hand is an efficiency loss, which results from the distortion in the incentives facing domestic producers and consumers. On the other hand is a terms of trade gain, reflecting the tendency of a tariff to drive down foreign export prices. In the case of a small country that cannot affect foreign prices, the second effect is zero, so that there is an unambiguous loss.
5. The analysis of a tariff can be readily adapted to analyze other trade policy measures, such as export subsidies, import quotas, and voluntary export restraints. An export subsidy causes efficiency losses similar to those of a tariff but compounds these losses by causing a deterioration of the terms of trade. Import quotas and voluntary export restraints differ from tariffs in that the government gets no revenue. Instead, what would have been government revenue accrues as rents to the recipients of import licenses (in the case of a quota) and to foreigners (in the case of a voluntary export restraint).

## KEY TERMS

ad valorem tariff, p. 242	export subsidy, p. 258	production distortion loss, p. 252
consumer surplus, p. 248	export supply curve, p. 243	quota rent, p. 260
consumption distortion loss, p. 252	import demand curve, p. 243	specific tariff, p. 242
effective rate of protection, p. 247	import quota, p. 243	tariff equivalent, p. 261
efficiency loss, p. 251	local content requirement, p. 265	terms of trade gain, p. 252
export restraint, p. 243	nontariff barriers, p. 243	voluntary export restraint (VER), p. 264
	producer surplus, p. 249	

**PROBLEMS**

- 1.** Home's demand curve for books is

$$D = 50 - 10P.$$

Its supply curve is

$$S = 10 + 10P.$$

Derive and graph Home's *import* demand schedule. What would the price of books be in the absence of trade?

- 2.** Now add Foreign, which has a demand curve

$$D^* = 60 - 10P$$

and a supply curve

$$S^* = 20 + 10P.$$

- a.** Derive and graph Foreign's export supply curve and find the price of books that would prevail in Foreign in the absence of trade.
- b.** Now allow Foreign and Home to trade with each other, at zero transportation cost. Find and graph the equilibrium under free trade. What is the world price? What is the volume of trade?
- 3.** Home imposes a specific tariff of 1.5 on books imports.
  - a.** Determine and graph the effects of the tariff on the following: (1) the price of books in each country; (2) the quantity of books supplied and demanded in each country; (3) the volume of trade.
  - b.** Determine the effect of the tariff on the welfare of each of the following groups: (1) Home import-competing producers; (2) Home consumers; (3) the Home government.
  - c.** Show graphically and calculate the terms of trade gain, the efficiency loss and the total effect on welfare of the tariff.
- 4.** Suppose Foreign had been a much smaller country with domestic demand.

$$D^* = 8 - 2P, S^* = 4 + 2P.$$

(Notice that this implies the Foreign price of books in the absence of trade would have been the same as in Problem 2).

Recalculate the free trade equilibrium and the effects of a 1.5 specific tariff by Home. Relate the difference in results to the discussion of the small-country case in the text.

- 5.** What would be the effective rate of protection on bicycles in China if China places a 50 percent tariff on bicycles, which have a world price of \$200, and no tariff on bike components, which together have a world price of \$100?
- 6.** For a company that produces candy canes, sugar is 70 percent of its ingredient costs. The United States limits the imports of sugar to protect cane farmers, which has led to an increase in the price of sugar by about 25 percent relative to what it would be otherwise. Suppose your country, however, allows free trade in candy canes, which are made with sugar that accounts for approximately 65 percent of its cost. What is the effective rate of protection on the process of turning sugar into candy canes?
- 7.** Return to the example of Problem 2. Starting from free trade, assume that Foreign offers exporters a subsidy of 1.5 per unit. Calculate the effects on the price in each country and on welfare, both of individual groups and of the economy as a whole in both countries.

8. Use your knowledge about trade policy to evaluate each of the following statements:
  - a. “Tariffs on imported goods will increase domestic price, leading to high unemployment.”
  - b. “High tariffs and quotas can result in trade wars between nations.”
  - c. “Smartphone manufacturing jobs are heading back to the U.S. because wages started to rise in China. As a result, we should implement tariffs on smartphones equal to the difference between the U.S. and China’s wage rates.”
9. The nation of Cologne is “large,” but unable to affect world prices. It imports chocolate at the price of \$20 per box. The demand curve is:

$$D = 700 - 10P.$$

The supply curve is

$$S = 200 + 5P.$$

Determine the free trade equilibrium. Then calculate and graph the following effects on an import quota that limits imports to 50 boxes:

- a. The increase in the domestic price.
- b. The quota rents.
- c. The consumption distortion loss.
- d. The production distortion loss.
10. If tariffs are already in place as a trade policy, why might a country choose to apply nontariff barriers also as another way to control the amount of trade that they conduct with other countries?
11. Suppose workers involved in manufacturing are paid less than all other workers in the economy. What would be the effect on the real income *distribution* within the economy if there were a substantial tariff levied on manufactured goods?

## FURTHER READINGS

- Jagdish Bhagwati. “On the Equivalence of Tariffs and Quotas,” in Robert E. Baldwin et al., eds. *Trade, Growth, and the Balance of Payments*. Chicago: Rand McNally, 1965. The classic comparison of tariffs and quotas under monopoly.
- W. M. Corden. *The Theory of Protection*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1971. A general survey of the effects of tariffs, quotas, and other trade policies.
- Robert W. Crandall. *Regulating the Automobile*. Washington, D.C.: Brookings Institution, 1986. Contains an analysis of the most famous of all voluntary export restraints.
- Robert C. Feenstra. “How Costly Is Protectionism?” *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 6 (1992), pp. 159–178. A survey article summarizing the empirical work measuring the costs associated with protectionist policies.
- Gary Clyde Hufbauer and Kimberly Ann Elliot. *Measuring the Costs of Protection in the United States*. Washington, D.C.: Institute for International Economics, 1994. An assessment of U.S. trade policies in 21 different sectors.
- Kala Krishna. “Trade Restrictions as Facilitating Practices.” *Journal of International Economics* 26 (May 1989), pp. 251–270. A pioneering analysis of the effects of import quotas when both foreign and domestic producers have monopoly power, showing that the usual result is an increase in the profits of both groups—at consumers’ expense.
- Patrick Messerlin. *Measuring the Costs of Protection in Europe: European Commercial Policy in the 2000s*. Washington, D.C.: Institute for International Economics, 2001. A survey of European trade policies and their effects, similar to Hufbauer and Elliot’s work for the United States.

- D. Rousslang and A. Suomela. "Calculating the Consumer and Net Welfare Costs of Import Relief." U.S. International Trade Commission Staff Research Study 15. Washington, D.C.: International Trade Commission, 1985. An exposition of the framework used in this chapter, with a description of how the framework is applied in practice to real industries.
- U.S. International Trade Commission. *The Economic Effects of Significant U.S. Import Restraints*. Washington, D.C., 2009. A regularly updated economic analysis of the effects of protection on the U.S. economy.



## APPENDIX TO CHAPTER 9

# 9

### Tariffs and Import Quotas in the Presence of Monopoly

The trade policy analysis in this chapter assumed that markets are perfectly competitive, so that all firms take prices as given. As we argued in Chapter 8, however, many markets for internationally traded goods are imperfectly competitive. The effects of international trade policies can be affected by the nature of the competition in a market.

When we analyze the effects of trade policy in imperfectly competitive markets, a new consideration appears: International trade limits monopoly power, and policies that limit trade may therefore increase monopoly power. Even if a firm is the only producer of a good in a country, it will have little ability to raise prices if there are many foreign suppliers and free trade. If imports are limited by a quota, however, the same firm will be free to raise prices without fear of competition.

The link between trade policy and monopoly power may be understood by examining a model in which a country imports a good and its import-competing production is controlled by only one firm. The country is small on world markets, so the price of the import is unaffected by its trade policy. For this model, we examine and compare the effects of free trade, a tariff, and an import quota.

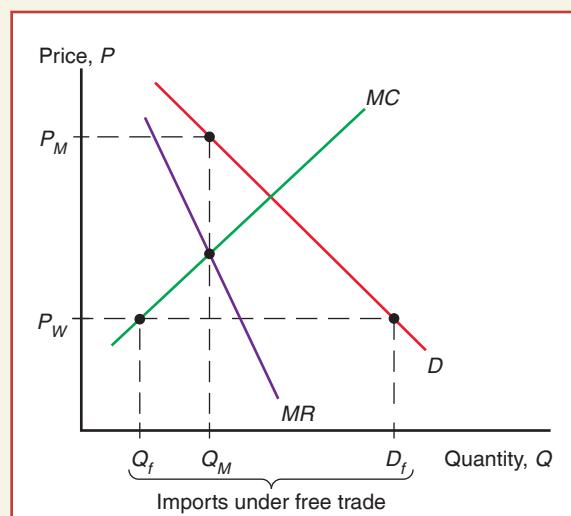
#### The Model with Free Trade

Figure 9A-1 shows free trade in a market where a domestic monopolist faces competition from imports.  $D$  is the domestic demand curve: demand for the product by domestic residents.  $P_W$  is the world price of the good; imports are available in unlimited

**FIGURE 9A-1**

#### A Monopolist Under Free Trade

The threat of import competition forces the monopolist to behave like a perfectly competitive industry.



quantities at that price. The domestic industry is assumed to consist of only a single firm, whose marginal cost curve is  $MC$ .

If there were no trade in this market, the domestic firm would behave as an ordinary profit-maximizing monopolist. Corresponding to  $D$  is a marginal revenue curve  $MR$ , and the firm would choose the monopoly profit-maximizing level of output  $O_M$  and price  $P_M$ .

With free trade, however, this monopoly behavior is not possible. If the firm tried to charge  $P_M$ , or indeed any price above  $P_W$ , nobody would buy its product because cheaper imports would be available. Thus international trade puts a lid on the monopolist's price at  $P_W$ .

Given this limit on its price, the best the monopolist can do is produce up to the point where marginal cost is equal to the world price, at  $Q_f$ . At the price  $P_W$ , domestic consumers will demand  $D_f$  units of the good, so imports will be  $D_f - Q_f$ . This outcome, however, is exactly what would have happened if the domestic industry had been perfectly competitive. With free trade, then, the fact that the domestic industry is a monopoly does not make any difference in the outcome.

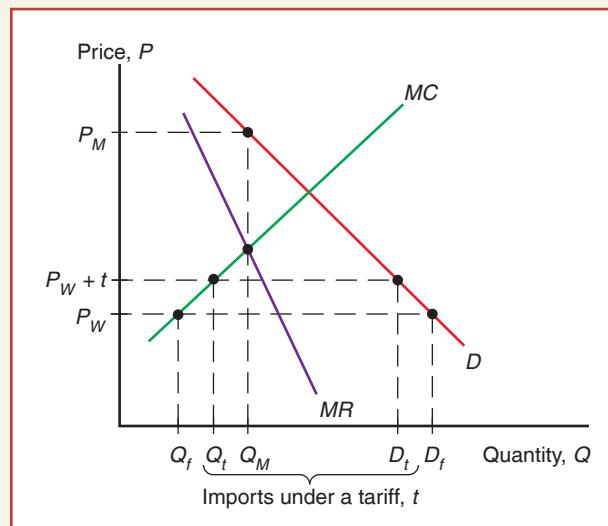
## The Model with a Tariff

The effect of a tariff is to raise the maximum price the domestic industry can charge. If a specific tariff  $t$  is charged on imports, the domestic industry can now charge  $P_W + t$  (Figure 9A-2). The industry still is not free to raise its price all the way to the monopoly price, however, because consumers will still turn to imports if the price rises above the world price plus the tariff. Thus the best the monopolist can do is to set price equal to marginal cost, at  $Q_t$ . The tariff raises the domestic price as well as the output of the domestic industry, while demand falls to  $D_t$ , and thus imports fall. However, the domestic industry still produces the same quantity as if it were perfectly competitive.<sup>12</sup>

**FIGURE 9A-2**

## A Monopolist Protected by a Tariff

The tariff allows the monopolist to raise its price, but the price is still limited by the threat of imports.



<sup>12</sup>There is one case in which a tariff will have different effects on a monopolistic industry than on a perfectly competitive one. This is the case where a tariff is so high that imports are completely eliminated (a prohibitive tariff). For a competitive industry, once imports have been eliminated, any further increase in the tariff has no effect. A monopolist, however, will be forced to limit its price by the *threat* of imports even if actual imports are zero. Thus, an increase in a prohibitive tariff will allow a monopolist to raise its price closer to the profit-maximizing price  $P_M$ .

### The Model with an Import Quota

Suppose the government imposes a limit on imports, restricting their quantity to a fixed level  $\bar{Q}$ . Then the monopolist knows that when it charges a price above  $P_W$ , it will not lose all its sales. Instead, it will sell whatever domestic demand is at that price, minus the allowed imports  $\bar{Q}$ . Thus, the demand facing the monopolist will be domestic demand less allowed imports. We define the post-quota demand curve as  $D_q$ ; it is parallel to the domestic demand curve  $D$  but shifted  $\bar{Q}$  units to the left (so long as the quota is binding and the domestic price is above the world price  $P_W$ ; see Figure 9A-3).

Corresponding to  $D_q$  is a new marginal revenue curve  $MR_q$ . The firm protected by an import quota maximizes profit by setting marginal cost equal to this new marginal revenue, producing  $Q_q$  and charging the price  $P_q$ . (The license to import one unit of the good will therefore yield a rent of  $P_q - P_W$ .)

### Comparing a Tariff and a Quota

We now ask how the effects of a tariff and a quota compare. To do this, we compare a tariff and a quota that lead to *the same level of imports* (Figure 9A-4). The tariff level  $t$  leads to a level of imports  $\bar{Q}$ ; we therefore ask what would happen if instead of a tariff, the government simply limited imports to  $\bar{Q}$ .

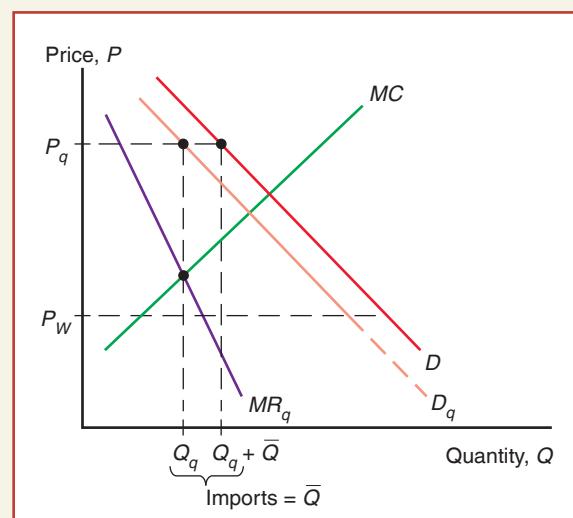
We see from the figure that the results are not the same. The tariff leads to domestic production of  $Q_t$  and a domestic price of  $P_W + t$ . The quota leads to a lower level of domestic production,  $Q_q$ , and a higher price,  $P_q$ . When protected by a tariff, the monopolistic domestic industry behaves as if it were perfectly competitive; when protected by a quota, it clearly does not.

The reason for this difference is that an import quota creates more monopoly power than a tariff. When monopolistic industries are protected by tariffs, domestic firms know that if they raise their prices too high, they will still be undercut by imports. An import quota, on the other hand, provides absolute protection: No matter how high the domestic price, imports cannot exceed the quota level.

**FIGURE 9A-3**

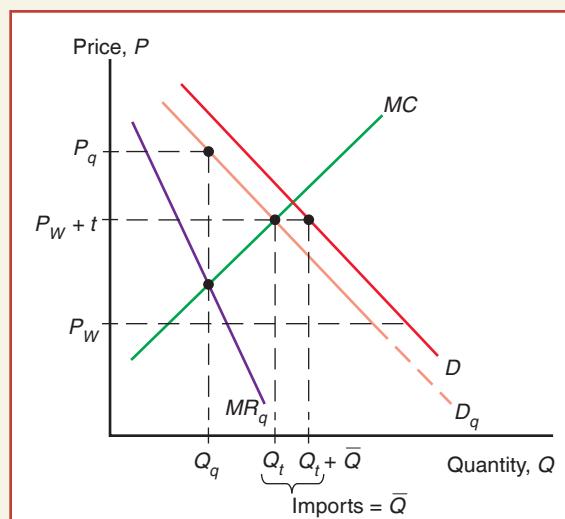
#### A Monopolist Protected by an Import Quota

The monopolist is now free to raise prices, knowing that the domestic price of imports will rise too.



**FIGURE 9A-4****Comparing a Tariff and a Quota**

A quota leads to lower domestic output and a higher price than a tariff that yields the same level of imports.



This comparison seems to say that if governments are concerned about domestic monopoly power, they should prefer tariffs to quotas as instruments of trade policy. In fact, however, protection has increasingly drifted away from tariffs toward nontariff barriers, including import quotas. To explain this, we need to look at considerations other than economic efficiency that motivate governments.



# CHAPTER 10

## THE POLITICAL ECONOMY OF TRADE POLICY

Over the course of 2018 and 2019 the United States and China engaged in a trade war, a series of tariff increases on both sides in which each nation asserted that it was responding to the other nation's previous actions. By the end of 2019 the average U.S. tariff on imports from China had risen from 3% to 21%, while the average Chinese tariff on U.S. exports had risen from 8% to 21%.

The overwhelming consensus of economists was that the trade war had hurt the U.S. economy. (See the Case Study on the Trump Trade War in Chapter 9.) U.S. officials argued, however, that their actions were necessary to pressure China into changing policies, notably subsidies for certain industrial sectors, that would hurt America in the long run.

However, when the two nations reached a trade agreement in January 2020, that agreement did little to change China's industrial policies. Instead, China agreed to buy more U.S. agricultural products, even if they could have been purchased more cheaply from other sources. And those costly U.S. tariffs remained in place.

Both the Chinese and the U.S. governments, then, were determined to pursue policies that, according to the cost-benefit analysis developed in Chapter 9, produced more costs than benefits. Clearly, government policies reflect objectives that go beyond simple measures of cost and benefit.

In this chapter, we examine some of the reasons governments either should not or, at any rate, do not base their trade policy on economists' cost-benefit calculations. The examination of the forces motivating trade policy in practice continues in Chapters 11 and 12, which discuss the characteristic trade policy issues facing developing and advanced countries, respectively. The first step toward understanding actual trade policies is to ask what reasons there are for governments *not* to interfere with trade—that is, what is the case for free trade? With this question answered, arguments for intervention can be examined as challenges to the assumptions underlying the case for free trade.

## LEARNING GOALS

After reading this chapter, you will be able to:

- Articulate arguments for free trade that go beyond the conventional gains from trade.
- Evaluate national welfare arguments against free trade.
- Relate the theory and evidence behind “political economy” views of trade policy.
- Explain how international negotiations and agreements have promoted world trade.
- Discuss the special issues raised by preferential trade agreements.

## The Case for Free Trade

Few countries have anything approaching completely free trade. The city of Hong Kong, which is legally part of China but maintains a separate economic policy, may be the only modern economy with no tariffs or import quotas. Nonetheless, since the time of Adam Smith, economists have advocated free trade as an ideal toward which trade policy should strive. The reasons for this advocacy are not quite as simple as the idea itself. At one level, theoretical models suggest that free trade will avoid the efficiency losses associated with protection. Many economists believe free trade produces additional gains beyond the elimination of production and consumption distortions. Finally, even among economists who believe free trade is a less-than-perfect policy, many believe free trade is usually better than any other policy a government is likely to follow.

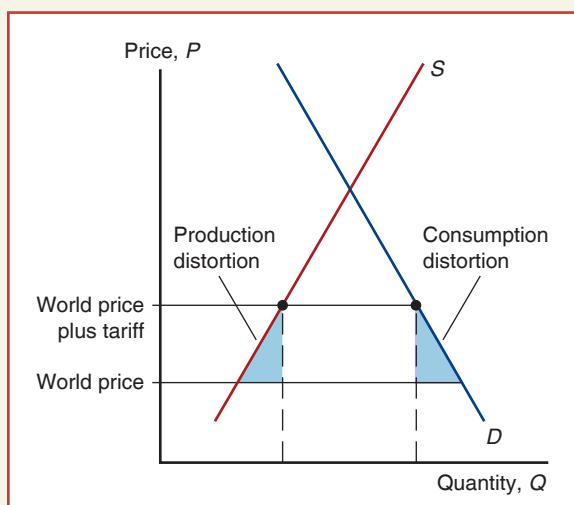
### Free Trade and Efficiency

The **efficiency case for free trade** is simply the reverse of the cost-benefit analysis of a tariff. Figure 10-1 shows the basic point once again for the case of a small country that cannot influence foreign export prices. A tariff causes a net loss to the economy

**FIGURE 10-1**

#### The Efficiency Case for Free Trade

A trade restriction, such as a tariff, leads to production and consumption distortions.



**TABLE 10-1 Benefits of a Move to Worldwide Free Trade (percent of GDP)**

United States	0.57
European Union	0.61
Japan	0.85
Developing countries	1.4
World	0.93

**Source:** William Cline, *Trade Policy and Global Poverty* (Washington, D.C.: Institute for International Economics, 2004), p. 180.

measured by the area of the two triangles; it does so by distorting the economic incentives of both producers and consumers. Conversely, a move to free trade eliminates these distortions and increases national welfare.

In the modern world, for reasons we will explain later in this chapter, tariff rates are generally low and import quotas relatively rare. As a result, estimates of the total costs of distortions due to tariffs and import quotas tend to be modest in size. Table 10-1 shows an estimate of the gains from a move to worldwide free trade, measured as a percentage of GDP. For the world as a whole, according to these estimates, protection costs less than 1 percent of GDP. The gains from free trade are somewhat smaller for advanced economies such as the United States and Europe and somewhat larger for poorer “developing countries.”

### Additional Gains from Free Trade<sup>1</sup>

There is a widespread belief among economists that such calculations, even though they report substantial gains from free trade in some cases, do not represent the whole story. In the case of small countries in general and developing countries in particular, many economists would argue that there are important gains from free trade not accounted for in conventional cost-benefit analysis.

One kind of additional gain involves economies of scale, which were the theme of Chapters 7 and 8. Protected markets limit gains from external economies of scale by inhibiting the concentration of industries; when the economies of scale are internal, they not only fragment production internationally, but by reducing competition and raising profits, they also lead too many firms to enter the protected industry. With a proliferation of firms in narrow domestic markets, the scale of production of each firm becomes inefficient. A good example of how protection leads to inefficient scale is the case of the Argentine automobile industry, which emerged because of import restrictions. An efficient scale assembly plant should make from 80,000 to 200,000 automobiles per year, yet in 1964 the Argentine industry, which produced only 166,000 cars, had no fewer than 13 firms! Some economists argue that the need to deter excessive entry and the resulting inefficient scale of production is a reason for free trade that goes beyond the standard cost-benefit calculations.

Another argument for free trade is that by providing entrepreneurs with an incentive to seek new ways to export or compete with imports, free trade offers more opportunities for learning and innovation than are provided by a system of “managed” trade,

<sup>1</sup>The additional gains from free trade discussed here are sometimes referred to as “dynamic” gains because increased competition and innovation may need more time to take effect than the elimination of production and consumption distortions.

where the government largely dictates the pattern of imports and exports. Chapter 11 discusses the experiences of less-developed countries that discovered unexpected export opportunities when they shifted from systems of import quotas and tariffs to more open trade policies.

A related form of gains from free trade involves the tendency, documented in Chapter 8, for more productive firms to engage in exports while less productive firms stay with the domestic market. This suggests that a move to free trade makes the economy as a whole more efficient by shifting the industrial mix toward firms with higher productivity.

These additional arguments for free trade are difficult to quantify, although some economists have tried to do so. In general, models that try to take economies of scale and imperfect competition into account yield bigger numbers than those reported in Table 10-1. However, there is no consensus about just how much bigger the gains from free trade really are. If the additional gains from free trade are as large as some economists believe, the costs of distorting trade with tariffs, quotas, export subsidies, and so on are correspondingly larger than the conventional cost-benefit analysis measures.

### Rent Seeking

When imports are restricted with a quota rather than a tariff, the cost is sometimes magnified by a process known as **rent seeking**. Recall from Chapter 9 that to enforce an import quota, a government has to issue import licenses and economic rents accrue to whoever receives these licenses. In some cases, individuals and companies incur substantial costs—in effect, wasting some of the economy’s productive resources—in an effort to get import licenses.

A famous example involved India in the 1950s and 1960s. At that time, Indian companies were allocated the right to buy imported inputs in proportion to their installed capacity. This created an incentive to overinvest—for example, a steel company might build more blast furnaces than it expected to need simply because this would give it a larger number of import licenses. The resources used to build this idle capacity represented a cost of protection over and above the costs shown in Figure 10-1.

A more modern and unusual example of rent seeking involves U.S. imports of canned tuna. Tuna is protected by a “tariff-rate quota”: A small quantity of tuna (4.8 percent of U.S. consumption) can be imported at a low tariff rate, 6 percent, but any imports beyond that level face a 12.5 percent tariff. For some reason, there are no import licenses; each year, the right to import tuna at the low tariff rate is assigned on a first come, first served basis. The result is a costly race to get tuna into the United States as quickly as possible. Here’s how the U.S. International Trade Commission describes the process of rent seeking:

Importers attempt to qualify for the largest share of the TRQ [tariff-rate quota] as possible by stockpiling large quantities of canned tuna in Customs-bonded warehouses in late December and releasing the warehoused product as soon as the calendar year begins.

The money importers spend on warehousing lots of tuna in December represents a loss to the U.S. economy over and above the standard costs of protection.

### Political Argument for Free Trade

A **political argument for free trade** reflects the fact that a political commitment to free trade may be a good idea in practice even though there may be better policies in principle. Economists often argue that trade policies in practice are dominated by

special-interest politics rather than by consideration of national costs and benefits. Economists can sometimes show that in theory, a selective set of tariffs and export subsidies could increase national welfare, but that in reality, any government agency attempting to pursue a sophisticated program of intervention in trade would probably be captured by interest groups and converted into a device for redistributing income to politically influential sectors. If this argument is correct, it may be better to advocate free trade without exceptions even though on purely economic grounds, free trade may not always be the best conceivable policy.

The three arguments outlined in the previous section probably represent the standard view of most international economists, at least those in the United States:

1. The conventionally measured costs of deviating from free trade are large.
2. There are other benefits from free trade that add to the costs of protectionist policies.
3. Any attempt to pursue sophisticated deviations from free trade will be subverted by the political process.

Nonetheless, there are intellectually respectable arguments for deviating from free trade, and these arguments deserve a fair hearing.

## National Welfare Arguments against Free Trade

Most tariffs, import quotas, and other trade policy measures are undertaken primarily to protect the income of particular interest groups. Politicians often claim, however, that the policies are being undertaken in the interest of the nation as a whole, and sometimes they are even telling the truth. Although economists frequently argue that deviations from free trade reduce national welfare, there are some theoretical grounds for believing that activist trade policies can sometimes increase the welfare of the nation as a whole.

### The Terms of Trade Argument for a Tariff

One argument for deviating from free trade comes directly out of cost-benefit analysis: For a large country that is able to affect the prices of foreign exporters, a tariff lowers the price of imports and thus generates a terms of trade benefit. This benefit must be set against the costs of the tariff, which arise because the tariff distorts production and consumption incentives. It is possible, however, that in some cases the terms of trade benefits of a tariff outweigh its costs, so there is a **terms of trade argument for a tariff**.

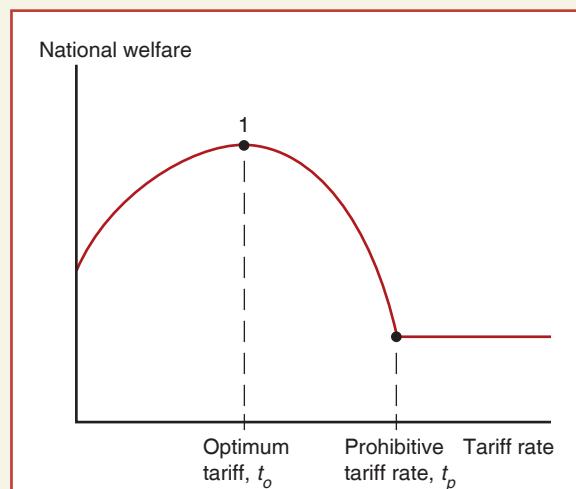
The appendix to this chapter shows that for a sufficiently small tariff, the terms of trade benefits must outweigh the costs. Thus, at small tariff rates, a large country's welfare is higher than with free trade (Figure 10-2). As the tariff rate is increased, however, the costs eventually begin to grow more rapidly than the benefits and the curve relating national welfare to the tariff rate turns down. A tariff rate that completely prohibits trade ( $t_p$  in Figure 10-2) leaves the country worse off than with free trade; further increases in the tariff rate beyond  $t_p$  have no effect, so the curve flattens out.

At point 1 on the curve in Figure 10-2, corresponding to the tariff rate  $t_o$ , national welfare is maximized. The tariff rate  $t_o$  that maximizes national welfare is the **optimum tariff**. (By convention, the phrase *optimum tariff* is usually used to refer to the tariff justified by a terms of trade argument rather than to the best tariff given all possible considerations.) The optimum tariff rate is always positive but less than the prohibitive rate ( $t_p$ ) that would eliminate all imports.

What policy would the terms of trade argument dictate for *export* sectors? Since an export subsidy *worsens* the terms of trade, and therefore unambiguously reduces

**FIGURE 10-2****The Optimum Tariff**

For a large country, there is an optimum tariff  $t_o$  at which the marginal gain from improved terms of trade just equals the marginal efficiency loss from production and consumption distortion.



national welfare, the optimal policy in export sectors must be a negative subsidy, that is, a *tax* on exports that raises the price of exports to foreigners. Like the optimum tariff, the optimum export tax is always positive but less than the prohibitive tax that would eliminate exports completely.

The policy of Saudi Arabia and other oil exporters has been to tax their exports of oil, raising the price to the rest of the world. Although oil prices have fluctuated up and down over the years, it is hard to argue that Saudi Arabia would have been better off under free trade.

The terms of trade argument against free trade has some important limitations, however. Most small countries have very little ability to affect the world prices of either their imports or their exports, and thus the terms of trade argument is of little practical importance to them. For big countries like the United States, the problem is that the terms of trade argument amounts to an argument for using national monopoly power to extract gains at other countries' expense. The United States could surely do this to some extent, but such a predatory policy would probably bring retaliation from other large countries. A cycle of retaliatory trade moves would, in turn, undermine the attempts at international trade policy coordination described later in this chapter.

The terms of trade argument against free trade, then, is intellectually impeccable but of doubtful usefulness. In practice, it is more often emphasized by economists as a theoretical proposition than actually used by governments as a justification for trade policy.

### **The Domestic Market Failure Argument against Free Trade**

Leaving aside the issue of the terms of trade, the basic theoretical case for free trade rested on cost-benefit analysis using the concepts of consumer and producer surplus. Many economists have made a case against free trade based on the counterargument that these concepts, producer surplus in particular, do not properly measure costs and benefits.

Why might producer surplus not properly measure the benefits of producing a good? We consider a variety of reasons in Chapters 11 and 12: These include the possibility that the labor used in a sector would otherwise be unemployed or underemployed, the existence of defects in the capital or labor markets that prevent resources from being

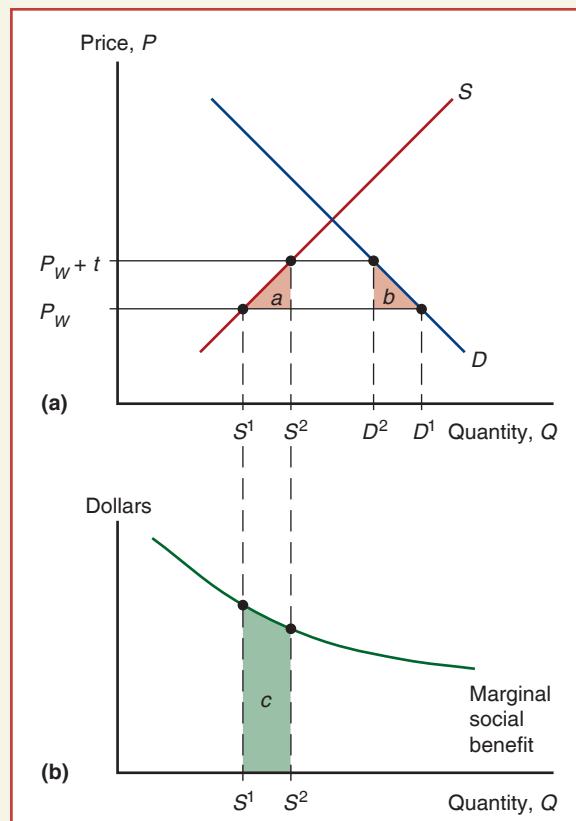
transferred as rapidly as they should be to sectors that yield high returns, and the possibility of technological spillovers from industries that are new or particularly innovative. These can all be classified under the general heading of **domestic market failures**. That is, in each of these examples, some market in the country is not doing its job right—the labor market is not clearing, the capital market is not allocating resources efficiently, and so on.

Suppose, for example, that the production of some good yields experience that will improve the technology of the economy as a whole but that the firms in the sector cannot appropriate this benefit and therefore do not take it into account in deciding how much to produce. Then there is a **marginal social benefit** to additional production that is not captured by the producer surplus measure. This marginal social benefit can serve as a justification for tariffs or other trade policies.

Figure 10-3 illustrates the domestic market failure argument against free trade. The upper panel shows the conventional cost-benefit analysis of a tariff for a small country (which rules out terms of trade effects). The lower panel shows the marginal benefit from production that is not taken account of by the producer surplus measure. The figure shows the effects of a tariff that raises the domestic price from  $P_W$  to  $P_W + t$ . Production rises from  $S^1$  to  $S^2$ , with a resulting production distortion indicated by the area labeled *a*. Consumption falls from  $D^1$  to  $D^2$ , with a resulting consumption distortion indicated by the area *b*. If we considered only consumer and producer surplus, we would find that the costs of the tariff exceed its benefits. The lower panel shows, however, that this calculation overlooks an additional benefit that may make the tariff preferable to free trade.

**FIGURE 10-3**  
**The Domestic Market Failure Argument for a Tariff**

If production of a good yields extra social benefits [measured in panel (b) by area *c*] not captured as producer surplus, a tariff can increase welfare.



The increase in production yields a social benefit that may be measured by the area under the marginal social benefit curve from  $S^1$  to  $S^2$ , indicated by  $c$ . In fact, by an argument similar to that in the terms of trade case, we can show that if the tariff is small enough, the area  $c$  must always exceed the area  $a + b$  and that there is some welfare-maximizing tariff that yields a level of social welfare higher than that of free trade.

The domestic market failure argument against free trade is a particular case of a more general concept known in economics as the **theory of the second best**. This theory states that a hands-off policy is desirable in any one market only if all other markets are working properly. If they are not, a government intervention that appears to distort incentives in one market may actually increase welfare by offsetting the consequences of market failures elsewhere. For example, if the labor market is malfunctioning and fails to deliver full employment, a policy of subsidizing labor-intensive industries, which would be undesirable in a full-employment economy, might turn out to be a good idea. It would be better to fix the labor market by, for example, making wages more flexible, but if for some reason this cannot be done, intervening in other markets may be a “second-best” way of alleviating the problem.

When economists apply the theory of the second best to trade policy, they argue that imperfections in the *internal* functioning of an economy may justify interfering in its external economic relations. This argument accepts that international trade is not the source of the problem but suggests nonetheless that trade policy can provide at least a partial solution.

### How Convincing Is the Market Failure Argument?

When they were first proposed, market failure arguments for protection seemed to undermine much of the case for free trade. After all, who would want to argue that the real economies we live in are free from market failures? In poorer nations, in particular, market imperfections seem to be legion. For example, unemployment and massive differences between rural and urban wage rates are present in many less-developed countries (Chapter 11). The evidence that markets work badly is less glaring in advanced countries, but it is easy to develop hypotheses suggesting major market failures there as well—for example, the inability of innovative firms to reap the full rewards of their innovations. How can we defend free trade given the likelihood of interventions that could raise national welfare?

There are two lines of defense for free trade: The first argues that domestic market failures should be corrected by domestic policies aimed directly at the problems' sources; the second argues that economists cannot diagnose market failure well enough to prescribe policy.

The point that domestic market failure calls for domestic policy changes, not international trade policies, can be made by cost-benefit analysis modified to account for any unmeasured marginal social benefits. Figure 10-3 showed that a tariff might raise welfare, despite the production and consumption distortions it causes, because it leads to additional production that yields social benefits. If the same production increase were achieved via a production subsidy rather than a tariff, however, the price to consumers would not increase and the consumption loss  $b$  would be avoided. In other words, by targeting directly the particular activity we want to encourage, a production subsidy would avoid some of the side costs associated with a tariff.

This example illustrates a general principle when dealing with market failures: It is always preferable to deal with market failures as directly as possible because indirect policy responses lead to unintended distortions of incentives elsewhere in the economy. Thus, trade policies justified by domestic market failure are never the most efficient response; they are always “second-best” rather than “first-best” policies.

This insight has important implications for trade policy makers: Any proposed trade policy should always be compared with a purely domestic policy aimed at correcting the

same problem. If the domestic policy appears too costly or has undesirable side effects, the trade policy is almost surely even less desirable—even though the costs are less apparent.

In the European Union (EU), for example, banana producers were guaranteed a price up to a specified ceiling of banana production until 2007. Only around 16 percent of the total EU consumption was produced in the EU. The remaining consumption was exported from Latin American, African, Caribbean, and Pacific (ACP) countries. To support economic growth for some ACP countries, a large import quota was provided to access the EU market as a support for their economies.

In 1993, the EU had imposed tariffs on banana imports from non-ACP countries. However, the EU compensatory aid policy actually required large subsidy payments, which influenced the central government's budget deficit and required a tax increase. Furthermore, workers in the EU are among the highest-paid workers in the agriculture sector. Thus, the import quota provided to the ACP countries and gains received by the ACP exporters came at a high cost both to Latin American exporters and to EU consumers who had a distortion to consumer choice by paying a higher price. However, this cost came in the form of higher prices rather than direct government expenditures. Following several WTO disputes and subsequent reforms of its banana trade regime, the compensatory aid system for the EU farmers was withdrawn.

Critics of the domestic market failure justification for protection argue that this case is typical: Most deviations from free trade are adopted not because their benefits exceed their costs but because the public fails to understand their true costs. Comparing the costs of trade policy with alternative domestic policies is thus a useful way to focus attention on just how large these costs are.

The second defense of free trade is that because market failures are typically hard to identify precisely, it is difficult to be sure what the appropriate policy response should be. For example, suppose there is urban unemployment in a less-developed country; what is the appropriate policy? One hypothesis (examined more closely in Chapter 11) says that a tariff to protect urban industrial sectors will draw the unemployed into productive work and thus generate social benefits that would more than compensate for the tariff's costs. However, another hypothesis says that this policy will encourage so much migration to urban areas that unemployment will, in fact, increase. It is difficult to say which of these hypotheses is right. While economic theory says much about the working of markets that function properly, it provides much less guidance on those that don't; there are many ways in which markets can malfunction, and the choice of a second-best policy depends on the details of the market failure.

The difficulty of ascertaining the correct second-best trade policy to follow reinforces the political argument for free trade mentioned earlier. If trade policy experts are highly uncertain about how policy should deviate from free trade and disagree among themselves, it is all too easy for trade policy to ignore national welfare altogether and become dominated by special-interest politics. If the market failures are not too bad to start with, a commitment to free trade might in the end be a better policy than opening a Pandora's box of a more flexible approach.

This is, however, a judgment about politics rather than about economics. We need to realize that economic theory does *not* provide a dogmatic defense of free trade, even though it is often accused of doing so.

## Income Distribution and Trade Policy

The discussion so far has focused on national welfare arguments for and against tariff policy. It is appropriate to start there, both because a distinction between national welfare and the welfare of particular groups helps to clarify the issues and because the advocates of trade policies usually claim that the policies will benefit the nation as a whole. When

looking at the actual politics of trade policy, however, it becomes necessary to deal with the reality that there is no such thing as national welfare; there are only the desires of individuals, which get more or less imperfectly reflected in the objectives of government.

How do the preferences of individuals get added up to produce the trade policy we actually see? There is no single, generally accepted answer, but there has been a growing body of economic analysis that explores models in which governments are assumed to be trying to maximize political success rather than an abstract measure of national welfare.

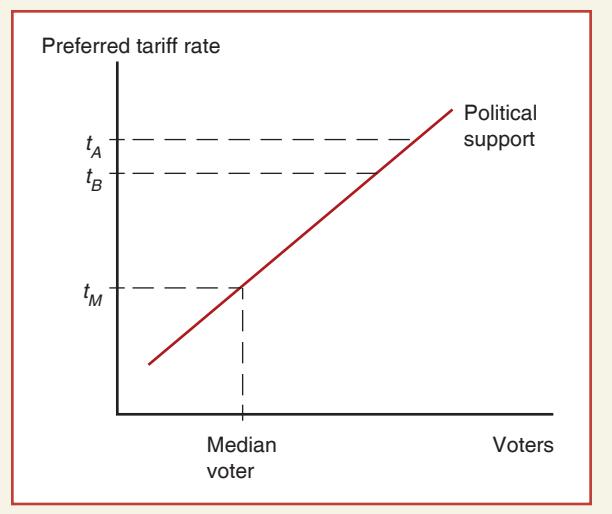
### Electoral Competition

Political scientists have long used a simple model of competition among political parties to show how the preferences of voters might be reflected in actual policies.<sup>2</sup> The model runs as follows: Suppose two competing parties are willing to promise whatever will enable each to win the next election, and suppose policy can be described along a single dimension, say, the level of the tariff rate. And finally, suppose voters differ in the policies they prefer. For example, imagine a country exports skill-intensive goods and imports labor-intensive goods. Then voters with high skill levels will favor low tariff rates, but voters with low skills will be better off if the country imposes a high tariff (because of the Stolper-Samuelson effect discussed in Chapter 5). We can therefore think of lining up all the voters in the order of the tariff rate they prefer, with the voters who favor the lowest rate on the left and those who favor the highest rate on the right.

What policies will the two parties then promise to follow? The answer is that they will try to find the middle ground—specifically, both will tend to converge on the tariff rate preferred by the **median voter**, the voter who is exactly halfway up the lineup. To see why, consider Figure 10-4. In the figure, voters are lined up by their preferred tariff rate, which is shown by the hypothetical upward-sloping curve;  $t_M$  is the median voter's preferred rate. Now suppose one of the parties has proposed the tariff rate  $t_A$ , which is considerably above that preferred by the median voter. Then the other party could

**FIGURE 10-4**  
**Political Competition**

Voters are lined up in order of the tariff rate they prefer. If one party proposes a high tariff of  $t_A$ , the other party can win over most of the voters by offering a somewhat lower tariff,  $t_B$ . This political competition drives both parties to propose tariffs close to  $t_M$ , the tariff preferred by the median voter.



<sup>2</sup>See Anthony Downs, *An Economic Theory of Democracy* (Washington, DC: Brookings Institution, 1957).

propose the slightly lower rate,  $t_B$ , and its program would be preferred by almost all voters who want a lower tariff, that is, by a majority. In other words, it would always be in the political interest of a party to undercut any tariff proposal that is higher than what the median voter wants.

Similar reasoning shows that self-interested politicians will always want to promise a higher tariff if their opponents propose one that is lower than the tariff the median voter prefers. So both parties end up proposing a tariff close to the one the median voter wants.

Political scientists have modified this simple model in a number of ways. For example, some analysts stress the importance of party activists in getting out the vote; since these activists are often ideologically motivated, the need for their support may prevent parties from being quite as cynical, or adopting platforms quite as indistinguishable, as this model suggests. Nonetheless, the median voter model of electoral competition has been very helpful as a way of thinking about how political decisions get made in the real world, where the effects of policy on income distribution may be more important than their effects on efficiency.

One area in which the median voter model does not seem to work very well, however, is trade policy! In fact, it makes an almost precisely wrong prediction. According to this model, a policy should be chosen on the basis of how many voters it pleases: A policy that inflicts large losses on a few people but benefits a large number of people should be a political winner; a policy that inflicts widespread losses but helps a small group should be a loser. In fact, however, protectionist policies are more likely to fit the latter than the former description. For example, the U.S. dairy industry is protected from foreign competition by an elaborate system of tariffs and quotas. These restrictions impose losses on just about every family in America while providing much smaller benefits to a dairy industry that employs only about 0.1 percent of the nation's workforce. How can such a thing happen politically?

## Collective Action

In a now-famous book, economist Mancur Olson pointed out that political activity on behalf of a group is a public good; that is, the benefits of such activity accrue to all members of the group, not just the individual who performs the activity.<sup>3</sup> Suppose a consumer writes a letter to their congressperson demanding a lower tariff rate on their favorite imported good, and this letter helps change the congressperson's vote so that the lower tariff is approved. Then all consumers who buy the good benefit from lower prices, even if they did not bother to write letters.

This public good character of politics means policies that impose large losses in total—but small losses on any individual—may not face any effective opposition. Again, take the example of dairy protectionism. This policy imposes a cost on a typical American family of approximately \$3 per year. Should a consumer lobby his or her congressperson to remove the policy? From the point of view of individual self-interest, surely not. Since one letter has only a marginal effect on the policy, the individual payoff from such a letter is probably not worth the paper it is written on, let alone the postage stamp. (Indeed, it is surely not worth even learning of the policy's existence unless you are interested in such things for their own sake.) And yet, if a million voters were to write demanding an end to dairy protection, it would surely be repealed, bringing benefits to consumers significantly exceeding the costs of sending the letters. In Olson's

---

<sup>3</sup>Mancur Olson, *The Logic of Collective Action* (Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1965).

## POLITICIANS FOR SALE: EVIDENCE FROM THE 1990s

**A**s we explain in the text, it's hard to make sense of actual trade policy if you assume governments are genuinely trying to maximize national welfare. On the other hand, actual trade policy does make sense if you assume special-interest groups can buy influence. But is there any direct evidence that politicians really are for sale?

Votes by the U.S. Congress on some crucial trade issues in the 1990s offer useful test cases. The reason is that U.S. campaign finance laws require politicians to reveal the amounts and sources of campaign contributions; this disclosure allows economists and political scientists to look for any relationship between those contributions and actual votes.

A 1998 study by Robert Baldwin and Christopher Magee<sup>4</sup> focuses on two crucial votes: the 1993 vote on the North American Free Trade Agreement (generally known as NAFTA and described at greater length later in this chapter) and the 1994 vote ratifying the latest agreement under the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (generally known as the GATT, also described later). Both votes were bitterly fought, largely along business-versus-labor lines—that is, business groups were strongly in favor; labor unions were strongly against. In both cases, the free trade position backed by business won; in the NAFTA vote, the outcome was in doubt until the last minute, and the margin of victory—34 votes in the House of Representatives—was not very large.

Baldwin and Magee estimate an econometric model of congressional votes that controls for such factors as the economic characteristics of members' districts as well as business and labor contributions to the congressional representative. They find a strong impact of money on the voting pattern. One way to assess this impact is to run a series of "counterfactuals": How different would the overall vote have been if there had been no business contributions, no labor contributions, or no contributions of any type at all?

The following table summarizes the results. The first row shows how many representatives voted in favor of each bill; bear in mind that passage required at least 214 votes. The second row shows

the number of votes predicted by Baldwin and Magee's equations: Their model gets it right in the case of NAFTA but overpredicts by a few votes in the case of the GATT. The third row shows how many votes each bill would have received, according to the model, in the absence of labor contributions; the next row shows how many representatives would have voted in favor in the absence of business contributions. The last row shows how many would have voted in favor if both business and labor contributions had been absent.

	Vote for NAFTA	Vote for GATT
Actual	229	283
Predicted by model	229	290
Without labor contributions	291	346
Without business contributions	195	257
Without any contributions	256	323

If these estimates are correct, contributions had big impacts on the vote totals. In the case of NAFTA, labor contributions induced 62 representatives who would otherwise have supported the bill to vote against; business contributions moved 34 representatives the other way. If there had been no business contributions, according to this estimate, NAFTA would have received only 195 votes—not enough for passage.

On the other hand, given that both sides were making contributions, their effects tended to cancel out. Baldwin and Magee's estimates suggest that in the absence of contributions from either labor or business, both NAFTA and the GATT would have passed anyway.

It's probably wrong to emphasize the fact that in these particular cases, contributions from the two sides did not change the final outcome. The really important result is that politicians are, indeed, for sale—which means that theories of trade policy that emphasize special interests are on the right track.

<sup>4</sup>Robert E. Baldwin and Christopher S. Magee, "Is Trade Policy for Sale? Congressional Voting on Recent Trade Bills," Working Paper 6376, National Bureau of Economic Research, January 1998.

phrase, there is a problem of **collective action**: While it is in the interests of the group as a whole to press for favorable policies, it is not in any individual's interest to do so.

The problem of collective action can best be overcome when a group is small (so that each individual reaps a significant share of the benefits of favorable policies) and/or well organized (so that members of the group can be mobilized to act in their collective interest). The reason that a policy like dairy protection can happen is that dairy producers form a relatively small, well-organized group that is well aware of the size of the implicit subsidy members receive, while dairy consumers are a huge population that does not even perceive itself as an interest group. The problem of collective action, then, can explain why policies that not only seem to produce more costs than benefits but that also seem to hurt far more voters than they help can nonetheless be adopted.

### Modeling the Political Process

While the logic of collective action has long been invoked by economists to explain seemingly irrational trade policies, the theory is somewhat vague on the ways in which organized interest groups actually go about influencing policy. A growing body of analysis tries to fill this gap with simplified models of the political process.<sup>5</sup>

The starting point of this analysis is obvious: While politicians may win elections partly because they advocate popular policies, a successful campaign also requires money for advertising, polling, and so on. It may therefore be in the interest of a politician to adopt positions against the interest of the typical voter if the politician is offered a sufficiently large financial contribution to do so; the extra money may be worth more votes than those lost by taking the unpopular position.

Modern models of the political economy of trade policy therefore envision a sort of auction in which interest groups "buy" policies by offering contributions contingent on the policies followed by the government. Politicians will not ignore overall welfare, but they will be willing to trade off some reduction in the welfare of voters in return for a larger campaign fund. As a result, well-organized groups—that is, groups that are able to overcome the problem of collective action—will be able to get policies that favor their interests at the expense of the public as a whole.

### Who Gets Protected?

As a practical matter, which industries actually get protected from import competition? Many developing countries traditionally have protected a wide range of manufacturing, in a policy known as import-substituting industrialization. We discuss this policy and the reasons why it has become considerably less popular in recent years in Chapter 11. The range of protectionism in advanced countries is much narrower; indeed, much protectionism is concentrated in just two sectors: agriculture and clothing.

**Agriculture** There are not many farmers in modern economies—in the United States, agriculture employs only about 2.5 million workers out of a labor force of more than 160 million. Farmers are, however, usually a well-organized and politically powerful group that has been able in many cases to achieve very high rates of effective protection. We discussed Europe's Common Agricultural Policy in Chapter 9; the export subsidies in that program mean that a number of agricultural products sell at two or three times world prices. In Japan, the government has traditionally banned imports of rice,

<sup>5</sup>See, in particular, Gene Grossman and Elhanan Helpman, "Protection for Sale," *American Economic Review* 89 (September 1994), pp. 833–850.

thus driving up internal prices of the country's staple food to more than five times as high as the world price. This ban was slightly relaxed in the face of bad harvests in the mid-1990s, but in late 1998—over the protests of other nations, including the United States—Japan imposed a 1,000 percent tariff on rice imports.

The United States is generally a food exporter, which means that tariffs or import quotas cannot raise prices. (Sugar and dairy products are exceptions.) In fact, farmers were hurt badly by the U.S.–China trade war we described at the beginning of this chapter. But farmers received \$28 billion in special aid to compensate for their losses. And as we've seen, in 2020 Chinese promises to buy U.S. farm goods were the centerpiece of a deal intended to slow the trade war.

**Clothing** The clothing industry consists of two parts: textiles (spinning and weaving of cloth) and apparel (assembly of cloth into clothing). Both industries, but especially the apparel industry, historically have been protected heavily through both tariffs and import quotas. Until 2005, they were subject to the Multi-Fiber Arrangement (MFA), which set both export and import quotas for a large number of countries.

Apparel production has two key features. It is labor-intensive: A worker needs relatively little capital, in some cases no more than a sewing machine, and can do the job without extensive formal education. And the technology is relatively simple: There is no great difficulty in transferring the technology even to very poor countries. As a result, the apparel industry is one in which low-wage nations have a strong comparative advantage and high-wage countries have a strong comparative disadvantage. It is also traditionally a well-organized sector in advanced countries; for example, many American apparel workers have long been represented by the International Ladies' Garment Worker's Union.

Later in this chapter, we'll describe how trade negotiations work; one of the most important provisions of the Uruguay Round trade agreements, signed in 1994, was the phaseout of the MFA, which took place at the end of 2004. Although import quotas were reimposed on China in 2005, those quotas have since phased out. At this point, trade in clothing no longer faces many restrictions.

Table 10-2 shows just how important clothing used to be in U.S. protectionism and how much difference the end of the restrictions on clothing makes. In 2002, with the MFA still in effect, clothing restrictions were responsible for more than 80 percent of the overall welfare costs of U.S. protectionism. Because the MFA assigned import licenses to exporting countries, most of the welfare cost to the United States came not from distortion of production and consumption but from the transfer of quota rents to foreigners.

With the expiration of the MFA, the costs of clothing protection and hence the overall costs of U.S. protection fell sharply.

TABLE 10-2 Welfare Costs of U.S. Protection (\$ billion)

	2002 Estimate	2015
Total	14.1	2.6
Textiles and apparel	11.8	0.5

Source: U.S. International Trade Commission.

## International Negotiations and Trade Policy

Our discussion of the politics of trade policy has not been very encouraging. We have argued that it is difficult to devise trade policies that raise national welfare and that trade policy is often dominated by interest group politics. “Horror stories” of trade policies that produce costs that greatly exceed any conceivable benefits abound; it is thus easy to be highly cynical about the practical side of trade theory.

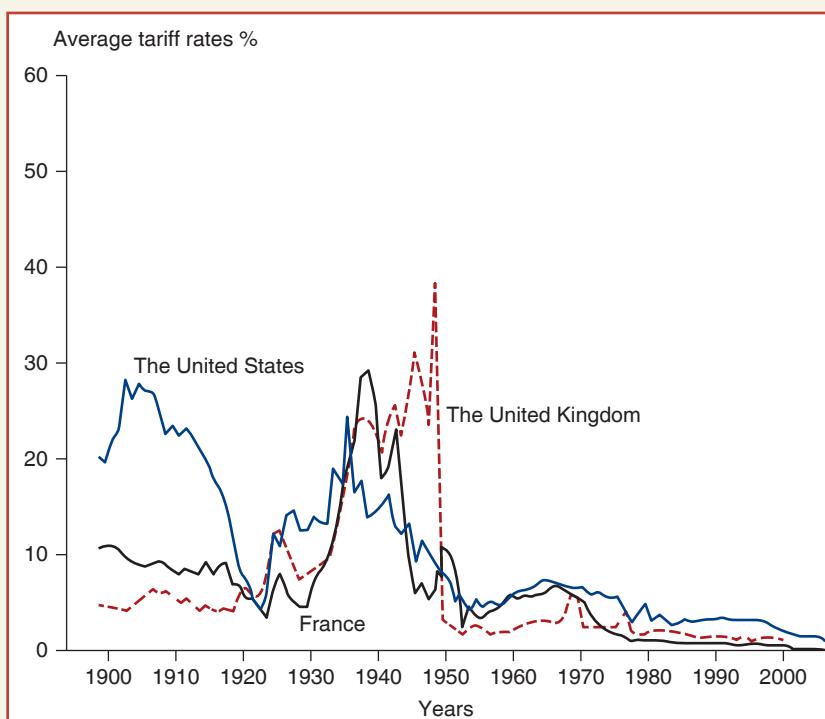
Yet, in fact, from the mid-1930s until about 1980, the United States and other advanced countries gradually removed tariffs and some other barriers to trade, and by so doing aided a rapid increase in international integration. Figure 10-5 shows the average tariff rates on total imports in France, the U.K., and the U.S. Most economists believe this progressive trade liberalization was highly beneficial. Given what we have said about the politics of trade policy, however, how was this removal of tariffs politically possible?

At least part of the answer is that the great postwar liberalization of trade was achieved through **international negotiation**. That is, governments agreed to engage in mutual tariff reduction. These agreements linked reduced protection for each country’s import-competing industries to reduced protection by other countries against that country’s export industries. Such a linkage, as we will now argue, helps to offset some of the political difficulties that would otherwise prevent countries from adopting good trade policies.

### The Advantages of Negotiation

There are at least two reasons why it is easier to lower tariffs as part of a mutual agreement than to do so as a unilateral policy. First, a mutual agreement helps mobilize support for freer trade. Second, negotiated agreements on trade can help governments avoid getting caught in destructive trade wars.

**FIGURE 10-5**  
**Average Tariff Rates on Total Imports (France, U.K., U.S.)**



The effect of international negotiations on support for freer trade is straightforward. We have noted that import-competing producers are usually better informed and organized than consumers. International negotiations can bring in domestic exporters as a counterweight. The United States and Japan, for example, could reach an agreement in which the United States refrains from imposing import quotas to protect some of its manufacturers from Japanese competition in return for removal of Japanese barriers against U.S. exports of agricultural or high-technology products to Japan. U.S. consumers might not be effective politically in opposing such import quotas on foreign goods, even though these quotas may be costly to them, but exporters who want access to foreign markets may, through their lobbying for mutual elimination of import quotas, protect consumer interests.

International negotiation can also help to avoid a **trade war**. The concept of a trade war can best be illustrated with a stylized example.

Imagine there are only two countries in the world, the United States and Japan, and these countries have only two policy choices: free trade or protection. Suppose these are unusually clear-headed governments that can assign definite numerical values to their satisfaction with any particular policy outcome (Table 10-3).

The particular values of the payoffs given in the table represent two assumptions. First, we assume that each country's government would choose protection if it could take the other country's policy as given. That is, whichever policy Japan chooses, the U.S. government is better off with protection. This assumption is by no means necessarily true; many economists would argue that free trade is the best policy for the nation, regardless of what other governments do. Governments, however, must act not only in the public interest but also in their own political interest. For the reasons discussed in the previous section, governments often find it politically difficult to avoid giving protection to some industries.

The second assumption built into Table 10-3 is that even though each government acting individually would be better off with protection, they would both be better off if both chose free trade. That is, the U.S. government has more to gain from an opening of Japanese markets than it has to lose from opening its own markets, and the same is true for Japan. We can justify this assumption simply by appealing to the gains from trade.

To those who have studied game theory, this situation is known as a **Prisoner's Dilemma**. Each government, making the best decision for itself, will choose to protect. These choices lead to the outcome in the lower right box of the table. Yet both governments are better off if neither protects: The upper left box of the table yields a payoff that is higher for both countries. By acting unilaterally in what appear to be their best interests, the governments fail to achieve the best outcome possible. If the countries act unilaterally to protect, there is a trade war that leaves both worse off. Trade wars are not as serious as shooting wars, but avoiding them is similar to the problem of avoiding armed conflict or arms races.

**TABLE 10-3 The Problem of Trade Warfare**

		Japan	
		Free trade	Protection
U.S.	Free trade	10	-10
	Protection	20	-5

Obviously, Japan and the United States need to establish an agreement (such as a treaty) to refrain from protection. Each government will be better off if it limits its own freedom of action, provided the other country limits its freedom of action as well. A treaty can make everyone better off.

This is a highly simplified example. In the real world there are both many countries and many gradations of trade policy between free trade and complete protection against imports. Nonetheless, the example suggests both that there is a need to coordinate trade policies through international agreements and that such agreements can actually make a difference. Indeed, the current system of international trade is built around a series of international agreements.

### International Trade Agreements: A Brief History

Internationally coordinated tariff reduction as a trade policy dates back to the 1930s. In 1930, the United States passed a remarkably irresponsible tariff law, the Smoot-Hawley Act. Under this act, tariff rates rose steeply and U.S. trade fell sharply; some economists argue that the Smoot-Hawley Act helped deepen the Great Depression. Within a few years after the act's passage, the U.S. administration concluded that tariffs needed to be reduced, but this posed serious problems of political coalition building. Any tariff reduction would be opposed by those members of Congress whose districts contained firms producing competing goods, while the benefits would be so widely diffused that few in Congress could be mobilized on the other side. To reduce tariff rates, tariff reduction needed to be linked to some concrete benefits for exporters. The initial solution to this political problem was bilateral tariff negotiations. The United States would approach some country that was a major exporter of some good—say, a sugar exporter—and offer to lower tariffs on sugar if that country would lower its tariffs on some U.S. exports. The attractiveness of the deal to U.S. exporters would help counter the political weight of the sugar interest. In the foreign country, the attractiveness of the deal to foreign sugar exporters would balance the political influence of import-competing interests. Such bilateral negotiations helped reduce the average duty on U.S. imports from 59 percent in 1932 to 25 percent shortly after World War II.

Bilateral negotiations, however, do not take full advantage of international coordination. For one thing, benefits from a bilateral negotiation may “spill over” to parties that have not made any concessions. For example, if the United States reduces tariffs on coffee as a result of a deal with Brazil, Colombia will also gain from a higher world coffee price. Furthermore, some advantageous deals may inherently involve more than two partners: The United States sells more to Europe, Europe sells more to Saudi Arabia, Saudi Arabia sells more to Japan, and Japan sells more to the United States. Thus, the next step in international trade liberalization was to proceed to multilateral negotiations involving a number of countries.

Multilateral negotiations began soon after the end of World War II. Originally, diplomats from the victorious Allies imagined such negotiations would take place under the auspices of a proposed body called the International Trade Organization, paralleling the International Monetary Fund and the World Bank (described in the second half of this book). In 1947, unwilling to wait until the ITO was in place, a group of 23 countries began trade negotiations under a provisional set of rules that became known as the **General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade**, or GATT. As it turned out, the ITO was never established because it ran into severe political opposition, especially in the United States. So the provisional agreement ended up governing world trade for the next 48 years.

Officially, the GATT was an agreement, not an organization—the countries participating in the agreement were officially designated as “contracting parties,” not members. In practice, the GATT did maintain a permanent “secretariat” in Geneva, which everyone referred to as “the GATT.” In 1995, the **World Trade Organization**, or **WTO**, was established, finally creating the formal organization envisaged 50 years earlier. However, the GATT rules remain in force, and the basic logic of the system remains the same.

One way to think about the GATT–WTO approach to trade is to use a mechanical analogy: It’s like a device designed to push a heavy object, the world economy, gradually up a slope—the path to free trade. To get there requires both “levers” to push the object in the right direction and “ratchets” to prevent backslicing.

The principal ratchet in the system is the process of **binding**. When a tariff rate is “bound,” the country imposing the tariff agrees not to raise the rate in the future. At present, almost all tariff rates in developed countries are bound, as are about three-quarters of the rates in developing countries. There is, however, some wiggle room in bound tariffs: A country can raise a tariff if it gets the agreement of other countries, which usually means providing compensation by reducing other tariffs. In practice, binding has been highly effective, with very little backslicing in tariffs over the past half-century.

In addition to binding tariffs, the GATT–WTO system generally tries to prevent nontariff interventions in trade. Export subsidies are not allowed, with one big exception: Back at the GATT’s inception, the United States insisted on a loophole for agricultural exports, which has since been exploited on a large scale by the European Union.

As we pointed out earlier in this chapter, most of the actual cost of protection in the United States comes from import quotas. The GATT–WTO system in effect “grandfathers” existing import quotas, though there has been an ongoing and often-successful effort to remove such quotas or convert them to tariffs. New import quotas are generally forbidden except as temporary measures to deal with “market disruption,” an undefined phrase usually interpreted to mean surges of imports that threaten to put a domestic sector suddenly out of business.

The lever used to make forward progress is the somewhat stylized process known as a **trade round**, in which a large group of countries get together to negotiate a set of tariff reductions and other measures to liberalize trade. Eight trade rounds have been completed since 1947, the last of which—the Uruguay Round, completed in 1994—established the WTO. In 2001, a meeting in the Persian Gulf city of Doha inaugurated a ninth round, but despite many years of negotiations this never led to an agreement. We’ll discuss the reasons for this failure later in this chapter.

The first five trade rounds under the GATT took the form of “parallel” bilateral negotiations, where each country negotiates pairwise with a number of countries at once. For example, if Germany were to offer a tariff reduction that would benefit both France and Italy, it could ask both of them for reciprocal concessions. The ability to make more extensive deals, together with the worldwide economic recovery from the war, helped to permit substantial tariff reductions.

The sixth multilateral trade agreement, known as the Kennedy Round, was completed in 1967. This agreement involved an across-the-board 50 percent reduction in tariffs by the major industrial countries, except for specified industries whose tariffs were left unchanged. The negotiations concerned which industries to exempt rather than the size of the cut for industries not given special treatment. Overall, the Kennedy Round reduced average tariffs by about 35 percent.

The so-called Tokyo Round of trade negotiations (completed in 1979) reduced tariffs by a formula more complex than that of the Kennedy Round. In addition, new codes were established in an effort to control the proliferation of nontariff barriers, such as voluntary export restraints and orderly marketing agreements. Finally, in 1994, an eighth round of negotiations, the so-called Uruguay Round, was completed. The provisions of that round were approved by the U.S. Congress after acrimonious debate; we describe the results of these negotiations later.

### The Uruguay Round

Major international trade negotiations invariably open with a ceremony in one exotic locale and conclude with a ceremonial signing in another. The eighth round of global trade negotiations carried out under the GATT began in 1986, with a meeting at the coastal resort of Punta del Este, Uruguay (hence the name Uruguay Round). The participants then repaired to Geneva, where they engaged in years of offers and counteroffers, threats and counterthreats, and, above all, tens of thousands of hours of meetings so boring that even the most experienced diplomat had difficulty staying awake. The round had been scheduled for completion by 1990 but ran into serious political difficulties. In late 1993, the negotiators finally produced a basic document consisting of 400 pages of agreements, together with supplementary documents detailing the specific commitments of member nations with regard to particular markets and products—about 22,000 pages in all. The agreement was signed in Marrakesh, Morocco, in April 1994, and ratified by the major nations—after bitter political controversy in some cases, including in the United States—by the end of that year.

As the length of the document suggests, the end results of the Uruguay Round are not easy to summarize. The most important results, however, may be grouped under two headings, trade liberalization and administrative reforms.

### Trade Liberalization

The Uruguay Round, like previous GATT negotiations, cut tariff rates around the world. The numbers can sound impressive: The average tariff imposed by advanced countries fell almost 40 percent as a result of the round. However, tariff rates were already quite low. In fact, the average tariff rate fell only from 6.3 to 3.9 percent, enough to produce only a small increase in world trade.

More important than this overall tariff reduction were the moves to liberalize trade in two important sectors: agriculture and clothing.

World trade in agricultural products has been highly distorted. Japan is notorious for import restrictions that lead to internal prices of rice, beef, and other foods that are several times as high as world market prices; Europe's massive export subsidies under the Common Agricultural Policy were described in Chapter 9. At the beginning of the Uruguay Round, the United States had an ambitious goal: free trade in agricultural products by the year 2000. The actual achievement was far more modest but still significant. The agreement required agricultural exporters to reduce the value of subsidies by 36 percent, and the volume of subsidized exports by 21 percent, over a six-year period. Countries like Japan that protect their farmers with import quotas were required to replace quotas with tariffs, which may not be increased in the future.

World trade in textiles and clothing was also highly distorted by the Multi-Fiber Arrangement, also described in Chapter 9. The Uruguay Round phased out the MFA over a 10-year period, eliminating all quantitative restrictions on trade in textiles and clothing. (Some high tariffs remain in place.) This was a fairly dramatic

liberalization—remember, most estimates suggested that protection of clothing imposed a larger cost on U.S. consumers than all other protectionist measures combined. It is worth noting, however, that the formula used in phasing out the MFA was heavily “backloaded”: Much of the liberalization was postponed until 2003 and 2004, with the final end of the quotas not taking place until January 1, 2005.

Sure enough, the end of the MFA brought a surge in clothing exports from China. For example, in January 2005, China shipped 27 million pairs of cotton trousers to the United States, up from 1.9 million a year earlier. And there was a fierce political reaction from clothing producers in the United States and Europe. While new restrictions were imposed on Chinese clothing exports, these restrictions were phased out over time; world trade in clothing has, in fact, been largely liberalized. A final important trade action under the Uruguay Round was a new set of rules concerning government procurement, purchases made not by private firms or consumers but by government agencies. Such procurement has long provided protected markets for many kinds of goods, from construction equipment to vehicles. (Recall the box on imported trucks in Chapter 9.) The Uruguay Round set new rules that should open up a wide range of government contracts for imported products.

### Administrative Reforms: From the GATT to the WTO

Much of the publicity that surrounded the Uruguay Round, and much of the controversy swirling around the world trading system since then, has focused on the round’s creation of a new institution, the World Trade Organization. In 1995, this organization replaced the ad hoc secretariat that had administered the GATT. As we’ll see in Chapter 12, the WTO has become the organization that opponents of globalization love to hate; it has been accused by both the left and the right of acting as a sort of world government, undermining national sovereignty.

How different is the WTO from the GATT? From a legal point of view, the GATT was a provisional agreement, whereas the WTO is a full-fledged international organization; however, the actual bureaucracy remains small (a staff of 500). An updated version of the original GATT text has been incorporated into the WTO rules. The GATT, however, applied only to trade in goods; world trade in services—that is, intangible things like insurance, consulting, and banking—was not subject to any agreed-upon set of rules. As a result, many countries applied regulations that openly or de facto discriminated against foreign suppliers. The GATT’s neglect of trade in services became an increasingly glaring omission because modern economies have increasingly focused on the production of services rather than physical goods. So the WTO agreement includes rules on trade in services (the General Agreement on Trade in Services, or GATS). In practice, these rules have not yet had much impact on trade in services; their main purpose is to serve as the basis for negotiating future trade rounds.

In addition to a broad shift from producing goods to producing services, advanced countries have also experienced a shift from depending on physical capital to depending on “intellectual property,” which is protected by patents and copyrights. (Thirty years ago, General Motors was the quintessential modern corporation; now it’s Apple or Google.) Thus, defining the international application of international property rights has also become a major preoccupation. The WTO tries to take on this issue with its Agreement on Trade-Related Aspects of Intellectual Property (TRIPS). The application of TRIPS in the pharmaceutical industry has become a subject of heated debate.

The most important new aspect of the WTO, however, is generally acknowledged to be its “dispute settlement” procedure. A basic problem arises when one country accuses another of violating the rules of the trading system. Suppose, for example,

that Moldova accuses Ukraine in restraining importation of products originated from Moldova—and Ukraine denies the charge. What happens next?

A dispute can arise when one country adopts a trade policy or violates the WTO agreements. Countries, being WTO members, approve to use the multilateral system of settling disputes instead of taking actions unilaterally, meaning abiding by the agreed WTO procedures and respecting judgments. However, WTO's priority is to settle disputes through consultations and not to pass judgment.

Let's assume the WTO concludes that Ukraine has, in fact, been violating the rules—and it nonetheless refuses to change its policy. What happens then? The WTO itself has no enforcement powers. What it can do is grant the complainant the right to retaliate. In our given example, the Russian government might be given the right to impose restrictions on Ukrainian exports without being considered in violation of WTO rules.

Under GATT rules, there were international tribunals that would take years or even decades as it had no fixed timetables; and even when the ruling had been issued, it was easier to block it. Of course, neither country would want to get a reputation of scofflaws, so countries used to make efforts to keep the actions as of the GATT rules.<sup>6</sup>

The Uruguay round agreement, under the WTO, introduced a more formal and structured procedure with more clearly defined stages, greater discipline, with an emphasis on prompt settlement for a case. Panels of experts are selected to hear cases, usually reaching a final conclusion in less than a year; even with appeals, the procedure is not supposed to take more than 15 months.

The hope and expectation is that few disputes will get this far. In many cases, the threat to bring a dispute before the WTO should lead to a settlement; in the great majority of other cases, countries accept the WTO ruling and change their policies.

The following box describes an example of the WTO dispute settlement procedure at work: the U.S.–Venezuela dispute over imported gasoline. As the box explains, this case has also become a prime example for those who accuse the WTO of undermining national sovereignty.

### **Benefits and Costs**

The economic impact of the Uruguay Round is difficult to estimate. If nothing else, think about the logistics: To do an estimate, one must translate an immense document from one impenetrable jargon (legalese) into another (economese), assign numbers to the translation, then feed the whole thing into a computer model of the world economy.

The most widely cited estimates are those of the GATT itself and of the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development, another international organization (this one consisting only of rich countries and based in Paris). Both estimates suggest a gain to the world economy as a whole of more than \$200 billion annually, raising world income by about 1 percent. As always, there are dissenting estimates on both sides. Some economists claim that the estimated gains are exaggerated, particularly because the estimates assume that exports and imports responded strongly to the new liberalizing moves. A probably larger minority of critics argues that these estimates are considerably too low, for the “dynamic” reasons discussed earlier in this chapter.

---

<sup>6</sup>World Trade Organization: [www.wto.org](http://www.wto.org)

## SETTLING A DISPUTE—AND CREATING ONE

The very first application of the WTO's new dispute settlement procedure has also been one of the most controversial. To WTO supporters, it illustrates the new system's effectiveness. To opponents, it shows that the organization stands in the way of important social goals such as protecting the environment.

The case arose out of new U.S. air pollution standards. These standards set rules for the chemical composition of gasoline sold in the United States. A uniform standard would clearly have been legal under WTO rules. However, the new standards included some loopholes: Refineries in the United States, or those selling 75 percent or more of their output in the United States, were given "baselines" that depended on their 1990 pollutant levels. This provision generally set a less strict standard than was set for imported gasoline, and thus in effect introduced a preference for gasoline from domestic refineries.

Venezuela, which ships considerable quantities of gasoline to the United States, brought a complaint against the new pollution rules early in 1995. Venezuela argued that the rules violated the principle of "national treatment," which says that imported goods should be subject to the same regulations as domestic goods (so that regulations are not used as an indirect form of protectionism). A year later, the panel appointed by the WTO ruled in Venezuela's favor; the United States appealed, but the appeal was rejected. The United States and Venezuela then negotiated a revised set of rules.

At one level, this outcome was a demonstration of the WTO doing exactly what it was supposed to do. The United States had introduced measures that pretty clearly violated the letter of its trade agreements; when a smaller, less influential country appealed against those measures, it got fairly quick results.

On the other hand, environmentalists were understandably upset: The WTO ruling, in effect, blocked a measure that would have made the air cleaner. Furthermore, there was little question that the clean-air rules were promulgated in good faith—that is, they were really intended to reduce air pollution, not to exclude exports.

Defenders of the WTO point out that the United States clearly could have written a rule that did not discriminate against imports; the fact that it had not done so was a political concession to the refining industry, which *did* in effect constitute a sort of protectionism. The most you can say is that the WTO's rules made it more difficult for U.S. environmentalists to strike a political deal with the industry.

In the mythology of the anti-globalization movement, which we discuss in Chapter 12, the WTO's intervention against clean-air standards has taken on iconic status: The case is seen as a prime example of how the organization deprives nations of their sovereignty, preventing them from following socially and environmentally responsible policies. The reality of the case, however, is nowhere near that clear-cut: If the United States had imposed a "clean" clean-air rule that had not discriminated among sources, the WTO would have had no complaints.

In any case, it is clear that the usual logic of trade liberalization applies: The costs of the Uruguay Round were felt by concentrated, often well-organized groups, while the benefit accrued to broad, diffuse populations. The progress on agriculture hurt the small but influential populations of farmers in Europe, Japan, and other countries where agricultural prices are far above world levels. These losses were much more than offset by gains to consumers and taxpayers in those countries, but because these benefits were very widely spread, they were little noticed. Similarly, the liberalization of trade in textiles and clothing produced some concentrated pain for workers and companies in those industries, offset by considerably larger but far less visible consumer gains.

Given these strong distributional impacts of the Uruguay Round, it is actually remarkable that an agreement was reached at all. Indeed, after the failure to achieve anything close to agreement by the 1990 target, many commentators began to pronounce the whole trade negotiation process to be dead. That in the end, agreement was achieved, if on a more modest scale than originally hoped, may be attributed to an interlocking set of political calculations. In the United States, the gains to agricultural exporters and the prospective gains to service exporters if the GATT opened the door to substantial liberalization helped offset the complaints of the clothing industry. Many developing countries supported the round because of the new opportunities it would offer to their own textile and clothing exports. Also, some of the “concessions” negotiated under the agreement were an excuse to make policy changes that would eventually have happened anyway. For example, the sheer expense of Europe’s Common Agricultural Policy in a time of budget deficits made it ripe for cutting in any case.

An important factor in the final success of the round, however, was fear of what would happen if it failed. By 1993, protectionist currents were evidently running strong in the United States and elsewhere. Trade negotiators in countries that might otherwise have refused to go along with the agreement—such as France, Japan, or South Korea, in all of which powerful farm lobbies angrily opposed trade liberalization—therefore feared that failure to agree would be dangerous. That is, they feared a failed round would not merely mean lack of progress but substantial backsliding on the progress made toward free trade over the previous four decades.

## CASE STUDY

### Testing the WTO’s Metal

In March 2002, the U.S. government imposed 30 percent tariffs on a range of imported steel products. The official reason for this action was that the U.S. industry faced a surge in imports and needed time to restructure. But the real reason, almost everyone agreed, was politics: West Virginia, Ohio, and Pennsylvania, where the steel industry is concentrated, were widely expected to be crucial “swing states” in the 2004 election.

Europe, Japan, China, and South Korea filed suit against the U.S. steel tariff with the WTO, asserting that the U.S. action was illegal. In July 2003, a WTO panel agreed, ruling that the U.S. action was unjustified. Many observers regarded the U.S. response to this ruling as a crucial test of the WTO’s credibility: Would the government of the world’s most powerful nation really allow an international organization to tell it to remove a politically important tariff? There was even talk of a looming trade war.

In fact, the United States complied with the ruling, lifting the steel tariffs in December 2003. The official explanation for the decision was that the tariffs had served their purpose. Most observers believed, however, that the key motivation

was a threat by the European Union, which by now had received WTO clearance to take retaliatory action, and was getting ready to impose tariffs on more than \$2 billion in U.S. exports. (The Europeans, who understand politics as well as we do, targeted their tariffs on goods produced in—you guessed it—political swing states.)

So the WTO passed a big test. Still, it's one thing for the United States to defer to a complaint from the European Union, which is an economic superpower with an economy roughly the same size as that of the United States. The next question is what will happen when the WTO rules in favor of smaller economies against major economic powers like the United States or the EU.

In March 2005, in a landmark decision, the WTO agreed with Brazil's claim that U.S. subsidies to cotton producers were illegal. The United States said it would comply and eliminate the subsidies, but by 2009 had made only partial moves toward compliance; at that point, the WTO authorized Brazil to retaliate with substantial sanctions on U.S. exports. In 2010, however, Brazil withdrew its complaint—not because the United States had ended subsidies but because it made a side deal to pay Brazil hundreds of millions of dollars in compensation. It was a troubling example of just how powerful special interests can be.

## The End of Trade Agreements?

The ninth major round of world trade negotiations began in 2001 with a ceremony in the Persian Gulf city of Doha. But as we've already noted, no agreement was ever reached.

It's important to realize that the failure of the Doha Round does not undo the progress achieved in previous trade negotiations. Remember that the world trading system is a combination of "levers"—international trade negotiations that push trade liberalization forward—and "ratchets," mainly the practice of binding tariffs, which prevent backsliding. The levers seem to have failed in the latest trade round, but the ratchets are still in place: The reductions in tariff rates that took place in the previous eight rounds remain in effect. As a result, world trade remains much freer than at any previous point in modern history.

In fact, Doha's failure owes a lot to the success of previous trade negotiations. Because previous negotiations had been so successful at reducing trade barriers, the remaining barriers to trade are fairly low, so that the potential gains from further trade liberalization are modest. Indeed, barriers to trade in most manufactured goods other than apparel and textiles are now more or less trivial. Most of the potential gains from a move to freer trade would come from reducing tariffs and export subsidies in agriculture—which has been the last sector to be liberalized because it's the most sensitive sector politically.

Table 10-4 illustrates this point. It shows a World Bank estimate of where the welfare gains from "full liberalization"—that is, the elimination of all remaining barriers to trade and export subsidies—would come from, and how they would be distributed across countries. In the modern world, agricultural goods account for less than 10 percent of total international trade. Nonetheless, according to the World Bank's estimate, liberalizing agricultural trade would produce 63 percent of the total world gains

**TABLE 10-4****Percentage Distribution of Potential Gains from Free Trade**

Economy	Full Liberalization of:			
	Agriculture and Food	Textiles and Clothing	Other Merchandise	All Goods
Developed	46	6	3	55
Developing	17	8	20	45
All	63	14	23	100

**Source:** Kym Anderson and Will Martin, "Agricultural Trade Reform and the Doha Agenda," *The World Economy* 28 (September 2005), pp. 1301–1327.

from free trade for the world as a whole. And these gains are very hard to get at. As already described, farmers in rich countries are highly effective at getting favors from the political process.

The proposals that came closest to actually getting accepted in the Doha Round in fact fell far short of full liberalization. As a result, the likely gains even from a successful round would have been fairly small. Table 10-5 shows World Bank estimates of the welfare gains, as a percentage of income, under two scenarios of how Doha might have played out: an “ambitious” scenario that would have been very difficult to achieve, and a “less ambitious” scenario in which “sensitive” sectors would have been spared major liberalization. The gains for the world as a whole even in the ambitious scenario would have been only 0.18 percent of GDP; in the more plausible scenario, the gains would have been less than a third as large. For middle- and lower-income countries, the gains would have been even smaller. (Why would China have actually lost? Because, as explained in the box on agricultural subsidies, it would have ended up paying higher prices for imported agricultural goods.)

## DO AGRICULTURAL SUBSIDIES HURT THE THIRD WORLD?

One of the major complaints of developing countries during the Doha negotiations was the continuing existence of large agricultural export and production subsidies in rich countries. The U.S. cotton subsidy, which depresses world cotton prices and therefore hurts cotton growers in West Africa, is the most commonly cited example.

But we learned in Chapter 9 that an export subsidy normally raises the welfare of the importing country, which gets to buy goods more cheaply. So shouldn't export subsidies by rich countries actually help poorer countries?

The answer is that in many cases they do. The estimates shown in Table 10-5 indicate that a successful Doha Round would actually have hurt China. Why? Because China, which exports manufactured goods and imports food and

other agricultural products, would be hurt by the removal of agricultural subsidies.

And it's not just China that may actually benefit from rich-country export subsidies. Some third-world farmers are hurt by low prices of subsidized food exports from Europe and the United States—but urban residents in the third world benefit, and so do those farmers producing goods, such as coffee, that don't compete with the subsidized products.

Africa is a case in point. A survey of estimates of the likely effects of the Doha Round on low-income African nations found that, in most cases, African countries would actually be made worse off because the negative effects of higher food prices would more than offset the gains from higher prices for crops such as cotton.

**TABLE 10-5 Percentage Gains in Income under Two Doha Scenarios**

	Ambitious	Less Ambitious
High-income	0.20	0.05
Middle-income	0.10	0.00
China	-0.02	-0.05
Low-income	0.05	0.01
World	0.18	0.04

Source: See Table 10-4.

The smallness of the numbers in Table 10-5 helps explain why the round failed. Poor countries saw little in the proposals for them; they pressed for much bigger concessions from rich countries. The governments of rich countries, in turn, refused to take the political risk of crossing powerful interest groups, especially farmers, without something in return—and poor countries were unwilling to offer the deep cuts in their remaining tariffs that might have been sufficient.

### Preferential Trading Agreements

The international trade agreements that we have described so far all involved a “nondiscriminatory” reduction in tariff rates. For example, in earlier discussed the longlasting Banana dispute, the European Commission initiated an agreement on bananas with Latin American suppliers and soured EU and U.S. external trade relations. According to the agreement, the EU gradually cuts the import tariff on bananas (as of eight stages) from the rate of €176 per ton to €114 per ton in 2017 at the earliest (or 2019 at the latest) for Most Favored Nations (MFN). The MFN status was granted to most Latin American countries, which guarantees that their exporters will pay tariffs no higher than that of the nation that pays the lowest. All countries granted MFN status thus pay the same rates.<sup>7</sup> Tariff reductions under the GATT always—with one important exception—are made on an MFN basis.

There are some important cases, however, in which nations establish **preferential trading agreements** under which the tariffs they apply to each other’s products are lower than the rates on the same goods coming from other countries. The GATT in general prohibits such agreements but makes a rather strange exception: It is against the rules for country A to have lower tariffs on imports from country B than on those from country C, but it is acceptable if countries B and C agree to have zero tariffs on each other’s products. That is, the GATT forbids preferential trading agreements in general, as a violation of the MFN principle, but allows them if they lead to free trade between the agreeing countries.<sup>8</sup>

In general, two or more countries agreeing to establish free trade can do so in one of two ways. They can establish a **free trade area** in which each country’s goods can be shipped to the other without tariffs, but in which the countries set tariffs against the outside world independently. Or they can establish a **customs union** in which the countries must agree on tariff rates.

<sup>7</sup>“Bananas other than Plantains,” European Commission, Directorate-General for Agriculture and Rural Development, September 2013, [https://ec.europa.eu/agriculture/sites/agriculture/files/bananas/fact-sheet\\_en.pdf](https://ec.europa.eu/agriculture/sites/agriculture/files/bananas/fact-sheet_en.pdf)

<sup>8</sup>The logic here seems to be legal rather than economic. Nations are allowed to have free trade within their boundaries: Nobody insists that California wine pay the same tariff as French wine when it is shipped to New York. That is, the MFN principle does not apply within political units. But what is a political unit? The GATT sidesteps that potentially thorny question by allowing any group of economies to do what countries do and establish free trade within some defined boundary.

The North American Free Trade Agreement—which established free trade among Canada, the United States, and Mexico—created a free trade area: There was no requirement in the agreement that, for example, Canada and Mexico have the same tariff rate on textiles from China. Some details in this agreement were renegotiated recently, and it was renamed the U.S.-Mexico-Canada Agreement, or USMCA. However, the basic structure of the agreement remained: the three countries are a free trade area but not a customs union.

The European Union, on the other hand, is a full customs union. All of the countries must agree to charge the same tariff rate on each imported good. Each system has both advantages and disadvantages; these are discussed in the accompanying box.

Subject to the qualifications mentioned earlier in this chapter, tariff reduction is a good thing that raises economic efficiency. At first, it might seem that preferential tariff reductions are also good, if not as good as reducing tariffs all around. After all, isn't half a loaf better than none?

Perhaps surprisingly, this conclusion is too optimistic. It is possible for a country to make itself worse off by joining a customs union. The reason may be illustrated by a hypothetical example using Britain, France, and the United States. The United States is a low-cost producer of wheat (\$4 per bushel), France a medium-cost producer (\$6 per bushel), and Britain a high-cost producer (\$8 per bushel). Both Britain and France maintain tariffs against all wheat imports. If Britain forms a customs union with France, the tariff against French, but not U.S., wheat will be abolished. Is this good or bad for Britain? To answer this, consider two cases.

First, suppose Britain's initial tariff was high enough to exclude wheat imports from either France or the United States. For example, with a tariff of \$5 per bushel, it would cost \$9 to import U.S. wheat and \$11 to import French wheat, so British consumers would buy \$8 British wheat instead. When the tariff on French wheat is eliminated, imports from France will replace British production. From Britain's point of view, this is a gain because it costs \$8 to produce a bushel of wheat domestically, while Britain needs to produce only \$6 worth of export goods to pay for a bushel of French wheat.

On the other hand, suppose the tariff was lower, for example, \$3 per bushel, so that before joining the customs union, Britain bought its wheat from the United States (at a cost to consumers of \$7 per bushel) rather than producing its own wheat. When the customs union is formed, consumers will buy French wheat at \$6 rather than U.S. wheat at \$7. So imports of wheat from the United States will cease. However, U.S. wheat is really cheaper than French wheat; the \$3 tax that British consumers must pay on U.S. wheat returns to Britain in the form of government revenue and is therefore not a net cost to the British economy. Britain will have to devote more resources to exports to pay for its wheat imports and will be worse off rather than better off.

This possibility of a loss is another example of the theory of the second best. Think of Britain as initially having two policies that distort incentives: a tariff against U.S. wheat and a tariff against French wheat. Although the tariff against French wheat may seem to distort incentives, it may actually help to offset the distortion of incentives resulting from the tariff against the United States by encouraging consumption of the cheaper U.S. wheat. Thus, removing the tariff on French wheat can actually reduce welfare.

Returning to our two cases, notice that Britain gains if the formation of a customs union leads to new trade—French wheat replacing domestic production—while it loses

if the trade within the customs union simply replaces trade with countries outside the union. In the analysis of preferential trading arrangements, the first case is referred to as **trade creation**, while the second is **trade diversion**. Whether a customs union is desirable or undesirable depends on whether it mainly leads to trade creation or trade diversion.

## FREE TRADE AREA VERSUS CUSTOMS UNION

The difference between a free trade area and a customs union is, in brief, that the first is politically straightforward but an administrative headache, while the second is just the opposite.

Consider first the case of a customs union. Once such a union is established, tariff administration is relatively easy: Goods must pay tariffs when they cross the border of the union but from then on can be shipped freely between countries. A cargo that is unloaded at Marseilles or Rotterdam must pay duties there but will not face any additional charges if it then goes by truck to Munich. To make this simple system work, however, the countries must agree on tariff rates: The duty must be the same whether the cargo is unloaded at Marseilles, Rotterdam, or, for that matter, Hamburg because otherwise, importers would choose the point of entry that minimizes their fees. So a customs union requires that Germany, France, the Netherlands, and all the other countries agree to charge the same tariffs. This is not easily done: Countries are, in effect, ceding part of their sovereignty to a supranational entity, the European Union.

This has been possible in Europe for a variety of reasons, including the belief that economic unity would help cement the postwar political alliance between European democracies. (One of the founders of the European Union once joked that it should erect a statue of Joseph Stalin, without whose menace the Union might never have been created.) But elsewhere these conditions are lacking. The three nations that formed NAFTA, now renamed the USMCA, would find it very difficult to cede control over tariffs to any supranational body; if nothing else, it would be hard to devise any arrangement that would give due weight to U.S. interests without effectively allowing the United

States to dictate trade policy to Canada and Mexico. The USMCA, therefore, while it permits Mexican goods to enter the United States without tariffs and vice versa, does not require that Mexico and the United States adopt a common external tariff on goods they import from other countries.

This, however, raises a different problem. Under the USMCA, a shirt made by Mexican workers can be brought into the United States freely. But suppose the United States wants to maintain high tariffs on shirts imported from other countries, while Mexico does not impose similar tariffs. What is to prevent someone from shipping a shirt from, say, Bangladesh to Mexico and then putting it on a truck bound for Chicago?

The answer is that even though the United States and Mexico may have free trade, goods shipped from Mexico to the United States must still pass through a customs inspection. And they can enter the United States without duty only if they have documents proving that they are in fact Mexican goods, not transshipped imports from third countries.

But what is a Mexican shirt? If a shirt comes from Bangladesh, but Mexicans sew on the buttons, does that make it Mexican? Probably not. But if everything except the buttons was made in Mexico, it probably should be considered Mexican. The point is that administering a free trade area that is not a customs union requires not only that the countries continue to check goods at the border but that they specify an elaborate set of “rules of origin” that determine whether a good is eligible to cross the border without paying a tariff.

As a result, free trade agreements impose a large burden of paperwork, which may be a significant obstacle to trade even when such trade is, in principle, free.

## BREXIT

The European Union began in 1957 as the Common Market, a customs union among six nations. Ever since, it has been the world's prime example of how a customs union can work—and for almost half a century it was an overwhelming success story. Over time the economic integration of Europe was both widened and deepened; that is, more countries joined the customs union, and the range of activities on which Europe was united expanded. But in 2016 the European Union experienced a shocking reversal: Britain held a referendum on whether to leave the union—a proposition that came to be known as “Brexit” (for British exit)—and a narrow majority of the public voted to leave.

What happened? It probably wasn't about trade in goods and services; that is, it wasn't about the customs union. Instead, there was a backlash against the ways Europe tried to become more than a customs union, an effort symbolized by the change in name from Common Market to European Union.

More specifically, in 1992 the group known by then as the European Economic Community established new rules that harmonized regulations and, perhaps more important, guaranteed free movement of people among member countries. At first, this seemed to cause few problems. But after 2004 the Union was also expanded substantially, adding

a number of former Communist countries in Eastern Europe. These countries are relatively poor—for example, per capita income in both Romania and Bulgaria is less than half its level in Britain. As a result, significant numbers of workers began migrating to richer European nations.

There is a widespread perception in the countries experiencing inward migration that the migrants are having an adverse effect on native-born citizens: taking jobs, putting strain on public services, and so on. Most economic analyses suggest that this perception greatly overstates the reality and fails to take account of the benefits of additional workers, but it's not hard to see why such claims get popular traction, especially given declining wages for many blue-collar workers. Add in fears that national identity is being undermined, and the conditions were there for a populist backlash.

At the time of this writing a variety of issues, ranging from the status of the Irish border to fishing rights, were still unresolved, so it was unclear what form future economic relations within Europe would take. What is clear from the story of Brexit is that the political economy of international economic policy remains difficult, and one should not take the historical downward trend in barriers to economic integration as irreversible.

## CASE STUDY

### Trade Diversion in South America

In 1991, four South American nations, Argentina, Brazil, Paraguay, and Uruguay, formed a free trade area known as Mercosur. The pact had an immediate and dramatic effect on trade: Within four years, the value of trade among the nations tripled. Leaders in the region proudly claimed Mercosur as a major success, part of a broader package of economic reform.

But while Mercosur clearly was successful in increasing intraregional trade, the theory of preferential trading areas tells us that this need not be a good thing: If the new trade came at the expense of trade that would otherwise have taken place with the rest of the world—that is, if the pact diverted trade instead of

created it—it might actually have reduced welfare. And sure enough, in 1996 a study prepared by the World Bank's chief trade economist concluded that despite Mercosur's success in increasing regional trade—or, rather, because that success came at the expense of other trade—the net effects on the economies involved were probably negative.

In essence, the report argued that as a result of Mercosur, consumers in the member countries were being induced to buy expensively produced manufactured goods from their neighbors rather than cheaper but heavily tariffed goods from other countries. In particular, because of Mercosur, Brazil's highly protected and somewhat inefficient auto industry had in effect acquired a captive market in Argentina, thus displacing imports from elsewhere, just like our text example in which French wheat displaces American wheat in the British market. "These findings," concluded the initial draft of the report, "appear to constitute the most convincing, and disturbing, evidence produced thus far concerning the potential adverse effects of regional trade arrangements."

But that is not what the final, published report said. The initial draft was leaked to the press and generated a firestorm of protest from Mercosur governments, Brazil in particular. Under pressure, the World Bank first delayed publication and then eventually released a version that included a number of caveats. Still, even in its published version, the report made a fairly strong case that Mercosur, if not entirely counterproductive, nonetheless has produced a considerable amount of trade diversion.

## The Trans-Pacific Partnership

In early 2016 negotiators from twelve countries around the Pacific Rim, including the United States but not including China, agreed on a proposal for a new economic agreement called the Trans-Pacific Partnership, or TPP. In some ways TPP sounded like previous trade agreements, and negotiators seem to have expected the proposal to follow the path of efforts like the Uruguay Round or NAFTA. That is, they expected that there would be considerable controversy, but that eventually economic self-interest would lead the nations involved to ratify the agreement.

In the end, however, TPP didn't go anywhere. In part this was because of a widespread backlash against globalization, discussed further in Chapter 12. But it was also because TPP, arguably, wasn't really a trade agreement in the traditional sense. That is, it didn't do much to reduce tariffs or eliminate import quotas, largely because previous agreements had done so much to eliminate conventional barriers to trade.

So what did TPP do? One important aspect was a strengthening of "intellectual property rights"—the ability to enforce patents and copyrights across borders. Another aspect was "investor-state dispute settlement"—dealing with arguments between private businesses and national governments. TPP would have set up special panels, with representatives from both sectors, to resolve such disputes.

There was a case to be made for both aspects, which would arguably provide businesses with an assurance of fair treatment and foster greater trade and investment. There was also, however, a reasonable case against the agreement, which was that it might reinforce corporate interests at the expense of workers—for example, making

it easier for drug companies to charge high prices. The point is not that one side was right and the other wrong, but rather that the simple logic of free trade offered little guidance to the desirability of TPP.

This murkiness, combined with growing skepticism about trade in general, made TPP a more or less impossible sell. And the apparent failure of TPP, along with the Doha Round, added to a sense that big trade agreements are a thing of the past.

## SUMMARY

- Although few countries practice free trade, most economists continue to hold up free trade as a desirable policy. This advocacy rests on three lines of argument. First is a formal case for the efficiency gains from free trade that is simply the cost-benefit analysis of trade policy read in reverse. Second, many economists believe that free trade produces additional gains that go beyond this formal analysis. Finally, given the difficulty of translating complex economic analysis into real policies, even those who do not see free trade as the best imaginable policy see it as a useful rule of thumb.
- There is an intellectually respectable case for deviating from free trade. One argument that is clearly valid in principle is that countries can improve their terms of trade through optimal tariffs and export taxes. This argument is not too important in practice, however. Small countries cannot have much influence on their import or export prices, so they cannot use tariffs or other policies to raise their terms of trade. Large countries, on the other hand, can influence their terms of trade, but in imposing tariffs, they run the risk of disrupting trade agreements and provoking retaliation.
- The other argument for deviating from free trade rests on domestic market failures. If some domestic market, such as the labor market, fails to function properly, deviating from free trade can sometimes help reduce the consequences of this malfunctioning. The theory of the second best states that if one market fails to work properly, it is no longer optimal for the government to abstain from intervention in other markets. A tariff may raise welfare if there is a marginal social benefit to production of a good that is not captured by producer surplus measures.
- Although market failures are probably common, the domestic market failure argument should not be applied too freely. First, it is an argument for domestic policies rather than trade policies; tariffs are always an inferior, “second-best” way to offset domestic market failure, which is always best treated at its source. Furthermore, market failure is difficult to analyze well enough to be sure of the appropriate policy recommendation.
- In 2004 the United States signed a free trade agreement with several Central American nations and the Dominican Republic, known as DR-CAFTA. The agreement was expected to boost clothing exports from these nations, which had until then been suffering from growing Asian competition. Assuming the agreement worked in this respect, what would this say about its overall economic impact?
- One important theme in the 2016 U.S. presidential election was a backlash against trade agreements in general; a significant number of voters were convinced that America’s trade deals amounted to a giveaway of sovereignty and that the United States should stop tying its own hands and pursue whatever trade policy serves its self-interest. How would you respond to that assertion?
- Although some progress was made in the 1930s toward trade liberalization via bilateral agreements, since World War II international coordination has taken place primarily via multilateral agreements under the auspices of the General Agreement on

**Tariffs and Trade.** The GATT, which comprises both a bureaucracy and a set of rules of conduct, is the central institution of the international trading system. The most recent worldwide GATT agreement also set up a new organization, the World Trade Organization (WTO), to monitor and enforce the agreement.

- In addition to the overall reductions in tariffs that have taken place through multilateral negotiation, some groups of countries have negotiated preferential trading agreements under which they lower tariffs with respect to each other but not the rest of the world. Two kinds of preferential trading agreements are allowed under the GATT: customs unions, in which the members of the agreement set up common external tariffs, and free trade areas, in which members do not charge tariffs on each other's products but set their own tariff rates against the outside world. Either kind of agreement has ambiguous effects on economic welfare. If joining such an agreement leads to replacement of high-cost domestic production by imports from other members of the agreement—the case of trade creation—a country gains. But if joining leads to the replacement of low-cost imports from outside the zone with higher-cost goods from member nations—the case of trade diversion—a country loses.
- Production of high-technology products such as smartphones depends crucially on the use of “rare earths,” a small group of exotic metals. As it happens, China dominates the production of these rare earths; given possible international tensions, there have been calls for special policies to encourage rare-earth production in the United States. Can such calls be justified in economic terms? Where would the justification fit into the analysis of this chapter?

## KEY TERMS

binding, p. 293	marginal social benefit, p. 282	theory of the second best, p. 283
collective action, p. 288	median voter, p. 285	trade creation, p. 303
customs union, p. 301	optimum tariff, p. 280	trade diversion, p. 303
domestic market failures, p. 282	political argument for free trade, p. 279	trade round, p. 293
efficiency case for free trade, p. 277	preferential trading agreements, p. 301	trade war, p. 291
free trade area, p. 301	Prisoner's Dilemma, p. 291	World Trade Organization (WTO), p. 293
General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT), p. 292	rent seeking, p. 279	
international negotiation, p. 290	terms of trade argument for a tariff, p. 280	

## PROBLEMS

1. “For a small country like the Philippines, a move to free trade would have huge advantages. It would let consumers and producers make their choices based on the real costs of goods, not artificial prices determined by government policy; it would allow escape from the confines of a narrow domestic market; it would open new horizons for entrepreneurship; and, most important, it would help to clean up domestic politics.” Separate and identify the arguments for free trade in this statement.

2. Which of the following are potentially valid arguments for tariffs or export subsidies, and which are not? Explain your answers.
  - a. “Dairy producers earning in Wales are at their lowest peak despite an overall rise in farm business incomes.”
  - b. “The more ecologically certified foods European Union requires, the higher the price of these products will be on common market.”
  - c. “US soybean exports to China and India don’t just mean increased wealth for farmers—they mean increased wealth for everyone in the value chain.”
  - d. “The PET industry continued to sustain U.S. recycling programs; this shows the strength of the PET recycling market in the face of significant global economic slowdown and a drop in virgin feedstock prices.”
  - e. “The price of coal has been stable, but the production dropped 10.3 percent, and workers have been forced to look for other jobs.”
3. A small country can import a good at a world price of 5 per unit. The domestic supply curve of the good is

$$S = 10 + 10P.$$

The demand curve is

$$D = 600 - 5P.$$

In addition, each unit of production yields a marginal social benefit of 15.

- a. Calculate the total effect on welfare of a tariff of 10 per unit levied on imports.
- b. Calculate the total effect of a production subsidy of 10 per unit.
- c. Why does the production subsidy produce a greater gain in welfare than the tariff?
- d. What would the optimal production subsidy be?
4. Suppose demand and supply are exactly as described in Problem 3, but there is no marginal social benefit to production. However, for political reasons, the government counts a dollar’s worth of gain to producers as being worth \$5 of either consumer gain or government revenue. Calculate the effects on the government’s objective of a tariff of 10 per unit.
5. Upon Poland’s entering the European Union, suppose it is discovered that the cost of automobile production in Poland is €20,000 while it is €30,000 in Germany. Suppose the EU, which has a customs union, has an  $X$  percent tariff on automobiles and the costs of production are equal to  $Y$  (valued in euros) in Japan. Comment on whether the addition of Poland to the European Union would result in trade *creation* or trade *diversion* under the following scenarios:
  - a.  $X = 50\%$  and  $Y = €18,000$
  - b.  $X = 100\%$  and  $Y = €18,000$
  - c.  $X = 100\%$  and  $Y = €12,000$
6. “China gives its aluminum industry an unfair advantage through underpriced loans and other illegal government subsidies. These kinds of policies have disadvantaged American manufacturers and contributed to the global glut in aluminum, steel and other sectors.” Discuss both the economics and the political economy of this viewpoint.
7. Give an intuitive explanation for the optimal tariff argument.
8. If governments make trade policies based on national economic welfare, is the problem of trade warfare still represented by a Prisoner’s Dilemma game as in

Table 10-3? What is the equilibrium solution to the game if governments formulate policy in this way? Would they ever choose the strategy of protectionism?

9. Norway banned the imports of agricultural biotech products and developed extremely restrictive policies for crops derived from agricultural biotech, which are not related to the protection of health, food safety, or the environment. These policies are made to protect domestic agricultural interests, as Norway cares a lot about rural employment and subsidizes small farms to help them remain competitive with imported goods. Comment on this trade policy approach.

## FURTHER READINGS

- W. Max Corden. *Trade Policy and Economic Welfare*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1974. The classic survey of economic arguments for and against protection.
- I. M. Destler. *American Trade Politics*, 4th edition. Washington, D.C.: Peterson Institute for International Economics, 2005. A comprehensive portrait of the real-world process of trade policy making, and its evolution over time.
- Gene M. Grossman and Elhanan Helpman. *Interest Groups and Trade Policy*. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 2002. A collection of papers and case studies on modern political economy models of trade policy.
- Jeffrey Schott. *The Uruguay Round: An Assessment*. Washington, D.C.: Institute for International Economics, 1994. A mercifully brief and readable survey of the issues and accomplishments of the most recent GATT round, together with a survey of much of the relevant research.
- Peter Van den Bossche. *The Law and Policy of the World Trade Organization*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2008. A comprehensive survey, with texts and other materials, of the legal framework of international trade.
- World Trade Organization, *Understanding the WTO*. Geneva: World Trade Organization, 2007. A useful self-survey of the institution's role and history.



# APPENDIX TO CHAPTER 10

## Proving That the Optimum Tariff Is Positive

A tariff always improves the terms of trade of a large country but at the same time distorts production and consumption. This appendix shows that for a sufficiently small tariff, the terms of trade gain is always larger than the distortion loss. Thus, there is always an optimal tariff that is positive.

To make the point, we focus on the case where all demand and supply curves are *linear*; that is, are straight lines.

### Demand and Supply

We assume that Home, the importing country, has a demand curve whose equation is

$$D = a - b\tilde{P}, \quad (10A-1)$$

where  $\tilde{P}$  is the internal price of the good, and a supply curve whose equation is

$$Q = e + f\tilde{P}. \quad (10A-2)$$

Home's import demand is equal to the difference between domestic demand and supply,

$$D - Q = (a - e) - (b + f)\tilde{P}. \quad (10A-3)$$

Foreign's export supply is also a straight line,

$$(Q^* - D^*) = g + hP_W, \quad (10A-4)$$

where  $P_W$  is the world price. The internal price in Home will exceed the world price by the tariff

$$\tilde{P} = P_W + t. \quad (10A-5)$$

### The Tariff and Prices

A tariff drives a wedge between internal and world prices, driving the internal Home price up and the world price down (Figure 10A-1).

In world equilibrium, Home import demand equals Foreign export supply:

$$(a - e) - (b + f) \times (P_W + t) = g + hP_W. \quad (10A-6)$$

Let  $P_F$  be the world price that would prevail if there were no tariff. Then a tariff,  $t$ , will raise the internal price to

$$\tilde{P} = P_F + th/(b + f + h), \quad (10A-7)$$

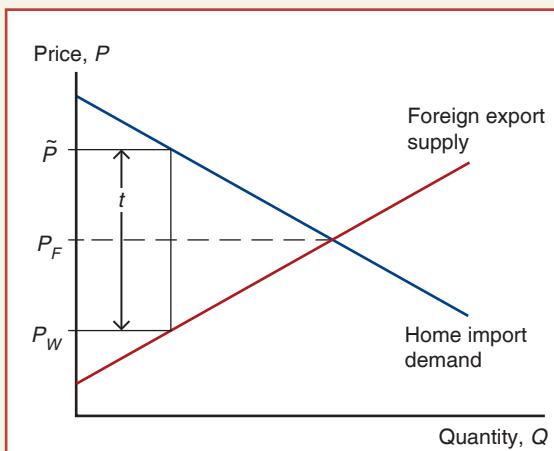
while lowering the world price to

$$P_W = P_F - t(b + f)/(b + f + h). \quad (10A-8)$$

(For a small country, foreign supply is highly elastic; that is,  $h$  is very large. So for a small country, a tariff will have little effect on the world price while raising the domestic price almost one-for-one.)

**FIGURE 10A-1**  
**Effects of a Tariff on Prices**

In a linear model, we can calculate the exact effect of a tariff on prices.



### The Tariff and Domestic Welfare

We now use what we have learned to derive the effects of a tariff on Home's welfare (Figure 10A-2).  $Q^1$  and  $D^1$  represent the free trade levels of consumption and production. With a tariff, the internal price rises, with the result that  $Q$  rises to  $Q^2$  and  $D$  falls to  $D^2$ , where

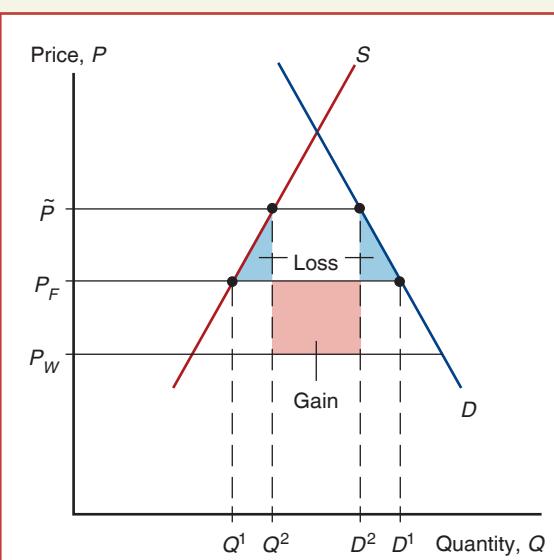
$$Q^2 = Q^1 + tfh/(b + f + h) \quad (10A-9)$$

and

$$D^2 = D^1 - tbh/(b + f + h). \quad (10A-10)$$

**FIGURE 10A-2**  
**Welfare Effects of a Tariff**

The net benefit of a tariff is equal to the area of the rectangle minus the area of the two triangles.



The gain from a lower world price is the area of the rectangle in Figure 10A-2, the fall in the price multiplied by the level of imports after the tariff:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Gain} &= (D^2 - Q^2) \times t(b + f)/(b + f + h) \\ &= t \times (D^1 - Q^1) \times (b + f)/(b + f + h) - (t)^2 \times h(b + f)^2/(b + f + h)^2. \end{aligned} \quad (10A-11)$$

The loss from distorted consumption is the sum of the areas of the two triangles in Figure 10A-2:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Loss} &= (1/2) \times (Q^2 - Q^1) \times (\tilde{P} - P_F) + (1/2) \times (D^1 - D^2) \times (\tilde{P} - P_F) \\ &= (t)^2 \times (b + f) \times (h)^2 / 2(b + f + h)^2. \end{aligned} \quad (10A-12)$$

The net effect on welfare, therefore, is

$$\text{Gain} - \text{loss} = t \times U - (t)^2 \times V, \quad (10A-13)$$

where  $U$  and  $V$  are complicated expressions that are, however, independent of the level of the tariff and positive. That is, the net effect is the sum of a positive number times the tariff rate and a negative number times the *square* of the tariff rate.

We can now see that when the tariff is small enough, the net effect must be positive. The reason is that when we make a number smaller, the square of that number gets smaller faster than the number itself. Suppose a tariff of 20 percent turns out to produce a net loss. Then try a tariff of 10 percent. The positive term in that tariff's effect will be only half as large as with a 20 percent tariff, but the negative part will be only one-quarter as large. If the net effect is still negative, try a 5 percent tariff; this will again reduce the negative effect twice as much as the positive effect. At some sufficiently low tariff, the negative effect will have to be outweighed by the positive effect.



## TRADE POLICY IN DEVELOPING COUNTRIES

**S**o far, we have analyzed the instruments of trade policy and its objectives without specifying the context—that is, without saying much about the country undertaking these policies. Each country has its own distinctive history and issues, but in discussing economic policy, one difference between countries becomes obvious: their income levels. As Table 11-1 suggests, nations differ greatly in their per-capita incomes. At one end of the spectrum are the developed or advanced nations, a club whose members include Western Europe, several countries largely settled by Europeans (including the United States), and Japan; these countries have per-capita incomes that in some cases exceed \$60,000 per year. Most of the world's population, however, lives in nations that are substantially poorer. The income range among these **developing countries**<sup>1</sup> is very wide. Some former developing countries, like South Korea, have graduated to advanced-country status. Others, such as Bangladesh, remain desperately poor. Nonetheless, for virtually all developing countries, the attempt to close the income gap with more advanced nations has been a central concern of economic policy.

Why are some countries so much poorer than others? Why have some countries that were poor a generation ago succeeded in making dramatic progress while others have not? These are deeply disputed questions, and to try to answer them—or even to describe at length the answers that economists have proposed over the years—would take us outside the scope of this book. What we can say, however, is that changing views about economic development have had a major role in determining trade policy.

For about 30 years after World War II, trade policies in many developing countries were strongly influenced by the beliefs that the key to economic development was the creation of a strong manufacturing sector and that the best way to create that manufacturing sector was to protect domestic manufacturers from international competition. The first part of this chapter describes the rationale for this strategy of import-substituting industrialization as well as the critiques of that strategy that became increasingly common after about 1970 and the emergence

<sup>1</sup>*Developing country* is a term used by international organizations that has now become standard, even though some “developing” countries have gone through extended periods of declining living standards. A more descriptive but less polite term is *less-developed countries* (LDCs).

**TABLE 11-1** Gross Domestic Product Per Capita, 2019  
(dollars, adjusted for differences in price levels)

United States	64,747
Germany	55,110
Japan	43,445
South Korea	44,203
Mexico	21,294
China	13,548
Bangladesh	4,513

Source: Conference Board Total Economy Database.

in the late 1980s of a new conventional wisdom that stressed the virtues of free trade. The second part of the chapter describes the remarkable shift in developing-country trade policy that has taken place since the 1980s.

Finally, while economists have debated the reasons for persistent large income gaps between nations, since the mid-1960s a widening group of Asian nations has astonished the world by achieving spectacular rates of economic growth. The third part of this chapter is devoted to the interpretation of this “Asian miracle” and its (much disputed) implications for international trade policy.

## LEARNING GOALS

After reading this chapter, you will be able to:

- Recapitulate the case for protectionism as it has been historically practiced in developing countries and discuss import-substitution-led industrialization and the “infant industry” argument.
- Summarize the basic ideas behind “economic dualism” and its relationship to international trade.
- Discuss the recent economic history of the Asian countries, such as China and India, and detail the relationship between their rapid economic growth and their participation in international trade.

## Import-Substituting Industrialization

From World War II until the 1970s, many developing countries attempted to accelerate their development by limiting imports of manufactured goods, in order to foster a manufacturing sector serving the domestic market. This strategy became popular for a number of reasons, but theoretical economic arguments for import substitution played an important role in its rise. Probably the most important of these arguments was the *infant industry argument*, which we mentioned in Chapter 7.

### The Infant Industry Argument

According to the infant industry argument, developing countries have a *potential* comparative advantage in manufacturing, but new manufacturing industries in developing countries cannot initially compete with well-established manufacturing in developed

countries. To allow manufacturing to get a toehold, then, governments should temporarily support new industries until they have grown strong enough to meet international competition. Thus, it makes sense, according to this argument, to use tariffs or import quotas as temporary measures to get industrialization started. It is a historical fact that some of the world's largest market economies began their industrialization behind trade barriers: The United States had high tariff rates on manufacturing in the 19th century, while Japan had extensive import controls until the 1970s.

**Problems with the Infant Industry Argument** The infant industry argument seems highly plausible, and in fact it has been persuasive to many governments. Yet economists have pointed out many pitfalls in the argument, suggesting that it must be used cautiously.

First, it is not always a good idea to try to move today into the industries that will have a comparative advantage in the future. Suppose a country that is currently labor-abundant is in the process of accumulating capital. When it accumulates enough capital, it will have a comparative advantage in capital-intensive industries. However, that does not mean it should try to develop these industries immediately. In the 1980s, for example, South Korea became an exporter of automobiles; it would probably not have been a good idea for South Korea to have tried to develop its auto industry in the 1960s, when capital and skilled labor were still very scarce.

Second, protecting manufacturing does no good unless the protection itself helps make industry competitive. For example, Pakistan and India have protected their manufacturing sectors for decades and have recently begun to develop significant exports of manufactured goods. The goods they export, however, are light manufactures like textiles, not the heavy manufactures that they protected; a good case can be made that they would have developed their manufactured exports even if they had never protected manufacturing. Some economists have warned of the case of the “pseudoinfant industry,” in which an industry is initially protected, then becomes competitive for reasons that have nothing to do with the protection. In this case, infant industry protection ends up looking like a success but may actually have been a net cost to the economy.

More generally, the fact that it is costly and time-consuming to build up an industry is not an argument for government intervention unless there is some domestic market failure. If an industry is supposed to be able to earn high enough returns for capital, labor, and other factors of production to be worth developing, then why don't private investors develop the industry without government help? Sometimes, it is argued that private investors take into account only the current returns in an industry and fail to take account of the future prospects, but this argument is not consistent with market behavior. In advanced countries at least, investors often back projects whose returns are uncertain and lie far in the future. Consider, for example, China's electric vehicle industry, which attracted enormous investments since the early 2000s. China's electric vehicle sales skyrocketed only in the end of 2014 by almost 30 times compared to beginning of that same year, surpassing the United States as the world's largest market for electric vehicles in 2015.

**Market Failure Justifications for Infant Industry Protection** To justify the infant industry argument, it is necessary to go beyond the plausible but questionable view that industries always need to be sheltered when they are new. Whether infant industry protection is justified depends on an analysis of the kind we discussed in Chapter 10. That is, the argument for protecting an industry in its early growth must be related to some particular set of market failures that prevent private markets from developing the industry as rapidly as they should. Sophisticated proponents of the infant industry argument have identified two market failures as reasons why infant industry protection may be a good idea: **imperfect capital markets** and the problem of **appropriability**.

The *imperfect capital markets justification* for infant industry protection is as follows: If a developing country does not have a set of financial institutions (such as efficient stock markets and banks) that would allow savings from traditional sectors (such as agriculture) to be used to finance investment in new sectors (such as manufacturing), then growth of new industries will be restricted by the ability of firms in these industries to earn current profits. Thus, low initial profits will be an obstacle to investment even if the long-term returns on the investment will be high. The first-best policy is to create a better capital market, but protection of new industries, which would raise profits and thus allow more rapid growth, can be justified as a second-best policy option.

The *appropriability argument* for infant industry protection can take many forms, but all have in common the idea that firms in a new industry generate social benefits for which they are not compensated. For example, the firms that first enter an industry may have to incur “start-up” costs of adapting technology to local circumstances or of opening new markets. If other firms are able to follow their lead without incurring these start-up costs, the pioneers will be prevented from reaping any returns from these outlays. Thus, pioneering firms may, in addition to producing physical output, create intangible benefits (such as knowledge or new markets) in which they are unable to establish property rights. In some cases, the social benefits from creation of a new industry will exceed its costs, yet because of the problem of appropriability, no private entrepreneurs will be willing to enter. The first best answer is to compensate firms for their intangible contributions. When this is not possible, however, there is a second-best case for encouraging entry into a new industry by using tariffs or other trade policies.

Both the imperfect capital markets argument and the appropriability case for infant industry protection are clearly special cases of the *market failure* justification for interfering with free trade. The difference is that in this case, the arguments apply specifically to *new* industries rather than to *any* industry. The general problems with the market failure approach remain, however. In practice it is difficult to evaluate which industries really warrant special treatment, and there are risks that a policy intended to promote development will end up being captured by special interests. There are many stories of infant industries that have never grown up and remain dependent on protection.

### Promoting Manufacturing through Protection

Although there are doubts about the infant industry argument, many developing countries have seen this argument as a compelling reason to provide special support for the development of manufacturing industries. In principle, such support could be provided in a variety of ways. For example, countries could provide subsidies to manufacturing production in general, or they could focus their efforts on subsidies for the export of some manufactured goods in which they believe they can develop a comparative advantage. In most developing countries, however, the basic strategy for industrialization has been to develop industries oriented toward the domestic market by using trade restrictions such as tariffs and quotas to encourage the replacement of imported manufactures by domestic products. The strategy of encouraging domestic industry by limiting imports of manufactured goods is known as the strategy of **import-substituting industrialization**.

One might ask why a choice needs to be made. Why not encourage both import substitution and exports? The answer goes back to the general equilibrium analysis of tariffs in Chapter 6: A tariff that reduces imports also necessarily reduces exports. By protecting import-substituting industries, countries draw resources away from actual or

potential export sectors. So a country's choice to seek to substitute for imports is also a choice to discourage export growth.

The reasons why import substitution rather than export growth has usually been chosen as an industrialization strategy are a mixture of economics and politics. First, until the 1970s many developing countries were skeptical about the possibility of exporting manufactured goods (although this skepticism also calls into question the infant industry argument for manufacturing protection). They believed that industrialization was necessarily based on a substitution of domestic industry for imports rather than on a growth of manufactured exports. Second, in many cases, import-substituting industrialization policies dovetailed naturally with existing political biases. We have already noted the case of Latin American nations that were compelled to develop substitutes for imports during the 1930s because of the Great Depression and during the first half of the 1940s because of the wartime disruption of trade (Chapter 10). In these countries, import substitution directly benefited powerful, established interest groups, while export promotion had no natural constituency.

It is also worth pointing out that some advocates of a policy of import substitution believed that the world economy was rigged against new entrants—that the advantages of established industrial nations were simply too great to be overcome by newly industrializing economies. Extreme proponents of this view called for a general policy of delinking developing countries from advanced nations; but even among milder advocates of protectionist development strategies, the view that the international economic system systematically works against the interests of developing countries remained common until the 1980s.

The 1950s and 1960s saw the high tide of import-substituting industrialization. Developing countries typically began by protecting final stages of industry, such as food processing and automobile assembly. In the larger developing countries, domestic products almost completely replaced imported consumer goods (although the manufacturing was often carried out by foreign multinational firms). Once the possibilities for replacing consumer goods imports had been exhausted, these countries turned to protection of intermediate goods, such as automobile bodies, steel, and petrochemicals.

In most developing economies, the import-substitution drive stopped short of its logical limit: Sophisticated manufactured goods such as computers, precision machine tools, and so on continued to be imported. Nonetheless, the larger countries pursuing import-substituting industrialization reduced their imports to remarkably low levels. The most extreme case was India: In the early 1970s, India's imports of products other than oil were only about 3 percent of GDP.

As a strategy for encouraging growth of manufacturing, import-substituting industrialization clearly worked. Latin American economies began generating almost as large a share of their output from manufacturing as advanced nations. (India generated less, but only because its poorer population continued to spend a high proportion of its income on food.) For these countries, however, the encouragement of manufacturing was not a goal in itself; rather, it was a means to the end goal of economic development. Did import-substituting industrialization promote economic development? Here serious doubts appeared. Although many economists approved of import-substitution measures in the 1950s and early 1960s, since the 1960s, import-substituting industrialization has come under increasingly harsh criticism. Indeed, much of the focus of economic analysts and of policy makers has shifted from trying to encourage import substitution to trying to correct the damage done by bad import-substitution policies.

## CASE STUDY

### Export-Led Strategy

After the Soviet Union collapse in 1991, various countries gained their independence, signaling the beginning of constructing market-based economies for such countries. Consequently, international trade and economic cooperation in general became of predominant importance for economic development. In 2001, Lithuania became a member of World Trade Organization, which, as explained in Chapter 10, has become the main body for international trade. Lithuania's foreign trade liberalization to relatively free trade actually began almost as soon as it became independent, regulated largely via market economy instruments known in the West and approved by WTO. For smaller countries like Lithuania, export-led strategy is one of main forms of engaging in international markets, thus, is a key determinant to achieve economic growth and improve competition in the domestic market.

By 2000, Lithuania was involved with over 160 countries in economic relations. One of the Lithuania's transition goals was reorientation of trade away from the former Soviet Union and toward the West. Accession to the WTO helped Lithuania in further reorientation of its trade relation away from Russia and other CIS countries, helping it to increase its trade at a time of fragile economic stability. On the other hand, by becoming a WTO member Lithuania had to take steps toward market-based agriculture policies. Lithuania could not avoid the European Union (EU) agriculture disciplines and therefore had to reduce domestic agriculture subsidies by 20 percent over five years and remove agricultural export subsidies. This process demonstrated that Lithuania was preparing for EU accession in 2004. The accession process was followed by the adoption of the EU common trade policy, which included all trade agreements concluded between the EU and third countries.<sup>2</sup> A number of these policies together with trade liberalization in Lithuania and other smaller EU countries helped to boost exports. Membership in WTO and EU accession assured investors some stability to enter the market. In 1995, Lithuanian export was 53 percent of GDP—and much of that was trade with Russia, which negatively affected Lithuania during the Russian financial crisis in 1998. This was an expensive lesson indicating that dependency on such an unpredictable economy was risky. In 2015, exports grew up to 76 percent of GDP and their main partner became the EU. Lithuanian companies also became more oriented toward international trade and the international market, because this increases their yield, increases internationalization, provides higher return on investments, creates new jobs, and influences the growth of economy.

The export-led strategy is supported in underdeveloped economics with insufficient capital and technology and narrow markets. The deregulation of the industry, international investment and trade has resulted in a greater number of new domestic

**TABLE 11-2 Lithuanian Export (Percentage of GDP)**

	1995	2000	2005	2010	2015
Export, % of GDP	53	43	59	68	76

<sup>2</sup>Ginevičius R., Tvaronavičiene M., Korsakiene R. & Kalaūinskaite K (2007) *Lithuania—Belarus economic relations: How the EU accession impacted bilateral trade*, *Journal of Business Economics and Management*, 8:2, p. 137–144.

and foreign competitors. It increased competition in the local market and reduced opportunities for the domestic companies to sell within the country, being forced to search for other distribution methods in foreign countries.<sup>3</sup> Consequently, today Lithuania's international trade through export has helped people in the country obtain economic welfare to improve their life conditions. Extensions of markets also help promote income growth per capita (from \$2,169 in 1995 to \$14,172 in 2015). For small countries, the export-led strategy provides opportunities for growth. However, one negative aspect of this strategy is it is highly dependent upon exports. Countries such as Lithuania are too small to be devoted to serving only their own small domestic market (in case of import substitution strategy). Despite having small geographical areas, small populations, and little market, export-led strategy helps small countries obtain large-scale economic profit. However, most of the countries in the world are implementing this export-led strategy, causing enormous competition not only for high productivity in developed countries but also with other developing countries. International competition is tough and exports are certain to decline.

## Results of Favoring Manufacturing: Problems of Import-Substituting Industrialization

Import-substituting industrialization began to lose favor when it became clear that countries pursuing import substitution were not catching up with advanced countries. In fact, some developing countries lagged further behind advanced countries even as they developed a domestic manufacturing base. India was poorer relative to the United States in 1980 than it had been in 1950, the first year after it achieved independence.

Why didn't import-substituting industrialization work the way it was supposed to? The most important reason seems to be that the infant industry argument is not as universally valid as many people had assumed. A period of protection will not create a competitive manufacturing sector if there are fundamental reasons why a country lacks a comparative advantage in manufacturing. Experience has shown that the reasons for failure to develop often run deeper than a simple lack of experience with manufacturing. Poor countries lack skilled labor, entrepreneurs, and managerial competence and have problems of social organization that make it difficult for these countries to maintain reliable supplies of everything from spare parts to electricity. These problems may not be beyond the reach of economic policy, but they cannot be solved by *trade* policy: An import quota can allow an inefficient manufacturing sector to survive, but it cannot directly make that sector more efficient. The infant industry argument is that, given the temporary shelter of tariffs or quotas, the manufacturing industries of less-developed nations will learn to be efficient. In practice, this is not always, or even usually, true.

With import substitution failing to deliver the promised benefits, attention turned to the costs of the policies used to promote industry. On this issue, a growing body of evidence showed that the protectionist policies of many less-developed countries badly distorted incentives. Part of the problem was that many countries used excessively complex methods to promote their infant industries. That is, they used elaborate and often overlapping import quotas, exchange controls, and domestic content rules instead of simple tariffs. It is often difficult to determine how much protection an administrative

<sup>3</sup>Dzemydaitė G., Dzemyda I., Jurgelevičius A. (2012) *Evaluation of the Implementation of National Export Development Strategy: Case Study of the Republic of Lithuania*, *Intellectual economics* Vol. 6, no 1(13), p. 776–797.

**TABLE 11-3 Effective Protection of Manufacturing in Some Developing Countries (percent)**

Mexico (1960)	26
Philippines (1965)	61
Brazil (1966)	113
Chile (1961)	182
Pakistan (1963)	271

**Source:** Bela Balassa, *The Structure of Protection in Developing Countries* (Baltimore: Johns Hopkins Press, 1971), p. 82.

regulation is actually providing, and studies show that the degree of protection is often both higher and more variable across industries than the government intended. As Table 11-3 shows, some industries in Latin America and South Asia were protected by regulations that were the equivalent of tariff rates of 200 percent or more. These high rates of effective protection allowed industries to exist even when their cost of production was three or four times the price of the imports they replaced. Even the most enthusiastic advocates of market failure arguments for protection find rates of effective protection that high difficult to defend.

A further cost that has received considerable attention is the tendency of import restrictions to promote production at an inefficiently small scale. The domestic markets of even the largest developing countries are only a small fraction of the size of that of the United States or the European Union. Often, the whole domestic market is not large enough to allow an efficient-scale production facility. Yet, when this small market is protected, say, by an import quota, if only a single firm were to enter the market, it could earn monopoly profits. The competition for these profits typically leads several firms to enter a market that does not really have enough room even for one, and production is carried out at a highly inefficient scale. The answer to the problem of scale for small countries is, as noted in Chapter 8, to specialize in the production and export of a limited range of products and to import other goods. Import-substituting industrialization eliminates this option by focusing industrial production on the domestic market.

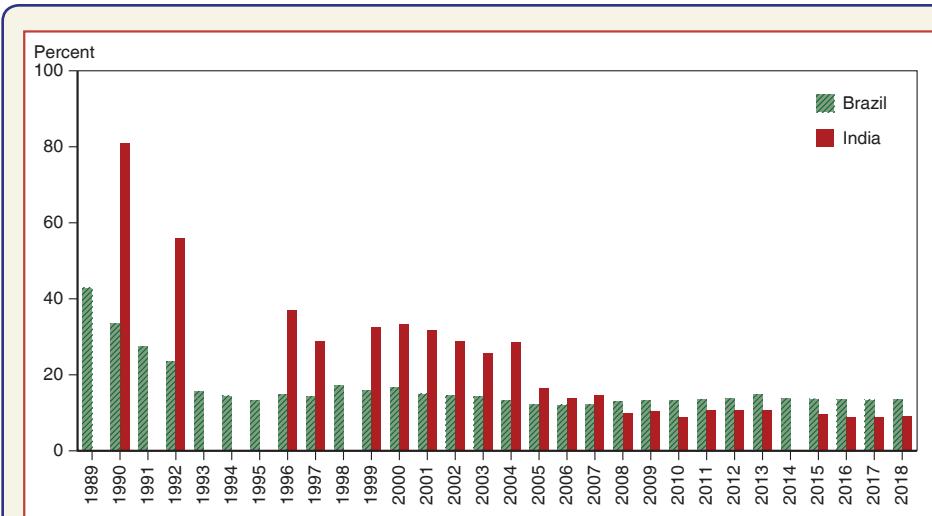
Those who criticize import-substituting industrialization also argue that it has aggravated other problems, such as income inequality and unemployment.

By the late 1980s, the critique of import-substituting industrialization had been widely accepted, not only by economists but also by international organizations like the World Bank—and even by policy makers in the developing countries themselves. Statistical evidence appeared to suggest that developing countries that followed relatively free trade policies had, on average, grown more rapidly than those that followed protectionist policies (although this statistical evidence has been challenged by some economists).<sup>4</sup> This intellectual sea change led to a considerable shift in actual policies, as many developing countries removed import quotas and lowered tariff rates.

## Trade Liberalization since 1985

Beginning in the mid-1980s, a number of developing countries moved to lower tariff rates and removed import quotas and other restrictions on trade. The shift of developing countries toward freer trade is the big trade policy story of the past two and a half decades.

<sup>4</sup>See Francisco Rodriguez and Dani Rodrik, "Trade Policy and Economic Growth: A Skeptic's Guide to the Cross-National Evidence," in Ben Bernanke and Kenneth S. Rogoff, eds., *NBER Macroeconomics Annual 2000* (Cambridge, MA: MIT Press for NBER, 2001).

**FIGURE 11-1**

### Tariff Rates in Developing Countries

One measure of the shift away from import-substituting industrialization is the sharp drop in tariff rates in developing countries, which have fallen from an average of more than 30 percent in the early 1980s to only about 10 percent today. Countries that once had especially strong import-substitution policies, like India and Brazil, have also seen the steepest declines in tariff rates.

Source: World Bank.

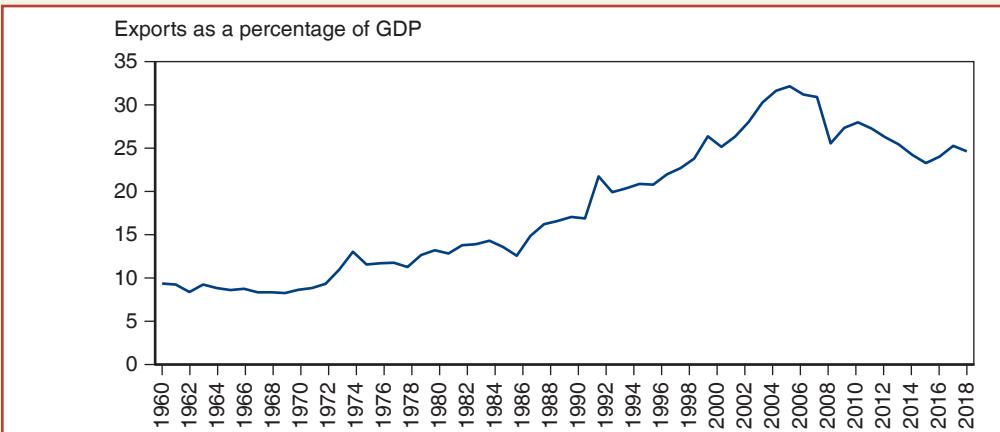
After 1985, many developing countries reduced tariffs, removed import quotas, and in general opened their economies to import competition. Figure 11-1 shows trends in tariff rates for an average of all developing countries and for two important developing countries, India and Brazil, which once relied heavily on import substitution as a development strategy. As you can see, there has been a dramatic fall in tariff rates in those two countries. Similar if less drastic changes in trade policy took place in many other developing countries.

Trade liberalization in developing countries had two clear effects. One was a dramatic increase in the volume of trade. Figure 11-2 plots exports and imports of developing countries, measured as percentages of GDP, since 1970. As you can see, the share of trade in GDP has tripled over that period, with most of the growth happening after 1985.

The other effect was a change in the nature of trade. Before the change in trade policy, developing countries mainly exported agricultural and mining products. But as we saw in Figure 2-6, that changed after 1980: The share of manufactured goods in developing-country exports surged, coming to dominate the exports of the biggest developing economies.

But trade liberalization, like import substitution, was intended as a means to an end rather than a goal in itself. As we've seen, import substitution fell out of favor as it became clear that it was not delivering on its promise of rapid economic development. Has the switch to more open trade delivered better results?

The answer is that the picture is mixed. Growth rates in Brazil and other Latin American countries have actually been slower since the trade liberalization of the late 1980s than they were during import-substituting industrialization. India, on the other hand, has experienced an impressive acceleration of growth—but as we'll see in the next

**FIGURE 11-2**

### The Growth of Developing-Country Trade

Beginning in the 1980s, many developing countries began shifting away from import-substitution policies. One result has been a large rise in exports as a percentage of GDP.

**Source:** <http://data.worldbank.org/indicator/NE.EXP.GNFS.ZS>, <http://data.worldbank.org/indicator/NE.IMP.GNFS.ZS>

section of this chapter, there is intense dispute about how much of that acceleration can be attributed to trade liberalization.

In addition, there is growing concern about rising inequality in developing countries. In Latin America at least, the switch away from import-substituting industrialization seems to have been associated with declining real wages for blue-collar workers, even as earnings of highly skilled workers have risen.

One thing is clear, however: The old view that import substitution is the only path to development has been proved wrong, as a number of developing countries have achieved extraordinary growth while becoming more, not less, open to trade.

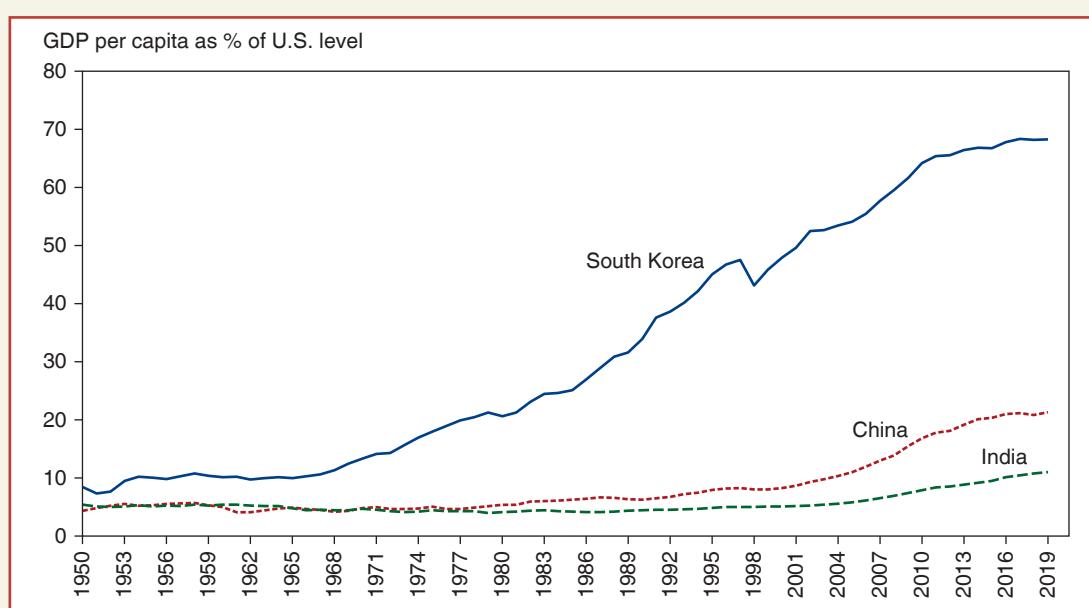
## Trade and Growth: Takeoff in Asia

As we have seen, by the 1970s there was widespread disillusionment with import-substituting industrialization as a development strategy. But what could take its place?

A possible answer began to emerge as economists and policy makers took note of some surprising success stories in the developing world—cases of economies that experienced a dramatic acceleration in their growth and began to converge on the incomes of advanced nations. At first, these success stories involved a group of relatively small East Asian economies: South Korea, Taiwan, Hong Kong, and Singapore. Over time, however, these successes began to spread; today, the list of countries that have experienced startling economic takeoffs includes the world's two most populous nations, China and India.

Figure 11-3 illustrates the Asian takeoff by showing the experiences of three countries: South Korea, the biggest of the original group of Asian “tigers”; China; and India. In each case, we show per-capita GDP as a percentage of the U.S. level, an indicator that highlights the extent of these nations’ economic “catchup.” As you can see, South Korea began its economic ascent in the 1960s, China at the end of the 1970s, and India circa 1990.

What caused these economic takeoffs? Each of the countries shown in Figure 11-3 experienced a major change in its economic policy around the time of its takeoff.

**FIGURE 11-3**

### The Asian Takeoff

Beginning in the 1960s, a series of economies began converging on advanced-country levels of income. Here we show GDP per capita as a percentage of its level in the United States, using a proportional scale to highlight the changes. South Korea began its ascent in the 1960s, China at the end of the 1970s, and India about a decade later.

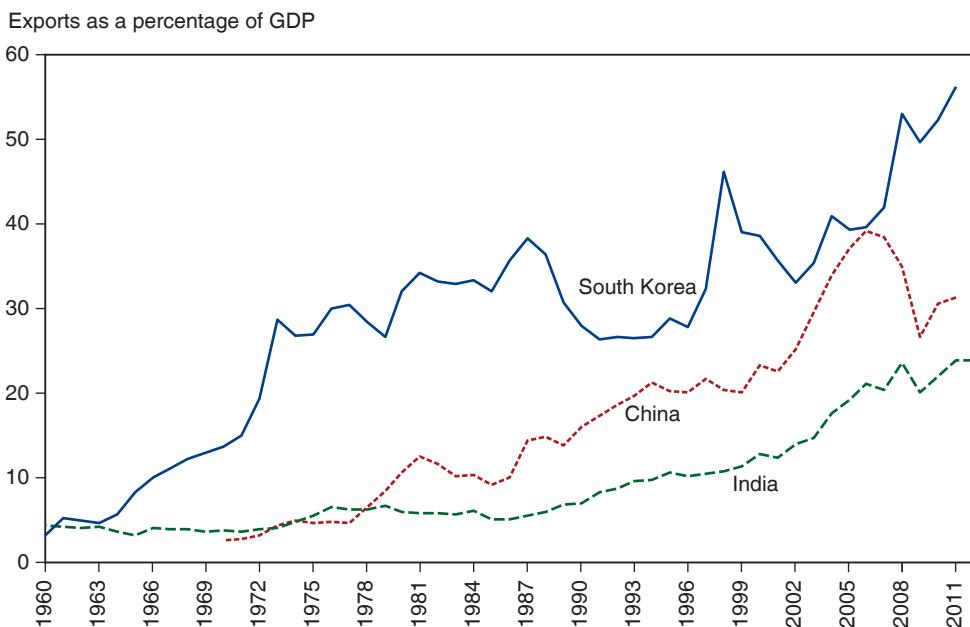
**Source:** Total Economy Database.

This new policy involved reduced government regulation in a variety of areas, including a move toward freer trade. The most spectacular change was in China, where Deng Xiaoping, who had taken power in 1978, converted a centrally planned economy into a market economy in which the profit motive had relatively free rein. But as explained in the box “India’s Boom”, policy changes in India were dramatic, too.

In each case, these policy reforms were followed by a large increase in the economy’s openness, as measured by the share of exports in GDP (see Figure 11-4). So it seems fair to say that these Asian success stories demonstrated that the proponents of import-substituting industrialization were wrong: It is possible to achieve development through export-oriented growth.

What is less clear is the extent to which trade liberalization explains these success stories. As we have just pointed out, reductions in tariffs and the lifting of other import restrictions were only part of the economic reforms these nations undertook, which makes it difficult to assess the importance of trade liberalization *per se*. In addition, Latin American nations like Mexico and Brazil, which also sharply liberalized trade and shifted toward exports, did not see comparable economic takeoffs, suggesting at the very least that other factors played a crucial role in the Asian miracle.

So the implications of Asia’s economic takeoff remain somewhat controversial. One thing is clear, however: The once widely held view that the world economy is rigged against new entrants and that poor countries cannot become rich have been proved spectacularly wrong. Never before in human history have so many people experienced such a rapid rise in their living standards.



**FIGURE 11-4**  
**Asia's Surging Trade**

Source: World Bank.

## INDIA'S BOOM

India, with a population of more than 1.1 billion people, is the world's second-most-populous country. It's also a growing force in world trade—especially in new forms of trade that involve information rather than physical goods. The Indian city of Bangalore has become famous for its growing role in the global information technology industry.

Yet a generation ago, India was a very minor player in world trade. In part this was because the country's economy performed poorly in general: Until about 1980, India eked out a rate of economic growth—sometimes mocked as the “Hindu rate of growth”—that was only about 1 percentage point higher than population growth.

This slow growth was widely attributed to the stifling effect of bureaucratic restrictions. Observers spoke of a “license Raj”: Virtually any kind of business initiative required hard-to-get government permits, which placed a damper on investment and innovation. And India's sluggish economy

participated little in world trade. After the country achieved independence in 1948, its leaders adopted a particularly extreme form of import-substituting industrialization as the country's development strategy: India imported almost nothing that it could produce domestically, even if the domestic product was far more expensive and of lower quality than what could be bought abroad. High costs, in turn, crimped exports. So India was a very “closed” economy. In the 1970s, imports and exports averaged only about 5 percent of GDP, close to the lowest levels of any major nation.

Then everything changed. India's growth accelerated dramatically: GDP per capita, which had risen at an annual rate of only 1.3 percent from 1960 to 1980, has grown at close to 4 percent annually since 1980. And India's participation in world trade surged as tariffs were brought down and import quotas were removed. In short, India has become a high-performance economy. It's still a very poor

country, but it is rapidly growing richer and has begun to rival China as a focus of world attention.

The big question, of course, is why India's growth rate has increased so dramatically. That question is the subject of heated debate among economists. Some have argued that trade liberalization, which allowed India to participate in the global economy, was crucial.<sup>5</sup> Others point

out that India's growth began accelerating around 1980, whereas the big changes in trade policy didn't occur until the beginning of the 1990s.<sup>6</sup>

Whatever caused the change, India's transition has been a welcome development. More than a billion people now have much greater hope for a decent standard of living.

## SUMMARY

- Trade policy in less-developed countries can be analyzed using the same analytical tools used to discuss advanced countries. However, the particular issues characteristic of *developing countries* are different from those of advanced countries. In particular, trade policy in developing countries is concerned with two objectives: promoting industrialization and coping with the uneven development of the domestic economy.
- Government policy to promote industrialization has often been justified by the infant industry argument, which says that new industries need a temporary period of protection against competition from established industries in other countries. However, the infant industry argument is valid only if it can be cast as a market failure argument for intervention. Two usual justifications are the existence of *imperfect capital markets* and the problem of *appropriability* of knowledge generated by pioneering firms.
- Using the infant industry argument as justification, many less-developed countries pursued policies of *import-substituting industrialization* in which domestic industries are created under the protection of tariffs or import quotas. Although these policies succeeded in promoting manufacturing, by and large they did not deliver the expected gains in economic growth and living standards. Many economists are now harshly critical of the results of import substitution, arguing that it fostered high-cost, inefficient production.
- Beginning about 1985, many developing countries, dissatisfied with the results of import-substitution policies, greatly reduced rates of protection for manufacturing. As a result, developing-country trade grew rapidly, and the share of manufactured goods in exports rose. The results of this policy change in terms of economic development, however, have been, at best, mixed.
- The view that economic development must take place via import substitution, and the pessimism about economic development that spread as import-substituting industrialization seemed to fail, have been confounded by the rapid economic growth of a number of Asian economies. These Asian economies have grown not via import substitution but via exports. They are characterized both by very high ratios of trade to national income and by extremely high growth rates. The reasons for the success of these economies are highly disputed, with much controversy over the role played by trade liberalization.

<sup>5</sup>See Arvind Panagariya, "The Triumph of India's Market Reforms: The Record of the 1980s and 1990s," *Policy Analysis* 554, Cato Institute, November 2005.

<sup>6</sup>See Dani Rodrik and Arvind Subramanian, "From 'Hindu Growth' to Productivity Surge: The Mystery of the Indian Growth Transition," *IMF Staff Papers* 55 (2, 2005), pp. 193–228.

**KEY TERMS**

appropriability, p. 315  
developing countries, p. 313

imperfect capital  
markets, p. 315

import-substituting industrialization, p. 316

**PROBLEMS**

1. Which countries appear to have benefited the most from international trade during the last few decades? What policies do these countries seem to have in common? Does their experience lend support for the infant industry argument or help to argue against it?<sup>7</sup>
2. Why do you think the problems with the infant industry argument are criticized by many economists? Explain why the example of Asian countries creates controversies in this matter.
3. Country A currently imports solar panels at \$30,000 each. The government is using only 10 percent of the program as domestic content, exporting clean energy to neighboring countries. Country B imports solar panels also at \$25,000 each, but uses 70 percent of the program as domestic content. If both countries produced solar panels home, the costs would have reached \$25,000 for country A and \$20,000 for country B, but there would have been an initial shakedown period during which solar panels would cost \$35,000 for country A to produce and \$40,000 for country B to produce.
  - a. Suppose each country must go through a shakedown period of high costs on its own, before accessing any financial support from abroad. Under what circumstances would the existence of the initial high costs justify infant industry protection?
  - b. Now suppose that both countries bring infant industry argument for protecting this industry. Explain which country will be successful in preserving this argument and why.
4. From Figure 11-3, we observe that South Korea, China, and India experienced major changes in their economic policies during the 1960s. What would account for the differences in their development paths?
5. What were some of the reasons for the decline in the import-substituting industrialization strategy in favor of a strategy that promotes open trade?

**FURTHER READINGS**

- W. Arthur Lewis. *The Theory of Economic Development*. Homewood, IL: Irwin, 1955. A good example of the upbeat view taken of trade policies for economic development during the import-substitution high tide of the 1950s and 1960s.
- I. M. D. Little, Tibor Scitovsky, and Maurice Scott. *Industry and Trade in Some Developing Countries*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1970. A key work in the emergence of a more downbeat view of import substitution in the 1970s and 1980s.
- Barry Naughton. *The Chinese Economy: Transitions and Growth*. Cambridge: MIT Press, 2007. A good overview of the radical changes in Chinese policy over time.
- Dani Rodrik. *One Economics, Many Recipes*. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 2007. Views on trade and development from a leading skeptic of prevailing orthodoxies.
- T. N. Srinivasan and Suresh D. Tendulkar. *Reintegrating India with the World Economy*. Washington: Institute for International Economics, 2003. How India shifted away from import substitution and what happened as a result.

<sup>7</sup>This question is intended to challenge students and extend the theory presented in this chapter.



## CONTROVERSIES IN TRADE POLICY

**A**s we have seen, the theory of international trade policy, like the theory of international trade itself, has a long, intellectual tradition. Experienced international economists tend to have a cynical attitude toward people who come along with “new” issues in trade—the general feeling tends to be that most supposedly new concerns are simply old fallacies in new bottles.

Every once in a while, however, truly new issues do emerge. This chapter describes four controversies over international trade that have arisen over the past 40 years, each raising issues that previously had not been seriously analyzed by international economists.

First, in the 1980s, a new set of sophisticated arguments for government intervention in trade emerged in advanced countries. These arguments focused on the “high-technology” industries that came to prominence as a result of the rise of the silicon chip. While some of the arguments were closely related to the market failure analysis in Chapter 10, the new theory of **strategic trade policy** was based on different ideas and created a considerable stir. The dispute over high-technology industries and trade subsided for a while in the 1990s, but it has recently made a comeback as new concerns have emerged about U.S. innovation.

Second, in the 1990s, a heated dispute arose over the effects of growing international trade on workers in developing countries—and whether trade agreements should include standards for wage rates and labor conditions. This dispute often widened into a broader debate about the effects of globalization; it was a debate played out not just in academic journals but also, in some cases, in the streets.

More recently, there has been growing concern about the intersection between environmental issues—which increasingly transcend national boundaries—and trade policy, with a serious economic and legal dispute about whether policies such as “carbon tariffs” are appropriate.

Finally, after around 2010 some economists argued that conventional analysis underestimates the disruption to communities caused by rapid shifts in international trade, like the surge in Chinese exports after 2000, which adversely affected a number of manufacturing regions in the United States.

## LEARNING GOALS

After reading this chapter, you will be able to:

- Summarize the more sophisticated arguments for interventionist trade policy, especially those related to externalities and economies of scale.
- Evaluate the claims of the anti-globalization movement related to trade effects on workers, labor standards, and the environment in light of the counterarguments.
- Discuss the role of the World Trade Organization (WTO) as a forum for resolving trade disputes and the tension between the rulings of the WTO and individual national interests.
- Discuss key issues in the debate over trade policy and the environment.

## Sophisticated Arguments for Activist Trade Policy

Nothing in the analytical framework developed in Chapters 9 and 10 rules out the desirability of government intervention in trade. That framework *does* show that activist government policy needs a specific kind of justification; namely, it must offset some preexisting domestic market failure. The problem with many arguments for activist trade policy is precisely that they do not link the case for government intervention to any particular failure of the assumptions on which the case for laissez-faire rests.

The difficulty with market failure arguments for intervention is being able to recognize a market failure when you see one. Economists studying industrial countries have identified two kinds of market failure that seem to be present and relevant to the trade policies of advanced countries: (1) the inability of firms in high-technology industries to capture the benefits of that part of their contribution to knowledge that spills over to other firms and (2) the presence of monopoly profits in highly concentrated oligopolistic industries.

### Technology and Externalities

The discussion of the infant industry argument in Chapter 11 noted that there is a potential market failure arising from difficulties of appropriating knowledge. If firms in an industry generate knowledge that other firms can use without paying for it, the industry is in effect producing some extra output—the marginal social benefit of the knowledge—that is not reflected in the incentives of firms. Where such **externalities** (benefits that accrue to parties other than the firms that produce them) can be shown to be important, there is a good case for subsidizing the industry.

At an abstract level, this argument is the same for the infant industries of less-developed countries as it is for the established industries of the advanced countries. In advanced countries, however, the argument has a special edge because in those countries, there are important high-technology industries in which the generation of knowledge is in many ways the central aspect of the enterprise. In high-technology industries, firms devote a great deal of their resources to improving technology, either by explicitly spending on research and development or by being willing to take initial losses on new products and processes to gain experience. Because such activities take place in nearly all industries, there is no sharp line between high-tech and the rest of the economy. There are clear differences in degree, however, and it makes sense to talk of a high-technology sector in which investment in knowledge is the key part of the business.

The point for activist trade policy is that while firms can appropriate some of the benefits of their own investment in knowledge (otherwise they would not be investing!), they usually cannot appropriate them fully. Some of the benefits accrue to other firms that can imitate the ideas and techniques of the leaders. In electronics, for example, it is not uncommon for firms to “reverse engineer” their rivals’ designs, taking their products apart to figure out how they work and how they were made. Because patent laws provide only weak protection for innovators, one can reasonably presume that under laissez-faire, high-technology firms do not receive as strong an incentive to innovate as they should.

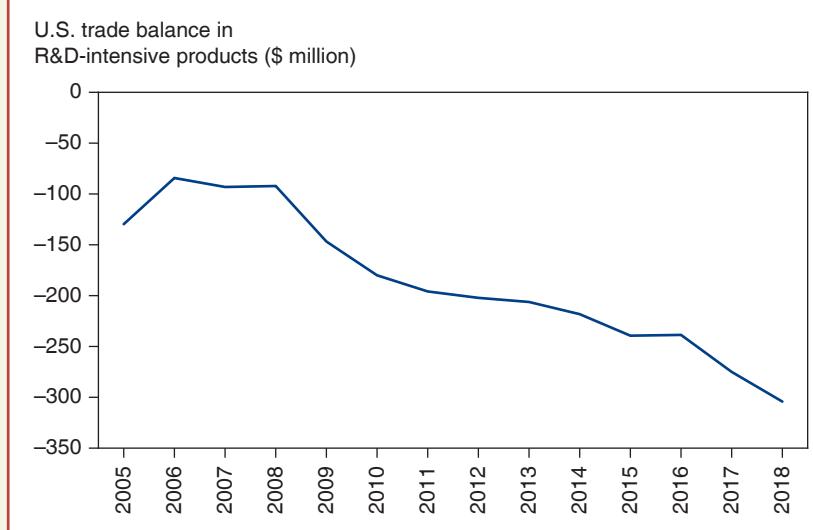
**The Case for Government Support of High-Technology Industries** Like other developing economies trying to foster economic growth through technological innovation, should the Jordan government, for example, subsidize high-technology industries? While there is a pretty good case for such a subsidy, we need to exercise some caution. Two questions in particular arise: (1) Can the government target the right industries or activities? and (2) How important, quantitatively, would the gains be from such targeting?

Although high-technology industries probably produce extra social benefits because of the knowledge they generate, much of what goes on even in those industries has nothing to do with generating knowledge. There is no reason to subsidize the employment of capital or nontechnical workers in high-technology industries; on the other hand, innovation and technological spillovers happen to some extent even in industries that are not at all high-tech. A general principle is that trade and industrial policy should be targeted specifically on the activity in which the market failure occurs. Thus, policy should seek to subsidize the generation of knowledge that firms cannot appropriate. The problem, however, is that it is not always easy to identify that knowledge generation; as we’ll see shortly, industry practitioners often argue that focusing only on activities specifically labeled “research” is taking far too narrow a view of the problem.

**The Rise, Fall, and Rise of High-Tech Worries** Arguments that the United States in particular should have a deliberate policy of promoting high-technology industries and helping them compete against foreign rivals have a curious history. Such arguments gained widespread attention and popularity in the 1980s and early 1990s and then fell from favor, only to experience a strong revival in recent years.

The high-technology discussions of the 1980s and early 1990s were driven in large part by the rise of Japanese firms in some prominent high-tech sectors that had previously been dominated by U.S. producers. Most notably, between 1978 and 1986, the U.S. share of world production of dynamic random access memory chips—a key component of many electronic devices—plunged from about 70 percent to 20 percent, while Japan’s share rose from under 30 percent to 75 percent. There was widespread concern that other high-technology products might suffer the same fate. But as described in the Case Study “When the Chips Were Up,” the fear that Japan’s dominance of the semiconductor memory market would translate into a broader dominance of computers and related technologies proved to be unfounded. Furthermore, Japan’s overall growth sputtered in the 1990s, while the United States surged into a renewed period of technological dominance, taking the lead in Internet applications and other information industries.

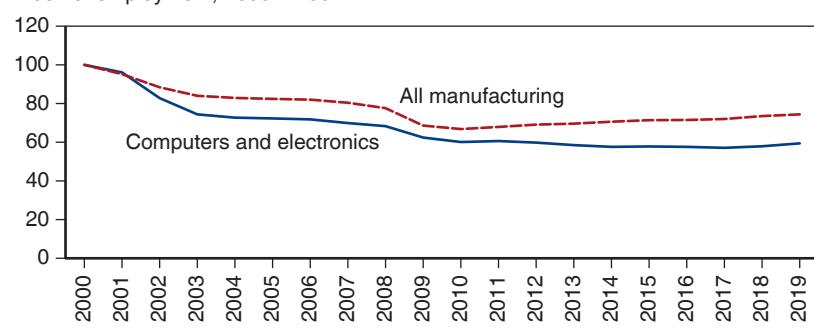
More recently, however, concerns about the status of U.S. high-technology industries have reemerged. A central factor in these concerns has been the decline in U.S. employment in so-called R&D-intensive products. As Figure 12-1 shows, the United States has moved into a large trade deficit in these goods, while as Figure 12-2 shows, U.S. employment in the production of computers and related goods has plunged since 2000, falling substantially faster than overall manufacturing employment.

**FIGURE 12-1****U.S. Trade Balance in R&D-Intensive Goods**

Since 2005, the United States has developed a large trade deficit in R&D-intensive products, which are widely seen as the cutting edge of innovation.

**Source:** National Science Foundation, *Science and Engineering Indicators* 2020.

Index of employment, 2000 = 100

**FIGURE 12-2****U.S. Manufacturing Employment**

Since 2000, the number of workers producing computers and related goods in the United States has fallen sharply, outpacing the general decline in manufacturing employment.

**Source:** Bureau of Labor Statistics.

Does this matter? The United States could, arguably, continue to be at the cutting edge of innovation in information technology while outsourcing much of the actual production of high-technology goods to factories overseas. However, as explained in the box “A Warning from Intel’s Founder,” some influential voices warn that innovation can’t thrive unless the innovators are close, physically and in business terms, to the people who turn those innovations into physical goods.

It’s a difficult debate to settle, in large part because it’s not at all clear how to put numbers to these concerns. It seems likely, however, that the debate over whether high-technology industries need special consideration will grow increasingly intense in the years ahead.

### Imperfect Competition and Strategic Trade Policy

During the 1980s, a new argument for industrial targeting received substantial theoretical attention. Originally proposed by economists Barbara Spencer and James Brander of the University of British Columbia, this argument identifies the market failure that justifies government intervention as the lack of perfect competition. In some industries, they point out, there are only a few firms in effective competition. Because of the small number of firms, the assumptions of perfect competition do not apply. In particular, there will typically be **excess returns**; that is, firms will make profits above what equally risky investments elsewhere in the economy can earn. There will thus be an international competition over who gets these profits.

Spencer and Brander noticed that, in this case, it is possible in principle for a government to alter the rules of the game to shift these excess returns from foreign to domestic firms. In the simplest case, a subsidy to domestic firms, by deterring investment and production by foreign competitors, can raise the profits of domestic firms by more than the amount of the subsidy. Setting aside the effects on consumers—for example, when firms are selling only in foreign markets—this capture of profits from foreign competitors would mean the subsidy raises national income at other countries’ expense.

**The Brander-Spencer Analysis: An Example** The Brander-Spencer analysis can be illustrated with a simple example in which only two firms compete, each from a different country. Bearing in mind that any resemblance to actual events may be coincidental, let’s call the firms Boeing and Airbus and the countries the United States and Europe. Suppose there is a new product, a superjumbo aircraft, that both firms are capable of making. For simplicity, assume each firm can make only a yes/no decision: to either produce superjumbo aircraft or not.

Table 12-1 illustrates how the profits earned by the two firms might depend on their decisions. (The setup is similar to the one we used to examine the interaction of

TABLE 12-1 Two-Firm Competition

		Airbus	
		Boeing	Produce
Boeing	Produce	-5	0
	Don't produce	100	0
		Airbus	
		Boeing	Produce
Produce		-5	0
Don't produce		100	0

different countries' trade policies in Chapter 10.) Each row corresponds to a particular decision by Boeing; each column corresponds to a decision by Airbus. In each box are two entries: The entry on the lower left represents the profits of Boeing, while that on the upper right represents the profits of Airbus.

As set up, the table reflects the following assumption: Either firm alone could earn profits making superjumbo aircraft, but if both firms try to produce them, both will incur losses. Which firm will actually get the profits? This depends on who gets there first. Suppose Boeing is able to get a small head start and commits itself to produce superjumbo aircraft before Airbus can get going. Airbus will find that it has no incentive to enter. The outcome will be in the upper right of the table, with Boeing earning profits.

Now comes the Brander-Spencer point: The European government can reverse this situation. Suppose the European government commits itself to pay its firm a subsidy of 25 if it enters. The result will be to change the table of payoffs to that represented in Table 12-2. In this case, it will be profitable for Airbus to produce superjumbo aircraft whatever Boeing does.

Let's work through the implications of this shift. Boeing now knows that whatever it does, it will have to compete with Airbus and will therefore lose money if it chooses to produce. So now it is Boeing that will be deterred from entering. In effect, the government subsidy has removed the advantage of a head start that we assumed was Boeing's and has conferred it on Airbus instead.

The end result is that the equilibrium shifts from the upper right of Table 12-1 to the lower left of Table 12-2. Airbus ends up with profits of 125 instead of 0, profits that arise because of a government subsidy of only 25. That is, the subsidy raises profits by more than the amount of the subsidy itself because of its deterrent effect on foreign competition. The subsidy has this effect because it creates an advantage for Airbus comparable with the *strategic advantage* Airbus would have had if it, not Boeing, had had a head start in the industry.

**Problems with the Brander-Spencer Analysis** This hypothetical example might seem to indicate that this strategic trade policy argument provides a compelling case for government activism. A subsidy by the European government sharply raises the profits of a European firm at the expense of its foreign rivals. Leaving aside the interest of consumers, this seems clearly to raise European welfare (and reduce U.S. welfare). Shouldn't the U.S. government put this argument into practice?

In fact, this strategic justification for trade policy, while it has attracted much interest, has also received much criticism. Critics argue that making practical use of the theory would require more information than is likely to be available, that such policies

**TABLE 12-2 Effects of a Subsidy to Airbus**

		Airbus	
		Boeing	Airbus
		Produce	Don't produce
Boeing	Produce	20	0
	Don't produce	-5	100
Airbus	Produce	125	0
	Don't produce	0	0

would risk foreign retaliation, and that in any case, the domestic politics of trade and industrial policy would prevent the use of such subtle analytical tools.

The problem of insufficient information has two aspects. The first is that even when looking at an industry in isolation, it may be difficult to fill in the entries in a table like Table 12-1 with any confidence. And if the government gets it wrong, a subsidy policy may turn out to be a costly misjudgment. Suppose, for example, that Boeing has some underlying advantage—maybe a better technology—so that even if Airbus enters, Boeing will still find it profitable to produce. Airbus, however, cannot produce profitably if Boeing enters.

In the absence of a subsidy, the outcome will be that Boeing produces and Airbus does not. Now suppose that, as in the previous case, the European government provides a subsidy sufficient to induce Airbus to produce. In this case, however, because of Boeing's underlying advantage, the subsidy won't act as a deterrent to Boeing, and the profits of Airbus will fall short of the subsidy's value—in short, the policy will turn out to have been a costly mistake.

The point is that even though the two cases might look very similar, in one case a subsidy looks like a good idea, while in the other case it looks like a terrible idea. It seems that the desirability of strategic trade policies depends on an exact reading of the situation. This leads some economists to ask whether we are ever likely to have enough information to use the theory effectively.

The information requirement is complicated because we cannot consider industries in isolation. If one industry is subsidized, it will draw resources from other industries and lead to increases in their costs. Thus, even a policy that succeeds in giving U.S. firms a strategic advantage in one industry will tend to cause strategic disadvantage elsewhere.

## A WARNING FROM INTEL'S FOUNDER

**W**hen Andy Grove speaks about technology, people listen. In 1968, he co-founded Intel, which invented the microprocessor—the chip that drives your computer—and dominated the semiconductor business for decades.

So many people took notice in 2010 when Grove issued a stark warning about the fate of U.S. high technology: The erosion of manufacturing employment in technology industries, he argued, undermines the conditions for future innovation.<sup>1</sup> Grove wrote:

Startups are a wonderful thing, but they cannot by themselves increase tech employment. Equally important is what comes after that mythical moment of creation in the garage, as technology goes from prototype to mass

production. This is the phase where companies scale up. They work out design details, figure out how to make things affordably, build factories, and hire people by the thousands. Scaling is hard work but necessary to make innovation matter.

The scaling process is no longer happening in the U.S. And as long as that's the case, plowing capital into young companies that build their factories elsewhere will continue to yield a bad return in terms of American jobs.

In effect, Grove was arguing that technological spillovers require more than researchers; they require the presence of large numbers of workers putting new ideas to work. If he's right, his assertion constitutes a strong argument for industrial targeting.

---

<sup>1</sup>Andy Grove, "How to Make an American Job Before It's Too Late," Bloomberg.com, July 1, 2010.

To ask whether the policy is justified, the U.S. government would need to weigh these offsetting effects. Even if the government has a precise understanding of one industry, this is not enough because it also needs an equally precise understanding of those industries with which that industry competes for resources.

If a proposed strategic trade policy can overcome these criticisms, it still faces the problem of foreign retaliation, essentially the same problem faced when considering the use of a tariff to improve the terms of trade (Chapter 10). Strategic policies are **beggar-thy-neighbor policies** that increase our welfare at other countries' expense. These policies therefore risk a trade war that leaves everyone worse off. Few economists would advocate that the United States be the initiator of such policies. Instead, the furthest that most economists are willing to go is to argue that the United States should be prepared to retaliate when other countries appear to be using strategic policies aggressively.

Finally, can theories like this ever be used in a political context? We discussed this issue in Chapter 10, where the reasons for skepticism were placed in the context of a political skeptic's case for free trade.

## CASE STUDY

### When the Chips Were Up

During the years when arguments about the effectiveness of strategic trade policy were at their height, advocates of a more interventionist trade policy on the part of the United States often claimed that Japan had prospered by deliberately promoting key industries. By the early 1990s, one example in particular—that of semiconductor chips—had become exhibit A in the case that promoting key industries “works.” Indeed, when author James Fallows published a series of articles in 1994 attacking free trade ideology and alleging the superiority of Japanese-style interventionism, he began with a piece titled “The Parable of the Chips.” By the end of the 1990s, however, the example of semiconductors had come to seem an object lesson in the pitfalls of activist trade policy.

A semiconductor chip is a small piece of silicon on which complex circuits have been etched. As we saw earlier, the industry began in the United States when the U.S. firm Intel introduced the first microprocessor, the brains of a computer on a chip. Since then, the industry has experienced rapid yet peculiarly predictable technological change: Roughly every 18 months, the number of circuits that can be etched on a chip doubles, a rule known as Moore’s Law. This progress underlies much of the information technology revolution of the past three decades.

Japan broke into the semiconductor market in the late 1970s. The industry was definitely targeted by the Japanese government, which supported a research effort that helped build domestic technological capacity. The sums involved in this subsidy, however, were fairly small. The main component of Japan’s activist trade policy, according to U.S. critics, was tacit protectionism. Although Japan had few formal tariffs or other barriers to imports, U.S. firms found that once Japan was able to manufacture a given type of semiconductor chip, few U.S. products were sold in that country. Critics alleged that there was a tacit understanding by Japanese firms in such industries as consumer electronics, in which Japan was already a leading producer, that they should buy domestic semiconductors, even if the price

was higher or the quality lower than that for competing U.S. products. Was this assertion true? The facts of the case are in dispute to this day.

Observers also alleged that the protected Japanese market—if that was indeed what it was—indirectly promoted Japan’s ability to export semiconductors. The argument went like this: Semiconductor production is characterized by a steep learning curve (recall the discussion of dynamic scale economies in Chapter 7). Guaranteed a large domestic market, Japanese semiconductor producers were certain they would be able to work their way down the learning curve, which meant they were willing to invest in new plants that could also produce for export.

It remains unclear to what extent these policies led to Japan’s success in taking a large share of the semiconductor market. Some features of the Japanese industrial system may have given the country a “natural” comparative advantage in semiconductor production, where quality control is a crucial concern. During the 1970s and 1980s, Japanese factories developed a new approach to manufacturing based on, among other things, setting acceptable levels of defects much lower than those that had been standard in the United States.

In any case, by the mid-1980s Japan had surpassed the United States in sales of one type of semiconductor, which was widely regarded as crucial to industry success: random access memories, or RAMs. The argument that RAM production was the key to dominating the whole semiconductor industry rested on the belief that it would yield both strong technological externalities and excess returns. RAMs were the largest-volume form of semiconductors; industry experts asserted that the know-how acquired in RAM production was essential to a nation’s ability to keep up with advancing technology in other semiconductors, such as microprocessors. So it was widely predicted that Japan’s dominance in RAMs would soon translate into dominance in the production of semiconductors generally—and that this supremacy, in turn, would give Japan an advantage in the production of many other goods that used semiconductors.

It was also widely believed that although the manufacture of RAMs had not been a highly profitable business before 1990, it would eventually become an industry characterized by excess returns. The reason was that the number of firms producing RAMs had steadily fallen: In each successive generation of chips, some producers had exited the sector, with no new entrants. Eventually, many observers thought, there would be only two or three highly profitable RAM producers left.

During the decade of the 1990s, however, both justifications for targeting RAMs—technological externalities and excess returns—apparently failed to materialize. On one side, Japan’s lead in RAMs ultimately did not translate into an advantage in other types of semiconductors: For example, American firms retained a secure lead in microprocessors. On the other side, instead of continuing to shrink, the number of RAM producers began to rise again, with the main new entrants from South Korea and other newly industrializing economies. By the end of the 1990s, RAM production was regarded as a “commodity” business: Many people could make RAMs, and there was nothing especially strategic about the sector.

The important lesson seems to be how hard it is to select industries to promote. The semiconductor industry appeared, on its face, to have all the attributes of a sector suitable for activist trade policy. But in the end, it yielded neither strong externalities nor excess returns.

## Globalization and Low-Wage Labor

It's a good bet that most of the clothing you are wearing as you read this came from a country far poorer than the United States. The rise of manufactured exports from developing countries has been one of the major shifts in the world economy over the last generation; even a desperately poor nation like Bangladesh, with a per-capita GDP less than 5 percent that of the United States, now relies more on exports of manufactured goods than on exports of traditional agricultural or mineral products. (A government official in a developing country remarked to one of the authors, "We are not a banana republic—we are a pajama republic.")

It should come as no surprise that the workers who produce manufactured goods for export in developing countries are paid very little by advanced-country standards—often less than \$1 per hour, sometimes less than \$0.50. After all, the workers have few good alternatives in such generally poor economies. Nor should it come as any surprise that the conditions of work are also very bad in many cases—sometimes lethal, as explained in the Case Study: A Tragedy in Bangladesh.

Should low wages and poor working conditions be a cause for concern? Many people think so. In the 1990s, the anti-globalization movement attracted many adherents in advanced countries, especially on college campuses. Outrage over low wages and poor working conditions in developing-country export industries was a large part of the movement's appeal, although other concerns (discussed later) were also part of the story.

It's fair to say that most economists have viewed the anti-globalization movement as, at best, misguided. The standard analysis of comparative advantage suggests that trade is mutually beneficial to the countries that engage in it; it suggests, furthermore, that when labor-abundant countries export labor-intensive manufactured goods like clothing, not only should their national incomes rise, but the distribution of income should also shift in favor of labor. But is the anti-globalization movement entirely off base?

### The Anti-Globalization Movement

Before 1995, most complaints about international trade made by citizens of advanced countries targeted its effects on people who were also citizens of advanced countries. During the 1980s, most Europeans were concerned about globalization's effects on their national culture, political independence, jobs and economic equality, the biggest part of these concerns are still applicable nowadays. In Europe, the process of Europeanization (European integration) in the 1980s was a form of introduction to globalization in the 1990s.

In the 1990s, a growing anti-globalization movement—originally started in 1968 in Europe, especially France, as a worldwide protest against the War in Vietnam War and later developed by US students developed into the anti-globalization movement as it is known today, alleged harm international trade was doing to workers in the developing countries by producing equality in working conditions and wages, by using benefits that poorer countries could offer for Western markets. Activists-protestors of anti-globalization gained more visible presence, providing vocal opposition to proposed international trade agreements and a number of organizations, directly opposing to the development of the global activities of their arrangements. Nowadays globalization idea has evolved. The European Union, for example, created a large single market that allows its members to benefit from the process of globalization. In the 1980s, major European economies were very restricted in terms of capital and labor mobility as well as highly regulated by the governments and different trade barriers. These days some critics still protest against globalization for growing international interdependence that challenges EU, national cultures, immigration and some new unprecedented threats (terrorism and human rights, for example). The anti-globalization group targets such

organizations and groups as the World Bank, the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), the World Trade Organization (WTO), International Monetary Fund (IMF) and free trade agreements as General Agreement on Trade in Services (GATS), the North American Free Agreement (NAFTA) and such.

### Trade and Wages Revisited

One strand of the opposition to globalization is familiar from the analysis in Chapter 3. Activists pointed to the very low wages earned by many workers in developing-country export industries. These critics argued that the low wages (and the associated poor working conditions) showed that, contrary to the claims of free trade advocates, globalization was not helping workers in developing countries.

For example, Japan is the leading country in foreign direct investments in Vietnam and Indonesia. Over 70 percent of the population resides in rural areas, relying primarily on agricultural production. More than 50 percent of the working force in Vietnam is represented by the younger population, who are potential human resources and provide a large supply of low wage workers, giving foreign investors an incentive to invest. Consequently, the Vietnamese unemployment rate especially since the end of 1990s was roughly reduced twice. The WTO accession in 2007 and Trans-Pacific Partnership Agreement (TPP) entrance in 2008 has also influenced the investment environment favorably.<sup>2</sup> However, minimum wages in Vietnam are still below \$4 per day, and working conditions in most cases are appalling by the standards of developed countries. Opponents of the globalization argue that by making it easier for employers to replace high-wage workers in Japan with lower-paid workers in Vietnam, the globalization had hurt employees from both countries.

The standard economist's answer to this argument goes back to our analysis in Chapter 3 of the misconceptions about comparative advantage. We saw that it is a common misconception that trade must involve the exploitation of workers if they earn much lower wages than their counterparts in a richer country.

Table 12-3 repeats that analysis briefly. In this case, we assume that there are two countries, Japan and Vietnam, and two industries, high-tech and low-tech. We also assume that labor is the only factor of production, and that Japanese labor is more productive than Vietnamese labor in all industries. Specifically, it takes only one hour of Japanese worker to produce a unit of output in either industry; it takes two hours of Vietnamese worker to produce a unit of low-tech output and eight hours to produce a unit of high-tech output. The upper part of the table shows the real wages of workers in each country in terms of each good in the absence of trade: the real wage in each case is simply the quantity of each good that a worker could produce in one hour.

Now suppose that trade is opened. In the equilibrium after trade, the relative wage rates of Japanese and Vietnamese workers would be somewhere between the relative productivity of workers in the two industries—for example, Japan's wages might be four times Vietnam's wages. Thus, it would be cheaper to produce low-tech goods in Vietnam and high-tech goods in Japan.

A critic of globalization might look at this trading equilibrium and conclude that trade works against the interest of workers. First of all, in low-tech industries, highly paid jobs in the Japan are replaced with lower-paid jobs in Vietnam. Moreover, you could make a plausible case that the Vietnam's workers are underpaid: Although they are half as productive in low-tech manufacturing as the Japanese workers they replace, their wage rate is only  $\frac{1}{4}$  (not  $\frac{1}{2}$ ) that of Japanese workers.

<sup>2</sup>LNT & Partners. Japan Investments Profile in Vietnam. Source: [http://lntpartners.com/documents/Japan\\_Investment%20Profile\\_LNTpartners.pdf](http://lntpartners.com/documents/Japan_Investment%20Profile_LNTpartners.pdf)

**TABLE 12-3 Real Wages****(A) Before Trade**

	<b>High-Tech Goods/Hour</b>	<b>Low-Tech Goods/Hour</b>
Japan	1	1
Vietnam	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{2}$

**(B) After Trade**

	<b>High-Tech Goods/Hour</b>	<b>Low-Tech Goods/Hour</b>
Japan	1	2
Vietnam	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{2}$

But as shown in the lower half of Table 12-3, in this example the purchasing power of wages has actually increased in both countries. Japanese workers, all of whom are now employed in high-tech, can purchase more low-tech goods than before: two units per hour of work versus one. Vietnamese workers, all of whom are now employed in low-tech, find that they can purchase more high-tech goods with an hour's labor than before:  $\frac{1}{4}$  instead of  $\frac{1}{8}$ . Because of trade, the price of each country's imported good in terms of that country's wage rate has fallen.

The point of this example is not to reproduce the real situation in any exact way; it is to show that the evidence usually cited as proof that globalization hurts workers in developing countries is exactly what you would expect to see even if the world were well described by a model that says that trade actually benefits workers in both advanced and developing countries.

One might argue that this model is misleading because it assumes that labor is the only factor of production. It is true that if one turns from the Ricardian model to the factor-proportions model discussed in Chapter 5, it becomes possible that trade hurts workers in the labor-scarce, high-wage country—that is, Japan in this example. But this does not help the claim that trade hurts workers in developing countries. On the contrary, the case for believing that trade is beneficial to workers in the low-wage country actually becomes stronger: Standard economic analysis says that while workers in a capital-abundant nation like Japan might be hurt by trade with a labor-abundant country like Vietnam, the workers in the labor-abundant country should benefit from a shift in the distribution of income in their favor.

In our given case, economists argue that while wages in Vietnam are very low compared with wages in Japan, that situation is inevitable because of the lack of other opportunities in Vietnam, which has far lower overall productivity. And it follows that while wages and working conditions in the Vietnam may appear terrible, they represent an improvement over the alternatives available in the country. Indeed, the rapid rise of employment in foreign factories indicated that workers preferred the jobs they could find there to the alternatives.

The standard economist's argument, in other words, is that despite the low wages earned by workers in developing countries, those workers are better off than they would have been if globalization had not taken place. Some activists do not accept this argument—they maintain that increased trade makes workers in both advanced and developing countries worse off. It is hard, however, to find a clear statement of the channels through which this is supposed to happen. Perhaps the most popular argument is that capital is mobile internationally, while labor is not; and that this mobility gives capitalists a bargaining advantage. As we saw in Chapter 4, however, international factor mobility is similar in its effects to international trade.

## Labor Standards and Trade Negotiations

Free trade proponents and anti-globalization activists may debate the big questions such as, is globalization good for workers or not? Narrower practical policy issues are at stake, however: whether and to what extent international trade agreements should also contain provisions aimed at improving wages and working conditions in poor countries.

The most modest proposals have come from economists who argue for a system that monitors wages and working conditions and makes the results of this monitoring available to consumers. Their argument is a version of the market failure analysis in Chapter 10. Suppose, they suggest, that consumers in advanced countries feel better about buying manufactured goods that they know were produced by decently paid workers. Then a system that allows these consumers to know, without expending large efforts on information gathering, whether the workers were indeed decently paid offers an opportunity for mutual gain. (Kimberly Ann Elliott, cited in the Further Readings list at the end of the chapter, quotes a teenager: “Look, I don’t have time to be some kind of major political activist every time I go to the mall. Just tell me what kinds of shoes are okay to buy, okay?”) Because consumers can choose to buy only “certified” goods, they are better off because they feel better about their purchases. Meanwhile, workers in the certified factories gain a better standard of living than they otherwise would have had.

Proponents of such a system admit that it would not have a large impact on the standard of living in developing countries, mainly because it would affect only the wages of workers in export factories, who are a small minority of the workforce even in highly export-oriented economies. But they argue that it would do some good and little harm.

A stronger step would be to include formal labor standards—that is, conditions that export industries are supposed to meet—as part of trade agreements. Such standards have considerable political support in advanced countries; indeed, President Bill Clinton spoke in favor of such standards at the disastrous Seattle meeting described previously.

The economic argument in favor of labor standards in trade agreements is similar to the argument in favor of a minimum wage rate for domestic workers: While economic theory suggests that the minimum wage reduces the number of low-skill jobs available, some (though by no means all!) reasonable economists argue that such effects are small and are outweighed by the effect of the minimum wage in raising the income of the workers who remain employed.

Labor standards in trade, however, are strongly opposed by most developing countries, which believe that the standards would inevitably be used as a protectionist tool: Politicians in advanced countries would set standards at levels that developing countries could not meet, in effect pricing their goods out of world markets. A particular concern—in fact, it was one of the concerns that led to the collapse of the talks in Seattle—is that labor standards would be used as the basis for private lawsuits against foreign companies, similar to the way antidumping legislation has been used by private companies to harass foreign competitors.

## Environmental and Cultural Issues

Complaints against globalization go beyond labor issues. Many critics argue that globalization is bad for the environment. It is unmistakably true that environmental standards in developing-country export industries are much lower than in advanced-country industries. It is also true that in a number of cases, substantial environmental damage has been and is being done in order to provide goods to advanced-country markets. A notable example is the heavy logging of Southeast Asian forests carried out to produce forest products for sale to Japanese and Western markets.

On the other hand, there are at least as many cases of environmental damage that has occurred in the name of “inward-looking” policies of countries reluctant to integrate with the global economy. A notable example is the destruction of many square miles of rain

forest in Brazil, the consequence partly of a domestic policy that subsidizes development in the interior. This policy has nothing to do with exports and in fact began during the years that Brazil was attempting to pursue inward-looking development.

As in the case of labor standards, there is debate over whether trade agreements should include environmental standards. On one side, proponents argue that such agreements can lead to at least modest improvements in the environment, benefiting all concerned. On the other side, opponents insist that attaching environmental standards to trade agreements will in effect shut down potential export industries in poor countries, which cannot afford to maintain anything like Western standards.

An even trickier issue involves the effect of globalization on local and national cultures. It is unmistakably true that the growing integration of markets has led to a homogenization of cultures around the world. People worldwide increasingly tend to wear the same clothing, eat the same food, listen to the same music, and watch the same films and TV shows.

Much but not all of this homogenization is also Americanization. For example, McDonald's is now found almost everywhere, but so is sushi. Hollywood action films dominate the global box office, but stylized fight scenes in Hollywood blockbusters like *The Matrix* are based on the conventions of Hong Kong martial arts films.

It is hard to deny that something is lost as a result of this cultural homogenization. One can therefore make a market failure argument on behalf of policies that attempt to preserve national cultural differences by, for example, limiting the number of American films that can be shown in theaters, or the fraction of TV time that can be taken up with programming from overseas.

As soon as one advances this argument, however, it becomes clear that another principle is involved: the right of individuals in free societies to entertain themselves as they like. How would you feel if someone denied you the right to listen to the Rolling Stones or watch Jackie Chan movies on the grounds that American cultural independence must be safeguarded?

## The WTO and National Independence

One recurrent theme in the anti-globalization movement is that the drive for free trade and free flow of capital has undermined national sovereignty. In the extreme versions of this complaint, the World Trade Organization is characterized as a supranational power able to prevent national governments from pursuing policies in their own interests. How much substance is there to this charge?

The short answer is that the WTO does not look anything like a world government; its authority is basically limited to that of requiring countries to live up to their international trade agreements. However, the small grain of truth in the view of the WTO as a supranational authority is that its mandate allows it to monitor not only the traditional instruments of trade policy—tariffs, export subsidies, and quantitative restrictions—but also domestic policies that are de facto trade policies. And since the line between legitimate domestic policies and de facto protectionism is fuzzy, there have been cases in which the WTO has seemed to some observers to be interfering in domestic policy.

Earlier, we described a well-known example that illustrates the ambiguity of the issue. As we saw, the United States amended its Clean Air Act to require imported gasoline to be no more polluting than the average of gasoline supplied by domestic refineries. The WTO ruled that this requirement was a violation of existing trade agreements. To critics of the WTO, this ruling exemplified how the institution could frustrate an attempt by a democratically elected government to improve the environment.

As defenders of the WTO pointed out, however, the ruling was based on the fact that the United States was applying different standards to imports and to domestic production. After all, some U.S. refineries supply gasoline that is more polluting than the

## CASE STUDY

### A Tragedy in Bangladesh

Bangladesh is a very poor country. According to World Bank estimates, in 2010 some 77 percent of Bangladeshis were living on the equivalent of less than \$2 a day, and 43 percent were living on less than \$1.25 a day. Incredibly, however, these numbers reflected a major improvement from the not-so-distant past: In 1992, 93 percent of the population lived on less than \$2 a day in today's dollars, 67 percent on less than \$1.25.

This decline in poverty was the byproduct of two decades of impressive economic growth that doubled the nation's GDP per capita. Bangladeshi growth, in turn, relied crucially on rising exports, specifically, exports of apparel. As we noted in Chapter 11, the Bangladeshi clothing industry is a classic case of comparative advantage: It has relatively low productivity, even compared with other developing countries, but Bangladesh has even lower relative productivity in other industries, so it has become a clothing export powerhouse.

Bangladeshi competitiveness in clothing depends, however, on low wages and poor working conditions. How poor? On April 24, 2013, the world was shocked by news that an eight-story building in Bangladesh, containing a number of garment factories, had collapsed, killing more than 1,200 people. Inquiries revealed that cracks had appeared in the building the day before, but garment workers had been ordered back to work anyway. It also appeared that the building was structurally unsuited for manufacturing work and may have had extra stories added without a permit.

And who was buying the clothing made under these unsafe conditions? We were: The factories in the building were supplying clothing to a number of popular Western clothing brands.

Clearly, Bangladesh needs to take steps to protect its workers, starting by enforcing its own building and worker-safety laws. But how should consumers in wealthy nations—that means, among other people, you—respond?

An immediate, instinctive response is that we shouldn't buy goods produced in countries where workers are treated so badly. Yet as we've just seen, Bangladesh desperately needs to keep exporting clothing, and it can only do so if its workers receive very low wages by Western standards. Indeed, it needs to pay less even than China, whose apparel industry has higher productivity. And low wages and poor working conditions tend, whatever we might like, to go together.

Does this mean that nothing can be done to help Bangladeshi workers that won't end up hurting them instead? No. One can imagine trying, either by law or simply through consumer pressure, some basic standards for working conditions that apply not just to Bangladesh but to its competitors. Provided that they're not too ambitious, such standards could make life better for Bangladeshi workers without destroying the exports the country relies on.

But it won't be easy, and one shouldn't expect too much from such measures. For the foreseeable future, two uncomfortable facts will continue to be true when it comes to trade with poor countries: Workers in those countries will suffer from worse wages and working conditions than Westerners can easily imagine, yet refusing to buy what those workers produce would make them much worse off.

average, yet they are allowed to remain in operation. So the rule in effect prevented the sale of polluting gasoline from Venezuela in U.S. markets but permitted the sale of equally polluting gasoline from a domestic refinery. If the new rule had applied the same standards to domestic and foreign gasoline, it would have been acceptable to the WTO.

## Globalization and the Environment

Concerns about human impacts on the environment are growing in much of the world. In turn, these concerns are playing a growing role in domestic politics. For example, in November 2007, the government of Australian Prime Minister John Howard was voted out of office; most political analysts believed the ruling party's decisive defeat had a lot to do with public perceptions that Australia's Liberal Party (which is actually conservative—Labor is on the left) was unwilling to act against environmental threats.

Inevitably, then, environmental issues are playing a growing role in disputes about international trade as well. Some anti-globalization activists claim that growing international trade automatically harms the environment; some also claim that international trade agreements—and the role of the World Trade Organization in particular—have the effect of blocking environmental action. Most international economists view the first claim as simplistic and disagree with the second. That is, they deny that there is a simple relationship between globalization and environmental damage and do not believe that trade agreements prevent countries from having enlightened environmental policies. Nonetheless, the intersection of trade and the environment does raise a number of important issues.

### Globalization, Growth, and Pollution

Both production and consumption often lead, as a byproduct, to environmental damage. Factories emit pollution into the air and sometimes dump effluent into rivers; farmers use fertilizer and pesticides that end up in water; consumers drive pollution-emitting cars. As a result—other things equal—economic growth, which increases both production and consumption, leads to greater environmental damage.

However, other things are not equal. For one thing, countries change the mix of their production and consumption as they grow richer, to some extent in ways that tend to reduce the environmental impact. For example, as the U.S. economy becomes increasingly devoted to the production of services rather than goods, it tends to use less energy and raw material per dollar of GDP.

In addition, growing wealth tends to lead to growing political demands for environmental quality. As a result, rich countries generally impose stricter regulations to ensure clean air and water than poorer countries—a difference that is apparent to anyone who has gone back and forth between a major city in the United States or Europe and one in a developing country, and taken a deep breath in both places.

In the early 1990s, Princeton economists Gene Grossman and Alan Krueger, studying the relationship between national income levels and pollutants such as sulfur dioxide, found that these offsetting effects of economic growth lead to a distinctive “inverted U” relationship between per-capita income and environmental damage known as the **environmental Kuznets curve**.<sup>3</sup> This concept, whose relevance has been confirmed by a great deal of further research, is illustrated schematically in Figure 12-3.

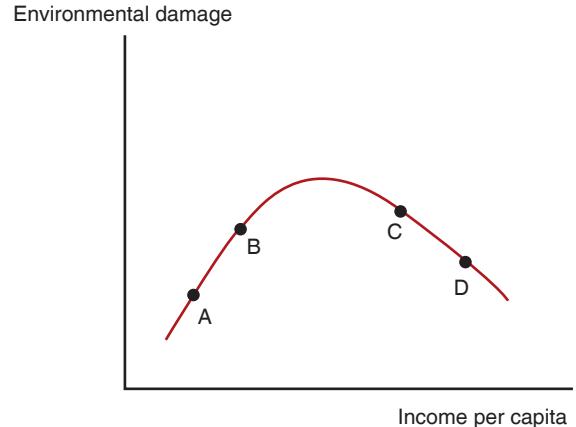
The idea is that as a country’s income per capita rises due to economic growth, the initial effect is growing damage to the environment. Thus, China, whose economy has

---

<sup>3</sup>Gene Grossman and Alan Krueger, “Environmental Effects of a North American Free Trade Agreement,” in Peter Garber, ed., *The U.S. Mexico Free Trade Agreement*. MIT Press, 1994.

**FIGURE 12-3****The Environmental Kuznets Curve**

Empirical evidence suggests that as economies grow, they initially do increasing environmental damage—but they become more environmentally friendly once they become sufficiently rich. China, where the environment is deteriorating as the economy expands, is in effect moving from A to B. Richer countries may be moving from C to D, using some of their growth to improve the environment.



surged in recent decades, is in effect moving from point A to point B: As the country burns more coal in its power plants and produces more goods in its factories, it emits more sulfur dioxide into the air and dumps more effluent into its rivers.

But when a country gets sufficiently rich, it can afford to take action to protect the environment. As the United States has grown richer in recent decades, it has also moved to limit pollution. For example, cars are required to have catalytic converters that reduce smog, and a government-licensing scheme limits emissions of sulfur dioxide from power plants. In terms of Figure 12-3, the United States has on some fronts, such as local air pollution, moved from C to D: growing richer and doing less damage to the environment.

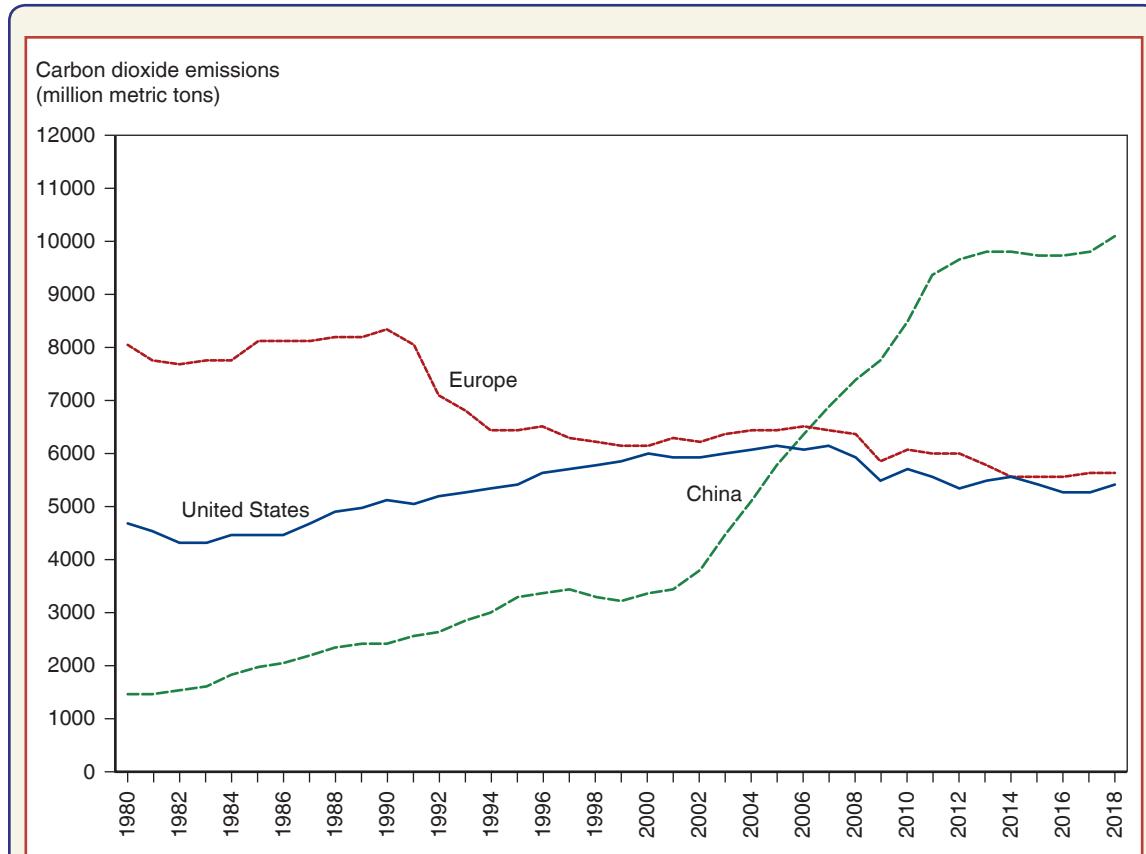
What does this have to do with international trade? Trade liberalization is often advocated on the grounds that it will promote economic growth. To the extent that it succeeds in accomplishing this end, it will raise per-capita income. Will this improve or worsen environmental quality? It depends which side of the environmental Kuznets curve an economy is on. In their original paper, which was in part a response to critics of the North American Free Trade Agreement who argued that the agreement would be environmentally harmful, Grossman and Krueger suggested that Mexico might be on the right side of the curve—that is, to the extent that NAFTA raises Mexican income, it might actually lead to a reduction in environmental damage.

However, the environmental Kuznets curve does not, by any means, necessarily imply that globalization is good for the environment. In fact, it's fairly easy to make the argument that at a world level, globalization has indeed harmed the environment—at least so far.

This argument would run as follows: The biggest single beneficiary of globalization has arguably been China, whose export-led economy has experienced incredible growth since 1980. Meanwhile, the single biggest environmental issue is surely climate change: There is broad scientific consensus that emissions of carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases are leading to a rise in the Earth's average temperature.

China's boom has been associated with a huge increase in its emissions of carbon dioxide. Figure 12-4 shows carbon dioxide emissions of the United States, Europe, and China from 1980 to 2011. In 1980, China was a minor factor in global warming; by 2008, it was, by a substantial margin, the world's leading emitter of greenhouse gases.

It's important to realize, though, that the problem here isn't globalization per se—it's China's economic success, which has to some extent come as a result of globalization.

**FIGURE 12-4****Carbon Dioxide Emissions**

The rapid economic growth of China has turned it from a minor factor in climate change to the world's largest emitter of carbon dioxide.

**Source:** Global Carbon Project.

And despite environmental concerns, it's difficult to argue that China's growth, which has raised hundreds of millions of people out of dire poverty, is a bad thing.

### The Problem of “Pollution Havens”

When ships get too old to continue operating, they are disassembled to recover their scrap metal and other materials. One way to look at “shipbreaking” is that it is a form of recycling: Instead of leaving a ship to rust, a shipbreaking firm extracts and reuses its components. Ultimately, this salvaging means that less iron ore needs to be mined, less oil extracted, and so on. One might expect shipbreaking to be good for the environment. The task itself, however, can be environmentally hazardous: Everything from the residual oil in a ship's tanks to the plastic in its chairs and interior fittings, if not handled carefully, can be toxic to the local environment.

As a result, shipbreaking in advanced countries is subject to close environmental regulation. When a ship is taken apart in Baltimore or Rotterdam, great care is taken to avoid environmental harm. But these days, shipbreaking rarely takes place in advanced countries. Instead, it's done in places like the Indian shipbreaking center of Alang, where ships are run aground on a beach and then dismantled by men with blowtorches, who leave a lot of pollution in their wake.

In effect, Alang has become a **pollution haven**: Thanks to international trade, an economic activity subject to strong environmental controls in some countries can take place in other countries with less strict regulation. Some activist groups are very concerned about the problem of pollution havens. Indeed, the environmental group Greenpeace made a *cause célèbre* out of Alang, demanding that higher environmental standards be imposed. There are really two questions about pollution havens: (1) Are they really an important factor? and (2) Do they deserve to be a subject of international negotiation?

On the first question, most empirical research suggests that the pollution haven effect on international trade is relatively small. That is, there is not much evidence that “dirty” industries move to countries with lax environmental regulation.<sup>3</sup> Even in the case of the shipbreaking industry, India’s low wages seem to have been more of a lure than its loose environmental restrictions.

Second, do nations have a legitimate interest in each other’s environmental policies? That turns out to depend on the nature of the environmental problem.

Pollution is the classic example of a negative externality—a cost that individuals impose on others but don’t pay for. That’s why pollution is a valid reason for government intervention. However, different forms of pollution have very different geographical reach—and only those that extend across national boundaries obviously justify international concern.

Thus, to the extent that Indian shipbreaking pollutes the local environment at Alang, this is a problem for India; it’s less clear that it is a problem for other countries. Similarly, air pollution in Mexico City is a problem for Mexico; it’s not clear why it’s a valid U.S. interest. On the other hand, emissions of carbon dioxide affect the future climate for all countries: They’re an international externality and deserve to be the subject of international negotiation.

At this point, it’s hard to come up with major examples of industries in which the pollution haven phenomenon, to the extent that it occurs, leads to international negative externalities. That situation may change dramatically, however, if some but not all major economies adopt strong policies to limit climate change.

## The Carbon Tariff Dispute

In 2009, the U.S. House of Representatives passed a bill that would have created a cap-and-trade system for greenhouse gases—that is, a system under which a limited number of emissions licenses are issued and firms are required to buy enough licenses to cover their actual emissions, in effect putting a price on carbon dioxide and other gases. The Senate failed to pass any comparable bill, so climate-change legislation remained on hold, and we don’t know when it might happen. Nonetheless, there was a key trade provision in the House bill that may represent the shape of things to come: It imposed **carbon tariffs** on imports from countries that fail to enact similar policies.

What was that about? One question that has been raised about climate-change legislation is whether it can be effective if only some countries take action. The United

---

<sup>4</sup>See, for example, Josh Ederington, Arik Levinson, and Jenny Minier, “Trade Liberalization and Pollution Havens,” Working Paper 10585, National Bureau of Economic Research, June 2004.

United States accounts for only part of the world's emission of greenhouse gases—in fact, as we saw in Figure 12-4, it's not even the largest emitter. So a unilateral reduction in emissions by the United States would have only a limited effect on global emissions, and hence on future climate change. Furthermore, policies that put a high price on carbon might make the pollution haven effect much larger than it has been so far, leading to “carbon leakage” as emissions-intensive industries relocate to countries without strong climate-change policies.

The obvious answer to these concerns is to make the initiative global, to have all major economies adopt similar policies. But there's no guarantee that such an agreement would be forthcoming, especially when some countries like China feel that they deserve the right to have laxer environmental policies than rich countries that have already achieved a high standard of living.

So what's the answer? The idea behind carbon tariffs is to charge importers of goods from countries without climate-change policies an amount proportional to the carbon dioxide emitted in the production of those goods. The charge per ton of emissions would be equal to the price of carbon dioxide emission licenses in the domestic market. This would give overseas producers an incentive to limit their carbon emissions and would remove the incentive to shift production to countries with lax regulation. In addition, it would, possibly, give countries with lax regulations an incentive to adopt climate-change policies of their own.

Critics of carbon tariffs argue that they would be protectionist and also violate international trade rules, which prohibit discrimination between domestic and foreign products. Supporters argue that they would simply place producers of imported goods and domestic producers on a level playing field when selling to domestic consumers, with both required to pay for their greenhouse gas emissions. And because carbon tariffs create a level playing field, they argue, such tariffs—carefully applied—should also be legal under existing trade rules.

At this point, the issue of carbon tariffs is hypothetical, since no major economy has yet placed a significant price on greenhouse gas emissions. Correspondingly, the WTO hasn't issued any rulings on the legality of such tariffs and probably won't until or unless a real case emerges. But if climate-change legislation makes a comeback—and it is a good bet that it will sooner or later—it will clearly lead to some major new issues in trade policy.

## Trade Shocks and Their Impact on Communities

Contrary to the widespread caricature, the economic analysis of international trade does not say that free trade is good for everyone. As we've seen, it's well understood that increased trade can shift the distribution of income within countries and create losers as well as winners. But do standard models fully account for the losses caused by rapid shifts in trade?

In recent years a number of authors have suggested that the answer is no. One particularly influential analysis by David Autor, David Dorn, and Gordon Hanson argued that the rapid growth of Chinese exports after 1990, and especially after 2001, when China joined the WTO, created much more hardship in the United States than most economists had realized.<sup>5</sup>

---

<sup>5</sup>David H. Autor, David Dorn, and Gordon H. Hanson, “The China Shock: Learning from Labor-Market Adjustment to Large Changes in Trade,” *Annual Review of Economics*, October 2016.

The Autor et al. analysis rested on three key observations:

- Chinese export growth was very uneven across industries. For example, China virtually took over world production of women's nonathletic footwear while making much more modest inroads into other sectors.
- Many U.S. manufacturing industries are or were very highly concentrated geographically—probably due to the external economies discussed in Chapter 7—so the outsized China impact on certain industries fell heavily on some communities while largely passing others by.
- Finally, U.S. workers and families are much less willing or able to move away from depressed regions than one might have expected.

For these reasons, they argue, surging Chinese exports had a bigger impact on American workers than looking at overall numbers might have suggested. Autor et al. estimated that the “China shock” displaced, in total, around a million U.S. manufacturing jobs. That is actually not that big a number in an economy that employs 150 million workers and in which 1.5 million workers lose their jobs every month. But the China-related job losses were concentrated in a relatively small number of regions and led to further job losses in those regions as demand for local services fell. As a result, they argued, the impact on some communities was devastating.

This kind of analysis suggests that rapid changes in international trade are more painful than economists had realized. And this reality may partly explain the political backlash against globalization that was visible in 2016, when Britain voted to leave the European Union and the United States elected a candidate with a strongly protectionist platform.

## SUMMARY

- Some new arguments for government intervention in trade have emerged over the past quarter-century: The theory of *strategic trade policy* offered reasons why countries might gain from promoting particular industries. In the 1990s a new critique of globalization emerged that focused on the effects of globalization on workers in developing countries. And possible action on climate change has raised some major trade issues, including that of the desirability and legality of *carbon tariffs*.
- Activist trade policy arguments rest on two ideas. One is the argument that governments should promote industries that yield technological *externalities*. The other, which represents a greater departure from standard market failure arguments, is the *Brander-Spencer analysis*, which suggests that strategic intervention can enable nations to capture *excess returns*. These arguments are theoretically persuasive; however, many economists worry that they are too subtle and require too much information to be useful in practice.
- With the rise of manufactured exports from developing countries, a new movement opposed to globalization has emerged. The central concern of this movement is with the low wages paid to export workers, although there are other themes as well. The response of most economists is that developing-country workers may earn low wages by Western standards, but that trade allows them to earn more than they otherwise would.
- An examination of cases suggests how difficult the discussion of globalization really is, especially when one tries to view it as a moral issue; it is all too easy for people to do harm when they are trying to do good. The causes most favored by activists, such as labor standards, are feared by developing countries, which believe the standards will be used as protectionist devices.

- To the extent that globalization promotes economic growth, it has ambiguous effects on the environment. The *environmental Kuznets curve* says that economic growth initially tends to increase environmental damage as a country grows richer but that beyond a certain point, growth is actually good for the environment. Unfortunately, some of the world's fastest-growing economies are still relatively poor and on the "wrong" side of the curve.
- There is growing concern that globalization may allow highly polluting industries to move to *pollution havens*, where regulation is looser. There is little evidence that this is a major factor in actual location decisions, at least so far. But that may change if serious climate-change policies are implemented; in that case, there is a strong case for *carbon tariffs*, but also strong criticism of the concept.
- A recent concern, driven by growth in Chinese exports, is that rapid, large changes in international trade may cause severe losses to geographically concentrated groups of workers and their communities, so that the adverse effects are more serious than economists had previously realized.

## KEY TERMS

beggar-thy-neighbor policies, p. 334	carbon tariffs, p. 345 environmental Kuznets curve, p. 342 excess returns, p. 331	externalities, p. 328 pollution haven, p. 345 strategic trade policy, p. 327
-----------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## PROBLEMS

1. What are the disadvantages of engaging in strategic trade policy even in cases in which it can be shown to yield an increase in a country's welfare?
2. It's widely believed that space exploration will become commonplace in the near future and that there will be huge strides in satellite use. Does this mean that the United States should have policies designed to ensure that they are the leaders in the space exploration sector?
3. Many European policy analysts criticize the European Union and its member states for heavily subsidizing basic research. Instead, they say that applied research should be encouraged to generate competitive advantages for European companies. Explain.
4. What are the key assumptions that allow strategic trade policy to work in the Brander-Spencer example of Airbus and Boeing?
5. Some retailers in developing countries sell products from developed countries with high wages, but assure customers that these goods are produced under high standards of quality. Is demanding that kind of guarantee the same as applying a subsidy on exports? Is there any way it can benefit consumers overseas?
6. What is the main critique against the WTO with respect to environmental protection? How does the WTO justify its position on trade disputes that involve environmental issues?
7. France, in addition to its occasional stabs at strategic trade policy, pursues an active nationalist *cultural* policy that promotes French art, music, fashion, cuisine, and so on. This may be primarily a matter of attempting to preserve a national identity in an increasingly homogeneous world, but some French officials also defend this policy on economic grounds. In what sense could some features of such a policy be defended as a kind of strategic trade policy?

8. Many countries have value-added taxes—taxes that are paid by producers, but are intended to fall on consumers. (They’re basically just an indirect way of imposing sales taxes.) Such value-added taxes are always accompanied by an equal tax on imports; such import taxes are considered legal because like the value-added tax, they’re really an indirect way of taxing all consumer purchases at the same rate. Compare this situation to the argument over carbon tariffs. Why might defenders argue that such tariffs are legal? What objections can you think of?
9. Our usual models of trade assume that jobs lost in one industry will be offset by jobs gained in other industries. The Autor et al. paper argued, however, that communities that lose manufacturing jobs to imports end up losing other jobs as well. Is this a contradiction?

## FURTHER READINGS

---

- James A. Brander and Barbara J. Spencer. “Export Subsidies and International Market Share Rivalry.” *Journal of International Economics* 16 (1985), pp. 83–100. A basic reference on the potential role of subsidies as a tool of strategic trade policy.
- Kimberly Ann Elliott. *Can Labor Standards Improve Under Globalization?* Washington, D.C.: Institute for International Economics, 2001. A survey of the issues by an economist sympathetic to the cause of the activists.
- Edward M. Graham. *Fighting the Wrong Enemy: Antiglobalization Activists and Multinational Corporations*. Washington, D.C.: Institute for International Economics, 2001. A survey of the issues by an economist less sympathetic to the activists.
- Elhanan Helpman and Paul Krugman. *Trade Policy and Market Structure*. Cambridge: MIT Press, 1989. A survey and synthesis of the literature on strategic trade policy and related topics.
- William Langewiesche. “The Shipbreakers.” *The Atlantic Monthly* (August 2000). A fascinating description of the shipbreaking industry of Alang and the dispute it has generated.
- Hearing on Trade Aspects of Climate Change Legislation, Before the Subcommittee on Trade*, 112th Cong. (March 24, 2009) (statement of Joost Pauwelyn). A clear, concise discussion by a trade lawyer of the issues surrounding carbon tariffs, in which he argues that if done carefully, they would be legal under existing agreements.



# CHAPTER 13

## NATIONAL INCOME ACCOUNTING AND THE BALANCE OF PAYMENTS

**B**etween 2014 and 2019, the world economy's total real product grew at an annual average rate of nearly 3.5 percent per year. Global growth was reasonably stable, fluctuating in a range between about 3.9 percent (in 2017) and 2.9 percent (in 2019). As the COVID-19 pandemic emerged in 2020, however, world economic growth suddenly turned sharply negative, with many economies shrinking by amounts unprecedented since the Great Depression of the 1930s. Unemployment rose sharply everywhere, including in the United States, but some countries (such as several in East Asia) suffered much less compared with others. Can economic analysis help us to understand the behavior of the global economy and the reasons why individual countries' fortunes often differ?

Previous chapters have been concerned primarily with the problem of making the best use of the world's scarce productive resources at a single point in time. The branch of economics called **microeconomics** studies this problem from the perspective of individual firms and consumers. Microeconomics works "from the bottom up" to show how individual economic actors, by pursuing their own interests, collectively determine how resources are used. In our study of international microeconomics, we have learned how individual production and consumption decisions produce patterns of international trade and specialization. We have also seen that while free trade usually encourages efficient resource use, government intervention or market failures can cause waste even when all factors of production are fully employed.

With this chapter, we shift our focus and ask: How can economic policy ensure that factors of production are fully employed? And what determines how an economy's capacity to produce goods and services changes over time? To answer these questions, we must understand **macroeconomics**, the branch of economics that studies how economies' overall levels of employment, production, and growth are determined. Like microeconomics, macroeconomics is concerned with the effective use of scarce resources. But while microeconomics focuses on the economic decisions of individuals, macroeconomics analyzes the behavior of an economy as a whole. In our study of international macroeconomics, we will learn how the interactions of national economies influence the worldwide pattern of macroeconomic activity.

Macroeconomic analysis emphasizes four aspects of economic life that, until now, we have usually kept in the background to simplify our discussion of international economics:

1. *Unemployment.* We know that in the real world, workers may be unemployed and factories may be idle. Macroeconomics studies the factors that cause unemployment and the steps governments can take to prevent it. A main concern of international macroeconomics is the problem of ensuring full employment in economies open to international trade.
2. *Saving.* In earlier chapters, we usually assumed that every country consumes an amount exactly equal to its income—no more and no less. In reality, though, households can put aside part of their income to provide for the future, or they can borrow temporarily to spend more than they earn. A country's saving or borrowing behavior affects domestic employment and future levels of national wealth. From the standpoint of the international economy as a whole, the world saving rate determines how quickly the world stock of productive capital can grow.
3. *Trade imbalances.* As we saw in earlier chapters, the value of a country's imports equals the value of its exports when spending equals income. Actual economies seldom attain this state of balanced trade, however. In the following chapters, trade imbalances play a large role because they redistribute wealth among countries and are a main channel through which one country's macroeconomic policies affect its trading partners. It should be no surprise, therefore, that trade imbalances, particularly when they are large and persistent, quickly can become a source of international discord.
4. *Money and the price level.* The trade theory you have studied so far is a barter theory, one in which goods are exchanged directly for other goods based on their relative prices. In practice, it is more convenient to use money—a widely acceptable medium of exchange—in transactions and to quote prices in terms of money. Because money changes hands in virtually every transaction that takes place in a modern economy, fluctuations in the supply of money or in the demand for it can affect both output and employment. International macroeconomics takes into account that every country uses a currency and that a monetary change (for example, a change in money supply) in one country can have effects that spill across its borders to other countries. Stability in money price levels is an important goal of international macroeconomic policy.

This chapter takes the first step in our study of international macroeconomics by explaining the accounting concepts economists use to describe a country's level of production and its international transactions. To get a complete picture of the macroeconomic linkages among economies that engage in international trade, we have to master two related and essential tools. The first of these tools, **national income accounting**, records all the expenditures that contribute to a country's income and output. The second tool, **balance of payments accounting**,

helps us keep track of both changes in a country's indebtedness to foreigners and the fortunes of its export- and import-competing industries. The balance of payments accounts also show the connection between foreign transactions and national money supplies.

### LEARNING GOALS

After reading this chapter, you will be able to:

- Discuss the concept of the current account balance.
- Use the current account balance to extend national income accounting to open economies.
- Apply national income accounting to the interaction of saving, investment, and net exports.
- Describe the balance of payments accounts and explain their relationship to the current account balance.
- Relate the current account to changes in a country's net foreign wealth.

## The National Income Accounts

Of central concern to macroeconomic analysis is a country's **gross national product (GNP)**, the value of all final goods and services produced by the country's factors of production and sold on the market in a given time period. GNP, which is the basic measure of a country's output studied by macroeconomists, is calculated by adding up the market value of all expenditures on final output. GNP therefore includes the value of goods like bread sold in a supermarket and textbooks sold in a bookstore as well as the value of services provided by stockbrokers and plumbers. Because output requires factor inputs for its production, the expenditures that make up GNP connect intimately with the employment of labor, capital, and other factors of production.

To distinguish among the different types of expenditure that make up a country's GNP, government economists and statisticians who compile national income accounts divide GNP among the four possible uses for which a country's final output is purchased: *consumption* (the amount consumed by private domestic residents), *investment* (the amount put aside by private firms to build new plant and equipment for future production), *government purchases* (the amount used by the government), and the *current account balance* (the amount of net exports of goods and services to foreigners). The term *national income accounts*, rather than *national output accounts*, is used to describe this fourfold classification because a country's income in fact equals its output. Thus, we can think of the national income accounts as classifying each transaction that contributes to national income according to the type of expenditure that gives rise to it. Figure 13-1 shows how U.S. GNP was divided among its four components in the first quarter (January–March) of 2020.<sup>1</sup>

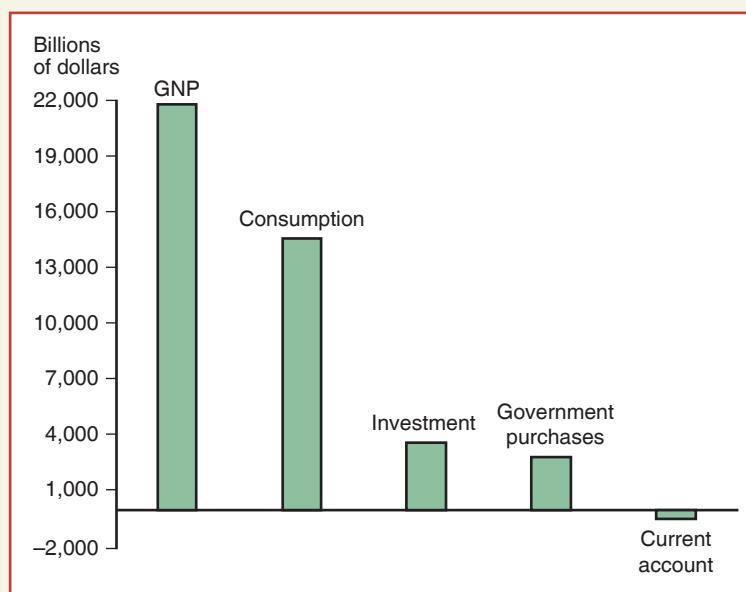
---

<sup>1</sup>In Figure 13-1, quarterly GNP and its components are measured at an annual rate (that is, they are multiplied by four). Our definition of the current account is not strictly accurate when a country is a net donor or recipient of foreign gifts. This possibility, along with some others, also complicates our identification of GNP with national income. We describe later in this chapter how the definitions of national income and the current account must be changed in such cases.

**FIGURE 13-1****U.S. GNP and Its Components**

America's gross national product for the first quarter of 2020 can be broken down into the four components shown.

**Source:** U.S. Department of Commerce, Bureau of Economic Analysis. The figure shows 2020:Q1 GNP and its components at an annual rate, seasonally adjusted.



Why is it useful to divide GNP into consumption, investment, government purchases, and the current account? One major reason is that we cannot hope to understand the cause of a particular recession or boom without knowing how the main categories of spending have changed. And without such an understanding, we cannot recommend a sound policy response. In addition, the national income accounts provide information essential for studying why some countries are rich—that is, have a high level of GNP relative to population size—while some are poor.

### National Product and National Income

Our first task in understanding how economists analyze GNP is to explain in greater detail why the GNP a country generates over some time period must equal its **national income**, the income earned in that period by its factors of production.

The reason for this equality is that every dollar used to purchase goods or services automatically ends up in somebody's pocket. A visit to the doctor provides a simple example of how an increase in national output raises national income by the same amount. The \$75 you pay the doctor represents the market value of the services he or she provides for you, so your visit raises GNP by \$75. But the \$75 you pay the doctor also raises his or her income. So national income rises by \$75.

The principle that output and income are the same also applies to goods, even goods produced with the help of many factors of production. Consider the example of an economics textbook. When you purchase a new book from the publisher, the value of your purchase enters GNP. But your payment enters the income of the productive factors that cooperated in producing the book because the publisher must pay for their services with the proceeds of sales. First, there are the authors, editors, artists, and compositors who provide the labor inputs necessary for the book's production. Second, there are the publishing company's shareholders, who receive dividends for having financed acquisition of the capital used in production. Finally, there are the

suppliers of paper and ink, who provide the intermediate materials used in producing the book.

The paper and ink purchased by the publishing house to produce the book are *not* counted separately in GNP because their contribution to the value of national output is already included in the book's price. It is to avoid such double counting that we allow only the sale of *final goods* and services to enter into the definition of GNP. Sales of intermediate goods, such as paper and ink purchased by a publisher, are not counted. Notice also that the sale of a used textbook does not enter GNP. Our definition counts only final goods and services that are *produced*, and a used textbook does not qualify: It was counted in GNP at the time it was first sold. Equivalently, the sale of a used textbook does not generate income for any factor of production.

### Capital Depreciation and International Transfers

Because we have defined GNP and national income so that they are necessarily equal, their equality is really an identity. Two adjustments to the definition of GNP are required, however, before the identification of GNP and national income is entirely correct in practice.

1. GNP does not take into account the economic loss due to the tendency of machinery and structures to wear out as they are used. This loss, called *depreciation*, reduces the income of capital owners. To calculate national income over a given period, we must therefore subtract from GNP the depreciation of capital over the period. GNP less depreciation is called *net national product* (NNP).
2. A country's income may include unrequited gifts from residents of foreign countries, as well as taxes paid to or subsidies received from foreign governments. We call such increments to current income *unilateral transfers*. Examples of unilateral transfers of income are pension payments to retired citizens living abroad, reparation payments, and foreign aid such as relief funds donated to drought-stricken nations. For the United States in 2019, the balance of such payments amounted to around  $-\$140$  billion, representing a 0.65 percent of GNP net transfer to foreigners. Net unilateral transfers are part of a country's income but are not part of its product, and they must be added to NNP in calculations of national income.

National income equals GNP *less* depreciation *plus* net unilateral transfers. The difference between GNP and national income is by no means an insignificant amount, but macroeconomics has little to say about it, and it is of little importance for macroeconomic analysis. Therefore, for the purposes of this text, we usually use the terms *GNP* and *national income* interchangeably, emphasizing the distinction between the two only when it is essential.<sup>2</sup> Many countries emphasize the accounting concept of *Gross National Income* (GNI), which is equal to national income without an adjustment for depreciation. For most countries in most years, GNP and GNI do not differ greatly.

---

<sup>2</sup>Strictly speaking, government statisticians refer to what we have called "national income" as *national disposable income*. Their official concept of national income omits foreign net unilateral transfers. Once again, however, the difference between national income and national disposable income is usually unimportant for macroeconomic analysis. Unilateral transfers are alternatively referred to as *secondary income payments* to distinguish them from *primary income payments* consisting of cross-border wage and investment income. We will see this terminology later when we study balance of payments accounting.

## Gross Domestic Product

Most countries other than the United States have long reported **gross domestic product (GDP)** rather than GNP as their primary measure of national economic activity. In 1991, the United States began to follow this practice as well. GDP is supposed to measure the volume of production within a country's borders, whereas GNP equals GDP *plus* net receipts of factor income from the rest of the world. For the United States, these net receipts are primarily the income domestic residents earn on wealth they hold in other countries less the payments domestic residents make to foreign owners of wealth that is located in the domestic country.

GDP does not correct, as GNP does, for the portion of countries' production carried out using services provided by foreign-owned capital and labor. Consider an example: The profits of a Spanish factory with British owners are counted in Spain's GDP but are part of Britain's GNP. The services British capital provides in Spain are a service export from Britain; therefore, they are added to British GDP in calculating British GNP. At the same time, to figure Spain's GNP, we must subtract from its GDP the corresponding service import from Britain.

As a practical matter, movements in GDP and GNP usually do not differ greatly. We will focus on GNP in this text, however, because GNP tracks national income more closely than GDP does and national welfare depends more directly on national income than on domestic product.

## National Income Accounting for an Open Economy

In this section, we extend to the case of an open economy, the closed-economy national income accounting framework you may have seen in earlier economics courses. We begin with a discussion of the national income accounts because they highlight the key role of international trade in open-economy macroeconomic theory. Since a closed economy's residents cannot purchase foreign output or sell their own to foreigners, all of national income must be allocated to domestic consumption, investment, or government purchases. In an economy open to international trade, however, the closed-economy version of national income accounting must be modified because some domestic output is exported to foreigners while some domestic income is spent on imported foreign products.

The main lesson of this section concerns the relationship among national saving, investment, and trade imbalances. We will see that in open economies, saving and investment are not necessarily equal, as they are in a closed economy. This occurs because countries can save in the form of foreign wealth by exporting more than they import, and they can *dissave*—that is, reduce their foreign wealth—by exporting less than they import.

### Consumption

The portion of GNP purchased by private households to fulfill current wants is called **consumption**. Purchases of movie tickets, food, dental work, and washing machines all fall into this category. Consumption expenditure is the largest component of GNP in most economies. In the United States, for example, the fraction of GNP devoted to consumption has fluctuated in a range from about 62 to 70 percent over the past 70 years.

### Investment

The part of output used by private firms to produce future output is called **investment**. Investment spending may be viewed as the portion of GNP used to increase the nation's stock of capital. Steel and bricks used to build a factory are part of investment spending,

as are services provided by a technician who helps build business computers. Firms' purchases of inventories are also counted in investment spending because carrying inventories is just another way for firms to transfer output from current use to future use.

Investment is usually more variable than consumption. In the United States, (gross) investment has fluctuated between roughly 11 and 22 percent of GNP in recent years. We often use the word *investment* to describe individual households' purchases of stocks, bonds, or real estate, but you should be careful not to confuse this everyday meaning of the word with the economic definition of investment as a part of GNP. When you buy a share of Microsoft stock, you are buying neither a good nor a service, so your purchase does not show up in GNP.

### Government Purchases

Any goods and services purchased by federal, state, or local governments appear under **government purchases** in the national income accounts. Included in government purchases are federal military spending, government support of cancer research, and government funds spent on highway repair and education. Government purchases include investment as well as consumption purchases. Government transfer payments such as social security and unemployment benefits do not require the recipient to give the government any goods or services in return. Thus, transfer payments are not included in government purchases.

Government purchases currently take up about 18 percent of U.S. GNP, and this share has fallen somewhat since the late 1950s. (The corresponding figure for 1959, for example, was around 22 percent.) In 1929, however, government purchases accounted for only 8.5 percent of U.S. GNP.

### The National Income Identity for an Open Economy

In a closed economy, any final good or service not purchased by households or the government must be used by firms to produce new plant, equipment, and inventories. If consumption goods are not sold immediately to consumers or the government, firms (perhaps reluctantly) add them to existing inventories, thereby increasing their investment.

This information leads to a fundamental identity for closed economies. Let  $Y$  stand for GNP,  $C$  for consumption,  $I$  for investment, and  $G$  for government purchases. Since all of a closed economy's output must be consumed, invested, or bought by the government, we can write

$$Y = C + I + G.$$

We derived the national income identity for a closed economy by assuming all output is consumed or invested by the country's citizens or purchased by its government. When foreign trade is possible, however, some output is purchased by foreigners while some domestic spending goes to purchase goods and services produced abroad. The GNP identity for open economies shows how the national income a country earns by selling its goods and services is divided between sales to domestic residents and sales to foreign residents.

Since residents of an open economy may spend some of their income on imports, that is, goods and services purchased from abroad, only the portion of their spending not devoted to imports is part of domestic GNP. The value of imports, denoted by  $IM$ , must be subtracted from total domestic spending,  $C + I + G$ , to find the portion of domestic spending that generates domestic national income. Imports from abroad add to foreign countries' GNPs but do not add directly to domestic GNP.

Similarly, the goods and services sold to foreigners make up a country's exports. Exports, denoted by  $EX$ , are the amount foreign residents' purchases add to the national income of the domestic economy.

The national income of an open economy is therefore the sum of domestic and foreign expenditures on the goods and services produced by domestic factors of production. Thus, the national income identity for an open economy is

$$Y = C + I + G + EX - IM. \quad (13-1)$$

### An Imaginary Open Economy

To make identity (13-1) concrete, let's consider an imaginary closed economy, Agraria, whose only output is wheat. Each citizen of Agraria is a consumer of wheat, but each is also a farmer and therefore can be viewed as a firm. Farmers invest by putting aside a portion of each year's crop as seed for the next year's planting. There is also a government that appropriates part of the crop to feed the Agrarian army. Agraria's total annual crop is 100 bushels of wheat. Agraria can import milk from the rest of the world in exchange for exports of wheat. We cannot draw up the Agrarian national income accounts without knowing the price of milk in terms of wheat because all the components in the GNP identity (13-1) must be measured in the same units. If we assume the price of milk is 0.5 bushel of wheat per gallon, and that at this price, Agrarians want to consume 40 gallons of milk, then Agraria's imports are equal in value to 20 bushels of wheat.

In Table 13-1, we see that Agraria's total output is 100 bushels of wheat. Consumption is divided between wheat and milk, with 55 bushels of wheat and 40 gallons of milk (equal in value to 20 bushels of wheat) consumed over the year. The value of consumption in terms of wheat is  $55 + (0.5 \times 40) = 55 + 20 = 75$ .

The 100 bushels of wheat produced by Agraria are used as follows: 55 are consumed by domestic residents, 25 are invested, 10 are purchased by the government, and 10 are exported abroad. National income ( $Y = 100$ ) equals domestic spending ( $C + I + G = 110$ ) plus exports ( $EX = 10$ ) less imports ( $IM = 20$ ).

### The Current Account and Foreign Indebtedness

In reality, a country's foreign trade is exactly balanced only rarely. The difference between exports of goods and services and imports of goods and services is known as the **current account balance** (or current account). If we denote the current account by  $CA$ , we can express this definition in symbols as

$$CA = EX - IM.$$

TABLE 13-1

#### National Income Accounts for Agraria, an Open Economy (bushels of wheat)

GNP (total output)	=	Consumption	+	Investment	+	Government purchases	+	Exports	-	Imports
100	=	75 <sup>a</sup>	+	25	+	10	+	10	-	20 <sup>b</sup>

<sup>a</sup>55 bushels of wheat + (0.5 bushel per gallon) × (40 gallons of milk).

<sup>b</sup>0.5 bushel per gallon × 40 gallons of milk.

When a country's imports exceed its exports, we say the country has a *current account deficit*. A country has a *current account surplus* when its exports exceed its imports.<sup>3</sup>

The GNP identity, equation (13-1), shows one reason why the current account is important in international macroeconomics. Since the right-hand side of (13-1) gives total expenditures on domestic output, changes in the current account can be associated with changes in output and, thus, employment.

The current account is also important because it measures the size and direction of international borrowing. When a country imports more than it exports, it is buying more from foreigners than it sells to them and must somehow finance this current account deficit. How does it pay for additional imports once it has spent its export earnings? Since the country as a whole can import more than it exports only if it can borrow the difference from foreigners, a country with a current account deficit must be increasing its net foreign debts by the amount of the deficit. This is currently the position of the United States, which has a significant current account deficit (and borrowed a sum equal to roughly 2.3 percent of its GNP in 2019).<sup>4</sup>

Similarly, a country with a current account surplus is earning more from its exports than it spends on imports. This country finances the current account deficit of its trading partners by lending to them. The foreign wealth of a surplus country rises because foreigners pay for any imports not covered by their exports by issuing IOUs that they will eventually have to redeem. The preceding reasoning shows that *a country's current account balance equals the change in its net foreign wealth*.<sup>5</sup>

We have defined the current account as the difference between exports and imports. Equation (13-1) says that the current account is also equal to the difference between national income and domestic residents' total spending  $C + I + G$ :

$$Y - (C + I + G) = CA.$$

It is only by borrowing abroad that a country can have a current account deficit and use more output than it is currently producing. If it uses less than its output, it has a current account surplus and is lending the surplus to foreigners.<sup>6</sup> International borrowing and lending were identified with *intertemporal trade* in Chapter 6. A country with a current account deficit is importing present consumption and exporting future consumption. A country with a current account surplus is exporting present consumption and importing future consumption.

---

<sup>3</sup>In addition to net exports of goods and services, the current account balance includes net unilateral transfers of income, which we briefly discussed earlier. Following our earlier assumption, we continue to ignore such transfers for now to simplify the discussion. Later in this chapter, when we analyze the U.S. balance of payments in detail, we will see how transfers of current income enter the current account.

<sup>4</sup>Alternatively, a country could finance a current account deficit by using previously accumulated foreign wealth to pay for imports. This country would be running down its net foreign wealth, which has the same effect on overall wealth as running up its net foreign debts.

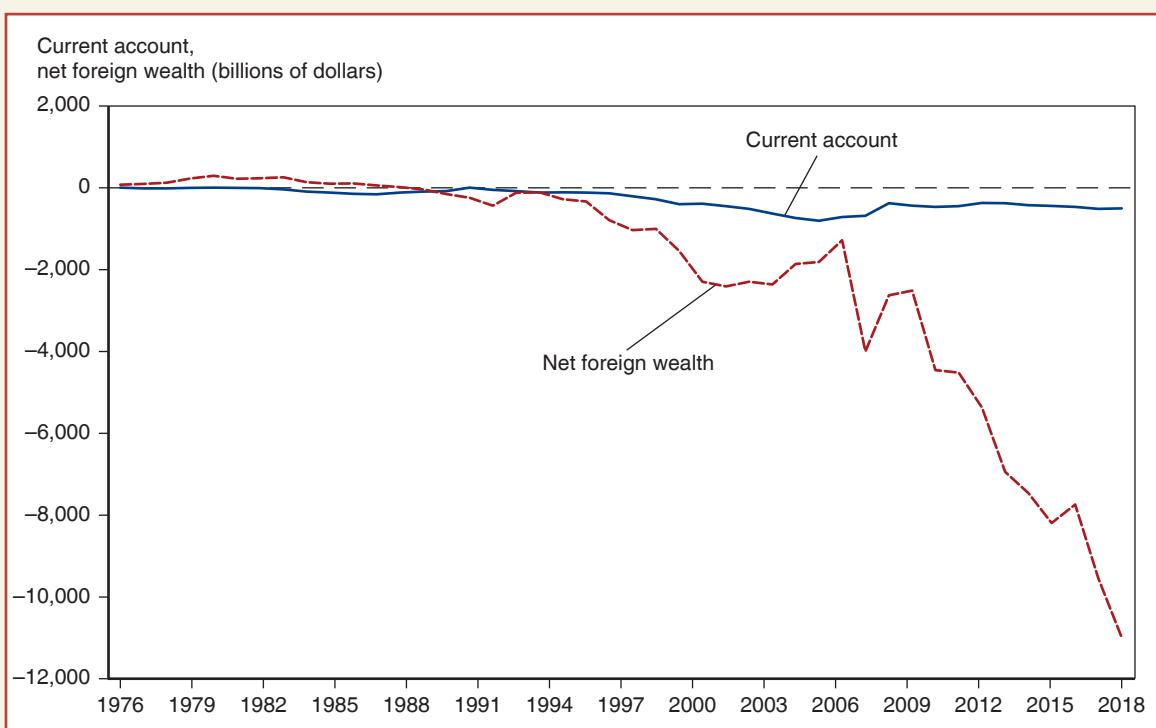
Our discussion here is ignoring the possibility that a country receives *gifts* of foreign assets (or gives such gifts), such as when one country agrees to forgive another's debts. As we will discuss later, such asset transfers (unlike transfers of current income) are not part of the current account, but they nonetheless do affect net foreign wealth. They appear in the *capital account* of the balance of payments.

<sup>5</sup>Alas, this statement is also not exactly correct because there are factors that influence net foreign wealth that are not captured in the national income and product accounts. We will abstract from this fact until this chapter's concluding Case Study.

<sup>6</sup>The sum  $A = C + I + G$  is often called domestic *absorption* in the literature on international macroeconomics. Using this terminology, we can describe the current account surplus as the difference between income and absorption,  $Y - A$ .

As an example, consider again the imaginary economy of Agraria described in Table 13-1. The total value of its consumption, investment, and government purchases, at 110 bushels of wheat, is greater than its output of 100 bushels. This inequality would be impossible in a closed economy; it is possible in this open economy because Agraria now imports 40 gallons of milk, worth 20 bushels of wheat, but exports only 10 bushels of wheat. The current account deficit of 10 bushels is the value of Agraria's borrowing from foreigners, which the country will have to repay in the future.

Figure 13-2 gives a vivid illustration of how a string of current account deficits can add up to a large foreign debt. The figure plots the U.S. current account balance since the late 1970s along with a measure of the nation's stock of net foreign wealth, its **net international investment position** (or *IIP*), the difference between its claims on foreigners and its liabilities to them. As you can see, the United States had accumulated a positive stock of foreign wealth by the early 1980s, after which a sustained current account deficit of proportions unprecedented in the 20th century opened up. In 1989, the country became a net debtor to foreigners for the first time since World War I. That foreign debt has continued to grow, and at the start of 2020, it stood at about 50 percent of GNP.



**FIGURE 13-2**

### The U.S. Current Account and Net International Investment Position, 1976–2019

A string of current account deficits starting in the early 1980s reduced America's net foreign wealth until, by the early 21st century, the country had accumulated a substantial net foreign debt.

**Source:** U.S. Department of Commerce, Bureau of Economic Analysis.

## Saving and the Current Account

Simple as it is, the GNP identity has many illuminating implications. To explain the most important of these implications, we define the concept of **national saving**, that is, the portion of output,  $Y$ , that is not devoted to household consumption,  $C$ , or government purchases,  $G$ .<sup>7</sup> *In a closed economy, national saving always equals investment.* This tells us that the closed economy as a whole can increase its wealth only by accumulating new capital.

Let  $S$  stand for national saving. Our definition of  $S$  tells us that

$$S = Y - C - G.$$

Since the closed-economy GNP identity,  $Y = C + I + G$ , may also be written as  $I = Y - C - G$ , then

$$S = I,$$

and national saving must equal investment in a closed economy.

Whereas in a closed economy, saving and investment must always be equal, in an open economy they can differ. Remembering that national saving,  $S$ , equals  $Y - C - G$  and that  $CA = EX - IM$ , we can rewrite the GNP identity (13-1) as

$$S = I + CA.$$

The equation highlights an important difference between open and closed economies: An open economy can save either by building up its capital stock or by acquiring foreign wealth, but a closed economy can save only by building up its capital stock.

Unlike a closed economy, an open economy with profitable investment opportunities does not have to increase its saving in order to exploit them. The preceding equation shows that it is possible simultaneously to raise investment and foreign borrowing without changing saving. For example, if New Zealand decides to build a new hydroelectric plant, it can import the materials it needs from the United States and borrow American funds to pay for them. This transaction raises New Zealand's domestic investment because the imported materials contribute to expanding the country's capital stock. The transaction also raises New Zealand's current account deficit by an amount equal to the increase in investment. New Zealand's saving does not have to change, even though investment rises. For this to be possible, however, U.S. residents must be willing to save more so that the resources needed to build the plant are freed for New Zealand's use. The result is another example of intertemporal trade, in which New Zealand imports present output (when it borrows from the United States) and exports future output (when it pays off the loan).

Because one country's savings can be borrowed by a second country in order to increase the second country's stock of capital, a country's current account surplus is often referred to as its *net foreign investment*. Of course, when one country lends to another to finance investment, part of the income generated by the investment in future years must be used to pay back the lender. Domestic investment and foreign investment are two different ways in which a country can use current savings to increase its future income.

---

<sup>7</sup>The U.S. national income accounts assume that government purchases do not help to enlarge the nation's capital stock. We follow this convention here by subtracting *all* government purchases from output to calculate national saving. Most other countries' national accounts distinguish between government consumption and government investment (for example, investment by publicly owned enterprises) and include the latter as part of national saving. Often, however, government investment figures include purchases of military equipment.

## Private and Government Saving

So far our discussion of saving has not stressed the distinction between saving decisions made by the private sector and saving decisions made by the government. Unlike private saving decisions, however, government saving decisions are often made with an eye toward their effect on output and employment. The national income identity can help us to analyze the channels through which government saving decisions influence domestic macroeconomic conditions. To use the national income identity in this way, we first have to divide national saving into its private and government components.

**Private saving** is defined as the part of disposable income that is saved rather than consumed. Disposable income is national income,  $Y$ , less the net taxes collected from households and firms by the government,  $T$ .<sup>8</sup> Private saving, denoted  $S^p$ , can therefore be expressed as

$$S^p = Y - T - C.$$

**Government saving** is defined similarly to private saving. The government's "income" is its net tax revenue,  $T$ , while its "consumption" is government purchases,  $G$ . If we let  $S^g$  stand for government saving, then

$$S^g = T - G.$$

The two types of saving we have defined, private and government, add up to national saving. To see why, recall the definition of national saving,  $S$ , as  $Y - C - G$ . Then

$$S = Y - C - G = (Y - T - C) + (T - G) = S^p + S^g.$$

We can use the definitions of private and government saving to rewrite the national income identity in a form that is useful for analyzing the effects of government saving decisions on open economies. Because  $S = S^p + S^g = I + CA$ ,

$$S^p = I + CA - S^g = I + CA - (T - G) = I + CA + (G - T). \quad (13-2)$$

Equation (13-2) relates private saving to domestic investment, the current account surplus, and government saving. To interpret equation (13-2), we define the **government budget deficit** as  $G - T$ , that is, as government saving preceded by a minus sign. The government budget deficit measures the extent to which the government is borrowing to finance its expenditures. Equation (13-2) then states that a country's private saving can take three forms: investment in domestic capital ( $I$ ), purchases of wealth from foreigners ( $CA$ ), and purchases of the domestic government's newly issued debt ( $G - T$ ).<sup>9</sup>

### THE MYSTERY OF THE MISSING DEFICIT

Because each country's exports are other countries' imports, the world's current account balances must add up to zero. But they don't. The accompanying figure shows the pattern in the data. In all but one year between 1980 and 2003, the sum of global current accounts was negative,

implying either that surpluses were understated or that deficits were overstated. But in 2004, the "mystery of the missing surplus" became a "mystery of the missing deficit." Since that year, the measured global current account has been positive.

<sup>8</sup>Net taxes are taxes less government transfer payments. The term *government* refers to the federal, state, and local governments considered as a single unit.

<sup>9</sup>In a closed economy, the current account is always zero, so equation (13-2) is simply  $S^p = I + (G - T)$ .

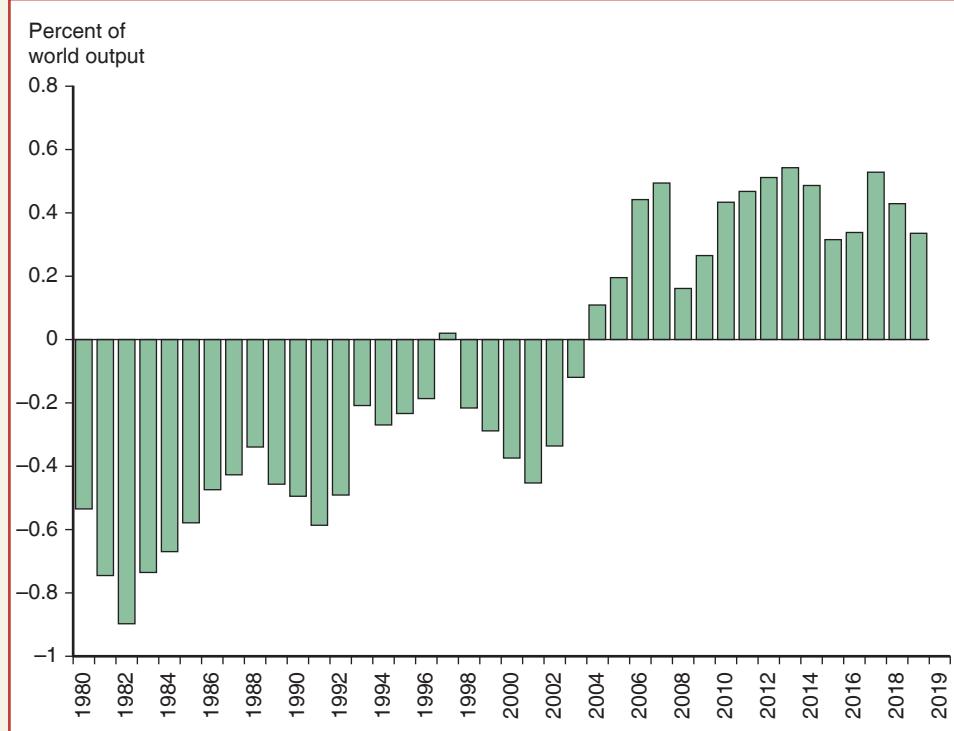
Given the inevitable errors in collecting detailed international payments data from many national agencies with differing accuracy and coverage, some discrepancy is unavoidable. What is puzzling is that the global discrepancy should be *persistently* positive or negative. That pattern suggests that something systematic is going on.

When the global current account balance was negative, it was thought that a big contributing factor was incomplete reporting of international investment income. For example, banks report these to their home governments, but the recipients, some of whom wish to avoid taxes, may not report them at the receiving end.

Not only have tax authorities become better at enforcing compliance, however, the general level of interest rates is now lower than it was in the

1980s and 1990s. Better measurement of international investment income could be responsible for a shrinking negative world current account. But what could have made it turn positive?

One possible culprit is growing international trade in services. For example, a big law firm is likely to report its service exports fairly accurately, but the purchases by many of its smaller customers may escape detection. In a detailed review of the question in 2011, however, *The Economist* magazine pointed out that errors in measuring merchandise trade have also risen dramatically, and it is less clear that these would create a systematic bias toward an apparent global surplus.<sup>10</sup> The mystery remains a mystery. In 2019, it was worth \$290 billion, or about a third of a percent of world output.



### The Global Current Account Discrepancy since 1980

Once big and negative, implying missing current account credits, the world's current account balance has become big and positive, implying missing current account debits.

**Source:** International Monetary Fund, *World Economic Outlook* database, October 2019.

<sup>10</sup>See "Economics Focus: Exports to Mars," *The Economist*, November 12, 2011, at <http://www.economist.com/node/21538100>.

## The Balance of Payments Accounts

In addition to national income accounts, government economists and statisticians also keep balance of payments accounts, a detailed record of the composition of the current account balance and of the many transactions that finance it.<sup>11</sup> Balance of payments figures are of great interest to the general public, as indicated by the attention that various news media pay to them. But press reports sometimes confuse different measures of international payments flows. Should we be alarmed or cheered by a *Wall Street Journal* headline proclaiming, “U.S. Chalks Up Record Balance of Payments Deficit”? A thorough understanding of balance of payments accounting will help us evaluate the implications of a country’s international transactions.

A country’s balance of payments accounts keep track of both its payments to and its receipts from foreigners. Any transaction resulting in a receipt from foreigners appears in the balance of payments accounts as a *credit*. Any transaction resulting in a payment to foreigners appears as a *debit*. Three types of international transaction are recorded in the balance of payments:

1. Transactions that arise from the export or import of goods or services and therefore enter directly into the current account. When a French consumer imports American blue jeans, for example, the transaction enters the U.S. balance of payments accounts as a credit on the current account. On the other hand, American imports of French cheese enter the U.S. balance of payments as a debit. A positive current account balance means that current account credits exceed debits and that a country’s residents are exporting more goods and services to foreign residents than they are importing from them.
2. Transactions that arise from the purchase or sale of financial assets. An **asset** is any one of the forms in which people hold wealth, such as money, stocks, factories, or government debt. The **financial account** of the balance of payments records all international purchases and sales of financial assets. When an American company buys a French factory, the transaction enters the U.S. balance of payments as a debit. It enters as a debit because the transaction requires a payment from the United States to foreigners. Correspondingly, a U.S. sale of assets to foreigners enters the U.S. balance of payments as a credit. Balance of payments statistics present the financial account as debits less credits, that is, as the difference between a country’s purchases and sales of foreign assets. Balance of payments accountants sometimes refer to this *financial account balance* alternatively as *net financial flows*. It is positive when, on net, a country’s residents are accumulating claims on foreign residents, that is, buying more financial assets from foreign residents than are being sold to them.
3. Certain other activities resulting in transfers of wealth between countries appear in the **capital account**. These international asset movements—which are generally very small for the United States—differ from those listed in the financial account.

---

<sup>11</sup>The U.S. Bureau of Economic Analysis (BEA) has changed its balance of payments presentation to conform to prevailing international standards, so our discussion in this chapter differs in some respects from that in earlier editions of this book. We follow the new methodology described by Kristy L. Howell and Robert E. Yuska, “Modernizing and Enhancing BEA’s International Economic Accounts: Recent Progress and Future Directions,” *Survey of Current Business* (May 2010), pp. 6–20. The BEA completed the full transition to the new system in June 2014. For an update, see Jeffrey R. Bogen, Mai-Chi Hoang, Kristy L. Howell, and Erin M. Whitaker, “Comprehensive Restructuring and Annual Revision of the U.S. International Transactions Accounts,” *Survey of Current Business* (July 2014), pp. 1–24.

For the most part, they result from nonmarket activities or represent the acquisition or disposal of nonproduced, nonfinancial, and possibly intangible assets (such as copyrights and trademarks). For example, if the U.S. government forgives \$1 billion in debt owed to it by the government of Pakistan, U.S. wealth declines by \$1 billion and a \$1 billion debit is recorded in the U.S. capital account.

You will find the complexities of the balance of payments accounts less confusing if you keep in mind the following simple rule of double-entry bookkeeping: *Every international transaction automatically enters the balance of payments twice, once as a credit and once as a debit.* This principle of balance of payments accounting holds true because every transaction has two sides: If you buy something from a foreigner, you must pay him in some way, and the foreigner must then somehow spend or store your payment.

### Examples of Paired Transactions

Some examples will show how the principle of double-entry bookkeeping operates in practice.

- Imagine you buy an ink-jet fax machine from the Italian company Olivetti and pay for your purchase with a \$1,000 check. Your payment to buy a good (the fax machine) from a foreign resident enters the U.S. current account as a debit. But where is the offsetting balance of payments credit? Olivetti's U.S. salesperson must do something with your check—let's say he deposits it in Olivetti's account at Citibank in New York. In this case, Olivetti has purchased, and Citibank has sold, a U.S. asset—a bank deposit worth \$1,000—and the transaction shows up as a \$1,000 credit in the U.S. financial account. The transaction creates the following two offsetting bookkeeping entries in the U.S. balance of payments:

	Credit	Debit
Fax machine purchase (Current account, U.S. good import)		\$1,000
Sale of bank deposit by Citibank (Financial account, U.S. asset sale)	\$1,000	

- As another example, suppose that during your travels in France, you pay \$200 for a fine dinner at the Restaurant de l'Escargot d'Or. Lacking cash, you place the charge on your Visa credit card. Your payment, which is a tourist expenditure, counts as a service import for the United States and therefore as a current account debit. Where is the offsetting credit? Your signature on the Visa slip entitles the restaurant to receive \$200 (actually, its local currency equivalent) from First Card, the company that issued your Visa card. It is therefore an asset, a claim on a future payment from First Card. So when you pay for your meal abroad with your credit card, you are selling an asset to France and generating a \$200 credit in the U.S. financial account. The pattern of offsetting debits and credits in this case is:

	Credit	Debit
Meal purchase (Current account, U.S. service import)		\$200
Sale of claim on First Card (Financial account, U.S. asset sale)	\$200	

3. Imagine next that your Uncle Sid from Los Angeles buys a newly issued share of stock in the U.K. oil giant British Petroleum (BP). He places his order with his U.S. stockbroker, Go-for-Broke, Inc., paying \$95 with funds from his Go-for-Broke money market account. BP, in turn, deposits the \$95 Sid has paid into its own U.S. bank account at Second Bank of Chicago. Uncle Sid's acquisition of the stock creates a \$95 debit in the U.S. financial account (he has purchased an asset from a foreign resident, BP), while BP's \$95 deposit at its Chicago bank is the offsetting financial account credit (BP has expanded its U.S. asset holdings). The mirror-image effects on the U.S. balance of payments therefore both appear in the financial account:

	Credit	Debit
Uncle Sid's purchase of a share of BP (Financial account, U.S. asset purchase)		\$95
BP's deposit of Uncle Sid's payment at Second Bank of Chicago (Financial account, U.S. asset sale)		\$95

4. Finally, let's consider how the U.S. balance of payments accounts are affected when U.S. banks forgive (that is, announce that they will simply forget about) \$5,000 in debt owed to them by the government of the imaginary country of Bygonia. In this case, the United States makes a \$5,000 capital transfer to Bygonia, which appears as a \$5,000 debit entry in the capital account. The associated credit is in the financial account, in the form of a \$5,000 reduction in U.S. assets held abroad (a negative "acquisition" of foreign assets and therefore a balance of payments credit):

	Credit	Debit
U.S. banks' debt forgiveness (Capital account, U.S. transfer payment)		\$5,000
Reduction in banks' claims on Bygonia (Financial account, U.S. asset sale)		\$5,000

These examples show that many circumstances can affect the way a transaction generates its offsetting balance of payments entry. We can never predict with certainty where the flip side of a particular transaction will show up, but we can be sure that it will show up somewhere.

### The Fundamental Balance of Payments Identity

Because any international transaction automatically gives rise to offsetting credit and debit entries in the balance of payments, the sum of the current account balance and the capital account balance automatically equals the financial account balance:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Current account balance} + \text{capital account balance} \\ = \text{Financial account balance} \end{aligned} \tag{13-3}$$

In examples 1, 2, and 4 previously, current or capital account entries have offsetting counterparts in the financial account, while in example 3, two financial account entries offset each other. Double-entry bookkeeping tells us that a country's total receipts from foreigners must match its total payments to them. Therefore, total balance of payments credits must equal total balance of payments debits. Equation (13-3) merely rearranges that identity by gathering current (and capital) credits less debits on the left-hand side and financial debits less credits on the right-hand side.

You can understand this identity another way. Recall the relationship linking the current account to international lending and borrowing. Because the sum of the current and capital accounts is the total change in a country's net foreign assets (including, through the capital account, nonmarket asset transfers), that sum necessarily equals the difference between a country's purchases of assets from foreigners and its sales of assets to them—that is, the financial account balance.

We now turn to a more detailed description of the balance of payments accounts, using as an example the U.S. accounts for 2019.

### The Current Account, Once Again

As you have learned, the current account balance measures a country's net exports of goods and services. In practice, it also includes any net unilateral transfer payments it receives from abroad (an item we have largely ignored until now). Table 13-2 shows that U.S. exports (on the credit side) were \$3,805.94 billion in 2019, while U.S. imports (on the debit side) were \$4,286.16 billion (inclusive of unilateral transfers).

The balance of payments accounts divide exports and imports into three finer categories. The first is *goods* trade, that is, exports or imports of merchandise. The second category, *services*, includes items such as payments for legal assistance, tourists' expenditures, and shipping fees. The final category, *primary income*, consists mostly of international interest and dividend payments and the earnings of domestically owned firms operating abroad. If you own a share of a German firm's stock and receive a dividend payment of \$5, then that payment shows up in the accounts as a U.S. investment income receipt of \$5. Wages that workers earn from foreign employers can also enter as primary income.

We include income on foreign investments in the current account because that income really is compensation for the *services* provided by foreign investments. This idea, as we saw earlier, is behind the distinction between GNP and GDP. When a U.S. corporation builds a plant in Canada, for instance, the productive services the plant generates are viewed as a service export from the United States to Canada equal in value to the profits the plant yields for its American owner. To be consistent, we must be sure to include these profits in American GNP and not in Canadian GNP. Remember, the definition of GNP refers to goods and services generated by a country's factors of production, but it does *not* specify that those factors must work within the borders of the country that owns them. Before calculating the current account, we must also account for unilateral transfers, shown in the table as *secondary income*. In discussing the relationship between GNP and national income, we defined unilateral transfers between countries as international gifts, that is, payments that do not correspond to the purchase of any good, service, or asset. Net unilateral transfers are considered part of the current account as well as a part of national income, and the identity  $Y = C + I + G + CA$  holds exactly if  $Y$  is interpreted as GNP plus net transfers (equal to GNI). In 2019, the U.S. balance of unilateral transfers was \$141.98 billion – \$281.69 billion = -\$139.71 billion.

The table shows a 2019 current account balance of \$3,805.94 billion – \$4,286.16 billion = -\$480.22 billion, a deficit. The negative sign means that current

**TABLE 13-2 U.S. Balance of Payments Accounts for 2019 (billions of dollars)**

<b>Current Account</b>	
(1) Exports and current transfer receipts	<b>3,805.94</b>
Of which:	
Goods	1,652.44
Services	875.83
Income receipts (primary income)	1,135.69
Current transfer receipts (secondary income)	141.98
(2) Imports and current transfer payments	<b>4,286.16</b>
Of which:	
Goods	2,516.77
Services	588.36
Income payments (primary income)	899.35
Current transfer payments (secondary income)	281.69
<i>Balance on current account</i>	<b>-480.22</b>
<i>[(1) - (2)]</i>	
<b>Capital Account</b>	
(3)	-6.24
<b>Financial Account</b>	
(4) Net U.S. acquisition of financial assets, excluding financial derivatives	<b>440.75</b>
Of which:	
Official reserve assets	4.66
Other assets	436.09
(5) Net U.S. incurrence of liabilities, excluding financial derivatives	<b>797.96</b>
Of which:	
Official reserve liabilities	61.63
Other liabilities	736.33
(6) Financial derivatives other than reserves, net	-38.34
<i>Net financial flows</i>	-395.54
<i>[(4) - (5) + (6)]</i>	
<b>Statistical Discrepancy</b>	
<i>[Net financial flows less sum of current and capital accounts]</i>	<b>90.92</b>

**Source:** U.S. Department of Commerce, Bureau of Economic Analysis, June 19, 2020, release. Totals may differ from sums because of rounding.

payments to foreigners exceeded current receipts and that U.S. residents used more output than they produced. Since these current account transactions were paid for in some way, we know that this \$480.22 billion net debit entry must be offset by a net \$480.22 billion credit elsewhere in the balance of payments.

### The Capital Account

The capital account entry in Table 13-2 shows that in 2019, the United States paid foreign residents about \$6 billion in net capital transfers. The net balance of -\$6.24 billion is a balance of payments debit. After we add it to the payments deficit implied by the current account, we find that the United States' need to cover its excess payments to foreigners is increased very slightly, from \$480.22 billion to \$486.46 billion.

Because an excess of national spending over income must be covered by net borrowing from foreigners, this negative current plus capital account balance must be matched by an equal negative balance of net financial flows, representing the net liabilities the United States incurred to foreigners in 2019 in order to fund its deficit.

### The Financial Account

While the current account is the difference between sales of goods and services to foreigners and purchases of goods and services from them, the financial account measures the difference between acquisitions of assets from foreigners and the buildup of liabilities to them. When the United States borrows \$1 from foreigners, it is selling them an asset—a promise that they will be repaid \$1, with interest, in the future. Likewise, when the United States lends abroad, it acquires an asset: the right to claim future repayment from foreigners. An excess of asset sales (foreign borrowing) over asset purchases is required to finance an excess of imports over exports.

To cover its 2019 current plus capital account deficit of \$486.46 billion, the United States needed to borrow from foreigners (or otherwise sell assets to them) in the net amount of \$486.46 billion. We can look again at Table 13-2 to see exactly how this net sale of assets to foreigners came about.

The table records separately net U.S. acquisitions of foreign financial assets (which are balance of payments debits because the United States must pay foreigners for those assets) and net increases in foreign claims on residents of the United States (which are balance of payments credits because the United States receives payments when it sells assets overseas).

These data on increases in U.S. asset holdings abroad and foreign holdings of U.S. assets do not include holdings of *financial derivatives*, which are a class of assets that are more complicated than ordinary stocks and bonds, but have values that can depend on stock and bond values. (We will describe some specific derivative securities in the next chapter.) Starting in 2006, the U.S. Department of Commerce was able to assemble data on *net* cross-border derivative flows for the United States (U.S. net purchases of foreign-issued derivatives less foreign net purchases of U.S.-issued derivatives). Derivatives transactions enter the balance of payments accounts in the same way as other international asset transactions do.

According to Table 13-2, U.S.-owned assets abroad (other than derivatives) increased (on a net basis) by \$440.75 billion in 2019. The figure is “on a net basis” because some U.S. residents bought foreign assets while others sold foreign assets they already owned, the difference between U.S. gross purchases and sales of foreign assets being \$440.75 billion. In the same year (again on a net basis), the United States incurred new liabilities to foreigners equal to \$797.96 billion. Some U.S. residents undoubtedly repaid prior foreign debts, but new borrowing from foreigners exceeded these repayments by \$797.96 billion. The balance of U.S. purchases and sales of financial derivatives was -\$38.34 billion. The United States acquired derivative claims on foreigners that were lower in value than the derivative claims on the U.S. that foreigners acquired. We calculate the balance on financial account (net financial flows) as  $\$440.75 \text{ billion} - \$797.96 \text{ billion} - \$38.34 \text{ billion} = -\$395.54 \text{ billion}$  (apart from rounding). The negative value for net financial flows means that in 2019, the United States increased its net liability to foreigners (liabilities minus assets) by \$395.54 billion.

### Statistical Discrepancy

We come out with net financial flows of -\$395.54 rather than the -\$486.46 billion that we would have expected as a result of adding up the current and capital account balances. According to our data on trade and financial flows, the United States incurred

\$90.92 billion less in foreign debt than it actually needed to fund its current plus capital account deficit—because \$486.46 billion (measured required borrowing) less \$395.54 billion (measured actual borrowing) equals \$90.92 billion. If every balance of payments credit automatically generates an equal counterpart debit and vice versa, how is this difference possible? The reason is that information about the offsetting debit and credit items associated with a given transaction may come from different sources. For example, the import debit that a shipment of flat-screen TVs from Korea generates may come from a U.S. customs inspector's report and the corresponding financial account credit from a report by the U.S. bank in which the check paying for the TVs is deposited. Because data from different sources may differ in coverage, accuracy, and timing, the balance of payments accounts seldom balance in practice as they must in theory. Account keepers force the two sides to balance by adding to the accounts a *statistical discrepancy* item. For 2019, unrecorded (or misrecorded) international transactions generated a balancing accounting credit of \$90.92 billion—the difference between the recorded net financial flows and the sum of the recorded current and capital accounts.

We have no way of knowing exactly how to allocate this discrepancy among the current, capital, and financial accounts. (If we did, it wouldn't be a discrepancy!) The financial account is the most likely culprit, since it is notoriously difficult to keep track of the complicated financial trades between residents of different countries. But we cannot conclude that net financial flows were \$90.92 billion lower than recorded because the current account is also highly suspect. Balance of payments accountants consider merchandise trade data relatively reliable, but data on services are not. Service transactions such as sales of financial advice and computer programming assistance may escape detection. Accurate measurement of international interest and dividend receipts can be particularly difficult.

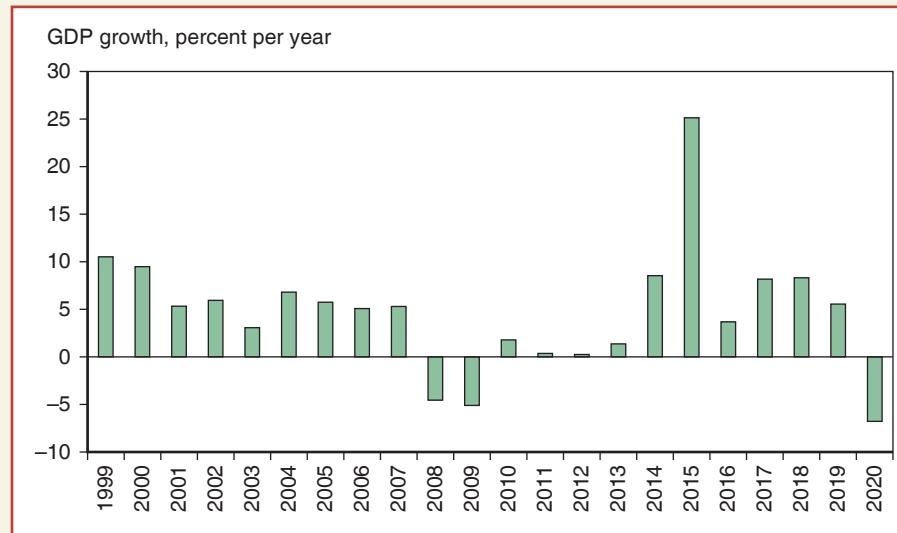
## MULTINATIONALS' PROFIT SHIFTING AND IRELAND'S VOLATILE GDP

**O**n July 12, 2016, Ireland's Central Statistics Office (CSO) made a shocking announcement: Ireland's real GDP had risen by a whopping 26.3 percent between 2014 and 2015, far above the previous estimate of 7.8 percent. The CSO offered a strikingly unilluminating comment: "The present release is based on more complete and up to date data than that which was available when the Q4 2015 estimates were published in March 2016." The following chart showing the behavior of Irish GDP since 1999 makes clear what an outlier 2015 was. (The growth rate for the year was revised down to "only" 25.1 percent in light of further data.)

What explains this remarkable spurt of growth? Was there a sudden upsurge in Ireland's available supplies of factories, land, and labor? In fact, no massive increase in factors of production had

occurred—for example, no correspondingly large employment effects appear in the data. Instead, the increase in GDP was in large part an accounting phenomenon reflecting tax avoidance strategies by large multinationals from other countries. The outsized effect on the small Irish economy illustrates both the way in which GDP is calculated and its shortcomings as a measure of economic welfare.

Ireland has a statutory tax on corporate profits of 12.5 percent, and in practice some companies incorporated there may pay even lower rates. In comparison, the U.S. corporate tax rate (not including state taxes) has been 21 percent since its last reduction in December 2017. This discrepancy sets up an incentive for large multinationals, notably in fields such as high tech and pharma, to relocate their intellectual property (IP) assets to subsidiaries in Ireland (and other low-tax



### Real GDP Growth in Ireland since 1999

The huge jump in Ireland's 2015 real GDP was mostly an artifact of creative accounting.

**Source:** International Monetary Fund, *World Economic Outlook* database, April 2020. Data point for 2020 is a projection.

havens including Luxembourg and Bermuda) so that global profits are booked and taxed there and not at home.

Intellectual property is “intangible capital,” and therefore easy to move, but it is capital nonetheless, typically reflecting a history of investment in research and development. When a U.S. company transfers IP to an Irish subsidiary, for example, Ireland’s foreign liabilities rise by the value of the IP (however that is determined), its capital stock rises in value by the same amount, and the profits attributable to the IP capital immediately begin flowing into Irish rather than U.S. GDP. Such “foreign direct investment” in the Irish economy helped fuel its 2015 GDP surge. Of course, this type of inward investment may do little to raise production by Irish factories, farms, or workers, although it is likely to enhance the tax revenues of the Irish state while reducing (by far more) those of the United States.

All advanced countries face the problem of multinational profit shifting, which distorts the

burden of funding government services away from corporations and toward households. The problem seems particularly acute for the United States, however, given that it is home to IP intensive tech giants such as Apple, Google, and Microsoft. Recent estimates suggest that U.S. multinationals shift roughly 60 percent of their total annual profits to low-tax jurisdictions, whereas the *global* average profit share that multinationals shift from their home countries is about 40 percent.<sup>12</sup> Governments can solve this problem only through substantial coordination of tax policies as well as detailed information sharing. Efforts to date had only limited success until 2021, when the United States (under President Joseph R. Biden, Jr.) and other large economies agreed to establish a common minimum corporate tax rate of 15 percent. Although that agreement was a major breakthrough, implementation faces political as well as technical obstacles. As of this writing, it remains to be seen if they can be overcome.

<sup>12</sup>See the book by Saez and Zucman in Further Readings.

## Official Reserve Transactions

Although there are many types of financial account transactions, one type is important enough to merit separate discussion. This type of transaction is the purchase or sale of official reserve assets by central banks.

An economy's **central bank** is the institution responsible for managing the supply of money. In the United States, the central bank is the Federal Reserve System. **Official international reserves** are foreign assets held by central banks as a cushion against national economic misfortune. At one time, official reserves consisted largely of gold, but today, central banks' reserves include substantial foreign financial assets, particularly U.S. dollar assets such as Treasury bills. The Federal Reserve itself holds only a small level of official reserve assets other than gold; its own holdings of U.S. dollar assets are not considered international reserves.

Central banks often buy or sell international reserves in private asset markets to affect macroeconomic conditions in their economies. Official transactions of this type are called **official foreign exchange intervention**. One reason why foreign exchange intervention can alter macroeconomic conditions is that it is a way for the central bank to inject money into the economy or withdraw it from circulation. We will have much more to say later about the causes and consequences of foreign exchange intervention.

Government agencies other than central banks may hold foreign reserves and intervene officially in exchange markets. The U.S. Treasury, for example, operates an Exchange Stabilization Fund that at times has played an active role in market trading. Because the operations of such agencies usually have no noticeable impact on the money supply, however, we will simplify our discussion by speaking (when it is not too misleading) as if the central bank alone holds foreign reserves and intervenes.

When a central bank purchases or sells a foreign asset, the transaction appears in its country's financial account just as if the same transaction had been carried out by a private citizen. A transaction in which the central bank of Japan (the Bank of Japan) acquires dollar assets might occur as follows: A U.S. auto dealer imports a Nissan sedan from Japan and pays the auto company with a check for \$20,000. Nissan does not want to invest the money in dollar assets, but it so happens that the Bank of Japan is willing to give Nissan Japanese money in exchange for the \$20,000 check. The Bank of Japan's international reserves rise by \$20,000 as a result of the deal. Because the Bank of Japan's dollar reserves are part of total Japanese assets held in the United States, the latter rise by \$20,000. This transaction therefore results in a \$20,000 credit in the U.S. financial account, the other side of the \$20,000 debit in the U.S. current account due to the import of the car.<sup>13</sup>

Table 13-2 shows that in 2019, U.S. official reserve assets rose by \$4.66 billion. As also shown in the table, foreign central banks bought \$61.63 billion in additional U.S. dollar reserves. The net increase in U.S. official reserves *less* the increase in foreign official reserve claims on the United States is the level of net central bank financial flows, which stood at \$4.66 billion  $- \$61.63 \text{ billion} = -\$56.97 \text{ billion}$  in 2019.

You can think of this  $-\$56.97 \text{ billion}$  net central bank financial flow as measuring the degree to which monetary authorities in the United States and abroad generated additional net U.S. liabilities to foreigners—which help to finance the U.S. current account deficit when the number is negative, but increase the need for private foreign financing when it is positive. In our prior example the Bank of Japan, by acquiring a \$20,000 U.S. bank deposit, indirectly finances an American import of a \$20,000 Japanese car. The level of net central bank financial flows is called the **official settlements balance** or

<sup>13</sup>To test your understanding, see if you can explain why the same sequence of actions causes a \$20,000 improvement in Japan's current account and a \$20,000 increase in its net financial flows.

(in less formal usage) the **balance of payments**. This balance is the sum of the current account and capital account balances, less the nonreserve portion of the financial account balance, and it indicates the role of central banks' official reserve transactions in offsetting the current account balance. Thus, the U.S. balance of payments in 2019 was -\$56.97 billion.

The balance of payments played an important historical role as a measure of disequilibrium in international payments, and for many countries it still plays this role. A negative balance of payments (a deficit) may signal a crisis, for it means that a country is running down its international reserve assets or incurring debts to foreign monetary authorities. If a country faces the risk of being suddenly cut off from foreign loans, it will want to maintain a "war chest" of international reserves as a precaution. Many developing countries, in particular, are in this position (see Chapter 22).

Like any summary measure, however, the balance of payments must be interpreted with caution. To return to our running example, the Bank of Japan's decision to expand its U.S. bank deposit holdings by \$20,000 swells the measured U.S. balance of payments deficit by the same amount. Suppose the Bank of Japan instead places its \$20,000 with Barclays Bank in London, which in turn deposits the money with Citibank in New York. The United States incurs an extra \$20,000 in liabilities to *private* foreigners in this case, and the U.S. balance of payments deficit does not rise. But this "improvement" in the balance of payments is of little economic importance: It makes no real difference to the United States whether it borrows the Bank of Japan's money directly or through a London bank.

## CASE STUDY

### The Assets and Liabilities of the World's Biggest Debtor

We saw earlier that the current account balance measures the flow of new net claims on foreign wealth that a country acquires by exporting more goods and services than it imports. This flow is not, however, the only important factor that causes a country's net foreign wealth to change. In addition, changes in the market price of wealth previously acquired can alter a country's net foreign wealth. When Japan's stock market lost three-quarters of its value over the 1990s, for example, American and European owners of Japanese shares saw the value of their claims on Japan plummet, and Japan's net *foreign* wealth increased as a result. Exchange rate changes have a similar effect. When the dollar depreciates against foreign currencies, for example, foreigners who hold dollar assets see their wealth fall when measured in their home currencies.

The Bureau of Economic Analysis (BEA) of the U.S. Department of Commerce, which oversees the vast job of data collection behind the U.S. national income and balance of payments statistics, reports annual estimates of the net international investment position of the United States—the country's foreign assets less its foreign liabilities. Because asset price and exchange rate changes alter the dollar values of foreign assets and liabilities alike, the BEA must adjust the values of existing claims to reflect such capital gains and losses in order to estimate U.S. net foreign wealth. These estimates show that at the end of 2019, the United States had a *negative* net foreign wealth position far greater than that of any other country.

Until 1991, foreign direct investments such as foreign factories owned by U.S. corporations were valued at their historical, that is, original, purchase prices. Now the BEA uses two different methods to place current values on foreign direct investments: the *current cost* method, which values direct investments at the cost

of buying them today, and the *market value* method, which is meant to measure the price at which the investments could be sold. These methods can lead to different valuations because the cost of replacing a particular direct investment and the price it would command if sold on the market may be hard to measure. (The net foreign wealth data graphed in Figure 13-2 are current cost estimates, which are believed to be more accurate.)

Table 13-3 reproduces the BEA's account of how it made its valuation adjustments to find the U.S. net IIP at the end of 2019. This "headline" estimate values direct investments at current cost. Starting with its estimate of 2018 net foreign wealth ( $-\$9,674.4$  billion), the BEA added the amount of the 2019 U.S. net financial flow of  $-\$395.5$  billion—recall the figure reported in Table 13-2. Then the BEA adjusted the values of previously held assets and liabilities for various changes in their dollar prices. As a result of these valuation changes, U.S. net foreign wealth fell by an amount greater than the  $\$395.5$  billion in new net borrowing from foreigners—in fact, U.S. net foreign wealth declined by  $\$1,376.1$  billion. The BEA's 2019 estimate of U.S. net foreign wealth, therefore, was  $-\$11,050.5$  billion, roughly half of U.S. GDP.

Changes in exchange rates and securities prices have the potential to change the U.S. net foreign debt sharply, however, because the *gross* foreign assets and liabilities of the United States have become so large in recent years. Figure 13-3 illustrates this dramatic trend. In 1976, U.S. foreign assets stood at only 20 percent of U.S. GDP and liabilities at 15 percent (making the United States a net foreign creditor in the amount of roughly 5 percent of its GDP). In 2019, however, the country's foreign assets amounted to roughly 137 percent of GDP and its liabilities to roughly 188 percent. The tremendous growth in these stocks of wealth reflects the rapid globalization of financial markets in the late 20th century, a phenomenon we will discuss further in Chapter 20.

Think about how gross wealth positions of this magnitude amplify the effects of exchange rate changes, however. Suppose 70 percent of U.S. foreign assets are denominated in foreign currencies, but all U.S. liabilities to foreigners are denominated in dollars (these are approximately the correct numbers). Because in 2019

TABLE 13-3

**Change in the Yearend U.S. Net International Investment Position  
(billions of dollars)**

Line	Type of investment	Yearend position, 2018 <sup>r</sup>	Total	Change in position in 2019					Yearend position, 2019 <sup>r</sup>	
				Financial transactions	Attributable to:					
					Total	Price changes	Exchange rate changes <sup>1</sup>	Changes in volume and valuation n.i.e. <sup>2</sup>		
1	U.S. net international investment position (line 4 less line 36)	<b>-9,674.4</b>	<b>-1,376.1</b>	-395.5	<b>-980.5</b>	(4)	(4)	(4)	<b>-11,050.5</b>	
2	Net international investment position excluding financial derivatives (line 5 less line 37)	-9,716.5	-1,354.2	-357.2	-997.0	-1,104.9	119.5	-11.5	-11,070.7	
3	Financial derivatives other than reserves, net (line 6 less line 38)	42.0	-21.9	-38.3	16.4	(4)	(4)	(4)	20.2	
4	<b>U.S. assets</b>	<b>25,233.8</b>	<b>3,919.0</b>	(3)	(3)	(3)	(3)	(3)	<b>29,152.8</b>	



Line	Type of investment	Yearend position, 2018 <sup>r</sup>	Total	Change in position in 2019				Yearend position, 2019 <sup>r</sup>	
				Financial transactions	Attributable to:				
					Total	Price changes	Exchange rate changes <sup>1</sup>		
<b>By functional category:</b>									
39	Direct investment at market value	8,401.7	2,145.4	351.6	1,793.8	1,743.2	.....	50.5	
40	Equity	6,725.5	2,038.7	290.3	1,748.4	1,743.2	.....	5.2	
41	Debt instruments	1,676.2	106.7	61.3	45.4	.....	.....	45.4	
42	Portfolio investment	18,844.2	2,545.6	180.0	2,365.6	2,441.8	9.1	-85.3	
43	Equity and investment fund shares	7,539.2	1,681.0	-244.1	1,925.1	1,944.3	.....	-19.3	
44	Debt securities	11,304.9	864.6	424.0	440.6	497.5	9.1	-66.0	
45	Short term	982.2	-44.9	-43.2	-1.8	.....	-1.8	0.0	
46	Treasury bills and certificates	746.7	-40.4	-40.4	0.0	.....	.....	0.0	
47	Other short-term securities	235.5	-4.5	-2.7	-1.8	.....	-1.8	0.0	
48	Long term	10,322.7	909.5	467.2	442.3	497.5	10.9	-66.0	
49	Treasury bonds and notes	5,523.5	461.1	266.1	195.0	198.6	.....	-3.6	
50	Other long-term securities	4,799.3	448.4	201.1	247.3	298.9	10.9	-62.4	
51	Financial derivatives other than reserves, gross negative fair value	1,407.5	362.7	( <sup>3</sup> )	( <sup>3</sup> )	( <sup>3</sup> )	( <sup>3</sup> )	( <sup>3</sup> )	
52	Over-the-counter contracts	1,366.2	371.8	( <sup>3</sup> )	( <sup>3</sup> )	( <sup>3</sup> )	( <sup>3</sup> )	( <sup>3</sup> )	
53	Single-currency interest rate contracts	893.7	382.6	( <sup>3</sup> )	( <sup>3</sup> )	( <sup>3</sup> )	( <sup>3</sup> )	( <sup>3</sup> )	
54	Foreign exchange contracts	299.0	-2.9	( <sup>3</sup> )	( <sup>3</sup> )	( <sup>3</sup> )	( <sup>3</sup> )	( <sup>3</sup> )	
55	Other contracts	173.6	-8.0	( <sup>3</sup> )	( <sup>3</sup> )	( <sup>3</sup> )	( <sup>3</sup> )	( <sup>3</sup> )	
56	Exchange-traded contracts	41.3	-9.1	( <sup>3</sup> )	( <sup>3</sup> )	( <sup>3</sup> )	( <sup>3</sup> )	( <sup>3</sup> )	
57	Other investment	6,254.8	241.3	266.4	-25.0	.....	-0.3	-24.7	
58	Other equity	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	
59	Currency and deposits	3,257.2	201.6	204.1	-2.5	.....	-0.7	-1.8	
60	Loans	2,749.7	32.7	52.4	-19.7	.....	0.6	-20.3	
61	Insurance technical reserves	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	
62	Trade credit and advances	198.8	7.3	9.8	-2.6	.....	(*)	-2.6	
63	Special drawing rights allocations	49.1	-0.3	0.0	-0.3	.....	-0.3	0.0	

r: Revised; n.a.: Not available; . . . : Not applicable; (\*) Value between zero and +/− \$50 million.

1. Represents gains or losses on foreign-currency-denominated assets and liabilities due to their revaluation at current exchange rates.

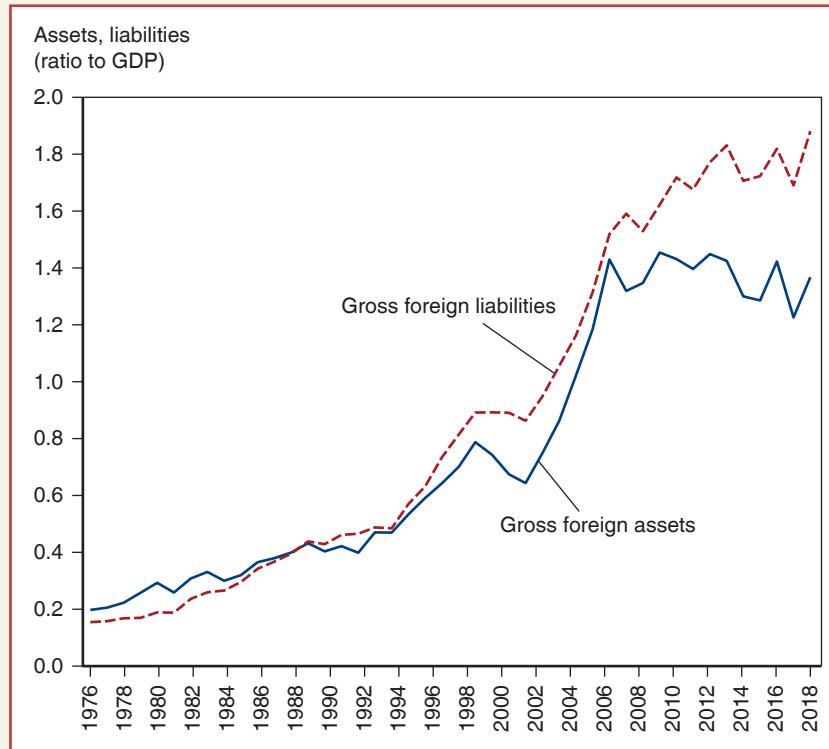
2. Includes changes due to year-to-year shifts in the composition of reporting panels and to the incorporation of more comprehensive survey results. Also includes capital gains and losses of direct investment affiliates and changes in positions that cannot be allocated to financial transactions, price changes, or exchange-rate changes.

3. Financial transactions and other changes in financial derivatives positions are available only on a net basis, which is shown on line 3; they are not separately available for gross positive fair values and gross negative fair values of financial derivatives.

4. Data are not separately available for price changes, exchange-rate changes, and changes in volume and valuation not included elsewhere.

**Note:** Details may not add to totals because of rounding.

**Source:** U.S. Bureau of Economic Analysis, June 30, 2020.

**FIGURE 13-3****Gross Foreign Assets and Liabilities, 1976–2019**

Since 1976, both the foreign assets and the liabilities of the United States have increased sharply. But liabilities have risen more quickly, leaving the United States with a substantial net foreign debt.

**Source:** U.S. Department of Commerce, Bureau of Economic Analysis.

U.S. GDP was around \$21.5 trillion, a 10 percent depreciation of the dollar would leave U.S. liabilities unchanged but would increase U.S. assets (measured in dollars) by  $10 \times 0.7 \times 1.37 = 9.6$  percent of GDP, or just over \$2 trillion. This number is 4.3 times the U.S. current account deficit of 2019! Indeed, due to sharp movements in exchange rates and stock prices, the U.S. economy lost about \$800 billion in this way between 2007 and 2008 and gained a comparable amount between 2008 and 2009 (see Figure 13-2). The corresponding redistribution of wealth between foreigners and the United States would have been much smaller back in 1976.

Does this possibility mean that policy makers should ignore their countries' current accounts and instead try to manipulate currency values to prevent large buildups of net foreign debt? That would be a perilous strategy because, as we will see in Chapter 14, expectations of future exchange rates are central to market participants' behavior. Systematic government attempts to reduce foreign investors' wealth through exchange rate changes would sharply reduce foreigners' demand for domestic currency assets, thus decreasing or eliminating any wealth benefit from depreciating the home currency.

## SUMMARY

- International *macroeconomics* is concerned with the full employment of scarce economic resources and price level stability throughout the world economy. Because they reflect national expenditure patterns and their international repercussions, the *national income accounts* and the *balance of payments accounts* are essential tools for studying the macroeconomics of open, interdependent economies.
- A country's *gross national product* (GNP) is equal to the income received by its factors of production. The national income accounts divide national income according to the types of spending that generate it: *consumption*, *investment*, *government purchases*, and the *current account balance*. *Gross domestic product* (GDP), equal to GNP less net receipts of factor income from abroad, measures the output produced within a country's territorial borders.
- In an economy closed to international trade, GNP must be consumed, invested, or purchased by the government. By using current output to build plant, equipment, and inventories, investment transforms present output into future output. For a closed economy, investment is the only way to save in the aggregate, so the sum of the saving carried out by the private and public sectors, *national saving*, must equal investment.
- In an open economy, GNP equals the sum of consumption, investment, government purchases, and net exports of goods and services. Trade does not have to be balanced if the economy can borrow from and lend to the rest of the world. The difference between the economy's exports and imports, the current account balance, equals the difference between the economy's output and its total use of goods and services.
- The current account also equals the country's net lending to foreigners. Unlike a closed economy, an open economy can save through domestic *and* foreign investments. National saving therefore equals domestic investment plus the current account balance. The current account is closely related to the change in the *net international investment position*, though usually not equal to that change because of fluctuations in asset values not recorded in the national income and product accounts.
- Balance of payments accounts provide a detailed picture of the composition and financing of the current account. All transactions between a country and the rest of the world are recorded in the country's balance of payments accounts. The accounts obey the convention that any transaction resulting in a payment to foreigners is entered as a debit while any transaction resulting in a receipt from foreigners is entered as a credit.
- Transactions involving goods and services appear in the current account of the balance of payments, while international sales or purchases of *assets* appear in the *financial account*. The *capital account* records mainly nonmarket asset transfers and tends to be small for the United States. The sum of the current and capital account balances must equal the financial account balance (net financial flows). This feature of the accounts reflects the fact that discrepancies between export earnings and import expenditures must be matched by a promise to repay the difference, usually with interest, in the future.
- International asset transactions carried out by *central banks* are included in the financial account. Any central bank transaction in private markets for foreign currency assets is called *official foreign exchange intervention*. One reason intervention is important is that central banks use it as a way to change the amount of money in circulation. A country has a deficit in its *balance of payments* when it is running down its *official international reserves* or borrowing from foreign central banks; it has a surplus in the opposite case.

**KEY TERMS**

asset, p. 363	gross domestic product (GDP), p. 355	net international investment position, p. 359
balance of payments account-ing, p. 351	gross national product (GNP), p. 352	official foreign exchange intervention, p. 371
capital account, p. 363	investment, p. 355	official international reserves, p. 371
central bank, p. 371	macroeconomics, p. 350	official settlements balance (or balance of payments), p. 371
consumption, p. 355	microeconomics, p. 350	private saving, p. 361
current account balance, p. 357	national income, p. 353	
financial account, p. 363	national income accounting, p. 351	
government budget deficit, p. 361	national saving, p. 360	
government purchases, p. 356		

**PROBLEMS**

1. We stated in this chapter that GNP accounts avoid double counting by including only the value of *final* goods and services sold on the market. Should the measure of imports used in the GNP accounts therefore be defined to include only imports of final goods and services from abroad? What about exports?
2. Equation (13-2) tells us that to reduce a current account deficit, a country must increase its private saving, reduce domestic investment, or cut its government budget deficit. Nowadays, some people recommend restrictions on imports from China (and other countries) to reduce the American current account deficit. How would higher U.S. barriers to imports affect its private saving, domestic investment, and government deficit? Do you agree that import restrictions would necessarily reduce a U.S. current account deficit?
3. Explain how each of the following transactions generates two entries—a credit and a debit—in the Japanese balance of payments accounts, and describe how each entry would be classified:
  - a. A Japanese investor buys a share of a stock company in Thailand, paying by writing a check on an account with a Singapore bank.
  - b. A Japanese investor buys a share of a Thai stock company, paying the seller with a check on a Japanese bank.
  - c. The Malaysian government carries out an official foreign exchange intervention in which it uses Yen held in a Japanese bank to buy ringgit (Malaysian currency) from its citizens.
  - d. A tourist from Kyoto buys a meal at an expensive restaurant in Bangkok, paying with a traveler's check.
  - e. A saké brewery in Kobe contributes a case of saké bottles for a Paris wine tasting event.
  - f. A Japanese-owned factory in Germany uses local earnings to buy additional machinery.
4. A Mexican travels to Brazil to buy a gemstone which costs 3,000 Real (Brazilian currency). The Brazilian company that sells the gemstone then deposits the 3,000 Real in its account in a Panama bank. How would these transactions show up in the balance of payments accounts of Mexico and Brazil? What if the Mexican pays cash for the gemstone?

5. The nation of Pecunia had a current account deficit of \$1 billion and a nonreserve financial account surplus of \$500 million in 2021.
  - a. What was the balance of payments of Pecunia in that year? What happened to the country's net foreign assets?
  - b. Assume that foreign central banks neither buy nor sell Pecunian assets. How did the Pecunian central bank's foreign reserves change in 2021? How would this official intervention show up in the balance of payments accounts of Pecunia?
  - c. How would your answer to (b) change if you learned that foreign central banks had purchased \$600 million of Pecunian assets in 2021? How would these official purchases enter foreign balance of payments accounts?
  - d. Draw up the Pecunian balance of payments accounts for 2021 under the assumption that the event described in (c) occurred in that year.
6. Can you think of reasons why a government might be concerned about a large current account deficit or surplus? Why might a government be concerned about its official settlements balance (that is, its balance of payments)?
7. Do the data on the European Central Bank, which set up the official settlements balance for the Eurozone, give an accurate picture of the extent to which foreign central banks buy and sell euros in currency markets?
8. Is it possible for a country to have a current account deficit at the same time it has a surplus in its balance of payments? Explain your answer, using hypothetical figures for the current and nonreserve financial accounts. Be sure to discuss the possible implications for official international reserve flows.
9. Suppose the South Africa net foreign debt is 50 percent of its GDP and foreign assets and liabilities pay an interest rate of 6 percent per year. What would be the drain on SA GDP (as a percentage) from paying interest on the net foreign debt? Do you think this is a large number? What if the net foreign debt were 100 percent of GDP? At what point do you think a country's government should become worried about the size of its foreign debt?
10. In 2015, in the balance of payment of Switzerland, the labor income in the primary income balance shows a deficit of 21 billion CHF (Swiss Franc), which represents almost 30 percent of the net account surplus (71 Billion CHF). How can you explain the size of this deficit?
11. Return to the example in this chapter's final Case Study of how a 10 percent dollar depreciation affects U.S. net foreign wealth ("The Assets and Liabilities of the World's Biggest Debtor"). Show the size of the effect on *foreigners'* net foreign claims on the United States measured in dollars (as a percent of U.S. GDP).
12. We mentioned in the chapter that capital gains and losses on a country's net foreign assets are not included in the national income measure of the current account. How would economic statisticians have to modify the national income identity [equation (13-1)] if they wish to include such gains and losses as part of the definition of the current account? In your opinion, would this make sense? Why do you think this is not done in practice?
13. Go to the BEA website at <http://www.bea.gov/iTable/iTable.cfm?reqid=62&step=1&isuri=1#reqid=62&step=6&isuri=1&6210=5&6200=143> and download annual data starting in 1976 on the U.S. end-of-year international investment position (IIP data). For the same time period, download annual data on U.S. nominal GDP from the Interactive Data at <http://www.bea.gov/national/index.htm#gdp>. Then compute the annual ratio of the IIP to nominal GDP starting in 1976, and graph the data. The United States has run current account deficits in almost every year

since the mid-1980s. Do the data you have graphed therefore surprise you? (Hint: To answer this question, you will need to compare the current account deficit, as a percent of nominal GDP, with the growth rate of nominal GDP, so you will also need to examine the annual current account data from the BEA website. You may wish to return to this problem after reading Chapter 19.)

## FURTHER READINGS

- Stefan Avdjiev, Mary Everett, Philip R. Lane, and Hyun Song Shin. “Tracking the International Footprints of Global Firms.” *BIS Quarterly Review* (March 2018), pp. 47–66. Analyzes the impact on national account and balance of payments statistics of multinationals’ global activities.
- European Commission, International Monetary Fund, Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development, United Nations, and World Bank. *System of National Accounts 2008*. New York: United Nations, 2009. Definitive guidelines for constructing national income and product accounts.
- Christopher A. Gohrband and Kristy L. Howell. “U.S. International Financial Flows and the U.S. Net Investment Position: New Perspectives Arising from New International Standards,” in Charles Hulten and Marshall Reinsdorff, eds., *Wealth, Financial Intermediation, and the Real Economy*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2014. Detailed discussion of the IIP statistics for the United States.
- William Grierer, Gary Lee, and Francis Warnock. “The U.S. System for Measuring Cross-Border Investment in Securities: A Primer with a Discussion of Recent Developments.” *Federal Reserve Bulletin* 87 (October 2001), pp. 633–650. Critical description of U.S. procedures for measuring foreign assets and liabilities.
- International Monetary Fund. *Balance of Payments and International Investment Position Manual*, 6th edition. Washington, D.C.: International Monetary Fund, 2009. Authoritative treatment of balance of payments accounting.
- Philip R. Lane and Gian Maria Milesi-Ferretti. “The External Wealth of Nations Mark II: Revised and Extended Estimates of Foreign Assets and Liabilities, 1970–2004.” *Journal of International Economics* 73 (November 2007), pp. 223–250. Applies a common methodology to construct international position data for a large sample of countries.
- James E. Meade. *The Balance of Payments*, Chapters 1–3. London: Oxford University Press, 1952. A classic analytical discussion of balance of payments concepts.
- Gian Maria Milesi-Ferretti. “The US is Increasingly a Net Debtor Nation. Should We Worry?” Brookings Up Front Blog, April 14, 2021. (Available at <https://www.brookings.edu/blog/up-front/2021/04/14/the-us-is-increasingly-a-net-debtor-nation-should-we-worry/>.) Detailed analysis of the United States’ net foreign assets and liabilities.
- Maurice Obstfeld. “Does the Current Account Still Matter?” *American Economic Review* 102 (May 2012), pp. 1–23. Discusses the significance of the current account in a world of large two-way international asset flows.
- Emmanuel Saez and Gabriel Zucman. *The Triumph of Injustice: How the Rich Dodge Taxes and How to Make Them Pay*. New York: W.W. Norton, 2019. Chapter 4 discusses international tax havens and corporate profit shifting.
- Cédric Tille. “The Impact of Exchange Rate Movements on U.S. Foreign Debt.” *Current Issues in Economics and Finance* (Federal Reserve Bank of New York) 9 (January 2003), pp. 1–7. Discusses the implications of asset price changes for U.S. foreign assets and liabilities.



## EXCHANGE RATES AND THE FOREIGN EXCHANGE MARKET: AN ASSET APPROACH

In July 2011, the U.S. dollar's price against a basket of major foreign currencies reached a low point at a time when the United States was struggling with high unemployment and low growth. In April 2020, however, the dollar's value was higher than at any point in the previous 15 years—about 43 percent above its low point—at a time when the U.S. economy had the highest unemployment since the Great Depression. What changes in the U.S. and world economy could possibly have driven such a dramatic change in the foreign exchange market? In this chapter, we will begin our study of the causes and effects of exchange rate changes.

The price of one currency in terms of another is called an **exchange rate**. At 4 P.M. London time on June 3, 2020, you would have needed 1.1219 dollars to buy one unit of the European currency, the euro, so the dollar's exchange rate against the euro was \$1.1219 per euro. Because of their strong influence on the current account and other macroeconomic variables, exchange rates are among the most important prices in an open economy.

Because an exchange rate, the price of one country's money in terms of another's, is also an asset price, the principles governing the behavior of other asset prices also govern the behavior of exchange rates. As you will recall from Chapter 13, the defining characteristic of an asset is that it is a form of wealth, a way of transferring purchasing power from the present into the future. The price an asset commands today is therefore directly related to the purchasing power over goods and services that buyers expect it to yield in the future. Similarly, today's dollar/euro exchange rate is closely tied to people's expectations about the future level of that rate. Just as the price of Google stock rises immediately upon favorable news about Google's future prospects, so do exchange rates respond immediately to any news concerning future currency values.

Our general goals in this chapter are to understand the role of exchange rates in international trade and to understand how exchange rates are determined. To begin, we first learn how exchange rates allow us to compare the prices of different countries' goods and services. Next, we describe the international asset market in which currencies are traded and show how equilibrium exchange rates are

determined in that market. A final section underlines our asset market approach by showing how today's exchange rate responds to changes in the expected future values of exchange rates.

## LEARNING GOALS

After reading this chapter, you will be able to:

- Relate exchange rate changes to changes in the relative prices of countries' exports.
- Describe the structure and functions of the foreign exchange market.
- Use exchange rates to calculate and compare returns on assets denominated in different currencies.
- Apply the interest parity condition to find equilibrium exchange rates.
- Find the effects of interest rates and expectation shifts on exchange rates.

# Exchange Rates and International Transactions

Exchange rates play a central role in international trade because they allow us to compare the prices of goods and services produced in different countries. A consumer deciding which of two American cars to buy must compare their dollar prices, for example, \$44,500 (for a Lincoln Continental) or \$27,000 (for a Ford Taurus). But how is the same consumer to compare either of these prices with the 3,500,000 Japanese yen it costs to buy a Nissan Leaf from Japan? To make this comparison, he or she must know the relative price of dollars and yen.

You can view the relative prices of currencies in real time on the Internet. Exchange rates are also reported daily in newspapers' financial sections. Table 14-1 shows the dollar, euro, and pound exchange rates for currencies reported in the *Financial Times* on June 4, 2020 (these rates being the ones quoted in London at 4 P.M. of the previous day, June 3, 2020). An exchange rate can be quoted in two ways: as the price of the foreign currency in terms of dollars (for example, \$1.1219 per euro) or as its inverse, the price of dollars in terms of the foreign currency (for example, €0.8913 per dollar). The first of these exchange rate quotations (dollars per foreign currency unit) is said to be in *direct* (or "American") terms; the second (foreign currency units per dollar) is in *indirect* (or "European") terms. Each row in the table shows the price of the dollar, euro, and pound in terms of a national currency.<sup>1</sup>

Households and firms use exchange rates to translate foreign prices into domestic currency terms. Once the money prices of domestic goods and imports have been expressed in terms of the same currency, households and firms can compute the *relative* prices that affect international trade flows.

## Domestic and Foreign Prices

If we know the exchange rate between two countries' currencies, we can compute the price of one country's exports in terms of the other country's money. For example, how many dollars would it cost to buy an Edinburgh Woolen Mill sweater costing 50 British pounds (£50)?

<sup>1</sup>The "mid" rates shown are the average of "bid" and "ask" prices for the U.S. dollar. Generally, a buyer of dollars will pay more (the ask price) than a seller will receive (the bid price) due to costs of intermediating the trade (for example by a bank or broker). The difference—the bid-ask spread—is a measure of transaction costs. In Chapter 19, we will refer to "effective" exchange rate indexes, which are averages of exchange rates against individual trading partner currencies.

**TABLE 14-1 Exchange Rate Quotations**

CURRENCIES		DOLLAR		EURO		POUND	
Jun 3	Currency	Closing Mid	Day's Change	Closing Mid	Day's Change	Closing Mid	Day's Change
Argentina	Argentine Peso	68.8026	0.0953	77.1927	0.3569	86.6673	0.3917
Australia	Australian Dollar	1.4423	-0.0088	1.6181	-0.0046	1.8168	-0.0053
Bahrain	Bahraini Dinar	0.3772	0.0000	0.4231	0.0013	0.4751	0.0014
Bolivia	Bolivian Boliviano	6.9100	—	7.7526	0.0251	8.7042	0.0273
Brazil	Brazilian Real	5.0281	-0.1935	5.6412	-0.1981	6.3336	-0.2231
Canada	Canadian Dollar	1.3489	0.0001	1.5133	0.0050	1.6991	0.0055
Chile	Chilean Peso	764.9900	-15.2950	858.2761	-14.3210	963.6213	-16.1809
China	Chinese Yuan	7.1099	-0.0006	7.9769	0.0252	8.9560	0.0274
Colombia	Colombian Peso	3579.3300	-46.9050	4015.8094	-39.4294	4508.7106	-44.7456
Costa Rica	Costa Rican Colon	577.1050	1.7850	647.4796	4.0960	726.9515	4.5235
Czech Republic	Czech Koruna	23.7213	0.0004	26.6139	0.0868	29.8805	0.0943
Denmark	Danish Krone	6.6449	-0.0199	7.4552	0.0019	8.3702	0.0012
Egypt	Egyptian Pound	16.0836	0.1097	18.0449	0.1812	20.2598	0.2014
Hong Kong	Hong Kong Dollar	7.7503	-0.0002	8.6953	0.0279	9.7626	0.0303
Hungary	Hungarian Forint	306.7205	-2.1010	344.1232	-1.2335	386.3611	-1.4253
India	Indian Rupee	75.4700	0.1075	84.6731	0.3948	95.0659	0.4334
Indonesia	Indonesian Rupiah	14110.0000	-322.5000	15830.6500	-309.3157	17773.7017	-349.1678
Israel	Israeli Shekel	3.4763	0.0030	3.9002	0.0161	4.3789	0.0176
Japan	Japanese Yen	108.8250	0.2400	122.0956	0.6644	137.0816	0.7317
..One Month		108.8249	0.2399	122.0956	0.6644	137.0816	0.7316
..Three Month		108.8248	0.2397	122.0956	0.6645	137.0815	0.7314
..One Year		108.8242	0.2384	122.0957	0.6647	137.0816	0.7309
Kenya	Kenyan Shilling	106.1000	-0.3500	119.0383	-0.0054	133.6491	-0.0199
Kuwait	Kuwaiti Dinar	0.3081	-0.0002	0.3457	0.0010	0.3881	0.0010
Malaysia	Malaysian Ringgit	4.2625	-0.0150	4.7823	-0.0013	5.3693	-0.0020
Mexico	Mexican Peso	21.5950	-0.0380	24.2284	0.0361	27.2022	0.0377
New Zealand	New Zealand Dollar	1.5570	-0.0139	1.7469	-0.0099	1.9613	-0.0113
Nigeria	Nigerian Naira	388.1800	1.4300	435.5163	3.0116	488.9718	3.3307
Norway	Norwegian Krone	9.4775	-0.0501	10.6332	-0.0215	11.9384	-0.0254
Pakistan	Pakistani Rupee	164.2000	-0.8500	184.2232	-0.3531	206.8349	-0.4180
Peru	Peruvian Nuevo Sol	3.3860	-0.0145	3.7989	-0.0039	4.2652	-0.0048
Philippines	Philippine Peso	50.1200	-0.2250	56.2318	-0.0693	63.1338	-0.0843
Poland	Polish Zloty	3.9347	0.0150	4.4145	0.0311	4.9564	0.0345
Romania	Romanian Leu	4.3079	-0.0185	4.8333	-0.0050	5.4265	-0.0062
Russia	Russian Ruble	68.6488	-0.1112	77.0201	0.1254	86.4735	0.1318
Saudi Arabia	Saudi Riyal	3.7550	0.0015	4.2128	0.0153	4.7299	0.0167
Singapore	Singapore Dollar	1.3970	-0.0026	1.5674	0.0022	1.7597	0.0023
South Africa	South African Rand	16.9163	-0.1885	18.9791	-0.1492	21.3086	-0.1698
South Korea	South Korean Won	1216.6500	-8.7500	1365.0135	-5.3583	1532.5558	-6.1763
Sweden	Swedish Krona	9.2891	-0.0357	10.4219	-0.0062	11.7011	-0.0082
Switzerland	Swiss Franc	0.9621	0.0015	1.0794	0.0051	1.2118	0.0056
Taiwan	New Taiwan Dollar	29.8745	-0.0800	33.5175	0.0192	37.6315	0.0177
Thailand	Thai Baht	31.5525	—	35.4001	0.1148	39.7452	0.1248
Tunisia	Tunisian Dinar	2.8531	-0.0050	3.2010	0.0048	3.5939	0.0051
Turkey	Turkish Lira	6.7298	-0.0028	7.5504	0.0214	8.4771	0.0232
United Arab Emirates	UAE Dirham	3.6732	—	4.1211	0.0134	4.6269	0.0145
United Kingdom	Pound Sterling	0.7939	-0.0025	0.8907	0.0001	—	—
..One Month		0.7939	-0.0025	0.8906	0.0001	—	—
..Three Month		0.7939	-0.0025	0.8905	0.0001	—	—
..One Year		0.7941	-0.0025	0.8901	0.0001	—	—
United States	United States Dollar	—	—	1.1219	0.0036	1.2597	0.0040
..One Month		—	—	1.1219	-0.1338	1.2597	0.0040
..Three Month		—	—	1.1217	-0.1338	1.2597	0.0040
..One Year		—	—	1.1210	-0.1338	1.2599	0.0040
Venezuela	Venezuelan Bolivar Fuerte	—	—	—	—	—	—
Vietnam	Vietnamese Dong	23262.0000	5.5000	26098.6896	90.7520	29302.0544	98.8350
European Union	Euro	0.8913	-0.0029	—	—	1.1227	-0.0001
..One Month		0.8912	-0.0029	—	—	1.1227	-0.0001
..Three Month		0.8911	-0.0029	—	—	1.1226	-0.0001
..One Year		0.8903	-0.0029	—	—	1.1221	-0.0001

Rates are derived from WM Reuters Spot Rates and MorningStar (latest rates at time of production). Some values are rounded. Currency redenominated by 1000. The exchange rates printed in this table are also available at [www.FT.com/marketsdata](http://www.FT.com/marketsdata).

The answer is found by multiplying the price of the sweater in pounds, 50, by the price of a pound in terms of dollars—the dollar's exchange rate against the pound. At an exchange rate of \$1.50 per pound (expressed in American terms), the dollar price of the sweater is

$$(1.50\$/\text{£}) \times (\text{£}50) = \$75.$$

A change in the dollar/pound exchange rate would alter the sweater's dollar price. At an exchange rate of 1.25 per pound, the sweater would cost only

$$(1.25\$/\text{£}) \times (\text{£}50) = \$62.50,$$

assuming its price in terms of pounds remained the same. At an exchange rate of \$1.75 per pound, the sweater's dollar price would be higher, equal to

$$(1.75\$/\text{£}) \times (\text{£}50) = \$87.50.$$

Changes in exchange rates are described as depreciations or appreciations. A **depreciation** of the pound against the dollar is a fall in the dollar price of pounds, for example, a change in the exchange rate from \$1.50 per pound to \$1.25 per pound. The preceding example shows that *all else equal, a depreciation of a country's currency makes its goods cheaper for foreigners*. A rise in the pound's price in terms of dollars—for example, from \$1.50 per pound to \$1.75 per pound—is an **appreciation** of the pound against the dollar. *All else equal, an appreciation of a country's currency makes its goods more expensive for foreigners*.

The exchange rate changes discussed in the example simultaneously alter the prices Britons pay for American goods. At an exchange rate of \$1.50 per pound, the pound price of a pair of American designer jeans costing \$45 is  $(\$45)/(1.50\$/\text{£}) = \text{£}30$ . A change in the exchange rate from \$1.50 per pound to \$1.25 per pound, while a depreciation of the pound against the dollar, is also a rise in the pound price of dollars, an *appreciation* of the dollar against the pound. This appreciation of the dollar makes the American jeans more expensive for Britons by raising their pound price from £30 to

$$(\$45)/(1.25\$/\text{£}) = \text{£}36.$$

The change in the exchange rate from \$1.50 per pound to \$1.75 per pound—an appreciation of the pound against the dollar but a depreciation of the dollar against the pound—lowers the pound price of the jeans from £30 to

$$(\$45)/(1.75\$/\text{£}) = \text{£}25.71.$$

As you can see, descriptions of exchange rate changes as depreciations or appreciations can be bewildering because when one currency depreciates against another, the second currency must simultaneously appreciate against the first. To avoid confusion in discussing exchange rates, we must always keep track of which of the two currencies we are examining has depreciated or appreciated against the other.

If we remember that a depreciation of the dollar against the pound is at the same time an appreciation of the pound against the dollar, we reach the following conclusion: *When a country's currency depreciates, foreigners find that its exports are cheaper and domestic residents find that imports from abroad are more expensive. An appreciation has opposite effects: Foreigners pay more for the country's products and domestic consumers pay less for foreign products.*

## Exchange Rates and Relative Prices

Import and export demands, like the demands for all goods and services, are influenced by *relative* prices, such as the price of sweaters in terms of designer jeans. We have just seen how exchange rates allow individuals to compare domestic and foreign money

**TABLE 14-2 \$/£ Exchange Rates and the Relative Price of American Designer Jeans and British Sweaters**

Exchange rate \$/£	1.25	1.50	1.75
Relative price (pairs of jeans/sweater)	1.39	1.67	1.94

**Note:** The preceding calculations assume unchanged money prices of \$45 per pair of jeans and £50 per sweater.

prices by expressing them in a common currency unit. Carrying this analysis one step further, we can see that exchange rates also allow individuals to compute the relative prices of goods and services whose money prices are quoted in different currencies.

An American trying to decide how much to spend on American jeans and how much to spend on British sweaters must translate their prices into a common currency to compute the price of sweaters in terms of jeans. As we have seen, an exchange rate of \$1.50 per pound means that an American pays \$75 for a sweater priced at £50 in Britain. Because the price of a pair of American jeans is \$45, the price of a sweater in terms of a pair of jeans is  $(\$75 \text{ per sweater}) / (\$45 \text{ per pair of jeans}) = 1.67 \text{ pairs of jeans per sweater}$ . Naturally, a Briton faces the same relative price of  $(\text{£}50 \text{ per sweater}) / (\text{£}30 \text{ per pair of jeans}) = 1.67 \text{ pairs of jeans per sweater}$ .

Table 14-2 shows the relative prices implied by exchange rates of \$1.25 per pound, \$1.50 per pound, and \$1.75 per pound, on the assumption that the dollar price of jeans and the pound price of sweaters are unaffected by the exchange rate changes. To test your understanding, try to calculate these relative prices for yourself and confirm that the outcome of the calculation is the same for a Briton and for an American.

The table shows that if the goods' money prices do not change, an appreciation of the dollar against the pound makes sweaters cheaper in terms of jeans (each pair of jeans buys more sweaters) while a depreciation of the dollar against the pound makes sweaters more expensive in terms of jeans (each pair of jeans buys fewer sweaters). The computations illustrate a general principle: *All else equal, an appreciation of a country's currency raises the relative price of its exports and lowers the relative price of its imports. Conversely, a depreciation lowers the relative price of a country's exports and raises the relative price of its imports.*

## The Foreign Exchange Market

Just as other prices in the economy are determined by the interaction of buyers and sellers, exchange rates are determined by the interaction of the households, firms, and financial institutions that buy and sell foreign currencies to make international payments. The market in which international currency trades take place is called the **foreign exchange market**.

### The Actors

The major participants in the foreign exchange market are commercial banks, corporations that engage in international trade, nonbank financial institutions such as asset-management firms and insurance companies, and central banks. Individuals may also participate in the foreign exchange market—for example, the tourist who buys foreign currency at a hotel's front desk—but such cash transactions are an insignificant fraction of total foreign exchange trading.

We now describe the major actors in the market and their roles.

1. *Commercial banks.* Commercial banks are at the center of the foreign exchange market because almost every sizable international transaction involves the debiting

and crediting of accounts at commercial banks in various financial centers. Thus, the vast majority of foreign exchange transactions involve the exchange of bank deposits denominated in different currencies.

Let's look at an example. Suppose ExxonMobil Corporation wishes to pay €160,000 to a German supplier. First, ExxonMobil gets an exchange rate quotation from its own commercial bank, the Third National Bank. Then it instructs Third National to debit ExxonMobil's dollar account and pay €160,000 into the supplier's account at a German bank. If the exchange rate quoted to ExxonMobil by Third National is \$1.2 per euro, \$192,000 ( $= \$1.2 \text{ per euro} \times €160,000$ ) is debited from ExxonMobil's account. The final result of the transaction is the exchange of a \$192,000 deposit at Third National Bank (now owned by the German bank that supplied the euros) for the €160,000 deposit used by Third National to pay ExxonMobil's German supplier.

As the example shows, banks routinely enter the foreign exchange market to meet the needs of their customers—primarily corporations. In addition, a bank will also quote to other banks exchange rates at which it is willing to buy currencies from them and sell currencies to them. Foreign currency trading among banks—called **interbank trading**—accounts for much of the activity in the foreign exchange market. In fact, the exchange rates listed in Table 14-1 are interbank rates, the rates banks charge each other. No amount less than \$1 million trades at those rates. The rates available to corporate customers, called “retail” rates, are usually less favorable than the “wholesale” interbank rates. The difference between the retail and the wholesale rates is the bank's compensation for doing the business.

Because their international operations are so extensive, large commercial banks are well suited to bring buyers and sellers of currencies together. A multinational corporation wishing to convert \$100,000 into Swedish kronor might find it difficult and costly to locate other corporations wishing to sell the right amount of kronor. By serving many customers simultaneously through a single large purchase of kronor, a bank can economize on these search costs.

2. *Corporations.* Corporations with operations in several countries frequently make or receive payments in currencies other than that of the country in which they are headquartered. To pay workers at a plant in Mexico, for example, IBM may need Mexican pesos. If IBM has only dollars earned by selling computers in the United States, it can acquire the pesos it needs by buying them with its dollars in the foreign exchange market.
3. *Nonbank financial institutions.* Over the years, deregulation of financial markets in the United States, Japan, and other countries has encouraged nonbank financial institutions such as mutual funds to offer their customers a broader range of services, many of them indistinguishable from those offered by banks. Among these have been services involving foreign exchange transactions. Institutional investors such as pension funds often trade foreign currencies. So do insurance companies. Hedge funds, which cater to very wealthy individuals and are not bound by the government regulations that limit mutual funds' trading strategies, trade actively in the foreign exchange market.
4. *Central banks.* In the previous chapter, we learned that central banks sometimes intervene in foreign exchange markets. While the volume of central bank transactions is typically not large, the impact of these transactions may be great. The reason for this impact is that participants in the foreign exchange market watch central bank actions closely for clues about future macroeconomic policies that may affect exchange rates. Government agencies other than central banks may also trade in the foreign exchange market, but central banks are the most regular official participants.

## Characteristics of the Market

Foreign exchange trading takes place in many financial centers, with the largest volumes of trade occurring in such major cities as London (the largest market), New York, Tokyo, Frankfurt, Hong Kong, and Singapore. The worldwide volume of foreign exchange trading is enormous, and it has ballooned over the past three decades. In April 1989, the average total value of global foreign exchange trading was close to \$600 billion *per day*. A total of \$184 billion was traded daily in London, \$115 billion in the United States, and \$111 billion in Tokyo. Thirty years later, in April 2019, the daily global value of foreign exchange trading had jumped to around \$6.6 trillion. A total of \$3.58 trillion was traded daily in the United Kingdom, \$1.37 trillion in the United States, and \$376 billion in Japan.<sup>2</sup>

Telephone, fax, and Internet links among the major foreign exchange trading centers make each a part of a single world market on which the sun never sets. Economic news released at any time of the day is immediately transmitted around the world and may set off a flurry of activity by market participants. Even after trading in New York has finished, New York-based banks and corporations with affiliates in other time zones can remain active in the market. Foreign exchange traders may deal from their homes when a late-night communication alerts them to important developments in a financial center on another continent.

The integration of financial centers implies that there can be no significant difference between the dollar/euro exchange rate quoted in New York at 9 A.M. and the dollar/euro exchange rate quoted in London at the same time (which corresponds to 2 p.m. London time). If the euro were selling for \$1.1 in New York and \$1.2 in London, profits could be made through **arbitrage**, the process of buying a currency cheap and selling it dear. At the prices listed, a trader could, for instance, purchase €1 million in New York for \$1.1 million and immediately sell the euros in London for \$1.2 million, making a pure profit of \$100,000. If all traders tried to cash in on the opportunity, however, their demand for euros in New York would drive up the dollar price of euros there, and their supply of euros in London would drive down the dollar price of euros there. Very quickly, the difference between the New York and London exchange rates would disappear. Since foreign exchange traders carefully watch their computer screens for arbitrage opportunities, the few that arise are small and very short-lived.

While a foreign exchange transaction can match any two currencies, most transactions (88.3 percent in April 2019) are exchanges of foreign currencies for U.S. dollars. This is true even when a bank's goal is to sell one nondollar currency and buy another! A bank wishing to sell Swiss francs and buy Israeli shekels, for example, will usually sell its francs for dollars and then use the dollars to buy shekels. While this procedure may appear roundabout, it is actually cheaper for the bank than the alternative of trying to find a holder of shekels who wishes to buy Swiss francs. The advantage of trading through the dollar is a result of the United States' importance in the world economy. Because the volume of international transactions involving dollars is so great, it is not hard to find parties willing to trade dollars against Swiss francs or

---

<sup>2</sup>April 1989 figures come from surveys carried out simultaneously by the Federal Reserve Bank of New York, the Bank of England, the Bank of Japan, the Bank of Canada, and monetary authorities from France, Italy, the Netherlands, Singapore, Hong Kong, and Australia. The April 2019 survey was carried out by 53 central banks. Revised figures are reported in "Triennial Central Bank Survey: Foreign Exchange Turnover in April 2019," Bank for International Settlements, Basel, Switzerland, September 16, 2019. Daily U.S. foreign currency trading in 1980 averaged only around \$18 billion.

shekels. In contrast, relatively few transactions require direct exchanges of Swiss francs for shekels.<sup>3</sup>

Because of its pivotal role in so many foreign exchange deals, the U.S. dollar is sometimes called a **vehicle currency**. A vehicle currency is one that is widely used to denominate international contracts made by parties who do not reside in the country that issues the vehicle currency. It has been suggested that the euro, which was introduced at the start of 1999, could evolve into a vehicle currency on a par with the dollar. By April 2019, 32.3 percent of foreign exchange trades were against euros—less than half the share of the dollar and significantly below the figure of 39 percent clocked in 2010. Japan's yen is the third most important currency, with a market share of 16.8 percent. (All shares are out of 200 because two currencies are necessary for every foreign exchange trade.) The pound sterling, once second only to the dollar as a key international currency, has declined greatly in importance and now stands in fourth place. China's renminbi ranked eighth among the world's currencies in 2019, with a market share of 4.3 percent—low, but much above its 0.9 percent share in 2010.<sup>4</sup>

### Spot Rates and Forward Rates

The foreign exchange transactions we have been discussing take place on the spot: Two parties agree to an exchange of bank deposits and execute the deal immediately. Exchange rates governing such “on-the-spot” trading are called **spot exchange rates**, and the deal is called a spot transaction.

Foreign exchange deals sometimes specify a *future* transaction date—one that may be 30 days, 90 days, 180 days, or even several years away. We call the exchange rates quoted in such transactions **forward exchange rates**. In a one-month forward transaction, for example, two parties may commit themselves on April 1 to a spot exchange of £100,000 for \$155,000 on May 1. The one-month forward exchange rate is therefore \$1.55 per pound, and it is generally different from the spot rate and from the forward rates applied to different future dates. When you agree to sell pounds for dollars on a future date at a forward rate agreed on today, you have “sold pounds forward” and “bought dollars forward.” The future date on which the currencies are actually exchanged is called the *value date*.<sup>5</sup> Table 14-1 shows forward exchange rates for some major currencies, at the one-month, three-month, and one-year maturities.

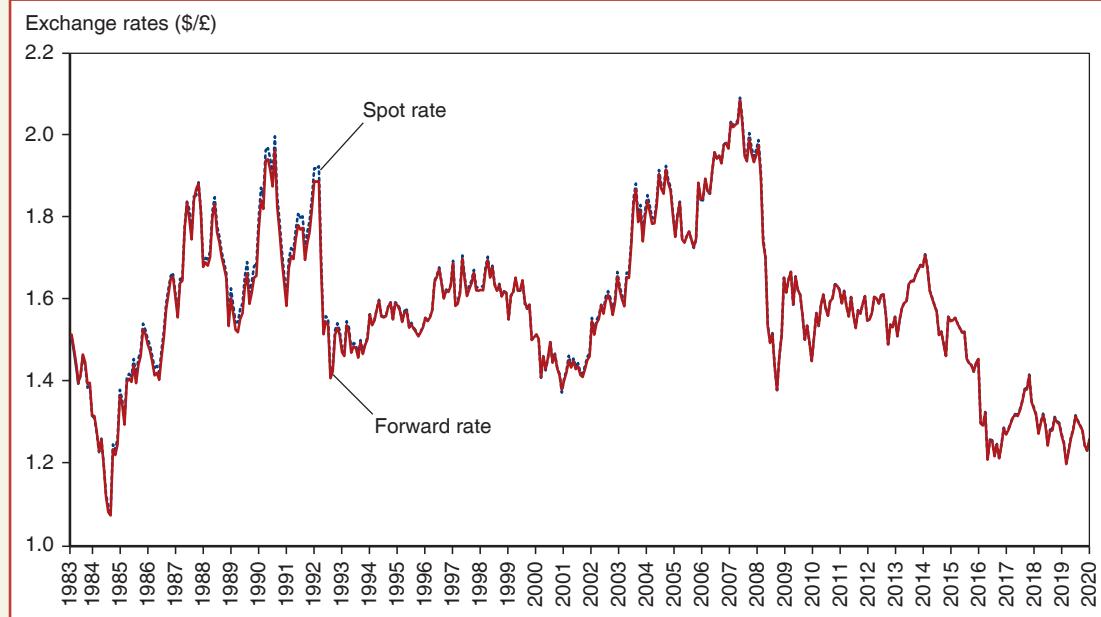
Forward and spot exchange rates, while not necessarily equal, do move closely together, as illustrated for monthly data on dollar/pound rates in Figure 14-1. The last section of this chapter, which discusses how forward exchange rates are determined, throws light on this close relationship between movements in spot and forward rates.

---

<sup>3</sup>The Swiss franc/shekel exchange rate can be calculated from the dollar/franc and dollar/shekel exchange rates as the dollar/shekel rate divided by the dollar/franc rate. If the dollar/franc rate is \$0.80 per franc and the dollar/shekel rate is \$0.20 per shekel, then the Swiss franc/shekel rate is  $(0.20\$/\text{shekel})/(0.80\$/\text{franc}) = 0.25$  Swiss francs/shekel. Exchange rates between nondollar currencies are called “cross rates” by foreign exchange traders. For more detail on the relationship between dollar exchange rates and cross rates, see the second problem at the end of this chapter.

<sup>4</sup>For a more detailed discussion of vehicle currencies, see Richard Portes and Hélène Rey, “The Emergence of the Euro as an International Currency,” *Economic Policy* 26 (April 1998), pp. 307–343. Data on currency shares come from the Bank for International Settlements, *op. cit.*, table 2. For an assessment of the future roles of the dollar and the euro, see the essays in Jean Pisani-Ferry and Adam S. Posen, eds., *The Euro at Ten: The Next Global Currency?* (Washington, D.C.: Peterson Institute for International Economics, 2009). These essays were written before the euro area crisis, to be discussed in Chapter 21. An updated assessment is the book by Eichengreen, Mehl, and Chitu listed in Further Readings.

<sup>5</sup>In days past, it would take up to two days to settle even spot foreign exchange transactions. In other words, the value date for a spot transaction was actually two days after the deal was struck. Nowadays, most spot trades of major currencies settle on the same day.

**FIGURE 14-1****Dollar/Pound Spot and Forward Exchange Rates, 1983–2020**

Spot and forward exchange rates tend to move in a highly correlated fashion.

**Source:** Datastream. Rates shown are 90-day forward exchange rates and spot exchange rates, at end of month.

An example shows why parties may wish to engage in forward exchange transactions. Suppose Best Buy knows that in 30 days it must pay yen to a Japanese supplier for a shipment of radios arriving then. Best Buy can sell each radio for \$100 and must pay its supplier ¥9,000 per radio; its profit depends on the dollar/yen exchange rate. At a spot exchange rate of \$0.0105 per yen, Best Buy would pay  $(\$0.0105 \text{ per yen}) \times (\text{¥}9,000 \text{ per radio}) = \$94.50$  per radio and would therefore make \$5.50 on each radio imported. But Best Buy will not have the funds to pay the supplier until the radios arrive and are sold. If over the next 30 days the dollar unexpectedly depreciates to \$0.0115 per yen, Best Buy will have to pay  $(\$0.0115 \text{ per yen}) \times (\text{¥}9,000 \text{ per radio}) = \$103.50$  per radio and so will take a \$3.50 *loss* on each.

To avoid this risk, Best Buy can make a 30-day forward exchange deal with Bank of America. If Bank of America agrees to sell yen to Best Buy in 30 days at a rate of \$0.0107, Best Buy is assured of paying exactly  $(\$0.0107 \text{ per yen}) \times (\text{¥}9,000 \text{ per radio}) = \$96.30$  per radio to the supplier. By buying yen and selling dollars forward, Best Buy is guaranteed a profit of \$3.70 per radio and is insured against the possibility that a sudden exchange rate change will turn a profitable importing deal into a loss. In the jargon of the foreign exchange market, we would say that Best Buy has *hedged* its foreign currency risk.

From now on, when we mention an exchange rate but don't specify whether it is a spot rate or a forward rate, we will always be referring to the spot rate. However, we will return to the forward exchange rate and its role at the end of this chapter and later in this book.

## Foreign Exchange Swaps

A foreign exchange *swap* is a spot sale of a currency combined with a forward repurchase of that currency. For example, suppose the Toyota auto company has just received \$1 million from American sales and knows it will have to pay those dollars to a California supplier in three months. Toyota's asset-management department would meanwhile like to invest the \$1 million in euro bonds. A three-month swap of dollars into euros may result in lower brokers' fees than the two separate transactions, possibly with different parties, of selling dollars for spot euros and selling the euros for dollars on the forward market. Swaps make up a significant proportion of all foreign exchange trading.

## Futures and Options

Several other financial instruments traded in the foreign exchange market, like forward contracts, involve future exchanges of currencies. The timing and terms of the exchanges can differ, however, from those specified in forward contracts, giving traders additional flexibility in avoiding foreign exchange risk.

When you buy a *futures contract*, you buy a promise that a specified amount of foreign currency will be delivered on a specified date in the future. A forward contract between you and some other private party is an alternative way to ensure that you receive the same amount of foreign currency on the date in question. But while you have no choice about fulfilling your end of a forward deal, you can sell your futures contract on an organized futures exchange, realizing a profit or loss right away. Such a sale might appear advantageous, for example, if your views about the future spot exchange rate were to change.

A *foreign exchange option* gives its owner the right to buy or sell a specified amount of foreign currency at a specified price at any time up to a specified expiration date. The other party to the deal, the option's seller, is required to sell or buy the foreign currency at the discretion of the option's owner, who is under no obligation to exercise his right.<sup>6</sup>

Imagine you are uncertain about when in the next month a foreign currency payment will arrive. To avoid the risk of a loss, you may wish to buy a *put option* giving you the right to sell the foreign currency at a known exchange rate at any time during the month. If instead you expect to make a payment abroad sometime in the month, a *call option*, which gives you the right to buy foreign currency to make the payment at a known price, might be attractive. Options can be written on many underlying assets (including foreign exchange futures), and, like futures, they are freely bought and sold. Forwards, swaps, futures, and options are all examples of *financial derivatives*, which we encountered in Chapter 13.

## The Demand for Foreign Currency Assets

We have now seen how banks, corporations, and other institutions trade foreign currency bank deposits in a worldwide foreign exchange market that operates 24 hours a day. To understand how exchange rates are determined by the foreign exchange market, we first must ask how the major actors' demands for different types of foreign currency deposits are determined.

The demand for a foreign currency bank deposit is influenced by the same considerations that influence the demand for any other asset. Chief among these considerations is our view of what the deposit will be worth in the future. A foreign currency deposit's

<sup>6</sup>This description refers to a so-called American option, as opposed to a European option that can only be exercised on a predetermined date.

future value depends in turn on two factors: the interest rate it offers and the expected change in the currency's exchange rate against other currencies.

## Assets and Asset Returns

As you will recall, people can hold wealth in many forms—stocks, bonds, cash, real estate, rare wines, diamonds, and so on. The object of acquiring wealth—of saving—is to transfer purchasing power into the future. We may do this to provide for our retirement years, for our heirs, or simply because we earn more than we need to spend in a particular year and prefer to save the balance for a rainy day.

**Defining Asset Returns** Because the object of saving is to provide for future consumption, we judge the desirability of an asset largely on the basis of its **rate of return**, that is, the percentage increase in value it offers over some time period. For example, suppose that at the beginning of 2021 you pay \$100 for a share of stock issued by Financial Soothsayers, Inc. If the stock pays you a dividend of \$1 at the beginning of 2022 and if the stock's price rises from \$100 to \$109 per share over the year, then you have earned a rate of return of 10 percent on the stock over 2021—that is, your initial \$100 investment has grown in value to \$110, the sum of the \$1 dividend and the \$109 you could get by selling your share. Had Financial Soothsayers stock still paid out its \$1 dividend but dropped in price to \$89 per share, your \$100 investment would be worth only \$90 by year's end, giving a rate of return of *negative* 10 percent.

You often cannot know with certainty the return that an asset will actually pay after you buy it. Both the dividend paid by a share of stock and the share's resale price, for example, may be hard to predict. Your decision therefore must be based on an *expected* rate of return. To calculate an expected rate of return over some time period, you make your best forecast of the asset's total value at the period's end. The percentage difference between that expected future value and the price you pay for the asset today equals the asset's expected rate of return over the time period.

When we measure an asset's rate of return, we compare how an investment in the asset changes in total value between two dates. In the previous example, we compared how the value of an investment in Financial Soothsayers stock changed between 2021 (\$100) and 2022 (\$110) to conclude that the rate of return on the stock was 10 percent per year. We call this a *dollar* rate of return because the two values we compare are expressed in terms of dollars. It is also possible, however, to compute different rates of return by expressing the two values in terms of a foreign currency or a commodity such as gold.

**The Real Rate of Return** The expected rate of return that savers consider in deciding which assets to hold is the expected **real rate of return**, that is, the rate of return computed by measuring asset values in terms of some broad representative basket of products that savers regularly purchase. It is the expected real return that matters because the ultimate goal of saving is future consumption, and only the *real* return measures the goods and services a saver can buy in the future in return for giving up some consumption (that is, saving) today.

To continue our example, suppose the dollar value of an investment in Financial Soothsayers stock increases by 10 percent between 2021 and 2022 but the dollar prices of all goods and services *also* increase by 10 percent. Then in terms of output—that is, in *real terms*—the investment would be worth no more in 2021 than in 2022. With a real rate of return of zero, Financial Soothsayers stock would not be a very desirable asset (because in the real world assets with positive real rates of return usually are available).

Although savers care about expected real rates of return, rates of return expressed in terms of a currency can still be used to *compare* real returns on *different* assets. Even if all dollar prices rise by 10 percent between 2021 and 2022, a rare bottle of wine whose dollar price rises by 25 percent is still a better investment than a bond whose dollar value rises by 20 percent. The real rate of return offered by the wine is 15 percent ( $= 25\text{ percent} - 10\text{ percent}$ ), while that offered by the bond is only 10 percent ( $= 20\text{ percent} - 10\text{ percent}$ ). Notice that the difference between the dollar returns of the two assets (25 percent – 20 percent) must equal the difference between their real returns (15 percent – 10 percent). The reason for this equality is that given the two assets' dollar returns, a change in the rate at which the dollar prices of goods are rising changes both assets' real returns by the same amount.

The distinction between real rates of return and dollar rates of return illustrates an important concept in studying how savers evaluate different assets: The returns on two assets cannot be compared unless they are measured in the *same* units. For example, it makes no sense to compare directly the real return on the bottle of wine (15 percent in our example) with the dollar return on the bond (20 percent) or to compare the dollar return on old paintings with the euro return on gold. Only after the returns are expressed in terms of a common unit of measure—for example, all in terms of dollars—can we tell which asset offers the highest expected real rate of return.

### Risk and Liquidity

*All else equal, individuals prefer to hold those assets offering the highest expected real rate of return.* Our later discussions of particular assets will show, however, that “all else” often is not equal. Some assets may be valued by savers for attributes other than the expected real rate of return they offer. Savers care about two main characteristics of an asset other than its return: its **risk**, the variability it contributes to savers’ wealth, and its **liquidity**, the ease with which the asset can be sold or exchanged for goods.

1. **Risk.** An asset’s real return is usually unpredictable and may turn out to be quite different from what savers expected when they purchased the asset. In our previous example, savers found the expected real rate of return on an investment in bonds (10 percent) by subtracting from the expected rate of increase in the investment’s dollar value (20 percent) the expected rate of increase in dollar prices (10 percent). But if expectations are wrong and the bonds’ dollar value stays constant instead of rising by 20 percent, the saver ends up with a real return of negative 10 percent ( $= 0\text{ percent} - 10\text{ percent}$ ). Savers dislike uncertainty and are reluctant to hold assets that make their wealth highly variable. An asset with a high expected rate of return may thus appear undesirable to savers if its realized rate of return fluctuates widely.
2. **Liquidity.** Assets also differ according to the cost and speed at which savers can dispose of them. A house, for example, is not very liquid because its sale usually requires time and the services of brokers and inspectors. To sell a house quickly, one might have to sell at a relatively low price. In contrast, cash is the most liquid of all assets: It is always acceptable at face value as payment for goods or other assets. Savers prefer to hold some liquid assets as a precaution against unexpected pressing expenses that might force them to sell less-liquid assets at a loss. They will therefore consider an asset’s liquidity as well as its expected return and risk in deciding how much of it to hold.

## Interest Rates

As in other asset markets, participants in the foreign exchange market base their demands for deposits of different currencies on a comparison of these assets' expected rates of return. To compare returns on different deposits, market participants need two pieces of information. First, they need to know how the money values of the deposits will change. Second, they need to know how exchange rates will change so that they can translate rates of return measured in different currencies into comparable terms.

The first piece of information needed to compute the rate of return on a deposit of a particular currency is the currency's **interest rate**, the amount of that currency an individual can earn by lending a unit of the currency for a year. At a dollar interest rate of 0.10 (quoted as 10 percent per year), the lender of \$1 receives \$1.10 at the end of the year, \$1 of which is principal and 10 cents of which is interest. Looked at from the other side of the transaction, the interest rate on dollars is also the amount that must be paid to borrow \$1 for a year. When you buy a U.S. Treasury bill, you earn the interest rate on dollars because you are lending dollars to the U.S. government.

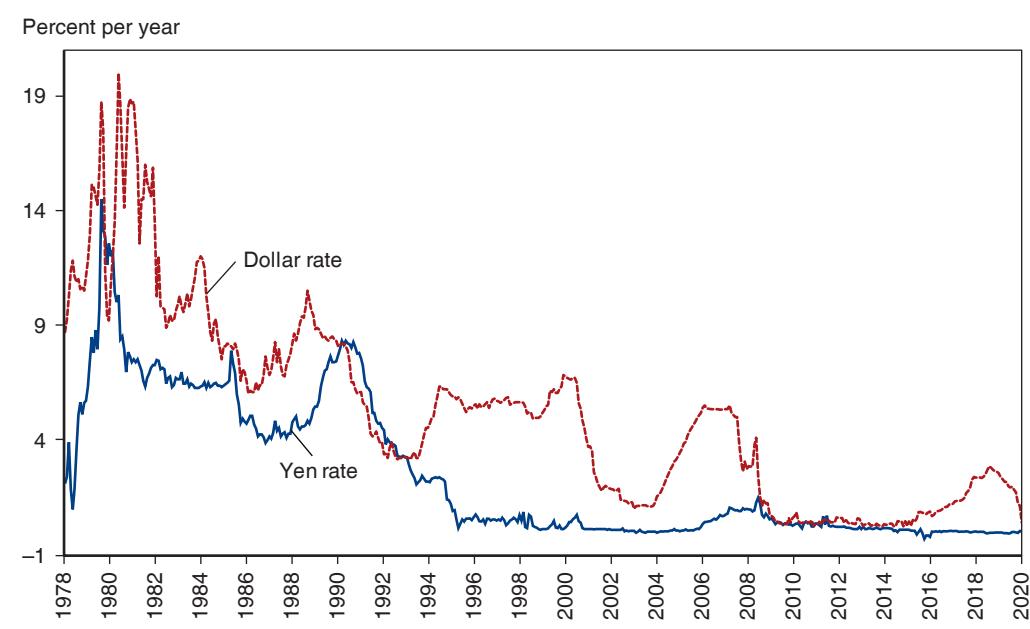
Interest rates play an important role in the foreign exchange market because the large deposits traded there pay interest, each at a rate reflecting its currency of denomination. For example, when the interest rate on dollars is 10 percent per year, a \$100,000 deposit is worth \$110,000 after a year; when the interest rate on euros is 5 percent per year, a €100,000 deposit is worth €105,000 after a year. Deposits pay interest because they are really loans from the depositor to the bank. When a corporation or a financial institution deposits a currency in a bank, it is lending that currency to the bank rather than using it for some current expenditure. In other words, the depositor is acquiring an asset denominated in the currency it deposits.

The dollar interest rate is simply the dollar rate of return on dollar deposits. You "buy" the deposit by lending a bank \$100,000, and when you are paid back with 10 percent interest at the end of the year, your asset is worth \$110,000. This gives a rate of return of  $(110,000 - 100,000)/100,000 = 0.10$ , or 10 percent per year. Similarly, a foreign currency's interest rate measures the foreign currency return on deposits of that currency. Figure 14-2 shows the monthly behavior of interest rates on the dollar and the Japanese yen from 1978 to 2020. These interest rates are not measured in comparable terms, so there is no reason for them to be close to each other or to move in similar ways over time.

## Exchange Rates and Asset Returns

The interest rates offered by a dollar and a euro deposit tell us how their dollar and euro values will change over a year. The other piece of information we need in order to compare the rates of return offered by dollar and euro deposits is the expected change in the dollar/euro exchange rate over the year. To see which deposit, euro or dollar, offers a higher expected rate of return, you must ask the question: If I use dollars to buy a euro deposit, how many dollars will I get back after a year? When you answer this question, you are calculating the *dollar* rate of return on a euro deposit because you are comparing its *dollar* price today with its *dollar* value a year from today.

To see how to approach this type of calculation, let's look at the following situation: Suppose that today's exchange rate (quoted in American terms) is \$1.10 per euro but that you expect the rate to be \$1.165 per euro in a year (perhaps because you expect unfavorable developments in the U.S. economy). Suppose also that the dollar interest rate is 10 percent per year while the euro interest rate is 5 percent per year. This means

**FIGURE 14-2****Interest Rates on Dollar and Yen Deposits, 1978–2020**

Since dollar and yen interest rates are not measured in comparable terms, they can move quite differently over time.

**Source:** *Datasream*. The figure shows three-month interest rates.

a deposit of \$1.00 pays \$1.10 after a year while a deposit of €1 pays €1.05 after a year. Which of these deposits offers the higher return?

You can find the answer in five steps.

**Step 1.** Use today's dollar/euro exchange rate to figure out the dollar price of a euro deposit of, say, €1. If the exchange rate today is \$1.10 per euro, the dollar price of a €1 deposit is just \$1.10.

**Step 2.** Use the euro interest rate to find the amount of euros you will have a year from now if you purchase a €1 deposit today. You know that the interest rate on euro deposits is 5 percent per year. So at the end of a year, your €1 deposit will be worth €1.05.

**Step 3.** Use the exchange rate you expect to prevail a year from today to calculate the expected dollar value of the euro amount determined in Step 2. Since you expect the dollar to depreciate against the euro over the coming year so that the exchange rate 12 months from today is \$1.165 per euro, you expect the dollar value of your euro deposit after a year to be \$1.165 per euro  $\times$  €1.05 = \$1.223.

**Step 4.** Now that you know the dollar price of a €1 deposit today (\$1.10) and can forecast its value in a year (\$1.223), you can calculate the expected *dollar* rate of return on a euro deposit as  $(1.223 - 1.10)/1.10 = 0.11$ , or 11 percent per year.

**Step 5.** Since the dollar rate of return on dollar deposits (the dollar interest rate) is only 10 percent per year, you expect to do better by holding your wealth in the form of euro deposits. Despite the fact that the dollar interest rate exceeds the euro interest

rate by 5 percent per year, the euro's expected appreciation against the dollar gives euro holders a prospective capital gain that is large enough to make euro deposits the higher-yield asset.

### A Simple Rule

A simple rule shortens this calculation. First, define the **rate of depreciation** of the dollar against the euro as the percentage increase in the dollar/euro exchange rate over a year. In the last example, the dollar's expected depreciation rate is  $(1.165 - 1.10)/1.10 = 0.059$ , or roughly 6 percent per year. Once you have calculated the rate of depreciation of the dollar against the euro, our rule is this: *The dollar rate of return on euro deposits is approximately the euro interest rate plus the rate of depreciation of the dollar against the euro.* In other words, to translate the euro return on euro deposits into dollar terms, you need to add the rate at which the euro's dollar price rises over a year to the euro interest rate.

In our example, the sum of the euro interest rate (5 percent) and the expected depreciation rate of the dollar (roughly 6 percent) is about 11 percent, which is what we found to be the expected dollar return on euro deposits in our first calculation.

We summarize our discussion by introducing some notation:

$R_{\epsilon}$  = today's interest rate on one-year euro deposits,

$E_{\$/\epsilon}$  = today's dollar/euro exchange rate (number of dollars per euro),

$E_{\$/\epsilon}^e$  = dollar/euro exchange rate (number of dollars per euro) expected to prevail a year from today.

(The superscript *e* attached to this last exchange rate indicates that it is a forecast of the future exchange rate based on what people know today.)

Using these symbols, we write the expected rate of return on a euro deposit, measured in terms of dollars, as the sum of (1) the euro interest rate and (2) the expected rate of dollar depreciation against the euro:

$$R_{\epsilon} + (E_{\$/\epsilon}^e - E_{\$/\epsilon})/E_{\$/\epsilon}.$$

This expected return is what must be compared with the interest rate on one-year dollar deposits,  $R_{\$}$ , in deciding whether dollar or euro deposits offer the higher expected rate of return.<sup>7</sup> The expected rate of return difference between dollar and euro deposits is therefore equal to  $R_{\$}$  less the previous expression,

$$R_{\$} - [R_{\epsilon} + (E_{\$/\epsilon}^e - E_{\$/\epsilon})/E_{\$/\epsilon}] = R_{\$} - R_{\epsilon} - (E_{\$/\epsilon}^e - E_{\$/\epsilon})/E_{\$/\epsilon}. \quad (14-1)$$

*When the difference above is positive, dollar deposits yield the higher expected rate of return; when it is negative, euro deposits yield the higher expected rate of return.*

Table 14-3 carries out some illustrative comparisons. In case 1, the interest difference in favor of dollar deposits is 4 percent per year ( $R_{\$} - R_{\epsilon} = 0.10 - 0.06 = 0.04$ ), and

---

<sup>7</sup>If you compute the expected dollar return on euro deposits using the exact five-step method we described before introducing the simple rule, you'll find that it actually equals

$$(1 + R_{\epsilon})(E_{\$/\epsilon}^e/E_{\$/\epsilon}) - 1.$$

This exact formula can be rewritten, however, as

$$R_{\epsilon} + (E_{\$/\epsilon}^e - E_{\$/\epsilon})/E_{\$/\epsilon} + R_{\epsilon} \times (E_{\$/\epsilon}^e - E_{\$/\epsilon})/E_{\$/\epsilon}.$$

The expression above is very close to the formula derived from the simple rule when, as is usually the case, the product  $R_{\epsilon} \times (E_{\$/\epsilon}^e - E_{\$/\epsilon})/E_{\$/\epsilon}$  is a small number.

TABLE 14-3

Comparing Dollar Rates of Return on Dollar and Euro Deposits

Case	Dollar Interest Rate	Euro Interest Rate	Expected Rate of Dollar Depreciation against Euro	Rate of Return Difference between Dollar and Euro Deposits
	$R_{\$}$	$R_{\epsilon}$	$\frac{E_{\$/\epsilon}^e - E_{\$/\epsilon}}{E_{\$/\epsilon}}$	$R_{\$} - R_{\epsilon} - \frac{(E_{\$/\epsilon}^e - E_{\$/\epsilon})}{E_{\$/\epsilon}}$
1	0.10	0.06	0.00	0.04
2	0.10	0.06	0.04	0.00
3	0.10	0.06	0.08	-0.04
4	0.10	0.12	-0.04	0.02

no change in the exchange rate is expected [ $(E_{\$/\epsilon}^e - E_{\$/\epsilon})/E_{\$/\epsilon} = 0.00$ ]. This means that the expected annual real rate of return on dollar deposits is 4 percent higher than that on euro deposits, so that, other things equal, you would prefer to hold your wealth as dollar rather than euro deposits.

In case 2, the interest difference is the same (4 percent), but it is just offset by an expected depreciation rate of the dollar of 4 percent. The two assets therefore have the same expected rate of return.

Case 3 is similar to the one discussed earlier: A 4 percent interest difference in favor of dollar deposits is more than offset by an 8 percent expected depreciation of the dollar, so euro deposits are preferred by market participants.

In case 4, there is a 2 percent interest difference in favor of euro deposits, but the dollar is expected to *appreciate* against the euro by 4 percent over the year. The expected rate of return on dollar deposits is therefore 2 percent per year higher than that on euro deposits.

So far, we have been translating all returns into dollar terms. But the rate of return differentials we calculated would have been the same had we chosen to express returns in terms of euros or in terms of some third currency. Suppose, for example, we wanted to measure the return on dollar deposits in terms of euros. Following our simple rule, we would add to the dollar interest rate  $R_{\$}$  the expected rate of depreciation of the euro against the dollar. But the expected rate of depreciation of the euro against the dollar is approximately the expected **rate of appreciation** of the dollar against the euro, that is, the expected rate of depreciation of the dollar against the euro with a minus sign in front of it. This means that in terms of euros, the return on a dollar deposit is

$$R_{\$} - (E_{\$/\epsilon}^e - E_{\$/\epsilon})/E_{\$/\epsilon}.$$

The difference between the expression above and  $R_{\epsilon}$  is identical to the right-hand side of equation (14-1). Thus, it makes no difference to our comparison whether we measure returns in terms of dollars or euros, as long as we measure them both in terms of the same currency.

### Return, Risk, and Liquidity in the Foreign Exchange Market

We observed earlier that a saver deciding which assets to hold may care about the assets' riskiness and liquidity in addition to their expected real rates of return. Similarly, the demand for foreign currency assets depends not only on returns but also on risk and liquidity. Even if the expected dollar return on euro deposits is higher than that on dollar deposits, for example, people may be reluctant to hold euro deposits if the payoff to holding them varies erratically.

There is no consensus among economists about the importance of risk in the foreign exchange market. Even the definition of “foreign exchange risk” is a topic of debate. For now, we will avoid these complex questions by assuming that the real returns on all deposits have equal riskiness, regardless of the currency of denomination. In other words, we are assuming that risk differences do not influence the demand for foreign currency assets. We discuss the role of foreign exchange risk in greater detail, however, in Chapter 18.<sup>8</sup>

Liquidity factors may influence some market participants when they decide which currencies to hold. Most of these participants are firms and individuals conducting international trade. An American importer of French fashion products or wines, for example, may find it convenient to hold euros for routine payments even if the expected rate of return on euros is lower than that on dollars. Because payments connected with international trade make up a very small fraction of total foreign exchange transactions, we ignore the liquidity motive for holding foreign currencies.

We are therefore assuming for now that participants in the foreign exchange market base their demands for foreign currency assets exclusively on a comparison of those assets’ expected rates of return. The main reason for making this assumption is that it simplifies our analysis of how exchange rates are determined in the foreign exchange market. In addition, the risk and liquidity motives for holding foreign currencies appear to be of secondary importance for many of the international macroeconomic issues discussed in the next few chapters.

## Equilibrium in the Foreign Exchange Market

We now use what we have learned about the demand for foreign currency assets to describe how exchange rates are determined. We will show that the exchange rate at which the market settles is the one that makes market participants content to hold existing supplies of deposits of all currencies. When market participants willingly hold the existing supplies of deposits of all currencies, we say that the foreign exchange market is in equilibrium.

The description of exchange rate determination given in this section is only a first step: We will be able to give a full explanation of the exchange rate’s current level only after we examine how participants in the foreign exchange market form their expectations about the exchange rates they expect to prevail in the future. The next two chapters look at the factors that influence expectations of future exchange rates. For now, however, we will take expected future exchange rates as given.

### Interest Parity: The Basic Equilibrium Condition

*The foreign exchange market is in equilibrium when deposits of all currencies offer the same expected rate of return.* We define the **interest parity condition** as the requirement that the expected returns on deposits of any two currencies are equal when measured in the same currency. Interest parity is satisfied when potential holders of foreign currency

---

<sup>8</sup>In discussing spot and forward foreign exchange transactions, some textbooks make a distinction between foreign exchange “speculators”—market participants who allegedly care only about expected returns—and “hedgers”—market participants whose concern is to avoid risk. We depart from this textbook tradition because it can mislead the unwary: While the speculative and hedging motives are both potentially important in exchange rate determination, the same person can be both a speculator and a hedger if she cares about both return and risk. Our tentative assumption that risk is unimportant in determining the demand for foreign currency assets means, in terms of the traditional language, that the speculative motive for holding foreign currencies is far more important than the hedging motive. As noted in the text, however, we will consider the role of risk more closely later on in this book.

deposits view them all as equally desirable assets, provided their expected rates of return are the same.

Let's see why the foreign exchange market is in equilibrium only when the interest parity condition holds. Suppose the dollar interest rate is 10 percent and the euro interest rate is 6 percent, but that the dollar is expected to depreciate against the euro at an 8 percent rate over a year. (This is case 3 in Table 14-3.) In the circumstances described, the expected rate of return on euro deposits would be 4 percent per year higher than that on dollar deposits. We assumed at the end of the last section that individuals always prefer to hold deposits of currencies offering the highest expected return. This implies that if the expected return on euro deposits is 4 percent greater than that on dollar deposits, no one will be willing to continue holding dollar deposits, and holders of dollar deposits will be trying to sell them for euro deposits. There will therefore be an excess supply of dollar deposits and an excess demand for euro deposits in the foreign exchange market.

As a contrasting example, suppose dollar deposits again offer a 10 percent interest rate but euro deposits offer a 12 percent rate and the dollar is expected to *appreciate* against the euro by 4 percent over the coming year. (This is case 4 in Table 14-3.) Now the return on dollar deposits is 2 percent higher. In this case, no one would demand euro deposits, so they would be in excess supply and dollar deposits would be in excess demand.

When, however, the dollar interest rate is 10 percent, the euro interest rate is 6 percent, and the dollar's expected depreciation rate against the euro is 4 percent, dollar and euro deposits offer the same rate of return and participants in the foreign exchange market are equally willing to hold either. (This is case 2 in Table 14-3.)

Only when all expected rates of return are equal—that is, when the interest parity condition holds—is there no excess supply of some type of deposit and no excess demand for another. The foreign exchange market is in equilibrium when no type of deposit is in excess demand or excess supply. We can therefore say that the foreign exchange market is in equilibrium when, and only when, the interest parity condition holds.

To represent interest parity between dollar and euro deposits symbolically, we use equation (14-1), which shows the difference between the two assets' expected rates of return measured in dollars. The expected rates of return are equal when

$$R_{\$} = R_{\epsilon} + (E_{\$/\epsilon}^e - E_{\$/\epsilon})/E_{\$/\epsilon}. \quad (14-2)$$

You probably suspect that when dollar deposits offer a higher return than euro deposits, the dollar will appreciate against the euro as investors all try to shift their funds into dollars. Conversely, the dollar should depreciate against the euro when it is euro deposits that initially offer the higher return. This intuition is exactly correct. To understand the mechanism at work, however, we must take a careful look at how exchange rate changes like these help to maintain equilibrium in the foreign exchange market.

## How Changes in the Current Exchange Rate Affect Expected Returns

As a first step in understanding how the foreign exchange market finds its equilibrium, we examine how changes in today's exchange rate affect the expected return on a foreign currency deposit when interest rates and expectations about the future exchange rate do not change. Our analysis will show that, other things equal, depreciation of a country's

currency today *lowers* the expected domestic currency return on foreign currency deposits. Conversely, appreciation of the domestic currency today, all else equal, *raises* the domestic currency return expected of foreign currency deposits.

It is easiest to see why these relationships hold by looking at an example: How does a change in today's dollar/euro exchange rate, all else held constant, change the expected return, measured in terms of dollars, on euro deposits? Suppose today's dollar/euro rate is \$1.00 per euro and the exchange rate you expect for this day next year is \$1.05 per euro. Then the expected rate of dollar depreciation against the euro is  $(1.05 - 1.00)/1.00 = 0.05$ , or 5 percent per year. This means that when you buy a euro deposit, you not only earn the interest  $R_{\text{€}}$  but also get a 5 percent "bonus" in terms of dollars. Now suppose today's exchange rate suddenly jumps up to \$1.03 per euro (a depreciation of the dollar and an appreciation of the euro), but the expected future rate is *still* \$1.05 per euro. What happens to the "bonus" you expected to get from the euro's increase in value in terms of dollars? The expected rate of dollar depreciation is now only  $(1.05 - 1.03)/1.03 = 0.019$ , or 1.9 percent instead of 5 percent. Since  $R_{\text{€}}$  has not changed, the dollar return on euro deposits, which is the sum of  $R_{\text{€}}$  and the expected rate of dollar depreciation, has *fallen* by 3.1 percentage points per year (5 percent – 1.9 percent).

In Table 14-4, we work out the dollar return on euro deposits for various levels of today's dollar/euro exchange rate  $E_{\$/\text{€}}$ , always assuming that the expected *future* exchange rate remains fixed at \$1.05 per euro and the euro interest rate is 5 percent per year. As you can see, a rise in today's dollar/euro exchange rate (a depreciation of the dollar against the euro) always *lowers* the expected dollar return on euro deposits (as in our example), while a fall in today's dollar/euro exchange rate (an appreciation of the dollar against the euro) always *raises* this return.

It may run counter to your intuition that a depreciation of the dollar against the euro makes euro deposits less attractive relative to dollar deposits (by lowering the expected dollar return on euro deposits) while an appreciation of the dollar makes euro deposits more attractive. This result will seem less surprising if you remember we have assumed that the expected future dollar/euro rate and interest rates do not change. A dollar depreciation today, for example, means the dollar now needs to depreciate by a *smaller* amount to reach any given expected future level. If the expected future dollar/euro exchange rate does not change when the dollar depreciates today,

**TABLE 14-4 Today's Dollar/Euro Exchange Rate and the Expected Dollar Return on Euro Deposits When  $E_{\$/\text{€}}^e = \$1.05$  per Euro**

Today's Dollar/Euro Exchange Rate $E_{\$/\text{€}}$	Interest Rate on Euro Deposits $R_{\text{€}}$	Expected Dollar Return on Euro Deposits	
		Expected Dollar Depreciation Rate against Euro $\frac{1.05 - E_{\$/\text{€}}}{E_{\$/\text{€}}}$	Expected Dollar Return on Euro Deposits $R_{\text{€}} + \frac{1.05 - E_{\$/\text{€}}}{E_{\$/\text{€}}}$
1.07	0.05	-0.019	0.031
1.05	0.05	0.00	0.05
1.03	0.05	0.019	0.069
1.02	0.05	0.029	0.079
1.00	0.05	0.05	0.10

the dollar's expected future depreciation against the euro therefore falls, or, alternatively, the dollar's expected future appreciation rises. Since interest rates also are unchanged, today's dollar depreciation thus makes euro deposits less attractive compared with dollar deposits.

Put another way, a current dollar depreciation that affects neither exchange rate expectations nor interest rates leaves the expected future dollar payoff of a euro deposit the same but raises the deposit's current dollar cost. This change naturally makes euro deposits less attractive relative to dollar deposits.

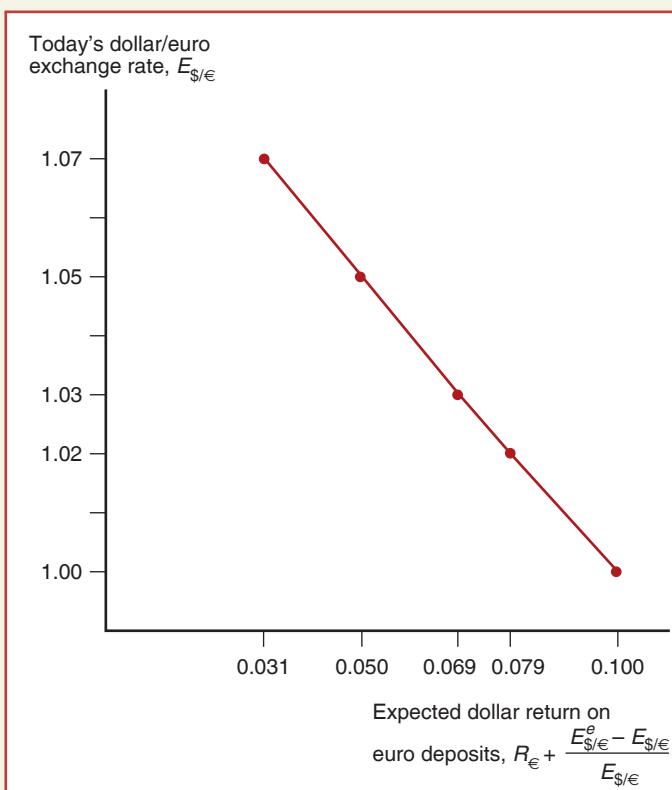
It may also run counter to your intuition that *today's* exchange rate can change while the exchange rate expected for the *future* does not. We will indeed study cases later in this book when both of these rates do change at once. We nonetheless hold the expected future exchange rate constant in the present discussion because that is the clearest way to illustrate the effect of today's exchange rate on expected returns. If it helps, you can imagine we are looking at the impact of a *temporary* change so brief that it has no effect on the exchange rate expected for next year.

Figure 14-3 shows the calculations in Table 14-4 in a graphic form that will be helpful in our analysis of exchange rate determination. The vertical axis in the figure

**FIGURE 14-3**

**The Relation between the Current Dollar/Euro Exchange Rate and the Expected Dollar Return on Euro Deposits**

Given that  $E_{\$/\epsilon}^e = 1.05$  and  $R_\epsilon = 0.05$ , an appreciation of the dollar against the euro raises the expected return on euro deposits, measured in terms of dollars.



measures today's dollar/euro exchange rate and the horizontal axis measures the expected dollar return on euro deposits. For *fixed* values of the expected future dollar/euro exchange rate and the euro interest rate, the relation between today's dollar/euro exchange rate and the expected dollar return on euro deposits defines a downward-sloping schedule.

### The Equilibrium Exchange Rate

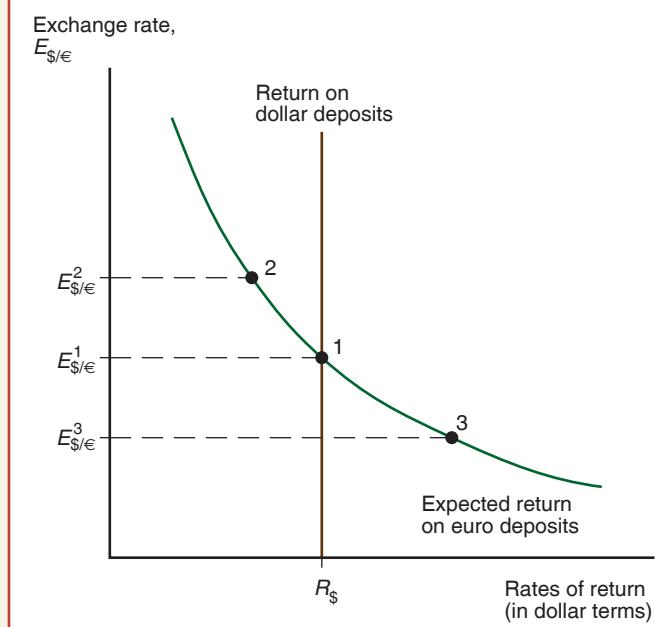
Now that we understand why the interest parity condition must hold for the foreign exchange market to be in equilibrium and how today's exchange rate affects the expected return on foreign currency deposits, we can see how equilibrium exchange rates are determined. Our main conclusion will be that exchange rates always adjust to maintain interest parity. We continue to assume the dollar interest rate  $R_{\$}$ , the euro interest rate  $R_{\text{€}}$ , and the expected future dollar/euro exchange rate  $E_{\$/\text{€}}$  are all given.

Figure 14-4 illustrates how the equilibrium dollar/euro exchange rate is determined under these assumptions. The vertical schedule in the graph indicates the given level of  $R_{\$}$ , the return on dollar deposits measured in terms of dollars. The downward-sloping schedule shows how the expected return on euro deposits, measured in terms of dollars, depends on the current dollar/euro exchange rate. This second schedule is derived in the same way as the one shown in Figure 14-3.

**FIGURE 14-4**

#### Determination of the Equilibrium Dollar/Euro Exchange Rate

Equilibrium in the foreign exchange market is at point 1, where the expected dollar returns on dollar and euro deposits are equal.



The equilibrium dollar/euro rate is the one indicated by the intersection of the two schedules at point 1,  $E_{\$/\text{€}}^1$ . At this exchange rate, the returns on dollar and euro deposits are equal, so that the interest parity condition (14-2),

$$R_{\$} = R_{\text{€}} + (E_{\$/\text{€}}^{\text{e}} - E_{\$/\text{€}}^1) / E_{\$/\text{€}}^1,$$

is satisfied.

Let's see why the exchange rate will tend to settle at point 1 in Figure 14-4 if it is initially at a point such as 2 or 3. Suppose first that we are at point 2, with the exchange rate equal to  $E_{\$/\text{€}}^2$ . The downward-sloping schedule measuring the expected dollar return on euro deposits tells us that at the exchange rate  $E_{\$/\text{€}}^2$ , the rate of return on euro deposits is less than the rate of return on dollar deposits,  $R_{\$}$ . In this situation, anyone holding euro deposits wishes to sell them for the more lucrative dollar deposits: The foreign exchange market is out of equilibrium because participants such as banks and multinational corporations are *unwilling* to hold euro deposits.

How does the exchange rate adjust? The unhappy owners of euro deposits attempt to sell them for dollar deposits, but because the return on dollar deposits is higher than that on euro deposits at the exchange rate  $E_{\$/\text{€}}^2$ , no holder of a dollar deposit is willing to sell it for a euro deposit at that rate. As euro holders try to entice dollar holders to trade by offering them a better price for dollars, the dollar/euro exchange rate falls toward  $E_{\$/\text{€}}^1$ ; that is, euros become cheaper in terms of dollars. Once the exchange rate reaches  $E_{\$/\text{€}}^1$ , euro and dollar deposits offer equal returns, and holders of euro deposits no longer have an incentive to try to sell them for dollars. The foreign exchange market is therefore in equilibrium. In falling from  $E_{\$/\text{€}}^2$  to  $E_{\$/\text{€}}^1$ , the exchange rate equalizes the expected returns on the two types of deposit by increasing the rate at which the dollar is expected to depreciate in the future, thereby making euro deposits more attractive.

The same process works in reverse if we are initially at point 3 with an exchange rate of  $E_{\$/\text{€}}^3$ . At point 3, the return on euro deposits exceeds that on dollar deposits, so there is now an excess supply of the latter. As unwilling holders of dollar deposits bid for the more attractive euro deposits, the price of euros in terms of dollars tends to rise; that is, the dollar tends to depreciate against the euro. When the exchange rate has moved to  $E_{\$/\text{€}}^1$ , rates of return are equalized across currencies and the market is in equilibrium. The depreciation of the dollar from  $E_{\$/\text{€}}^3$  to  $E_{\$/\text{€}}^1$  makes euro deposits less attractive relative to dollar deposits by reducing the rate at which the dollar is expected to depreciate in the future.<sup>9</sup>

### Interest Rates, Expectations, and Equilibrium

Having seen how exchange rates are determined by interest parity, we now take a look at how current exchange rates are affected by changes in interest rates and in expectations about the future, the two factors we held constant in our previous discussions.

---

<sup>9</sup>We could have developed our diagram from the perspective of Europe, with the euro/dollar exchange rate  $E_{\text{€}/\$} (= 1/E_{\$/\text{€}})$  on the vertical axis, a schedule vertical at  $R_{\text{€}}$  to indicate the euro return on euro deposits, and a downward-sloping schedule showing how the euro return on dollar deposits varies with  $E_{\text{€}/\$}$ . An exercise at the end of the chapter asks you to show that this alternative way of looking at equilibrium in the foreign exchange market gives the same answers as the method used here in the text.

We will see that the exchange rate (which is the relative price of two assets) responds to factors that alter the expected rates of return on those two assets.

### The Effect of Changing Interest Rates on the Current Exchange Rate

We often read in the newspaper that the dollar is strong because U.S. interest rates are high or that it is falling because U.S. interest rates are falling. Can these statements be explained using our analysis of the foreign exchange market?

To answer this question, we again turn to a diagram. Figure 14-5 shows a rise in the interest rate on dollars, from  $R_{\$}^1$  to  $R_{\$}^2$  as a rightward shift of the vertical dollar deposits return schedule. At the initial exchange rate  $E_{\$/\epsilon}^1$ , the expected return on dollar deposits is now higher than that on euro deposits by an amount equal to the distance between points 1 and 1'. As we have seen, this difference causes the dollar to appreciate to  $E_{\$/\epsilon}^2$  (point 2). Because there has been no change in the euro interest rate or in the expected future exchange rate, the dollar's appreciation today raises the expected dollar return on euro deposits by increasing the rate at which the dollar is expected to depreciate in the future.

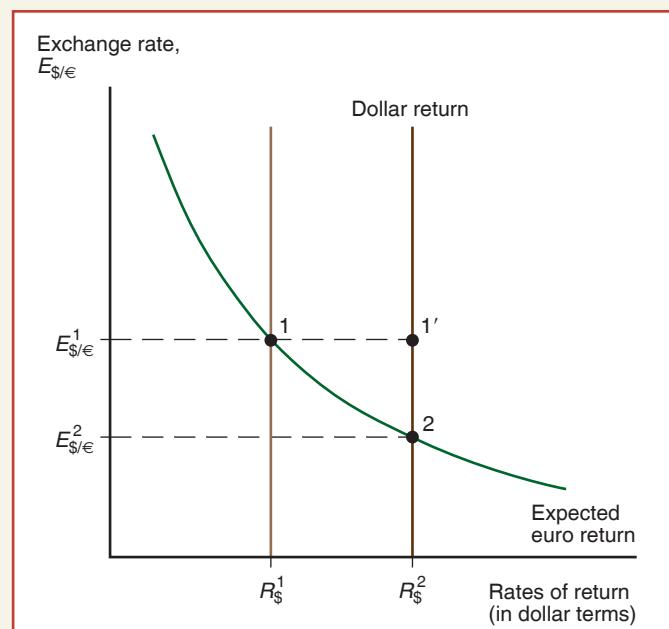
Figure 14-6 shows the effect of a rise in the euro interest rate  $R_{\epsilon}$ . This change causes the downward-sloping schedule (which measures the expected dollar return on euro deposits) to shift rightward. (To see why, ask yourself how a rise in the euro interest rate alters the dollar return on euro deposits, given the current exchange rate and the expected future rate.)

At the initial exchange rate  $E_{\$/\epsilon}^1$ , the expected depreciation rate of the dollar is the same as before the rise in  $R_{\epsilon}$ , so the expected return on euro deposits now exceeds that

**FIGURE 14-5**

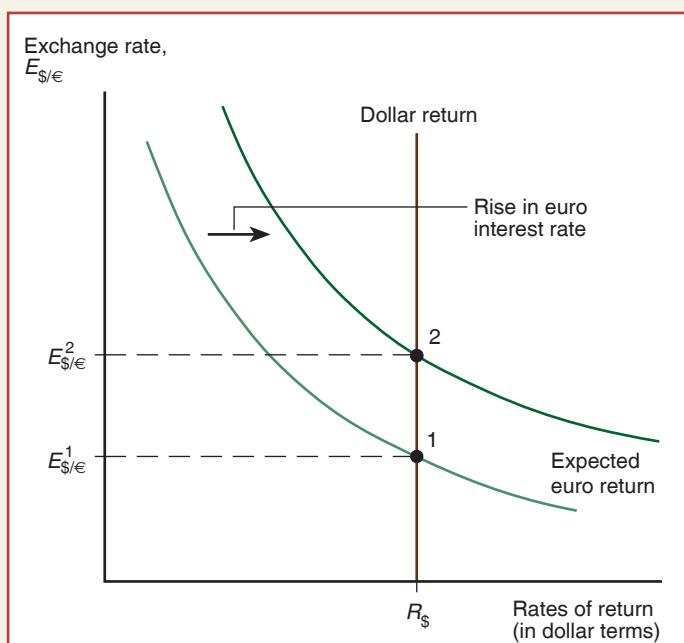
#### Effect of a Rise in the Dollar Interest Rate

A rise in the interest rate offered by dollar deposits from  $R_{\$}^1$  to  $R_{\$}^2$  causes the dollar to appreciate from  $E_{\$/\epsilon}^1$  (point 1) to  $E_{\$/\epsilon}^2$  (point 2).



**FIGURE 14-6**
**Effect of a Rise in the Euro Interest Rate**

A rise in the interest rate paid by euro deposits causes the dollar to depreciate from  $E_{\$/\epsilon}^1$  (point 1) to  $E_{\$/\epsilon}^2$  (point 2). (This figure also describes the effect of a rise in the expected future  $\$/\epsilon$  exchange rate.)



on dollar deposits. The dollar/euro exchange rate rises (from  $E_{\$/\epsilon}^1$  to  $E_{\$/\epsilon}^2$ ) to eliminate the excess supply of dollar assets at point 1. As before, the dollar's depreciation against the euro eliminates the excess supply of dollar assets by lowering the expected dollar rate of return on euro deposits. A rise in European interest rates therefore leads to a depreciation of the dollar against the euro or, looked at from the European perspective, an appreciation of the euro against the dollar.

Our discussion shows that, all else equal, *an increase in the interest paid on deposits of a currency causes that currency to appreciate against foreign currencies*.

Before we conclude that the newspaper account of the effect of interest rates on exchange rates is correct, we must remember that our assumption of a *constant* expected future exchange rate often is unrealistic. In many cases, a change in the expected future exchange rate will accompany a change in interest rates. This change in the expected future exchange rate will depend, in turn, on the economic causes of the interest rate change. We compare different possible relationships between interest rates and expected future exchange rates in Chapter 16. Keep in mind for now that in the real world, we cannot predict how a given interest rate change will alter exchange rates unless we know *why* the interest rate is changing.

### The Effect of Changing Expectations on the Current Exchange Rate

We may also use Figure 14-6 to study the effect on today's exchange rate of a rise in the expected future dollar/euro exchange rate,  $E_{\$/\epsilon}^e$ .

Given today's exchange rate, a rise in the expected future price of euros in terms of dollars raises the dollar's expected depreciation rate. For example, if today's exchange rate is \$1.00 per euro and the rate expected to prevail in a year is \$1.05 per euro, the expected depreciation rate of the dollar against the euro is  $(1.05 - 1.00)/1.00 = 0.05$ ; if the expected future exchange rate now rises to \$1.06 per euro, the expected depreciation rate also rises, to  $(1.06 - 1.00)/1.00 = 0.06$ .

Because a rise in the expected depreciation rate of the dollar raises the expected dollar return on euro deposits, the downward-sloping schedule shifts to the right, as in Figure 14-6. At the initial exchange rate  $E_{\$/\text{€}}^1$ , there is now an excess supply of dollar deposits: Euro deposits offer a higher expected rate of return (measured in dollar terms) than do dollar deposits. The dollar therefore depreciates against the euro until equilibrium is reached at point 2.

We conclude that, all else equal, *a rise in the expected future exchange rate causes a rise in the current exchange rate. Similarly, a fall in the expected future exchange rate causes a fall in the current exchange rate.*

## CASE STUDY



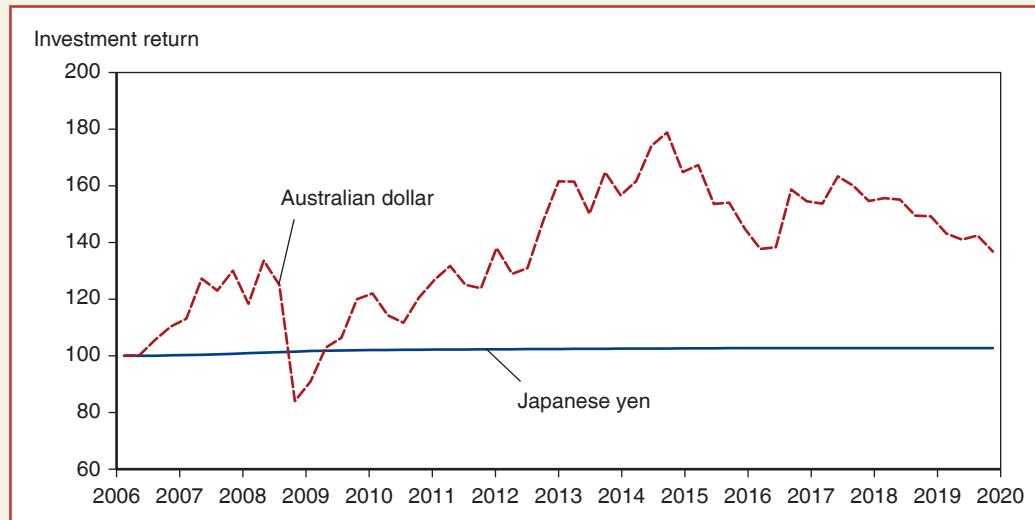
### What Explains the Carry Trade?

Over much of the 2000s, Japanese yen interest rates were close to zero (as Figure 14-2 shows) while Australia's interest rates were comfortably positive, climbing to over 7 percent per year by the spring of 2008. While it might therefore have appeared attractive to borrow yen and invest the proceeds in Australian dollar bonds, the interest parity condition implies that such a strategy should not be *systematically* profitable: On average, shouldn't the interest advantage of Australian dollars be wiped out by relative appreciation of the yen?

Nonetheless, market actors ranging from Japanese housewives to sophisticated hedge funds did in fact pursue this strategy, investing billions in Australian dollars and driving that currency's value up, rather than down, against the yen. More generally, international investors frequently borrow low-interest currencies (called "funding" currencies) and buy high-interest currencies (called "investment" currencies), with results that can be profitable over long periods. This activity is called the *carry trade*, and while it is generally impossible to document the extent of carry trade positions accurately, they can become very large when sizable international interest differentials open up. Is the prevalence of the carry trade evidence that interest parity is wrong?

The honest answer is that while interest parity does not hold exactly in practice—in part because of the risk and liquidity factors mentioned earlier—economists are still working hard to understand if the carry trade requires additional explanation. Their work is likely to throw further light on the functioning of foreign exchange markets in particular and financial markets in general.

One important hazard of the carry trade is that investment currencies (the high-interest currencies that carry traders target) may experience abrupt crashes. Figure 14-7 illustrates this feature of foreign exchange markets, comparing the cumulative return to investing ¥100 in yen bonds and in Australian dollar bonds over different investment horizons, with the initial investment being made in the first quarter of 2006. As you can see, the yen investment yields next to nothing, whereas Australian dollars pay off handsomely at almost every horizon, not only because of a high interest rate but because the yen tended to fall against the Australian dollar through the summer of 2008. But in 2008, the Australian dollar crashed against the yen, falling in price from ¥100 to only ¥65 between July and December. Anyone who got into the business after mid-2009, however, consistently did better in Australian dollars. And anyone savvy enough to unwind the strategy in June 2008 could have made nearly a 40 percent return in about two and a half years rather than taking a sizable loss over three. The carry trade is obviously a very risky business.

**FIGURE 14-7**

### Cumulative Total Investment Return in Australian Dollars Compared with Japanese Yen, 2006–2020

The Australian dollar-yen carry trade has been profitable on average but is subject to sudden large reversals, as in 2008.

**Source:** Quarterly Japanese yen/Australian dollar exchange rate, 90-day Australia bank bill rate, and 90-day Japan certificate of deposit rate from FRED database. The chart compares the cumulative value over time of a ¥100 investment in Japanese interest-bearing 90-day bonds, rolled over every quarter, with the same yen investment converted into Australian dollars, invested in 90-day Australian bonds and rolled over every quarter, and then converted back into yen at the end of the investment period.

We can gain some insight into this pattern by imagining that investors expect a gradual 1 percent annual appreciation of the Australian dollar to occur with high probability (say, 90 percent) and a big 40 percent depreciation to occur with a 10 percent probability. Then the expected appreciation rate of the Australian dollar is:

$$\text{Expected appreciation} = (0.9) \times 1 - (0.1) \times 40 = -3.1 \text{ percent per year.}$$

The negative expected appreciation rate means that the yen is actually expected to appreciate *on average* against the Australian dollar, which is at least qualitatively consistent with interest parity. However, the probability of an Australian dollar crash occurring in the first six years of the investment is only  $1 - (0.9)^6 = 1 - 0.53 = 47$  percent, less than fifty-fifty.<sup>10</sup> The resulting pattern of cumulative returns could easily look much like the one shown in Figure 14-7. Calculations like these are suggestive, and although they are unlikely to explain the full magnitude of carry trade returns, researchers have found that investment currencies are particularly subject to abrupt crashes and funding currencies to abrupt appreciations.<sup>11</sup>

Complementary explanations based on risk and liquidity considerations have also been advanced. Often, abrupt currency movements occur during financial crises, which are situations in which other wealth is being lost and liquid cash is particularly valuable. In such circumstances, large losses on carry trade positions are extra painful and may force traders to sell other assets they own at a loss.<sup>12</sup> We will say much more about crises in later chapters, but we note for now that the Australian dollar collapse of late 2008 occurred in the midst of a severe global financial crisis.

When big carry trade positions emerge, the government officials responsible for international economic policies often lose sleep. In their early phase, carry trade dynamics will drive investment currencies higher as investors pile in and build up ever-larger exposures to a sudden depreciation of those currencies. This makes the crash bigger when it occurs, as wrong-footed investors all scramble to repay their funding loans. The result is greater exchange rate volatility in general as well as the possibility of big trader losses with negative repercussions in stock markets, bond markets, and markets for interbank loans.

---

<sup>10</sup>If crashes are independent events over time, the probability that a crash does *not* occur over six years is  $(0.9)^6$ . Therefore, the probability that a crash does occur in the six-year period is  $1 - (0.9)^6$ .

<sup>11</sup>See Markus K. Brunnermeier, Stefan Nagel, and Lasse H. Pedersen, "Carry Trades and Currency Crashes," *NBER Macroeconomics Annual* 23 (2008), pp. 313–347. These findings are consistent with the apparently greater empirical success of the interest parity condition over relatively long periods, as documented by Menzie Chinn, "The (Partial) Rehabilitation of Interest Rate Parity in the Floating Rate Era: Longer Horizons, Alternative Expectations, and Emerging Markets," *Journal of International Money and Finance* 25 (February 2006), pp. 7–21.

<sup>12</sup>See Brunnermeier et al., *ibid.*, as well as Craig Burnside, "Carry Trades and Risk," in Jessica James, Ian Marsh, and Lucio Sarno, eds., *Handbook of Exchange Rates* (Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, 2012), pp. 283–312.

## Forward Exchange Rates and Covered Interest Parity

We have seen that the forward exchange rate moves closely with the spot rate, but it has great importance in its own right, both as an indicator of market expectations and as a key price linking money markets in different currencies. In this section we will show that under the assumption that the interest parity condition always holds, a forward exchange rate equals the spot exchange rate expected to prevail on the forward contract's value date. We will also show how forward rates can connect national money markets closely even if interest parity does not hold and introduce (although not resolve) a market puzzle that has emerged since the global financial crisis that broke out in 2007–2008.

As the first step in the discussion, we point out the close connection among the forward exchange rate between two currencies, their spot exchange rate, and the interest rates on deposits denominated in those currencies. The connection is described by the **covered interest parity** (CIP) condition, which is similar to the (uncovered) interest parity (UIP) condition defining foreign exchange market equilibrium but involves the forward exchange rate rather than the expected future spot exchange rate.

To be concrete, we again consider dollar and euro deposits. Suppose you want to buy a euro deposit with dollars but would like to be *certain* about the number of dollars it will be worth at the end of a year. You can avoid exchange rate risk by buying a euro deposit and, at the same time, selling the proceeds of your investment forward. When you buy a euro deposit with dollars and at the same time sell the principal and interest forward for dollars, we say you have “covered” yourself, that is, avoided the possibility of an unexpected depreciation of the euro.

The covered interest parity condition states that the rates of return on dollar deposits and “covered” foreign deposits must be the same. An example will clarify the meaning of the condition and illustrate why it must always hold. Let  $F_{\$/\epsilon}$  stand for the one-year forward price of euros in terms of dollars, and suppose  $F_{\$/\epsilon} = \$1.113$  per euro. Assume that at the same time, the spot exchange rate is  $E_{\$/\epsilon} = 1.05$  per euro,  $R_{\$} = 0.10$ , and  $R_{\epsilon} = 0.04$ . The (dollar) rate of return on a dollar deposit is clearly 0.10, or 10 percent, per year. What is the rate of return on a covered euro deposit?

We answer this question as we did in the chapter. A €1 deposit costs \$1.05 today, and it is worth €1.04 after a year. If you sell €1.04 forward today at the forward exchange rate of \$1.113 per euro, the dollar value of your investment at the end of a year is  $(\$1.113 \text{ per euro}) \times (\epsilon 1.04) = \$1.158$ . The rate of return on a covered purchase of a euro deposit is therefore  $(1.158 - 1.05)/1.05 = 0.103$ . This 10.3 percent per year rate of return exceeds the 10 percent offered by dollar deposits, so covered interest parity does not hold. In this situation, no one would be willing to hold dollar deposits; everyone would prefer covered euro deposits. In other words, market pricing would present an arbitrage opportunity.

More formally, we can express the covered return on euro deposits as

$$\frac{F_{\$/\epsilon}(1 + R_{\epsilon}) - E_{\$/\epsilon}}{E_{\$/\epsilon}},$$

which is approximately equal to

$$R_{\epsilon} + \frac{F_{\$/\epsilon} - E_{\$/\epsilon}}{E_{\$/\epsilon}}$$

when the product  $R_{\text{€}} \times (F_{\$/\text{€}} - E_{\$/\text{€}})/E_{\$/\text{€}}$  is a small number. The covered interest parity condition can therefore be written

$$R_{\$} = R_{\text{€}} + (F_{\$/\text{€}} - E_{\$/\text{€}})/E_{\$/\text{€}}. \quad (14-3)$$

The quantity

$$(F_{\$/\text{€}} - E_{\$/\text{€}})/E_{\$/\text{€}}$$

is called the *forward premium* on euros against dollars. (It is also called the *forward discount* on dollars against euros.) Using this terminology, we can state the covered interest parity condition as follows: *The interest rate on dollar deposits equals the interest rate on euro deposits plus the forward premium on euros against dollars (the forward discount on dollars against euros).*

Up until the late 2000s, the covered interest parity condition held very closely for different foreign currency deposits issued within a single financial center.<sup>13</sup> Deviations from covered interest parity could occur, however, if the deposits being compared were located in different countries. For example, deviations could arise if asset holders feared that governments might impose regulations to prevent the free movement of foreign funds across national borders. Our derivation of the covered interest parity condition implicitly assumed there was no political risk of this kind—a good description of current conditions in advanced economies.

Deviations can occur also because of fears that banks will fail, making them unable to pay off large deposits, or that the counterparties to forward exchange transactions will not make good on their commitments to deliver currencies. For these reasons, big deviations from covered interest parity emerged around the time of the worldwide banking crisis that started in 2007–2008.<sup>14</sup> Figure 14-8 illustrates this development by graphing the difference between dollar interbank interest rates and the covered return to investing in three foreign interbank markets, measured in basis points (a basis point is one-hundredth of a percentage point).

Surprisingly, however, CIP did not reestablish itself after the 2007–2008 crisis passed, as Figure 14-8 also shows, even though banks and other market participants became financially stronger. In general, the deviations in Figure 14-8 tend to be negative, implying that it would be profitable to arbitrage by borrowing dollars, selling them for foreign currencies, and then investing the proceeds in foreign money markets while selling the

<sup>13</sup>Empirical evidence supporting the covered interest parity condition was provided, for example, by Frank McCormick in “Covered Interest Arbitrage: Unexploited Profits? Comment,” *Journal of Political Economy* 87 (April 1979), pp. 411–417, and by Kevin Clinton in “Transactions Costs and Covered Interest Arbitrage: Theory and Evidence,” *Journal of Political Economy* 96 (April 1988), pp. 358–370. For a broad survey, see the recent paper by Levich in Further Readings.

<sup>14</sup>For a more detailed discussion of the role of political risk in the forward exchange market, see Robert Z. Aliber, “The Interest Parity Theorem: A Reinterpretation,” *Journal of Political Economy* 81 (November/December 1973), pp. 1451–1459. Of course, actual government restrictions on cross-border money movements can also cause covered interest parity deviations. On the fear of bank and counterparty failure as a cause for deviations from covered interest parity, see Naohiko Baba and Frank Packer, “Interpreting Deviations from Covered Interest Parity During the Financial Market Turmoil of 2007–2008,” Working Paper No. 267, Bank for International Settlements, December 2008. Chapter 20 will discuss the events underlying this last paper. On covered interest parity during the euro crisis (to be discussed in Chapter 21), see Victoria Ivashina, David S. Scharfstein, and Jeremy C. Stein, “Dollar Funding and the Lending Behavior of Global Banks,” *Quarterly Journal of Economics* 130 (August 2015), pp. 1241–1281.

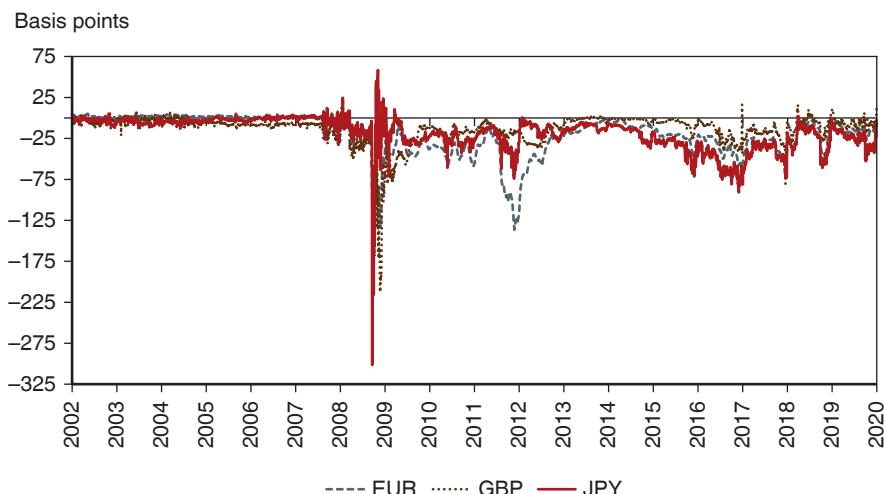


FIGURE 14-8

### U.S. Dollar Three-Month Interest Rate Less Covered Rate on Three-Month Foreign Bank Deposits

Covered interest parity held well up until the financial crisis that started in 2008, but it has not held closely since then. The three non-U.S. investment currencies shown are the euro, pound, and yen.

proceeds forward to complete the round trip out of dollars and back. In important research, Wenxin Du of the University of Chicago, Alexander Tepper of Columbia University, and Adrien Verdelhan of the Massachusetts Institute of Technology have shown that the reason for the recent breakdown of CIP is almost certainly *not* a fear of default by parties to CIP transactions.<sup>15</sup> Nonetheless, potential market arbitrageurs seem unwilling (or lack the borrowing capacity) to exploit fully potentially profitable CIP trades. The reasons behind this apparent puzzle are important for understanding current conditions in financial markets, and we will discuss them further in Chapter 20.

By comparing the *uncovered* interest parity (UIP) condition,

$$R_{\$} = R_{\text{€}} + (E_{\$/\text{€}}^e - E_{\$/\text{€}})/E_{\$/\text{€}},$$

with the *covered* interest parity condition, you will find that both conditions can be true at the same time only if the one-year forward rate quoted today equals the spot exchange rate people expect to materialize a year from today:

$$F_{\$/\text{€}} = E_{\$/\text{€}}^e. \quad (14-4)$$

<sup>15</sup>See Du, Tepper, and Verdelhan, "Deviations from Covered Interest Rate Parity," *Journal of Finance* 73 (June 2018), pp. 915–957.

This makes intuitive sense. When two parties agree to trade foreign exchange on a date in the future, the exchange rate they agree on is the spot rate they expect to prevail on that date. The important difference between covered and uncovered transactions should be kept in mind, however. Covered transactions do not involve exchange rate risk, whereas uncovered transactions do. This important distinction means that the simple equality between forward rates and expected future spot rates need not hold in theory; Chapter 18 will take this topic up. And as we have noted, UIP does not seem to hold in practice either, for reasons we will explore in Chapter 20.

The theory of covered interest parity helps explain the close correlation between the movements in spot and forward exchange rates shown in Table 14-1, a correlation typical of all major currencies. The unexpected economic events that affect expected asset returns often have a relatively small effect on international interest rate differences between deposits with short maturities (for example, three months). To maintain CIP, therefore, spot and forward rates for the corresponding maturities must change roughly in proportion to each other.

We conclude this section with one further application of the covered interest parity condition. To illustrate the role of forward exchange rates, the chapter used the example of an American importer of Japanese radios anxious about the \$/¥ exchange rate it would face in 30 days when the time came to pay the supplier. In the example, Best Buy solved the problem by selling forward for yen enough dollars to cover the cost of the radios. But Best Buy could have solved the problem in a different, more complicated way. It could have (1) borrowed dollars from a bank; (2) sold those dollars immediately for yen at the spot exchange rate and placed the yen in a 30-day yen bank deposit; (3) then, after 30 days, used the proceeds of the maturing yen deposit to pay the Japanese supplier; and (4) used the realized proceeds of the U.S. radio sales, less profits, to repay the original dollar loan.

Which course of action—the forward purchase of yen or the sequence of four transactions described in the preceding paragraph—is more profitable for the importer? We leave it to you, as an exercise, to show that the two strategies yield the same profit when the covered interest parity condition holds.

## SUMMARY

---

- An *exchange rate* is the price of one country's currency in terms of another country's currency. Exchange rates play a role in spending decisions because they enable us to translate different countries' prices into comparable terms. All else equal, a *depreciation* of a country's currency against foreign currencies (a rise in the home currency prices of foreign currencies) makes its exports cheaper and its imports more expensive. An *appreciation* of its currency (a fall in the home currency prices of foreign currencies) makes its exports more expensive and its imports cheaper.
- Exchange rates are determined in the *foreign exchange market*. The major participants in that market are commercial banks, international corporations, nonbank financial institutions, and national central banks. Commercial banks play a pivotal role in the market because they facilitate the exchange of interest-bearing bank deposits, which make up the bulk of foreign exchange trading. Even though foreign

exchange trading takes place in many financial centers around the world, modern communication technology links those centers together into a single market that is open 24 hours a day. An important category of foreign exchange trading is *forward* trading, in which parties agree to exchange currencies on some future date at a pre-negotiated exchange rate. In contrast, *spot* trades are settled immediately.

- Because the exchange rate is the relative price of two assets, it is most appropriately considered as being an asset price itself. The basic principle of asset pricing is that an asset's current value depends on its expected future purchasing power. In evaluating an asset, savers look at the expected *rate of return* it offers, that is, the rate at which the value of an investment in the asset is expected to rise over time. It is possible to measure an asset's expected rate of return in different ways, each depending on the units in which the asset's value is measured. Savers care about an asset's expected *real rate of return*, the rate at which its value expressed in terms of a representative output basket is expected to rise.
- When relative asset returns are relevant, as in the foreign exchange market, it is appropriate to compare expected changes in assets' currency values, provided those values are expressed in the same currency. If *risk* and *liquidity* factors do not strongly influence the demands for foreign currency assets, participants in the foreign exchange market always prefer to hold those assets yielding the highest expected rate of return.
- The returns on deposits traded in the foreign exchange market depend on *interest rates* and expected exchange rate changes. To compare the expected rates of return offered by dollar and euro deposits, for example, the return on euro deposits must be expressed in dollar terms by adding to the euro interest rate the expected *rate of depreciation* of the dollar against the euro (or *rate of appreciation* of the euro against the dollar) over the deposit's holding period.
- Equilibrium in the foreign exchange market requires *interest parity*; that is, deposits of all currencies must offer the same expected rate of return when returns are measured in comparable terms.
- For given interest rates and a given expectation of the future exchange rate, the interest parity condition tells us the current equilibrium exchange rate. When the expected dollar return on euro deposits exceeds that on dollar deposits, for example, the dollar immediately depreciates against the euro. Other things equal, a dollar depreciation today reduces the expected dollar return on euro deposits by reducing the depreciation rate of the dollar against the euro expected for the future. Similarly, when the expected return on euro deposits is below that on dollar deposits, the dollar must immediately appreciate against the euro. Other things equal, a current appreciation of the dollar makes euro deposits more attractive by increasing the dollar's expected future depreciation against the European currency.
- All else equal, a rise in dollar interest rates causes the dollar to appreciate against the euro while a rise in euro interest rates causes the dollar to depreciate against the euro. Today's exchange rate is also altered by changes in its expected future level. If there is a rise in the expected future level of the dollar/euro rate, for example, then at unchanged interest rates, today's dollar/euro exchange rate will also rise.
- Interest rates, spot exchange rates, and forward exchange rates must conform to the *covered interest parity* (CIP) condition if arbitrage opportunities between money markets for different currencies are absent. CIP differs from the (uncovered) interest parity condition (UIP) that underlies our theory of foreign exchange market equilibrium unless forward exchange rates equal expected future spot rates. As we will discuss in future chapters, this last condition need not always be satisfied, and even CIP itself has not held closely in recent years.

**KEY TERMS**

appreciation, p. 384	forward exchange rates, p. 388	rate of depreciation, p. 395
arbitrage, p. 387	interbank trading, p. 386	rate of return, p. 391
covered interest parity, p. 408	interest parity condition, p. 397	real rate of return, p. 391
depreciation, p. 384	interest rate, p. 393	risk, p. 392
exchange rate, p. 381	liquidity, p. 392	spot exchange rates, p. 388
foreign exchange market, p. 385	rate of appreciation, p. 396	vehicle currency, p. 388

**PROBLEMS**

1. In Delhi, a haircut costs 135 rupees (INR). The same haircut costs 15 Singapore dollars (SGD) in Singapore. At an exchange rate of 50 INR per SGD, what is the price of an Indian haircut in terms of a Singapore haircut? Keeping all else equal, how does this relative price change if the INR depreciates to 55 INR per SGD? Compared to the initial situation, does a Singapore haircut become more or less expensive in relation to an Indian haircut?
2. As defined in footnote 3, cross exchange rates are exchange rates quoted against currencies other than the U.S. dollar. If you return to Table 14-1, you will notice that it lists not only exchange rates against the dollar, but also cross rates against the euro and the pound sterling. The fact that we can derive the Swiss franc/Israeli shekel exchange rate, say, from the dollar/franc rate and the dollar/shekel rate follows from ruling out a potentially profitable arbitrage strategy known as *triangular arbitrage*. As an example, suppose the Swiss franc price of a shekel were below the Swiss franc price of a dollar times the dollar price of a shekel. Explain why, rather than buying shekels with dollars, it would be cheaper to buy Swiss francs with dollars and use the francs to buy the shekels. Thus, the hypothesized situation offers a riskless profit opportunity and therefore is not consistent with profit maximization.
3. Table 14-1 reports exchange rates not only against the U.S. dollar, but also against the euro and the pound sterling. (Each row gives the price of the dollar, euro, and pound, respectively, in terms of a different currency.) At the same time, the table gives the spot dollar prices of the euro (\$1.1219 per euro) and the pound sterling (\$1.2597 per pound). Pick any five currencies from the table and show that the three quoted spot exchange rates (in terms of dollars, euros, and pounds) approximately rule out triangular arbitrage. Why do we need to add the word “approximately”?
4. Petroleum is sold in a world market and tends to be priced in U.S. dollars. The Phosphate Group of Morocco must import petroleum to produce fertilizer and other chemicals. How are its profits affected when the Dirham (Moroccan currency) depreciates against the dollar?
5. Calculate the euro rates of return on the following assets:
  - a painting whose price rises from €200,000 to €250,000 in a year.
  - A diamond whose price rises from €20 000 to €21 000 between 2014 and 2015.
  - A £10,000 deposit in a London bank in a year when the interest rate on pounds is 2 percent and the €/£ exchange rate moves from €1.36 per pound to 1.17 per pound.
6. What would be the real rates of return on the assets in the preceding question if the price changes described were accompanied by a simultaneous 10 percent increase in all dollar prices?

7. Suppose the Mexican peso (MXN) interest rate and the Indian rupee (INR) interest rate are the same, 5 percent per year. What is the relation between the current equilibrium MXN/INR exchange rate and its expected future level? Suppose the expected future MXN/INR exchange rate, 3.40 INR per Mexican peso, remains constant as India's interest rate rises to 10 percent per year. If the Mexican interest rate also remains constant, what is the new equilibrium MXN/INR exchange rate?
8. Traders in asset markets suddenly learn that the interest rate on dollars will decline in the near future. Use the diagrammatic analysis of this chapter to determine the effect on the *current* dollar/euro exchange rate, assuming current interest rates on dollar and euro deposits do not change.
9. We noted that we could have developed our diagrammatic analysis of foreign exchange market equilibrium from the perspective of Europe, with the euro/dollar exchange rate  $E_{\$/\text{€}} (= 1/E_{\text{€}/\$})$  on the vertical axis, a schedule vertical at  $R_{\text{€}}$  to indicate the euro return on euro deposits, and a downward-sloping schedule showing how the euro return on dollar deposits varies with  $E_{\$/\text{€}}$ . Derive this alternative picture of equilibrium and use it to examine the effect of changes in interest rates and the expected future exchange rate. Do your answers agree with those we found earlier?
10. A report appeared in the *Financial Times* on 18 January, 2016, noted that the South Korean Finance Minister had voiced confidence in China's economic outlook, and had declared that "he endorsed Beijing's predictions of a 'soft landing,' saying Seoul expected China's economy to grow between 6 percent and 7 percent this year."
  - a. In your opinion, why was the South Korean Minister so concerned about China's "soft landing?"
  - b. Do you think that the rate of exchange of the Won/RMB is a factor in this "soft landing?"
11. Suppose the dollar exchange rates of the euro and the yen are equally variable. The euro, however, tends to depreciate unexpectedly against the dollar when the return on the rest of your wealth is unexpectedly high, while the yen tends to appreciate unexpectedly in the same circumstances. As a European resident, which currency—the dollar or the yen, would be considered riskier?
12. Does any of the discussion in this chapter lead you to believe that dollar deposits may have liquidity characteristics different from those of other currency deposits? If so, how would the differences affect the interest differential between, say, dollar and Mexican peso deposits? Do you have any guesses about how the liquidity of euro deposits may be changing over time?
13. In October 1979, the U.S. central bank (the Federal Reserve System) announced it would play a less active role in limiting fluctuations in dollar interest rates. After this new policy went into effect, the dollar's exchange rates against foreign currencies became more volatile. Does our analysis of the foreign exchange market suggest any connection between these two events?
14. The central bank of a country announces it would play a less active role in limiting fluctuations in its currency interest rates. Do you think that the exchange rate of its currency will become more volatile? Why?
15. Take the two currencies—South African Rand (ZAR) and Indonesia Naira (NGN). Suppose the one-year forward exchange rate is 23 NGN per ZAR and the spot exchange rate is 20 NGN per ZAR. What is the forward premium on NGN (the forward discount on ZAR)? What is the difference between the interest rate on one-year ZAR deposits and that on one-year NGN deposits (assuming no repayment risk)?

- 16.** Europe's single currency, the euro, was introduced in January 1999, replacing the currencies of 11 European Union members, including France, Germany, Italy, and Spain (but not Britain; see Chapter 21). Do you think that, immediately after the euro's introduction, the value of foreign exchange trading in euros was greater or less than the euro value of the pre-1999 trade in the 11 original national currencies? Explain your answer.
- 17.** Multinationals generally have production plants in a number of countries. Consequently, they can move production from expensive locations to cheaper ones in response to various economic developments—a phenomenon called *outsourcing* when a domestically based firm moves part of its production abroad. If the dollar depreciates, what would you expect to happen to outsourcing by American companies? Explain and provide an example.
- 18.** In the beginning of 2015, the interest rate of some currencies are the following:

Australia	2.25
Canada	0.75
China	5.60
EU-euro	0.05
Japan	0.10
Mexico 5	5.75
New Zealand	3.5
Russia	15
South Africa	5.75
USA	0.25

- a.** What are in theory the best carry trade cases?
- b.** If you take in account the exchange rate variation risk, what carry trade operation will you favor? Explain.
- c.** Calculate the carry trade between euro and Mexican Peso and Russian Rouble. Looking at exchange rate data base you have accessed on internet, is this carry trade positive as of January 2017?
- 19.** The chapter explained why exporters cheer when their home currency depreciates. At the same time, domestic consumers find that they pay higher prices, so they should be disappointed when the currency becomes weaker. Why do the exporters usually win out, so that governments often seem to welcome depreciations while trying to avoid appreciations? (Hint: Think about the analogy with protective tariffs.)

## FURTHER READINGS

- Geert J. Bekaert and Robert J. Hodrick, *International Financial Management*, 3d edition. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2017. Chapters 2 and 3 focus on the foreign exchange market.
- Sam Y. Cross. *All about the Foreign Exchange Market in the United States*. New York: Books for Business, 2002. Primer on the United States portion of the market.
- Barry Eichengreen, Arnaud Mehl, and Livia Chitu. *How Global Currencies Work: Past, Present and Future*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2017. This historical and analytical treatise looks at the rise and fall of global currencies and the stability implications of multiple global currencies, including possibly China's renminbi.

- Federal Reserve Bank of New York. *The Basics of Foreign Trade and Exchange*, at <http://www.ny.frb.org/education/fx/index.html>. Broad-ranging but highly accessible account of exchange markets and their role. Also supplies many useful Web links.
- Philipp Hartmann. *Currency Competition and Foreign Exchange Markets: The Dollar, the Yen and the Euro*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1999. Theoretical and empirical micro-oriented study of the role of international currencies in world trade and asset markets.
- John Maynard Keynes. *A Tract on Monetary Reform*, Chapter 3. London: MacMillan, 1923. Classic analysis of the forward exchange market and covered interest parity.
- Michael R. King, Carol Osler, and Dagfinn Rime. “Foreign Exchange Market Structure, Players, and Evolution,” in Jessica James, Ian Marsh, and Lucio Sarno, eds., *Handbook of Exchange Rates*. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, 2012, pp. 3–44. Up-to-date overview of foreign exchange market structure.
- Paul R. Krugman. “The International Role of the Dollar: Theory and Prospect,” in John F. O. Bilson and Richard C. Marston, eds. *Exchange Rate Theory and Practice*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1984, pp. 261–278. Theoretical and empirical analysis of the dollar’s position as an “international money.”
- Richard M. Levich. *International Financial Markets: Prices and Policies*, 2nd edition. Boston: Irwin McGraw-Hill, 2001. Chapters 3–8 of this comprehensive text focus on the foreign exchange market.
- Richard M. Levich. “CIP Then and Now: A Brief Survey of Measuring and Exploiting Deviations from Covered Interest Parity.” Unpublished manuscript, NYU Stern School of Business, May 2017 (Available at [https://www.bis.org/events/bissymposium0517/symposium0517\\_open2.pdf](https://www.bis.org/events/bissymposium0517/symposium0517_open2.pdf)) A comprehensive historical survey of research on covered interest parity.
- Michael Mussa. “Empirical Regularities in the Behavior of Exchange Rates and Theories of the Foreign Exchange Market,” in Karl Brunner and Allan H. Meltzer, eds., *Policies for Employment, Prices and Exchange Rates*, Carnegie-Rochester Conference Series on Public Policy 11. Amsterdam: North-Holland, 1979, pp. 9–57. A classic paper that examines the empirical basis of the asset price approach to exchange rate determination.
- David Sawyer. “Continuous Linked Settlement (CLS) and Foreign Exchange Settlement Risk.” *Financial Stability Review* 17 (December 2004), pp. 86–92. Describes the functioning of and rationale for the Continuous Linked Settlement system for rapid settlement of foreign exchange transactions.
- Tim Weithers. *Foreign Exchange: A Practical Guide to the FX Markets*. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, 2006. A clear introduction to foreign exchange instruments and markets.



## MONEY, INTEREST RATES, AND EXCHANGE RATES

**C**hapter 14 showed how the exchange rate between currencies depends on two factors—the interest that can be earned on deposits of those currencies and the expected future exchange rate. To understand fully the determination of exchange rates, however, we have to learn how interest rates themselves are determined and how expectations of future exchange rates are formed. In this and the next two chapters, we examine these topics by building an economic model that links exchange rates, interest rates, and other important macroeconomic variables such as the inflation rate and output.

The first step in building the model is to explain the effects of a country's money supply and of the demand for its money on its interest rate and exchange rate. Because exchange rates are the relative prices of national monies, factors that affect a country's money supply or demand are among the most powerful determinants of its currency's exchange rate against foreign currencies. It is therefore natural to begin a deeper study of exchange rate determination with a discussion of money supply and money demand.

Monetary developments influence the exchange rate by changing *both* interest rates *and* people's expectations about future exchange rates. Expectations about future exchange rates are closely connected with expectations about the future money prices of countries' products; these price movements, in turn, depend on changes in money supply and demand. In examining monetary influences on the exchange rate, we therefore look at how monetary factors influence output prices along with interest rates. Expectations of future exchange rates depend on many factors other than money, however, and these nonmonetary factors are taken up in the next chapter.

Once the theories and determinants of money supply and demand are laid out, we use them to examine how equilibrium interest rates are determined by the equality of money supply and money demand. Then we combine our model of interest rate determination with the interest parity condition to study the effects of monetary shifts on the exchange rate, given the prices of goods and services, the level of output, and market expectations about the future. Finally, we take a first look at the long-term effects of monetary changes on output prices and expected future exchange rates.

## LEARNING GOALS

After reading this chapter, you will be able to:

- Describe and discuss the national money markets in which interest rates are determined.
- Show how monetary policy and interest rates feed into the foreign exchange market.
- Distinguish between the economy's long-run position and the short run, in which money prices and wages are sticky.
- Explain how price levels and exchange rates respond to monetary factors in the long run.
- Outline the relationship between the short-run and the long-run effects of monetary policy and explain the concept of short-run exchange rate overshooting.

## Money Defined: A Brief Review

We are so accustomed to using money that we seldom notice the roles it plays in almost all of our everyday transactions. As with many other modern conveniences, we take money for granted until something goes wrong with it! In fact, the easiest way to appreciate the importance of money is to imagine what economic life would be like without it.

In this section, we do just that. Our purpose in carrying out this “thought experiment” is to distinguish money from other assets and to describe the characteristics of money that lead people to hold it. These characteristics are central to an analysis of the demand for money.

### Money as a Medium of Exchange

The most important function of money is to serve as a *medium of exchange*, a generally accepted means of payment. To see why a medium of exchange is necessary, imagine how time-consuming it would be for people to purchase goods and services in a world where the only type of trade possible is barter trade—the direct trade of goods or services for other goods or services. To have her car repaired, for example, your professor would have to find a mechanic in need of economics lessons!

Money eliminates the enormous search costs connected with a barter system because money is universally acceptable. It eliminates these search costs by enabling an individual to sell the goods and services she produces to people other than the producers of the goods and services she wishes to consume. A complex modern economy would cease functioning without some standardized and convenient means of payment.

### Money as a Unit of Account

Money's second important role is as a *unit of account*, that is, as a widely recognized measure of value. It is in this role that we encountered money in Chapter 14: Prices of goods, services, and assets are typically expressed in terms of money. Exchange rates allow us to translate different countries' money prices into comparable terms.

The convention of quoting prices in money terms simplifies economic calculations by making it easy to compare the prices of different commodities. The international

price comparisons in Chapter 14, which used exchange rates to compare the prices of different countries' outputs, are similar to the calculations you would have to do many times each day if different commodities' prices were not expressed in terms of a standardized unit of account. If the calculations in Chapter 14 gave you a headache, imagine what it would be like to have to calculate the relative prices of each good and service you consume in terms of several other goods and services—for example, the price of a slice of pizza in terms of bananas. This thought experiment should give you a keener appreciation of using money as a unit of account.

### Money as a Store of Value

Because money can be used to transfer purchasing power from the present into the future, it is also an asset, or a *store of value*. This attribute is essential for any medium of exchange because no one would be willing to accept it in payment if its value in terms of goods and services evaporated immediately.

Money's usefulness as a medium of exchange, however, automatically makes it the most *liquid* of all assets. As you will recall from the previous chapter, an asset is said to be liquid when it can be transformed into goods and services rapidly and without high transaction costs, such as brokers' fees. Since money is readily acceptable as a means of payment, money sets the standard against which the liquidity of other assets is judged.

### What Is Money?

Currency and bank deposits on which checks may be written certainly qualify as money. These are widely accepted means of payment that can be transferred between owners at low cost. Households and firms hold currency and checking deposits as a convenient way of financing routine transactions as they arise. Assets such as real estate do not qualify as money because, unlike currency and checking deposits, they lack the essential property of liquidity.

When we speak in this book of the **money supply**, we are referring to the monetary aggregate the Federal Reserve calls M1, that is, the total amount of currency and checking deposits held by households and firms. In the United States in the last quarter of 2019, the total money supply amounted to \$3.9 trillion, equal to roughly 19 percent of that year's GNP.<sup>1</sup>

The large deposits traded by participants in the foreign exchange market are not considered part of the money supply. These deposits are less liquid than money and are not used to finance routine transactions.

### How the Money Supply Is Determined

An economy's money supply is controlled by its central bank. The central bank directly regulates the amount of currency in existence and also has indirect control over the amount of checking deposits issued by private banks. The procedures

---

<sup>1</sup>A broader Federal Reserve measure of money supply, M2, includes time deposits, but these are less liquid than the assets included in M1 because the funds in them typically cannot be withdrawn early without penalty. An even broader measure, known as M3, is also tracked by the Fed. A decision on where to draw the line between money and near-money must be somewhat arbitrary and therefore controversial. For further discussion of this question, see Chapter 3 of Frederic S. Mishkin, *The Economics of Money, Banking, and Financial Markets*, 12th edition (New York: Pearson, 2020).

through which the central bank controls the money supply are complex, and we assume for now that the central bank simply sets the size of the money supply at the level it desires. We go into the money supply process in more detail, however, in Chapter 18.

## The Demand for Money by Individuals

Having discussed the functions of money and the definition of the money supply, we now examine the factors that determine the amount of money an individual desires to hold. The determinants of individual money demand can be derived from the theory of asset demand discussed in the previous chapter.

We saw in the previous chapter that individuals base their demand for an asset on three characteristics:

1. The expected return the asset offers compared with the returns offered by other assets.
2. The riskiness of the asset's expected return.
3. The asset's liquidity.

While liquidity plays no important role in determining the relative demands for assets traded in the foreign exchange market, households and firms hold money *only* because of its liquidity. To understand how the economy's households and firms decide the amount of money they wish to hold, we must look more closely at how the three considerations listed influence money demand.

### Expected Return

Currency pays no interest. Checking deposits often do pay some interest, but they offer a rate of return that usually fails to keep pace with the higher returns offered by less liquid forms of wealth. When you hold money, you therefore sacrifice the higher interest rate you could earn by holding your wealth in a government bond, a large time deposit, or some other relatively illiquid asset. It is this last rate of interest we have in mind when we refer to "the" interest rate. Since the interest paid on currency is zero while that paid on "checkable" deposits tends to be relatively constant, the difference between the rate of return of money in general and that of less liquid alternative assets is reflected by the market interest rate: The higher the interest rate, the more you sacrifice by holding wealth in the form of money.<sup>2</sup>

Suppose, for example, the interest rate you could earn from a U.S. Treasury bill is 10 percent per year. If you use \$10,000 of your wealth to buy a Treasury bill, you will be paid \$11,000 by Uncle Sam at the end of a year, but if you choose instead to keep the \$10,000 as cash in a safe-deposit box, you give up the \$1,000 interest you could have earned by buying the Treasury bill. You thus sacrifice a 10 percent rate of return by holding your \$10,000 as money.

---

<sup>2</sup>Many of the illiquid assets that individuals can choose from do not pay their returns in the form of interest. Stocks, for example, pay returns in the forms of dividends and capital gains. The family summer house on Cape Cod pays a return in the forms of capital gains and the pleasure of vacations at the beach. The assumption behind our analysis of money demand is that once allowance is made for risk, all assets other than money offer an expected rate of return (measured in terms of money) equal to the interest rate. This assumption allows us to use the interest rate to summarize the return an individual forgoes by holding money rather than an illiquid asset.

The theory of asset demand developed in the previous chapter shows how changes in the rate of interest affect the demand for money. The theory states that, other things equal, people prefer assets offering higher expected returns. Because an increase in the interest rate is a rise in the rate of return on less liquid assets relative to the rate of return on money, individuals will want to hold more of their wealth in nonmoney assets that pay the market interest rate and less of their wealth in the form of money if the interest rate rises. We conclude that, *all else equal, a rise in the interest rate causes the demand for money to fall.*

We can also describe the influence of the interest rate on money demand in terms of the economic concept of *opportunity cost*—the amount you sacrifice by taking one course of action rather than another. The interest rate measures the opportunity cost of holding money rather than interest-bearing bonds. A rise in the interest rate therefore raises the cost of holding money and causes money demand to fall.

### Risk

Risk is not an important factor in money demand. It is risky to hold money because an unexpected increase in the prices of goods and services could reduce the value of your money in terms of the commodities you consume. Since interest-paying assets such as government bonds have face values fixed in terms of money, however, the same unexpected increase in prices would reduce the real value of those assets by the same percentage. Because any change in the riskiness of money causes an equal change in the riskiness of bonds, changes in the risk of holding money need not cause individuals to reduce their demand for money and increase their demand for interest-paying assets.

### Liquidity

The main benefit of holding money comes from its liquidity. Households and firms hold money because it is the easiest way of financing their everyday purchases. Some large purchases can be financed through the sale of a substantial illiquid asset. An art collector, for example, could sell one of her Picassos to buy a house. To finance a continuing stream of smaller expenditures at various times and for various amounts, however, households and firms have to hold some money.

An individual's need for liquidity rises when the average daily value of his transactions rises. A student who takes the bus every day, for example, does not need to hold as much cash as a business executive who takes taxis during rush hour. We conclude that *a rise in the average value of transactions that a household or firm carries out causes its demand for money to rise.*

## Aggregate Money Demand

Our discussion of how individual households and firms determine their demands for money can now be applied to derive the determinants of **aggregate money demand**, the total demand for money by all households and firms in the economy. Aggregate money demand is just the sum of all the economy's individual money demands.

Three main factors determine aggregate money demand:

1. *The interest rate.* A rise in the interest rate causes each individual in the economy to reduce her demand for money. All else equal, aggregate money demand therefore falls when the interest rate rises.

2. *The price level.* The economy's **price level** is the price of a broad reference basket of goods and services in terms of currency. Generally, the reference basket includes standard, everyday consumption items such as food, clothing, and housing and less routine purchases such as medical care and legal fees. If the price level rises, individual households and firms must spend more money than before to purchase their usual weekly baskets of goods and services. To maintain the same level of liquidity as before the price level increase, they will therefore have to hold more money.
3. *Real national income.* When real national income (GNP) rises, more goods and services are sold in the economy. This increase in the real value of transactions raises the demand for money, given the price level.

If  $P$  is the price level,  $R$  is the interest rate, and  $Y$  is real GNP, the aggregate demand for money,  $M^d$ , can be expressed as

$$M^d = P \times L(R, Y), \quad (15-1)$$

where the value of  $L(R, Y)$  falls when  $R$  rises, and rises when  $Y$  rises.<sup>3</sup> To see why we have specified that aggregate money demand is *proportional* to the price level, imagine that all prices doubled but the interest rate and everyone's *real* incomes remained unchanged. The money value of each individual's average daily transactions would then simply double, as would the amount of money each wished to hold.

We usually write the aggregate money demand relation (15-1) in the equivalent form

$$M^d/P = L(R, Y), \quad (15-2)$$

and call  $L(R, Y)$  aggregate *real* money demand. This way of expressing money demand shows that the aggregate demand for liquidity,  $L(R, Y)$ , is not a demand for a certain number of currency units but is instead a demand to hold a certain amount of real purchasing power in liquid form. The ratio  $M^d/P$ —that is, desired money holdings measured in terms of a typical reference basket of commodities—equals the amount of real purchasing power people would like to hold in liquid form. For example, if people wished to hold \$1,000 in cash at a price level of \$100 per commodity basket, their real money holdings would be equivalent to  $\$1,000/(\$100 \text{ per basket}) = 10$  baskets. If the price level doubled (to \$200 per basket), the purchasing power of their \$1,000 in cash would be halved, since it would now be worth only 5 baskets.

Figure 15-1 shows how aggregate real money demand is affected by the interest rate for a fixed level of real income,  $Y$ . The aggregate real money demand schedule  $L(R, Y)$  slopes downward because a fall in the interest rate raises the desired real money holdings of each household and firm in the economy.

For a given level of real GNP, changes in the interest rate cause movements *along* the  $L(R, Y)$  schedule. Changes in real GNP, however, cause the schedule itself to shift. Figure 15-2 shows how a rise in real GNP from  $Y^1$  to  $Y^2$  affects the position of the aggregate real money demand schedule. Because a rise in real GNP raises aggregate real money demand for a given interest rate, the schedule  $L(R, Y^2)$  lies to the right of  $L(R, Y^1)$  when  $Y^2$  is greater than  $Y^1$ .

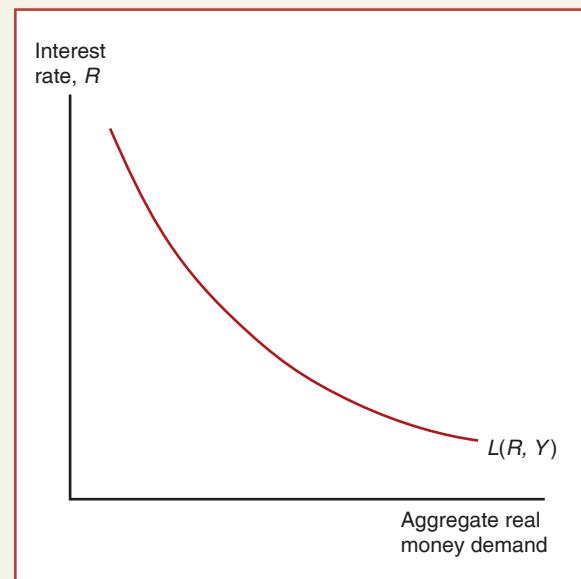
---

<sup>3</sup>Naturally,  $L(R, Y)$  rises when  $R$  falls, and falls when  $Y$  falls.

**FIGURE 15-1**

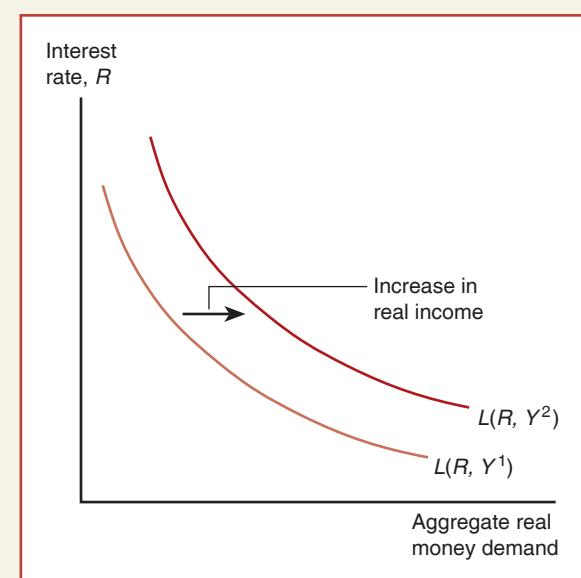
### Aggregate Real Money Demand and the Interest Rate

The downward-sloping real money demand schedule shows that for a given real income level  $Y$ , real money demand rises as the interest rate falls.

**FIGURE 15-2**

### Effect on the Aggregate Real Money Demand Schedule of a Rise in Real Income

An increase in real income from  $Y^1$  to  $Y^2$  raises the demand for real money balances at every level of the interest rate and causes the whole demand schedule to shift upward.



## The Equilibrium Interest Rate: The Interaction of Money Supply and Demand

As you might expect from other economics courses you've taken, the money market is in equilibrium when the money supply set by the central bank equals aggregate money demand. In this section, we see how the interest rate is determined by money market

equilibrium, given the price level and output, both of which are temporarily assumed to be unaffected by monetary changes.

### Equilibrium in the Money Market

If  $M^s$  is the money supply, the condition for equilibrium in the money market is

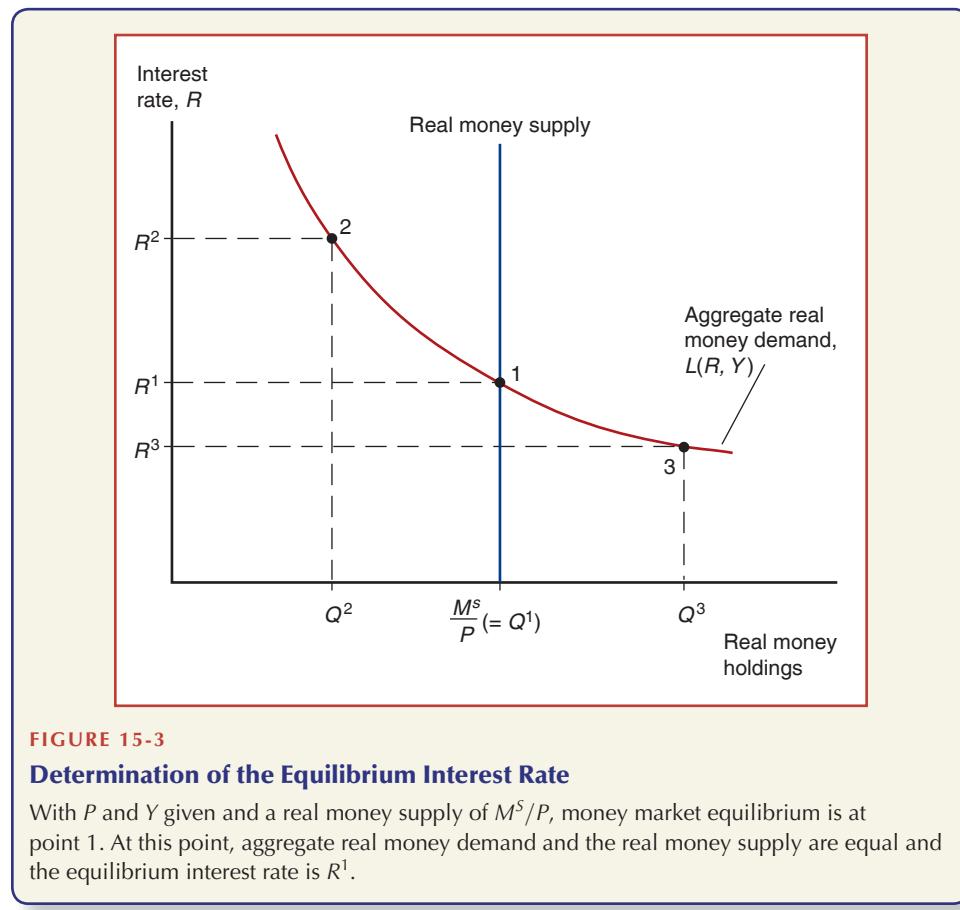
$$M^s = M^d. \quad (15-3)$$

After dividing both sides of this equality by the price level, we can express the money market equilibrium condition in terms of aggregate real money demand as

$$M^s/P = L(R, Y). \quad (15-4)$$

Given the price level,  $P$ , and the level of output,  $Y$ , the equilibrium interest rate is the one at which aggregate real money demand equals the real money supply.

In Figure 15-3, the aggregate real money demand schedule intersects the real money supply schedule at point 1 to give an equilibrium interest rate of  $R^1$ . The money supply schedule is vertical at  $M^s/P$  because  $M^s$  is set by the central bank while  $P$  is taken as given.



Let's see why the interest rate tends to settle at its equilibrium level by considering what happens if the market is initially at point 2, with an interest rate,  $R^2$ , that is above  $R^1$ .

At point 2, the demand for real money holdings falls short of the supply by  $Q^1 - Q^2$ , so there is an excess supply of money. If individuals are holding more money than they desire given the interest rate of  $R^2$ , they will attempt to reduce their liquidity by using some money to purchase interest-bearing assets. In other words, individuals will attempt to get rid of their excess money by lending it to others. Since there is an aggregate excess supply of money at  $R^2$ , however, not everyone can succeed in doing this: There are more people who would like to lend money to reduce their liquidity than there are people who would like to borrow money to increase theirs. Those who cannot unload their extra money try to tempt potential borrowers by lowering the interest rate they charge for loans below  $R^2$ . The downward pressure on the interest rate continues until the rate reaches  $R^1$ . At this interest rate, anyone wishing to lend money can do so because the aggregate excess supply of money has disappeared; that is, supply once again equals demand. Once the market reaches point 1, there is therefore no further tendency for the interest rate to drop.<sup>4</sup>

Similarly, if the interest rate is initially at a level  $R^3$  below  $R^1$ , it will tend to rise. As Figure 15-3 shows, there is excess demand for money equal to  $Q^3 - Q^1$  at point 3. Individuals therefore attempt to sell interest-bearing assets such as bonds to increase their money holdings (that is, they sell bonds for cash). At point 3, however, not everyone can succeed in selling enough interest-bearing assets to satisfy his or her demand for money. Thus, people bid for money by offering to borrow at progressively higher interest rates and push the interest rate upward toward  $R^1$ . Only when the market has reached point 1 and the excess demand for money has been eliminated does the interest rate stop rising.

We can summarize our findings as follows: *The market always moves toward an interest rate at which the real money supply equals aggregate real money demand. If there is initially an excess supply of money, the interest rate falls, and if there is initially an excess demand, it rises.*

### Interest Rates and the Money Supply

The effect of increasing the money supply at a given price level is illustrated in Figure 15-4. Initially, the money market is in equilibrium at point 1, with a money supply  $M^1$  and an interest rate  $R^1$ . Since we are holding  $P$  constant, a rise in the money supply to  $M^2$  increases the real money supply from  $M^1/P$  to  $M^2/P$ . With a real money supply of  $M^2/P$ , point 2 is the new equilibrium and  $R^2$  is the new, lower interest rate that induces people to hold the increased available real money supply.

The process through which the interest rate falls is by now familiar. After  $M^s$  is increased by the central bank, there is initially an excess real supply of money at the old equilibrium interest rate,  $R^1$ , which previously balanced the market. Since people are holding more money than they desire, they use their surplus funds to bid for assets that pay interest. The economy as a whole cannot reduce its money holdings, so interest rates are driven down as unwilling money holders compete to lend their excess cash balances. At point 2 in Figure 15-4, the interest rate has fallen sufficiently to induce an increase in real money demand equal to the increase in the real money supply.

---

<sup>4</sup>Another way to view this process is as follows: We saw in the preceding chapter that an asset's rate of return falls when its current price rises relative to its future value. When there is an excess supply of money, the current money prices of illiquid assets that pay interest will be bid up as individuals attempt to reduce their money holdings. This rise in current asset prices lowers the rate of return on nonmoney assets, and since this rate of return is equal to the interest rate (after adjustment for risk), the interest rate also must fall.

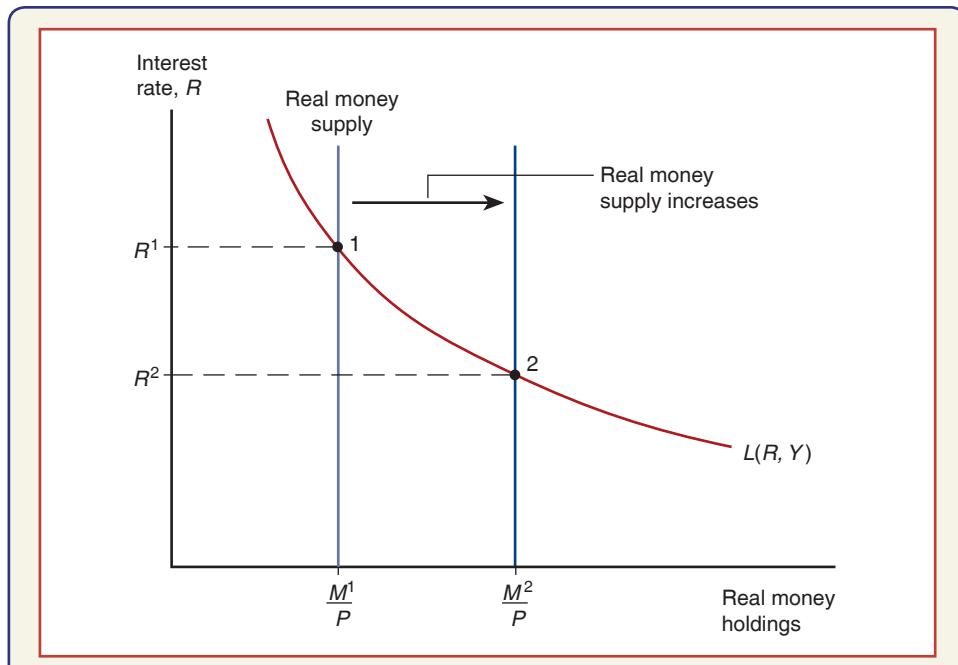


FIGURE 15-4

### Effect of an Increase in the Money Supply on the Interest Rate

For a given price level,  $P$ , and real income level,  $Y$ , an increase in the money supply from  $M^1$  to  $M^2$  reduces the interest rate from  $R^1$  (point 1) to  $R^2$  (point 2).

By running the preceding policy experiment in reverse, we can see how a reduction of the money supply forces interest rates upward. A fall in  $M^s$  causes an excess demand for money at the interest rate that previously balanced supply and demand. People attempt to sell interest-bearing assets—that is, to borrow—to rebuild their depleted real money holdings. Since they cannot all be successful when there is excess money demand, the interest rate is pushed upward until everyone is content to hold the smaller real money stock.

We conclude that *an increase in the money supply lowers the interest rate, while a fall in the money supply raises the interest rate, given the price level and output.*

### Output and the Interest Rate

Figure 15-5 shows the effect on the interest rate of a rise in the level of output from  $Y^1$  to  $Y^2$ , given the money supply and the price level. As we saw earlier, an increase in output causes the entire aggregate real money demand schedule to shift to the right, moving the equilibrium away from point 1. At the old equilibrium interest rate,  $R^1$ , there is an excess demand for money equal to  $Q^2 - Q^1$  (point 1'). Since the real money supply is given, the interest rate is bid up until it reaches the higher, new equilibrium level  $R^2$  (point 2). A fall in output has opposite effects, causing the aggregate real money demand schedule to shift to the left and therefore causing the equilibrium interest rate to fall.

We conclude that *an increase in real output raises the interest rate, while a fall in real output lowers the interest rate, given the price level and the money supply.*

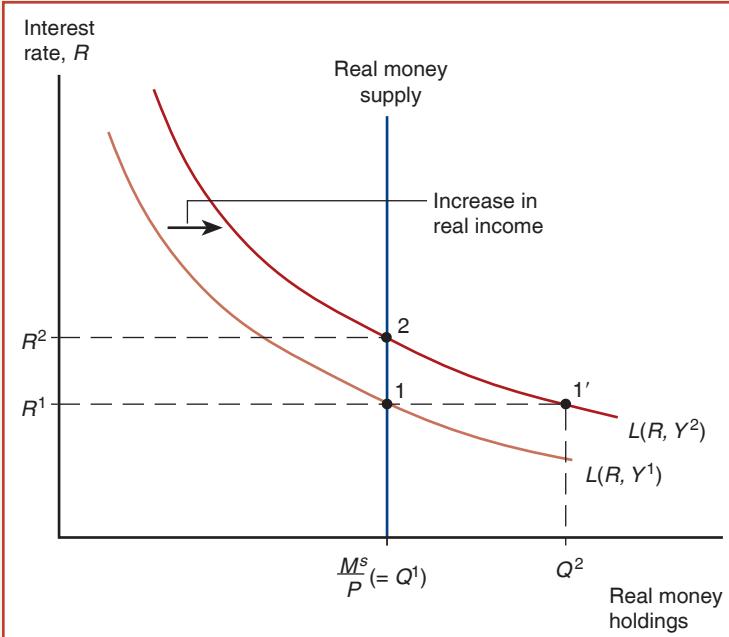


FIGURE 15-5

### Effect on the Interest Rate of a Rise in Real Income

Given the real money supply,  $M^s/P (= Q^1)$ , a rise in real income from  $Y^1$  to  $Y^2$  raises the interest rate from  $R^1$  (point 1) to  $R^2$  (point 2).

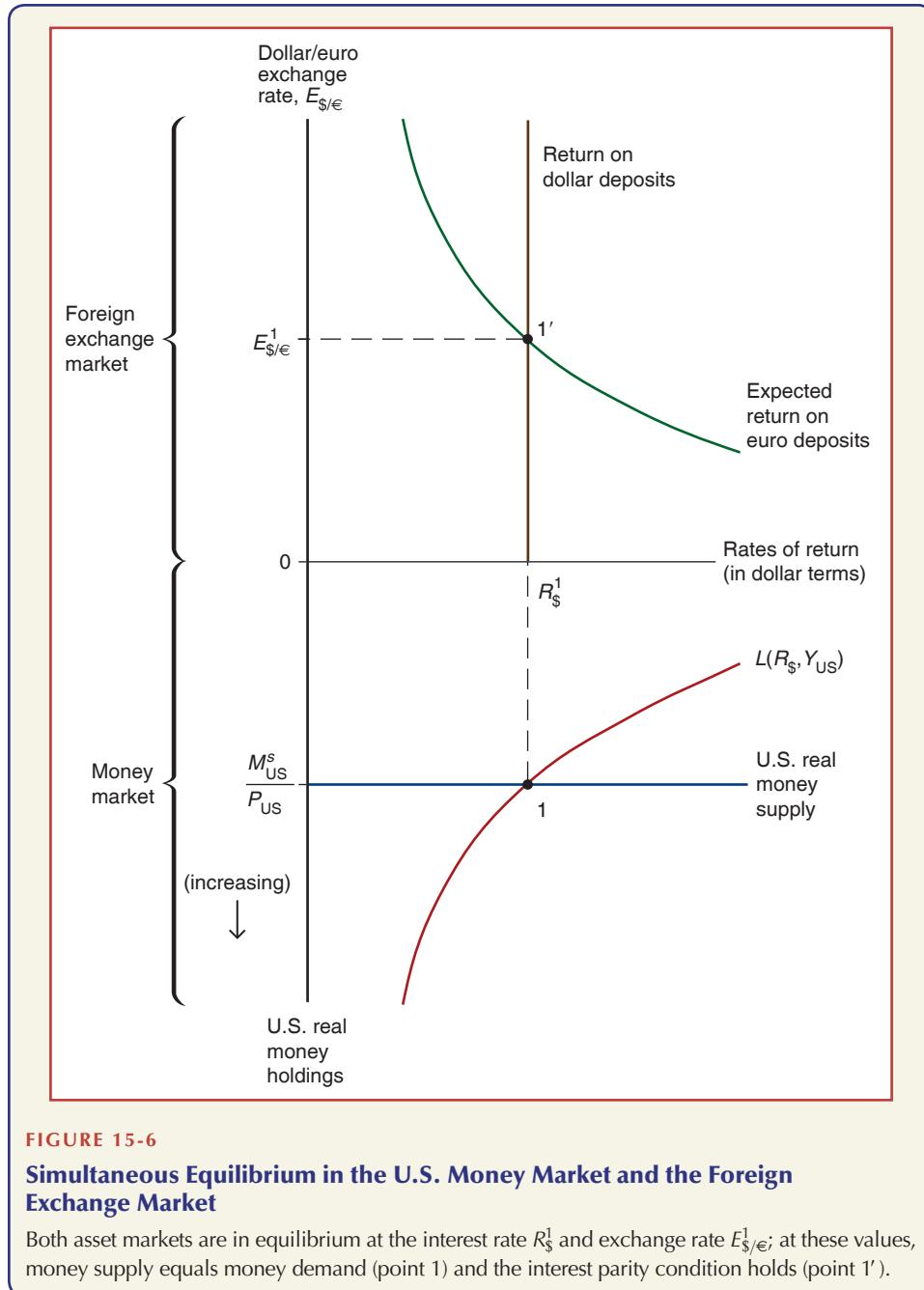
## The Money Supply and the Exchange Rate in the Short Run

In Chapter 14, we learned about the interest parity condition, which predicts how interest rate movements influence the exchange rate, given expectations about the exchange rate's future level. Now that we know how shifts in a country's money supply affect the interest rate on nonmoney assets denominated in its currency, we can see how monetary changes affect the exchange rate. We will discover that *an increase in a country's money supply causes its currency to depreciate in the foreign exchange market, while a reduction in the money supply causes its currency to appreciate*.

In this section, we continue to take the price level (along with real output) as given, and for that reason we label the analysis of this section **short run**. The **long-run** analysis of an economic event allows for the complete adjustment of the price level (which may take a long time) and for full employment of all factors of production. Later in this chapter, we examine the long-run effects of money supply changes on the price level, the exchange rate, and other macroeconomic variables. Our long-run analysis will show how the money supply influences exchange rate expectations, which we also continue to take as given for now.

### Linking Money, the Interest Rate, and the Exchange Rate

To analyze the relationship between money and the exchange rate in the short run in Figure 15-6, we combine two diagrams we have already studied separately. Let's assume once again we are looking at the dollar/euro exchange rate, that is, the price of euros in terms of dollars.



The first diagram (introduced as Figure 14-4) shows equilibrium in the foreign exchange market and how it is determined given interest rates and expectations about future exchange rates. This diagram appears as the top part of Figure 15-6. The dollar interest rate,  $R_{\$}^1$ , which is determined in the money market, defines the vertical schedule.

As you will remember from Chapter 14, the downward-sloping expected euro return schedule shows the expected return on euro deposits, measured in dollars. The schedule slopes downward because of the effect of current exchange rate changes on

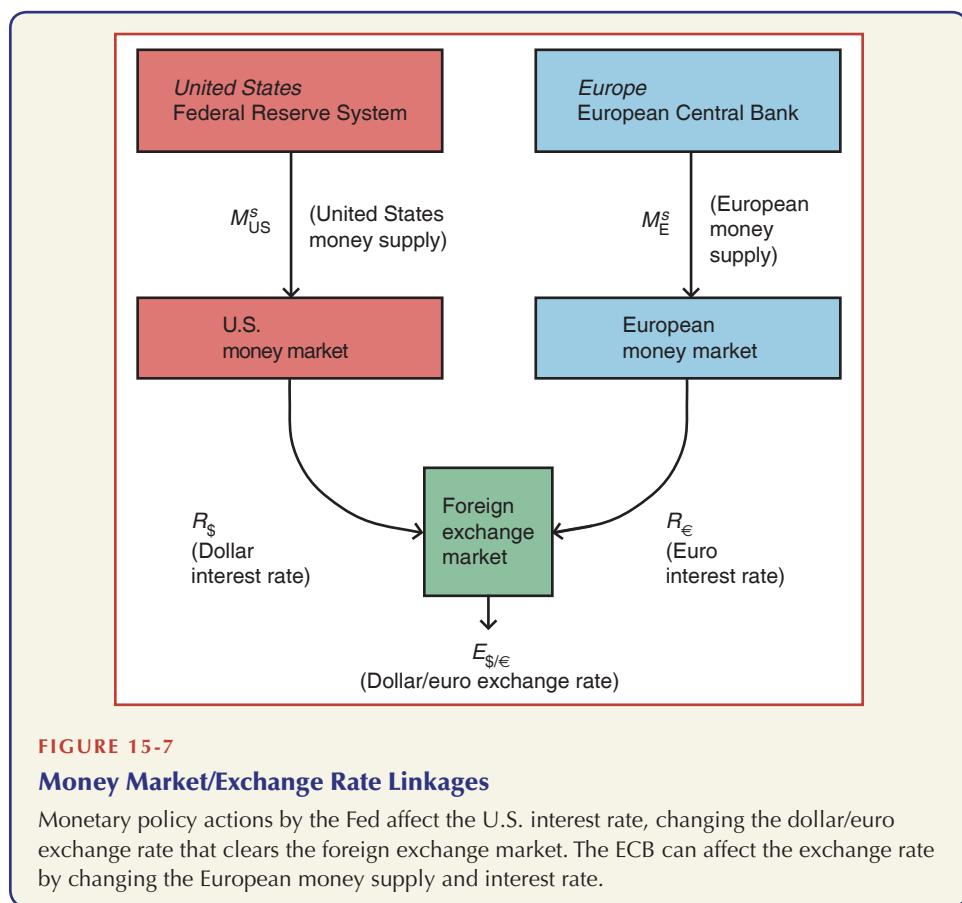
expectations of future depreciation: A strengthening of the dollar today (a fall in  $E_{\$/\epsilon}$ ) relative to its *given* expected future level makes euro deposits more attractive by leading people to anticipate a sharper dollar depreciation in the future.

At the intersection of the two schedules (point 1'), the expected rates of return on dollar and euro deposits are equal, and therefore interest parity holds.  $E_{\$/\epsilon}^l$  is the equilibrium exchange rate.

The second diagram we need to examine the relationship between money and the exchange rate was introduced as Figure 15-3. This figure shows how a country's equilibrium interest rate is determined in its money market, and it appears as the bottom part of Figure 15-6. For convenience, however, the figure has been rotated clockwise by 90 degrees so that dollar interest rates are measured from 0 on the horizontal axis and the U.S. real money supply is measured from 0 on the descending vertical axis. Money market equilibrium is shown at point 1, where the dollar interest rate  $R_{\$}$  induces people to demand real balances equal to the U.S. real money supply,  $M_{US}^s/P_{US}$ .

Figure 15-6 emphasizes the link between the U.S. money market (bottom) and the foreign exchange market (top)—the U.S. money market determines the dollar interest rate, which in turn affects the exchange rate that maintains interest parity. (Of course, there is a similar link between the European money market and the foreign exchange market that operates through changes in the euro interest rate.)

Figure 15-7 illustrates these linkages. The U.S. and European central banks, the Federal Reserve System and the European Central Bank (ECB), respectively, determine



the U.S. and European money supplies,  $M_{\text{US}}^s$  and  $M_{\text{E}}^s$ . Given the price levels and national incomes of the two countries, equilibrium in national money markets leads to the dollar and euro interest rates  $R_{\$}$  and  $R_{\text{€}}$ . These interest rates feed into the foreign exchange market, where, given expectations about the future dollar/euro exchange rate, the current rate  $E_{\$/\text{€}}$  is determined by the interest parity condition.

### **U.S. Money Supply and the Dollar/Euro Exchange Rate**

We now use our model of asset market linkages (the links between the money and foreign exchange markets) to ask how the dollar/euro exchange rate changes when the Federal Reserve changes the U.S. money supply  $M_{\text{US}}^s$ . The effects of this change are summarized in Figure 15-8.

At the initial money supply  $M_{\text{US}}^1$ , the money market is in equilibrium at point 1 with an interest rate  $R_{\$}^1$ . Given the euro interest rate and the expected future exchange rate, a dollar interest rate of  $R_{\$}^1$  implies that foreign exchange market equilibrium occurs at point 1' with an exchange rate equal to  $E_{\$/\text{€}}^1$ .

What happens when the Federal Reserve, perhaps fearing the onset of a recession, raises the U.S. money supply to  $M_{\text{US}}^2$ ? This increase sets in motion the following sequence of events: (1) At the initial interest rate  $R_{\$}^1$ , there is an excess supply of money in the U.S. money market, so the dollar interest rate falls to  $R_{\$}^2$  as the money market reaches its new equilibrium position (point 2). (2) Given the initial exchange rate  $E_{\$/\text{€}}^1$  and the new, lower interest rate on dollars,  $R_{\$}^2$ , the expected return on euro deposits is greater than that on dollar deposits. Holders of dollar deposits therefore try to sell them for euro deposits, which are momentarily more attractive. (3) The dollar depreciates to  $E_{\$/\text{€}}^2$  as holders of dollar deposits bid for euro deposits. The foreign exchange market is once again in equilibrium at point 2' because the exchange rate's move to  $E_{\$/\text{€}}^2$  causes a fall in the dollar's expected future depreciation rate sufficient to offset the fall in the dollar interest rate.

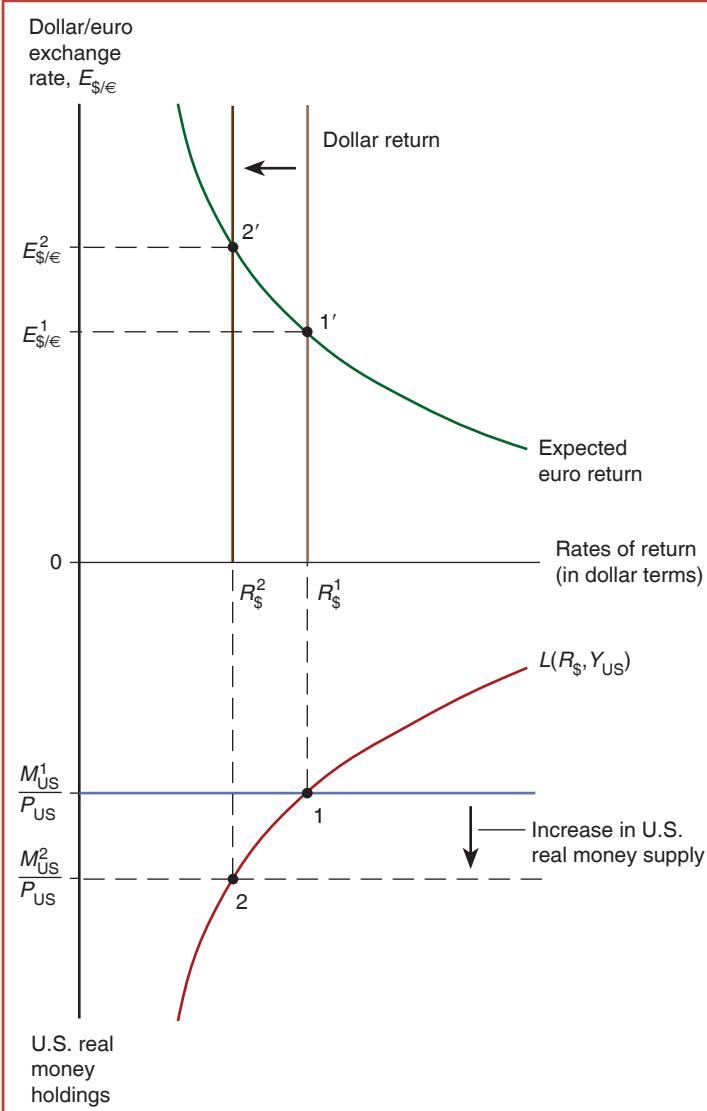
We conclude that *an increase in a country's money supply causes its currency to depreciate in the foreign exchange market. By running Figure 15-8 in reverse, you can see that a reduction in a country's money supply causes its currency to appreciate in the foreign exchange market.*

### **Europe's Money Supply and the Dollar/Euro Exchange Rate**

The conclusions we have reached also apply when the ECB changes Europe's money supply. Suppose the ECB fears a recession in Europe and hopes to head it off through a looser monetary policy. An increase in  $M_{\text{E}}^s$  causes a depreciation of the euro (that is, an appreciation of the dollar, or a fall in  $E_{\$/\text{€}}$ ), while a reduction in  $M_{\text{E}}^s$  causes an appreciation of the euro (that is, a depreciation of the dollar, or a rise in  $E_{\$/\text{€}}$ ).

The mechanism at work, which runs from the European interest rate to the exchange rate, is the same as the one we just analyzed. It is a good exercise to verify these assertions by drawing figures similar to Figures 15-6 and 15-8 that illustrate the linkage between the European money market and the foreign exchange market.

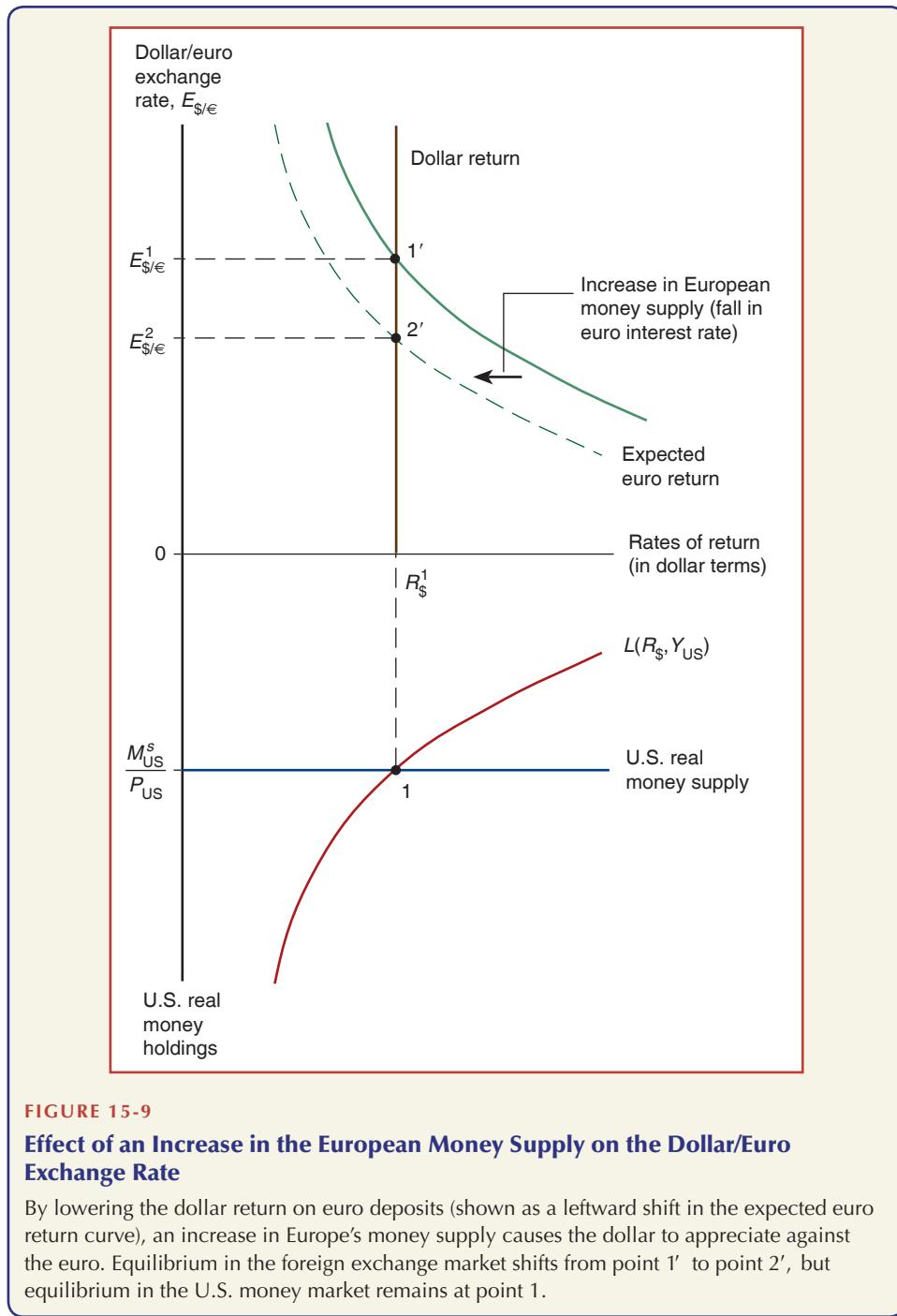
Here we use a different approach to show how changes in Europe's money supply affect the dollar/euro exchange rate. In Chapter 14, we learned that a fall in the euro interest rate,  $R_{\text{€}}$ , shifts the downward-sloping schedule in the upper part of Figure 15-6 to the left. The reason is that for any level of the exchange rate, a fall in  $R_{\text{€}}$  lowers the expected rate of return on euro deposits. Since a rise in the European money supply  $M_{\text{E}}^s$  lowers  $R_{\text{€}}$ , we can see the effect on the exchange rate by shifting the expected euro return schedule in the top part of Figure 15-6 to the left.

**FIGURE 15-8**

### Effect on the Dollar/Euro Exchange Rate and Dollar Interest Rate of an Increase in the U.S. Money Supply

Given  $P_{US}$  and  $Y_{US}$  when the money supply rises from  $M_{US}^1$  to  $M_{US}^2$  the dollar interest rate declines (as money market equilibrium is reestablished at point 2) and the dollar depreciates against the euro (as foreign exchange market equilibrium is reestablished at point 2').

The result of an increase in the European money supply is shown in Figure 15-9. Initially, the U.S. money market is in equilibrium at point 1 and the foreign exchange market is in equilibrium at point 1', with an exchange rate  $E_{\$/\epsilon}^1$ . An increase in Europe's money supply lowers  $R_{\epsilon}$  and therefore shifts to the left the schedule linking the expected return on euro deposits to the exchange rate. Foreign exchange market



equilibrium is restored at point 2', with an exchange rate  $E_{\$/\epsilon}^2$ . We see that the increase in European money causes the euro to depreciate against the dollar (that is, causes a fall in the dollar price of euros). Similarly, a fall in Europe's money supply would cause the euro to appreciate against the dollar (that is,  $E_{\$/\epsilon}$  would rise). The change in the

European money supply does not disturb the U.S. money market equilibrium, which remains at point 1.<sup>5</sup>

## Money, the Price Level, and the Exchange Rate in the Long Run

Our short-run analysis of the link between countries' money markets and the foreign exchange market rested on the simplifying assumption that price levels and exchange rate expectations were given. To extend our understanding of how money supply and money demand affect exchange rates, we must examine how monetary factors affect a country's price level in the long run.

An economy's **long-run equilibrium** is the position it would eventually reach if no new economic shocks occurred during the adjustment to full employment. You can think of long-run equilibrium as the equilibrium that would be maintained after all wages and prices had had enough time to adjust to their market-clearing levels. An equivalent way of thinking of it is as the equilibrium that would occur if prices were perfectly flexible and always adjusted immediately to preserve full employment.

In studying how monetary changes work themselves out over the long run, we will examine how such changes shift the economy's long-run equilibrium. Our main tool is once again the theory of aggregate money demand.

### Money and Money Prices

If the price level and output are fixed in the short run, the condition (15-4) of money market equilibrium,

$$M^s/P = L(R, Y),$$

determines the domestic interest rate,  $R$ . The money market always moves to equilibrium, however, even if we drop our "short-run" assumption and think of periods over which  $P$  and  $Y$ , as well as  $R$ , can vary. The preceding equilibrium condition can therefore be rearranged to give

$$P = M^s/L(R, Y), \quad (15-5)$$

which shows how the price level depends on the interest rate, real output, and the domestic money supply.

The *long-run equilibrium price level* is just the value of  $P$  that satisfies condition (15-5) when the interest rate and output are at their long-run levels, that is, at levels consistent with full employment. When the money market is in equilibrium and all factors of production are fully employed, the price level will remain steady if the money supply, the aggregate money demand function, and the long-run values of  $R$  and  $Y$  remain steady.

One of the most important predictions of the previous equation for  $P$  concerns the relationship between a country's price level and its money supply,  $M^s$ : *All else equal, an increase in a country's money supply causes a proportional increase in its price level.*

---

<sup>5</sup>The U.S. money market equilibrium remains at point 1 because the price adjustments that equilibrate the European money market and the foreign exchange market after the increase in Europe's money supply do not change either the money supply or money demand in the United States, given  $Y_{US}$  and  $P_{US}$ .

If, for example, the money supply doubles (to  $2M^s$ ) but output and the interest rate do not change, the price level must also double (to  $2P$ ) to maintain equilibrium in the money market.

The economic reasoning behind this very precise prediction follows from our earlier observation that the demand for money is a demand for *real* money holdings: Real money demand is not altered by an increase in  $M^s$  that leaves  $R$  and  $Y$  [and thus aggregate real money demand  $L(R, Y)$ ] unchanged. If aggregate real money demand does not change, however, the money market will remain in equilibrium only if the real money supply also stays the same. To keep the real money supply  $M^s/P$  constant,  $P$  must rise in proportion to  $M^s$ .

### The Long-Run Effects of Money Supply Changes

Our theory of how the money supply affects the price level *given* the interest rate and output is not yet a theory of how money supply changes affect the price level in the long run. To develop such a theory, we still have to determine the long-run effects of a money supply change on the interest rate and output. This is easier than you might think. As we now argue, *a change in the supply of money has no effect on the long-run values of the interest rate or real output*.<sup>6</sup>

The best way to understand the long-run effects of money supply on the interest rate and output is to think first about a *currency reform*, in which a country's government redefines the national currency unit. For example, the government of Turkey reformed its currency on January 1, 2005, simply by issuing "new" Turkish lira, each equal to 1 million "old" Turkish lira. The effect of this reform was to lower the number of currency units in circulation, and all lira prices, to 1/1,000,000 of their old lira values. But the redefinition of the monetary unit had no effect on real output, the interest rate, or the relative prices of goods: All that occurred was a one-time change in all values measured in lira. A decision to measure distance in half-miles rather than miles would have as little effect on real economic variables as the Turkish government's decision to chop six zeros off the end of every magnitude measured in terms of money.

An increase in the supply of a country's currency has the same effect in the long run as a currency reform. A doubling of the money supply, for example, has the same long-run effect as a currency reform in which each unit of currency is replaced by two units of "new" currency. If the economy is initially fully employed, every money price in the economy eventually doubles, but real GNP, the interest rate, and all relative prices return to their long-run or full-employment levels.

Why is a money supply change just like a currency reform in its effects on the economy's long-run equilibrium? The full-employment output level is determined by the economy's endowments of labor and capital, so in the long run, real output does not depend on the money supply. Similarly, the interest rate is independent of the money supply in the long run. If the money supply and all prices double permanently, there is no reason why people previously willing to exchange \$1 today for \$1.10 a year from now should not be willing afterward to exchange \$2 today for \$2.20 a year from now, so the interest rate will remain at 10 percent per annum. Relative prices also remain the

---

<sup>6</sup>The preceding statement refers only to changes in the *level* of the nominal money supply and not, for example, to changes in the *rate* at which the money supply is growing over time. The proposition that a one-time change in the level of the money supply has no effects on the long-run values of real economic variables is often called the *long-run neutrality of money*. In contrast, changes in the money supply growth rate need not be neutral in the long run. At the very least, a sustained change in the monetary growth rate will eventually affect equilibrium real money balances by raising the money interest rate (as discussed in the next chapter).

same if all money prices double, since relative prices are just ratios of money prices. Thus, money supply changes do not change the long-run allocation of resources. Only the absolute level of money prices changes.<sup>7</sup>

When studying the effect of an increase in the money supply over long time periods, we are therefore justified in assuming that the long-run values of  $R$  and  $Y$  will not be changed by a change in the supply of money. Thus, we can draw the following conclusion from equation (15-5): *A permanent increase in the money supply causes a proportional increase in the price level's long-run value. In particular, if the economy is initially at full employment, a permanent increase in the money supply eventually will be followed by a proportional increase in the price level.*

### Empirical Evidence on Money Supplies and Price Levels

In looking at actual data on money and prices, we should not expect to see an exactly proportional relationship over long periods, partly because output, the interest rate, and the aggregate real money demand function can shift for reasons that have nothing to do with the supply of money. Output changes as a result of capital accumulation and technological advance (for example, more powerful computers), and money demand behavior may change as a result of demographic trends or financial innovations such as electronic cash-transfer facilities. In addition, actual economies are rarely in positions of long-run equilibrium. Nonetheless, we should expect the data to show a clear-cut positive association between money supplies and price levels. If real-world data did not provide strong evidence that money supplies and price levels move together in the long run, the usefulness of the theory of money demand we have developed would be in severe doubt.

The wide swings in Latin American rates of price level increase in recent decades make the region an ideal case study of the relationship between money supplies and price levels. Price level inflation had been high and variable in Latin America for more than a decade, when efforts at macroeconomic reform began to bring inflation lower by the mid-1990s.

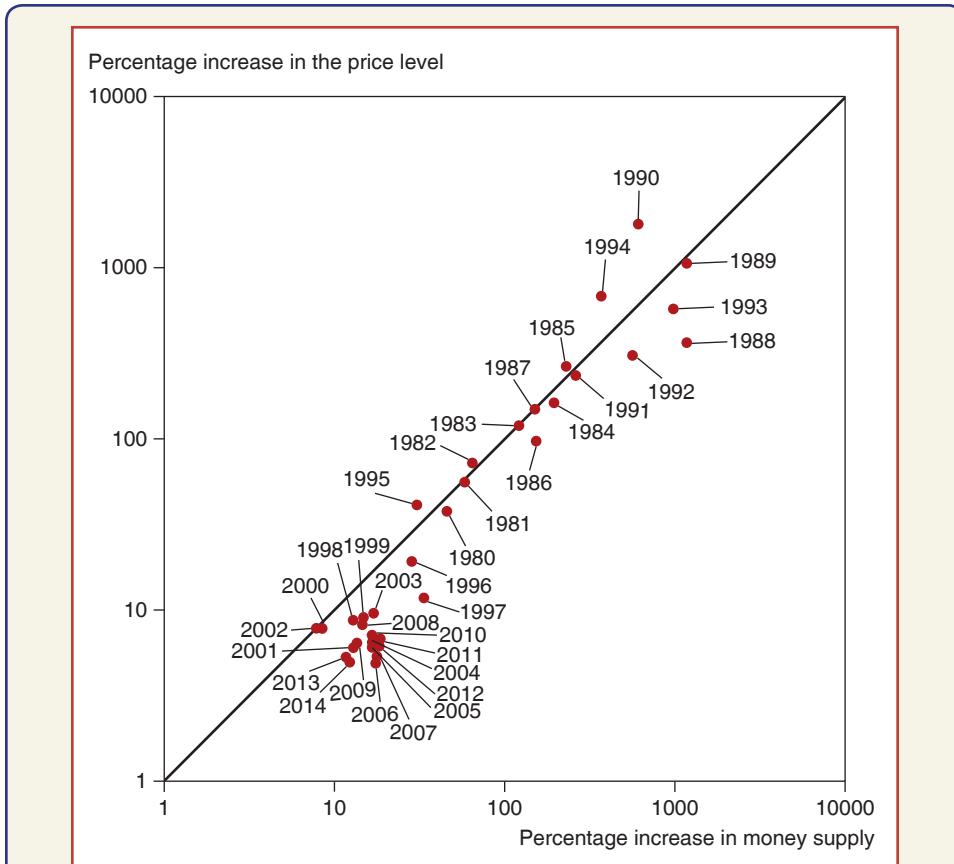
On the basis of our theories, we would expect to find such sharp swings in inflation rates accompanied by swings in growth rates of money supplies. This expectation is confirmed by Figure 15-10, which plots annual average growth rates of the money supply against annual inflation rates over the period from 1980–2014. On average, years with higher money growth also tended to be years with higher inflation. In addition, the data points cluster around the 45-degree line, along which money supplies and price levels increase in proportion.

The main lesson to be drawn from Figure 15-10 is that the data confirm the strong long-run link between national money supplies and national price levels predicted by economic theory.

Figure 15-11 presents another illustration of the link between money-supply growth and inflation, the case of Venezuela, which experienced exceptionally high levels of both in the later 2010s. So far in the 21st century, Venezuela's inflationary experience is comparable only to that of Zimbabwe, which we discuss in greater detail later, and it was similarly driven by the government's need to print money to cover its budgetary needs in the face of economic distress.

---

<sup>7</sup>To understand more fully why a one-time change in the money supply does not change the long-run level of the interest rate, it may be useful to think of interest rates measured in terms of money as defining relative prices of currency units available on different dates. If the dollar interest rate is  $R$  percent per annum, giving up \$1 today buys you  $\$(1 + R)$  next year. Thus,  $1/(1 + R)$  is the relative price of future dollars in terms of current dollars, and this relative price would not change if the real value of the monetary units were scaled up or down by the same factor on all dates.

**FIGURE 15-10**

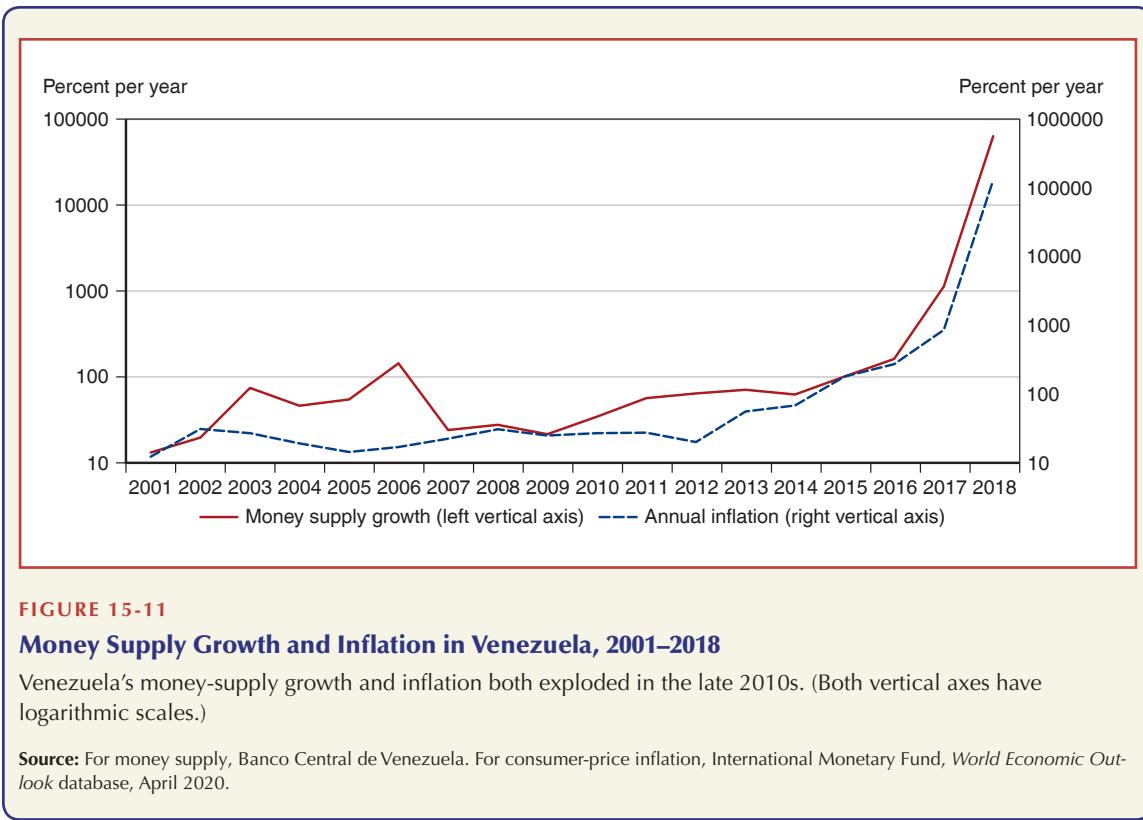
### Average Money Growth and Inflation in Western Hemisphere Developing Countries, by Year, 1980–2014

Even year by year, there is a strong positive relation between average Latin American money supply growth and inflation. (Both axes have logarithmic scales.)

**Source:** World Bank development indicators database and own calculations. Regional aggregates are weighted by shares of dollar GDP in total regional dollar GDP.

## Money and the Exchange Rate in the Long Run

The domestic currency price of foreign currency is one of the many prices in the economy that rise in the long run after a permanent increase in the money supply. If you think again about the effects of a currency reform, you will see how the exchange rate moves in the long run. Suppose the U.S. government replaced every pair of “old” dollars with one “new” dollar. Then, if the dollar/euro exchange rate had been 1.20 *old* dollars per euro before the reform, it would change to 0.60 *new* dollars per euro immediately after the reform. In much the same way, a halving of the U.S. money supply would eventually lead the dollar to appreciate from an exchange rate of 1.20 dollars/euro to one of 0.60 dollars/euro. Since the dollar prices of all U.S. goods and services would also decrease by half, this 50 percent appreciation of the dollar leaves the *relative* prices of all U.S. and foreign goods and services unchanged.

**FIGURE 15-11****Money Supply Growth and Inflation in Venezuela, 2001–2018**

Venezuela's money-supply growth and inflation both exploded in the late 2010s. (Both vertical axes have logarithmic scales.)

**Source:** For money supply, Banco Central de Venezuela. For consumer-price inflation, International Monetary Fund, *World Economic Outlook* database, April 2020.

We conclude that, all else equal, *a permanent increase in a country's money supply causes a proportional long-run depreciation of its currency against foreign currencies. Similarly, a permanent decrease in a country's money supply causes a proportional long-run appreciation of its currency against foreign currencies.*

## Inflation and Exchange Rate Dynamics

In this section, we tie together our short- and long-run findings about the effects of monetary changes by examining the process through which the price level adjusts to its long-run position. An economy experiences **inflation** when its price level is rising and **deflation** when its price level is falling. Our examination of inflation will give us a deeper understanding of how the exchange rate adjusts to monetary disturbances in the economy.

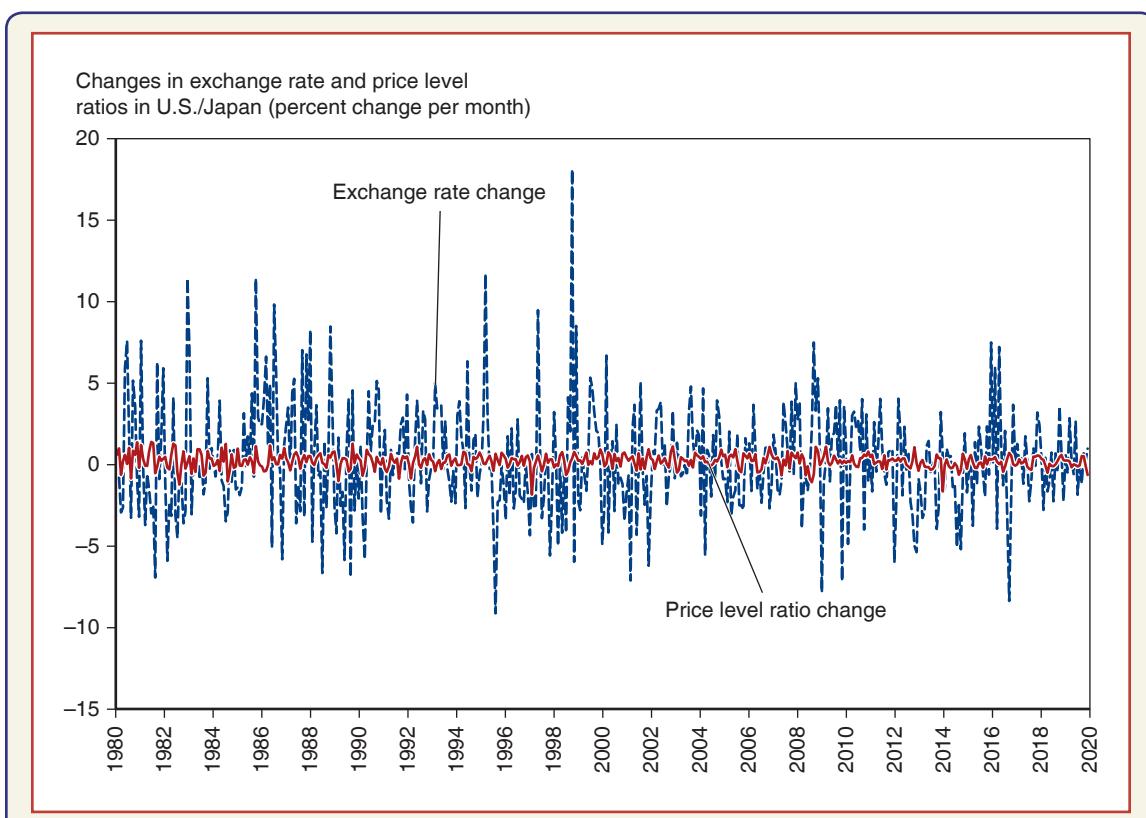
### Short-Run Price Rigidity versus Long-Run Price Flexibility

Our analysis of the short-run effects of monetary changes assumed that a country's price level, unlike its exchange rate, does not jump immediately. This assumption cannot be exactly correct because many commodities, such as agricultural products, are traded in markets where prices adjust sharply every day as supply or demand conditions shift. In addition, exchange rate changes themselves may affect the prices of some tradable goods and services that enter into the commodity basket defining the price level.

Many prices in the economy, however, are written into long-term contracts and cannot be changed immediately when changes in the money supply occur. The most important prices of this type are workers' wages, which are negotiated only periodically in

many industries. Wages do not enter indices of the price level directly, but they make up a large fraction of the cost of producing goods and services. Since output prices depend heavily on production costs, the behavior of the overall price level is influenced by the sluggishness of wage movements. The short-run “stickiness” of price levels is illustrated by Figure 15-12, which compares data on month-to-month percentage changes in the dollar/yen exchange rate,  $E_{\$/\text{¥}}$ , with data on month-to-month percentage changes in the ratio of money price levels in the United States and Japan,  $P_{\text{US}}/P_{\text{J}}$ . As you can see, the exchange rate is much more variable than relative price levels, a fact consistent with the view that price levels are relatively rigid in the short run. The pattern shown in the figure applies to all of the main industrial countries in recent decades. In light of this and other evidence, we will therefore continue to assume the price level is given in the short run and does not make significant jumps in response to policy changes.

This assumption would not be reasonable, however, for all countries at all times. In extremely inflationary conditions, such as those seen in the 1980s in some Latin American countries, long-term contracts specifying domestic money payments may go



**FIGURE 15-12**

### Month-to-Month Variability of the Dollar/Yen Exchange Rate and of the U.S./Japan Price Level Ratio, 1980–2019

The much greater month-to-month variability of the exchange rate suggests that price levels are relatively sticky in the short run.

**Source:** Price levels from International Monetary Fund, *International Financial Statistics*. Exchange rate from Global Financial Data.

out of use. Automatic price level indexation of wage payments may also be widespread under highly inflationary conditions. Such developments make the price level much less rigid than it would be under moderate inflation, and large price level jumps become possible. Some price rigidity can remain, however, even in the face of inflation rates that would be high by everyday industrial-country standards. For example, Turkey's 30 percent inflation rate for 2002 seems high until it is compared with the 114 percent depreciation of the Turkish lira against the U.S. dollar over the same year.

Our analysis assuming short-run price rigidity is nonetheless most applicable to countries with histories of comparative price level stability, such as the United States. Even in the cases of low-inflation countries, there is a lively academic debate over the possibility that seemingly sticky wages and prices are in reality quite flexible.<sup>8</sup>

Although the price level appears to display short-run stickiness in many countries, a change in the money supply creates immediate demand and cost pressures that eventually lead to future increases in the price level. These pressures come from three main sources:

- 1. Excess demand for output and labor.** An increase in the money supply has an expansionary effect on the economy, raising the total demand for goods and services. To meet this demand, producers of goods and services must employ workers overtime and make new hires. Even if wages are given in the short run, the additional demand for labor allows workers to ask for higher wages in the next round of wage negotiations. Producers are willing to pay these higher wages, for they know that in a booming economy, it will not be hard to pass higher wage costs on to consumers through higher product prices.
- 2. Inflationary expectations.** If everyone expects the price level to rise in the future, their expectation will increase the pace of inflation today. Workers bargaining over wage contracts will insist on higher money wages to counteract the effect on their real wages of the anticipated general increase in prices. Producers, once again, will give in to these wage demands if they expect product prices to rise and cover the additional wage costs.
- 3. Raw materials prices.** Many raw materials used in the production of final goods, for example, petroleum products and metals, are sold in markets where prices adjust sharply even in the short run. By causing the prices of such materials to jump upward, a money supply increase raises production costs in materials-using industries. Eventually, producers in those industries will raise product prices to cover their higher costs.

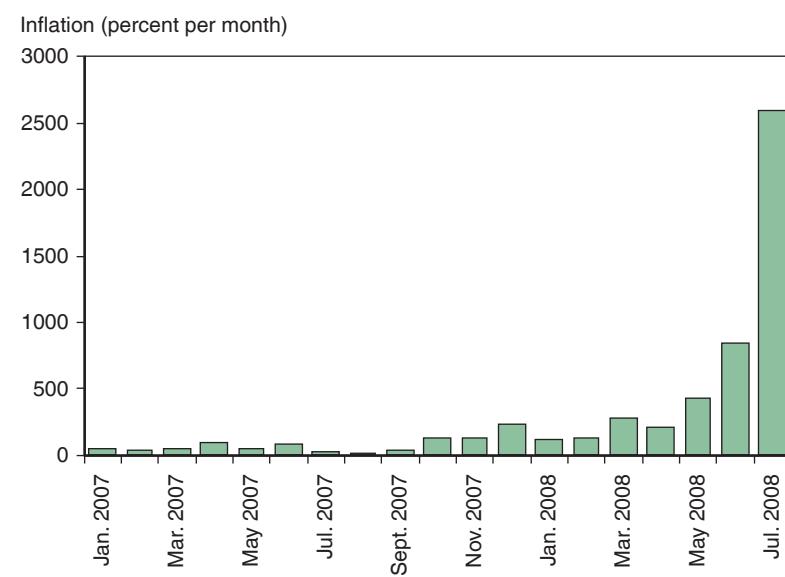
## MONEY SUPPLY GROWTH AND HYPERINFLATION IN ZIMBABWE

**S**ince the French Revolution, there have been more than 30 recorded episodes of *hyperinflation*: an explosive and seemingly uncontrollable inflation in which money loses value rapidly and may even go out of use.

All hyperinflations have been driven by massive money-supply growth, starting with the French revolutionary government's issuance of a paper currency, called *assignats*, to pay for its spending needs.

---

<sup>8</sup>For a discussion of this debate and empirical evidence that U.S. aggregate prices and wages show significant rigidity, see the book by Hall and Papell listed in the Further Readings. Other summaries of U.S. evidence are given by Mark A. Wynne, "Sticky Prices: What Is the Evidence?" *Federal Reserve Bank of Dallas Economic Review* (First Quarter 1995), pp. 1–12); and by Peter J. Klenow and Benjamin A. Malin, "Microeconomic Evidence on Price Setting," in Benjamin M. Friedman and Michael Woodford, eds., *Handbook of Monetary Economics*, Vol. 3 (Amsterdam: Elsevier, 2010).



**Monthly Inflation in Zimbabwe, 2007–2008**

**Source:** Reserve Bank of Zimbabwe.

One of two cases of hyperinflation in the 21st century (the other being Venezuela), but one of the most extreme ever, occurred in the African nation of Zimbabwe between 2007 and 2009. During hyperinflations, the magnitudes of monetary changes are so enormous that the “long-run” effects of money on the price level can occur very quickly. These episodes therefore provide laboratory conditions well suited for testing long-run theories about the effects of money supplies on prices.<sup>9</sup>

Like other hyperinflations, Zimbabwe’s was fueled by the government’s need to cover its expenses by printing money. These expenses included a four-year war in the Congo that began in 1998 and large-scale support of agriculture, all

at a time when foreigners were withdrawing loans, investment, and aid because of domestic political turbulence. Inflation was the result, and the currency’s exchange rate, while officially controlled by the government, depreciated rapidly in a parallel black market where market forces prevailed. On April 1, 2006, the government carried out a currency reform, creating a new Zimbabwean dollar (Z\$) equivalent to 1,000 old ones.

In 2007, high inflation crossed the line into hyperinflation, as illustrated in the accompanying figure. The monthly inflation rate surpassed 50 percent in March 2007 and generally rose from there. On July 1, 2008, the government issued a Z\$100 billion note—at the time, roughly equal to the price of three eggs—and the following month

<sup>9</sup>In a classic paper, the late Columbia University economist Phillip Cagan drew the line between inflation and hyperinflation at an inflation rate of 50 percent per month (which, through the power of compounding, comes out to 12,875 percent per year). See “The Monetary Dynamics of Hyperinflation,” in Milton Friedman, ed., *Studies in the Quantity Theory of Money* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1956), pp. 25–117. Such 18th-century data as are available indicate that the French Revolution episode (1789–1796) reached a peak monthly inflation rate of more than 143 percent.

carried out a further currency reform with each new new Z\$ equivalent to 10 billion old new dollars. But the situation only worsened. Official CPI statistics of the Reserve Bank of Zimbabwe (RBZ), the central bank, show that the price level rose by a factor of 36,661,304 between January 2007 and July 2008 (when the bank stopped reporting price data). The RBZ's numbers may be underestimates. According to one report, the rate of inflation for the month of October 2008 alone exceeded 33,000,000 percent!<sup>10</sup> Yet another currency reform, on February 3, 2009, created the fourth Z\$, equivalent to 1 trillion of the former currency units.

By early 2009, however, the hyperinflation was coming to an end on its own because people were avoiding the unstable Z\$ and instead relying on foreign currencies such as the U.S. dollar, the South African rand, and the pula of Botswana. A new coalition government legalized foreign currency use, suspended the legal tender status of the Z\$, and announced that it would conduct all of its own transactions in U.S. dollars. Importantly, the government (which could no longer print money) adopted a "cash budgeting" rule, allowing itself to spend only the money it brought in through taxes. Because the Z\$ quickly went out of use, the RBZ gave up reporting its exchange rate after November 6, 2009. Inflation (now measured in U.S. dollar terms) dropped dramatically in 2009.<sup>11</sup> Although several currencies continued to circulate side by side, the U.S. dollar was dominant. Thus, the inflation rate measured in U.S. dollars became the most important one for Zimbabwe's households and businesses.

After 2009 Zimbabwe still suffered from numerous economic problems, many of them stemming from its years of extreme macroeconomic instability and continuing structural distortions, including rampant corruption. Inflation, however, was not

one of them: inflation of dollar prices remained low, under 5 percent per year. Unfortunately, after 2014, low and positive inflation turned into deflation, that is, a negative rate of inflation. A persistent fall in prices brings a host of complications of its own, as we will discuss in Chapter 17. Zimbabwe's deflation reflected not only low U.S. inflation but also a deeper setback for its economy, a collapse in the world prices of its main exports, commodities such as iron ore, timber, and cotton. By adopting a foreign currency as its own, the Zimbabwean government gave up its ability to control its money supply. It became unable to create money to curtail deflation but instead had to import the U.S. dollars needed that make up its money supply through current account surpluses, foreign aid, and workers' remittances from abroad.

Given the weakness of its exports, Zimbabwe's economy was starved of dollars by 2015, and so in 2016 the government introduced "bond notes" backed by 200 million U.S. dollars borrowed from the African Export-Import Bank.<sup>12</sup> The bond notes soon depreciated, however, leading the government to create new electronic notes to augment the supply. In February 2019, the government merged these notes with a new electronic currency called the Zimdollar, and in November 2019, it began to issue paper Zimdollar notes.

Amid this currency turmoil and with a continuing incentive for the government to issue money to finance its deficits, high inflation returned. According to data from the RBZ, February 2020 inflation was 13.5 percent (equivalent to 540 percent at an annual rate) and March 2020 inflation was 26.6 percent (676 percent at an annual rate). Facing the turmoil of a new global recession and the COVID-19 pandemic, Zimbabwe's citizens were bracing for even worse in the months ahead.

<sup>10</sup>See Tara McIndoe-Calder, "Hyperinflation in Zimbabwe," unpublished manuscript (Central Bank of Ireland, March 2011).

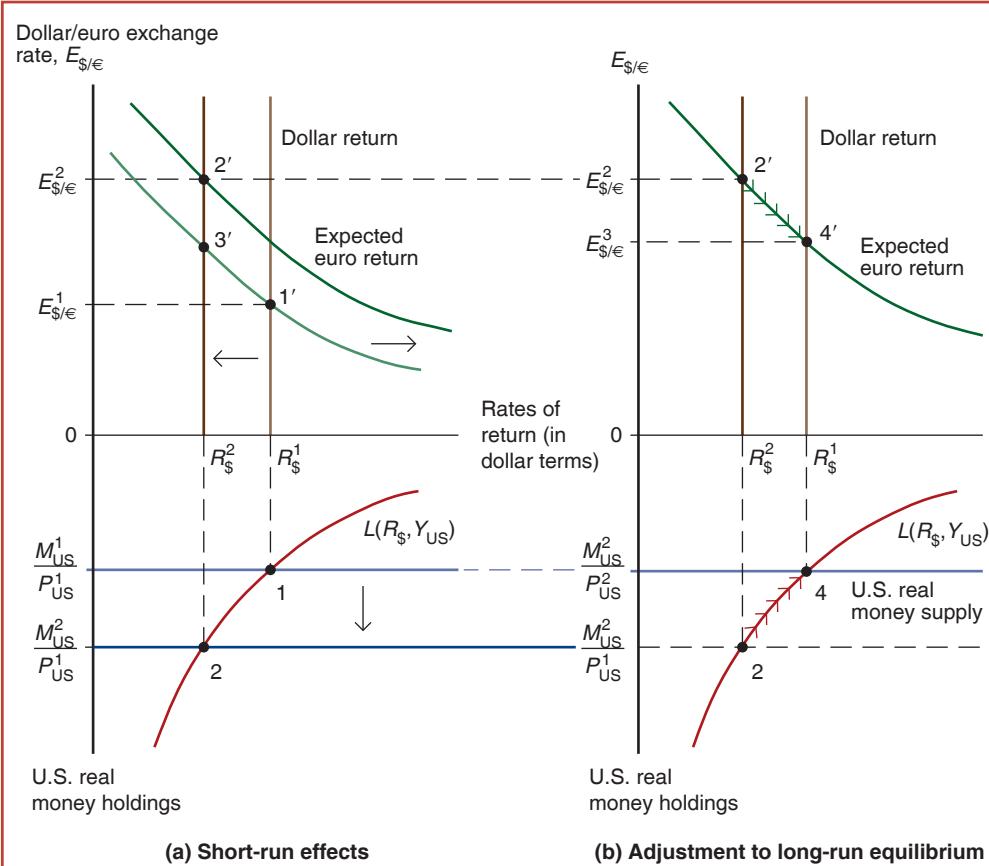
<sup>11</sup>For more detailed accounts, see Janet Koech, "Hyperinflation in Zimbabwe," in *Globalization and Monetary Policy Institute 2011 Annual Report*, Federal Reserve Bank of Dallas, pp. 2–12; and Joseph Noko, "Dollarization: The Case of Zimbabwe," *Cato Journal* 31 (Spring/Summer 2011), pp. 339–365.

<sup>12</sup>See "Who Wants to Be a Trillionaire? Zimbabwe's New Currency," *The Economist*, May 14, 2016.

## Permanent Money Supply Changes and the Exchange Rate

We now apply our analysis of inflation to study the adjustment of the dollar/euro exchange rate following a *permanent* increase in the U.S. money supply. Figure 15-13 shows both the short-run (Figure 15-13a) and the long-run (Figure 15-13b) effects of this disturbance. We suppose the economy starts with all variables at their long-run levels and that output remains constant as the economy adjusts to the money supply change.

Figure 15-13a assumes the U.S. price level is initially given at  $P_{US}^1$ . An increase in the nominal money supply from  $M_{US}^1$  to  $M_{US}^2$  therefore raises the real money supply from  $M_{US}^1/P_{US}^1$  to  $M_{US}^2/P_{US}^1$  in the short run, lowering the interest rate from  $R_{\$}^1$  (point 1) to  $R_{\$}^2$  (point 2). So far, our analysis proceeds exactly as it did earlier in this chapter.



**FIGURE 15-13**

### Short-Run and Long-Run Effects of an Increase in the U.S. Money Supply (Given Real Output, $Y$ )

(a) Short-run adjustment of the asset markets. (b) How the interest rate, price level, and exchange rate move over time as the economy approaches its long-run equilibrium.

The first change in our analysis comes when we ask how the American money supply change [shown in the bottom part of panel (a)] affects the foreign exchange market [shown in the top part of panel (a)]. As before, the fall in the U.S. interest rate is shown as a leftward shift in the vertical schedule giving the dollar return on dollar deposits. This is no longer the whole story, however, for the money supply increase now affects *exchange rate expectations*. Because the U.S. money supply change is permanent, people expect a long-run increase in all dollar prices, including the exchange rate, which is the dollar price of euros. As you will recall from Chapter 14, a rise in the expected future dollar/euro exchange rate (a future dollar depreciation) raises the expected dollar return on euro deposits; it thus shifts the downward-sloping schedule in the top part of Figure 15-13a to the right. The dollar depreciates against the euro, moving from an exchange rate of  $E_{\$/\text{€}}^1$  (point 1') to  $E_{\$/\text{€}}^2$  (point 2'). Notice that the dollar depreciation is *greater* than it would be if the expected future dollar/euro exchange rate stayed fixed (as it might if the money supply increase were temporary rather than permanent). If the expectation  $E_{\$/\text{€}}^2$  did not change, the new short-run equilibrium would be at point 3' rather than at point 2'.

Figure 15-13b shows how the interest rate and exchange rate behave as the price level rises during the economy's adjustment to its long-run equilibrium. The price level begins to rise from the initially given level  $P_{\text{US}}^1$ , eventually reaching  $P_{\text{US}}^2$ . Because the long-run increase in the price level must be proportional to the increase in the money supply, the final *real* money supply,  $M_{\text{US}}^2/P_{\text{US}}^2$ , is shown equal to the initial real money supply,  $M_{\text{US}}^1/P_{\text{US}}^1$ . Since output is given and the real money supply has returned to its original level, the equilibrium interest rate must again equal  $R_{\$}^1$  in the long run (point 4). The interest rate therefore rises from  $R_{\$}^2$  (point 2) to  $R_{\$}^1$  (point 4) as the price level rises from  $P_{\text{US}}^1$  to  $P_{\text{US}}^2$ .

The rising U.S. interest rate has exchange rate effects that can also be seen in Figure 15-13b: The dollar *appreciates* against the euro in the process of adjustment. If exchange rate expectations do not change further during the adjustment process, the foreign exchange market moves to its long-run position along the downward-sloping schedule defining the dollar return on euro deposits. The market's path is just the path traced out by the vertical dollar interest rate schedule as it moves rightward because of the price level's gradual rise. In the long run (point 4'), the equilibrium exchange rate,  $E_{\$/\text{€}}^3$ , is higher than at the original equilibrium, point 1'. Like the price level, the dollar/euro exchange rate has risen in proportion to the increase in the money supply.

Figure 15-14 shows time paths like the ones just described for the U.S. money supply, the dollar interest rate, the U.S. price level, and the dollar/euro exchange rate. The figure is drawn so that the long-run increases in the price level (Figure 15-14c) and exchange rate (Figure 15-14d) are proportional to the increase in the money supply (Figure 15-14a).

### Exchange Rate Overshooting

In its initial depreciation after a money supply rise, the exchange rate jumps from  $E_{\$/\text{€}}^1$  up to  $E_{\$/\text{€}}^2$ , a depreciation greater than its *long-run* depreciation from  $E_{\$/\text{€}}^1$  to  $E_{\$/\text{€}}^3$  (see Figure 15-14d). The exchange rate is said to overshoot when its immediate response to a disturbance is greater than its long-run response. **Exchange rate overshooting** is an important phenomenon because it helps explain why exchange rates move so sharply from day to day.

The economic explanation of overshooting comes from the interest parity condition. The explanation is easiest to grasp if we assume that before the money supply

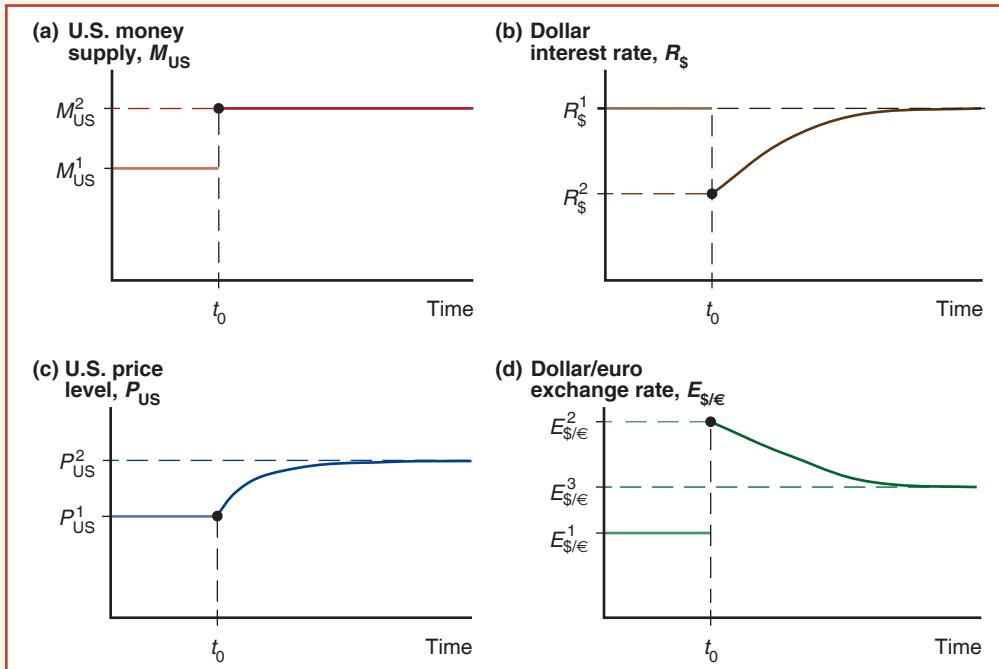


FIGURE 15-14

### Time Paths of U.S. Economic Variables after a Permanent Increase in the U.S. Money Supply

After the money supply increases at  $t_0$  in panel (a), the interest rate [in panel (b)], price level [in panel (c)], and exchange rate [in panel (d)] move as shown toward their long-run levels. As indicated in panel (d) by the initial jump from  $E_{\$/\epsilon}^1$  to  $E_{\$/\epsilon}^2$ , the exchange rate overshoots in the short run before settling down to its long-run level,  $E_{\$/\epsilon}^3$ .

increase first occurs, no change in the dollar/euro exchange rate is expected, so that  $R_{\$}^1$  equals  $R_{\epsilon}$ , the given interest rate on euro deposits. A permanent increase in the U.S. money supply doesn't affect  $R_{\epsilon}$ , so it causes  $R_{\$}^1$  to fall below  $R_{\epsilon}$  and remain below that interest rate (Figure 15-14b) until the U.S. price level has completed the long-run adjustment to  $P_{US}^2$  shown in Figure 15-14c. For the foreign exchange market to be in equilibrium during this adjustment process, however, the interest difference in favor of euro deposits must be offset by an expected *appreciation* of the dollar against the euro, that is, by an expected fall in  $E_{\$/\epsilon}$ . Only if the dollar/euro exchange rate overshoots  $E_{\$/\epsilon}^3$  initially will market participants expect a subsequent appreciation of the dollar against the euro.

Overshooting is a direct consequence of the short-run rigidity of the price level. In a hypothetical world where the price level could adjust immediately to its new, long-run level after a money supply increase, the dollar interest rate would not fall because prices would adjust immediately and prevent the real money supply from rising. Thus, there would be no need for overshooting to maintain equilibrium in the foreign exchange market. The exchange rate would maintain equilibrium simply by jumping to its new, long-run level right away.

## CASE STUDY

### Inflation Targeting and Exchange Rate in Emerging Countries

All central banks are responsible for managing their monetary policy. They must therefore set parameters to formulate it. IMF's Annual Report on Exchange Arrangements and Exchange Restrictions defines a framework within which a country should target the inflation rate, the exchange rate anchor, and the monetary aggregate(s) as part of its monetary policy.

In emerging market economies, the role of monetary policy, which is often the sole economic policy due to the limits to fiscal policy in these countries, is all the more important as it is expected to simultaneously foster economic growth, price stability, and exchange rate stability. For this reason, the choice of inflation targeting is quite challenging for these countries.

Some empirical studies suggest that inflation targeting helps improve macroeconomic performance by keeping a check on both inflation and inflationary expectations while managing long-term interest rates. On the other hand, other studies found no evidence that suggests that inflation targeting enhances economic performance. This is particularly significant when it comes to interest rate management, which is the prime instrument of a central bank's monetary policy. It can have a notable contradictory effect when, in order to slow inflation, a central bank raises the interest rate but this increase slows GDP growth and attracts an inflow of foreign capital. This, in turn, puts pressure on the exchange rate. Similarly, a decrease in the interest rate could stimulate GDP growth, devalue the exchange rate, and feed inflation.

While the effectiveness of inflation targeting has been largely debated, a 2014 study by Samarina, Terpstra, and De Haan argues that the impact of inflation targeting can be segregated based on the stage of economic advancement a country is at. The authors found inflation targeting to have no effect for advanced economies but a significant negative impact for emerging market economies.

The Annual Report on Exchange Arrangements and Exchange Restrictions indicates that in 2014, 34 countries were found to be directly targeting inflation, and 19 of these countries could be classified as emerging market economies: Albania, Brazil, Chile, Colombia, Ghana, Hungary, Indonesia, Korea, Mexico, Paraguay, Peru, Philippines, Poland, Romania, Serbia, South Africa, Thailand, Turkey, and Uganda. In February 2015, the Reserve Bank of India (RBI) officially adopted inflation targeting as part of its monetary policy.

#### **INFLATION TARGETING AND EXCHANGE RATES**

Since the Asian Financial Crisis of 1997–1998 and the Latin American crises, many emerging market economies have abandoned their soft-pegged regimes in favor of more flexible exchange rate frameworks. Additionally, according to Ouyang and Rajan (2016),<sup>13</sup> a monetary policy based on inflation targeting is becoming increasingly popular around the world.

<sup>13</sup> Alice Y. Ouyang & Ramkishen S. Rajan, "Does Inflation Targeting in Asia Reduce Exchange Rate Volatility?", *International Economic Journal*, 30:2, 294–311, 2016, <http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/10168737.2016.1148431>; Keynote Address at the Conference on Fourteen Years of Inflation Targeting in South Africa and The Challenge of a Changing Mandate, South African Reserve Bank Conference Centre, Pretoria, South Africa, October 30, 2014.

All inflation-targeting countries have either floating or free-floating exchange rate arrangements to avoid conflict with the management of interest rate.

In his speech before the South African Reserve Bank, John B. Taylor, who formulated the Taylor equation which was followed by central banks until the financial crisis, asserted that emerging market economies should stick to a rule-based approach to inflation targeting as opposed to a discretionary approach to achieve smoother adjustments and less volatility on an international level. Similarly, in a 2012 study, Vegh and Vuletin found that the adoption of rule-based inflation targeting by emerging market economies led to a reduction of large capital movements associated with the “fear of free falling” exchange rates. Eichengreen and Taylor’s study from 2003 had a similar conclusion that associated low volatility in exchange rates with the adoption of inflation targeting.<sup>14</sup>

Addressing the concern shared by several Asian economies regarding exchange rate volatility and its effects on trade and investment, Ouyang and Rajan found that emerging market inflation targeting regimes in Asia face a lower rate of inflation compared to other emerging market economies in the continent. However, they also seemed to be experiencing a lower growth rate.

The impact of currency depreciation on internal prices (exchange rate pass through) has two components: an immediate impact through the rise of import prices and a “second round” impact, that is, the change in inflation expectations that affects prices and wages and creates a permanent effect on inflation.

The role of monetary policy in this situation is to successfully stabilize the medium-term expectations inflation to limit the impact of exchange rate pass-through.

It is reasonable to assume that if the central bank has created a robust price stability expectation through its inflation targeting policy, the second round effect would be limited.

The experience of Latin American emerging economies confirms this expectation. In its Regional Economic Outlook, Western Hemisphere (2016), the IMF concludes that the exchange rate pass-through in countries that target inflation is smaller. This gap is more pronounced in emerging market economies that target inflation as compared to emerging market economies that don’t.

---

<sup>14</sup>Taylor equation: John B Taylor in 1992 proposed the following equation to link the central bank interest rate ( $r$ ) with inflation ( $p$ ) and the growth of real GDP ( $Y$ ), which is  $r = 1.5p + 0.5 Y + 1$ , (Taylor, John B. (2013a)); also refer to “Lectures on Monetary Theory and Policy,” Stanford University, <http://web.stanford.edu/~johntayl/Spring2013PhDclass/IndexSpring2013.html>; The Annual Report on Exchange Arrangements and Exchange Restrictions, International Monetary Fund, 2014, [www.imf.org/external/pubs/nft/2014/areaers/ar2014.pdf](http://www.imf.org/external/pubs/nft/2014/areaers/ar2014.pdf); “India Adopts Flexible Inflation Targeting,” *Business Standard*, March 3, 2015, <http://www.business-standard.com>; and Anna Samarina, Mirre Terpstra, and Jakob De Haan, “Inflation Targeting and Inflation Performance: A Comparative Analysis,” *Applied Economics*, 2014; <http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/00036846.2013.829205>.

Since every economy has its own macroeconomic challenges, a single appropriate monetary policy is difficult to prescribe. For example, even in an inflation targeting economy, policymakers cannot be indifferent to the real exchange rate evolution. Emerging market economies are also moving toward a mixed inflation targeting strategy where their central banks manage both inflation and real exchange rates. Addressing the constraints that inflation targeting poses in the management of real exchange rates, Ostry, David, Ghosh, and Chamon conclude in their 2012 study that in such a scenario, another instrument of monetary policy would be foreign exchange intervention. This would match the two targets of monetary policy, inflation and exchange rate, with the number of instruments!<sup>15</sup>

---

<sup>15</sup>“Regional Economic Outlook,” Western Hemisphere, April 2016, [www.imf.org/external/pubs/ft/reo/2016/whd/eng/wreo0416.htm](http://www.imf.org/external/pubs/ft/reo/2016/whd/eng/wreo0416.htm); Joshua Aizenman, Michael Hutchison, and Ilan Noy, “Inflation Targeting and Real Exchange Rates in Emerging Markets,” *NBER Working Paper* No. 14561, December 2008, Revised July 2010, [www.nber.org/papers/w14561.pdf](http://www.nber.org/papers/w14561.pdf); and Ostry, Jonathan David, Atish R. Ghosh, and Marcos Chamon, “Two Targets, Two Instruments: Monetary and Exchange Rate Policies in Emerging Market Economies,” IMF Staff Discussion Note No. 12/01, International Monetary Fund ([www.imf.org/external/pubs/ft/sdn/2012/sdn1201.pdf](http://www.imf.org/external/pubs/ft/sdn/2012/sdn1201.pdf)).

## SUMMARY

- People hold money because of its liquidity. When considered in real terms, *aggregate money demand* is not a demand for a certain number of currency units but is instead a demand for a certain amount of purchasing power. Aggregate real money demand depends negatively on the opportunity cost of holding money (measured by the domestic interest rate) and positively on the volume of transactions in the economy (measured by real GNP).
- The money market is in equilibrium when the real *money supply* equals aggregate real money demand. With the *price level* and real output given, a rise in the money supply lowers the interest rate and a fall in the money supply raises the interest rate. A rise in real output raises the interest rate, given the price level, while a fall in real output has the opposite effect.
- By lowering the domestic interest rate, an increase in the money supply causes the domestic currency to depreciate in the foreign exchange market (even when expectations of future exchange rates do not change). Similarly, a fall in the domestic money supply causes the domestic currency to appreciate against foreign currencies.
- The assumption that the price level is given in the *short run* is a good approximation to reality in countries with moderate *inflation*, but it is a misleading assumption over the *long run*. Permanent changes in the money supply push the *long-run equilibrium* price level proportionally in the same direction but do not influence the long-run values of output, the interest rate, or any relative prices. One important money price whose long-run equilibrium level rises in proportion to a permanent money supply increase is the exchange rate, the domestic currency price of foreign currency.
- An increase in the money supply can cause the exchange rate to overshoot its long-run level in the short run. If output is given, a permanent money supply increase, for example, causes a more-than-proportional short-run depreciation of the currency, followed by an appreciation of the currency to its long-run exchange rate. *Exchange rate overshooting*, which heightens the volatility of exchange rates, is a direct result of sluggish short-run price level adjustment and the interest parity condition.

## KEY TERMS

aggregate money demand, p. 421	inflation, p. 437	price level, p. 422
deflation, p. 437	long run, p. 427	short run, p. 427
exchange rate overshooting, p. 443	long-run equilibrium, p. 433	

## PROBLEMS

1. Suppose there is a reduction in aggregate real money demand, that is, a negative shift in the aggregate real money demand function. Trace the short- and long-run effects on the exchange rate, interest rate, and price level.
2. How would you expect a fall in a country's population to alter its aggregate money demand function? Would it matter if the fall in population were due to a fall in the number of households or to a fall in the size of the average household?
3. The velocity of money,  $V$ , is defined as the ratio of real GNP to real money holdings,  $V = Y/(M/P)$  in this chapter's notation. Use equation (15-4) to derive an expression for velocity and explain how velocity varies with changes in  $R$  and in  $Y$ . (Hint: The effect of output changes on  $V$  depends on the elasticity of aggregate

money demand with respect to real output, which economists believe to be less than unity.) What is the relationship between velocity and the exchange rate?

4. What is the short-run effect on the exchange rate of an increase in domestic real GNP, given expectations about future exchange rates?
5. Does our discussion of money's usefulness as a medium of exchange and unit of account suggest reasons why some currencies become vehicle currencies for foreign exchange transactions? (The concept of a vehicle currency was discussed in Chapter 14.)
6. If a currency reform has no effects on the economy's real variables, why do governments typically institute currency reforms in connection with broader programs aimed at halting runaway inflation? (There are many instances in addition to the Turkish case mentioned in the text. Other examples include Israel's switch from the pound to the shekel, Argentina's switches from the peso to the austral and back to the peso, and Brazil's switches from the cruzeiro to the cruzado, from the cruzado to the cruzeiro, from the cruzeiro to the cruzeiro real, and from the cruzeiro real to the real, the current currency, which was introduced in 1994.)
7. Between 1980 and 2005, Ghana experienced some periods of high inflation and periods of less high inflation. Some key macroeconomic data on the evolution of economic and financial variables are listed (*the exchange rate is expressed using the Ghanaian local currency, the cedi with the U.S. dollar*). Answer the following:

**GDP growth, Money growth, Exchange rate, and Inflation**

YEAR	GDP growth	Money growth	Exchange Rate	Inflation
1980	-0.47	33.80	2.75	50.07
1981	-3.50	51.32	2.75	116.50
1982	-6.92	23.34	2.75	22.30
1983	-4.56	40.21	8.83	122.87
1984	8.64	53.62	35.99	39.66
1985	5.09	46.17	54.37	10.30
1986	5.20	47.94	89.20	24.57
1987	4.80	53.33	153.73	39.82
1988	5.63	46.28	202.3	31.36
1989	5.09	54.67	270.00	25.22
1990	3.33	13.30	326.33	37.26
1991	5.28	39.08	367.83	18.03
1992	3.88	52.28	437.09	10.06
1993	4.85	33.50	649.06	24.96
1994	3.30	52.57	659.71	24.87
1995	4.11	43.17	1200.43	59.46
1996	4.60	39.20	1637.23	46.56
1997	4.20	44.09	2050.17	27.89
1998	4.70	17.49	2314.15	14.62
1999	4.41	25.42	2669.30	12.41
2000	3.69	54.24	5455.06	25.19
2001	4.00	31.69	7170.76	32.91
2002	4.50	48.85	7932.70	14.82
2003	5.20	34.23	8677.37	26.67
2004	5.60	27.44	9004.63	12.62
2005	5.90	9.35	9072.54	15.12

Source: WDI, World Bank

- a. When you look at these statistics could you observe a relationship between money supply, price level, and exchange rate?

- b.** Calculate the percent changes in the general price level and price of the Ghana cedi from 1994 to 1996. How do these compare to each other and to the percent increase in the money supply? What relationship do you observe between the variation of exchange rate and the inflation rate?
  - c.** Some research has found a correlation between the price of crude oil in the world market, the exchange rate, and the effects of political election in Ghana. Could you explain the relationship between these variables?
- 8.** Following is a table of some inflation-targeting countries and the years in which they adopted the practice:

Country	Year of Adoption
New Zealand	1990
Chile	1991
Canada	1991
Israel	1991
Sweden	1993
Finland	1993
Australia	1994
Brazil	1999
Mexico	1999
South Africa	2000
Indonesia	2005

Go to the International Monetary Fund's most recent *World Economic Outlook* database (accessible directly or through [www.imf.org](http://www.imf.org)) and collect the annual inflation rate series PCPIEPCH for these countries, starting in 1980. Then graph the data for each country using Excel or some other data analysis package. Just looking at the data, does inflation appear to behave differently after the adoption of inflation targeting?

- 9.** In our discussion of short-run exchange rate overshooting, we assumed real output was given. Assume instead that an increase in the money supply raises real output in the short run (an assumption that will be justified in Chapter 17). How does this affect the extent to which the exchange rate overshoots when the money supply first increases? Is it likely that the exchange rate undershoots? (Hint: In Figure 15-13a, allow the aggregate real money demand schedule to shift in response to the increase in output.)
- 10.** Figure 14-2 shows that Japan's short-term interest rates have had periods during which they are near or equal to zero. Is the fact that the yen interest rates shown never drop below zero a coincidence, or can you think of some reason why interest rates might be bounded below by zero?
- 11.** How might a zero interest rate complicate the task of monetary policy? (Hint: At a zero rate of interest, there is no advantage in switching from money to bonds.)
- 12.** As we observed in this chapter, central banks, rather than purposefully setting the level of the money supply, usually set a target level for a short-term interest rate by standing ready to lend or borrow whatever money people wish to trade at that interest rate. (When people need more money for a reason other than a change in the interest rate, the money supply therefore expands, and it contracts when they wish to hold less.)
  - a.** Describe the problems that might arise if a central bank sets monetary policy by holding the market interest rate constant. (First, consider the flexible-price

case, and ask yourself if you can find a unique equilibrium price level when the central bank simply gives people all the money they wish to hold at the pegged interest rate. Then consider the sticky-price case.)

- b.** Does the situation change if the central bank raises the interest rate when prices are high, according to a formula such as  $R - R_0 = a(P - P_0)$ , where  $a$  is a positive constant and  $P_0$  a target price level?
  - c.** Suppose the central bank's policy rule is  $R - R_0 = a(P - P_0) + u$ , where  $u$  is a random movement in the policy interest rate. In the overshooting model shown in Figure 15-14, describe how the economy would adjust to a permanent one-time unexpected fall in the random factor  $u$ , and say why. You can interpret the fall in  $u$  as an interest rate cut by the central bank and therefore as an expansionary monetary action. Compare your story with the one depicted in Figure 15-14.
- 13.** The West African CFA franc is the currency used by eight independent states in West Africa—Benin, Burkina Faso, Guinea-Bissau, Ivory Coast, Mali, Niger, Senegal, and Togo, which form a monetary union. Since 1999, the CFA has been strictly pegged to the euro (before which it was aligned to the French Franc) and is issued by the West African Central Bank. *Go to World Economic Outlook* database (accessible directly or through [www.imf.org](http://www.imf.org)) and compare the inflation rate (average consumer price) for the Sub-Saharan group of countries with the inflation rate of the countries mentioned in this problem. Summarize your observations. How would you explain it?

## FURTHER READINGS

- Ben S. Bernanke, Thomas Laubach, Frederic S. Mishkin, and Adam S. Posen. *Inflation Targeting: Lessons from the International Experience*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1999. Discusses recent monetary policy experience and the consequences for inflation and other macroeconomic variables.
- Rudiger Dornbusch. "Expectations and Exchange Rate Dynamics." *Journal of Political Economy* 84 (December 1976), pp. 1161–1176. A theoretical analysis of exchange rate overshooting.
- Jacob A. Frenkel and Michael L. Mussa. "The Efficiency of Foreign Exchange Markets and Measures of Turbulence." *American Economic Review* 70 (May 1980), pp. 374–381. Contrasts the behavior of national price levels with that of exchange rates and other asset prices.
- Robert E. Hall and David H. Papell. *Macroeconomics: Economic Growth, Fluctuations, and Policy*, 6th edition. New York: W. W. Norton & Company, 2005. Chapter 15 discusses some theories of nominal price rigidity.
- Lucrezia Reichlin and Richard Baldwin, eds. *Is Inflation Targeting Dead? Central Banking after the Crisis*. London: Centre for Economic Policy Research, 2013. Thoughtful essays on the success of inflation targeting and possible alternatives.
- David Romer. "Keynesian Macroeconomics without the LM Curve." *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 14 (Spring 2000), pp. 149–169. A macroeconomic model in which the central bank implements monetary policy through the interest rate rather than the money supply.
- Edwin M. Truman. *Inflation Targeting in the World Economy*. Washington, D.C.: Institute for International Economics, 2003. Overview of the international aspects of monetary policy frameworks that target low inflation.



# CHAPTER 16

## PRICE LEVELS AND THE EXCHANGE RATE IN THE LONG RUN

**A**t the end of 1970, you could have bought 358 Japanese yen with a single American dollar; by Christmas 1980, a dollar was worth only 203 yen. Despite a temporary comeback during the 1980s, the dollar's price in yen slumped below 110 the summer of 2020. Many investors found these price changes difficult to predict, and as a result fortunes were lost—and made—in the foreign exchange market. What economic forces lie behind such dramatic long-term movements in exchange rates?

We have seen that exchange rates depend on interest rates and expectations about the future, which are, in turn, influenced by conditions in national money markets. To understand fully long-term exchange rate movements, however, we have to extend our model in two directions. First, we must complete our account of the linkages among monetary policies, inflation, interest rates, and exchange rates. Second, we must examine factors other than money supplies and demands—for example, demand shifts in markets for goods and services—that also can have sustained effects on exchange rates.

The model of long-run exchange rate behavior that we develop in this chapter provides the framework that actors in asset markets use to forecast future exchange rates. Because the expectations of these agents influence exchange rates immediately, however, predictions about *long-run* movements in exchange rates are important even *in the short run*. We therefore will draw heavily on this chapter's conclusions when we begin our study in Chapter 17 of *short-run* interactions between exchange rates and output.

In the long run, national price levels play a key role in determining both interest rates and the relative prices at which countries' products are traded. A theory of how national price levels interact with exchange rates is thus central to understanding why exchange rates can change dramatically over periods of several years. We begin our analysis by discussing the theory of **purchasing power parity (PPP)**, which explains movements in the exchange rate between two countries' currencies by changes in the countries' price levels. Next, we examine reasons why PPP may fail to give accurate long-run predictions and show how the theory must sometimes be modified to account for supply

or demand shifts in countries' output markets. Finally, we look at what our extended PPP theory predicts about how changes in money and output markets affect exchange and interest rates.

## LEARNING GOALS

After reading this chapter, you will be able to:

- Explain the purchasing power parity theory of exchange rates and the theory's relationship to international goods-market integration.
- Describe how monetary factors such as ongoing price level inflation affect exchange rates in the long run.
- Discuss the concept of the real exchange rate.
- Understand factors that affect real exchange rates and relative currency prices in the long run.
- Explain the relationship between international real interest rate differences and expected changes in real exchange rates.

## The Law of One Price

To understand the market forces that might give rise to the results predicted by the purchasing power parity theory, we discuss first a related but distinct proposition known as the **law of one price**. The law of one price states that in competitive markets free of transportation costs and official barriers to trade (such as tariffs), identical goods sold in different countries must sell for the same price when their prices are expressed in terms of the same currency. For example, if the dollar/pound exchange rate is \$1.50 per pound, a sweater that sells for \$45 in New York must sell for £30 in London. The dollar price of the sweater when sold in London is then ( $\$1.50 \text{ per pound} \times \$30 \text{ per sweater}\right) = \$45 \text{ per sweater}$ , the same as its price in New York.

Let's continue with this example to see why the law of one price must hold when trade is free and there are no transport costs or other trade barriers. If the dollar/pound exchange rate were \$1.45 per pound, you could buy a sweater in London by converting \$43.50 ( $= \$1.45 \text{ per pound} \times \$30$ ) into £30 in the foreign exchange market. Thus, the dollar price of a sweater in London would be only \$43.50. If the same sweater were selling for \$45 in New York, U.S. importers and British exporters would have an incentive to buy sweaters in London and ship them to New York, pushing the London price up and the New York price down until prices were equal in the two locations. Similarly, at an exchange rate of \$1.55 per pound, the dollar price of sweaters in London would be \$46.50 ( $= \$1.55 \text{ per pound} \times \$30$ ), \$1.50 more than in New York. Sweaters would be shipped from west to east until a single price prevailed in the two markets.

The law of one price is a restatement, in terms of currencies, of a principle that was important in the trade theory portion of this book: When trade is open and costless, identical goods must trade at the same relative prices regardless of where they are sold. We remind you of that principle here because it provides one link between the domestic prices of goods and exchange rates. We can state the law of one price formally as follows: Let  $P_{\text{US}}^i$  be the dollar price of good  $i$  when sold in the United States,  $P_E^i$  the corresponding euro price in Europe. Then the law of one price implies that the dollar price of good  $i$  is the same wherever it is sold.

$$P_{\text{US}}^i = (E_{\$/\text{€}}) \times (P_E^i).$$

Equivalently, the dollar/euro exchange rate is the ratio of good  $i$ 's U.S. and European money prices,

$$E_{\$/\epsilon} = P_{\text{US}}^i / P_{\text{E}}^i.$$

## Purchasing Power Parity

The theory of purchasing power parity states that the exchange rate between two countries' currencies equals the ratio of the countries' price levels. Recall from Chapter 15 that the domestic purchasing power of a country's currency is reflected in the country's price level, the money price of a reference basket of goods and services. The PPP theory therefore predicts that a fall in a currency's domestic purchasing power (as indicated by an increase in the domestic price level) will be associated with a proportional currency depreciation in the foreign exchange market. Symmetrically, PPP predicts that an increase in the currency's domestic purchasing power will be associated with a proportional currency appreciation.

The basic idea of PPP was put forth in the writings of 19th-century British economists, among them David Ricardo (the originator of the theory of comparative advantage). Gustav Cassel, a Swedish economist writing in the early 20th century, popularized PPP by making it the centerpiece of a theory of exchange rates. While there has been much controversy about the general validity of PPP, the theory does highlight important factors behind exchange rate movements.

To express the PPP theory in symbols, let  $P_{\text{US}}$  be the dollar price of a reference commodity basket sold in the United States and  $P_{\text{E}}$  the euro price of the same basket in Europe. (Assume for now that a single basket accurately measures money's purchasing power in both countries.) Then PPP predicts a dollar/euro exchange rate of

$$E_{\$/\epsilon} = P_{\text{US}} / P_{\text{E}}. \quad (16-1)$$

If, for example, the reference commodity basket costs \$200 in the United States and €160 in Europe, PPP predicts a dollar/euro exchange rate of \$1.25 per euro (\$200 per basket/€160 per basket). If the U.S. price level were to triple (to \$600 per basket), so would the dollar price of a euro: PPP would imply an exchange rate of \$3.75 per euro (= \$600 per basket/€160 per basket).

By rearranging equation (16-1) to read

$$P_{\text{US}} = (E_{\$/\epsilon}) \times (P_{\text{E}}),$$

we get an alternative interpretation of PPP. The left side of this equation is the dollar price of the reference commodity basket in the United States; the right side is the dollar price of the reference basket when purchased in Europe (that is, its euro price multiplied by the dollar price of a euro). These two prices are the same if PPP holds. PPP thus asserts that all countries' price levels are equal when measured in terms of the same currency.

Equivalently, the right side of the last equation measures the purchasing power of a dollar when exchanged for euros and spent in Europe. PPP therefore holds when, at going exchange rates, every currency's domestic purchasing power is always the same as its foreign purchasing power.

### The Relationship between PPP and the Law of One Price

Superficially, the statement of PPP given by equation (16-1) looks like the law of one price, which says that  $E_{\$/\epsilon} = P_{\text{US}}^i / P_{\text{E}}^i$  for any commodity  $i$ . There is a difference between PPP and the law of one price, however: The law of one price applies to individual

commodities (such as commodity  $i$ ), while PPP applies to the general price level, which is a composite of the prices of all the commodities that enter into the reference basket.

If the law of one price holds true for every commodity, of course, PPP must hold automatically as long as the reference baskets used to reckon different countries' price levels are the same. Proponents of the PPP theory argue, however, that its validity (in particular, its validity as a long-run theory) does not require the law of one price to hold exactly.

Even when the law of one price fails to hold for each individual commodity, the argument goes, prices and exchange rates should not stray too far from the relation predicted by PPP. When goods and services become temporarily more expensive in one country than in others, the demands for its currency and its products fall, pushing the exchange rate and domestic prices back in line with PPP. The opposite situation of relatively cheap domestic products leads, analogously, to currency appreciation and price level inflation. PPP thus asserts that even when the law of one price is not literally true, the economic forces behind it will help eventually to equalize a currency's purchasing power in all countries.

### Absolute PPP and Relative PPP

The statement that exchange rates equal relative price levels [equation (16-1)] is sometimes referred to as **absolute PPP**. Absolute PPP implies a proposition known as **relative PPP**, which states that the percentage change in the exchange rate between two currencies over any period equals the difference between the percentage changes in national price levels. Relative PPP thus translates absolute PPP from a statement about price and exchange rate *levels* into one about price and exchange rate *changes*. It asserts that prices and exchange rates change in a way that preserves the ratio of each currency's domestic and foreign purchasing powers.

If the U.S. price level rises by 10 percent over a year while Europe's rises by only 5 percent, for example, relative PPP predicts a 5 percent depreciation of the dollar against the euro. The dollar's 5 percent depreciation against the euro just cancels the 5 percent by which U.S. inflation exceeds European inflation, leaving the relative domestic and foreign purchasing powers of both currencies unchanged.

More formally, relative PPP between the United States and Europe would be written as

$$(E_{\$/\epsilon,t} - E_{\$/\epsilon,t-1})/E_{\$/\epsilon,t-1} = \pi_{US,t} - \pi_{E,t} \quad (16-2)$$

where  $\pi_t$  denotes an inflation rate [that is,  $\pi_t = (P_t - P_{t-1})/P_{t-1}$ , the percentage change in a price level between dates  $t$  and  $t - 1$ ].<sup>1</sup> Unlike absolute PPP, relative PPP can be defined only with respect to the time interval over which price levels and the exchange rate change.

---

<sup>1</sup>To be precise, equation (16-1) implies a good approximation to equation (16-2) when rates of change are not too large. The *exact* relationship is

$$E_{\$/\epsilon,t}/E_{\$/\epsilon,t-1} = (P_{US,t}/P_{US,t-1})/(P_{E,t}/P_{E,t-1}).$$

After subtracting 1 from both sides, we write the preceding exact equation as

$$\begin{aligned} (E_{\$/\epsilon,t} - E_{\$/\epsilon,t-1})/E_{\$/\epsilon,t-1} &= (\pi_{US,t} + 1)(P_{E,t-1}/P_{E,t}) - (P_{E,t}/P_{E,t}) \\ &= (\pi_{US,t} - \pi_{E,t})(1 + \pi_{E,t}) \\ &= (\pi_{US,t} - \pi_{E,t}) - \pi_{E,t}(\pi_{US,t} - \pi_{E,t})/(1 + \pi_{E,t}). \end{aligned}$$

But if  $\pi_{US,t}$  and  $\pi_{E,t}$  are small, the term  $-\pi_{E,t}(\pi_{US,t} - \pi_{E,t})/(1 + \pi_{E,t})$  in the last equality is negligibly small, implying a very good approximation to (16-2).

In practice, national governments do not take pains to compute the price level indexes they publish using an internationally standardized basket of commodities. Absolute PPP makes no sense, however, unless the two baskets whose prices are compared in equation (16-1) are the same. (There is no reason to expect *different* commodity baskets to sell for the same price!) The notion of relative PPP therefore comes in handy when we have to rely on government price level statistics to evaluate PPP. It makes logical sense to compare percentage exchange rate changes to inflation differences, as above, even when countries base their price *level* estimates on product baskets that differ in coverage and composition.

Relative PPP is important also because it may be valid even when absolute PPP is not. Provided the factors causing deviations from absolute PPP are more or less stable over time, percentage *changes* in relative price levels can still approximate percentage *changes* in exchange rates.

## A Long-Run Exchange Rate Model Based on PPP

When combined with the framework of money demand and supply that we developed in Chapter 15, the assumption of PPP leads to a useful theory of how exchange rates and monetary factors interact in the long run. Because factors that do not influence money supply or money demand play no explicit role in this theory, it is known as the **monetary approach to the exchange rate**. The monetary approach is this chapter's first step in developing a general long-run theory of exchange rates.

We think of the monetary approach as a *long-run* and not a short-run theory because it does not allow for the price rigidities that seem important in explaining short-run macroeconomic developments, in particular departures from full employment. Instead, the monetary approach proceeds as if prices can adjust right away to maintain full employment as well as PPP. Here, as in Chapter 15, when we refer to a variable's "long-run" value, we mean the variable's equilibrium value in a hypothetical world of perfectly flexible output and factor market prices.

There is actually considerable controversy among macroeconomists about the sources of apparent price level stickiness, with some maintaining that prices and wages only appear rigid and in reality adjust immediately to clear markets. To an economist of the aforementioned school, this chapter's models would describe the short-run behavior of an economy in which the speed of price level adjustment is so great that no significant unemployment ever occurs.

### The Fundamental Equation of the Monetary Approach

To develop the monetary approach's predictions for the dollar/euro exchange rate, we will assume that in the long run, the foreign exchange market sets the rate so that PPP holds [see equation (16-1)]:

$$E_{\$/\text{€}} = P_{\text{US}} / P_{\text{E}}$$

In other words, we assume the above equation would hold in a world where there are no market rigidities to prevent the exchange rate and other prices from adjusting immediately to levels consistent with full employment.

In Chapter 15, equation (15-5) showed how we can explain domestic price levels in terms of domestic money demands and supplies. In the United States,

$$P_{\text{US}} = M_{\text{US}}^s / L(R_{\$}, Y_{\text{US}}), \quad (16-3)$$

while in Europe,

$$P_E = M_E^s / L(R_E, Y_E). \quad (16-4)$$

As before, we have used the symbol  $M^s$  to stand for a country's money supply and  $L(R, Y)$  to stand for its aggregate real money demand, which decreases when the interest rate rises and increases when real output rises.<sup>2</sup>

Equations (16-3) and (16-4) show how the monetary approach to the exchange rate comes by its name. According to the statement of PPP in equation (16-1), the dollar price of a euro is simply the dollar price of U.S. output divided by the euro price of European output. These two price levels, in turn, are determined completely by the supply and demand for each currency area's money: The United States' price level is the U.S. money supply divided by U.S. real money demand, as shown in (16-3), and Europe's price level similarly is the European money supply divided by European real money demand, as shown in (16-4). The monetary approach therefore makes the general prediction that *the exchange rate, which is the relative price of American and European money, is fully determined in the long run by the relative supplies of those monies and the relative real demands for them.* Shifts in interest rates and output levels affect the exchange rate only through their influences on money demand.

In addition, the monetary approach makes a number of specific predictions about the long-run effects on the exchange rate of changes in money supplies, interest rates, and output levels:

- 1. Money supplies.** Other things equal, a permanent rise in the U.S. money supply  $M_{US}^s$  causes a proportional increase in the long-run U.S. price level  $P_{US}$ , as equation (16-3) shows. Because under PPP,  $E_{\$/\epsilon} = P_{US}/P_E$ ; however,  $E_{\$/\epsilon}$  also rises in the long run in proportion to the increase in the U.S. money supply. (For example, if  $M_{US}^s$  rises by 10 percent,  $P_{US}$  and  $E_{\$/\epsilon}$  both eventually rise by 10 percent as well.) Thus, an increase in the U.S. money supply causes a proportional long-run depreciation of the dollar against the euro. Conversely, equation (16-4) shows that a permanent increase in the European money supply causes a proportional increase in the long-run European price level. Under PPP, this price level rise implies a proportional long-run appreciation of the dollar against the euro (which is the same as a proportional depreciation of the euro against the dollar).
- 2. Interest rates.** A rise in the interest rate  $R_{\$}$  on dollar-denominated assets lowers real U.S. money demand  $L(R_{\$}, Y_{US})$ . By (16-3), the long-run U.S. price level rises, and under PPP the dollar must depreciate against the euro in proportion to this U.S. price level increase. A rise in the interest rate  $R_{\epsilon}$  on euro-denominated assets has the reverse long-run exchange rate effect. Because real European money demand  $L(R_{\epsilon}, Y_E)$  falls, Europe's price level rises, by (16-4). Under PPP, the dollar must appreciate against the euro in proportion to Europe's price level increase.
- 3. Output levels.** A rise in U.S. output raises real U.S. money demand  $L(R_{\$}, Y_{US})$ , leading by (16-3) to a fall in the long-run U.S. price level. According to PPP, there is an appreciation of the dollar against the euro. Symmetrically, a rise in European output raises  $L(R_{\epsilon}, Y_E)$  and, by (16-4), causes a fall in Europe's long-run price level. PPP predicts that this development will make the dollar depreciate against the euro.

To understand these predictions, remember that the monetary approach, like any long-run theory, essentially assumes price levels adjust as quickly as exchange rates

---

<sup>2</sup>To simplify the notation, we assume identical money demand functions for the United States and Europe.

do—that is, right away. For example, a rise in real U.S. output raises the transactions demand for real U.S. money balances. According to the monetary approach, the U.S. price level drops *immediately* to bring about a market-clearing increase in the supply of real money balances. PPP implies that this instantaneous American price deflation is accompanied by an instantaneous dollar appreciation on the foreign exchanges.

The monetary approach leads to a result familiar from Chapter 15, that the long-run foreign exchange value of a country's currency moves in proportion to its money supply (prediction 1). The theory also raises what seems to be a paradox (prediction 2). In our previous examples, we always found that a currency *appreciates* when the interest rate it offers rises relative to foreign interest rates. How is it that we have now arrived at precisely the opposite conclusion—that a rise in a country's interest rate *depreciates* its currency by lowering the real demand for its money?

At the end of Chapter 14, we warned that no account of how a change in interest rates affects the exchange rate is complete until we specify *exactly why interest rates have changed*. This point explains the apparent contradiction in our findings about interest and exchange rates. To resolve the puzzle, however, we must first examine more closely how monetary policies and interest rates are connected in the long run.

### Ongoing Inflation, Interest Parity, and PPP

In Chapter 15, we saw that a permanent increase in the level of a country's money supply ultimately results in a proportional rise in its price level but has no effect on the long-run values of the interest rate or real output. While the conceptual experiment of a one-time, stepwise money supply change is useful for thinking about the long-run effects of money, it is not very realistic as a description of actual monetary policies. More plausibly, the monetary authorities choose a growth rate for the money supply, say, 5, 10, or 50 percent per year and then allow money to grow gradually, through incremental but frequent increases. What are the long-run effects of a policy that allows the money supply to grow smoothly forever at a positive rate?

The reasoning in Chapter 15 suggests that continuing money supply growth will require a continuing rise in the price level—a situation of *ongoing* inflation. As firms and workers catch on to the fact that the money supply is growing steadily at, say, a 10 percent annual rate, they will adjust by raising prices and wages by the same 10 percent every year, thus keeping their real incomes constant. Full-employment output depends on supplies of productive factors, but it is safe to assume that factor supplies, and thus output, are unaffected over the long run by different choices of a constant growth rate for the money supply. *Other things equal, money supply growth at a constant rate eventually results in ongoing price level inflation at the same rate, but changes in this long-run inflation rate do not affect the full-employment output level or the long-run relative prices of goods and services.*

The interest rate, however, is definitely not independent of the money supply growth rate in the long run. While the long-run interest rate does not depend on the absolute level of the money supply, continuing growth in the money supply eventually will affect the interest rate. The easiest way to see how a permanent increase in inflation affects the long-run interest rate is by combining PPP with the interest rate parity condition on which our previous analysis of exchange rate determination was built.

As in Chapters 14 and 15, the condition of interest parity between dollar and euro assets is

$$R_{\$} = R_{\text{€}} + (E_{\$/\text{€}}^e - E_{\$/\text{€}})/E_{\$/\text{€}}.$$

[Recall equation (14-2) in the section on “Equilibrium in the Foreign Exchange Market.”] Now let’s ask how this parity condition, which must hold in the long run as well as in the short run, fits with the other parity condition we are assuming in our long-run model, purchasing power parity. According to relative PPP, the percentage change in the dollar/euro exchange rate over the next year, say, will equal the difference between the inflation rates of the United States and Europe over that year [see equation (16-2)]. Since people understand this relationship, however, it must also be true that they *expect* the percentage exchange rate change to equal the U.S.–Europe inflation difference. The interest parity condition written above now tells us the following: *If people expect relative PPP to hold, the difference between the interest rates offered by dollar and euro deposits will equal the difference between the inflation rates expected, over the relevant horizon, in the United States and in Europe.*

Some additional notation is helpful in deriving this result more formally. If  $P^e$  is the price level expected in a country for a year from today, the expected inflation rate in that country,  $\pi^e$ , is the expected percentage increase in the price level over the coming year:

$$\pi^e = (P^e - P)/P.$$

If relative PPP holds, however, market participants will also *expect* relative PPP to hold, which means that we can replace the actual depreciation and inflation rates in equation (16-2) with the values the market expects to materialize:

$$(E_{\$/\epsilon}^e - E_{\$/\epsilon})/E_{\$/\epsilon} = \pi_{\text{US}}^e - \pi_{\text{E}}^e.$$

By combining this “expected” version of relative PPP with the interest parity condition

$$R_{\$} = R_{\epsilon} + (E_{\$/\epsilon}^e - E_{\$/\epsilon})/E_{\$/\epsilon}$$

and rearranging, we arrive at a formula that expresses the international interest rate difference as the difference between expected national inflation rates:

$$R_{\$} - R_{\epsilon} = \pi_{\text{US}}^e - \pi_{\text{E}}^e. \quad (16-5)$$

If, as PPP predicts, currency depreciation is expected to offset the international inflation difference (so that the expected dollar depreciation rate is  $\pi_{\text{US}}^e - \pi_{\text{E}}^e$ ), the interest rate difference must equal the expected inflation difference.

## The Fisher Effect

Equation (16-5) gives us the long-run relationship between ongoing inflation and interest rates that we need to explain the monetary approach’s predictions about how interest rates affect exchange rates. The equation tells us that *all else equal, a rise in a country’s expected inflation rate will eventually cause an equal rise in the interest rate that deposits of its currency offer. Similarly, a fall in the expected inflation rate will eventually cause a fall in the interest rate.*

This long-run relationship between inflation and interest rates is called the **Fisher effect**. The Fisher effect implies, for example, that if U.S. inflation were to rise permanently from a constant level of 5 percent per year to a constant level of 10 percent per year, dollar interest rates would eventually catch up with the higher inflation, rising by 5 percentage points per year from their initial level. These changes would leave the *real rate of return* on dollar assets, measured in terms of U.S. goods and services, unchanged. The Fisher effect is therefore another example of the general idea that in

the long run, purely monetary developments should have no effect on an economy's relative prices.<sup>3</sup>

The Fisher effect is behind the seemingly paradoxical monetary approach prediction that a currency depreciates in the foreign exchange market when its interest rate rises relative to foreign currency interest rates. In the long-run equilibrium assumed by the monetary approach, a rise in the difference between home and foreign interest rates occurs only when expected home inflation rises relative to expected foreign inflation. This is certainly not the case in the short run, when the domestic price level is sticky. In the short run, as we saw in Chapter 15, the interest rate can rise when the domestic money supply *falls* because the sticky domestic price level leads to an excess demand for real money balances at the initial interest rate. Under the flexible-price monetary approach, however, the price level would fall right away, leaving the *real* money supply unchanged and thus making the interest rate change unnecessary.

We can better understand how interest rates and exchange rates interact under the monetary approach by thinking through an example. Our example illustrates why the monetary approach associates sustained interest rate hikes with current as well as future currency depreciation, and sustained interest rate declines with appreciation.

Imagine that at time  $t_0$ , the Federal Reserve unexpectedly increases the growth rate of the U.S. money supply from  $\pi$  to the higher level  $\pi + \Delta\pi$ . Figure 16-1 illustrates how this change affects the dollar/euro exchange rate,  $E_{\$/\text{€}}$ , as well as other U.S. variables, under the assumptions of the monetary approach. To simplify the graphs, we assume that in Europe, the inflation rate remains constant at zero.

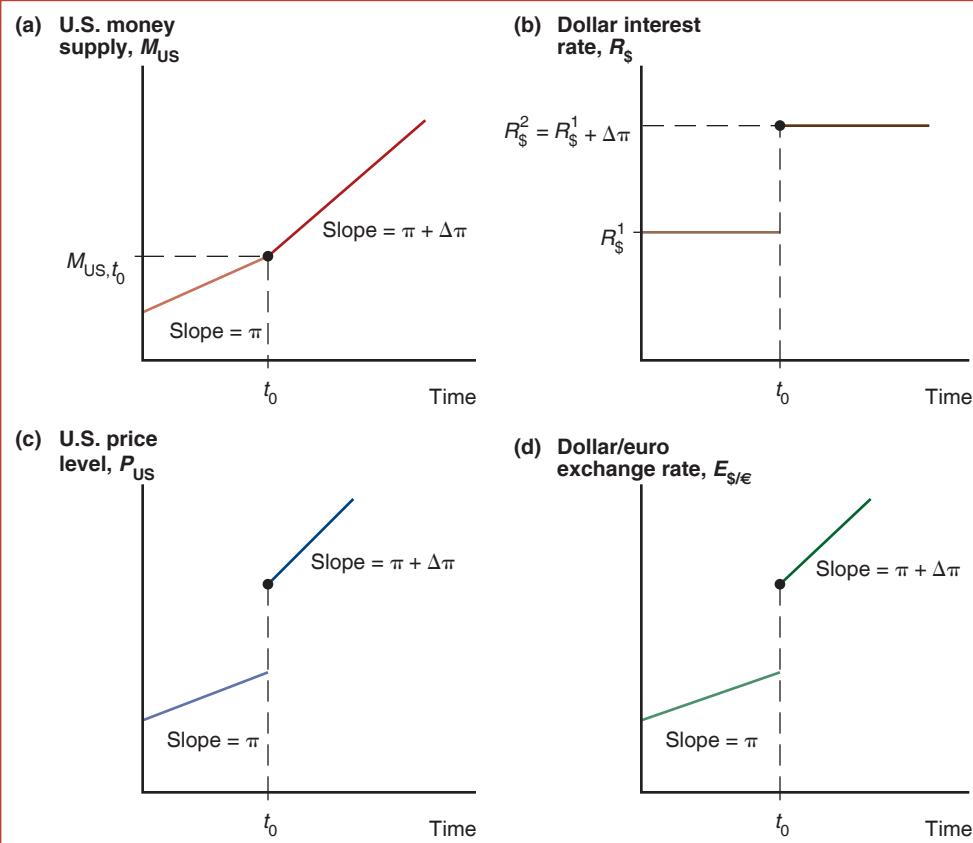
Figure 16-1a shows the sudden acceleration of U.S. money supply growth at time  $t_0$ . (We have scaled the vertical axes of the graphs so that constant slopes represent constant proportional growth rates of variables.) The policy change generates expectations of more rapid currency depreciation in the future: Under PPP the dollar will now depreciate at the rate  $\pi + \Delta\pi$  rather than at the lower rate  $\pi$ . Interest parity therefore requires the dollar interest rate to rise, as shown in Figure 16-1b, from its initial level  $R_{\$}^1$  to a new level that reflects the extra expected dollar depreciation,  $R_{\$}^2 = R_{\$}^1 + \Delta\pi$  [see equation (16-5)]. Notice that this adjustment leaves the euro interest rate unchanged, but since Europe's money supply and output haven't changed, the original euro interest rate will still maintain equilibrium in Europe's money market.

You can see from Figure 16-1a that the *level* of the money supply does not actually jump upward at  $t_0$ —only the *future growth rate* changes. Since there is no immediate increase in the money supply—but there is an interest rate rise that reduces money demand—there would be an excess supply of real U.S. money balances at the price level prevailing just prior to  $t_0$ . In the face of this potential excess supply, the U.S. price level jumps upward at  $t_0$  (see Figure 16-1c), reducing the real money supply so that it again equals real money demand [see equation (16-3)]. Consistently with the upward jump in  $P_{\text{US}}$  at  $t_0$ , Figure 16-1d shows the simultaneous proportional upward jump in  $E_{\$/\text{€}}$  implied by PPP.

How can we visualize the reaction of the foreign exchange market at time  $t_0$ ? The dollar interest rate rises not because of a change in current levels of money supply or demand, but solely because people expect more rapid future money supply growth and dollar depreciation. As investors respond by moving into foreign deposits, which

---

<sup>3</sup>The effect is named after Irving Fisher of Yale University, one of the great American economists of the early 20th century. His book *The Theory of Interest* (New York: Macmillan, 1930) discusses it at length. Fisher, incidentally, gave an early account of the interest parity condition on which we based our theory of foreign exchange market equilibrium.

**FIGURE 16-1**
**Long-Run Time Paths of U.S. Economic Variables after a Permanent Increase in the Growth Rate of the U.S. Money Supply**

After the money supply growth rate increases at time  $t_0$  in panel (a), the interest rate [in panel (b)], price level [in panel (c)], and exchange rate [in panel (d)] move to new long-run equilibrium paths. (We measure the money supply, price level, and exchange rate on a *natural logarithmic* scale, which makes variables that change at constant proportional rates appear as straight lines when they are graphed against time. The slope of the line equals the variable's proportional growth rate.)

momentarily offer higher expected returns, the dollar depreciates sharply in the foreign exchange market, moving to a new trend line along which depreciation is more rapid than it was up to time  $t_0$ .<sup>4</sup>

Notice how different assumptions about the speed of price level adjustment lead to contrasting predictions about how exchange and interest rates interact. In the example of a fall in the level of the money supply under sticky prices, preserving money market equilibrium requires an interest rate rise, given that the price level cannot do so by

<sup>4</sup>In the general case in which Europe's inflation rate  $\pi_E$  is not zero, the dollar, rather than depreciating against the euro at rate  $\pi$  before  $t_0$  and at rate  $\pi + \Delta\pi$  afterward, depreciates at rate  $\pi - \pi_E$  until  $t_0$  and at rate  $\pi + \Delta\pi - \pi_E$  thereafter.

dropping immediately in response to the money supply reduction. In that sticky-price case, an interest rate rise is associated with lower expected inflation and a long-run currency appreciation, so the currency appreciates immediately. In our monetary approach example of a rise in money supply growth, however, an interest rate increase is associated with higher expected inflation and a currency that will be weaker on all future dates. An immediate currency *depreciation* is the result.<sup>5</sup>

These contrasting results of interest rate changes underlie our earlier warning that an explanation of exchange rates based on interest rates must carefully account for the factors that cause interest rates to move. These factors can simultaneously affect expected future exchange rates and can therefore have a decisive impact on the foreign exchange market's response to the interest rate change. The appendix to this chapter shows in detail how expectations change in the case we analyzed.

## Empirical Evidence on PPP and the Law of One Price

How well does the PPP theory explain actual data on exchange rates and national price levels? A brief answer is that *all versions of the PPP theory do badly* in explaining the facts. In particular, changes in national price levels often tell us relatively little about exchange rate movements.

Do not conclude from this evidence, however, that the effort you've put into learning about PPP has been wasted. As we'll see later in this chapter, PPP is a key building block of exchange rate models that are more realistic than the monetary approach. Indeed, the empirical failures of PPP give us important clues about how more realistic models should be set up.

To test *absolute* PPP, economic researchers compare the international prices of a broad reference basket of commodities, making careful adjustments for intercountry quality differences among supposedly identical goods. These comparisons typically conclude that absolute PPP is way off the mark: The prices of identical commodity baskets, when converted to a single currency, differ substantially across countries. Even the law of one price has not fared well in some recent studies of price data broken down by commodity type. Manufactured goods that seem to be very similar to each other have sold at widely different prices in various markets since the early 1970s. Because the argument leading to absolute PPP builds on the law of one price, it is not surprising that PPP does not stand up well to the data.<sup>6</sup>

Relative PPP is sometimes a reasonable approximation to the data, but it, too, usually performs poorly.

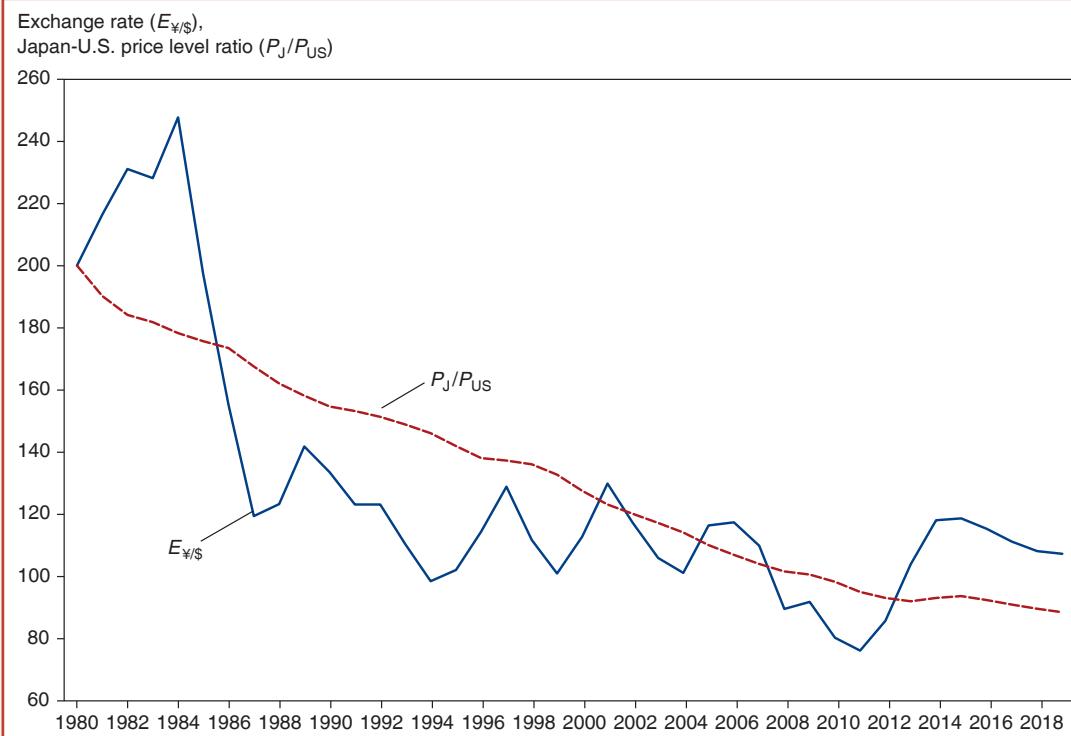
---

<sup>5</sup>National money supplies typically trend upward over time, as in Figure 16-1a. Such trends lead to corresponding upward trends in price levels; if two countries' price level trends differ, PPP implies a trend in their exchange rate as well. From now on, when we refer to a change in the money supply, price level, or exchange rate, we will mean by this a change in the level of the variable relative to its previously expected trend path—that is, a parallel shift in the trend path. When instead we want to consider changes in the slopes of trend paths themselves, we will say so explicitly.

<sup>6</sup>The Case Study to follow discusses some of the negative evidence on absolute PPP. Regarding the law of one price, see, for example, Peter Isard, "How Far Can We Push the Law of One Price?" *American Economic Review* 67 (December 1977), pp. 942–948; Gita Gopinath, Pierre-Olivier Gourinchas, Chang-Tai Hsieh, and Nicholas Li, "International Prices, Costs, and Markup Differences," *American Economic Review* 101 (October 2011), pp. 2450–2486; Mario J. Crucini and Anthony Landry, "Accounting for Real Exchange Rates Using Micro-Data," Working Paper 17812, National Bureau of Economic Research, February 2012; and the paper by Goldberg and Knetter in Further Readings.

Figure 16-2 illustrates relative PPP's weakness by plotting both the yen/dollar exchange rate,  $E_{\$/\$}$ , and the ratio of the Japanese and U.S. price levels,  $P_J/P_{US}$ , through 2019. Price levels are indexes reported by the Japanese and U.S. governments.<sup>7</sup>

Relative PPP predicts that  $E_{\$/\$}$  and  $P_J/P_{US}$  will move in proportion, but clearly they do not. In the early 1980s, there was a steep appreciation of the dollar against the yen even though, with Japan's price level consistently falling relative to that in the United States, relative PPP suggests that the dollar should have *depreciated* instead. The same inflation trends continued after the mid-1980s, but the yen then appreciated by far more than the amount that PPP would have predicted, before returning to the PPP trend around 2000. Only over fairly long periods is relative PPP approximately satisfied. In view of the lengthy departures from PPP in between, however, that theory appears to be of limited use even as a long-run explanation.



**FIGURE 16-2**

### The Yen/Dollar Exchange Rate and Relative Japan–U.S. Price Levels, 1980–2019

The graph shows that relative PPP does not track the yen/dollar exchange rate during 1980–2015.

**Source:** IMF, *International Financial Statistics*. Exchange rates and price levels are end-of-year data.

<sup>7</sup>The price level measures in Figure 16-2 are index numbers, not dollar amounts. For example, the U.S. consumer price index (CPI) was 100 in the base year 2000 and only about 50 in 1980, so the dollar price of a reference commodity basket of typical U.S. consumption purchases doubled between 1980 and 2000. For Figure 16-2, base years for the U.S. and Japanese price indexes were chosen so that their 1980 ratio would equal the 1980 exchange rate, but this imposed equality does not mean that absolute PPP held in 1980. Although Figure 16-2 uses CPIs, other price indexes lead to similar pictures.

Studies of other currencies largely confirm the results in Figure 16-2. Relative PPP has not held up well.<sup>8</sup> As you will learn later in this book, between the end of World War II in 1945 and the early 1970s, exchange rates were fixed within narrow, internationally agreed-upon margins through the intervention of central banks in the foreign exchange market. During that period of fixed exchange rates, PPP did not do too badly. However, during the first half of the 1920s, when many exchange rates were market-determined as in the 1970s and after, important deviations from relative PPP occurred, just as in recent decades.<sup>9</sup>

## Explaining the Problems with PPP

What explains the negative empirical results described in the previous section? There are several immediate problems with our rationale for the PPP theory of exchange rates, which was based on the law of one price:

1. Contrary to the assumption of the law of one price, transport costs and restrictions on trade certainly do exist. These trade barriers may be high enough to prevent some goods and services from being traded between countries.
2. Monopolistic or oligopolistic practices in goods markets may interact with transport costs and other trade barriers to weaken further the link between the prices of similar goods sold in different countries.
3. Because the inflation data reported in different countries are based on different commodity baskets, there is no reason for exchange rate changes to offset official measures of inflation differences, even when there are no barriers to trade and all products are tradable.

### Trade Barriers and Nontradables

Transport costs and governmental trade restrictions make it expensive to move goods between markets located in different countries and therefore weaken the law of one price mechanism underlying PPP. Suppose once again that the same sweater sells for \$45 in New York and for £30 in London but that it costs \$2 to ship a sweater between the two cities. At an exchange rate of \$1.45 per pound, the dollar price of a London sweater is  $(\$1.45 \text{ per pound}) \times (\text{£}30) = \$43.50$ , but an American importer would have to pay  $\$43.50 + \$2 = \$45.50$  to purchase the sweater in London and get it to New York. At an exchange rate of \$1.45 per pound, it therefore would not pay to ship sweaters from London to New York even though their dollar price would be higher in the latter location. Similarly, at an exchange rate of \$1.55 per pound, an American exporter would lose money by shipping sweaters from New York to London even though the New York price of \$45 would then be below the dollar price of the sweater in London, \$46.50.

The lesson of this example is that transport costs sever the close link between exchange rates and goods prices implied by the law of one price. The greater the transport costs, the greater the range over which the exchange rate can move, given goods prices in different countries. Official trade restrictions such as tariffs have a similar effect because a fee paid to the customs inspector affects the importer's profit in the same way as an equivalent shipping fee. Either type of trade impediment weakens the basis of PPP by allowing the purchasing power of a given currency to differ more widely from country to country. For

---

<sup>8</sup>See, for example, the paper by Taylor and Taylor in this chapter's Further Readings.

<sup>9</sup>See Paul R. Krugman, "Purchasing Power Parity and Exchange Rates: Another Look at the Evidence," *Journal of International Economics* 8 (August 1978), pp. 397–407; Paul De Grauwe, Marc Janssens, and Hilde Leliaert, *Real-Exchange-Rate Variability from 1920 to 1926 and 1973 to 1982*, Princeton Studies in International Finance 56 (International Finance Section, Department of Economics, Princeton University, September 1985); and Hans Genberg, "Purchasing Power Parity under Fixed and Flexible Exchange Rates," *Journal of International Economics* 8 (May 1978), pp. 247–276.

example, in the presence of trade impediments, a dollar need not go as far in London as in Chicago—and it doesn't, as anyone who has ever been to London has found out.

As you will recall from the theory of international trade, transport costs may be so large relative to the cost of producing some goods and services that those items can never be traded internationally at a profit. Such goods and services are called *nontradables*. The time-honored classroom example of a nontradable is the haircut. A Frenchman desiring an American haircut would have to transport himself to the United States or transport an American barber to France; in either case, the cost of transport is so large relative to the price of the service being purchased that (tourists excepted) French haircuts are consumed only by residents of France while American haircuts are consumed only by residents of the United States.

The existence in all countries of nontraded goods and services, whose prices are not linked internationally, allows systematic deviations even from relative PPP. Because the price of a nontradable is determined entirely by its *domestic* supply and demand curves, shifts in those curves may cause the domestic price of a broad commodity basket to change relative to the foreign price of the same basket. Other things equal, a rise in the price of a country's nontradables will raise its price level relative to foreign price levels (measuring all countries' price levels in terms of a single currency). Looked at another way, the purchasing power of any given currency will fall in countries where the prices of nontradables rise.

Each country's price level includes a wide variety of nontradables, including (along with haircuts) routine medical treatment, dance instruction, and housing, among others. Broadly speaking, we can identify traded goods with manufactured products, raw materials, and agricultural products. Nontradables are primarily services and the outputs of the construction industry. There are, naturally, exceptions to this rule. For example, financial services provided by banks and brokerage houses often can be traded internationally. (The rise of the Internet, in particular, has expanded the range of tradable services.) In addition, trade restrictions, if sufficiently severe, can cause goods that would normally be traded to become nontraded. Thus, in most countries, some manufactures are nontraded.

We can get a rough idea of the importance of nontradables in the American economy by looking at the contribution of the service industries to U.S. GNP. In recent years, services have accounted for around three-quarters of the value of U.S. output. While services tend to have smaller shares in poorer economies, nontradables make up an important component of GNP everywhere. Nontradables help explain the wide departures from relative PPP illustrated by Figure 16-2.

## Departures from Free Competition

When trade barriers and imperfectly competitive market structures occur together, linkages between national price levels are weakened further. An extreme case occurs when a single firm sells a commodity for different prices in different markets.

When a firm sells the same product for different prices in different markets, we say that it is practicing **pricing to market**. Pricing to market may reflect different demand conditions in different countries. For example, countries where demand is more price-inelastic will tend to be charged higher markups over a monopolistic seller's production cost. Empirical studies of firm-level export data have yielded strong evidence of pervasive pricing to market in manufacturing trade.<sup>10</sup>

<sup>10</sup>For detailed reviews, see the papers by Goldberg and Knetter and by Burstein and Gopinath in this chapter's Further Readings. Classic theoretical contributions on pricing to market include Rudiger Dornbusch, "Exchange Rates and Prices," *American Economic Review* 77 (March 1987), pp. 93–106; Paul R. Krugman, "Pricing to Market When the Exchange Rate Changes," in Sven W. Arndt and J. David Richardson, eds., *Real-Financial Linkages among Open Economies* (Cambridge, MA: MIT Press, 1987); and Andrew Atkeson and Ariel Burstein, "Pricing-to-Market, Trade Costs, and International Relative Prices," *American Economic Review* 98 (December 2008), pp. 1998–2031.

In 2016, for example, a Volkswagen Polo cost \$4,000 more in Ireland than in Austria despite those countries' shared currency (the euro) and despite the European Union's efforts over many years to remove intra-European trade barriers (see Chapter 21). Such price differentials would be difficult to enforce if it were not costly for consumers to buy autos in Austria and drive or ship them to Ireland or if consumers viewed cheaper cars available in Ireland as good substitutes for the Polo. The combination of product differentiation and segmented markets, however, leads to large violations of the law of one price and absolute PPP. Shifts in market structure and demand over time can invalidate relative PPP.

### Differences in Consumption Patterns and Price Level Measurement

Government measures of the price level differ from country to country. One reason for these differences is that people living in different countries spend their incomes in different ways. In general, people consume relatively higher proportions of their own country's products—including its tradable products—than of foreign-made products. The average Norwegian consumes more reindeer meat than her American counterpart, the average Japanese more sushi, and the average Indian more chutney. In constructing a reference commodity basket to measure purchasing power, it is therefore likely that the Norwegian government will put a relatively high weight on reindeer, the Japanese government a high weight on sushi, and the Indian government a high weight on chutney.

Because relative PPP makes predictions about price *changes* rather than price *levels*, it is a sensible concept regardless of the baskets used to define price levels in the countries being compared. If all U.S. prices increase by 10 percent and the dollar depreciates against foreign currencies by 10 percent, relative PPP will be satisfied (assuming there are no changes abroad) for any domestic and foreign choices of price level indexes.

## MEASURING AND COMPARING COUNTRIES' WEALTH WORLDWIDE: THE INTERNATIONAL COMPARISON PROGRAM (ICP)

If you want to compute reliable purchasing power parities (PPPs), you need data on the local prices of a large number of goods and services consumed in an economy and compare it with that of other countries. Collecting and organizing such data would obviously be quite challenging.

One of the primary challenges in calculating PPP is the inadequacy of using exchange rates. While exchange rates can be used to express GDPs in a common currency, they do not factor in the relative purchasing power of currencies because they are determined by demand and supply of currencies and are influenced by interest rates, capital flows, government intervention, currency speculation, and so on. For this reason, exchange rates do not value GDPs at a common price level.

Another challenge is the determination of the prices of traded and non-traded commodities. While the prices of traded products can be globally determined by the law of one price, the

prices of non-traded products (buildings, health, education, and government services) are influenced by domestic factors, especially wages and salaries, which are usually higher in high-income countries.

The International Comparison Program (ICP) was set up as a research effort in the 1960s in an effort to provide PPP data to policy makers and international organizations. Hosted by the World Bank, the ICP Global Office works with the United Nations Regional Commissions, the OECD, Eurostat, and regional development banks. It has also established regional ICP offices, which collect and validate data. The ICP uses PPP to offer comparability among GDP figures and their components by calculating national data using a common price level as base and expressing it in a common currency.

Many major international agencies, such as the World Bank, International Monetary Fund, the

World Health Organization, the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) and the United Nations Development Program (UNDP), the OECD, the European Union, as well as domestic policymakers and other stakeholders use ICP data to compare GDP, growth rates, and poverty levels across countries.

## METHODOLOGY

The ICP conducts worldwide surveys every six years to collect data on prices and expenditure on the entire set of final goods and services that constitute the final expenditure on GDP.

There are two ways in which price level differences across economies are reconciled: either by directly observing volumes or by using relative prices to derive the volumes. PPPs are then calculated in two stages. In the first stage, PPPs are estimated for individual goods and services, which account for the difference in price levels for traded products and nontraded products. In the second stage, PPPs are estimated for groups of products. Finally, the various levels are aggregated to make up the GDP. The composition of the baskets of good and services to compare purchasing powers across economies varies and reflects differences in preferences, cultures, climates, prices, product availability, and incomes, but each basket will effectively provide comparable or equivalent utility or consumer satisfaction.

GDP is first broken down into 155 basic headings. These basic headings are the lowest level at which expenditure estimates are required. They are essentially the product groups into which individual goods or services are categorized for pricing. There are three categories of basic headings:

1. Commodities purchased by consumers in various markets.
2. House rents, healthcare, education, government services, and equipment.
3. Commodities for which prices are not available, such as narcotics.

Comparable data for commodities under the second and third categories may be too difficult or expensive to obtain and is usually beyond the scope of data collected through market surveys.

Once all commodities have been placed into a category, PPPs are calculated and compared at the individual product level for each basic heading for every pair of economies. On the other hand, multilateral PPPs are calculated on the basis of transitivity and country invariance. Transitivity occurs

when the PPP between two countries is the same, irrespective of whether it is calculated directly or through another country. Country invariance occurs when the PPP between two countries is the same irrespective of the base country.

The last survey of the ICP, *ICP 2011 Purchasing Power Parities and the Real Size of World Economies*, was published on October 28, 2014. It includes 199 countries from seven (plus one statistical area) world regions after several years of intense work (the previous one is called ICP 2005).

## WORLD GDP

The report found that, compared to real expenditures in ICR 2005 PPPs, the share of low and middle income economies (developing countries) has now increased to about half of the world's GDP.

The following figure shows the distribution of global GDP by ICP region and compares their shares based on PPP to those based on exchange rates. According to the PPP-based distribution, while the Asia and the Pacific regions accounted for over 30 percent of world GDP in 2011, the Eurostat-OECD region is significantly smaller. The report pointed out that while the largest 12 countries of the world account for two-thirds of the global economy and 59 percent of global population, six of these 12 economies are in the middle income category. When PPP is factored, the U.S. remains the largest economy, but the GDP shares of China and India, the second and third largest economies, more than doubles relative to the U.S. since 2005.

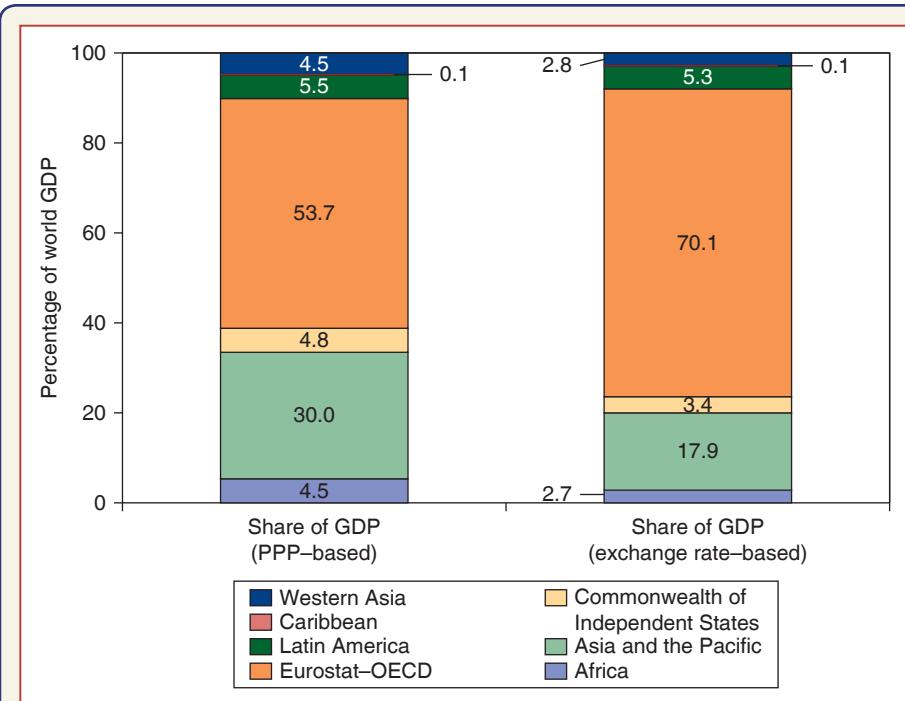
The report also reveals that the consumption is shared differently according to category an economy is placed in.

## THE INTERNATIONAL POVERTY LINE

In October 2015, the World Bank Group announced its first updated international poverty line using 2011 PPPs in almost a decade.

Using the new 2011 PPP data, the updated \$1.90 poverty line can be converted from local currency into U.S. dollars. The average value of these lines in 2011 is approximately \$1.90, which is the updated international extreme poverty line.

Apart from comparing GDPs and poverty levels on a global level by the IMF and the World Bank, ICP data is used for several other purposes by international organizations. For example, the United Nations Development Program (UNDP) uses this data to calculate the human development index and formulate gender empowerment



**PPP-Based and Exchange Rate-Based GDP Regional Shares (World = 100), ICP 2011**

Source: ICP, <http://icp.worldbank.org/>.

measures, the World Health Organization compares health inequality across countries, and the UNESCO assesses per capita expenditure on education by various economies.

### LIMITATIONS

All data should be treated with caution. The ICP report comes with the following caveats:

Countries with significant non-observed economies may have an underestimated GDP. For such reasons, GDP measurement is not uniform across all countries.

PPPs based on prices of services are not as precise for those based on prices of goods. This is

largely because services such as health and housing would have greater error components.

While PPPs represent the overall price level of an economy, they do not capture differences in prices within the economy.

For these reasons, the ICP report estimates an error component of plus or minus 15 percent for economies such as China, India, and Brazil, which have significant differences in price and economic structures.

The final caveat is that PPPs should not be equated to equilibrium exchange rates because the ICP PPPs do not capture the undervaluation or overvaluation of currencies.<sup>11</sup>

<sup>11</sup>See “Purchasing Power Parities and the Real Size of World Economies: A Comprehensive Report of the 2011 International Comparison Program,” the World Bank Group, ICP 2011, <http://siteresources.worldbank.org/ICPEXT/Resources/ICP-2011-report.pdf>; and Mario Cruz, James Foster, Bryce Quillin, and Philip Schellekens, “Ending Extreme Poverty and Sharing Prosperity: Progress and Policies,” *Development Economics*, World Bank Group, October 2015, <http://pubdocs.worldbank.org/en/109701443800596288/PRN03Oct2015TwinGoals.pdf>.

Change in the relative prices of basket components, however, can cause relative PPP to fail tests that are based on official price indexes. For example, a rise in the relative price of fish would raise the dollar price of a Japanese government reference commodity basket relative to that of a U.S. government basket, simply because fish take up a larger share of the Japanese basket. Relative price changes could lead to PPP violations like those shown in Figure 16-2 even if trade were free and costless.

### PPP in the Short Run and in the Long Run

The factors we have examined so far in explaining the PPP theory's poor empirical performance can cause national price levels to diverge even in the long run, after all prices have had time to adjust to their market-clearing levels. As we discussed in Chapter 15, however, many prices in the economy are sticky and take time to adjust fully. Departures from PPP may therefore be even greater in the short run than in the long run.

An abrupt depreciation of the dollar against foreign currencies, for example, makes farm equipment in the United States cheaper relative to similar equipment produced abroad. As farmers throughout the world shift their demand for tractors and reapers to U.S. producers, the price of American farm equipment tends to rise to reduce the divergence from the law of one price caused by the dollar's depreciation. It takes time for this process of price increase to be complete, however, and prices for U.S. and foreign farm equipment may differ considerably while markets adjust to the exchange rate change.

You might suspect that short-run price stickiness and exchange rate volatility help explain a phenomenon we noted in discussing Figure 16-2—that violations of relative PPP have been much more flagrant over periods when exchange rates have floated. Empirical research supports this interpretation of the data. Figure 15-11, which we used to illustrate the stickiness of goods prices compared with exchange rates, is quite typical of floating-rate episodes. In a careful study covering many countries and historical episodes, economist Michael Mussa compared the extent of short-run deviations from PPP under fixed and floating exchange rates. He found that floating exchange rates systematically lead to much larger and more frequent short-run deviations from relative PPP.<sup>12</sup>

---

<sup>12</sup>See Mussa, "Nominal Exchange Rate Regimes and the Behavior of Real Exchange Rates: Evidence and Implications," in Karl Brunner and Allan H. Meltzer, eds., *Real Business Cycles, Real Exchange Rates and Actual Policies*, Carnegie-Rochester Conference Series on Public Policy 25 (Amsterdam: North-Holland, 1986), pp. 117–214. Charles Engel of the University of Wisconsin has found that under a floating exchange rate, international price differences for the same good can be more variable than the relative price of different goods within a single country. See Engel, "Real Exchange Rates and Relative Prices: An Empirical Investigation," *Journal of Monetary Economics* 32 (August 1993), pp. 35–50. Also see Gopinath, Gourinchas, Hsieh, and Li, *op. cit.* (footnote 6).

Recent research suggests that short-run deviations from PPP such as those due to volatile exchange rates die away over time, with only half the effect of a temporary departure from PPP remaining after four years.<sup>13</sup> Even when these temporary PPP deviations are removed from the data, however, it still appears that the cumulative effect of certain long-run trends causes predictable departures from PPP for many countries. The Case Study titled “Why Price Levels Are Lower in Poorer Countries” discusses one of the major mechanisms behind such trends.

## CASE STUDY

### Why Price Levels Are Lower in Poorer Countries

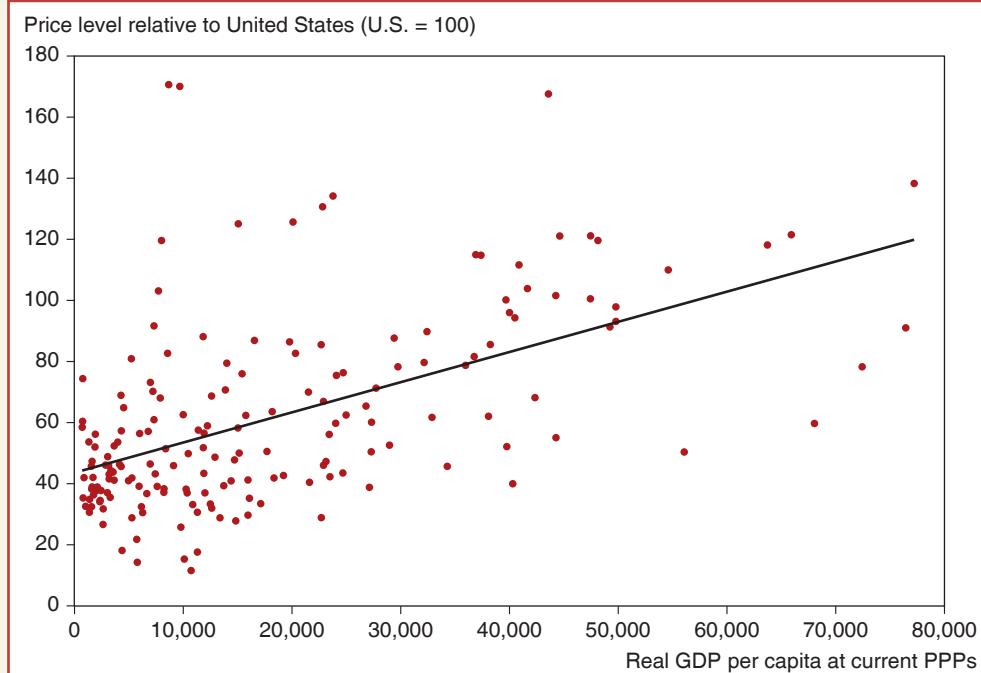
Research on international price level differences has uncovered a striking empirical regularity: When expressed in terms of a single currency, countries' price levels are positively related to the level of real income per capita. In other words, a dollar, when converted to local currency at the market exchange rate, generally goes much further in a poor country than in a rich one. Figure 16-3 illustrates the relation between price levels and income, with each dot representing a different country.

The previous section's discussion of the role of nontraded goods in the determination of national price levels suggests that international variations in the prices of nontradables may contribute to price level discrepancies between rich and poor nations. The available data indeed show that nontradables tend to be more expensive (relative to tradables) in richer countries.

One reason for the lower relative price of nontradables in poor countries was suggested by Bela Balassa and Paul Samuelson.<sup>14</sup> The Balassa-Samuelson theory assumes the labor forces of poor countries are less productive than those of rich countries in the tradables sector but international productivity differences in nontradables are negligible. If the prices of traded goods are roughly equal in all countries, however, lower labor productivity in the tradables industries of poor countries implies lower wages than abroad, lower production costs in nontradables, and therefore a lower price of nontradables. Rich countries with higher labor productivity in the tradables sector will tend to have higher nontradables prices and higher price levels. Productivity statistics give some empirical support to the Balassa-Samuelson differential productivity postulate. And it is plausible that international productivity differences are sharper in traded than in nontraded goods. Whether a country is rich or poor, a barber can give only so many haircuts

<sup>13</sup>See, for example, Jeffrey A. Frankel and Andrew K. Rose, “A Panel Project on Purchasing Power Parity: Mean Reversion within and between Countries,” *Journal of International Economics* 40 (February 1996), pp. 209–224. The statistical validity of these results is challenged by Paul G. J. O’Connell in “The Overvaluation of Purchasing Power Parity,” *Journal of International Economics* 44 (February 1998), pp. 1–19.

<sup>14</sup>See Balassa, “The Purchasing Power Parity Doctrine: A Reappraisal,” *Journal of Political Economy* 72 (December 1964), pp. 584–596; and Samuelson, “Theoretical Notes on Trade Problems,” *Review of Economics and Statistics* 46 (May 1964), pp. 145–154. The Balassa-Samuelson theory was foreshadowed by some observations of Ricardo. See Jacob Viner, *Studies in the Theory of International Trade* (New York: Harper & Brothers, 1937), p. 315.

**FIGURE 16-3****Price Levels and Real Incomes, 2017**

Countries' price levels tend to rise as their real incomes rise. Each dot represents a country. The straight line indicates a statistician's best prediction of a country's price level relative to that of the United States based on knowing its real per capita income.

**Source:** Penn World Table, version 9.1.

in a week, but there may be a significant scope for productivity differences across countries in the manufacture of traded goods like personal computers.

An alternative theory that attempts to explain the lower price levels of poor countries was put forth by Jagdish Bhagwati of Columbia University and by Irving Kravis of the University of Pennsylvania and Robert Lipsey of the City University of New York.<sup>15</sup> The Bhagwati-Kravis-Lipsey view relies on differences in endowments of capital and labor rather than productivity differences, but it also predicts that the relative price of nontradables increases as real per capita income increases. Rich countries have high capital-labor ratios, while poor countries have more

<sup>15</sup>See Irving B. Kravis and Robert E. Lipsey, *Toward an Explanation of National Price Levels*, Princeton Studies in International Finance 52 (International Finance Section, Department of Economics, Princeton University, November 1983); and Jagdish N. Bhagwati, "Why Are Services Cheaper in the Poor Countries?" *Economic Journal* 94 (June 1984), pp. 279–286.

labor relative to capital. Because rich countries have higher capital-labor ratios, the marginal productivity of labor is greater in rich countries than in poor countries, and the former will therefore have a higher wage level than the latter.<sup>16</sup> Nontradables, which consist largely of services, are naturally labor-intensive relative to tradables. Because labor is cheaper in poor countries and is used intensively in producing nontradables, nontradables also will be cheaper there than in the rich, high-wage countries. Once again, this international difference in the relative price of nontradables suggests that overall price levels, when measured in a single currency, should be higher in rich countries than in poor countries.

## Beyond Purchasing Power Parity: A General Model of Long-Run Exchange Rates

Why devote so much discussion to the purchasing power parity theory when it is fraught with exceptions and apparently contradicted by the data? We examined the implications of PPP so closely because its basic idea of relating long-run exchange rates to long-run national price levels is a very useful starting point. The monetary approach presented previously, which assumed PPP, is too simple to give accurate predictions about the real world, but we can generalize it by taking account of some of the reasons why PPP predicts badly in practice. In this section, we do just that.

The long-run analysis that follows continues to ignore short-run complications caused by sticky prices. An understanding of how exchange rates behave in the long run is, as mentioned earlier, a prerequisite for the more complicated short-run analysis that we undertake in the next chapter.

### The Real Exchange Rate

As the first step in extending the PPP theory, we define the concept of a **real exchange rate**. The real exchange rate between two countries' currencies is a broad summary measure of the prices of one country's goods and services relative to the other country's. It is natural to introduce the real exchange rate concept at this point because the major prediction of PPP is that real exchange rates never change, at least not permanently. To extend our model so that it describes the world more accurately, we need to examine systematically the forces that can cause dramatic and permanent changes in real exchange rates.

As we will see, real exchange rates are important not only for quantifying deviations from PPP but also for analyzing macroeconomic demand and supply conditions in open economies. When we wish to differentiate a real exchange rate—which is the relative price of two output baskets—from a relative price of two currencies, we will refer to the latter as a **nominal exchange rate**. But when there is no risk of confusion, we will continue to use the shorter term, *exchange rate*, to refer to nominal exchange rates.

<sup>16</sup>This argument assumes that factor endowment differences between rich and poor countries are sufficiently great that factor-price equalization cannot hold.

Real exchange rates are defined in terms of nominal exchange rates and price levels. Before we can give a more precise definition of real exchange rates, however, we need to clarify the price level measure we will be using. Let  $P_{US}$ , as usual, be the price level in the United States, and  $P_E$  the price level in Europe. Since we will not be assuming absolute PPP (as we did in our discussion of the monetary approach), we no longer assume the price level can be measured by the same basket of commodities in the United States as in Europe. Because we will soon want to link our analysis to monetary factors, we require instead that each country's price index give a good representation of the purchases that motivate its residents to demand its money supply.

No measure of the price level does this perfectly, but we must settle on some definition before we can formally define the real exchange rate. To be concrete, you can think of  $P_{US}$  as the dollar price of an unchanging basket containing the typical weekly purchases of U.S. households and firms;  $P_E$ , similarly, is based on an unchanging basket reflecting the typical weekly purchases of European households and firms. The point to remember is that *the U.S. price level will place a relatively heavy weight on commodities produced and consumed in America, and the European price level a relatively heavy weight on commodities produced and consumed in Europe*.<sup>17</sup>

Having described the reference commodity baskets used to measure price levels, we now formally define the *real dollar/euro exchange rate*, denoted  $q_{\$/\epsilon}$ , as the dollar price of the European basket relative to that of the American basket. We can express the real exchange rate as the dollar value of Europe's price level divided by the U.S. price level or, in symbols, as

$$q_{\$/\epsilon} = (E_{\$/\epsilon} \times P_E) / P_{US}. \quad (16-6)$$

A numerical example will clarify the concept of the real exchange rate. Imagine the European reference commodity basket costs €100 (so that  $P_E = €100$  per European basket), the U.S. basket costs \$120 (so that  $P_{US} = \$120$  per U.S. basket), and the nominal exchange rate is  $E_{\$/\epsilon} = \$1.20$  per euro. The real dollar/euro exchange rate would then be

$$\begin{aligned} q_{\$/\epsilon} &= \frac{(\$1.20 \text{ per euro}) \times (\€100 \text{ per European basket})}{(\$120 \text{ per U.S. basket})} \\ &= (\$120 \text{ per European basket}) / (\$120 \text{ per U.S. basket}) \\ &= 1 \text{ U.S. basket per European basket.} \end{aligned}$$

A rise in the real dollar/euro exchange rate  $q_{\$/\epsilon}$  (which we call a **real depreciation** of the dollar against the euro) can be thought of in several equivalent ways. Most obviously, (16-6) shows this change to be a fall in the purchasing power of a dollar within Europe's borders relative to its purchasing power within the United States. This change in relative purchasing power occurs because the dollar prices of European goods ( $E_{\$/\epsilon} \times P_E$ ) rise relative to those of U.S. goods ( $P_{US}$ ).

In terms of our numerical example, a 10 percent nominal dollar depreciation, to  $E_{\$/\epsilon} = \$1.32$  per euro, causes  $q_{\$/\epsilon}$  to rise to 1.1 U.S. baskets per European basket, a *real* dollar depreciation of 10 percent against the euro. (The same change in  $q_{\$/\epsilon}$  could result from a 10 percent rise in  $P_E$  or a 10 percent fall in  $P_{US}$ .) The real depreciation means the dollar's purchasing power over European goods and services falls by 10 percent relative to its purchasing power over U.S. goods and services.

---

<sup>17</sup>Nontradables are one important factor behind the relative preference for home products.

Alternatively, even though many of the items entering national price levels are nontraded, it is useful to think of the real exchange rate  $q_{\$/\text{€}}$  as the relative price of European products in general in terms of American products, that is, the price at which hypothetical trades of American for European commodity baskets would occur if trades at domestic prices were possible. The dollar is considered to *depreciate* in real terms against the euro when  $q_{\$/\text{€}}$  rises because the hypothetical purchasing power of America's products in general over Europe's declines. America's goods and services thus become cheaper relative to Europe's.

A **real appreciation** of the dollar against the euro is a fall in  $q_{\$/\text{€}}$ . This fall indicates a decrease in the relative price of products purchased in Europe, or a rise in the dollar's European purchasing power compared with that in the United States.<sup>18</sup>

Our convention for describing real depreciations and appreciations of the dollar against the euro is the same one we use for nominal exchange rates (that is,  $E_{\$/\text{€}}$  up is a dollar depreciation,  $E_{\$/\text{€}}$  down is an appreciation). Equation (16-6) shows that at *unchanged* output prices, nominal depreciation (appreciation) implies real depreciation (appreciation). Our discussion of real exchange rate changes thus includes, as a special case, an observation we made in Chapter 14: With the domestic money prices of goods held constant, a nominal dollar depreciation makes U.S. goods cheaper compared with foreign goods, while a nominal dollar appreciation makes them more expensive.

Equation (16-6) makes it easy to see why the real exchange rate can never change when relative PPP holds. Under relative PPP, a 10 percent rise in  $E_{\$/\text{€}}$ , for instance, would always be exactly offset by a 10 percent fall in the price level ratio  $P_E/P_{\text{US}}$ , leaving  $q_{\$/\text{€}}$  unchanged.

### Demand, Supply, and the Long-Run Real Exchange Rate

It should come as no surprise that in a world where PPP does not hold, the long-run values of real exchange rates—just like other relative prices that clear markets—depend on demand and supply conditions. Since a real exchange rate tracks changes in the relative price of two countries' expenditure baskets, however, conditions in *both* countries matter. Changes in countries' output markets can be complex, and we do not want to digress into an exhaustive (and exhausting) catalogue of the possibilities. We focus instead on two specific cases that are both easy to grasp and important in practice for explaining why the long-run values of real exchange rates can change.

1. *A change in world relative demand for American products.* Imagine total world spending on American goods and services rises relative to total world spending on European goods and services. Such a change could arise from several sources—for example, a shift in private U.S. demand away from European goods and toward American goods; a similar shift in private foreign demand toward American goods; or an increase in U.S. government demand falling primarily on U.S. output. Any increase in relative world demand for U.S. products causes an excess demand for them at the previous real exchange rate. To restore equilibrium, the relative price of American output in terms of European output will therefore have to rise: The relative prices of U.S. nontradables will rise, and the prices of tradables produced in the United States, and consumed intensively there, will rise relative to the prices

---

<sup>18</sup>This is true because  $E_{\$/\text{€}} = 1/E_{\text{€}/\$}$ , implying that a real depreciation of the dollar against the euro is the same as a real appreciation of the euro against the dollar (that is, a rise in the purchasing power of the euro within the United States relative to its purchasing power within Europe or a fall in the relative price of American products in terms of European products).

## STICKY PRICES AND THE LAW OF ONE PRICE: EVIDENCE FROM SCANDINAVIAN DUTY-FREE SHOPS

**S**ticky nominal prices and wages are central to macroeconomic theories, but just why might it be difficult for money prices to change from day to day as market conditions change? One reason is based on the idea of “menu costs.” Menu costs could arise from several factors, such as the actual costs of printing new price lists and catalogs. In addition, firms may perceive a different type of menu cost due to their customers’ imperfect information about competitors’ prices. When a firm raises its price, some customers will shop around elsewhere and find it convenient to remain with a competing seller even if all sellers have raised their prices. In the presence of these various types of menu costs, sellers will often hold prices constant after a change in market conditions until they are certain the change is permanent enough to make incurring the costs of price changes worthwhile.<sup>19</sup>

If there were truly no barriers between two markets with goods priced in different currencies, sticky prices would be unable to survive in the face of an exchange rate change. All buyers would simply flock to the market where a good had become cheapest. But when some trade impediments exist, deviations from the law of one price do not induce unlimited arbitrage, so it is feasible for sellers to hold prices constant despite exchange rate changes. In the real world, trade barriers appear to be significant, widespread, and often subtle in nature.

Apparently, arbitrage between two markets may be limited even when the physical distance between them is zero, as a surprising study of pricing behavior in Scandinavian duty-free outlets shows. Swedish economists Marcus Asplund and Richard Friborg

studied pricing behavior in the duty-free stores of two Scandinavian ferry lines whose catalogs quote the prices of each good in several currencies for the convenience of customers from different countries.<sup>20</sup> Since it is costly to print the catalogs, they are reissued with revised prices only from time to time. In the interim, however, fluctuations in exchange rates induce multiple, changing prices for the *same* good. For example, on the Birka Line of ferries between Sweden and Finland, prices were listed in both Finnish markka and Swedish kronor between 1975 and 1998, implying that a relative depreciation of the markka would make it cheaper to buy cigarettes or vodka by paying markka rather than kronor.

Despite such price discrepancies, Birka Line was always able to do business in both currencies—passengers did not rush to buy at the lowest price. Swedish passengers, who held relatively large quantities of their own national currency, tended to buy at the krona prices, whereas Finnish customers tended to buy at the markka prices.

Often, Birka Line would take advantage of publishing a new catalog to reduce deviations from the law of one price. The average deviation from the law of one price in the month just before such a price adjustment was 7.21 percent, but only 2.22 percent in the month of the price adjustment. One big impediment to taking advantage of the arbitrage opportunities was the cost of changing currencies at the onboard foreign exchange booth—roughly 7.5 percent. That transaction cost, given different passengers’ currency preferences at the time of embarkation, acted as an effective trade barrier.<sup>21</sup>

<sup>19</sup>It is when economic conditions are very volatile that prices seem to become most flexible. For example, restaurant menus will typically price their catch of the day at “market” so that the price charged (and the fish offered) can reflect the high variability in fishing outcomes.

<sup>20</sup>“The Law of One Price in Scandinavian Duty-Free Stores,” *American Economic Review* 91 (September 2001), pp. 1072–1083.

<sup>21</sup>Customers could pay in the currency of their choice not only with cash but also with credit cards, which involve lower foreign exchange conversion fees but convert at an exchange rate prevailing a few days after the purchase of the goods. Asplund and Friberg suggest that for such small purchases, uncertainty and the costs of calculating relative prices (in addition to the credit-card exchange fees) might have been a sufficient deterrent to transacting in a relatively unfamiliar currency.

Surprisingly, Birka Line did not completely eliminate law of one price deviations when it changed catalog prices. Instead, Birka Line practiced a kind of pricing to market on its ferries. Usually, exporters who price to market

discriminate among different consumers based on their different locations, but Birka was able to discriminate based on different nationality and currency preferences, even with all potential consumers located on the same ferry boat.

of tradables made in Europe. These changes all work to reduce  $q_{\$/\epsilon}$ , the relative price of Europe's reference expenditure basket in terms of the United States'. We conclude that an increase in world relative demand for U.S. output causes a long-run real appreciation of the dollar against the euro (a fall in  $q_{\$/\epsilon}$ ). Similarly, a decrease in world relative demand for U.S. output causes a long-run real depreciation of the dollar against the euro (a rise in  $q_{\$/\epsilon}$ ).

2. *A change in relative output supply.* Suppose the productive efficiency of U.S. labor and capital rises. Since Americans spend part of their increased income on foreign goods, the supplies of all types of U.S. goods and services increase relative to the demand for them, the result being an excess relative supply of American output at the previous real exchange rate. A fall in the relative price of American products—both nontradables and tradables—shifts demand toward them and eliminates the excess supply. This price change is a real depreciation of the dollar against the euro, that is, an increase in  $q_{\$/\epsilon}$ . *A relative expansion of U.S. output causes a long-run real depreciation of the dollar against the euro ( $q_{\$/\epsilon}$  rises). A relative expansion of European output causes a long-run real appreciation of the dollar against the euro ( $q_{\$/\epsilon}$  falls).*<sup>22</sup>

A useful diagram summarizes our discussion of demand, supply, and the long-run real exchange rate. In Figure 16-4, the supply of U.S. output relative to European output,  $Y_{US}/Y_E$ , is plotted along the horizontal axis while the real dollar/euro exchange rate,  $q_{\$/\epsilon}$ , is plotted along the vertical axis.

The equilibrium real exchange rate is determined by the intersection of two schedules. The upward-sloping schedule *RD* shows that the relative demand for U.S. products in general, relative to the demand for European products, rises as  $q_{\$/\epsilon}$  rises, that is, as American products become relatively cheaper. This “demand” curve for U.S. relative to European goods has a positive slope because we are measuring a *fall* in the relative price of U.S. goods by a move *upward* along the vertical axis. What about relative supply? In the long run, relative national output levels are determined by factor supplies and productivity, with little, if any, effect on the real exchange rate. The relative supply curve, *RS*, therefore is vertical at the long-run (that is, full-employment) relative output ratio,  $(Y_{US}/Y_E)^1$ . The equilibrium long-run real exchange rate is the one that sets relative demand equal to long-run relative supply (point 1).<sup>23</sup>

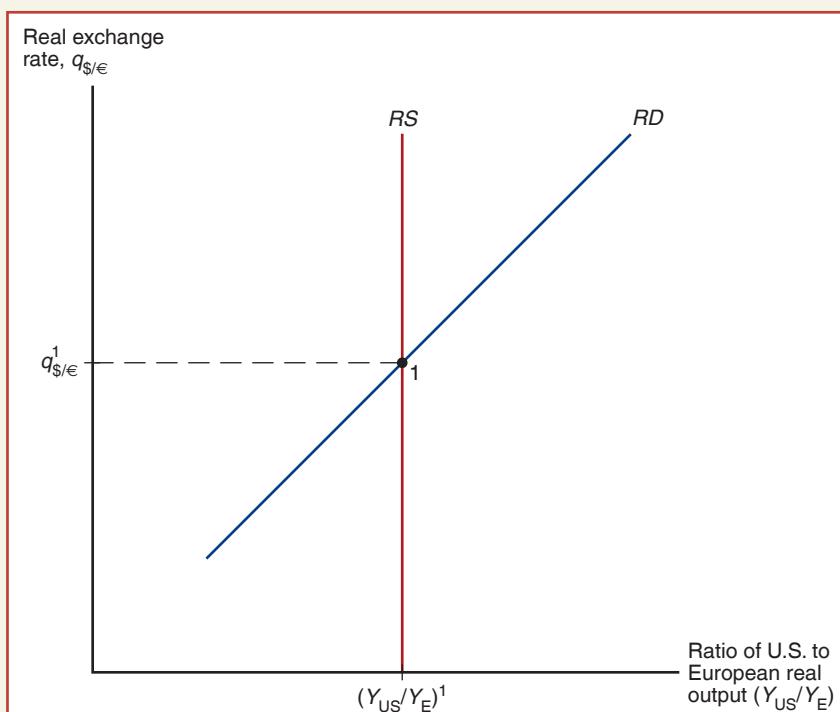
---

<sup>22</sup>Our discussion of the Balassa-Samuelson effect in the Case Study on “Why Price Levels Are Lower in Poorer Countries” would lead you to expect that a productivity increase concentrated in the U.S. tradables sector might cause the dollar to appreciate, rather than depreciate, in real terms against the euro. In the last paragraph, however, we have in mind a balanced productivity increase that benefits the traded and nontraded sectors in equal proportion, thus resulting in a real dollar depreciation by causing a drop in the prices of nontradable goods and in those of traded goods that are more important in America's consumer price index than in Europe's.

<sup>23</sup>Notice that these *RD* and *RS* schedules differ from the ones used in Chapter 6. The earlier ones referred to relative world demand for and supply of two products that could be produced in either of two countries. In contrast, the *RD* and *RS* curves in this chapter refer to the relative world demand for and supply of one country's overall output (its GDP) relative to another's.

**FIGURE 16-4**  
**Determination of the Long-Run Real Exchange Rate**

The long-run equilibrium real exchange rate equates world relative demand to the full-employment level of relative supply.



The diagram easily illustrates how changes in world markets affect the real exchange rate. Suppose world gasoline prices fall, making American sport-utility vehicles more desirable for people everywhere. This change would be a rise in world relative demand for American goods and would shift *RD* to the right, causing  $q_{\$/\text{€}}$  to fall (a real dollar appreciation against the euro). Suppose the United States improves its health-care system, reducing illness throughout the American workforce. If workers are able to produce more goods and services in an hour as a result, the rise in U.S. productivity shifts *RS* to the right, causing  $q_{\$/\text{€}}$  to rise (a real dollar depreciation against the euro).

### Nominal and Real Exchange Rates in Long-Run Equilibrium

We now pull together what we have learned in this chapter and Chapter 15 to show how long-run nominal exchange rates are determined. One central conclusion is that changes in national money supplies and demands give rise to the proportional long-run movements in nominal exchange rates and international price level ratios predicted by the relative purchasing power parity theory. Demand and supply shifts in national output markets, however, cause nominal exchange rate movements that do not conform to PPP.

Recall our definition of the real dollar/euro exchange rate as

$$q_{\$/\text{€}} = (E_{\$/\text{€}} \times P_{\text{E}}) / P_{\text{US}}.$$

[See equation (16-6).] If we now solve this equation for the nominal exchange rate, we get an equation that gives us the nominal dollar/euro exchange rate as the real dollar/euro exchange rate times the U.S.–Europe price level ratio:

$$E_{\$/\text{€}} = q_{\$/\text{€}} \times (P_{\text{US}} / P_{\text{E}}). \quad (16-7)$$

Formally speaking, the only difference between (16-7) and equation (16-1), on which we based our exposition of the monetary approach to the exchange rate, is that (16-7) accounts for possible deviations from PPP by adding the *real* exchange rate as an additional determinant of the nominal exchange rate. *The equation implies that for a given real dollar/euro exchange rate, changes in money demand or supply in Europe or the United States affect the long-run nominal dollar/euro exchange rate as in the monetary approach. Changes in the long-run real exchange rate, however, also affect the long-run nominal exchange rate.* The long-run theory of exchange rate determination implied by equation (16-7) thus includes the valid elements of the monetary approach, but in addition it corrects the monetary approach by allowing for nonmonetary factors that can cause sustained deviations from purchasing power parity.

Assuming all variables start out at their long-run levels, we can now understand the most important determinants of long-run swings in nominal exchange rates:

1. *A shift in relative money supply levels.* Suppose the Fed wishes to stimulate the economy and therefore carries out an increase in the level of the U.S. money supply. As you will remember from Chapter 15, a permanent, one-time increase in a country's money supply has no effect on the long-run levels of output, the interest rate, or any relative price (including the real exchange rate). Thus, (16-3) implies once again that  $P_{US}$  rises in proportion to  $M_{US}$ , while (16-7) shows that the U.S. price level is the sole variable changing in the long run along with the nominal exchange rate  $E_{\$/\epsilon}$ . Because the real exchange rate  $q_{\$/\epsilon}$  does not change, the nominal exchange rate change is consistent with relative PPP: The only long-run effect of the U.S. money supply increase is to raise all dollar prices, including the dollar price of the euro, in proportion to the increase in the money supply. It should be no surprise that this result is the same as the one we found using the monetary approach, since that approach is designed to account for the long-run effects of monetary changes.
2. *A shift in relative money supply growth rates.* Suppose the Fed concludes, to its dismay, that over the next few years the U.S. price level will fall. (A consistently falling price level is called *deflation*.) A permanent increase in the *growth rate* of the U.S. money supply raises the long-run U.S. inflation rate and, through the Fisher effect, raises the dollar interest rate relative to the euro interest rate. Because relative U.S. real money demand therefore declines, equation (16-3) implies that  $P_{US}$  rises (as shown in Figure 16-1). Because the change bringing this outcome about is purely monetary, however, it is neutral in its long-run effects; specifically, it does not alter the long-run *real* dollar/euro exchange rate. According to (16-7), then,  $E_{\$/\epsilon}$  rises in proportion to the increase in  $P_{US}$  (a depreciation of the dollar against the euro). Once again, a purely monetary change brings about a long-run nominal exchange rate shift in line with relative PPP, just as the monetary approach predicted.
3. *A change in relative output demand.* This type of change is *not* covered by the monetary approach, so now the more general perspective we've developed, in which the real exchange rate can change, is essential. Since a change in relative output demand does not affect long-run national price levels—these depend solely on the factors appearing in equations (16-3) and (16-4)—the long-run nominal exchange rate in (16-7) will change only insofar as the real exchange rate changes. Consider an increase in world relative demand for U.S. products. Earlier in this section, we saw that a rise in demand for U.S. products causes a long-run real appreciation of the dollar against the euro (a fall in  $q_{\$/\epsilon}$ ); this change is simply a rise in the relative price of U.S. output. Given that long-run national price levels are unchanged, however, (16-7) tells us that a long-run *nominal* appreciation of the dollar against the

euro (a fall in  $E_{\$/\epsilon}$ ) must also occur. This prediction highlights the important fact that even though exchange rates are nominal prices, they respond to nonmonetary as well as monetary events, even over long horizons.

4. *A change in relative output supply.* As we saw earlier in this section, an increase in relative U.S. output supply causes the dollar to depreciate in real terms against the euro, lowering the relative price of U.S. output. This rise in  $q_{\$/\epsilon}$  is not, however, the only change in equation (16-7) implied by a relative rise in U.S. output. In addition, the U.S. output increase raises the transaction demand for real U.S. money balances, raising aggregate U.S. real money demand and, by (16-3), pushing the long-run U.S. price level down. Referring back to equation (16-7), you will see that since  $q_{\$/\epsilon}$  rises while  $P_{US}$  falls, the output and money market effects of a change in output supply work in opposite directions, thus making the net effect on  $E_{\$/\epsilon}$  ambiguous. Our analysis of an output-supply change illustrates that even when a disturbance originates in a single market (in this case, the output market), its influence on exchange rates may depend on repercussion effects that are channeled through other markets.

*We conclude that when all disturbances are monetary in nature, exchange rates obey relative PPP in the long run. In the long run, a monetary disturbance affects only the general purchasing power of a currency, and this change in purchasing power changes equally the currency's value in terms of domestic and foreign goods. When disturbances occur in output markets, the exchange rate is unlikely to obey relative PPP, even in the long run.* Table 16-1 summarizes these conclusions regarding the effects of monetary and output market changes on long-run nominal exchange rates.

In the chapters that follow, we will appeal to this section's general long-run exchange rate model even when we are discussing short-run macroeconomic events. Long-run factors are important in the short run because of the central role that expectations about the future play in the day-to-day determination of exchange rates. That is why news

**TABLE 16-1 Effects of Money Market and Output Market Changes on the Long-Run Nominal Dollar/Euro Exchange Rate,  $E_{\$/\epsilon}$**

Change	Effect on the Long-Run Nominal Dollar/Euro Exchange Rate, $E_{\$/\epsilon}$
<b>Money market</b>	
1. Increase in U.S. money supply level	Proportional increase (nominal depreciation of \$)
2. Increase in European money supply level	Proportional decrease (nominal depreciation of euro)
3. Increase in U.S. money supply growth rate	Increase (nominal depreciation of \$)
4. Increase in European money supply growth rate	Decrease (nominal depreciation of euro)
<b>Output market</b>	
1. Increase in demand for U.S. output	Decrease (nominal appreciation of \$)
2. Increase in demand for European output	Increase (nominal appreciation of euro)
3. Output supply increase in the United States	Ambiguous
4. Output supply increase in Europe	Ambiguous

about the current account, for example, can have a big impact on the exchange rate. The long-run exchange rate model of this section will provide the anchor for market expectations, that is, the framework market participants use to forecast future exchange rates on the basis of information at hand today.

## International Interest Rate Differences and the Real Exchange Rate

Earlier in this chapter, we saw that relative PPP, when combined with interest parity, implies that international interest rate differences equal differences in countries' expected inflation rates. Because relative PPP does not hold true in general, however, the relation between international interest rate differences and national inflation rates is likely to be more complex in practice than that simple formula suggests. Despite this complexity, economic policy makers who hope to influence exchange rates, as well as private individuals who wish to forecast them, cannot succeed without understanding the factors that cause countries' interest rates to differ.

In this section, we therefore extend our earlier discussion of the Fisher effect to include real exchange rate movements. We do this by showing that in general, interest rate differences between countries depend not only on differences in expected inflation, as the monetary approach asserts, but also on expected changes in the real exchange rate.

We begin by recalling that the change in  $q_{\$/\epsilon}$ , the real dollar/euro exchange rate, is the *deviation* from relative PPP; that is, the change in  $q_{\$/\epsilon}$  is the percentage change in the nominal dollar/euro exchange rate less the international difference in inflation rates between the United States and Europe. We thus arrive at the corresponding relationship among the *expected* change in the real exchange rate, the *expected* change in the nominal rate, and *expected* inflation:

$$(q_{\$/\epsilon}^e - q_{\$/\epsilon})/q_{\$/\epsilon} = \left[ (E_{\$/\epsilon}^e - E_{\$/\epsilon})/E_{\$/\epsilon} \right] - (\pi_{US}^e - \pi_{\epsilon}^e), \quad (16-8)$$

where  $q_{\$/\epsilon}^e$  (as per our usual notation) is the real exchange rate expected for a year from today.

Now we return to the interest parity condition between dollar and euro deposits,

$$R_{\$} - R_{\epsilon} = (E_{\$/\epsilon}^e - E_{\$/\epsilon})/E_{\$/\epsilon}.$$

An easy rearrangement of (16-8) shows the expected rate of change in the *nominal* dollar/euro exchange rate is just the expected rate of change in the *real* dollar/euro exchange rate *plus* the U.S.–Europe expected inflation difference. Combining (16-8) with the above interest parity condition, we thus are led to the following breakdown of the international interest rate gap:

$$R_{\$} - R_{\epsilon} = \left[ (q_{\$/\epsilon}^e - q_{\$/\epsilon})/q_{\$/\epsilon} \right] + (\pi_{US}^e - \pi_{\epsilon}^e). \quad (16-9)$$

Notice that when the market expects relative PPP to prevail,  $q_{\$/\epsilon}^e = q_{\$/\epsilon}$  and the first term on the right side of this equation drops out. In this special case, (16-9) reduces to the simpler (16-5), which we derived by assuming relative PPP.

In general, however, the dollar/euro interest difference is the sum of *two* components: (1) the expected rate of real dollar depreciation against the euro and (2) the expected inflation difference between the United States and Europe. For example, if U.S. inflation will be 5 percent per year forever and European inflation will be zero forever, the long-run interest difference between dollar and euro deposits need not be the 5 percent

that PPP (when combined with interest parity) would suggest. If, in addition, everyone knows that output demand and supply trends will make the dollar depreciate against the euro in real terms at a rate of 1 percent per year, the international interest spread will actually be 6 percent.

## Real Interest Parity

Economics makes an important distinction between **nominal interest rates**, which are rates of return measured in monetary terms, and **real interest rates**, which are rates of return measured in *real* terms, that is, in terms of a country's output. Because real rates of return often are uncertain, we usually will refer to *expected* real interest rates. The interest rates we discussed in connection with the interest parity condition and the determinants of money demand were nominal rates, for example, the dollar return on dollar deposits. But for many other purposes, economists need to analyze behavior in terms of real rates of return. No one who is thinking of investing money, for example, could make a decision knowing only that the nominal interest rate is 15 percent. The investment would be quite attractive at zero inflation but disastrously unattractive if inflation were bounding along at 100 percent per year!<sup>24</sup>

We conclude this chapter by showing that when the nominal interest parity condition equates nominal interest rate differences between currencies to expected changes in *nominal* exchange rates, a *real* interest parity condition equates expected real interest rate differences to expected changes in *real* exchange rates. Only when relative PPP is expected to hold (meaning no real exchange rate change is anticipated) are expected real interest rates in all countries identical.

We define the expected real interest rate, denoted  $r^e$ , as the nominal interest rate,  $R$ , less the expected inflation rate,  $\pi^e$ :

$$r^e = R - \pi^e.$$

In other words, the expected real interest rate in a country is just the real rate of return a domestic resident expects to earn on a loan of his or her currency. The definition of the expected real interest rate clarifies the generality of the forces behind the Fisher effect: Any increase in the expected inflation rate that does not alter the expected real interest rate must be reflected, one for one, in the nominal interest rate.

A useful consequence of the preceding definition is a formula for the difference in expected real interest rates between two currency areas such as the United States and Europe:

$$r_{\text{US}}^e - r_{\text{E}}^e = (R_{\$} - \pi_{\text{US}}^e) - (R_{\text{€}} - \pi_{\text{E}}^e).$$

If we rearrange equation (16-9) and combine it with the preceding equation, we get the desired *real interest parity condition*:

$$r_{\text{US}}^e - r_{\text{E}}^e = (q_{\$/\text{€}}^e - q_{\$/\text{€}}) / q_{\$/\text{€}}. \quad (16-10)$$

Equation (16-10) looks much like the nominal interest parity condition from which it is derived, but it explains differences in expected *real* interest rates between the United States and Europe by expected movements in the dollar/euro *real* exchange rate.

---

<sup>24</sup>We could get away with examining nominal return differences in the foreign exchange market because (as Chapter 14 showed) nominal return differences equal real return differences for any given investor. In the context of the demand for money, the nominal interest rate is the real rate of return you sacrifice by holding interest-barren currency.

Expected real interest rates are the same in different countries when relative PPP is expected to hold [in which case (16-10) implies that  $r_{\text{US}}^e = r_E^e$ ]. More generally, however, expected real interest rates in different countries need not be equal, even in the long run, if continuing change in output markets is expected.<sup>27</sup> Suppose, for example, that people expect productivity in the South Korean tradables sector to rise during the next two decades, while productivity stagnates in South Korean nontradables and in all U.S. industries. If the Balassa-Samuelson hypothesis is valid, people should expect the U.S. dollar to depreciate in real terms against South Korea's currency, the won, as the prices of South Korea's nontradables trend upward. Equation (16-10) thus implies that the expected real interest rate should be higher in the United States than in South Korea.

Do such real interest differences imply unnoticed profit opportunities for international investors? Not necessarily. A cross-border real interest difference does imply that residents of two countries perceive different real rates of return on wealth. Nominal interest parity tells us, however, that any *given* investor expects the same real return on domestic and foreign currency assets. Two investors residing in different countries need not calculate this single real rate of return in the same way if relative PPP does not link the prices of their consumption baskets, but there is no way either can profit from their disagreement by shifting funds between currencies.

## SUMMARY

- The *purchasing power parity* theory, in its absolute form, asserts that the exchange rate between countries' currencies equals the ratio of their price levels, as measured by the money prices of a reference commodity basket. An equivalent statement of PPP is that the purchasing power of any currency is the same in any country. *Absolute PPP* implies a second version of the PPP theory, *relative PPP*, which predicts that percentage changes in exchange rates equal differences in national inflation rates.
- A building block of the PPP theory is the *law of one price*, which states that under free competition and in the absence of trade impediments, a good must sell for a single price regardless of where in the world it is sold. Proponents of the PPP theory often argue, however, that its validity does not require the law of one price to hold for every commodity.
- The *monetary approach to the exchange rate* uses PPP to explain long-term exchange rate behavior exclusively in terms of money supply and demand. In that theory, long-run international interest differentials result from different national rates of ongoing inflation, as the *Fisher effect* predicts. Sustained international differences in monetary growth rates are, in turn, behind different long-term rates of continuing inflation. The monetary approach thus finds that a rise in a country's interest rate will be associated with a depreciation of its currency. Relative PPP implies that international interest differences, which equal the expected percentage change in the exchange rate, also equal the international expected inflation gap.
- The empirical support for PPP and the law of one price is weak in recent data. The failure of these propositions in the real world is related to trade barriers and departures from free competition, factors that can result in *pricing to market* by exporters. In addition, different definitions of price levels in different countries bedevil attempts

<sup>27</sup>In the two-period analysis of international borrowing and lending in Chapter 6, all countries face a single worldwide real interest rate. Relative PPP must hold in that analysis, however, because there is only one consumption good in each period.

to test PPP using the price indices governments publish. For some products, including many services, international transport costs are so steep that these products become nontradable.

- Deviations from relative PPP can be viewed as changes in a country's *real exchange rate*, the price of a typical foreign expenditure basket in terms of the typical domestic expenditure basket. All else equal, a country's currency undergoes a long-run *real appreciation* against foreign currencies when the world relative demand for its output rises. In this case, the country's real exchange rate, as just defined, falls. The home currency undergoes a long-run *real depreciation* against foreign currencies when home output expands relative to foreign output. In this case, the real exchange rate rises.
- The long-run determination of *nominal exchange rates* can be analyzed by combining two theories: the theory of the long-run *real exchange rate* and the theory of how domestic monetary factors determine long-run price levels. A stepwise increase in a country's money stock ultimately leads to a proportional increase in its price level and a proportional fall in its currency's foreign exchange value, just as relative PPP predicts. Changes in monetary growth rates also have long-run effects consistent with PPP. Supply or demand changes in output markets, however, result in exchange rate movements that do not conform to PPP.
- The interest parity condition equates international differences in *nominal interest rates* to the expected percentage change in the nominal exchange rate. If interest parity holds in this sense, a real interest parity condition equates international differences in expected *real interest rates* to the expected change in the real exchange rate. Real interest parity also implies that international differences in nominal interest rates equal the difference in expected inflation *plus* the expected percentage change in the real exchange rate.

## KEY TERMS

absolute PPP, p. 455

Fisher effect, p. 459

law of one price, p. 453

monetary approach to the exchange rate, p. 456

nominal exchange rate, p. 472

nominal interest rate, p. 481

pricing to market, p. 465

purchasing power parity (PPP), p. 452

real appreciation, p. 474

real depreciation, p. 473

real exchange rate, p. 472

real interest rate, p. 481

relative PPP, p. 455

## PROBLEMS

1. Suppose Russia's inflation rate is 100 percent over one year but the inflation rate in Switzerland is only 5 percent. According to relative PPP, what should happen over the year to the Swiss franc's exchange rate against the Russian ruble?
2. Discuss why it is often asserted that exporters suffer when their home currencies appreciate in real terms against foreign currencies and prosper when their home currencies depreciate in real terms.
3. Other things equal, how would you expect the following shifts to affect a currency's real exchange rate against foreign currencies?
  - a. The overall level of spending doesn't change, but domestic residents decide to spend more of their income on nontraded products and less on tradables.
  - b. Foreign residents shift their demand away from their own goods and toward the home country's exports.

- 4.** The Eurozone was created in 1999 with countries including Austria, Belgium, France, Germany, and Ireland. New participant countries have joined since—Slovenia (2007), Cyprus (2008), Malta (2008), Slovakia (2009), Estonia (2011), Latvia (2014), and Lithuania (2015). To become a member of the European Monetary Union, the candidate country has to first participate in a “testing phase,” known as the Exchange rate mechanism (ERMII), which lasts for two years; the country also needs to fulfill certain “convergence criteria” like inflation, debt, and exchange rate stability. The central exchange rate chosen between the candidate currency and the euro is based on a range of economic indicators.

Comment on this procedure and discuss, according to what is said in this chapter, why the PPP appreciation is not included in the process?

- 5.** The following chart shows the numbers on the average nominal rate (NER) and real exchange rate (REER) of the Japanese Yen against several foreign currencies (such average index numbers are called real effective exchange rates):

2011	2012	2013	2014	2015	2016Q3	
105.7	105.2	87.1	81.5	76.6	93	NER
101.3	100.0	79.7	75.1	70.3	83.6	REER

Base 100 in 2010.

Source: [http://www.bis.org/statistics/tables\\_i.pdf](http://www.bis.org/statistics/tables_i.pdf)

Since December 2012, Japan has a new Prime Minister, Shinzō Abe, who has introduced a new economic policy (“the Abenomics”) advocating, besides structural reforms, an aggressive monetary easing to foster the economic growth that has been very low for several years. Explain the evolution of the exchange rate of the Yen in this context.

- 6.** Explain how permanent shifts in national real money demand functions affect real and nominal exchange rates in the long run.
- 7.** At the end of World War I, the Treaty of Versailles imposed an indemnity on Germany, a large annual payment from it to the victorious Allies. (Many historians believe this indemnity played a role in destabilizing financial markets in the interwar period and even in bringing on World War II.) In the 1920s, economists John Maynard Keynes and Bertil Ohlin had a spirited debate in the *Economic Journal* over the possibility that the transfer payment would impose a “secondary burden” on Germany by worsening its terms of trade. Use the theory developed in this chapter to discuss the mechanisms through which a permanent transfer from Poland to the Czech Republic would affect the real zloty/koruna exchange rate in the long run.
- 8.** Continuing with problem 7, discuss how the transfer would affect the long-run nominal exchange rate between the two currencies.
- 9.** A country imposes a tariff on imports from abroad. How does this action change the long-run real exchange rate between the home and foreign currencies? How does it affect the long-run nominal exchange rate?
- 10.** Imagine two identical countries have restricted imports to identical levels, but one has done so using tariffs while the other has done so using quotas. After these policies are in place, both countries experience identical, balanced expansions of domestic spending. Where should the demand expansion cause a greater real currency appreciation, in the tariff-using country or in the quota-using country?

11. Explain how the nominal euro/RMB exchange rate would be affected (all else equal) by permanent changes in the expected rate of real appreciation of the RMB against the euro.
12. Can you suggest an event that would cause a country's nominal interest rate to rise and its currency to appreciate simultaneously, in a world of perfectly flexible prices?
13. Suppose the expected real interest rate in Hong Kong is 5 percent per year while that in Singapore is 2 percent per year. What do you expect to happen to the real HK\$/SNG exchange rate over the next year?
14. In the short run of a model with sticky prices, a reduction in the money supply raises the nominal interest rate and appreciates the currency (see Chapter 15). What happens to the expected real interest rate? Explain why the subsequent path of the real exchange rate satisfies the real interest parity condition.
15. Discuss the following statement: "When a change in a country's nominal interest rate is caused by a rise in the expected real interest rate, the domestic currency appreciates. When the change is caused by a rise in expected inflation, the currency depreciates." (It may help to refer back to Chapter 15.)
16. In 2006, an ECB report stated that despite an overall increase in euro area long term bond yields, the euro area yield curve flattened during the year. This is mirrored in the decline of the "term spread," which is measured by the difference between the yield on a ten-year government bond and a three-month EURIBOR. During 2006, there was almost a 50 basis point decline in the term spread, reaching to almost 30 basis points by the end of the year. Typically, long-term interest rates are above short-term rates. In terms of the Fisher effect, what would that pattern say about expected inflation and/or the expected future real interest rate?
17. Between 2002 and 2004, when the 1-year interest rate in the euro zone was 120 basis points higher than the U.S. rate, on an average, economists expected a depreciation of the euro based on the interest parity; however, it appreciated by 46 percent against the U.S. How would you explain this deviation from the interest parity?
18. Why might it be true that relative PPP holds better in the long run than the short run? (Think about how international trading firms might react to large and persistent cross-border differences in the prices of a tradable good.)
19. Suppose residents of the Euro area consume relatively more of Eurozone countries' export goods than residents of foreign countries. In other words, Eurozone countries export goods have a higher weight in the Eurozone HCPI (the HCPI is the "Harmonized" CPI created specially in order to be able to compare European countries' inflation) than they do in other countries. Conversely, foreign exports have a lower weight in the Eurozone HCPI than they do abroad. What would be the effect on the euro's real exchange rate with a rise in the European terms of trade (the relative price of European exports in terms of European imports)?
20. *The Economist* magazine has observed that the price of Big Macs is systematically positively related to a country's income level, just as is the general price level. If you go to *The Economist's* Big Mac standard website, at <http://www.economist.com/content/big-mac-index>, you will find the data on under/overvaluation for June 2020 (as well as for previous years' surveys). Go to the World Bank's World Development Indicators website, <http://data.worldbank.org/indicator/NY.GDP.PCAP.PP.CD>, and find the most recent data on GNI (Gross National Income) per capita, PPP,

for all countries. Use these data, together with *The Economist* data on Big Mac dollar prices, to make a graph of income per capita (horizontal axis) versus dollar Big Mac price (vertical axis). What do you find?

## FURTHER READINGS

- James E. Anderson and Eric van Wincoop. "Trade Costs." *Journal of Economic Literature* 42 (September 2004), pp. 691–751. Comprehensive survey of the nature and effects of costs of international trade.
- Ariel Burstein and Gita Gopinath. "International Prices and Exchange Rates," in Gita Gopinath, Elhanan Helpman, and Kenneth Rogoff, eds., *Handbook of International Economics*, volume 4. Amsterdam: Elsevier, 2014. Valuable advanced survey of pricing to market and related topics.
- Gustav Cassel. *Post-War Monetary Stabilization*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1928. Applies the purchasing power parity theory of exchange rates in analyzing the monetary problems that followed World War I.
- Robert E. Cumby. "Forecasting Exchange Rates and Relative Prices with the Hamburger Standard: Is What You Want What You Get with McParity?" Working Paper 5675. National Bureau of Economic Research, July 1996. Studies the statistical forecasting power of Big Mac measures of over- and undervaluation.
- Angus Deaton and Alan Heston. "Understanding PPPs and PPP-Based National Accounts." *American Economic Journal: Macroeconomics* 2 (October 2010): pp. 1–35. Critical overview of the many obstacles to constructing accurate international price comparisons.
- Michael B. Devereux. "Real Exchange Rates and Macroeconomics: Evidence and Theory." *Canadian Journal of Economics* 30 (November 1997), pp. 773–808. Reviews theories of the determinants and effects of real exchange rates.
- Rudiger Dornbusch. "The Theory of Flexible Exchange Rate Regimes and Macroeconomic Policy," in Jan Herin, Assar Lindbeck, and Johan Myhrman, eds., *Flexible Exchange Rates and Stabilization Policy*. Boulder, CO: Westview Press, 1977, pp. 123–143. Develops a long-run model of exchange rates incorporating traded and nontraded goods and services.
- Pinelopi Koujianou Goldberg and Michael M. Knetter. "Goods Prices and Exchange Rates: What Have We Learned?" *Journal of Economic Literature* 35 (September 1997), pp. 1243–1272. Excellent survey of micro-level evidence on the law of one price, exchange rate pass-through, and pricing to market.
- Patrick Honohan. "Using Purchasing Power Parities to Compare Income and Production across Countries." Policy Brief, Peterson Institute for International Economics, December 2020. Critical review of the use of PPP adjustments in comparing living standards across countries.
- David Hummels. "Transportation Costs and International Trade in the Second Era of Globalization." *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 21 (Summer 2007), pp. 131–154. Surveys the economics of transportation costs in modern international trade.
- Lloyd A. Metzler. "Exchange Rates and the International Monetary Fund," in *International Monetary Policies*. Postwar Economic Studies 7. Washington, D.C.: Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, 1947, pp. 1–45. The author applies purchasing power parity with skill and skepticism to evaluate the fixed exchange rates established by the International Monetary Fund after World War II.
- Frederic S. Mishkin. *The Economics of Money, Banking and Financial Markets*, 12th edition. New York: Pearson, 2020. Chapter 5 discusses inflation and the Fisher effect.
- Kenneth Rogoff. "The Purchasing Power Parity Puzzle." *Journal of Economic Literature* 34 (June 1996), pp. 647–668. Critical survey of theory and empirical work.
- Alan C. Stockman. "The Equilibrium Approach to Exchange Rates." *Federal Reserve Bank of Richmond Economic Review* 73 (March/April 1987), pp. 12–30. Theory and evidence on an equilibrium exchange rate model similar to the long-run model of this chapter.
- Alan M. Taylor and Mark P. Taylor. "The Purchasing Power Parity Debate." *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 18 (Fall 2004), pp. 135–158. Surveys recent research on PPP.



## The Fisher Effect, the Interest Rate, and the Exchange Rate under the Flexible-Price Monetary Approach

The monetary approach to exchange rates—which assumes the prices of goods are perfectly flexible—implies that a country's currency depreciates when its nominal interest rates rise because of higher expected future inflation. This appendix supplies a detailed analysis of that important result.

Consider again the dollar/euro exchange rate, and imagine the Federal Reserve raises the future rate of U.S. money supply growth by the amount  $\Delta\pi$ . Figure 16A-1 provides a diagram that will help us keep track of how various markets respond to that change.

The lower right quadrant in the figure is our usual depiction of equilibrium in the U.S. money market. It shows that before the increase in U.S. money supply growth, the nominal interest rate on dollars equals  $R_{\$}^1$  (point 1). The Fisher effect tells us that a rise  $\Delta\pi$  in the future rate of U.S. money supply growth, all else equal, will raise the nominal interest rate on dollars to  $R_{\$}^2 = R_{\$}^1 + \Delta\pi$  (point 2).

As the diagram shows, the rise in the nominal dollar interest rate reduces money demand and therefore requires an equilibrating fall in the real money supply. But the nominal money stock is unchanged in the short run because it is only the *future* rate of U.S. money supply growth that has risen. What happens? Given the unchanged nominal money supply  $M_{US}$ , an upward jump in the U.S. price level from  $P_{US}^1$  to  $P_{US}^2$  brings about the needed reduction in American real money holdings. The assumed flexibility of prices allows this jump to occur even in the short run.

To see the exchange rate response, we turn to the lower-left quadrant. The monetary approach assumes purchasing power parity, implying that as  $P_{US}$  rises (while the European price level remains constant, which we assume), the dollar/euro exchange rate  $E_{\$/\epsilon}$  must rise (a depreciation of the dollar). The lower-left quadrant of Figure 16A-1 graphs the implied relationship between U.S. real money holdings,  $M_{US}/P_{US}$ , and the nominal exchange rate,  $E_{\$/\epsilon}$ , given an unchanged *nominal* money supply in the United States and an unchanged European price level. Using PPP, we can write the equation graphed there (which is a downward-sloping *hyperbola*) as:

$$E_{\$/\epsilon} = P_{US}/P_E = \frac{M_{US}/P_E}{M_{US}/P_{US}}.$$

This equation shows that the fall in the U.S. real money supply, from  $M_{US}^1/P_{US}^1$  to  $M_{US}^1/P_{US}^2$ , is associated with a dollar depreciation in which the dollar/euro nominal exchange rate rises from  $E_{\$/\epsilon}^1$  to  $E_{\$/\epsilon}^2$  (shown as a movement to the left along the horizontal axis).

The 45-degree line in the upper-left quadrant of Figure 16A-1 allows you to translate the exchange rate change given in the lower-left quadrant to the vertical axis of the upper-right quadrant's diagram. The upper-right quadrant contains our usual portrayal of equilibrium in the foreign exchange market.

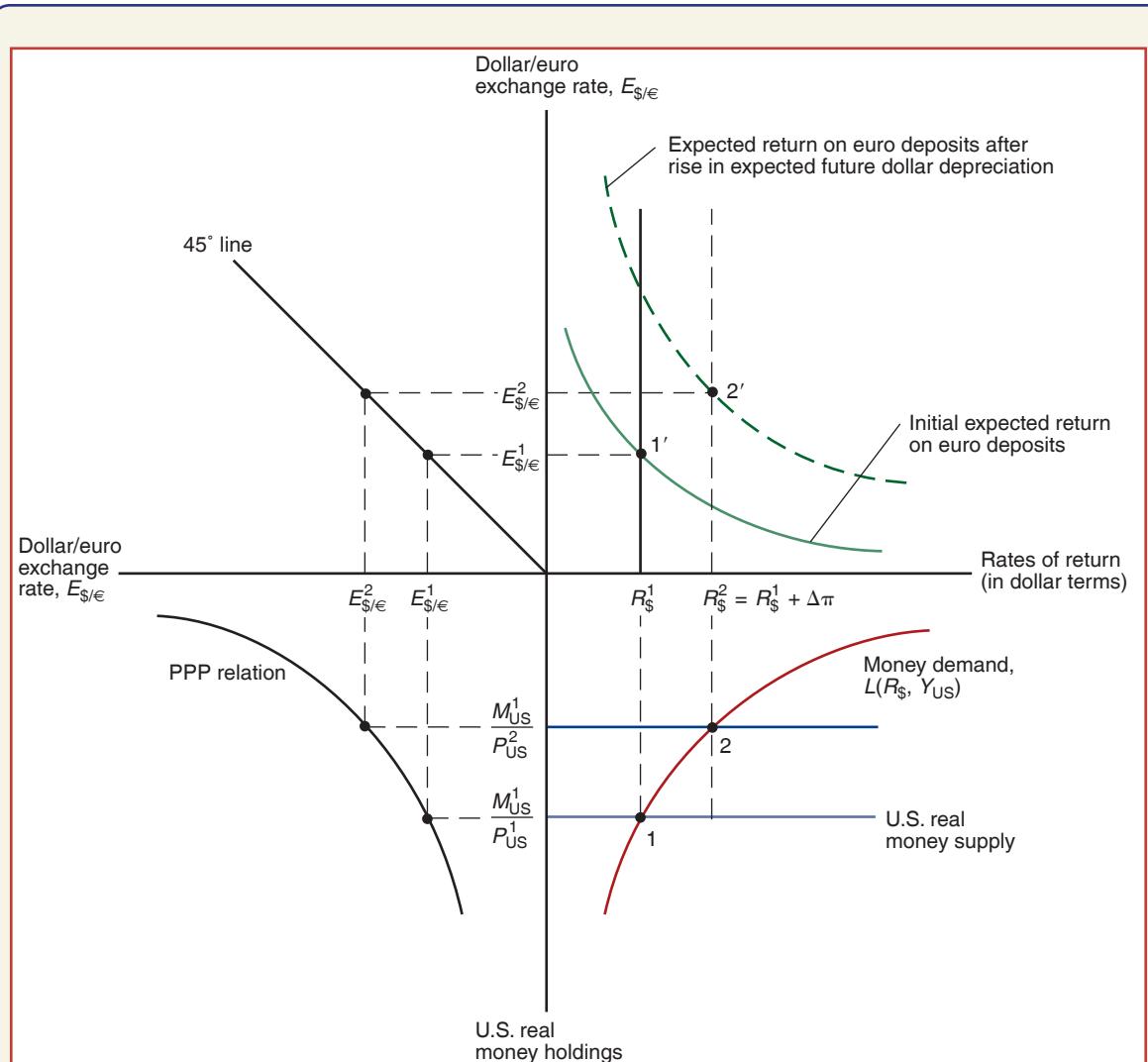


FIGURE 16A-1

### How a Rise in U.S. Monetary Growth Affects Dollar Interest Rates and the Dollar/Euro Exchange Rate When Goods Prices Are Flexible

When goods prices are perfectly flexible, the money market equilibrium diagram (southeast quadrant) shows two effects of an increase,  $\Delta\pi$ , in the future rate of U.S. money supply growth. The change (i) raises the dollar interest rate from  $R_{\$}^1$  to  $R_{\$}^2 = R_{\$}^1 + \Delta\pi$ , in line with the Fisher effect, and (ii) causes the U.S. price level to jump upward, from  $P_{US}^1$  to  $P_{US}^2$ . Money market equilibrium therefore moves from point 1 to point 2. (Because  $M_{US}^1$  doesn't change immediately, the real U.S. money supply falls to  $M_{US}^1/P_{US}^2$ , bringing the real money supply into line with reduced money demand.) The PPP relationship in the southwest quadrant shows that the price level jump from  $P_{US}^1$  to  $P_{US}^2$  requires a depreciation of the dollar against the euro (the dollar/euro exchange rate moves up, from  $E_{\$/\text{€}}^1$  to  $E_{\$/\text{€}}^2$ ). In the foreign exchange market diagram (northeast quadrant), this dollar depreciation is shown as the move from point 1' to point 2'. The dollar depreciates despite a rise in  $R_{\$}$  because heightened expectations of future dollar depreciation against the euro cause an outward shift of the locus measuring the expected dollar return on euro deposits.

There you can see the dollar's depreciation against the euro is associated with a move in the foreign exchange market's equilibrium from point 1' to point 2'. The picture shows why the dollar depreciates, despite the rise in  $R_{\$}$ . The reason is an outward shift in the downward-sloping schedule, which gives the expected dollar rate of return on euro deposits. Why does that schedule shift outward? Higher expected future monetary growth implies faster expected future depreciation of the dollar against the euro and therefore a rise in the attractiveness of euro deposits. It is this change in expectations that leads simultaneously to a rise in the nominal interest rate on dollars and to a depreciation of the dollar in the foreign exchange market.

To summarize, we cannot predict how a rise in the dollar interest rate will affect the dollar's exchange rate without knowing *why* the nominal interest rate has risen. In a flexible-price model in which the home nominal interest rate rises because of higher expected future money supply growth, the home currency will depreciate—not appreciate—thanks to expectations of more rapid future depreciation.



# CHAPTER 17

## OUTPUT AND THE EXCHANGE RATE IN THE SHORT RUN

The U.S. and Canadian economies registered similar negative rates of output growth during 2009, a year of deep global recession. But while the U.S. dollar depreciated against foreign currencies by about 8 percent over the year, the Canadian dollar *appreciated* by roughly 16 percent. What explains these contrasting experiences? By completing the macroeconomic model built in Chapters 14 through 16, this chapter will sort out the complicated factors that cause output, exchange rates, and inflation to change. Chapters 15 and 16 presented the connections among exchange rates, interest rates, and price levels but always assumed that output levels were determined outside the model. Those chapters gave us only a partial picture of how macroeconomic changes affect an open economy because events that change exchange rates, interest rates, and price levels may also affect output. Now we complete the picture by examining how output and the exchange rate are determined in the short run.

Our discussion combines what we have learned about asset markets and the long-run behavior of exchange rates with a new element, a theory of how the output market adjusts to demand changes when product prices in the economy are themselves slow to adjust. As we learned in Chapter 15, institutional factors like long-term nominal contracts can give rise to “sticky” or slowly adjusting output market prices. By combining a short-run model of the output market with our models of the foreign exchange and money markets (the asset markets), we build a model that explains the short-run behavior of all the important macroeconomic variables in an open economy. The long-run exchange rate model of the preceding chapter provides the framework that participants in the asset markets use to form their expectations about future exchange rates.

Because output changes may push the economy away from full employment, the links among output and other macroeconomic variables, such as the trade balance and the current account, are of great concern to economic policy makers. In the last part of this chapter, we use our short-run model to examine how macroeconomic policy tools affect output and the current account and how those tools can be used to maintain full employment.

## LEARNING GOALS

After reading this chapter, you will be able to:

- Explain the role of the real exchange rate in determining the aggregate demand for a country's output.
- See how an open economy's short-run equilibrium can be analyzed as the intersection of an asset market equilibrium schedule (*AA*) and an output market equilibrium schedule (*DD*).
- Understand how monetary and fiscal policies affect the exchange rate and national output in the short run.
- Describe and interpret the long-run effects of permanent macroeconomic policy changes.
- Explain the relationship among macroeconomic policies, the current account balance, and the exchange rate.

## Determinants of Aggregate Demand in an Open Economy

To analyze how output is determined in the short run when product prices are sticky, we introduce the concept of **aggregate demand** for a country's output. Aggregate demand is the amount of a country's goods and services demanded by households, firms, and governments throughout the world. Just as the output of an individual good or service depends in part on the demand for it, a country's overall short-run output level depends on the aggregate demand for its products. The economy is at full employment in the long run (by definition) because wages and the price level eventually adjust to ensure full employment. In the long run, domestic output therefore depends only on the available domestic supplies of factors of production such as labor and capital. As we will see, however, these productive factors can be over- or underemployed in the short run as a result of shifts in aggregate demand that have not yet had their full long-run effects on prices.

In Chapter 13, we learned that an economy's output is the sum of four types of expenditure that generate national income: consumption, investment, government purchases, and the current account. Correspondingly, aggregate demand for an open economy's output is the sum of consumption demand ( $C$ ), investment demand ( $I$ ), government demand ( $G$ ), and net export demand, that is, the current account ( $CA$ ). Each of these components of aggregate demand depends on various factors. In this section, we examine the factors that determine consumption demand and the current account. We discuss government demand later in this chapter when we examine the effects of fiscal policy; for now, we assume that  $G$  is given. To avoid complicating our model, we also assume investment demand is given. We incorporate the determinants of investment demand into the model in Appendix 3 to this chapter.

### Determinants of Consumption Demand

In this chapter, we view the amount a country's residents wish to consume as depending on disposable income,  $Y^d$  (that is, national income less taxes,  $Y - T$ ).<sup>1</sup> ( $C$ ,  $Y$ , and  $T$

---

<sup>1</sup>A more complete model would allow other factors, such as real wealth, expected future income, and the real interest rate, to affect consumption plans. This chapter's Appendix 1 links the formulation here to the microeconomic theory of the consumer, which was the basis of the discussion in the appendix to Chapter 6.

are all measured in terms of domestic output units.) With this assumption, a country's desired consumption level can be written as a function of disposable income:

$$C = C(Y^d).$$

Because each consumer naturally demands more goods and services as his or her real income rises, we expect consumption to increase as disposable income increases at the aggregate level, too. Thus, consumption demand and disposable income are positively related. However, when disposable income rises, consumption demand generally rises by *less* because part of the income increase is saved.

### Determinants of the Current Account

The current account balance, viewed as the demand for a country's exports less than country's own demand for imports, is determined by two main factors: the domestic currency's real exchange rate against foreign currency (that is, the price of a typical foreign expenditure basket in terms of domestic expenditure baskets) and domestic disposable income. (In reality, a country's current account depends on many other factors, such as the level of foreign expenditure, but for now we regard these other factors as being held constant.)<sup>2</sup>

We express a country's current account balance as a function of its currency's real exchange rate,  $q = EP^*/P$ , and of domestic disposable income,  $Y^d$ :

$$CA = CA(EP^*/P, Y^d).$$

As a reminder of the discussion in Chapter 16, note that the domestic currency prices of representative foreign and domestic expenditure baskets are, respectively,  $EP^*$  and  $P$ , where  $E$  (the nominal exchange rate) is the price of foreign currency in terms of domestic currency,  $P^*$  is the foreign price level, and  $P$  is the home price level. The *real* exchange rate  $q$ , defined as the price of the foreign basket in terms of the domestic one, is therefore  $EP^*/P$ . If, for example, the representative basket of European goods and services costs €40( $P^*$ ), the representative U.S. basket costs \$50 ( $P$ ), and the dollar/euro exchange rate is \$1.10 per euro ( $E$ ), then the price of the European basket in terms of U.S. baskets is

$$\begin{aligned} EP^*/P &= \frac{(1.10 \$/\text{€}) \times (40\text{€}/\text{European basket})}{(50 \$/\text{U.S. basket})} \\ &= 0.88 \text{ U.S. baskets/European basket.} \end{aligned}$$

Real exchange rate changes affect the current account because they reflect changes in the prices of domestic goods and services relative to foreign goods and services. Disposable income affects the current account through its effect on total spending by domestic consumers. To understand how these real exchange rate and disposable income effects work, it is helpful to look separately at the demand for a country's exports,  $EX$ , and the demand for imports by the country's residents,  $IM$ . As we saw in Chapter 13, the current account is related to exports and imports by the identity

$$CA = EX - IM,$$

when  $CA$ ,  $EX$ , and  $IM$  all are measured in terms of domestic output.

---

<sup>2</sup>As footnote 1 observed, we are ignoring a number of factors (such as wealth and interest rates) that affect consumption along with disposable income. Since some part of any consumption change goes into imports, these omitted determinants of consumption also help to determine the current account. Following the convention of Chapter 13, we are also ignoring unilateral transfers in analyzing the current account balance.

## How Real Exchange Rate Changes Affect the Current Account

You will recall that a representative domestic expenditure basket includes some imported products but places a relatively heavier weight on goods and services produced domestically. At the same time, the representative foreign basket is skewed toward goods and services produced in the foreign country. Thus, a rise in the price of the foreign basket in terms of domestic baskets, say, will be associated with a rise in the relative price of foreign output in general relative to domestic output.<sup>3</sup>

To determine how such a change in the relative price of national outputs affects the current account, other things equal, we must ask how it affects both  $EX$  and  $IM$ . When  $EP^*/P$  rises, for example, foreign products have become more expensive relative to domestic products: Each unit of domestic output now purchases fewer units of foreign output. Foreign consumers will respond to this price shift (a real domestic currency depreciation) by demanding more of our exports. This response by foreigners will therefore raise  $EX$  and improve the domestic country's current account.

The effect of the same real exchange rate increase on  $IM$  is more complicated. Domestic consumers respond to the price shift by purchasing fewer units of the more expensive foreign products. Their response does not imply, however, that  $IM$  must fall because  $IM$  denotes the *value* of imports measured in terms of domestic output, not the *volume* of foreign products imported. Since a rise in  $EP^*/P$  (a real depreciation of the domestic currency) tends to raise the value of each unit of imports in terms of domestic output units, imports measured in domestic output units may rise as a result of a rise in  $EP^*/P$  even if imports decline when measured in foreign output units.  $IM$  can therefore rise or fall when  $EP^*/P$  rises, so the effect of a real exchange rate change on the current account  $CA$  is ambiguous.

Whether the current account improves or worsens depends on which effect of a real exchange rate change is dominant—the *volume effect* of consumer spending shifts on export and import quantities or the *value effect*, which changes the domestic output equivalent of a *given* volume of foreign imports. We assume for now that the volume effect of a real exchange rate change always outweighs the value effect, so that, other things equal, a real depreciation of the currency improves the current account and a real appreciation of the currency worsens the current account.<sup>4</sup>

While we have couched our discussion of real exchange rates and the current account in terms of consumers' responses, producers' responses are just as important and work in much the same way. When a country's currency depreciates in real terms, foreign firms will find that the country can supply intermediate production inputs more cheaply. These effects have become stronger as a result of the increasing tendency for multinational firms to locate different stages of their production processes in a variety of countries. For example, the German auto manufacturer BMW can shift production from Germany to its Spartanburg, South Carolina, plant if a dollar depreciation lowers the relative cost of producing in the United States. The production shift represents an increase in world demand for U.S. labor and output.

---

<sup>3</sup>The real exchange rate is being used here essentially as a convenient summary measure of the relative prices of domestic against foreign products. A more exact (but much more complicated) analysis would work explicitly with separate demand and supply functions for each country's nontradables and tradables but would lead to conclusions very much like those we reach later.

<sup>4</sup>This assumption requires that import and export demands be relatively *elastic* with respect to the real exchange rate. Appendix 2 to this chapter describes a precise mathematical condition, called the *Marshall-Lerner condition*, under which the assumption in the text is valid. The appendix also examines empirical evidence on the time horizon over which the Marshall-Lerner condition holds.

**TABLE 17-1 Factors Determining the Current Account**

Change	Effect on Current Account, $CA$
Real exchange rate, $EP^*/P \uparrow$	$CA \uparrow$
Real exchange rate, $EP^*/P \downarrow$	$CA \downarrow$
Disposable income, $Y^d \uparrow$	$CA \downarrow$
Disposable income, $Y^d \downarrow$	$CA \uparrow$

### How Disposable Income Changes Affect the Current Account

The second factor influencing the current account is domestic disposable income. Since a rise in  $Y^d$  causes domestic consumers to increase their spending on *all* goods, including imports from abroad, an increase in disposable income worsens the current account, other things equal. (An increase in  $Y^d$  has no effect on export demand because we are holding foreign income constant and not allowing  $Y^d$  to affect it.)

Table 17-1 summarizes our discussion of how real exchange rate and disposable income changes influence the domestic current account.

## The Equation of Aggregate Demand

We now combine the four components of aggregate demand to get an expression for total aggregate demand, denoted  $D$ :

$$D = C(Y - T) + I + G + CA(EP^*/P, Y - T),$$

where we have written disposable income  $Y^d$  as output,  $Y$ , less taxes,  $T$ . This equation shows that aggregate demand for home output can be written as a function of the real exchange rate, disposable income, investment demand, and government spending:

$$D = D(EP^*/P, Y - T, I, G).$$

We now want to see how aggregate demand depends on the real exchange rate and domestic GNP given the level of taxes,  $T$ , investment demand,  $I$ , and government purchases,  $G$ .<sup>5</sup>

### The Real Exchange Rate and Aggregate Demand

A rise in  $EP^*/P$  makes domestic goods and services cheaper relative to foreign goods and services and shifts both domestic and foreign spending from foreign goods to domestic goods. As a result,  $CA$  rises (as assumed in the previous section) and aggregate demand,  $D$ , therefore goes up. *A real depreciation of the home currency raises aggregate*

<sup>5</sup>As noted earlier, investment  $I$  is taken as given, though we may imagine that it shifts for reasons that are outside the model. (In other words, we assume it is an exogenous rather than an endogenous variable.) We make the same assumption about  $G$ . It would not be hard to make  $I$  endogenous, however, as is done in this chapter's Appendix 3, where investment is a declining function of the domestic real rate of interest. (That is the assumption made in the standard *IS-LM* model of intermediate macroeconomics courses.) For a given expected future exchange rate and a given full-employment output level, the model of Appendix 3 implies that investment demand can be expressed as  $I(E, Y)$ , where a rise in  $E$  (depreciation of domestic currency) raises investment demand, as does an increase in domestic output  $Y$ . Modeling investment in this way within the setup of this chapter would not change our predictions in any important way.

*demand for home output, other things equal; a real appreciation lowers aggregate demand for home output.*

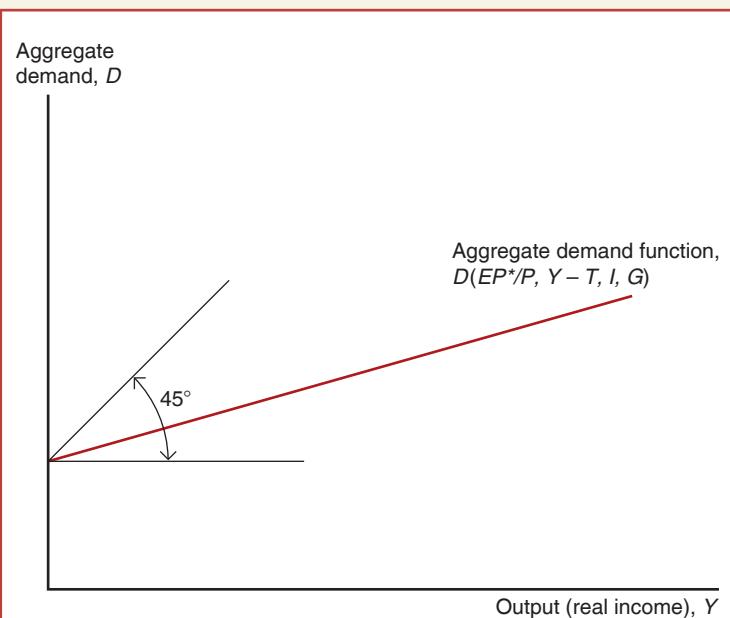
### Real Income and Aggregate Demand

The effect of domestic real income on aggregate demand is slightly more complicated. If taxes are fixed at a given level, a rise in  $Y$  represents an equal rise in disposable income  $Y^d$ . While this rise in  $Y^d$  raises consumption, it worsens the current account by raising home spending on foreign imports. The first of these effects raises aggregate demand, but the second lowers it. Since the increase in consumption is divided between higher spending on home products and higher spending on foreign imports, however, the first effect (the effect of disposable income on total consumption) is greater than the second (the effect of disposable income on import spending alone). Therefore, *a rise in domestic real income raises aggregate demand for home output, other things equal, and a fall in domestic real income lowers aggregate demand for home output.*

Figure 17-1 shows the relation between aggregate demand and real income  $Y$  for fixed values of the real exchange rate, taxes, investment demand, and government spending. As  $Y$  rises, consumption rises by a fraction of the increase in income. Part of this increase in consumption, moreover, goes into import spending. The effect of an increase in  $Y$  on the aggregate demand for home output is therefore smaller than the accompanying rise in consumption demand, which is smaller, in turn, than the increase in  $Y$ . We show this in Figure 17-1 by drawing the aggregate demand schedule with a slope less than 1. (The schedule intersects the vertical axis above the origin because investment, government, and foreign demand would make aggregate demand greater than zero, even in the hypothetical case of zero domestic output.)

**FIGURE 17-1**  
**Aggregate Demand as a Function of Output**

Aggregate demand is a function of the real exchange rate ( $EP^*/P$ ), disposable income ( $Y - T$ ), investment demand ( $I$ ), and government spending ( $G$ ). If all other factors remain unchanged, a rise in output (real income),  $Y$ , increases aggregate demand. Because the increase in aggregate demand is less than the increase in output, the slope of the aggregate demand function is less than 1 (as indicated by its position within the 45-degree angle).



## How Output Is Determined in the Short Run

Having discussed the factors that influence the demand for an open economy's output, we now study how output is determined in the short run. We show that the output market is in equilibrium when real domestic output,  $Y$ , equals the aggregate demand for domestic output:

$$Y = D(EP^*/P, Y - T, I, G). \quad (17-1)$$

The equality of aggregate supply and demand therefore determines the short-run equilibrium output level.<sup>6</sup>

Our analysis of real output determination applies to the short run because we assume that the money prices of goods and services are *temporarily fixed*. As we will see later in the chapter, the short-run real output changes that occur when prices are temporarily fixed eventually cause price level changes that move the economy to its long-run equilibrium. In long-run equilibrium, factors of production are fully employed, the level of real output is completely determined by factor supplies, and the real exchange rate has adjusted to equate long-run real output to aggregate demand.<sup>7</sup>

The determination of national output in the short run is illustrated in Figure 17-2, where we again graph aggregate demand as a function of output for fixed levels of the real exchange rate, taxes, investment demand, and government spending. The intersection (at point 1) of the aggregate demand schedule and a 45-degree line drawn from the origin (the equation  $D = Y$ ) gives us the unique output level  $Y^1$  at which aggregate demand equals domestic output.

Let's use Figure 17-2 to see why output tends to settle at  $Y^1$  in the short run. At an output level of  $Y^2$ , aggregate demand (point 2) is higher than output. Firms therefore increase their production to meet this excess demand. (If they did not, they would have to meet the excess demand out of inventories, reducing investment below the desired level,  $I$ .) Thus, output expands until national income reaches  $Y^1$ .

At point 3, there is an excess supply of domestic output, and firms find themselves involuntarily accumulating inventories (and involuntarily raising their investment spending above its desired level). As inventories start to build up, firms cut back on production; only when output has fallen to  $Y^1$  will firms be content with their level of production. Once again, output settles at point 1, the point at which output exactly equals aggregate demand. In this short-run equilibrium, consumers, firms, the government, and foreign buyers of domestic products are all able to realize their desired expenditures with no output left over.

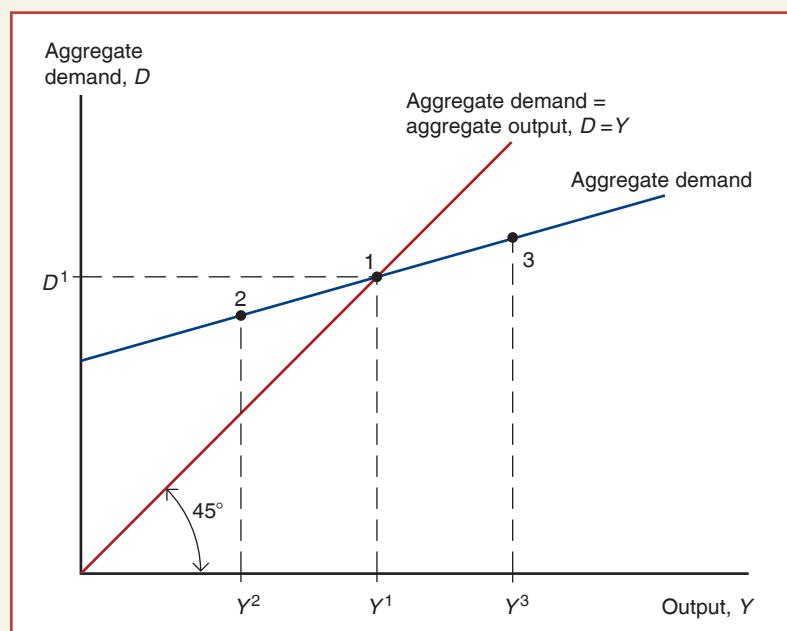
---

<sup>6</sup>Superficially, equation (17-1), which may be written as  $Y = C(Y^d) + I + G + CA(EP^*/P, Y^d)$ , looks like the GNP identity we discussed in Chapter 13,  $Y = C + I + G + CA$ . How do the two equations differ? They differ in that (17-1) is an equilibrium condition, not an identity. As you will recall from Chapter 13, the investment quantity  $I$  appearing in the GNP identity includes *undesired* or involuntary inventory accumulation by firms, so the GNP identity always holds as a matter of definition. The investment demand appearing in equation (17-1), however, is *desired* or planned investment. Thus, the GNP identity always holds, but equation (17-1) holds only if firms that are building up or drawing down inventories of goods are doing so willingly.

<sup>7</sup>Thus, equation (17-1) also holds in long-run equilibrium, but the equation determines the long-run real exchange rate when  $Y$  is at its long-run value, as in Chapter 16. (We are holding foreign conditions constant.)

**FIGURE 17-2**  
**The Determination of Output in the Short Run**

In the short run, output settles at  $Y^1$  (point 1), where aggregate demand,  $D^1$ , equals aggregate output,  $Y^1$ .



## Output Market Equilibrium in the Short Run: The DD Schedule

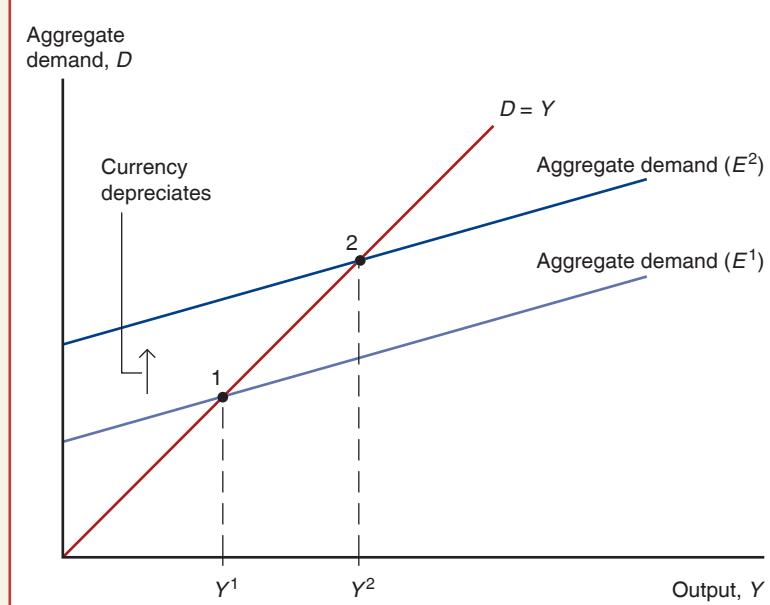
Now that we understand how output is determined for a given real exchange rate  $EP^*/P$ , let's look at how the exchange rate and output are simultaneously determined in the short run. To understand this process, we need two elements. The first element, developed in this section, is the relationship between output and the exchange rate (the *DD* schedule) that must hold when the output market is in equilibrium. The second element, developed in the next section, is the relationship between output and the exchange rate that must hold when the home money market and the foreign exchange market (the asset markets) are in equilibrium. Both elements are necessary because the economy as a whole is in equilibrium only when both the output market and the asset markets are in equilibrium.

### Output, the Exchange Rate, and Output Market Equilibrium

Figure 17-3 illustrates the relationship between the exchange rate and output implied by output market equilibrium. Specifically, the figure illustrates the effect of a depreciation of the domestic currency against foreign currency (that is, a rise in  $E$  from  $E^1$  to  $E^2$ ) for fixed values of the domestic price level,  $P$ , and the foreign price level,  $P^*$ . With fixed price levels at home and abroad, the rise in the nominal exchange rate makes foreign goods and services more expensive relative to domestic goods and services. This relative price change shifts the aggregate demand schedule upward.

**FIGURE 17-3**  
**Output Effect of a Currency Depreciation with Fixed Output Prices**

A rise in the exchange rate from  $E^1$  to  $E^2$  (a currency depreciation) raises aggregate demand to  $\text{Aggregate demand } (E^2)$  and output to  $Y^2$ , all else equal.



The fall in the relative price of domestic output shifts the aggregate demand schedule upward because at each level of domestic output, the demand for domestic products is higher. For example, foreign and American consumers of autos alike shift their demands toward American models when the dollar depreciates. Output expands from  $Y^1$  to  $Y^2$  as firms find themselves faced with excess demand at initial production levels.

Although we have considered the effect of a change in  $E$  with  $P$  and  $P^*$  held fixed, it is straightforward to analyze the effects of changes in  $P$  or  $P^*$  on output. *Any rise in the real exchange rate  $EP^*/P$  (whether due to a rise in  $E$ , a rise in  $P^*$ , or a fall in  $P$ ) will cause an upward shift in the aggregate demand function and an expansion of output, all else equal.* (A rise in  $P^*$ , for example, has effects qualitatively identical to those of a rise in  $E$ .) *Similarly, any fall in  $EP^*/P$ , regardless of its cause (a fall in  $E$ , a fall in  $P^*$ , or a rise in  $P$ ), will cause output to contract, all else equal.* (A rise in  $P$ , with  $E$  and  $P^*$  held fixed, for example, makes domestic products more expensive relative to foreign products, reduces aggregate demand for domestic output, and causes output to fall.)

### Deriving the DD Schedule

If we assume  $P$  and  $P^*$  are fixed in the short run, a depreciation of the domestic currency (a rise in  $E$ ) is associated with a rise in domestic output,  $Y$ , while an appreciation (a fall in  $E$ ) is associated with a fall in  $Y$ . This association provides us with one of the two relationships between  $E$  and  $Y$  needed to describe the short-run macroeconomic behavior of an open economy. We summarize this relationship by the **DD schedule**, which shows all combinations of output and the exchange rate for which the output market is in short-run equilibrium (aggregated demand = aggregate output).

**FIGURE 17-4**  
**Deriving the DD Schedule**

The *DD* schedule (shown in the lower panel) slopes upward because a rise in the exchange rate from  $E^1$  to  $E^2$ , all else equal, causes output to rise from  $Y^1$  to  $Y^2$ .

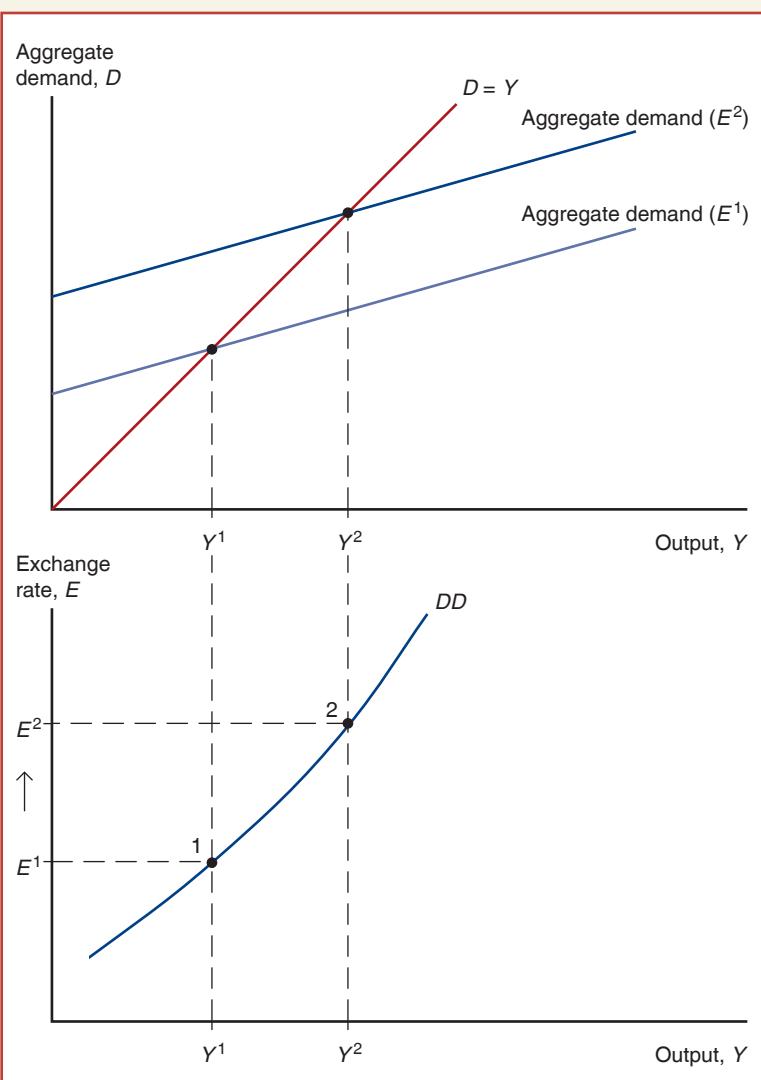


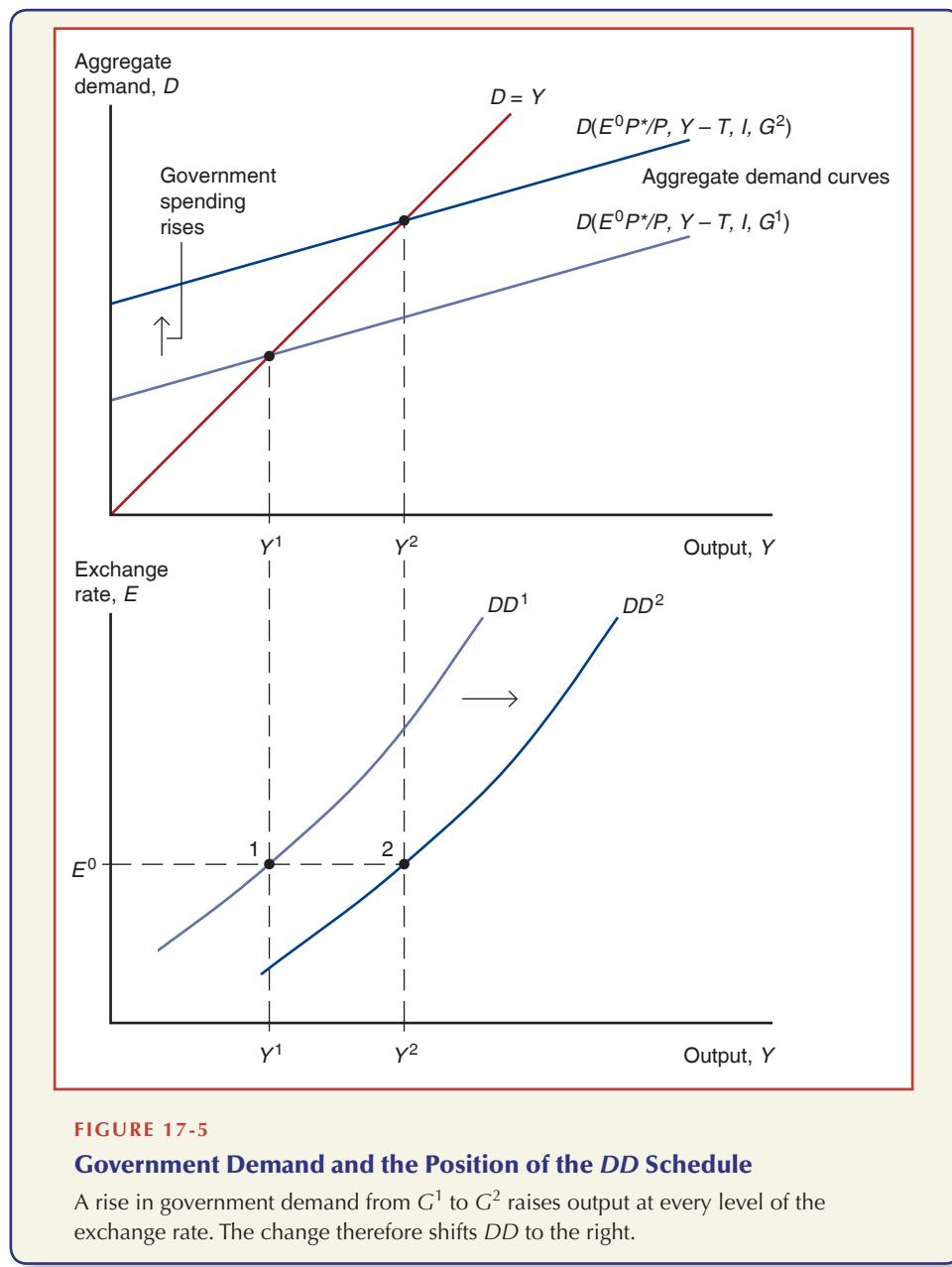
Figure 17-4 shows how to derive the *DD* schedule, which relates  $E$  and  $Y$  when  $P$  and  $P^*$  are fixed. The upper part of the figure reproduces the result of Figure 17-3. (A depreciation of the domestic currency shifts the aggregate demand function upward, causing output to rise.) The *DD* schedule in the lower part graphs the resulting relationship between the exchange rate and output (given that  $P$  and  $P^*$  are held constant). Point 1 on the *DD* schedule gives the output level,  $Y^1$ , at which aggregate demand equals aggregate supply when the exchange rate is  $E^1$ . A depreciation of the currency to  $E^2$  leads to the higher output level  $Y^2$  according to the figure's upper part, and this information allows us to locate point 2 on *DD*.

### Factors That Shift the DD Schedule

A number of factors affect the position of the *DD* schedule: the levels of government demand, taxes, and investment; the domestic and foreign price levels; variations in domestic consumption behavior; and the foreign demand for home output.

To understand the effects of shifts in each of these factors, we must study how the  $DD$  schedule shifts when it changes. In the following discussions, we assume all other factors remain fixed.

1. *A change in G.* Figure 17-5 shows the effect on  $DD$  of a rise in government purchases from  $G^1$  to  $G^2$ , given a constant exchange rate of  $E^0$ . An example would be the increase in U.S. military and security expenditures following the September 11, 2001, attacks. As shown in the upper part of the figure, the exchange rate  $E^0$  leads to an equilibrium output level  $Y^1$  at the initial level of government demand, so point 1 is one point on  $DD^1$ .



An increase in  $G$  causes the aggregate demand schedule in the upper part of the figure to shift upward. Everything else remaining unchanged, output increases from  $Y^1$  to  $Y^2$ . Point 2 in the bottom part shows the higher level of output at which aggregate demand and supply are now equal, *given an unchanged exchange rate of  $E^0$* . Point 2 is on a new  $DD$  curve,  $DD^2$ .

For any given exchange rate, the level of output equating aggregate demand and supply is higher after the increase in  $G$ . This implies that *an increase in  $G$  causes  $DD$  to shift to the right, as shown in Figure 17-5. Similarly, a decrease in  $G$  causes  $DD$  to shift to the left.*

The method and reasoning we have just used to study how an increase in  $G$  shifts the  $DD$  curve can be applied to all the cases that follow. Here, we summarize the results. To test your understanding, use diagrams similar to Figure 17-5 to illustrate how the economic factors listed below change the curves.

2. *A change in  $T$ .* Taxes,  $T$ , affect aggregate demand by changing disposable income, and thus consumption, for any level of  $Y$ . It follows that an increase in taxes causes the aggregate demand function of Figure 17-1 to shift *downward* given the exchange rate  $E$ . Since this effect is the opposite of that of an increase in  $G$ , an increase in  $T$  must cause the  $DD$  schedule to shift leftward. Similarly, a fall in  $T$ , such as the tax cut enacted after 2001 by U.S. President George W. Bush, causes a rightward shift of  $DD$ .
3. *A change in  $I$ .* An increase in investment demand has the same effect as an increase in  $G$ : The aggregate demand schedule shifts upward and  $DD$  shifts to the right. A fall in investment demand shifts  $DD$  to the left.
4. *A change in  $P$ .* Given  $E$  and  $P^*$ , an increase in  $P$  makes domestic output more expensive relative to foreign output and lowers net export demand. The  $DD$  schedule shifts to the left as aggregate demand falls. A fall in  $P$  makes domestic goods cheaper and causes a rightward shift of  $DD$ .
5. *A change in  $P^*$ .* Given  $E$  and  $P$ , a rise in  $P^*$  makes foreign goods and services relatively more expensive. Aggregate demand for domestic output therefore rises and  $DD$  shifts to the right. Similarly, a fall in  $P^*$  causes  $DD$  to shift to the left.
6. *A change in the consumption function.* Suppose residents of the home economy suddenly decide they want to consume more and save less at each level of disposable income. This could occur, for example, if home prices increase and homeowners borrow against their additional wealth. If the increase in consumption spending is not devoted entirely to imports from abroad, aggregate demand for domestic output rises and the aggregate demand schedule shifts upward for any given exchange rate  $E$ . This implies a shift to the right of the  $DD$  schedule. An autonomous fall in consumption (if it is not entirely due to a fall in import demand) shifts  $DD$  to the left.
7. *A demand shift between foreign and domestic goods.* Suppose there is no change in the domestic consumption function but domestic and foreign residents suddenly decide to devote more of their spending to goods and services produced in the home country. (For example, fears of mad cow disease abroad raise the demand for U.S. beef products.) If home disposable income and the real exchange rate remain the same, this shift in demand *improves* the current account by raising exports and lowering imports. The aggregate demand schedule shifts upward and  $DD$  therefore shifts to the right. The same reasoning shows that a shift in world demand away from domestic products and toward foreign products causes  $DD$  to shift to the left.

You may have noticed that a simple rule allows you to predict the effect on  $DD$  of any of the disturbances we have discussed: *Any disturbance that raises aggregate demand*

for domestic output shifts the *DD* schedule to the right; any disturbance that lowers aggregate demand for domestic output shifts the *DD* schedule to the left.

## Asset Market Equilibrium in the Short Run: The *AA* Schedule

We have now derived the first element in our account of short-run exchange rate and income determination, the relation between the exchange rate and output that is consistent with the equality of aggregate demand and supply. That relation is summarized by the *DD* schedule, which shows all exchange rate and output levels at which the output market is in short-run equilibrium. As we noted at the beginning of the preceding section, however, equilibrium in the economy as a whole requires equilibrium in the asset markets as well as in the output market, and there is no reason in general why points on the *DD* schedule should lead to asset market equilibrium.

To complete the story of short-run equilibrium, we therefore introduce a second element to ensure that the exchange rate and output level consistent with output market equilibrium are also consistent with asset market equilibrium. The schedule of exchange rate and output combinations that are consistent with equilibrium in the domestic money market and the foreign exchange market is called the *AA* schedule.

### Output, the Exchange Rate, and Asset Market Equilibrium

In Chapter 14, we studied the interest parity condition, which states that the foreign exchange market is in equilibrium only when the expected rates of return on domestic and foreign currency deposits are equal. In Chapter 15, we learned how the interest rates that enter the interest parity relationship are determined by the equality of real money supply and real money demand in national money markets. Now we combine these asset market equilibrium conditions to see how the exchange rate and output must be related when all asset markets simultaneously clear. Because the focus for now is on the domestic economy, the foreign interest rate is taken as given.

For a given expected future exchange rate,  $E^e$ , the interest parity condition describing foreign exchange market equilibrium is the analog of equation (14-2),

$$R = R^* + (E^e - E)/E,$$

where  $R$  is the interest rate on domestic currency deposits and  $R^*$  is the interest rate on foreign currency deposits. In Chapter 15, we saw that the domestic interest rate satisfying the interest parity condition must also equate the real domestic money supply,  $M^s/P$ , to aggregate real money demand [see equation (15-4)]:

$$M^s/P = L(R, Y).$$

You will recall that aggregate real money demand,  $L(R, Y)$ , rises when the interest rate falls because a fall in  $R$  makes interest-bearing nonmoney assets less attractive to hold. (Conversely, a rise in the interest rate lowers real money demand.) A rise in real output,  $Y$ , increases real money demand by raising the volume of monetary transactions people must carry out (and a fall in real output reduces real money demand by reducing people's transactions needs).

We now use the diagrammatic tools developed in Chapter 15 to study the changes in the exchange rate that must accompany output changes so that asset markets remain in equilibrium. Figure 17-6 shows the equilibrium domestic interest rate and exchange rate associated with the output level  $Y^1$  for a given nominal money supply,  $M^s$ ; a given

domestic price level,  $P$ ; a given foreign interest rate,  $R^*$ ; and a given value of the expected future exchange rate,  $E^e$ . In the lower part of the figure, we see that with real output at  $Y^1$  and the real money supply at  $M^s/P$ , the interest rate  $R^1$  clears the home money market (point 1), while the exchange rate  $E^1$  clears the foreign exchange market (point 1'). The exchange rate  $E^1$  clears the foreign exchange market because it equates the expected rate of return on foreign deposits, measured in terms of domestic currency, to  $R^1$ .

A rise in output from  $Y^1$  to  $Y^2$  raises aggregate real money demand from  $L(R, Y^1)$  to  $L(R, Y^2)$ , shifting out the entire money demand schedule in the lower part of Figure 17-6. This shift, in turn, raises the equilibrium domestic interest rate to  $R^2$  (point 2). With  $E^e$  and  $R^*$  fixed, the domestic currency must appreciate from  $E^1$  to  $E^2$  to bring the foreign exchange market back into equilibrium at point 2'. The domestic currency appreciates

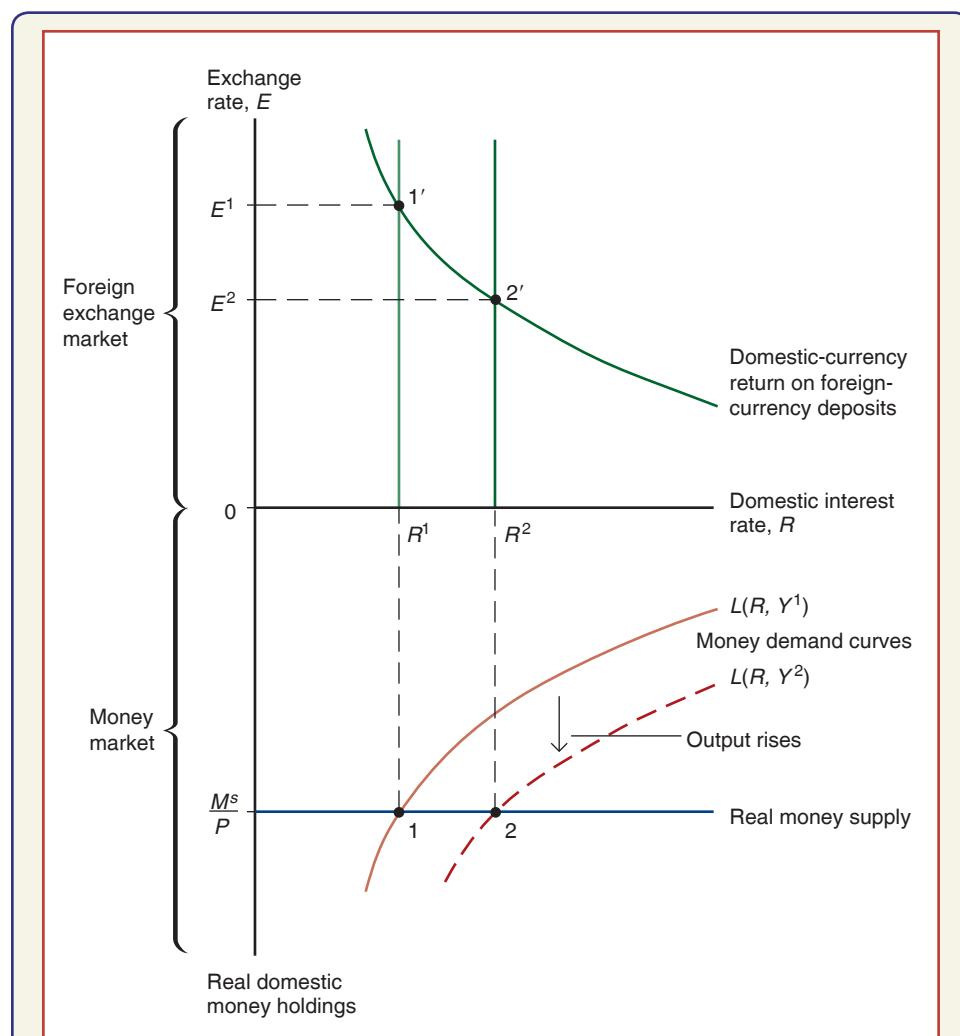


FIGURE 17-6

### Output and the Exchange Rate in Asset Market Equilibrium

For the asset (foreign exchange and money) markets to remain in equilibrium, a rise in output must be accompanied by an appreciation of the currency, all else equal.

by just enough that the increase in the rate at which it is expected to *depreciate* in the future offsets the increased interest rate advantage of home currency deposits. *For asset markets to remain in equilibrium, a rise in domestic output must be accompanied by an appreciation of the domestic currency, all else equal, and a fall in domestic output must be accompanied by a depreciation.*

### Deriving the AA Schedule

While the *DD* schedule plots exchange rates and output levels at which the output market is in equilibrium, the *AA* schedule relates exchange rates and output levels that keep the money and foreign exchange markets in equilibrium. Figure 17-7 shows the *AA* schedule. From Figure 17-6, we see that for any output level  $Y$ , there is a unique exchange rate  $E$  satisfying the interest parity condition (given the real money supply, the foreign interest rate, and the expected future exchange rate). Our previous reasoning tells us that other things equal, a rise in  $Y^1$  to  $Y^2$  will produce an appreciation of the domestic currency, that is, a fall in the exchange rate from  $E^1$  to  $E^2$ . The *AA* schedule therefore has a negative slope, as shown in Figure 17-7.

### Factors That Shift the AA Schedule

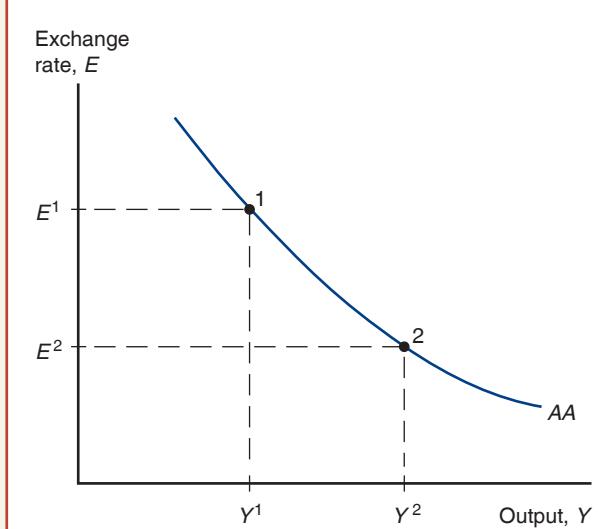
Five factors cause the *AA* schedule to shift: changes in the domestic money supply,  $M^s$ ; changes in the domestic price level,  $P$ ; changes in the expected future exchange rate,  $E^e$ ; changes in the foreign interest rate,  $R^*$ ; and shifts in the aggregate real money demand schedule.

1. *A change in  $M^s$ .* For a fixed level of output, an increase in  $M^s$  causes the domestic currency to depreciate in the foreign exchange market, all else equal (that is,  $E$  rises). Since for each level of output the exchange rate,  $E$ , is higher after the rise in  $M^s$ , the rise in  $M^s$  causes *AA* to shift *upward*. Similarly, a fall in  $M^s$  causes *AA* to shift *downward*.

**FIGURE 17-7**

#### The AA Schedule

The asset market equilibrium schedule (*AA*) slopes downward because a rise in output from  $Y^1$  to  $Y^2$ , all else equal, causes a rise in the home interest rate and a domestic currency appreciation from  $E^1$  to  $E^2$ .



2. *A change in  $P$ .* An increase in  $P$  reduces the real money supply and drives the interest rate upward. Other things (including  $Y$ ) equal, this rise in the interest rate causes  $E$  to fall. The effect of a rise in  $P$  is therefore a downward shift of  $AA$ . A fall in  $P$  results in an upward shift of  $AA$ .
3. *A change in  $E^e$ .* Suppose participants in the foreign exchange market suddenly revise their expectations about the exchange rate's future value so that  $E^e$  rises. Such a change shifts the curve in the top part of Figure 17-6 (which measures the expected domestic currency return on foreign currency deposits) to the right. The rise in  $E^e$  therefore causes the domestic currency to depreciate, other things equal. Because the exchange rate producing equilibrium in the foreign exchange market is higher after a rise in  $E^e$ , given output,  $AA$  shifts upward when a rise in the expected future exchange rate occurs. It shifts downward when the expected future exchange rate falls.
4. *A change in  $R^*$ .* A rise in  $R^*$  raises the expected return on foreign currency deposits and therefore shifts the downward-sloping schedule at the top of Figure 17-6 to the right. Given output, the domestic currency must depreciate to restore interest parity. A rise in  $R^*$  therefore has the same effect on  $AA$  as a rise in  $E^e$ : It causes an upward shift. A fall in  $R^*$  results in a downward shift of  $AA$ .
5. *A change in real money demand.* Suppose domestic residents decide they would prefer to hold lower real money balances at each output level and interest rate. (Such a change in asset-holding preferences is a *reduction in money demand*.) A reduction in money demand implies an inward shift of the aggregate real money demand function  $L(R, Y)$  for any fixed level of  $Y$ , and it thus results in a lower interest rate and a rise in  $E$ . A reduction in money demand therefore has the same effect as an increase in the money supply in that it shifts  $AA$  upward. The opposite disturbance of an increase in money demand would shift  $AA$  downward.

## Short-Run Equilibrium for an Open Economy: Putting the $DD$ and $AA$ Schedules Together

By assuming output prices are temporarily fixed, we have derived two separate schedules of exchange rate and output levels: the  $DD$  schedule, along which the output market is in equilibrium, and the  $AA$  schedule, along which the asset markets are in equilibrium. A short-run equilibrium for the economy as a whole must lie on *both* schedules because such a point must bring about equilibrium simultaneously in the output and asset markets. We can therefore find the economy's short-run equilibrium by finding the intersection of the  $DD$  and  $AA$  schedules. Once again, it is the assumption that domestic output prices are temporarily fixed that makes this intersection a *short-run equilibrium*. The analysis in this section continues to assume the foreign interest rate  $R^*$ , the foreign price level  $P^*$ , and the expected future exchange rate  $E^e$  also are fixed.

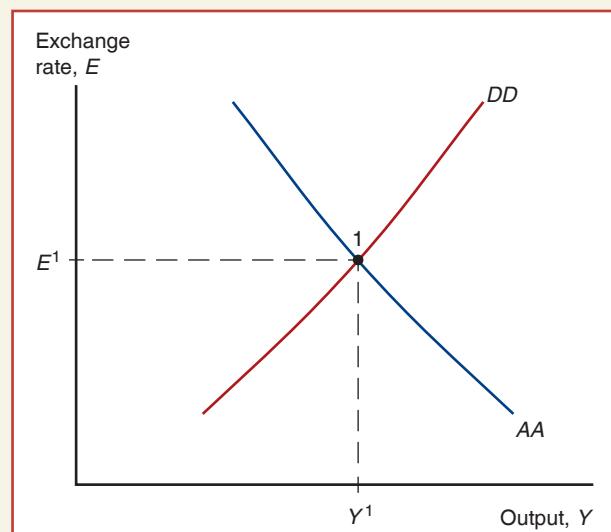
Figure 17-8 combines the  $DD$  and  $AA$  schedules to locate short-run equilibrium. The intersection of  $DD$  and  $AA$  at point 1 is the only combination of exchange rate and output consistent with both the equality of aggregate demand and aggregate supply *and* asset market equilibrium. The short-run equilibrium levels of the exchange rate and output are therefore  $E^1$  and  $Y^1$ .

To convince yourself that the economy will indeed settle at point 1, imagine the economy is instead at a position like point 2 in Figure 17-9. At point 2, which lies above  $AA$  and  $DD$ , both the output and asset markets are out of equilibrium. Because  $E$  is

**FIGURE 17-8**

### Short-Run Equilibrium: The Intersection of *DD* and *AA*

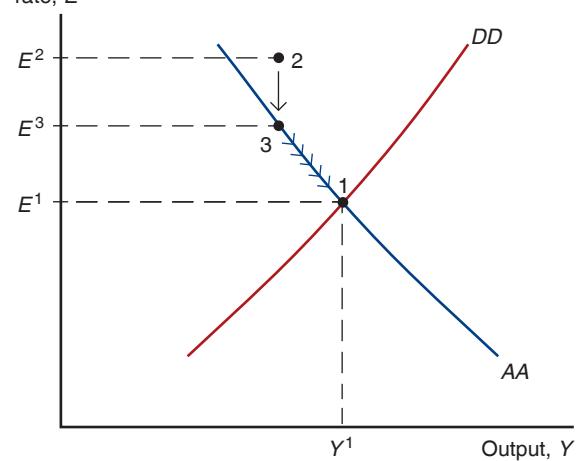
The short-run equilibrium of the economy occurs at point 1, where the output market (whose equilibrium points are summarized by the *DD* curve) and the asset market (whose equilibrium points are summarized by the *AA* curve) simultaneously clear.

**FIGURE 17-9**

### How the Economy Reaches Its Short-Run Equilibrium

Because asset markets adjust very quickly, the exchange rate jumps immediately from point 2 to point 3 on *AA*. The economy then moves to point 1 along *AA* as output rises to meet aggregate demand.

Exchange  
rate,  $E$



so high relative to *AA*, the rate at which  $E$  is expected to fall in the future is also high relative to the rate that would maintain interest parity. The high expected future appreciation rate of the domestic currency implies that the expected domestic currency return on foreign deposits is below that on domestic deposits, so there is an excess demand for the domestic currency in the foreign exchange market. The high level of  $E$  at point 2 also makes domestic goods cheap for foreign buyers (given the goods' domestic currency prices), causing an excess demand for output at that point.

The excess demand for domestic currency leads to an immediate fall in the exchange rate from  $E^2$  to  $E^3$ . This appreciation equalizes the expected returns on domestic and foreign deposits and places the economy at point 3 on the asset market equilibrium curve  $AA$ . But since point 3 is above the  $DD$  schedule, there is still excess demand for domestic output. As firms raise production to avoid depleting their inventories, the economy travels along  $AA$  to point 1, where aggregate demand and supply are equal. Because asset prices can jump immediately while changes in production plans take some time, the asset markets remain in continual equilibrium even while output is changing.

The exchange rate falls as the economy approaches point 1 along  $AA$  because rising national output causes money demand to rise, pushing the interest rate steadily upward. (The currency must appreciate steadily to lower the expected rate of future domestic currency appreciation and maintain interest parity.) Once the economy has reached point 1 on  $DD$ , aggregate demand equals output and producers no longer face involuntary inventory depletion. The economy therefore settles at point 1, the only point at which the output *and* asset markets clear.

## Temporary Changes in Monetary and Fiscal Policy

Now that we have seen how the economy's short-run equilibrium is determined, we can study how shifts in government macroeconomic policies affect output and the exchange rate. Our interest in the effects of macroeconomic policies stems from their usefulness in counteracting economic disturbances that cause fluctuations in output, employment, and inflation. In this section, we learn how government policies can be used to maintain full employment in open economies.

We concentrate on two types of government policy, **monetary policy**, which works through changes in the money supply, and **fiscal policy**, which works through changes in government spending or taxes.<sup>8</sup> To avoid the complications that would be introduced by ongoing inflation, however, we do not look at situations in which the money supply grows over time. Thus, the only type of monetary policies we will study explicitly are one-shot increases or decreases in money supplies.<sup>9</sup>

In this section, we examine *temporary* policy shifts, shifts that the public expects to be reversed in the near future. The expected future exchange rate,  $E^e$ , is now assumed to equal the long-run exchange rate discussed in Chapter 16, that is, the exchange rate that prevails once full employment is reached and domestic prices have adjusted fully to past disturbances in the output and asset markets. In line with this interpretation, a temporary policy change does *not* affect the long-run expected exchange rate,  $E^e$ .

We assume throughout that events in the economy we are studying do not influence the foreign interest rate,  $R^*$ , or price level,  $P^*$ , and that the domestic price level,  $P$ , is fixed in the short run.

---

<sup>8</sup>An example of the latter (as noted earlier) would be the tax cut enacted during the 2001–2005 administration of President George W. Bush. Other policies, such as commercial policies (tariffs, quotas, and so on), have macroeconomic side effects. Such policies, however, are not used routinely for purposes of macroeconomic stabilization, so we do not discuss them in this chapter. (Problem 2 at the end of this chapter does ask you to think about the macroeconomic effects of an import tariff.)

<sup>9</sup>You can extend the results below to a setting with ongoing inflation by thinking of the exchange rate and price level changes we describe as departures from time paths along which  $E$  and  $P$  trend upward at constant rates.

## Monetary Policy

The short-run effect of a temporary increase in the domestic money supply is shown in Figure 17-10. An increased money supply shifts  $AA^1$  upward to  $AA^2$  but does not affect the position of  $DD$ . The upward shift of the asset market equilibrium schedule moves the economy from point 1, with exchange rate  $E^1$  and output  $Y^1$ , to point 2, with exchange rate  $E^2$  and output  $Y^2$ . An increase in the money supply causes a depreciation of the domestic currency, an expansion of output, and therefore an increase in employment.

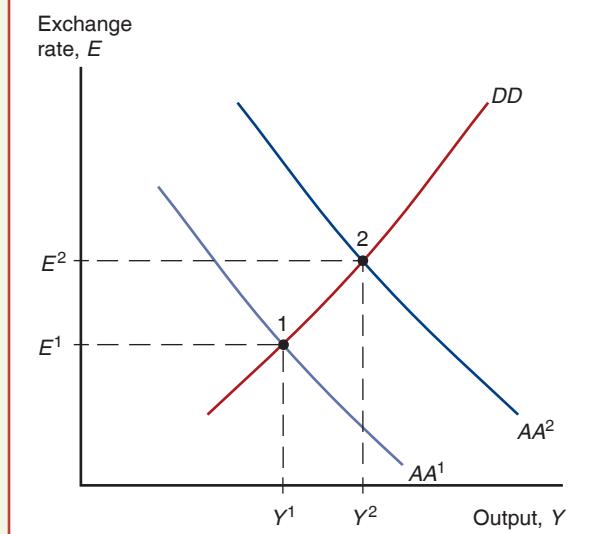
We can understand the economic forces causing these results by recalling our earlier discussions of asset market equilibrium and output determination. At the initial output level  $Y^1$  and given the fixed price level, an increase in money supply must push down the home interest rate,  $R$ . We have been assuming that the monetary change is temporary and does not affect the expected future exchange rate,  $E^e$ , so to preserve interest parity in the face of a decline in  $R$  (given that the foreign interest rate,  $R^*$ , does not change), the exchange rate must depreciate immediately to create the expectation that the home currency will appreciate in the future at a faster rate than was expected before  $R$  fell. The immediate depreciation of the domestic currency, however, makes home products cheaper relative to foreign products. There is therefore an increase in aggregate demand, which must be matched by an increase in output.

## Fiscal Policy

As we saw earlier, expansionary fiscal policy can take the form of an increase in government spending, a cut in taxes, or some combination of the two that raises aggregate demand. A temporary fiscal expansion (which does not affect the expected future exchange rate) therefore shifts the  $DD$  schedule to the right but does not move  $AA$ .

**FIGURE 17-10**  
**Effects of a Temporary Increase in the Money Supply**

By shifting  $AA^1$  upward, a temporary increase in the money supply causes a currency depreciation and a rise in output.



**FIGURE 17-11**  
**Effects of a Temporary Fiscal Expansion**

By shifting  $DD^1$  to the right, a temporary fiscal expansion causes a currency appreciation and a rise in output.

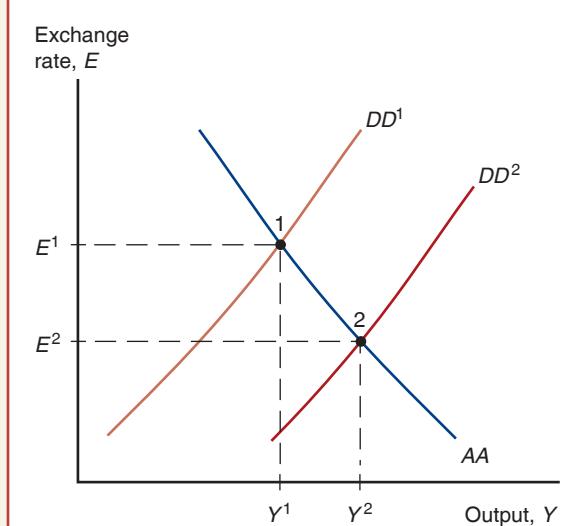


Figure 17-11 shows how expansionary fiscal policy affects the economy in the short run. Initially the economy is at point 1, with an exchange rate  $E^1$  and output  $Y^1$ . Suppose the government decides to spend \$30 billion to develop a new space shuttle. This one-time increase in government purchases moves the economy to point 2, causing the currency to appreciate to  $E^2$  and output to expand to  $Y^2$ . The economy would respond in a similar way to a temporary cut in taxes.

What economic forces produce the movement from point 1 to point 2? The increase in output caused by the increase in government spending raises the transactions demand for real money holdings. Given the fixed price level, this increase in money demand pushes the interest rate,  $R$ , upward. Because the expected future exchange rate,  $E^e$ , and the foreign interest rate,  $R^*$ , have not changed, the domestic currency must appreciate to create the expectation of a subsequent depreciation just large enough to offset the higher international interest rate difference in favor of domestic currency deposits.

### Policies to Maintain Full Employment

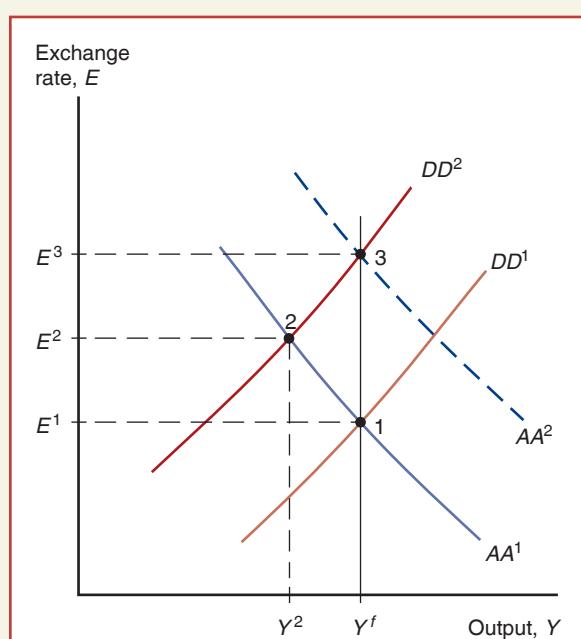
The analysis of this section can be applied to the problem of maintaining full employment in open economies. Because temporary monetary expansion and temporary fiscal expansion both raise output and employment, they can be used to counteract the effects of temporary disturbances that lead to recession. Similarly, disturbances that lead to overemployment can be offset through contractionary macroeconomic policies.

Figure 17-12 illustrates this use of macroeconomic policy. Suppose the economy's initial equilibrium is at point 1, where output equals its full-employment level, denoted  $Y^f$ . Suddenly there is a temporary shift in consumer tastes away from domestic products. As we saw earlier in this chapter, such a shift is a decrease in aggregate demand for domestic goods, and it causes the curve  $DD^1$  to shift leftward, to  $DD^2$ . At point 2, the

**FIGURE 17-12**

### Maintaining Full Employment after a Temporary Fall in World Demand for Domestic Products

A temporary fall in world demand shifts  $DD^1$  to  $DD^2$ , reducing output from  $Y^f$  to  $Y^2$  and causing the currency to depreciate from  $E^1$  to  $E^2$  (point 2). Temporary fiscal expansion can restore full employment (point 1) by shifting the  $DD$  schedule back to its original position. Temporary monetary expansion can restore full employment (point 3) by shifting  $AA^1$  to  $AA^2$ . The two policies differ in their exchange rate effects: The fiscal policy restores the currency to its previous value ( $E^1$ ), whereas the monetary policy causes the currency to depreciate further, to  $E^3$ .



new short-run equilibrium, the currency has depreciated to  $E^2$  and output, at  $Y^2$ , is below its full-employment level: The economy is in a recession. Because the shift in preferences is assumed to be temporary, it does not affect  $E^e$ , so there is no change in the position of  $AA^1$ .

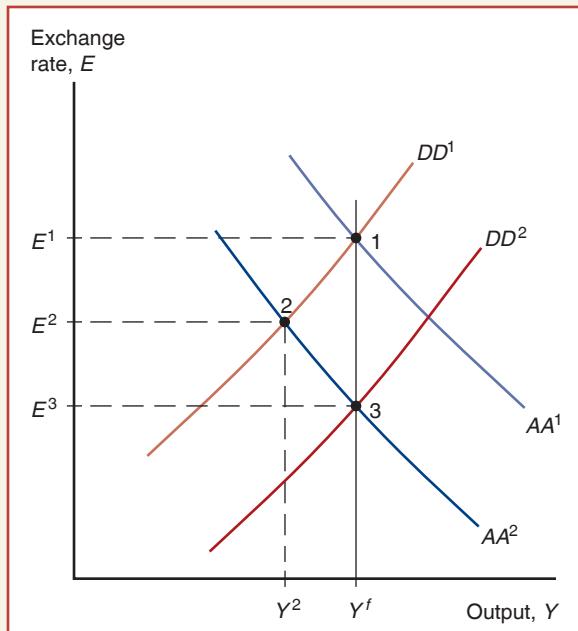
To restore full employment, the government may use monetary or fiscal policy, or both. A temporary fiscal expansion shifts  $DD^2$  back to its original position, restoring full employment and returning the exchange rate to  $E^1$ . A temporary money supply increase shifts the asset market equilibrium curve to  $AA^2$  and places the economy at point 3, a move that restores full employment but causes the home currency to depreciate even further.

Another possible cause of recession is a temporary increase in the demand for money, illustrated in Figure 17-13. An increase in money demand pushes up the domestic interest rate and appreciates the currency, thereby making domestic goods more expensive and causing output to contract. Figure 17-13 shows this asset market disturbance as the downward shift of  $AA^1$  to  $AA^2$ , which moves the economy from its initial, full-employment equilibrium at point 1 to point 2.

Expansionary macroeconomic policies can again restore full employment. A temporary money supply increase shifts the  $AA$  curve back to  $AA^1$  and returns the economy to its initial position at point 1. This temporary increase in money supply completely offsets the increase in money demand by giving domestic residents the additional money they desire to hold. Temporary fiscal expansion shifts  $DD^1$  to  $DD^2$  and restores full employment at point 3. But the move to point 3 involves an even greater appreciation of the currency.

**FIGURE 17-13**  
**Policies to Maintain Full Employment after a Money Demand Increase**

After a temporary money demand increase (shown by the shift from  $AA^1$  to  $AA^2$ ), either an increase in the money supply or temporary fiscal expansion can be used to maintain full employment. The two policies have different exchange rate effects: The monetary policy restores the exchange rate back to  $E^1$ , whereas the fiscal policy leads to greater appreciation ( $E^3$ ).



## Inflation Bias and Other Problems of Policy Formulation

The apparent ease with which a government can maintain full employment in our model is misleading, and you should not come away from our discussion of policy with the idea that it is easy to keep the macroeconomy on a steady course. Here are just a few of the many problems that can arise:

1. Sticky nominal prices not only give a government the power to raise output when it is abnormally low but also may tempt it to create a politically useful economic boom, say, just before a close election. This temptation causes problems when workers and firms anticipate it in advance, for they will raise wage demands and prices in the expectation of expansionary policies. The government will then find itself in the position of having to use expansionary policy tools merely to prevent the recession that higher domestic prices otherwise would cause! As a result, macroeconomic policy can display an **inflation bias**, leading to high inflation but no average gain in output. Such an increase in inflation occurred in the United States, as well as in many other countries, during the 1970s. The inflation bias problem has led to a search for institutions—for example, central banks that operate independently of the government in power—that might convince market actors that government policies will not be used in a shortsighted way, at the expense of long-term price stability. As we noted in Chapter 15, many central banks throughout the world now seek to reach announced target levels of (low) inflation. Chapters 21 and 22 will discuss some of these efforts in greater detail.<sup>10</sup>

<sup>10</sup>For a clear and detailed discussion of the inflation bias problem, see Chapter 14 in Andrew B. Abel, Ben S. Bernanke, and Dean Croushore, *Macroeconomics*, 9th ed. (New York: Pearson, 2017). The inflation bias problem can arise even when the government's policies are not politically motivated, as Abel, Bernanke, and Croushore explain. The basic idea is that when factors like minimum wage laws keep output inefficiently low by lowering employment, monetary expansion that raises employment may move the economy toward a more efficient use of its total resources. The government might wish to reach a better resource allocation purely on the grounds that such a change potentially benefits everyone in the economy. But the private sector's expectation of such policies still will generate inflation.

2. In practice, it is sometimes hard to be sure whether a disturbance to the economy originates in the output or the asset markets. Yet a government concerned about the exchange rate effect of its policy response needs to know the source of the disturbance before it can choose between monetary and fiscal policy.
3. Real-world policy choices are frequently determined by bureaucratic necessities rather than by detailed consideration of whether shocks to the economy are real (that is, they originate in the output market) or monetary. Shifts in fiscal policy often can be made only after lengthy legislative deliberation, while monetary policy is usually exercised expeditiously by the central bank. To avoid procedural delays, governments are likely to respond to disturbances by changing monetary policy even when a shift in fiscal policy would be more appropriate.
4. Another problem with fiscal policy is its impact on the government budget. A tax cut or spending increase may lead to a larger government budget deficit, which must sooner or later be closed by a fiscal reversal, as happened following the multibillion-dollar fiscal stimulus package sponsored by the Obama administration in the United States in 2009. Unfortunately, there is no guarantee the government will have the political will to synchronize these actions with the state of the business cycle. The state of the electoral cycle may be more important, as we have seen.
5. Policies that appear to act swiftly in our simple model operate in reality with lags of varying lengths. At the same time, the difficulty of evaluating the size and persistence of a given shock makes it hard to know precisely how much monetary or fiscal medicine to administer. These uncertainties force policy makers to base their actions on forecasts and hunches that may turn out to be quite wide of the mark.

## Permanent Shifts in Monetary and Fiscal Policy

A permanent policy shift affects not only the current value of the government's policy instrument (the money supply, government spending, or taxes) but also the *long-run* exchange rate. This in turn affects expectations about future exchange rates. Because these changes in expectations have a major influence on the exchange rate prevailing in the short run, the effects of permanent policy shifts differ from those of temporary shifts. In this section, we look at the effects of permanent changes in monetary and fiscal policy, in both the short and long runs.<sup>11</sup>

To make it easier to grasp the long-run effects of policies, we assume the economy is initially at a long-run equilibrium position and that the policy changes we examine are the only economic changes that occur (our usual "other things equal" clause). These assumptions mean that the economy starts out at full employment with the exchange rate at its long-run level and with no change in the exchange rate expected. In particular, we know that the domestic interest rate must initially equal the foreign rate,  $R^*$ .

### A Permanent Increase in the Money Supply

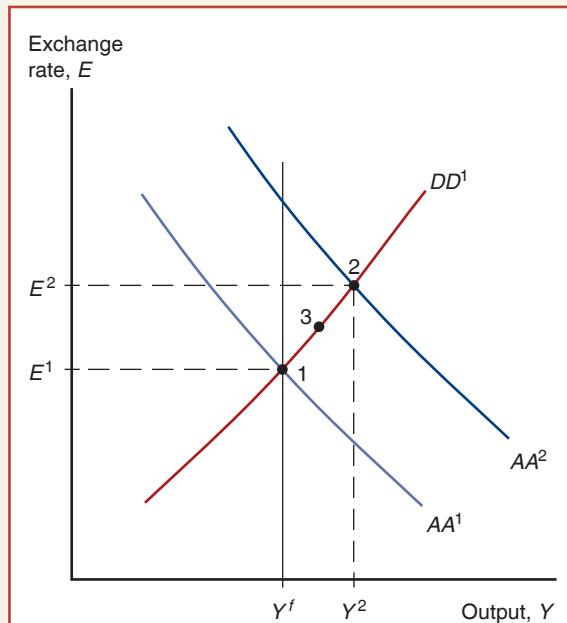
Figure 17-14 shows the short-run effects of a permanent increase in the money supply on an economy initially at its full-employment output level  $Y^f$  (point 1). As we saw earlier, even a temporary increase in  $M^s$  causes the asset market equilibrium schedule to shift upward from  $AA^1$  to  $AA^2$ . Because the increase in  $M^s$  is now permanent, however, it also affects the exchange rate expected for the future,  $E^e$ . Chapter 15 showed how a permanent increase in the money supply affects the long-run exchange

---

<sup>11</sup>You may be wondering whether a permanent change in fiscal policy is always possible. For example, if a government starts with a balanced budget, doesn't a fiscal expansion lead to a deficit and thus require an eventual fiscal contraction? Problem 3 at the end of this chapter suggests an answer.

**FIGURE 17-14**  
**Short-Run Effects  
of a Permanent Increase  
in the Money Supply**

A permanent increase in the money supply, which shifts  $AA^1$  to  $AA^2$  and moves the economy from point 1 to point 2, has stronger effects on the exchange rate and output than an equal temporary increase, which moves the economy only to point 3.



rate: A permanent increase in  $M^s$  must ultimately lead to a proportional rise in  $E$ . Therefore, the permanent rise in  $M^s$  causes  $E^e$ , the expected future exchange rate, to rise proportionally.

Because a rise in  $E^e$  accompanies a *permanent* increase in the money supply, the upward shift of  $AA^1$  to  $AA^2$  is *greater* than that caused by an equal, but transitory, increase. At point 2, the economy's new short-run equilibrium,  $Y$  and  $E$  are both higher than they would be were the change in the money supply temporary. (Point 3 shows the equilibrium that might result from a temporary increase in  $M^s$ .)

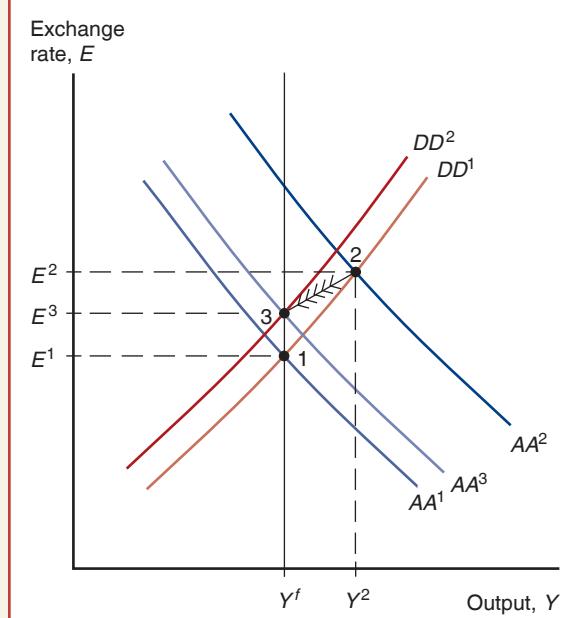
### Adjustment to a Permanent Increase in the Money Supply

The central bank does not reverse the increase in the money supply shown in Figure 17-14, so it is natural to ask how the economy is affected *over time*. At the short-run equilibrium, shown as point 2 in Figure 17-14, output is above its full-employment level and labor and machines are working overtime. Upward pressure on the price level develops as workers demand higher wages and producers raise prices to cover their increasing production costs. Chapter 15 showed that while an increase in the money supply must eventually cause all money prices to rise in proportion, it has no lasting effect on output, relative prices, or interest rates. Over time, the inflationary pressure that follows a permanent money supply expansion pushes the price level to its new long-run value and returns the economy to full employment.

Figure 17-15 will help you visualize the adjustment back to full employment. Whenever output is greater than its full-employment level,  $Y^f$ , and productive factors are working overtime, the price level  $P$  is rising to keep up with rising production costs. Although the  $DD$  and  $AA$  schedules are drawn for a constant price level  $P$ , we have seen how increases in  $P$  cause the schedules to shift. A rise in  $P$  makes domestic goods more expensive relative to foreign goods, discouraging exports and encouraging imports.

**FIGURE 17-15**  
**Long-Run Adjustment to a Permanent Increase in the Money Supply**

After a permanent money supply increase, a steadily increasing price level shifts the  $DD$  and  $AA$  schedules to the left until a new long-run equilibrium (point 3) is reached.



A rising domestic price level therefore causes  $DD^1$  to shift to the left over time. Because a rising price level steadily reduces the real money supply over time,  $AA^2$  also travels to the left as prices rise.

The  $DD$  and  $AA$  schedules stop shifting only when they intersect at the full-employment output level  $Y^f$ ; as long as output differs from  $Y^f$ , the price level will change and the two schedules will continue to shift. The schedules' final positions are shown in Figure 17-15 as  $DD^2$  and  $AA^3$ . At point 3, their intersection, the exchange rate,  $E$ , and the price level,  $P$ , have risen in proportion to the increase in the money supply, as required by the long-run neutrality of money. ( $AA^2$  does not shift all the way back to its original position because  $E^e$  is permanently higher after a permanent increase in the money supply: It too has risen by the same percentage as  $M^s$ .)

Notice that along the adjustment path between the initial short-run equilibrium (point 2) and the long-run equilibrium (point 3), the domestic currency actually appreciates (from  $E^2$  to  $E^3$ ) following its initial sharp depreciation (from  $E^1$  to  $E^2$ ). This exchange rate behavior is an example of the *overshooting* phenomenon discussed in Chapter 15, in which the exchange rate's initial response to some change is greater than its long-run response.<sup>12</sup>

We can draw on our conclusions to describe the proper policy response to a permanent monetary disturbance. A permanent increase in money demand, for example, can be offset with a permanent increase of equal magnitude in the money supply. Such a policy maintains full employment, but because the price level would fall in the absence of the policy, the policy will not have inflationary consequences. Instead, monetary expansion can move the economy straight to its long-run, full-employment position.

<sup>12</sup>While the exchange rate initially overshoots in the case shown in Figure 17-15, overshooting does not have to occur in all circumstances. Can you explain why, and does the “undershooting” case seem reasonable?

Keep in mind, however, that it is hard in practice to diagnose the origin or persistence of a particular shock to the economy.

### A Permanent Fiscal Expansion

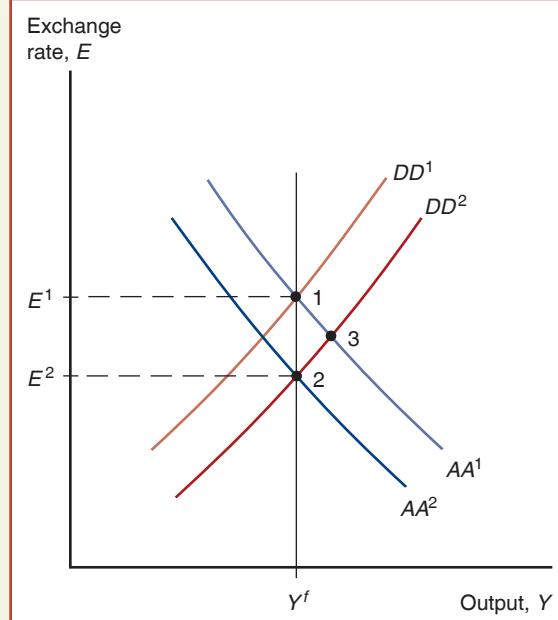
A permanent fiscal expansion not only has an immediate impact in the output market but also affects the asset markets through its impact on long-run exchange rate expectations. Figure 17-16 shows the short-run effects of a government decision to spend an extra \$10 billion a year on its space travel program *forever*. As before, the direct effect of this rise in  $G$  on aggregate demand causes  $DD^1$  to shift right to  $DD^2$ . But because the increase in government demand for domestic goods and services is permanent in this case, it causes a long-run appreciation of the currency, as we saw in Chapter 16. The resulting fall in  $E^e$  pushes the asset market equilibrium schedule  $AA^1$  downward to  $AA^2$ . Point 2, where the new schedules  $DD^2$  and  $AA^2$  intersect, is the economy's short-run equilibrium, and at that point the currency has appreciated to  $E^2$  from its initial level while output is unchanged at  $Y^f$ .

The important result illustrated in Figure 17-16 is that when a fiscal expansion is permanent, the additional currency appreciation caused by the shift in exchange rate expectations reduces the policy's expansionary effect on output. Without this additional expectations effect due to the permanence of the fiscal change, equilibrium would initially be at point 3, with higher output and a smaller appreciation. The greater the downward shift of the asset market equilibrium schedule, the greater the appreciation of the currency. This appreciation "crowds out" aggregate demand for domestic products by making them more expensive relative to foreign products.

Figure 17-16 is drawn to show a case in which fiscal expansion, contrary to what you might have guessed, has *no* net effect on output. This case is not, however, a special one; in fact, it is inevitable under the assumptions we have made. The argument that

**FIGURE 17-16**  
**Effects of a Permanent Fiscal Expansion**

Because a permanent fiscal expansion changes exchange rate expectations, it shifts  $AA^1$  leftward as it shifts  $DD^1$  to the right. The effect on output (point 2) is nil if the economy starts in long-run equilibrium. A comparable *temporary* fiscal expansion, in contrast, would leave the economy at point 3.



establishes this point requires five steps; by taking the time to understand them, you will solidify your understanding of the ground we have covered so far:

1. As a first step, convince yourself (perhaps by reviewing Chapter 15) that because the fiscal expansion does not affect the money supply,  $M^s$ ; the long-run values of the domestic interest rate (which equals the foreign interest rate); or output  $Y^f$ , it can have no impact on the long-run price level.
2. Next, recall our assumption that the economy starts out in long-run equilibrium with the domestic interest rate,  $R$ , just equal to the foreign rate,  $R^*$ , and output equal to  $Y^f$ . Observe also that the fiscal expansion leaves the real money supply,  $M^s/P$ , unchanged in the short run (that is, neither the numerator nor the denominator changes).
3. Now imagine, contrary to what Figure 17-16 shows, that output did rise above  $Y^f$ . Because  $M^s/P$  doesn't change in the short run (Step 2), the domestic interest rate,  $R$ , would have to rise above its initial level of  $R^*$  to keep the money market in equilibrium. Since the foreign interest rate remains at  $R^*$ , however, a rise in  $Y$  to any level above  $Y^f$  implies an expected depreciation of the domestic currency (by interest parity).
4. Notice next that something is wrong with this conclusion. We already know (from Step 1) that the long-run price level is not affected by the fiscal expansion, so people can expect a nominal domestic currency depreciation just after the policy change only if the currency depreciates in real terms as the economy returns to long-run equilibrium. Such a real depreciation, by making domestic products relatively cheap, would only worsen the initial situation of overemployment that we have imagined to exist and thus would prevent output from ever actually returning to  $Y^f$ .
5. Finally, conclude that the apparent contradiction is resolved only if output does not rise at all after the fiscal policy move. The only logical possibility is that the currency appreciates right away to its new long-run value. This appreciation crowds out just enough net export demand to leave output at the full-employment level despite the higher level of  $G$ .

Notice that this exchange rate change, which allows the output market to clear at full employment, leaves the asset markets in equilibrium as well. Since the exchange rate has jumped to its new long-run value,  $R$  remains at  $R^*$ . With output also at  $Y^f$ , however, the long-run money market equilibrium condition  $M^s/P = L(R^*, Y^f)$  still holds, as it did before the fiscal action. So our story hangs together: The currency appreciation that a permanent fiscal expansion provokes immediately brings the asset markets as well as the output market to positions of long-run equilibrium.

We conclude that if the economy starts at long-run equilibrium, a permanent change in fiscal policy has no net effect on output. Instead, it causes an immediate and permanent exchange rate jump that offsets exactly the fiscal policy's direct effect on aggregate demand. A fall in net export demand counteracts the rise in government demand.

## Macroeconomic Policies and the Current Account

Policy makers are often concerned about the level of the current account. As we will discuss more fully in Chapter 19, an excessive imbalance in the current account—either a surplus or a deficit—may have undesirable long-run effects on national welfare. Large external imbalances may also generate political pressures for governments to impose restrictions on trade. It is therefore important to know how monetary and fiscal policies aimed at domestic objectives affect the current account.

Figure 17-17 shows how the *DD-AA* model can be extended to illustrate the effects of macroeconomic policies on the current account. In addition to the *DD* and *AA* curves, the figure contains a new curve, labeled *XX*, which shows combinations of the exchange rate and output at which the current account balance would be equal to some desired level, say  $CA(EP^*/P, Y - T) = X$ . The curve slopes upward because, other things equal, a rise in output encourages spending on imports and thus worsens the current account if it is not accompanied by a currency depreciation. Since the actual level of *CA* can differ from *X*, the economy's short-run equilibrium does *not* have to be on the *XX* curve.

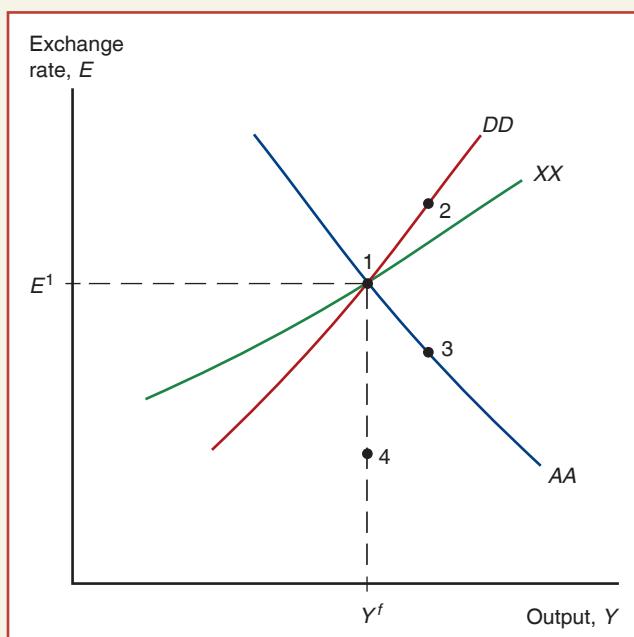
The central feature of Figure 17-17 is that *XX* is *flatter* than *DD*. The reason is seen by asking how the current account changes as we move up along the *DD* curve from point 1, where all three curves intersect (so that, initially,  $CA = X$ ). As we increase *Y* in moving up along *DD*, the *domestic demand* for domestic output rises by less than the rise in output itself (since some income is saved and some spending falls on imports). Along *DD*, however, *total aggregate demand has to equal supply*. To prevent an excess supply of home output, *E* therefore must rise sharply enough along *DD* to make export demand rise faster than import demand. In other words, net foreign demand—the current account—must rise sufficiently along *DD* as output rises to take up the slack left by domestic saving. Thus, to the right of point 1, *DD* is above the *XX* curve, where  $CA > X$ ; similar reasoning shows that to the left of point 1, *DD* lies below the *XX* curve (where  $CA < X$ ).

We can now examine the current account effects of macroeconomic policies. As shown earlier, an increase in the money supply, for example, shifts the economy to a position like point 2, expanding output and depreciating the currency. Since point 2 lies above *XX*, the current account has improved as a result of the policy action. *Monetary expansion causes the current account balance to increase in the short run.*

**FIGURE 17-17**

### How Macroeconomic Policies Affect the Current Account

Along the curve *XX*, the current account is constant at the level  $CA = X$ . Monetary expansion moves the economy to point 2 and thus raises the current account balance. Temporary fiscal expansion moves the economy to point 3, while permanent fiscal expansion moves it to point 4; in either case, the current account balance falls.



Consider next a temporary fiscal expansion. This action shifts  $DD$  to the right and moves the economy to point 3 in the figure. Because the currency appreciates and income rises, there is a deterioration in the current account. A permanent fiscal expansion has the additional effect of shifting  $AA$  leftward, producing an equilibrium at point 4. Like point 3, point 4 is below  $XX$ , so once again the current account worsens, and by more than in the temporary case. *Expansionary fiscal policy reduces the current account balance.*

## Gradual Trade Flow Adjustment and Current Account Dynamics

An important assumption underlying the  $DD-AA$  model is that, other things equal, a real depreciation of the home currency immediately improves the current account while a real appreciation causes the current account immediately to worsen. In reality, however, the behavior underlying trade flows may be far more complex than we have so far suggested, involving dynamic elements—on the supply as well as the demand side—that lead the current account to adjust only gradually to exchange rate changes. In this section, we discuss some dynamic factors that seem important in explaining actual patterns of current account adjustment and indicate how their presence might modify the predictions of our model.

### The J-Curve

Sometimes a country's current account *worsens* immediately after a real currency depreciation and begins to improve only some months later, contrary to the assumption we made in deriving the  $DD$  curve. If the current account initially worsens after a depreciation, its time path, shown in Figure 17-18, has an initial segment reminiscent of a J and we therefore call it the **J-curve**.

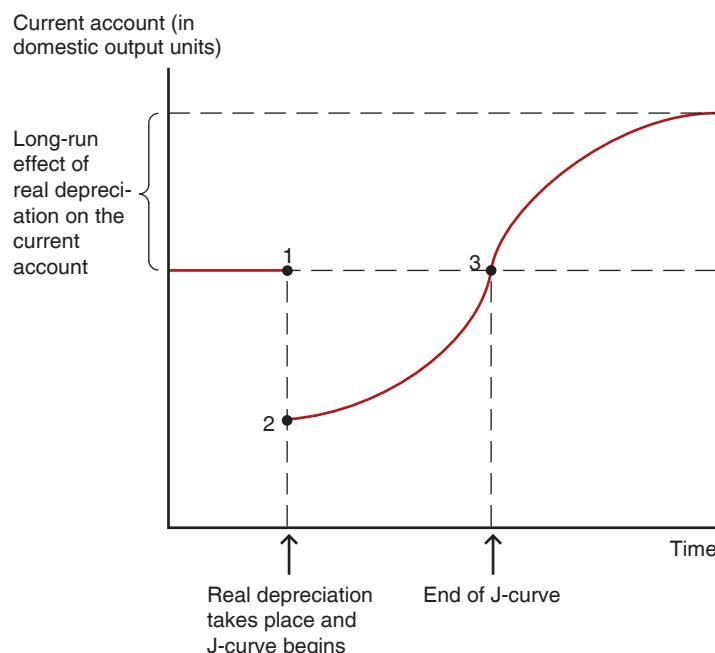
The current account, measured in domestic output, can deteriorate sharply right after a real currency depreciation (the move from point 1 to point 2 in the figure) because most import and export orders are placed several months in advance. In the first few months after the depreciation, export and import volumes therefore may reflect buying decisions that were based on the old real exchange rate: The primary effect of the depreciation is to raise the value of the pre-contracted level of imports in terms of domestic products. Because exports measured in domestic output do not change, while imports measured in domestic output rise, there is an initial fall in the current account, as shown.

Even after the old export and import contracts have been fulfilled, it still takes time for new shipments to adjust fully to the relative price change. On the production side, producers of exports may have to install additional plant and equipment and hire new workers. To the extent that imports consist of intermediate materials used in domestic manufacturing, import adjustment will also occur gradually as importers switch to new production techniques that economize on intermediate inputs. There are lags on the consumption side as well. To expand significantly foreign consumption of domestic exports, for example, it may be necessary to build new retailing outlets abroad, a time-consuming process.

The result of these lags in adjustment is the gradually improving current account shown in Figure 17-18 as the move from point 2 to point 3 and beyond. Eventually, the increase in the current account tapers off as the adjustment to the real depreciation is completed.

**FIGURE 17-18**  
**The J-Curve**

The J-curve describes the time lag with which a real currency depreciation improves the current account.



Empirical evidence indicates for most industrial countries a J-curve lasting more than six months but less than a year. Thus, point 3 in the figure is typically reached within a year of the real depreciation, and the current account continues to improve afterward.<sup>13</sup>

The existence of a significant J-curve effect forces us to modify some of our earlier conclusions, at least for the short run of a year or less. Monetary expansion, for example, can depress output initially by depreciating the home currency. In this case, it may take some time before an increase in the money supply results in an improved current account and therefore in higher aggregate demand.

If expansionary monetary policy actually depresses output in the short run, the domestic interest rate will need to fall further than it normally would to clear the home money market. Correspondingly, the exchange rate will overshoot more sharply to create the larger expected domestic currency appreciation required for foreign exchange market equilibrium. By introducing an additional source of overshooting, J-curve effects amplify the volatility of exchange rates.

### Exchange Rate Pass-Through and Inflation

Our discussion of how the current account is determined in the *DD-AA* model has assumed that nominal exchange rate changes cause proportional changes in real exchange rates in the short run. Because the *DD-AA* model assumes that the nominal output prices  $P$  and  $P^*$  cannot suddenly jump, movements in the real exchange rate,  $q = EP^*/P$ , correspond perfectly in the short run to movements in the nominal rate,  $E$ . In reality, however,

<sup>13</sup>See the discussion of Table 17A2-1 in Appendix 2 of this chapter.

even the short-run correspondence between nominal and real exchange rate movements, while quite close, is less than perfect. To understand fully how *nominal* exchange rate movements affect the current account in the short run, we need to examine more closely the linkage between the nominal exchange rate and the prices of exports and imports.

The domestic currency price of foreign output is the product of the exchange rate and the foreign currency price, or  $EP^*$ . We have assumed until now that when  $E$  rises, for example,  $P^*$  remains fixed so that the domestic currency price of goods imported from abroad rises in proportion. The percentage by which import prices rise when the home currency depreciates by 1 percent is known as the degree of **pass-through** from the exchange rate to import prices. In the version of the *DD-AA* model we studied previously, the degree of pass-through is 1; any exchange rate change is passed through completely to import prices. (Of course, the situation is symmetric for a country's trade partners, who face the import price  $P/E$  in terms of foreign currency. With  $P$  also fixed in the short run in our model, this implies a pass-through of 1 to the foreign prices of exports.)

Contrary to the preceding assumption, however, exchange rate pass-through can be incomplete. One possible reason for incomplete pass-through is international market segmentation, which allows imperfectly competitive firms to *price to market* by charging different prices for the same product in different countries. (Recall Chapter 16's section on "Explaining the Problems with PPP.") For example, a large foreign firm supplying automobiles to the United States may be so worried about losing market share that it does not immediately raise its U.S. prices by 10 percent when the dollar depreciates by 10 percent despite the fact that its revenue from American sales, measured in its own currency, will decline. Similarly, the firm may hesitate to lower its U.S. prices by 10 percent after a dollar appreciation of that size because it can thereby earn higher profits without investing resources immediately in expanding its shipments to the United States. In either case, the firm may wait to find out if the currency movement reflects a definite trend before making price and production commitments that are costly to undo. In practice, many U.S. import prices tend to rise by only around half of a typical dollar depreciation over the following year.

We thus see that while a permanent nominal exchange rate change may be fully reflected in import prices in the long run, the degree of pass-through may be far less than 1 in the short run. Incomplete pass-through will have complicated effects, however, on the timing of current account adjustment. On the one hand, the short-run J-curve effect of a nominal currency change will be damped by a low responsiveness of import prices to the exchange rate. On the other hand, incomplete pass-through implies that currency movements have less-than-proportional effects on the relative prices determining trade volumes. The failure of relative prices to adjust quickly will in turn be accompanied by a slow adjustment of trade volumes. Notice also how the link between nominal and real exchange rates may be further weakened by *domestic* price responses. In highly inflationary economies, for example, it is difficult to alter the real exchange rate,  $EP^*/P$ , simply by changing the nominal rate  $E$  because the resulting increase in aggregate demand quickly sparks domestic inflation, which in turn raises  $P$ . To the extent that a country's export prices rise when its currency depreciates, any favorable effect on its competitive position in world markets will be dissipated. Such price increases, however, like partial pass-through, may weaken the J-curve.

## Global Value Chains and Exchange Rate Effects on Export and Import Prices

Much of international trade takes the form of intermediate products, which may be imported for incorporation into other goods that the importing country subsequently

exports. We saw in Chapter 8 how FDI, outsourcing, and offshoring have led this process to accelerate in recent years. The result has been a web of complex **global value chains**, in which different countries produce portions of the value added in a final product. Under these arrangements, one country's value added may cross borders many times at successive production stages before reaching its ultimate buyer. Figure 17-19 illustrates one key aspect of global value chains: for many countries, previously imported value accounts for a significant portion of the gross value of exports (so-called “backward linkages”). Another key aspect of global value chains is that a country's exports may go on to be incorporated as inputs into several rounds of exports from other countries (so-called “forward linkages”).

Backward and forward linkages can have important implications for the effects of exchange rate changes on export and import prices. To simplify the discussion, let's assume that the pass-through of an exchange rate change to import prices is complete, that is, when a country's currency depreciates, its import prices rise immediately in proportion to the depreciation. If the country has strong backward linkages, however, that assumption means that the price of the intermediate imports used to produce its exports will rise. As a result, the depreciation will have only a partial effect in lowering the export prices it charges to its trading partners. For example, suppose Italy exports bicycles priced at €500, but half of this cost represents inputs imported from other countries. Then if the euro depreciates by 10 percent against all other currencies, the euro price of the bicycle rises to €525, a 5 percent increase.

Without this rise in the bicycle's euro price, the 10 percent euro depreciation would lower its *dollar* price by 10 percent. With this rise in the euro price, though, the fall in the dollar price is only 10 percent – 5 percent = 5 percent, that is, the fall in the dollar price of the euro less the rise in the euro price of the bicycle. The presence of backward linkages thus mutes the effect of currency depreciation on export prices—and thereby on net exports—of a given exchange rate change.

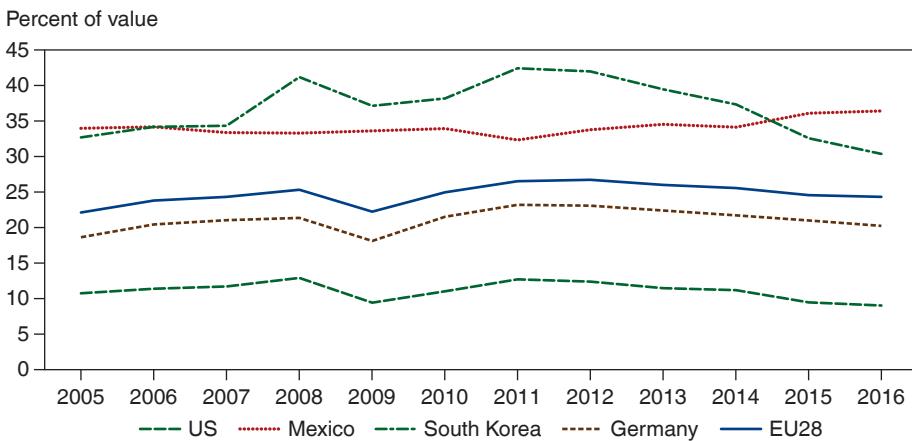


FIGURE 17-19

### Import Content of Exports for Selected Countries and the European Union, 2005–2016

Imported value added can account for a significant fraction of the value of exports.

Source: OECD.

Forward linkages work in the same direction on the import side, though the effect is more roundabout. Because a currency depreciation lowers a country's export prices, it will also lower the prices of imports that incorporate those exports as inputs. Even if the domestic-currency prices of imports rise fully in response to a home currency depreciation, *given* the foreign-currency prices of imports, the currency depreciation can lower the foreign-currency import prices themselves in the presence of global value chains. This effect will reduce the exchange rate's impact in shifting demand away from imports and raising net exports.

Can we conclude that global value chains make exchange rate adjustments less effective in shifting aggregate demand? The answer is: not necessarily. There is strong evidence that more complex global value chains go hand in hand with larger volumes of both imports and exports (which is why they have helped to raise the volume of global trade substantially, as Chapter 8 noted). The larger are trade volumes, however, the larger will be the macroeconomic impact of a change in the exchange rate on GDP. This trade volume effect may offset the backward and forward linkage effects, leaving the overall impact of exchange rate changes on demand and output more or less the same.<sup>14</sup>

### The Current Account, Wealth, and Exchange Rate Dynamics

Our theoretical model showed that a permanent fiscal expansion would cause both an appreciation of the currency and a current account deficit. Although our discussion earlier in this chapter focused on the role of price level movements in bringing the economy from its immediate position after a permanent policy change to its long-run position, the definition of the current account should alert you to another underlying dynamic: The net foreign wealth of an economy with a deficit is falling over time.

## UNDERSTANDING PASS-THROUGH TO IMPORT AND EXPORT PRICES

We have seen that the pass-through of exchange rates to international prices is complex, is related to the market power of trading firms, and can differ over different horizons of price adjustment. But researchers have identified other critical factors that affect how economists should forecast both the short-run impact of macroeconomic policies and the likely price-level implications of exchange rate changes.

One key factor is the currency in which internationally traded goods are *invoiced*, that is, the currency in which sellers quote their prices and receive payment. Just as the U.S. dollar is the key

*vehicle currency* in the global foreign exchange market (recall Chapter 14's section on "The Foreign Exchange Market"), it is also the dominant *invoice currency*—even for trades that may not involve the United States. (The other common invoice currency is the euro, but it is far behind the dollar in importance.) Gita Gopinath of Harvard University has argued that traded-goods prices, measured in the invoice currency, are not very sensitive to that currency's exchange rate up to a two-year horizon.<sup>15</sup> This fact implies an asymmetry between short-run exchange rate pass-through for invoice currency countries and others.

<sup>14</sup>For two studies on exchange rate elasticities and global value chains, see Gustavo Adler, Sergii Meleshchuk, and Carolina Osorio Buitron, "Global Value Chains and External Adjustment: Do Exchange Rates Still Matter?" IMF Working Paper WP/19/300, December 2019; and Georgios Georgiadis, Johannes Gräb, and Makram Khalil, "Global Value Chain Participation and Exchange-Rate Pass-Through," European Central Bank Working Paper Series 2327, November 2019. Also relevant is the analytical discussion of global value chains in Maurice Obstfeld, "Harry Johnson's 'Case for Flexible Exchange Rates'—50 Years Later," *The Manchester School* 88 (September 2020), pp. 86–113.

<sup>15</sup>"The International Price System," in *Inflation Dynamics and Monetary Policy* (Kansas City, MO: Federal Reserve Bank of Kansas City, 2016).

For example, over 90 percent of U.S. imports and exports are invoiced in dollars. Because these prices are quite sticky when measured in dollars, a dollar depreciation has little effect on the import prices U.S. consumers and firms face, but the immediate pass-through to importers of U.S. goods, in terms of their own currencies, is close to 1. The implication is that dollar depreciation may boost U.S. exports immediately but have little impact on U.S. imports. Of course, foreign firms selling into the United States and invoicing in dollars will earn lower profits in terms of their own currencies (can you see why?) and as a result will desire to raise their goods' U.S. prices over time to recoup their losses.

In contrast, in 2015, only 13 percent of Japan's imports originated in the United States, but fully 71 percent of those imports were invoiced in dollars (with only 24 percent of imports invoiced in the home currency, the yen). Thus, a depreciation of the yen against the dollar has a powerful impact on import prices. In contrast, Japanese exporting firms, which mostly do not invoice in yen, see little short-run effect on export prices but substantial effects on their export profits. In contrast to the United States, the main channel for net export adjustment to an exchange rate change may, in the

short run at least, be import rather than export adjustment—just the opposite as in the case of the United States.

Invoice currencies provide only one complication in the analysis of pass-through. In addition, the relationship between an exchange rate change and subsequent price developments also depends on exactly why the exchange rate has changed, as Kristin Forbes of the Massachusetts Institute of Technology points out.<sup>16</sup> For example, if the dollar weakens because of a fall in U.S. aggregate demand, thereby reducing the profits of firms that export to the United States, those firms may not wish to raise their dollar prices aggressively. In this case, pass-through will therefore look low. The response will be different if the depreciation results from a factor that simultaneously raises demand for U.S. output, such as a global shift in portfolio preferences toward nondollar assets.

Recall that in Chapter 14 (our section on "Equilibrium in the Foreign Exchange Market"), we observed that in the real world, the exchange rate effect of an interest rate change depends on why the interest rate is changing. Similarly, the sequel to an exchange rate change will depend on the underlying economic factors that cause the change.

Although we have not explicitly incorporated wealth effects into our model, we would expect people's consumption to fall as their wealth falls. Because a country with a current account deficit is transferring wealth to foreigners, domestic consumption is falling over time and foreign consumption is rising. What are the exchange rate effects of this international redistribution of consumption demand in favor of foreigners? Foreigners have a relative preference for consuming the goods that they produce, and as a result, the relative world demand for home goods will fall and the home currency will tend to depreciate in real terms.

This longer-run perspective leads to a more complicated picture of the real exchange rate's evolution following a permanent change such as a fiscal expansion. Initially, the home currency will appreciate as the current account balance falls sharply. But then, over time, the currency will begin to depreciate as market participants' expectations focus increasingly on the current account's effect on relative international wealth levels.<sup>17</sup>

<sup>16</sup>"Much Ado about Something Important: How Do Exchange Rate Movements Affect Inflation?" Bank of England (September 2015).

<sup>17</sup>An influential model of exchange rates and the current account is presented by Rudiger Dornbusch and Stanley Fischer, "Exchange Rates and the Current Account," *American Economic Review* 70 (December 1980), pp. 960–971.

## The Liquidity Trap

During the lengthy Great Depression of the 1930s, the nominal interest rate hit zero in the United States, and the country found itself caught in what economists call a **liquidity trap**.

Recall from Chapter 15 that money is the most *liquid* of assets, unique in the ease with which it can be exchanged for goods. A liquidity trap is a trap because, once an economy's nominal interest rate falls to zero, the central bank will face great difficulty in reducing it further by increasing the money supply (that is, by increasing the economy's liquidity). Why? At negative nominal interest rates, people would find money strictly preferable to bonds, and bonds therefore would be in excess supply. While a zero interest rate may please borrowers who can borrow for free, it worries makers of macroeconomic policy, who are trapped in a situation where they may no longer be able to steer the economy through conventional monetary expansion. Economists therefore recommend that if possible, central banks avoid the **zero lower bound (ZLB)** on the nominal interest rate.

While it is very difficult for central banks to reduce the nominal interest rate below zero, there may be limited scope to do so. Starting in 2014, several major central banks, most prominently the European Central Bank, started to push nominal interest rates into negative territory, effectively by charging commercial banks on the cash they hold at the central bank. With cash paying a nominal interest of 0 percent, why would anyone want to hold a deposit paying a *negative* nominal interest rate, however small? The answer is related to the risks of holding large amounts of cash, such as theft or fire, as well as the costs of buying a large safe or renting space in someone else's. (Sales of safes have, however, risen in some countries!)

At some point, of course, if the interest rate becomes negative enough, it will still begin to pay to switch to cash despite these costs. As a result, there is a limit to how low nominal interest rates can go—many economists would put that limit somewhere between  $-1$  and  $-2$  percent, although the number is likely to be different in different economies. Taking account of the possibility of somewhat negative interest rates, economists refer to the *effective lower bound (ELB)* rather than ZLB, with the economy entering a liquidity trap once it is at the ELB. In the rest of the book we will largely ignore the difference between the ZLB and ELB for the sake of simplicity and associate the liquidity trap with an interest rate that is stuck at the ZLB.

Economists thought liquidity traps were a thing of the past until Japan fell into one in the late 1990s. Despite a dramatic lowering of interest rates by the country's central bank, the Bank of Japan (BOJ), the country's economy has stagnated and suffered *deflation* (a falling price level) since at least the mid-1990s. By 1999, the country's short-term interest rates had effectively reached zero. In September 2004, for example, the Bank of Japan reported that the overnight interest rate (the one most immediately affected by monetary policy) was only 0.001 percent per year.

Seeing signs of economic recovery, the BOJ raised interest rates slightly starting in 2006 but retreated back toward zero as a global financial crisis gathered force late in 2008 (see Chapter 19). That crisis also hit the United States hard, and as Figure 14-2 (in the Chapter 14 section on “The Demand for Foreign Currency Assets”) suggests, interest rates then plummeted toward zero in the United States as well as in Japan. Simultaneously, other central banks throughout the world slashed their own rates dramatically. The liquidity trap had gone global.

The dilemma a central bank faces when the economy is in a liquidity trap slowdown can be seen by considering the interest parity condition when the domestic interest rate  $R = 0$ ,

$$R = 0 = R^* + (E^e - E)/E.$$

Assume for the moment that the expected future exchange rate,  $E^e$ , is fixed. Suppose the central bank raises the domestic money supply so as to depreciate the currency temporarily (that is, to raise  $E$  today but return the exchange rate to the level  $E^e$  later). The interest parity condition shows that  $E$  cannot rise once  $R = 0$  because the interest rate would have to become *negative*. Instead, despite the increase in the money supply, the exchange rate remains steady at the level

$$E = E^e/(1 - R^*).$$

The currency cannot depreciate further.

How is this possible? Our usual argument that a temporary increase in the money supply reduces the interest rate (and depreciates the currency) rests on the assumption that people will add money to their portfolios only if bonds become less attractive to hold. At an interest rate of  $R = 0$ , however, people are indifferent about trades between bonds and money—both yield a nominal rate of return rate equal to zero. An open-market purchase of bonds for money, say, will not disturb the markets: People will be happy to accept the additional money in exchange for their bonds with no change in the interest rate from zero and, thus, no change in the exchange rate. In contrast to the case we examined earlier in this chapter, an increase in the money supply will have no effect on the economy! A central bank that progressively *reduces* the money supply by selling bonds will eventually succeed in pushing the interest rate up—the economy cannot function without some money—but that possibility is not helpful when the economy is in a slump and a *fall* in interest rates is the medicine that it needs.

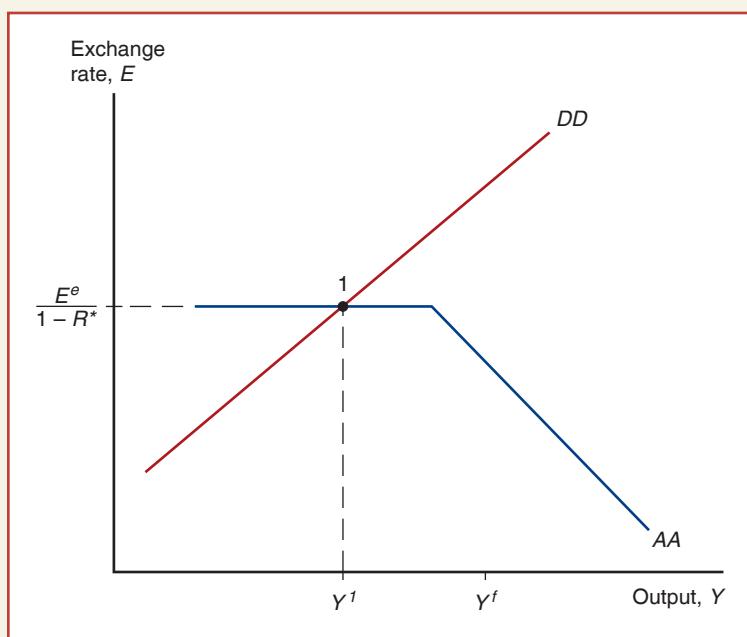
Figure 17-20 shows how the *DD-AA* diagram can be modified to depict the region of potential equilibrium positions involving a liquidity trap. The *DD* schedule is the same, but the *AA* schedule now has a flat segment at levels of output so low that the money market finds its equilibrium at an interest rate  $R$  equal to zero. The flat segment of *AA* shows the currency cannot depreciate beyond the level  $E^e/(1 - R^*)$ . At the equilibrium point 1 in the diagram, output is trapped at a level  $Y^1$  that is below the full-employment level  $Y^f$ .

Let's consider next how an open-market expansion of the money supply works in this strange, zero-interest world. Although we do not show it in Figure 17-20, that action would shift *AA* to the right: At an unchanged exchange rate, higher output  $Y$  raises money demand, leaving people content to hold the additional money at the unchanged interest rate  $R = 0$ . The horizontal stretch of *AA* becomes longer as a result. With more money in circulation, real output and money demand can rise further than before without driving the nominal interest rate to a positive level. (Eventually, as  $Y$  rises even further, increased money demand results in progressively higher interest rates  $R$  and therefore in progressive currency appreciation along the downward-sloping segment of *AA*.) The surprising result is that the equilibrium simply remains at point 1. Monetary expansion thus has no effect on output or the exchange rate. This is the sense in which the economy is “trapped.”

Our earlier assumption that the expected future exchange rate is fixed is a key ingredient in this liquidity trap story. Suppose the central bank can credibly promise to raise the money supply *permanently*, so that  $E^e$  rises at the same time as the current money

**FIGURE 17-20**  
**A Low-Output Liquidity Trap**

At point 1, output is below its full employment level. Because exchange rate expectations  $E^e$  are fixed, however, a monetary expansion will merely shift AA to the right, leaving the initial equilibrium point the same. The horizontal stretch of AA gives rise to the liquidity trap.



supply. In that case, the  $AA$  schedule will shift up as well as to the right, output will therefore expand, and the currency will depreciate. Observers of Japan's experience have argued, however, that BOJ officials were so fearful of depreciation and inflation (as were many central bankers during the early 1930s) that markets did not believe the officials would be willing to depreciate the currency permanently. Instead, markets suspected an intention to restore an appreciated exchange rate later on and treated any monetary expansion as temporary. Only in the first half of 2013 did the Japanese government finally announce a credible intention to expand the money supply enough, and keep interest rates at zero long enough, to attain a 2 percent rate of annual inflation. At that point the yen depreciated sharply.<sup>18</sup>

With the United States and Japan maintaining interest rates at zero or very close to it through 2016, some economists feared the Fed would be powerless to stop an American deflation similar to Japan's. The Fed and other central banks responded by adopting what came to be called *unconventional monetary policies*, in which the central bank buys specific categories of assets with newly issued money, greatly increasing the money supply in the process. One such policy involves purchasing long-term government bonds so as to reduce long-term interest rates. Those rates play a big role in determining the interest charged for home loans, and when they fall, housing demand therefore rises. Another possible unconventional policy, which we will discuss in Chapter 18, is the purchase of foreign exchange.

<sup>18</sup>A similar policy was advocated by Paul R. Krugman, "It's Baaack: Japan's Slump and the Return of the Liquidity Trap," *Brookings Papers on Economic Activity* 2 (1998), pp. 137–205.

## CASE STUDY

### How Big Is the Government Spending Multiplier?

Many students first encounter the **government spending multiplier** during their initial exposure to macroeconomics. The multiplier measures the size of the increase in output caused by an increase in government spending, or in symbols,  $\Delta Y/\Delta G$ .

While at first glance it may seem that the multiplier is big, students quickly learn about factors that can reduce its size. If an increase in government spending also leads to an increase in the interest rate and this, in turn, discourages spending on consumption and investment, then the multiplier is smaller: A part of the potential expansionary impact of the fiscal policy is “crowded out” by the rise in the interest rate.

In the open economy, the multiplier is smaller still. Some private spending leaks out of the economy through imports, and if the exchange rate appreciates, then as we have seen in this chapter, the resulting reduction in net exports is an additional channel for crowding out.

Finally, under conditions of price flexibility and full employment, the multiplier is essentially zero: If the government wishes to consume more and resources are already fully employed in production, then the private sector must part with the output that the government wants. There is no way to get much more out of the existing, fully employed stocks of productive factors, and so  $\Delta Y/\Delta G \approx 0$ .

Uncertainty about the multiplier’s size raised concerns outside academia once the world slipped into recession in 2008 owing to the global financial crisis that we will discuss in later chapters (starting with Chapter 19). Massive fiscal expansion again came into play due to the COVID-19 crisis of 2020. The United States, China, and other countries mounted big programs of fiscal expansion, including increased government spending, to prop up their stricken economies. Were these resources wasted, or were they helpful in reducing the severity of the slump? Would it be easy or painful later on to reduce government spending in order to roll back the government deficits the recession caused? The answers depended on the size of the government spending multiplier.

Economists have been studying the question of the multiplier’s size for years, but the severity of the 2008–2009 recession inspired a new crop of theoretical and empirical studies. We saw earlier that in the open economy, permanent government spending has no impact on output—the multiplier is zero—but temporary government spending can raise output (recall Figure 17-16). Countercyclical fiscal expansion is most likely to be temporary (because the recession is temporary), and so this is also the case focused upon by recent research.

In an exhaustive survey, Robert E. Hall of Stanford University suggests that most studies find a multiplier between 0.5 and 1.0 (see his paper in Further Readings). That is, when the government raises its consumption by \$1, the resulting increase in output will be at most \$1—smaller than the big multipliers of the simplest closed-economy models, but still an effect likely to have a substantial positive impact on employment.

We saw earlier, however, that in 2009, many industrial economies lowered their interest rates dramatically, sometimes entering liquidity traps with zero rates of interest. Hall explained that this situation is exceptional because the usual “crowding out” does not occur, and he thought that for economies in liquidity traps the multiplier might be as high as 1.7. Lawrence Christiano, Martin Eichenbaum, and Sergio Rebelo of Northwestern University have suggested a much higher number based on their theoretical modeling: While below 1 normally, their multiplier can be as high as 3.7 in a liquidity trap! Alan Auerbach and Yuriy Gorodnichenko of the University of California, Berkeley, analyze data from the (mostly wealthy) member countries of the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development and find that for economies in recession (though not necessarily in a liquidity trap), the multiplier is about 2.<sup>19</sup>

Our model of the liquidity trap allows us to see easily that the multiplier is larger when the interest rate is held at zero, and it also yields an interesting additional prediction for the open-economy case. Not only is there no crowding out through the interest rate, there is also no crowding out through the exchange rate.

Figure 17-16 shows the output effect of a temporary increase in  $G$  under normal (positive interest rate) conditions. Compare this with the effect on  $Y$  of a similar spending increase in Figure 17-20 (assuming  $R$  remains at zero). Because (by assumption) the expected future exchange rate  $E^e$  does not change when the rise in  $G$  is temporary,  $DD$  simply slides to the right along the horizontal portion of  $AA$ , which itself does not shift. Neither the interest rate nor the expected future exchange rate changes in Figure 17-20, so interest parity implies that the current exchange rate cannot change either. In Figure 17-16, in contrast, the increase in output raises money demand, pushing up  $R$  and appreciating the currency. Because the currency appreciation reduces net exports, thereby limiting the net positive effect on output, the multiplier is smaller in Figure 17-16 than in Figure 17-20. In Figure 17-20, in fact, the multiplier is the same as under a *fixed exchange rate*, a case that we will examine in Chapter 18.

One region where the multiplier’s size became a topic of contentious debate was Europe, where countries simultaneously cut government spending sharply after 2009 in order to reduce public deficits and debts. Our discussion of the multiplier might lead you to believe that the effects were highly contractionary. This is exactly what happened, as we shall see in Chapter 21.

---

<sup>19</sup>See Lawrence Christiano, Martin Eichenbaum, and Sergio Rebelo, “When Is the Government Spending Multiplier Large?” *Journal of Political Economy* 119 (February 2011), pp. 78–121; and Alan Auerbach and Yuriy Gorodnichenko, “Fiscal Multipliers in Recession and Expansion,” in Alberto Alesina and Francesco Giavazzi, eds., *Fiscal Policy after the Financial Crisis* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2013), pp. 63–102.

## SUMMARY

- The *aggregate demand* for an open economy's output consists of four components corresponding to the four components of GNP: consumption demand, investment demand, government demand, and the current account (net export demand). An important determinant of the current account is the real exchange rate, the ratio of the foreign price level (measured in domestic currency) to the domestic price level.
- Output is determined in the short run by the equality of aggregate demand and aggregate supply. When aggregate demand is greater than output, firms increase production to avoid unintended inventory depletion. When aggregate demand is less than output, firms cut back production to avoid unintended accumulation of inventories.
- The economy's short-run equilibrium occurs at the exchange rate and output level where—given the price level, the expected future exchange rate, and foreign economic conditions—aggregate demand equals aggregate supply and the asset markets are in equilibrium. In a diagram with the exchange rate and real output on its axes, the short-run equilibrium can be visualized as the intersection of an upward-sloping *DD schedule*, along which the output market clears, and a downward-sloping *AA schedule*, along which the asset markets clear.
- A temporary increase in the money supply, which does not alter the long-run expected nominal exchange rate, causes a depreciation of the currency and a rise in output. Temporary fiscal expansion also results in a rise in output, but it causes the currency to appreciate. *Monetary policy* and *fiscal policy* can be used by the government to offset the effects of disturbances to output and employment. Temporary monetary expansion is powerless to raise output or move the exchange rate, however, when the economy is in a *liquidity trap* with the nominal interest rate at the *zero lower bound*.
- Permanent shifts in the money supply, which do alter the long-run expected nominal exchange rate, cause sharper exchange rate movements and therefore have stronger short-run effects on output than transitory shifts. If the economy is at full employment, a permanent increase in the money supply leads to a rising price level, which ultimately reverses the effect on the real exchange rate of the nominal exchange rate's initial depreciation. In the long run, output returns to its initial level and all money prices rise in proportion to the increase in the money supply.
- Because permanent fiscal expansion changes the long-run expected exchange rate, it causes a sharper currency appreciation than an equal temporary expansion. If the economy starts out in long-run equilibrium, the additional appreciation makes domestic goods and services so expensive that the resulting "crowding out" of net export demand nullifies the policy's effect on output and employment. In this case, a permanent fiscal expansion has no expansionary effect at all. The *government spending multiplier* is zero for permanent fiscal expansion, unlike for temporary fiscal expansion.
- A major practical problem is ensuring that the government's ability to stimulate the economy does not tempt it to gear policy to short-term political goals, thus creating an *inflation bias*. Other problems include the difficulty of identifying the sources or durations of economic changes and time lags in implementing policies.
- If exports and imports adjust gradually to real exchange rate changes, the current account may follow a *J-curve* pattern after a real currency depreciation, first worsening and then improving. If such a J-curve exists, currency depreciation may have an initial contractionary effect on output, and exchange rate overshooting will be amplified. Limited exchange rate *pass-through*, along with domestic price increases, may reduce the effect of a nominal exchange rate change on the real exchange rate. The same is true of *global value chains*, although these production arrangements also tend to raise the gross levels of exports and imports.

**KEY TERMS**

<i>AA</i> schedule, p. 502	government spending multiplier, p. 527	monetary policy, p. 507
aggregate demand, p. 491	inflation bias, p. 511	pass-through, p. 520
<i>DD</i> schedule, p. 498	J-curve, p. 518	zero lower bound (ZLB), p. 524
fiscal policy, p. 507	liquidity trap, p. 524	
global value chains, p. 521		

**PROBLEMS**

- How does the *DD* schedule shift if there is a decline in investment demand?
- Suppose the government imposes a tariff on all imports. Use the *DD-AA* model to analyze the effects this measure would have on the economy. Analyze both temporary and permanent tariffs.
- In 2015, the Canadian government intended to adopt a balance budget act requiring the government to maintain a balanced budget at all times. Hence, if the government wishes to change government spending, it will always have to change the taxes by the same amount, that is,  $\Delta G = \Delta T$ . Does this law imply that the government can no longer use fiscal policy to affect employment and output? (Hint: Analyze a “balanced-budget” increase in government spending, one that is accompanied by an equal tax hike.)
- Suppose there is a permanent fall in private aggregate demand for a country’s output (a downward shift of the entire aggregate demand schedule). What is the effect on output? What government policy response would you recommend?
- Why does a temporary increase in government spending cause the current account to fall by a smaller amount than does a permanent increase in government spending?
- If a government initially has a balanced budget but then cuts taxes, it is running a deficit that it must somehow finance. Suppose people think the government will finance its deficit by printing the extra money it now needs to cover its expenditures. Would you still expect the tax cut to cause a currency appreciation?
- You observe that a country’s currency depreciates while its current account worsens. What data might you look at to decide if you are witnessing a J-curve effect? What other macroeconomic change might bring about a currency depreciation coupled with a deterioration of the current account, even if there is no J-curve?
- A new government wins an election and announces that once it is inaugurated, it will increase the money supply. Use the *DD-AA* model to study the economy’s response to this announcement.
- How would you draw the *DD-AA* diagram when the current account’s response to exchange rate changes follows a J-curve? Use this modified diagram to examine the effects of temporary and permanent changes in monetary and fiscal policy.
- What does the Marshall-Lerner condition look like if the country whose real exchange rate changes does *not* start out with a current account of zero? (The Marshall-Lerner condition is derived in Appendix 2 under the “standard” assumption of an initially balanced current account.)
- Our model takes the price level  $P$  as given in the short run, but in reality, the currency appreciation caused by a permanent fiscal expansion might cause  $P$  to fall a bit by lowering some import prices. If  $P$  can fall slightly due to a permanent fiscal expansion, is it still true that there are no output effects? (As previously, assume an initial long-run equilibrium.)
- Suppose interest parity does not hold exactly, but the true relationship is  $R = R^* + (E^e - E)/E + \rho$ , where  $\rho$  is a term measuring the differential

riskiness of domestic versus foreign deposits. Suppose a permanent rise in domestic government spending, by creating the prospect of future government deficits, also raises  $\rho$ , that is, makes domestic currency deposits more risky. Evaluate the policy's output effects in this situation.

13. If an economy does *not* start out at full employment, is it still true that a permanent change in fiscal policy has no current effect on output?
14. Consider the following linear version of the *AA-DD* model in the text: Consumption is given by  $C = (1 - s)Y$ , and the current account balance is given by  $CA = aE - mY$ . (In macroeconomics textbooks,  $s$  is sometimes referred to as the *marginal propensity to save*, and  $m$  is called the *marginal propensity to import*.) Then the condition of equilibrium in the goods market is  $Y = C + I + G + CA = (1 - s)Y + I + G + aE - mY$ . We will write the condition of money market equilibrium as  $M^s/P = bY - dR$ . On the assumption that the central bank can hold both the interest rate  $R$  and the exchange rate  $E$  constant and assuming that investment  $I$  also is constant, what is the effect of an increase in government spending  $G$  on output  $Y$ ? (This number is often called the *open-economy government spending multiplier*, but as you can see, it is relevant only under strict conditions.) Explain your result intuitively.
15. See if you can retrace the steps in the five-step argument at the end of the section on “Permanent Shifts in Monetary and Fiscal Policy” to show that a permanent fiscal expansion cannot cause output to *fall*.
16. The chapter’s discussion of “Inflation Bias and Other Problems of Policy Formulation” (paragraph 4) states that there may not really be any such thing as a *permanent* fiscal expansion. What do you think? How would these considerations affect the exchange rate and output effects of fiscal policy? Do you see any parallels with this chapter’s discussion of the longer-run impact of current account imbalances?
17. If you compare low-inflation economies with economies in which inflation is high and very volatile, how might you expect the degree of exchange rate pass-through to differ, and why?
18. In November 2015, the Government of India formulated a policy for according preference to the government procurement of electronic goods that are manufactured domestically. According to the news reports, this campaign, referred to as “Make in India,” promotes economic strength and a more robust standing in the global market.

Do you think the Indian government spending constrained by this national preference policy has a bigger effect on Indian output than unconstrained Indian government spending? What could happen if this policy is extended to the overall government spending?

19. Return to problem 14 and notice that, to complete the model described there, we must add the interest parity conditions. Observe also that if  $Y^f$  is the full-employment output level, then the long-run expected exchange rate,  $E^e$ , satisfies the equation:  $Y^f = (aE^e + I + G)/(s + m)$ . (We are again taking investment  $I$  as given.) Using these equations, demonstrate algebraically that if the economy starts at full employment with  $R = R^*$ , an increase in  $G$  has no effect on output. What is the effect on the exchange rate? How does the exchange rate change depend on  $a$ , and why?
20. We can express a linear approximation to the interest parity condition (accurate for small exchange rate changes) as:  $R = R^* + (E^e - E)/E^e$ . Adding this to the model of problems 14 and 19, solve for  $Y$  as a function of  $G$ . What is the government spending multiplier for temporary changes in  $G$  (those that do not alter  $E^e$ )? How does your answer depend on the parameters  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $d$ , and why?

## FURTHER READINGS

- Victor Argy and Michael G. Porter. "The Forward Exchange Market and the Effects of Domestic and External Disturbances under Alternative Exchange Rate Systems." *International Monetary Fund Staff Papers* 19 (November 1972), pp. 503–532. Advanced analysis of a macroeconomic model similar to the one in this chapter.
- Morten Linnemann Bech and Aytek Malkhozov. "How Have Central Banks Implemented Negative Policy Rates?" *BIS Quarterly Review* (March 2016), pp. 31–45. Review of recent central bank experience with negative nominal interest rates.
- Rudiger Dornbusch. "Exchange Rate Expectations and Monetary Policy." *Journal of International Economics* 6 (August 1976), pp. 231–244. A formal examination of monetary policy and the exchange rate in a model with a J-curve.
- Robert C. Feenstra, Philip Luck, Maurice Obstfeld, and Katheryn N. Russ. "In Search of the Armington Elasticity." *Review of Economics and Statistics* 100 (March 2018), pp. 135–150. Technical methodological critique and new estimates of U.S. trade elasticities.
- Joseph E. Gagnon. "Productive Capacity, Product Varieties, and the Elasticities Approach to the Trade Balance." *Review of International Economics* 15 (September 2007), pp. 639–659. Looks at the role of new products in determining long-run trade elasticities.
- Robert E. Hall. "By How Much Does GDP Rise If the Government Buys More Output?" *Brookings Papers on Economic Activity* 2 (2009), pp. 183–231. Thorough (but advanced) discussion of the government spending multiplier in contemporary macroeconomic models and in practice.
- Daniel Leigh, Weicheng Lian, Marcos Poplawski-Ribeiro, and Viktor Tsyrennikov. "Exchange Rates and Trade Flows: Disconnected?" Chapter 3 in International Monetary Fund, *World Economic Outlook*, IMF, October 2015. Empirical analysis of how the response of trade to exchange rates has evolved, in a setting with pricing to market.
- Jaime Marquez. *Estimating Trade Elasticities*. Boston: Kluwer Academic Publishers, 2002. Broad survey on the estimation of trade elasticities.
- Subramanian Rangan and Robert Z. Lawrence. *A Prism on Globalization*. Washington, D.C.: Brookings Institution, 1999. An examination of multinational firms' responses to exchange rate movements.
- Lars E. O. Svensson. "Escaping from a Liquidity Trap and Deflation: The Foolproof Way and Others." *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 17 (Fall 2003), pp. 145–166. Clear discussion of policy options for economies facing deflation, including unconventional monetary policies.
- World Bank. *Trading for Development in the Age of Global Value Chains: World Development Report 2020*. Washington, D.C.: World Bank Group, 2019. Comprehensive overview of the development of global value chains and their role in trade and economic growth.



## Intertemporal Trade and Consumption Demand

We assume in the chapter that private consumption demand is a function of disposable income,  $C = C(Y^d)$ , with the property that when  $Y^d$  rises, consumption rises by less [so that saving,  $Y^d - C(Y^d)$ , goes up too]. This appendix interprets this assumption in the context of the intertemporal model of consumption behavior discussed in the appendix to Chapter 6.

The discussion in Chapter 6 assumed that consumers' welfare depends on present consumption demand  $D_P$  and future consumption demand  $D_F$ . If present income is  $Q_P$  and future income is  $Q_F$ , consumers can use borrowing or saving to allocate their consumption over time in any way consistent with the *intertemporal budget constraint*

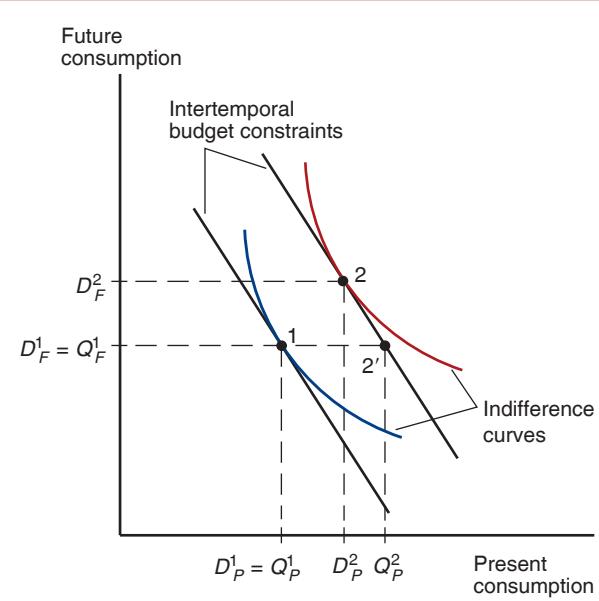
$$D_P + D_F/(1+r) = Q_P + Q_F/(1+r),$$

where  $r$  is the real rate of interest.

Figure 17A1-1 reminds you of how consumption and saving were determined in Chapter 6. If present and future output are initially described by the point labeled 1 in the figure, a consumer's wish to pick the highest utility indifference curve consistent with his or her budget constraints leads to consumption at point 1 as well.

**FIGURE 17A1-1**  
**Change in Output and Saving**

A one-period increase in output raises saving.



We have assumed zero saving at point 1 to show most clearly the effect of a rise in current output, which we turn to next. Suppose present output rises while future output doesn't, moving the income endowment to point 2', which lies horizontally to the right of point 1. You can see that the consumer will wish to spread the increase in consumption this allows her over her *entire* lifetime. She can do this by saving some of the present income rise,  $Q_P^2 - Q_P^1$ , and moving up to the left along her budget line from her endowment point 2' to point 2.

If we now reinterpret the notation so that present output,  $Q_P$ , corresponds to disposable income,  $Y^d$ , and present consumption demand corresponds to  $C(Y^d)$ , we see that while consumption certainly depends on factors other than current disposable income—notably, future income and the real interest rate—its behavior implies a rise in lifetime income that is concentrated in the present will indeed lead to a rise in current consumption less than the rise in current income. Since the output changes we have been considering in this chapter are all temporary changes that result from the short-run stickiness of domestic money prices, the consumption behavior we simply assumed in the chapter does capture the feature of intertemporal consumption behavior essential for the *DD-AA* model to work.

We could also use Figure 17A1-1 to look at the consumption effects of the real interest rate, which we mentioned in footnote 1. If the economy is initially at point 1, a fall in the real interest rate  $r$  causes the budget line to rotate counterclockwise about point 1, causing a rise in present consumption. If initially the economy had been saving a positive amount, however, as at point 2, this effect would be ambiguous, a reflection of the contrary pulls of the income and substitution effects we introduced in the first part of this book on international trade theory. In this second case, the endowment point is point 2', so a fall in the real interest rate causes a counterclockwise rotation of the budget line about point 2'. Empirical evidence indicates that the positive effect of a lower real interest rate on consumption probably is weak.

Use of the preceding framework to analyze the intertemporal aspects of fiscal policy would lead us too far afield, although this is one of the most fascinating topics in macroeconomics. We refer readers instead to any good intermediate macroeconomics text.<sup>20</sup>

---

<sup>20</sup>For example, see Abel, Bernanke, and Croushore, *op. cit.*, Chapter 15.



## The Marshall-Lerner Condition and Empirical Estimates of Trade Elasticities

The chapter assumed a real depreciation of a country's currency improves its current account. As we noted, however, the validity of this assumption depends on the response of export and import volumes to real exchange rate changes. In this appendix, we derive a condition on those responses for the assumption in the text to be valid. The condition, called the *Marshall-Lerner condition*, states that, all else equal, a real depreciation improves the current account if export and import volumes are sufficiently elastic with respect to the real exchange rate. (The condition is named after two of the economists who discovered it, Alfred Marshall and Abba Lerner.) After deriving the Marshall-Lerner condition, we look at empirical estimates of trade elasticities and analyze their implications for actual current account responses to real exchange rate changes.

To start, write the current account, measured in domestic output units, as the difference between exports and imports of goods and services similarly measured:

$$CA(EP^*/P, Y^d) = EX(EP^*/P) - IM(EP^*/P, Y^d).$$

Here, export demand is written as a function of  $EP^*/P$  alone because foreign income is being held constant.

Let  $q$  denote the real exchange rate  $EP^*/P$ , and let  $EX^*$  denote domestic imports measured in terms of *foreign*, rather than domestic, output. The notation  $EX^*$  is used because domestic imports from abroad, measured in foreign output, equal the volume of foreign exports to the home country. If we identify  $q$  with the price of foreign products in terms of domestic products, then  $IM$  and  $EX^*$  are related by

$$IM = q \times EX^*,$$

that is, imports measured in domestic output = (domestic output units/foreign output unit)  $\times$  (imports measured in foreign output units).<sup>21</sup>

We can therefore express the current account as

$$CA(q, Y^d) = EX(q) - q \times EX^*(q, Y^d).$$

Now let  $EX_q$  stand for the effect of a rise in  $q$  (a real depreciation) on export demand, and let  $EX_q^*$  stand for the effect of a rise in  $q$  on import volume. Thus,

$$EX_q = \Delta EX / \Delta q, EX_q^* = \Delta EX^* / \Delta q.$$

---

<sup>21</sup>As we warned earlier in the chapter, the identification of the real exchange rate with relative output prices is not quite exact since, as we defined it, the real exchange rate is the relative price of expenditure baskets. For most practical purposes, however, the discrepancy is not qualitatively important. A more serious problem with our analysis is that national outputs consist in part of nontradables, and the real exchange rate covers their prices as well as those of tradables. To avoid the additional complexity that would result from a more detailed treatment of the composition of national outputs, we assume in deriving the Marshall-Lerner condition that the real exchange rate can be approximately identified with the relative price of imports in terms of exports.

As we saw in the chapter,  $EX_q$  is positive (a real depreciation makes home products relatively cheaper and stimulates exports) while  $EX_q^*$  is negative (a relative cheapening of home products reduces domestic import demand). Using these definitions, we can now ask how a rise in  $q$  affects the current account, all else equal.

If superscript 1 indicates the initial value of a variable while superscript 2 indicates its value after  $q$  has changed by  $\Delta q = q^2 - q^1$ , then the change in the current account caused by a real exchange rate change  $\Delta q$  is

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta CA &= CA^2 - CA^1 = (EX^2 - q^2 \times EX^{*2}) - (EX^1 - q^1 \times EX^{*1}) \\ &= \Delta EX - (q^2 \times \Delta EX^*) - (\Delta q \times EX^{*1}).\end{aligned}$$

Dividing through by  $\Delta q$  gives the current account's response to a change in  $q$ ,

$$\Delta CA / \Delta q = EX_q - (q^2 \times EX_q^*) - EX^{*1}.$$

This equation summarizes the two current account effects of a real depreciation discussed in the text, the *volume* effect and the *value* effect. The terms involving  $EX_q$  and  $EX_q^*$  represent the volume effect, the effect of the change in  $q$  on the number of output units exported and imported. These terms are always positive because  $EX_q > 0$  and  $EX_q^* < 0$ . The last term in the previous expression,  $EX^{*1}$ , represents the value effect, and it is preceded by a minus sign. This last term tells us that a rise in  $q$  worsens the current account to the extent that it raises the domestic output value of the initial volume of imports.

We are interested in knowing when the right-hand side of the preceding equation is positive, so that a real depreciation causes the current account balance to increase. To answer this question, we first define the *elasticity of export demand* with respect to  $q$ ,

$$\eta = (q^1 / EX^1) EX_q,$$

and the elasticity of import demand with respect to  $q$ ,

$$\eta^* = -(q^1 / EX^{*1}) EX_q^*.$$

(The definition of  $\eta^*$  involves a minus sign because  $EX_q^* < 0$ , and we are defining trade elasticities as positive numbers.) Returning to our equation for  $\Delta CA / \Delta q$ , we multiply its right-hand side by  $(q^1 / EX^1)$  to express it in terms of trade elasticities. Then, if the current account is initially zero (that is,  $EX^1 = q^1 \times EX^{*1}$ ), this last step shows that  $\Delta CA / \Delta q$  is positive when

$$\eta + (q^2/q^1)\eta^* - 1 > 0.$$

If the change in  $q$  is assumed to be small, so that  $q^2 \approx q^1$ , the condition for an increase in  $q$  to improve the current account is

$$\eta + \eta^* > 1.$$

This is the Marshall-Lerner condition, which states that if the current account is initially zero, a real currency depreciation causes a current account surplus if the sum of the relative price elasticities of export and import demand exceeds 1. (If the current account is not zero initially, the condition becomes more complex.) In applying the Marshall-Lerner condition, remember that its derivation assumes that disposable income is held constant when  $q$  changes.

Now that we have the Marshall-Lerner condition, we can ask whether empirical estimates of trade equations imply price elasticities consistent with this chapter's assumption that a real exchange rate depreciation improves the current account. Table 17A2-1 presents International Monetary Fund elasticity estimates for trade in manufactured

TABLE 17A2-1

Estimated Price Elasticities for International Trade in Manufactured Goods

Country	$\eta$			$\eta^*$		
	Impact	Short-run	Long-run	Impact	Short-run	Long-run
Austria	0.39	0.71	1.37	0.03	0.36	0.80
Belgium	0.18	0.59	1.55	—	—	0.70
Britain	—	—	0.31	0.60	0.75	0.75
Canada	0.08	0.40	0.71	0.72	0.72	0.72
Denmark	0.82	1.13	1.13	0.55	0.93	1.14
France	0.20	0.48	1.25	—	0.49	0.60
Germany	—	—	1.41	0.57	0.77	0.77
Italy	—	0.56	0.64	0.94	0.94	0.94
Japan	0.59	1.01	1.61	0.16	0.72	0.97
Netherlands	0.24	0.49	0.89	0.71	1.22	1.22
Norway	0.40	0.74	1.49	—	0.01	0.71
Sweden	0.27	0.73	1.59	—	—	0.94
Switzerland	0.28	0.42	0.73	0.25	0.25	0.25
United States	0.18	0.48	1.67	—	1.06	1.06

**Source:** Estimates come from Jacques R. Artus and Malcolm D. Knight, *Issues in the Assessment of the Exchange Rates of Industrial Countries*. Occasional Paper 29. Washington, D.C.: International Monetary Fund, July 1984, table 4. Dashes indicate unavailable estimates.

goods. The table reports export and import price elasticities measured over three successively longer time horizons and thus allows for the possibility that export and import demands adjust gradually to relative price changes, as in our discussion of the J-curve effect. Impact elasticities measure the response of trade flows to relative price changes in the first six months after the change, short-run elasticities apply to a one-year adjustment period, and long-run elasticities measure the response of trade flows to the price changes over a hypothetical infinite adjustment period.

For most countries, the impact elasticities are so small that the sum of the impact export and import elasticities is less than 1. Since the impact elasticities usually fail to satisfy the Marshall-Lerner condition, the estimates support the existence of an initial J-curve effect that causes the current account to deteriorate immediately following a real depreciation.

It is also true, however, that most countries represented in the table satisfy the Marshall-Lerner condition in the short run and that virtually all do so in the long run. The evidence is therefore consistent with the assumption made in the chapter: Except over short time periods, a real depreciation is likely to improve the current account, while a real appreciation is likely to worsen it.



## The *IS-LM* Model and the *DD-AA* Model

In this appendix we examine the relationship between the *DD-AA* model of the chapter and another model frequently used to answer questions in international macroeconomics, the *IS-LM* model. The *IS-LM* model generalizes the *DD-AA* model by allowing the real domestic interest rate to affect aggregate demand.

The diagram usually used to analyze the *IS-LM* model has the nominal interest rate and output, rather than the nominal exchange rate and output, on its axes. Like the *DD-AA* diagram, the *IS-LM* diagram determines the short-run equilibrium of the economy as the intersection of two individual market equilibrium curves, called *IS* and *LM*. The *IS* curve is the schedule of nominal interest rates and output levels at which the output and foreign exchange markets are in equilibrium, while the *LM* curve shows points at which the money market is in equilibrium.<sup>22</sup>

The *IS-LM* model assumes that investment, and some forms of consumer purchases (such as purchases of autos and other durable goods), are negatively related to the expected real interest rate. When the expected real interest rate is low, firms find it profitable to borrow and undertake investment plans. (The appendix to Chapter 6 presented a model of this link between investment and the real interest rate.) A low expected real interest rate also makes it more profitable to carry inventories rather than alternative assets. For both these reasons, we would expect investment to rise when the expected real interest rate falls. Similarly, because consumers find borrowing cheap and saving unattractive when the real interest rate is low, interest-responsive consumer purchases also rise when the real interest rate falls. As Appendix 1 to Chapter 17 shows, however, theoretical arguments as well as the evidence suggest the consumption response to the interest rate is weaker than the investment response.

In the *IS-LM* model, aggregate demand is therefore written as a function of the real exchange rate, disposable income, and the real interest rate,

$$\begin{aligned} D(EP^*/P, Y - T, R - \pi^e) = & C(Y - T, R - \pi^e) + I(R - \pi^e) \\ & + G + CA(EP^*/P, Y - T, R - \pi^e), \end{aligned}$$

where  $\pi^e$  is the expected inflation rate and  $R - \pi^e$  therefore is the expected real interest rate. The model assumes that  $P$ ,  $P^*$ ,  $G$ ,  $T$ ,  $R^*$ , and  $E^e$  are all given. (To simplify the notation, we've left  $G$  out of the aggregate demand function  $D$ .)

<sup>22</sup>In a closed-economy context, the original exposition of the IS-LM model is in J. R. Hicks, “Mr. Keynes and the ‘Classics’: A Suggested Interpretation,” *Econometrica* 5 (April 1937), pp. 147–159. Hicks’s article still makes enjoyable and instructive reading today. The name *IS* comes from the fact that in a closed economy (but not necessarily in an open economy!), the output market is in equilibrium when investment ( $I$ ) and saving ( $S$ ) are equal. Along the *LM* schedule, real money demand ( $L$ ) equals the real money supply ( $M^s/P$  in our notation). The open-economy version of the model, with the expectations assumption  $E = E^e$  made for simplicity, is called the *Mundell-Fleming model*. Columbia University economist Robert Mundell won a Nobel Prize in 1999 for his work on the model.

To find the *IS* curve of  $R$  and  $Y$  combinations such that aggregate demand equals output,

$$Y = D(EP^*/P, Y - T, R - \pi^e),$$

we must first write this output market equilibrium condition so that it does not depend on  $E$ .

We solve for  $E$  using the interest parity condition,  $R = R^* + (E^e - E)/E$ . If we solve this equation for  $E$ , the result is

$$E = E^e/(1 + R - R^*).$$

Substitution of this expression into the aggregate demand function shows that we can express the condition for output market equilibrium as

$$Y = D[E^e P^*/P(1 + R - R^*), Y - T, R - \pi^e].$$

To get a complete picture of how output changes affect goods market equilibrium, we must remember that the inflation rate in the economy depends positively on the gap between actual output,  $Y$ , and “full-employment” output,  $Y^f$ . We therefore write  $\pi^e$  as an increasing function of that gap:

$$\pi^e = \pi^e(Y - Y^f).$$

Under this assumption on expectations, the goods market is in equilibrium when

$$Y = D[E^e P^*/P(1 + R - R^*), Y - T, R - \pi^e(Y - Y^f)].$$

This condition shows that a fall in the nominal interest rate  $R$  raises aggregate demand through two channels: (1) Given the expected future exchange rate, a fall in  $R$  causes a domestic currency depreciation that improves the current account. (2) Given expected inflation, a fall in  $R$  directly encourages consumption and investment spending that falls only partly on imports. Only the second of these channels—the effect of the interest rate on spending—would be present in a closed-economy *IS-LM* model.

The *IS* curve is found by asking how output must respond to such a fall in the interest rate to maintain output market equilibrium. Since a fall in  $R$  raises aggregate demand, the output market will remain in equilibrium after  $R$  falls only if  $Y$  rises. The *IS* curve therefore slopes downward, as shown in Figure 17A3-1. Even though the *IS* and *DD* curves both reflect output market equilibrium, *IS* slopes downward while *DD* slopes upward. The reason for this difference is that the interest rate and the exchange rate are inversely related by the interest parity condition, given the expected future exchange rate.<sup>23</sup>

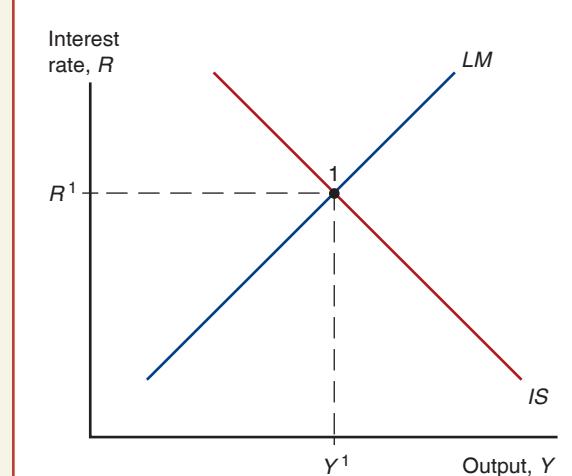
The slope of the *LM* (or money market equilibrium) curve is much easier to derive. Money market equilibrium holds when  $M^s/P = L(R, Y)$ . Because a rise in the interest rate reduces money demand, it results in an excess supply of money for a given output level. To maintain equilibrium in the money market after  $R$  rises,  $Y$  must therefore rise also (because a rise in output stimulates the transactions demand for money). The *LM* curve thus has a positive slope, as shown in Figure 17A3-1. The intersection of the *IS* and *LM* curves at point 1 determines the short-run equilibrium values of output,  $Y^1$ , and the nominal interest rate,  $R^1$ . The equilibrium interest rate, in turn, determines a short-run equilibrium exchange rate through the interest parity condition.

---

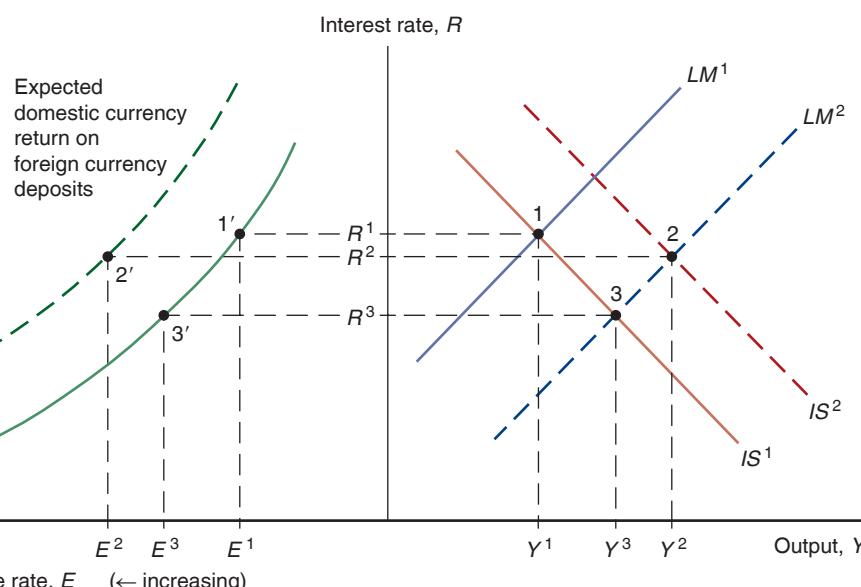
<sup>23</sup>In concluding that *IS* has a negative slope, we have argued that a rise in output reduces the excess demand for output caused by a fall in  $R$ . This reduction in excess demand occurs because while consumption demand rises with a rise in output, it rises by less. Notice, however, that a rise in output also raises expected inflation and thus stimulates demand. So it is conceivable that a fall in output, not a rise, eliminates excess demand in the output market. We assume that this perverse possibility (which would give an upward-sloping *IS* curve) does not arise.

**FIGURE 17A3-1**  
**Short-Run Equilibrium in the IS-LM Model**

Equilibrium is at point 1, where the output and asset markets simultaneously clear.



The  $IS-LM$  model can be used to analyze the effects of monetary and fiscal policies. A temporary increase in the money supply, for example, shifts  $LM$  to the right, lowering the interest rate and expanding output. A *permanent* increase in the money supply, however, shifts  $LM$  to the right but also shifts  $IS$  to the right, since in an open economy that schedule depends on  $E^e$ , which now rises. The right-hand side of Figure 17A3-2



**FIGURE 17A3-2**

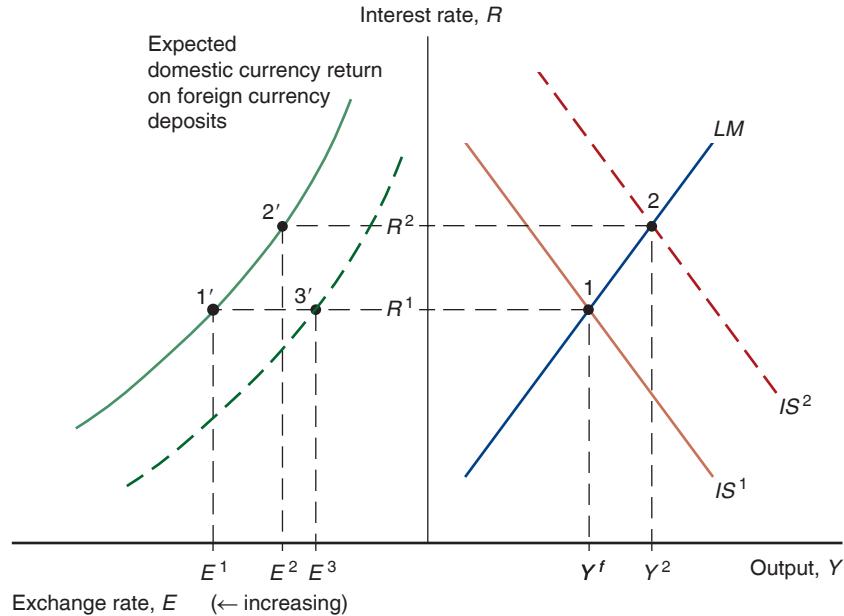
### Effects of Permanent and Temporary Increases in the Money Supply in the $IS-LM$ Model

A temporary increase in the money supply shifts the  $LM$  curve alone to the right, but a permanent increase shifts both the  $IS$  and  $LM$  curves in that direction.

shows these shifts. At the new short-run equilibrium following a permanent increase in the money supply (point 2), output and the interest rate are higher than at the short-run equilibrium (point 3) following an equal temporary increase. The nominal interest rate can even be higher at point 2 than at point 1. This possibility provides another example of how the Fisher expected inflation effect of Chapter 16 can push the nominal interest rate upward after a monetary expansion.

The left-hand side of Figure 17A3-2 shows how the monetary changes affect the exchange rate. This is our usual picture of equilibrium in the foreign exchange market, but it has been reflected through the vertical axis so that a movement to the left along the horizontal axis is an increase in  $E$  (a depreciation of the home currency). The interest rate  $R^2$  following a permanent increase in the money supply implies foreign exchange market equilibrium at point 2', since the accompanying rise in  $E^e$  shifts the curve that measures the expected domestic currency return on foreign deposits. That curve does not shift if the money supply increase is temporary, so the equilibrium interest rate  $R^3$  that results in this case leads to foreign exchange equilibrium at point 3'.

Fiscal policy is analyzed in Figure 17A3-3, which assumes a long-run equilibrium starting point. A temporary increase in government spending, for example, shifts  $IS^1$  to the right but has no effect on  $LM$ . The new short-run equilibrium at point 2 shows a rise in output and a rise in the nominal interest rate, while the foreign exchange market equilibrium at point 2' indicates a temporary currency appreciation. A permanent increase in government spending causes a fall in the long-run equilibrium exchange rate



**FIGURE 17A3-3**

### Effects of Permanent and Temporary Fiscal Expansions in the $IS-LM$ Model

Temporary fiscal expansion has a positive effect on output while permanent fiscal expansion has none.

and thus a fall in  $E^e$ . The  $IS$  curve therefore does not shift out as much as in the case of a temporary policy. In fact, it does not shift at all: As in the  $DD-AA$  model, *a permanent fiscal expansion has no effect on output or the home interest rate*. The reason why permanent fiscal policy moves are weaker than transitory ones can be seen in the figure's left-hand side (point 3'). The accompanying change in exchange rate expectations generates a sharper currency appreciation and thus, through the response of net exports, a complete "crowding out" effect on aggregate demand.<sup>24</sup>

---

<sup>24</sup>One way the  $IS-LM$  model differs from the  $DD-AA$  model is that in the former, monetary expansion can cause a deterioration of the current account (even when there are no J-curve effects) by lowering the real interest rate and thus encouraging domestic spending. We leave it to the interested student to derive the  $IS-LM$  version of the  $XX$  curve discussed in Chapter 17.



## FIXED EXCHANGE RATES AND FOREIGN EXCHANGE INTERVENTION

In the past several chapters, we developed a model that helps us understand how a country's exchange rate and national income are determined by the interaction of asset and output markets. Using that model, we saw how monetary and fiscal policies can be used to maintain full employment and a stable price level.

To keep our discussion simple, we assumed exchange rates are *completely flexible*, that is, that national monetary authorities themselves do not trade in the foreign exchange market to influence exchange rates. In reality, however, the assumption of complete exchange rate flexibility is not always accurate. As we mentioned earlier, the world economy operated under a system of *fixed* dollar exchange rates between the end of World War II and 1973, with central banks routinely trading foreign exchange to hold their exchange rates at internationally agreed levels. Industrialized countries now operate under a hybrid system of **managed floating exchange rates**—a system in which governments may attempt to moderate exchange rate movements without keeping exchange rates rigidly fixed. A number of developing countries have retained some form of government exchange rate fixing, for reasons that we discuss in Chapter 22.

In this chapter, we study how central banks intervene in the foreign exchange market to fix exchange rates and how macroeconomic policies work when exchange rates are fixed. The chapter will help us understand the role of central bank foreign exchange intervention in the determination of exchange rates under a system of managed floating.

### LEARNING GOALS

After reading this chapter, you will be able to:

- Understand how a central bank must manage monetary policy so as to fix its currency's value in the foreign exchange market.

- Describe and analyze the relationship among the central bank's foreign exchange reserves, its purchases and sales in the foreign exchange market, and the money supply.
- Explain how monetary, fiscal, and sterilized intervention policies affect the economy under a fixed exchange rate.
- Discuss causes and effects of balance of payments crises.
- Describe how alternative multilateral systems for pegging exchange rates work.

## Why Study Fixed Exchange Rates?

A discussion of fixed exchange rates may seem outdated in an era when newspaper headlines regularly highlight sharp changes in the exchange rates of the major industrial-country currencies. There are four reasons why we must understand fixed exchange rates, however, before analyzing contemporary macroeconomic policy problems:

1. *Managed floating.* As previously noted, central banks may intervene in currency markets to influence exchange rates. So while the dollar exchange rates of the industrial countries' currencies are not currently fixed by governments, they are not always left to fluctuate freely, either. The system of partially floating dollar exchange rates is sometimes referred to as a *dirty float*, to distinguish it from a clean float in which governments make no direct attempts to influence foreign currency values. (The model of the exchange rate developed in earlier chapters assumed a cleanly floating, or completely flexible, exchange rate.)<sup>1</sup> Because the present monetary system is a hybrid of the "pure" fixed and floating rate systems, an understanding of fixed exchange rates gives us insight into the effects of foreign exchange intervention when it occurs under floating rates.
2. *Regional currency arrangements.* Some countries belong to *exchange rate unions*, organizations whose members agree to fix their mutual exchange rates while allowing their currencies to fluctuate in value against the currencies of nonmember countries. Currently, for example, Denmark pegs its currency's value against the euro within the European Union's *Exchange Rate Mechanism*.
3. *Developing countries.* While industrial countries generally allow their currencies to float against the dollar, these economies account for less than a sixth of the world's countries. Many developing countries try to peg or manage the values of their currencies, often in terms of the dollar, but sometimes in terms of a nondollar currency or some "basket" of currencies chosen by the authorities. Morocco pegs its currency to a basket, for example, while Barbados pegs to the U.S. dollar and Senegal pegs to the euro. No examination of the problems of developing

---

<sup>1</sup>It is questionable whether a truly clean float has ever existed in reality. Most government policies affect the exchange rate, and governments rarely undertake policies without considering the policies' exchange rate implications.

countries would get very far without taking into account the implications of fixed exchange rates.<sup>2</sup>

4. *Lessons of the past for the future.* Fixed exchange rates were the norm in many periods, such as the decades before World War I, between the mid-1920s and 1931, and again between 1945 and 1973. Today, economists and policy makers dissatisfied with floating exchange rates sometimes propose new international agreements that would resurrect a form of fixed-rate system. Would such plans benefit the world economy? Who would gain or lose? To compare the merits of fixed and floating exchange rates, we must understand the functioning of fixed rates.

## Central Bank Intervention and the Money Supply

In Chapter 15, we defined an economy's money supply as the total amount of currency and checking deposits held by its households and firms and assumed that the central bank determined the amount of money in circulation. To understand the effects of central bank intervention in the foreign exchange market, we need to look first at how central bank financial transactions affect the money supply.<sup>3</sup>

### The Central Bank Balance Sheet and the Money Supply

The main tool we use in studying central bank transactions in asset markets is the **central bank balance sheet**, which records the assets held by the central bank and its liabilities. Like any other balance sheet, the central bank balance sheet is organized according to the principles of double-entry bookkeeping. Any acquisition of an asset by the central bank results in a positive change on the assets side of the balance sheet, while any increase in the bank's liabilities results in a positive change on the balance sheet's liabilities side.

---

<sup>2</sup>The International Monetary Fund (IMF), an international agency that we will discuss in Chapter 19, publishes a useful classification of its member countries' exchange rate arrangements. Arrangements as of end-April 2018 can be found in its publication, *Annual Report on Exchange Arrangements and Exchange Restrictions 2018*, available at [https://www.elibrary-areaer.imf.org/Documents/YearlyReport/AE-AER\\_2018.pdf](https://www.elibrary-areaer.imf.org/Documents/YearlyReport/AE-AER_2018.pdf). (The IMF calls these "de facto" exchange rate arrangements because they reflect what countries actually do, not what they say they do.) As of April 2018, 66 countries, including most major industrial countries and the 19 countries that then used the euro, had "floating" or "freely floating" currencies. (The euro itself floats independently against the dollar and other major currencies, as we discuss in Chapter 21.) Thirteen countries did not have their own currencies (including Ecuador, Panama, and Zimbabwe). Forty-three had "conventional pegs" of the type we will study in this chapter, while 11 more had "currency boards" (a special type of fixed exchange rate scheme to which the analysis of this chapter largely applies). Among the conventional pegs were many mostly poorer countries but also oil-rich Saudi Arabia and European Union member Denmark. Twenty-seven more countries, including Egypt, Macedonia, and Vietnam, had "stabilized arrangements" in which the authorities fix exchange rates, but without any formal commitment to do so. One country (Tonga) allowed its exchange rate to move within horizontal bands; 18 others had "crawling pegs," in which the exchange rate is forced to follow a predetermined path, or "crawl-like arrangements." (The latter group includes China.) Finally, 13 countries (including Syria, Cambodia, and Algeria) had "other managed arrangements." As you can see, there is a bewildering array of different exchange rate systems, and the case of fixed exchange rates remains quite important.

<sup>3</sup>As we pointed out in Chapter 13, government agencies other than central banks may intervene in the foreign exchange market, but their intervention operations, unlike those of central banks, have no significant effect on national money supplies. (In the terminology introduced in the coming pages, interventions by agencies other than central banks are automatically sterilized.) To simplify our discussion, we continue to assume, when the assumption is not misleading, that central banks alone carry out foreign exchange intervention.

A balance sheet for the central bank of the imaginary country of Pecunia is shown here.

### Central Bank Balance Sheet

<b>Assets</b>	<b>Liabilities</b>		
Foreign assets	\$1,000	Deposits held by private banks	\$ 500
Domestic assets	\$1,500	Currency in circulation	\$2,000

The assets side of the Bank of Pecunia's balance sheet lists two types of assets, *foreign assets* and *domestic assets*. Foreign assets consist mainly of foreign currency bonds owned by the central bank. These foreign assets make up the central bank's official international reserves, and their level changes when the central bank intervenes in the foreign exchange market by buying or selling foreign exchange. For historical reasons discussed later in this chapter, a central bank's international reserves also include any gold that it owns. The defining characteristic of international reserves is that they be either claims on foreigners or a universally acceptable means of making international payments (for example, gold). In the present example, the central bank holds \$1,000 in foreign assets.

Domestic assets are central bank holdings of claims to future payments by its own citizens and domestic institutions. These claims usually take the form of domestic government bonds and loans to domestic private banks. The Bank of Pecunia owns \$1,500 in domestic assets. Its total assets therefore equal \$2,500, the sum of foreign and domestic asset holdings.

The liabilities side of the balance sheet lists as liabilities the deposits of private banks and currency in circulation, both notes and coin. (Nonbank firms and households generally cannot deposit money at the central bank, while banks generally hold central bank deposits as partial backing for their own liabilities.) Private bank deposits are liabilities of the central bank because the money may be withdrawn whenever private banks need it. Currency in circulation is considered a central bank liability partly for historical reasons: At one time, central banks were obliged to give a certain amount of gold or silver to anyone wishing to exchange domestic currency for one of those precious metals. The preceding balance sheet shows that Pecunia's private banks have deposited \$500 at the central bank. Currency in circulation equals \$2,000, so the central bank's total liabilities amount to \$2,500.

The central bank's total assets equal its total liabilities plus its net worth, which we have assumed in the present example to be zero. Because changes in central bank net worth are not important to our analysis, we will ignore them.<sup>4</sup>

The additional assumption that net worth is constant means that the changes in central bank assets we will consider automatically cause equal changes in central bank liabilities. When the central bank purchases an asset, for example, it can pay for it in one of two ways. A cash payment raises the supply of currency in circulation by the amount of the bank's asset purchase. A payment by check promises the check's owner a central bank deposit equal in value to the asset's price. When the recipient of the check deposits it in her account at a private bank, the private bank's claims on the central bank (and thus the central bank's liabilities to private banks) rise by the same amount. In either case, the central bank's purchase of assets automatically causes an equal increase in

---

<sup>4</sup>There are several ways in which a central bank's net worth (also called the central bank's *capital*) could change. For example, the government might allow its central bank to keep a fraction of the interest earnings on its assets, and this interest flow would raise the bank's net worth if reinvested. Such changes in net worth tend to be small enough empirically that they can usually be ignored for purposes of macroeconomic analysis. However, see end-of-chapter problem 19.

its liabilities. Similarly, asset sales by the central bank involve either the withdrawal of currency from circulation or the reduction of private banks' claims on the central bank, and thus a fall in central bank liabilities to the private sector.

An understanding of the central bank balance sheet is important because changes in the central bank's assets cause changes in the domestic money supply. The preceding paragraph's discussion of the equality between changes in central bank assets and liabilities illustrates the mechanism at work.

When the central bank buys an asset from the public, for example, its payment—whether cash or check—directly enters the money supply. The increase in central bank liabilities associated with the asset purchase thus causes the money supply to expand. The money supply shrinks when the central bank sells an asset to the public because the cash or check the central bank receives in payment goes out of circulation, reducing the central bank's liabilities to the public. Changes in the level of central bank asset holdings cause the money supply to change in the same direction because they require equal changes in the central bank's liabilities.

The process we have described may be familiar to you from studying central bank open-market operations in earlier courses. By definition, open-market operations involve the purchase or sale of domestic assets, but official transactions in foreign assets have the same direct effect on the money supply. You will also recall that when the central bank buys assets, for example, the accompanying increase in the money supply is generally *larger* than the initial asset purchase because of multiple deposit creation within the private banking system. This *money multiplier* effect, which magnifies the impact of central bank transactions on the money supply, reinforces our main conclusion: *Any central bank purchase of assets automatically results in an increase in the domestic money supply, while any central bank sale of assets automatically causes the money supply to decline.<sup>5</sup>*

### Foreign Exchange Intervention and the Money Supply

To see in greater detail how foreign exchange intervention affects the money supply, let's look at an example. Suppose the Bank of Pecunia goes to the foreign exchange market and sells \$100 worth of foreign bonds for Pecunian money. The sale reduces official holdings of foreign assets from \$1,000 to \$900, causing the assets side of the central bank balance sheet to shrink from \$2,500 to \$2,400.

The payment the Bank of Pecunia receives for these foreign assets automatically reduces its liabilities by \$100 as well. If the Bank of Pecunia is paid with domestic currency, the currency goes into its vault and out of circulation. Currency in circulation therefore falls by \$100. (Problem 15 at the end of the chapter considers the identical money supply effect of payment by check.) Owing to the foreign asset sale, the central bank's balance sheet changes as follows:

**Central Bank Balance Sheet after \$100 Foreign Asset Sale (Buyer Pays with Currency)**

Assets	Liabilities		
Foreign assets	\$ 900	Deposits held by private banks	\$ 500
Domestic assets	\$1,500	Currency in circulation	\$1,900

<sup>5</sup>For a detailed description of multiple deposit creation and the money multiplier, see Frederic S. Mishkin, *The Economics of Money, Banking and Financial Markets*, 12th edition, Chapter 14 (New York: Pearson, 2018).

After the sale, assets still equal liabilities, but both have declined by \$100, equal to the amount of currency the Bank of Pecunia has taken out of circulation through its intervention in the foreign exchange market. The change in the central bank's balance sheet implies a decline in the Pecunian money supply.

A \$100 *purchase* of foreign assets by the Bank of Pecunia would cause its liabilities to increase by \$100. If the central bank paid for its purchase in cash, currency in circulation would rise by \$100. If it paid by writing a check on itself, private bank deposits at the Bank of Pecunia would ultimately rise by \$100. In either case, there would be a rise in the domestic money supply.

### Sterilization

Central banks sometimes carry out equal foreign and domestic asset transactions in opposite directions to nullify the impact of their foreign exchange operations on the domestic money supply. This type of policy is called **sterilized foreign exchange intervention**. We can understand how sterilized foreign exchange intervention works by considering the following example.

Suppose once again that the Bank of Pecunia sells \$100 of its foreign assets and receives as payment a \$100 check on the private bank Pecuniacorp. This transaction causes the central bank's foreign assets and its liabilities to decline simultaneously by \$100, and there is therefore a fall in the domestic money supply. If the central bank wishes to negate the effect of its foreign asset sale on the money supply, it can *buy* \$100 of domestic assets, such as government bonds. This second action increases the Bank of Pecunia's domestic assets *and* its liabilities by \$100 and thus completely cancels the money supply effect of the \$100 sale of foreign assets. If the central bank buys the government bonds with a check, for example, the two transactions (a \$100 sale of foreign assets and a \$100 purchase of domestic assets) have the following net effect on its balance sheet:

**Central Bank Balance Sheet after Sterilized \$100 Foreign Asset Sale**

<b>Assets</b>	<b>Liabilities</b>	
Foreign assets	\$ 900	Deposits held by private banks
Domestic assets	\$1,600	Currency in circulation

**Central Bank Balance Sheet before Sterilized \$100 Foreign Asset Sale**

<b>Assets</b>	<b>Liabilities</b>	
Foreign assets	\$1,000	Deposits held by private banks
Domestic assets	\$1,500	Currency in circulation

The \$100 decrease in the central bank's foreign assets is matched with a \$100 increase in domestic assets, and the liabilities side of the balance sheet does not change. The sterilized foreign exchange sale therefore has no effect on the money supply.

Table 18-1 summarizes and compares the effects of sterilized and nonsterilized foreign exchange interventions.

### The Balance of Payments and the Money Supply

In our discussion of balance of payments accounting in Chapter 13, we defined a country's balance of payments (or official settlements balance) as net purchases of foreign assets by the home central bank less net purchases of domestic assets by foreign central

**TABLE 18-1 Effects of a \$100 Foreign Exchange Intervention: Summary**

Domestic Central Bank's Action	Effect on Domestic Money Supply	Effect on Central Bank's Domestic Assets	Effect on Central Bank's Foreign Assets
Nonsterilized foreign exchange purchase	+\$100	0	+\$100
Sterilized foreign exchange purchase	0	-\$100	+\$100
Nonsterilized foreign exchange sale	-\$100	0	-\$100
Sterilized foreign exchange sale	0	+\$100	-\$100

banks. Looked at differently, the balance of payments equals the current account plus capital account balances *less* the nonreserve component of the financial account balance, that is, the international payments gap that central banks must finance through their reserve transactions. A home balance of payments deficit, for example, means the country's net foreign reserve liabilities are increasing: Some combination of reserve sales by the home central bank and reserve purchases by foreign central banks is covering a home current plus capital account deficit not fully matched by net private sales of assets to foreigners, or a home current account surplus that falls short of net private purchases of financial claims on foreigners.

What we have learned in this section illustrates the important connection between the balance of payments and the growth of money supplies at home and abroad. *If central banks are not sterilizing and the home country has a balance of payments surplus, for example, any associated increase in the home central bank's foreign assets implies an increased home money supply. Similarly, any associated decrease in a foreign central bank's claims on the home country implies a decreased foreign money supply.*

The extent to which a measured balance of payments disparity will affect home and foreign money supplies is, however, quite uncertain in practice. For one thing, we have to know how the burden of balance of payments adjustment is divided among central banks, that is, how much financing of the payments gap is done through home official intervention and how much through foreign. This division depends on various factors, such as the macroeconomic goals of the central banks and the institutional arrangements governing intervention (discussed later in this chapter). Second, central banks may be sterilizing to counter the monetary effects of reserve changes. Finally, as we noted at the end of Chapter 13, some central bank transactions indirectly help to finance a foreign country's balance of payments deficit, but they do not show up in the latter's published balance of payments figures. Such transactions may nonetheless affect the monetary liabilities of the bank that undertakes them.

## How the Central Bank Fixes the Exchange Rate

Having seen how central bank foreign exchange transactions affect the money supply, we can now look at how a central bank fixes the domestic currency's exchange rate through foreign exchange intervention.

To hold the exchange rate constant, a central bank must always be willing to trade currencies at the fixed exchange rate with the private actors in the foreign exchange

market. For example, to fix the yen/dollar rate at ¥120 per dollar, the Bank of Japan must be willing to buy yen with its dollar reserves, and in any amount the market desires, at a rate of ¥120 per dollar. The bank must also be willing to buy any amount of dollar assets the market wants to sell for yen at that exchange rate. If the Bank of Japan did not remove such excess supplies or demands for yen by intervening in the market, the exchange rate would have to change to restore equilibrium.

The central bank can succeed in holding the exchange rate fixed only if its financial transactions ensure that asset markets remain in equilibrium when the exchange rate is at its fixed level. The process through which asset market equilibrium is maintained is illustrated by the model of simultaneous foreign exchange and money market equilibrium used in previous chapters.

### Foreign Exchange Market Equilibrium under a Fixed Exchange Rate

To begin, we consider how equilibrium in the foreign exchange market can be maintained when the central bank fixes the exchange rate permanently at the level  $E^0$ . The foreign exchange market is in equilibrium when the interest parity condition holds, that is, when the domestic interest rate,  $R$ , equals the foreign interest rate,  $R^*$ , plus  $(E^e - E)/E$ , the expected rate of depreciation of the domestic currency against foreign currency. However, when the exchange rate is fixed at  $E^0$  and market participants expect it to remain fixed, the expected rate of domestic currency depreciation is zero. The interest parity condition therefore implies that  $E^0$  is today's equilibrium exchange rate only if

$$R = R^*.$$

Because no exchange rate change is expected by participants in the foreign exchange market, they are content to hold the available supplies of domestic and foreign currency deposits only if these offer the same interest rate.<sup>6</sup>

To ensure equilibrium in the foreign exchange market when the exchange rate is fixed permanently at  $E^0$ , the central bank must therefore hold  $R$  equal to  $R^*$ . Because the domestic interest rate is determined by the interaction of real money demand and the real money supply, we must look at the money market to complete our analysis of exchange rate fixing.

### Money Market Equilibrium under a Fixed Exchange Rate

To hold the domestic interest rate at  $R^*$ , the central bank's foreign exchange intervention must adjust the money supply so that  $R^*$  equates aggregate real domestic money demand and the real money supply:

$$M^s/P = L(R^*, Y).$$

Given  $P$  and  $Y$ , this equilibrium condition tells what the money supply must be if a permanently fixed exchange rate is to be consistent with asset market equilibrium at a foreign interest rate of  $R^*$ .

When the central bank intervenes to hold the exchange rate fixed, it must automatically adjust the domestic money supply so that money market equilibrium is

---

<sup>6</sup>Even when an exchange rate is currently fixed at some level, market participants may expect the central bank to change it. In such situations, the home interest rate must equal the foreign interest rate plus the expected depreciation rate of the domestic currency (as usual) for the foreign exchange market to be in equilibrium. We examine this type of situation later in this chapter, but for now we assume that no one expects the central bank to alter the exchange rate.

maintained with  $R = R^*$ . Let's look at an example to see how this process works. Suppose the central bank has been fixing  $E$  at the level  $E^0$  and asset markets initially are in equilibrium. Suddenly output rises. A necessary condition for holding the exchange rate permanently fixed at  $E^0$  is that the central bank restore current asset market equilibrium at that rate, *given* that people expect  $E^0$  to prevail in the future. So we frame our question as: What monetary measures keep the current exchange rate constant given unchanged expectations about the future exchange rate?

A rise in output raises the demand for domestic money, and this increase in money demand normally would push the domestic interest rate upward. To prevent the appreciation of the home currency that would occur (given that people expect an exchange rate of  $E^0$  in the future), the central bank must intervene in the foreign exchange market by buying foreign assets. This foreign asset purchase eliminates the excess demand for domestic money because the central bank issues money to pay for the foreign assets it buys. The bank automatically increases the money supply in this way until asset markets again clear with  $E = E^0$  and  $R = R^*$ .

If the central bank does not purchase foreign assets when output increases but instead holds the money stock constant, can it still keep the exchange rate fixed at  $E^0$ ? The answer is no. If the central bank did not satisfy the excess demand for money caused by a rise in output, the domestic interest rate would begin to rise above the foreign rate,  $R^*$ , to balance the home money market. Traders in the foreign exchange market, perceiving that domestic currency deposits were offering a higher rate of return (given expectations), would begin to bid up the price of domestic currency in terms of foreign currency. In the absence of central bank intervention, the exchange rate thus would fall below  $E^0$ . To prevent this appreciation, the central bank must sell domestic currency and buy foreign assets, thereby increasing the money supply and preventing any excess money demand from pushing the home interest rate above  $R^*$ .

### A Diagrammatic Analysis

The preceding mechanism of exchange rate fixing can be pictured using a diagrammatic tool developed earlier. Figure 18-1 shows the simultaneous equilibrium of the foreign exchange and domestic money markets when the exchange rate is fixed at  $E^0$  and is expected to remain fixed at  $E^0$  in the future.

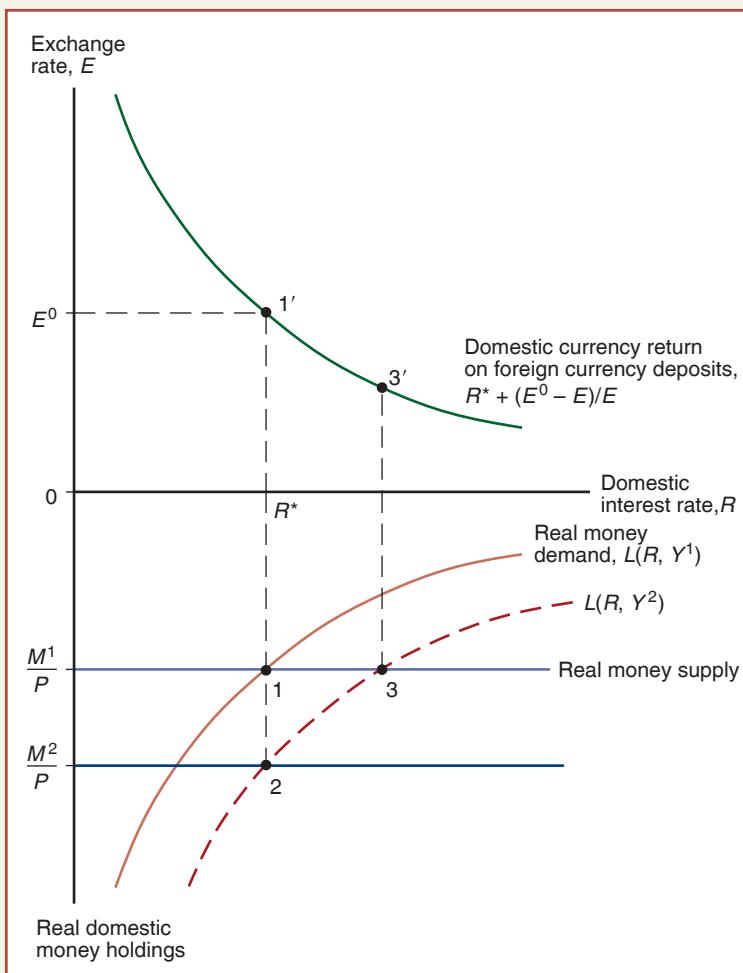
Money market equilibrium is initially at point 1 in the lower part of the figure. The diagram shows that for a given price level,  $P$ , and a given national income level,  $Y^1$ , the money supply must equal  $M^1$  when the domestic interest rate equals the foreign rate,  $R^*$ . The upper part of the figure shows the equilibrium of the foreign exchange market at point 1'. If the expected future exchange rate is  $E^0$ , the interest parity condition holds when  $R = R^*$  only if today's exchange rate also equals  $E^0$ .

To see how the central bank must react to macroeconomic changes to hold the exchange rate permanently at  $E^0$ , let's look again at the example of an increase in income. A rise in income (from  $Y^1$  to  $Y^2$ ) raises the demand for real money holdings at every interest rate, thereby shifting the aggregate money demand function in Figure 18-1 downward. As noted above, a necessary condition for maintaining the fixed rate is to restore *current* asset market equilibrium given that  $E^0$  is still the expected future exchange rate. So we can assume that the downward-sloping curve in the figure's top panel doesn't move.

If the central bank were to take no action, the new money market equilibrium would be at point 3. Because the domestic interest rate is above  $R^*$  at point 3, the currency would have to appreciate to bring the foreign exchange market to equilibrium at point 3'.

**FIGURE 18-1**
**Asset Market Equilibrium with a Fixed Exchange Rate,  $E^0$** 

To hold the exchange rate fixed at  $E^0$  when output rises from  $Y^1$  to  $Y^2$ , the central bank must purchase foreign assets and thereby raise the money supply from  $M^1$  to  $M^2$ .



The central bank cannot allow this appreciation of the domestic currency to occur if it is fixing the exchange rate, so it will buy foreign assets. As we have seen, the increase in the central bank's foreign assets is accompanied by an expansion of the domestic money supply. The central bank will continue to purchase foreign assets until the domestic money supply has expanded to  $M^2$ . At the resulting money market equilibrium (point 2 in the figure), the domestic interest rate again equals  $R^*$ . Given this domestic interest rate, the foreign exchange market equilibrium remains at point 1', with the equilibrium exchange rate still equal to  $E^0$ .

## Stabilization Policies with a Fixed Exchange Rate

Having seen how the central bank uses foreign exchange intervention to fix the exchange rate, we can now analyze the effects of various macroeconomic policies. In this section, we consider three possible policies: monetary policy, fiscal policy, and an abrupt change in the exchange rate's fixed level,  $E^0$ .

The stabilization policies we studied in Chapter 17 have surprisingly different effects when the central bank fixes the exchange rate rather than allowing the foreign exchange market to determine it. By fixing the exchange rate, the central bank gives up its ability to influence the economy through monetary policy. Fiscal policy, however, becomes a more potent tool for affecting output and employment.

As in Chapter 17, we use the *DD-AA* model to describe the economy's short-run equilibrium. You will recall that the *DD* schedule shows combinations of the exchange rate and output for which the output market is in equilibrium, the *AA* schedule shows combinations of the exchange rate and output for which the asset markets are in equilibrium, and the short-run equilibrium of the economy as a whole is at the intersection of *DD* and *AA*. To apply the model to the case of a permanently fixed exchange rate, we add the assumption that the expected future exchange rate equals the rate at which the central bank is pegging its currency.

### Monetary Policy

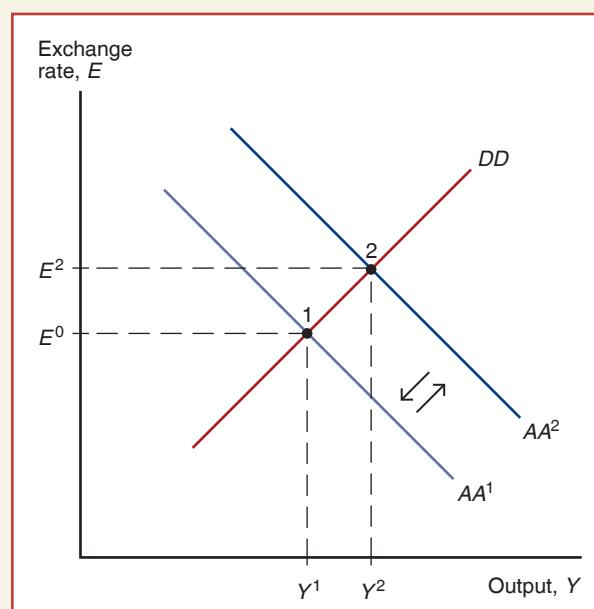
Figure 18-2 shows the economy's short-run equilibrium as point 1 when the central bank fixes the exchange rate at the level  $E^0$ . Output equals  $Y^1$  at point 1, and, as in the last section, the money supply is at the level where a domestic interest rate equal to the foreign rate ( $R^*$ ) clears the domestic money market. Now suppose that, hoping to increase output, the central bank attempts to increase the money supply through a purchase of domestic assets.

Under a floating exchange rate, the increase in the central bank's domestic assets would push the original asset market equilibrium curve  $AA^1$  rightward to  $AA^2$  and would therefore result in a new equilibrium at point 2 and a currency depreciation. To prevent this depreciation and hold the rate at  $E^0$ , the central bank sells foreign assets for domestic money in the foreign exchange market. The money the bank receives goes out of circulation, and the asset market equilibrium curve shifts back toward its initial position as the home money supply falls. Only when the money supply has returned

**FIGURE 18-2**

#### Monetary Expansion Is Ineffective under a Fixed Exchange Rate

Initial equilibrium is shown at point 1, where the output and asset markets simultaneously clear at a fixed exchange rate of  $E^0$  and an output level of  $Y^1$ . Hoping to increase output to  $Y^2$ , the central bank decides to increase the money supply by buying domestic assets and shifting  $AA^1$  to  $AA^2$ . Because the central bank must maintain  $E^0$ , however, it has to sell foreign assets for domestic currency, an action that decreases the money supply immediately and returns  $AA^2$  back to  $AA^1$ . The economy's equilibrium therefore remains at point 1, with output unchanged at  $Y^1$ .



to its original level, so that the asset market schedule is again  $AA^1$ , is the exchange rate no longer under pressure. The attempt to increase the money supply under a fixed exchange rate thus leaves the economy at its initial equilibrium (point 1). *Under a fixed exchange rate, central bank monetary policy tools are powerless to affect the economy's money supply or its output.*

This result is very different from our finding in Chapter 17 that a central bank can use monetary policy to raise the money supply and (apart from liquidity traps) output when the exchange rate floats. So it is instructive to ask why the difference arises. By purchasing domestic assets under a floating rate, the central bank causes an initial excess supply of domestic money that simultaneously pushes the domestic interest rate downward and weakens the currency. Under a fixed exchange rate, however, the central bank will resist any tendency for the currency to depreciate by selling foreign assets for domestic money and thus removing the initial excess supply of money its policy move has caused. Because any increase in the domestic money supply, no matter how small, will cause the domestic currency to depreciate, the central bank must continue selling foreign assets until the money supply has returned to its original level. In the end, the increase in the central bank's domestic assets is exactly offset by an equal *decrease* in the bank's official international reserves. Similarly, an attempt to decrease the money supply through a sale of domestic assets would cause an equal *increase* in foreign reserves that would keep the money supply from changing in the end. Under fixed rates, monetary policy can affect the composition of the central bank's assets but nothing else.

By fixing an exchange rate, then, the central bank loses its ability to use monetary policy for the purpose of macroeconomic stabilization. However, the government's second key stabilization tool, fiscal policy, is more effective under a fixed rate than under a floating rate.

## Fiscal Policy

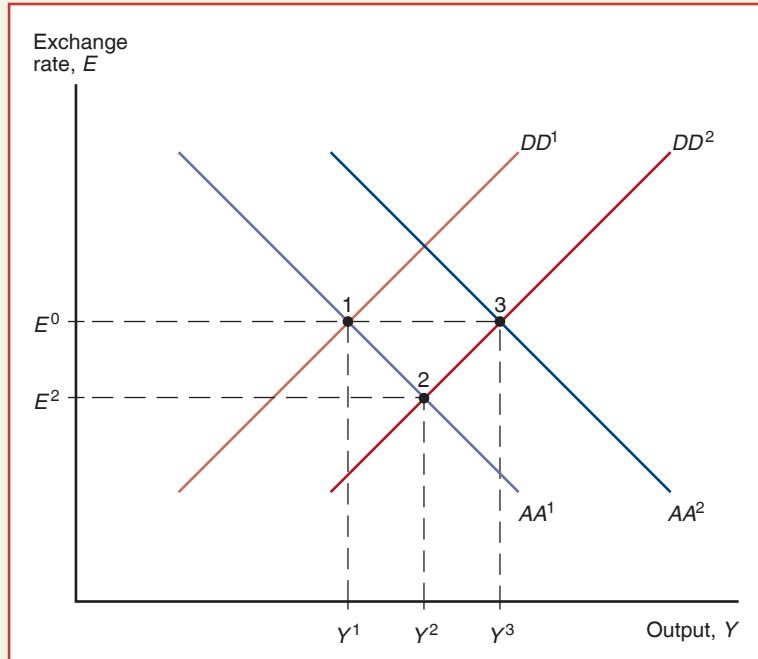
Figure 18-3 illustrates the effects of expansionary fiscal policy, such as a cut in the income tax, when the economy's initial equilibrium is at point 1. As we saw in Chapter 17, fiscal expansion shifts the output market equilibrium schedule to the right.  $DD^1$  therefore shifts to  $DD^2$  in the figure. If the central bank refrained from intervening in the foreign exchange market, output would rise to  $Y^2$  and the exchange rate would fall to  $E^2$  (a currency appreciation) as a result of a rise in the home interest rate (assuming unchanged expectations).

How does central bank intervention hold the exchange rate fixed after the fiscal expansion? The process is the one we illustrated in Figure 18-1. Initially, there is an excess demand for money because the rise in output raises money demand. To prevent the excess money demand from pushing up the home interest rate and appreciating the currency, the central bank must buy foreign assets with money, thereby increasing the money supply. In terms of Figure 18-3, intervention holds the exchange rate at  $E^0$  by shifting  $AA^1$  rightward to  $AA^2$ . At the new equilibrium (point 3), output is higher than originally, the exchange rate is unchanged, and official international reserves (and the money supply) are higher.

Unlike monetary policy, fiscal policy can affect output under a fixed exchange rate. Indeed, it is even more effective than under a floating rate! Under a floating rate, fiscal expansion is accompanied by an appreciation of the domestic currency that makes domestic goods and services more expensive in world markets and thus tends to counteract the policy's positive direct effect on aggregate demand. To prevent this appreciation, a central bank that is fixing the exchange rate is forced to expand the money supply through foreign exchange purchases. The additional expansionary effect of this

**FIGURE 18-3**
**Fiscal Expansion under a Fixed Exchange Rate**

Fiscal expansion (shown by the shift from  $DD^1$  to  $DD^2$ ) and the intervention that accompanies it (the shift from  $AA^1$  to  $AA^2$ ) move the economy from point 1 to point 3.



accompanying increase in the money supply explains why fiscal policy is more potent under a fixed rate than under a floating rate.

### Changes in the Exchange Rate

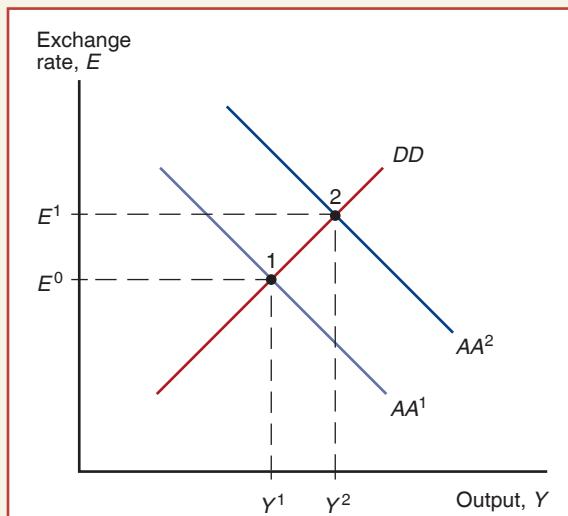
A country that is fixing its exchange rate sometimes decides on a sudden change in the foreign currency value of the domestic currency. This might happen, for example, if the country is quickly losing foreign exchange reserves because of a big current account deficit that far exceeds private financial inflows. A **devaluation** occurs when the central bank raises the domestic currency price of foreign currency,  $E$ , and a **revaluation** occurs when the central bank lowers  $E$ . All the central bank has to do to devalue or revalue is announce its willingness to trade domestic against foreign currency, in unlimited amounts, at the new exchange rate.<sup>7</sup>

Figure 18-4 shows how a devaluation affects the economy. A rise in the level of the fixed exchange rate, from  $E^0$  to  $E^1$ , makes domestic goods and services cheaper relative to foreign goods and services (given that  $P$  and  $P^*$  are fixed in the short run). Output therefore moves to the higher level  $Y^2$ , shown by point 2 on the  $DD$  schedule. Point 2, however, does not lie on the initial asset market equilibrium schedule  $AA^1$ . At point 2, there is initially an excess demand for money due to the rise in transactions

<sup>7</sup>We usually observe a subtle distinction between the terms *devaluation* and *depreciation* (and between *revaluation* and *appreciation*). Depreciation (appreciation) is a rise in  $E$  (a fall in  $E$ ) when the exchange rate floats, while devaluation (revaluation) is a rise in  $E$  (a fall in  $E$ ) when the exchange rate is fixed. Depreciation (appreciation) thus involves the active voice (as in “the currency appreciated”), while devaluation (revaluation) involves the passive voice (as in “the currency was devalued”). Put another way, devaluation (revaluation) reflects a deliberate government decision, while depreciation (appreciation) is an outcome of government actions and market forces acting together.

**FIGURE 18-4****Effect of a Currency Devaluation**

When a currency is devalued from  $E^0$  to  $E^1$ , the economy's equilibrium moves from point 1 to point 2 as both output and the money supply expand.



accompanying the output increase. This excess money demand would push the home interest rate above the world interest rate if the central bank did not intervene in the foreign exchange market. To maintain the exchange rate at its new fixed level,  $E^1$ , the central bank must therefore buy foreign assets and expand the money supply until the asset market curve reaches  $AA^2$  and passes through point 2. Devaluation therefore causes a rise in output, a rise in official reserves, and an expansion of the money supply.<sup>8</sup>

The effects of devaluation illustrate the three main reasons why governments sometimes choose to devalue their currencies. First, devaluation allows the government to fight domestic unemployment despite the lack of effective monetary policy. If government spending and budget deficits are politically unpopular, for example, or if the legislative process is slow, a government may opt for devaluation as the most convenient way of boosting aggregate demand. A second reason for devaluing is the resulting improvement in the current account, a development the government may believe to be desirable. The third motive behind devaluations, one we mentioned at the start of this subsection, is their effect on the central bank's foreign reserves. If the central bank is running low on reserves, a sudden, one-time devaluation (one that nobody expects to be repeated) can be used to draw in more reserves.

### Adjustment to Fiscal Policy and Exchange Rate Changes

If fiscal and exchange rate changes occur when there is full employment and the policy changes are maintained indefinitely, they will ultimately cause the domestic price level to move in such a way that full employment is restored. To understand this

<sup>8</sup>After the home currency is devalued, market participants expect that the new, higher exchange rate, rather than the old rate, will prevail in the future. The change in expectations alone shifts  $AA^1$  to the right, but without central bank intervention, this change by itself is insufficient to move  $AA^1$  all the way to  $AA^2$ . At point 2, as at point 1,  $R = R^*$  if the foreign exchange market clears. Because output is higher at point 2 than at point 1, however, real money demand is also higher at the former point. With  $P$  fixed, an expansion of the money supply is therefore necessary to make point 2 a position of money market equilibrium, that is, a point on the new  $AA$  schedule. Central bank purchases of foreign assets are therefore a necessary part of the economy's shift to its new fixed exchange rate equilibrium.

dynamic process, we discuss the economy's adjustment to fiscal expansion and devaluation in turn.

If the economy is initially at full employment, fiscal expansion raises output, and this rise in output above its full-employment level causes the domestic price level,  $P$ , to begin rising. As  $P$  rises, home output becomes more expensive, so aggregate demand gradually falls, returning output to the initial, full-employment level. Once this point is reached, the upward pressure on the price level comes to an end. There is no real appreciation in the short run, as there is with a floating exchange rate, but regardless of whether the exchange rate is floating or fixed, the real exchange rate appreciates *in the long run* by the same amount.<sup>9</sup> In the present case, real appreciation (a fall in  $EP^*/P$ ) takes the form of a rise in  $P$  rather than a fall in  $E$ .

At first glance, the long-run price level increase caused by a fiscal expansion under fixed rates seems inconsistent with Chapter 15's conclusion that for a given output level and interest rate, the price level and the money supply move proportionally in the long run. In fact, there is no inconsistency because fiscal expansion *does* cause a money supply increase by forcing the central bank to intervene in the foreign exchange market. To fix the exchange rate throughout the adjustment process, the central bank ultimately must increase the money supply by intervention purchases in proportion to the long-run increase in  $P$ .

The adjustment to a devaluation is similar. In fact, since a devaluation does not change long-run demand or supply conditions in the output market, the increase in the long-run price level caused by a devaluation is proportional to the increase in the exchange rate. A devaluation under a fixed rate has the same long-run effect as a proportional increase in the money supply under a floating rate. Like the latter policy, devaluation is neutral in the long run, in the sense that its only effect on the economy's long-run equilibrium is a proportional rise in all nominal prices and in the domestic money supply.

## Balance of Payments Crises and Capital Flight

Until now, we have assumed that participants in the foreign exchange market believe that a fixed exchange rate will be maintained at its current level forever. In many practical situations, however, the central bank may find it undesirable or infeasible to maintain the current fixed exchange rate. The central bank may be running short on foreign reserves, for example, or it may face high domestic unemployment. Because market participants know the central bank may respond to such situations by devaluing the currency, it would be unreasonable for them to expect the current exchange rate to be in place forever.

The market's belief in an impending change in the exchange rate gives rise to a **balance of payments crisis**, a sharp change in official foreign reserves sparked by a change in expectations about the future exchange rate. In this section, we use our model of asset market equilibrium to examine how balance of payments crises can occur under fixed exchange rates. (In later chapters we will describe a broader range of financial crises.)

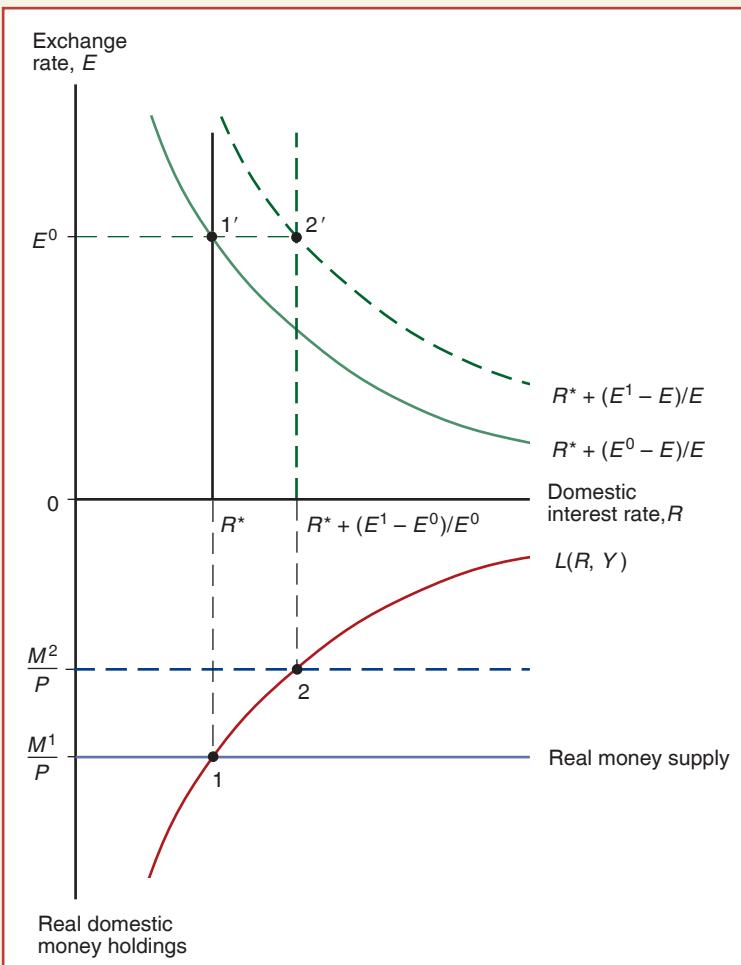
Figure 18-5 shows the asset markets in equilibrium at points 1 (the money market) and 1' (the foreign exchange market) with the exchange rate fixed at  $E^0$  and expected to remain there indefinitely.  $M^1$  is the money supply consistent with this

---

<sup>9</sup>To see this, observe that the long-run equilibrium real exchange rate,  $EP^*/P$ , must in either case satisfy the same equation,  $Y^f = D(EP^*/P, Y^f - T, I, G)$ , where  $Y^f$ , as in Chapter 17, is the full-employment output level.

**FIGURE 18-5**  
**Capital Flight, the Money Supply, and the Interest Rate**

To hold the exchange rate fixed at  $E^0$  after the market decides it will be devalued to  $E^1$ , the central bank must use its reserves to finance a private financial outflow that shrinks the money supply and raises the home interest rate.



initial equilibrium. Suppose a sudden deterioration in the current account, for example, leads the foreign exchange market to expect the government to devalue in the future and adopt a new fixed exchange rate,  $E^1$ , that is higher than the current rate,  $E^0$ . The figure's upper part shows this change in expectations as a rightward shift in the curve that measures the expected domestic currency return on foreign currency deposits. Since the current exchange rate still is  $E^0$ , equilibrium in the foreign exchange market (point 2') requires a rise in the domestic interest rate to  $R^* + (E^1 - E^0)/E^0$ , which now equals the expected domestic currency return on foreign currency assets.

Initially, however, the domestic interest rate remains at  $R^*$ , which is below the new expected return on foreign assets. This differential causes an excess demand for foreign currency assets in the foreign exchange market; to continue holding the exchange rate at  $E^0$ , the central bank must sell foreign reserves and thus shrink the domestic money supply. The bank's intervention comes to an end once the money supply has fallen to  $M^2$ , so that the money market is in equilibrium at the interest rate  $R^* + (E^1 - E^0)/E^0$  that clears the foreign exchange market (point 2). *The expectation of a future devaluation causes a balance of payments crisis marked by a sharp fall in reserves and a rise in the home interest rate above the world interest rate. Similarly, an expected revaluation*

*causes an abrupt rise in foreign reserves together with a fall in the home interest rate below the world rate.*

The reserve loss accompanying a devaluation scare is often labeled **capital flight**. Residents flee the domestic currency by selling it to the central bank for foreign exchange; they then invest the foreign currency abroad. At the same time, foreigners convert holdings of home assets into their own currencies and repatriate the proceeds. When fears of devaluation arise because the central bank's reserves are low to begin with, capital flight is of particular concern to the government. By pushing reserves even lower, capital flight may force the central bank to devalue sooner and by a larger amount than planned.<sup>10</sup>

What causes currency crises? Often, a government is following policies that are not consistent with maintaining a fixed exchange rate over the longer term. Once market expectations take those policies into account, the country's interest rates inevitably are forced up. For example, a country's central bank may be buying bonds from the domestic government to allow the government to run continuing fiscal deficits. Since these central bank purchases of domestic assets cause ongoing losses of central bank foreign exchange reserves, reserves will fall toward a point at which the central bank may find itself without the means to support the exchange rate. As the possibility of a collapse rises over time, so will domestic interest rates, until the central bank indeed runs out of foreign reserves and the fixed exchange rate is abandoned. (Appendix 2 to this chapter presents a detailed model of this type and shows that the collapse of the currency peg can be caused by a sharp *speculative attack* in which currency traders suddenly acquire all of the central bank's remaining foreign reserves.) The only way for the central bank to avoid this fate is to stop bankrolling the government deficit, hopefully forcing the government to live within its means.

In the previous example, exhaustion of foreign reserves and an end of the fixed exchange rate are inevitable, given macroeconomic policies. The financial outflows that accompany a currency crisis only hasten an inevitable collapse, one that would have occurred anyway, albeit in slower motion, even if private financial flows could be banned. Not all crises are of this kind, however. An economy can be vulnerable to currency speculation even without being in such bad shape that a collapse of its fixed exchange rate regime is inevitable. Currency crises that occur in such circumstances often are called **self-fulfilling currency crises**, although it is important to keep in mind that the government may ultimately be responsible for such crises by creating or tolerating domestic economic weaknesses that invite speculators to attack the currency.

As an example, consider an economy in which domestic commercial banks' liabilities are mainly short-term deposits, and in which many of the banks' loans to businesses are likely to go unpaid in the event of a recession. If speculators suspect there will be a devaluation, interest rates will climb, raising banks' borrowing costs sharply while at the same time causing a recession and reducing the value of bank assets. To prevent domestic banks from going out of business, the central bank may well lend money to the banks, in the process losing foreign reserves and possibly its ability to go on pegging the exchange rate. In this case, it is the emergence of devaluation expectations among currency traders that pushes the economy into crisis and forces the exchange rate to be changed.

---

<sup>10</sup>If aggregate demand depends on the real interest rate (as in the *IS-LM* model of intermediate macroeconomics courses), capital flight reduces output by shrinking the money supply and raising the real interest rate. This possibly contractionary effect of capital flight is another reason why policy makers hope to avoid it.

For the rest of this chapter, we continue to assume that no exchange rate changes are expected by the market when exchange rates are fixed. But we draw on the preceding analysis repeatedly in later chapters when we discuss various countries' unhappy experiences with fixed exchange rates.

## Managed Floating and Sterilized Intervention

Under managed floating, monetary policy is influenced by exchange rate changes without being completely subordinate to the requirements of a fixed rate. Instead, the central bank faces a trade-off between domestic objectives such as employment or the inflation rate and exchange rate stability. Suppose the central bank tries to expand the money supply to fight domestic unemployment, for example, but at the same time carries out foreign asset sales to restrain the resulting depreciation of the home currency. The foreign exchange intervention will tend to *reduce* the money supply, hindering but not necessarily nullifying the central bank's attempt to reduce unemployment.

Discussions of foreign exchange intervention in policy forums and newspapers often appear to ignore the intimate link between intervention and the money supply that we previously explored in detail. In reality, however, these discussions often assume that foreign exchange intervention is being *sterilized*, so that opposite domestic asset transactions prevent it from affecting the money supply. Empirical studies of central bank behavior confirm this assumption and consistently show central banks to have practiced sterilized intervention under flexible and fixed exchange rate regimes alike.

In spite of widespread sterilized intervention, there is considerable disagreement among economists about its effects. In this section, we study the role of sterilized intervention in exchange rate management.<sup>11</sup>

### Perfect Asset Substitutability and the Ineffectiveness of Sterilized Intervention

When a central bank carries out a sterilized foreign exchange intervention, its transactions leave the domestic money supply unchanged. A rationale for such a policy is difficult to find using the model of exchange rate determination previously developed, for the model predicts that without an accompanying change in the money supply, the central bank's intervention will not affect the domestic interest rate and therefore will not affect the exchange rate.

Our model also predicts that sterilization will be fruitless under a fixed exchange rate. The example of a fiscal expansion illustrates why a central bank might wish to sterilize under a fixed rate and why our model says that such a policy will fail. Recall that to hold the exchange rate constant when fiscal policy becomes more expansive, the central bank must buy foreign assets and expand the home money supply. The policy raises output, but it eventually also causes inflation, which the central bank may try to avoid by sterilizing the increase in the money supply that its fiscal policy has induced. As quickly as the central bank sells domestic assets to reduce the money supply, however, it will have to *buy* more foreign assets to keep the exchange rate fixed. The ineffectiveness of monetary policy under a fixed exchange rate implies that sterilization is a self-defeating policy.

<sup>11</sup>In the United States, the Federal Reserve Bank of New York carries out intervention for the Federal Reserve System, routinely sterilizing the interventions. See Federal Reserve Bank of New York, "Fedpoint: U.S. Foreign Exchange Intervention," <http://www.newyorkfed.org/aboutthefed/fedpoint/fed44.html>.

The key feature of our model that leads to these results is the assumption that the foreign exchange market is in equilibrium only when the expected returns on domestic and foreign currency bonds are the same.<sup>12</sup> This assumption is often called **perfect asset substitutability**. Two assets are perfect substitutes when, as our model assumed, investors don't care how their portfolios are divided between them, provided both yield the same expected rate of return. With perfect asset substitutability in the foreign exchange market, the exchange rate is therefore determined so that the interest parity condition holds. When this is the case, a central bank can do nothing through foreign exchange intervention that it could not do as well through purely domestic open-market operations.

## CASE STUDY

### Can Markets Attack a Strong Currency? The Case of Switzerland, 2011–2015

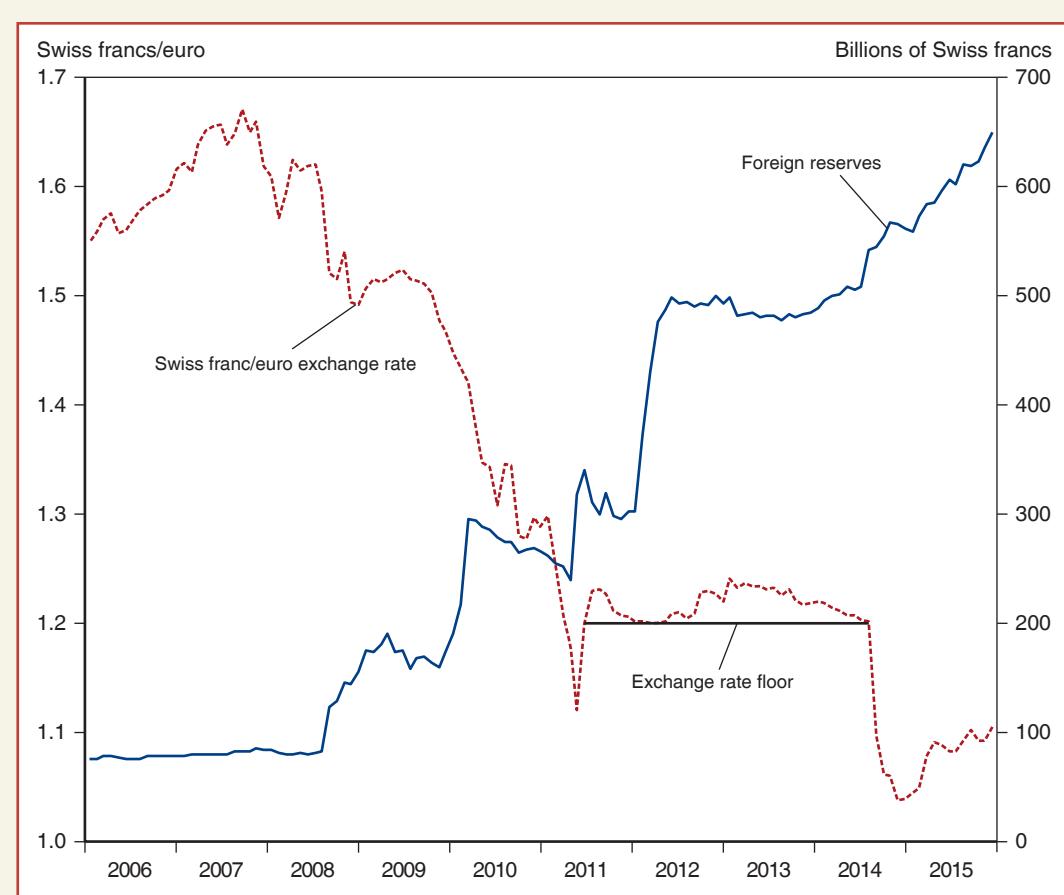
The Swiss franc has traditionally been a “safe haven” currency: a currency investors buy when they fear instability in the global economy. When a simmering global financial crisis intensified in September 2008 (as we discuss in later chapters), the usual pattern repeated itself. Investors (many of whom were Swiss and owned substantial assets abroad) rushed to put their money into Switzerland. As you can see in Figure 18-6, the Swiss franc price of euros fell sharply (a Swiss franc appreciation), while the reserves of the central bank, the Swiss National Bank (SNB), rose sharply. (Reserves are measured on the figure's right-hand vertical axis.) Reserves rose because the SNB was intervening in the foreign exchange market, buying euros with francs so as to slow the franc's appreciation.

The SNB cut interest rates quickly, both to stimulate economic activity and to discourage appreciation. By November 2008, Swiss short-term interest rates were essentially at zero (where they remained). The Swiss franc's exchange rate briefly stabilized at levels slightly over CHF 1.5 per euro.

But renewed pressure came when the euro zone entered its own financial crisis late in 2009 (as we discuss in Chapter 21). The Swiss franc appreciated dramatically against the euro and reserves ballooned as a result of further foreign exchange purchases. Switzerland began to suffer from deflation and unemployment as import prices fell and as export industries (such as the watch industry) found themselves priced out of world markets. In August 2011, the currency reached CHF 1.12 per euro.

At that point, the SNB took radical action: In September 2011, it pledged to defend a minimal euro price of CHF 1.2 per euro. It would allow the Swiss franc to depreciate up from that floor, but not to appreciate below it. To accomplish this, the SNB had to buy all the euros the market wished to sell it at a rate of CHF 1.2 per euro.

<sup>12</sup>We are assuming that all interest-bearing (nonmoney) assets denominated in the same currency, whether illiquid time deposits or government bonds, are perfect substitutes in portfolios. We will generally use the single term “bonds” to refer to all these assets.

**FIGURE 18-6**

### The Swiss Franc's Exchange Rate against the Euro and Swiss Foreign Exchange Reserves, 2006–2016

The Swiss National Bank intervened heavily to slow the Swiss franc's appreciation against the euro, setting a floor under the price of the euro in September 2011 and abandoning that floor in January 2015.

**Source:** Swiss National Bank.

Figure 18-6 shows that Switzerland's international reserves subsequently rose even more rapidly. As money flooded in from speculators betting that the currency floor would not hold, SNB foreign currency reserves reached a level equal to about three-quarters of a year's national output! When a weak currency is under attack, the defending central bank, which is selling reserves, may run out. But is there any limit to its ability to hold down a *strong* currency by *buying* reserves with its own money, which it has the power to print without limit? The main potential brake is that by buying reserves and allowing the money supply to increase, the central bank sparks excessive inflation. But this did not happen. In part because

of the neighboring euro zone's dismal economic growth, Switzerland remained in deflation long after it stepped in to limit the Swiss franc's appreciation.

The exchange rate floor was kept in place through the end of 2014, while foreign reserves stabilized at half a trillion Swiss francs. On January 15, 2015, in a surprise move, the SNB abandoned the 1.2 francs per euro exchange rate floor and the franc appreciated all the way to 0.8 francs per euro in intraday trading (not shown in the graph in Figure 18-6, which displays the value of the exchange rate only at the end of each month). After the strong initial appreciation, the franc gave back some ground, stabilizing at around 1.1 francs per euro in 2016 (before entering a temporary period of weakness the year after). Heavy intervention by the SNB helped to buy this stability.

What prompted the SNB to scrap the exchange rate floor? In January 2015, people believed the ECB was preparing a program of unconventional asset purchases to respond to low inflation and slow growth in the euro zone. That program would have weakened the euro further, putting more upward pressure on the Swiss franc and forcing even more, possibly large, SNB purchases of euros. With its holdings of euros already massive, the SNB was taking the risk of a huge capital loss (measured in Swiss francs) should it ever abandon the exchange rate floor and allow the franc to rise against the euro. Rather than increasing its exposure to loss and pegging the franc even further from its natural equilibrium, the SNB decided the time had come to fold.

Swiss exporters naturally complained about the move, which the CEO of the Swatch group called a "tsunami." The change also had important consequences in other countries, for example in Poland, where many citizens had taken out low-interest Swiss franc loans rather than the more expensive Polish zloty loans—essentially a risky carry trade. Poland's borrowing in Swiss francs amounted to roughly 8 percent of its GDP at the time the Swiss franc was freed. More than half a million Polish homeowners with Swiss franc mortgages saw their monthly payments rise between 15 and 20 percent after the Swiss franc's appreciation. As of this writing, the Polish government was introducing a law to transfer these foreign exchange losses to the banks that had extended the mortgage loans.

In contrast to perfect asset substitutability, **imperfect asset substitutability** exists when it is possible for assets' expected returns to differ in equilibrium. This situation is in contrast to the one we assumed in Chapter 14, in which uncovered interest parity (UIP) links interest differentials strictly to expected exchange rate movements. As we also saw in Chapter 14, the main factor that may lead to imperfect asset substitutability in the foreign exchange market is *risk*. If bonds denominated in different currencies have different degrees of risk, investors may be willing to earn lower expected returns on bonds that are less risky. Correspondingly, they will hold a very risky asset only if its expected return is relatively high.

In a world of perfect asset substitutability, participants in the foreign exchange market care only about expected rates of return; since these rates are determined by monetary policy, actions such as sterilized intervention that do not affect the money supply also do not affect the exchange rate. Under imperfect asset substitutability, however, both risk *and* return matter, so central bank actions that alter the riskiness of domestic currency assets can move the exchange rate even when the money supply

does not change. To understand how sterilized intervention can alter the riskiness of domestic currency assets, however, we must modify our model of equilibrium in the foreign exchange market.

### Foreign Exchange Market Equilibrium under Imperfect Asset Substitutability

When domestic and foreign currency bonds are perfect substitutes, the foreign exchange market is in equilibrium only if the (uncovered) interest parity condition (UIP) holds:

$$R = R^* + (E^e - E)/E. \quad (18-1)$$

When domestic and foreign currency bonds are *imperfect* substitutes, however, the condition above does not hold in general. Instead, equilibrium in the foreign exchange market requires that the domestic interest rate equal the expected domestic currency return on foreign bonds *plus* a **risk premium**,  $\rho$ , that reflects the difference between the riskiness of domestic and foreign bonds:

$$R = R^* + (E^e - E)/E + \rho. \quad (18-2)$$

Notice that if *covered* interest parity (CIP) holds true, then condition (14-3) from Chapter 14 will apply. If at the same time UIP does *not* hold, however, then condition (14-4) will not hold either. Instead, combining expressions (14-3) and (18-2), we see that instead of (14-4), the forward exchange rate satisfies

$$(F - E)/E = (E^e - E)/E + \rho.$$

In words, under imperfect asset substitutability, the forward premium on a currency equals its expected depreciation rate *plus* the risk premium. The preceding derivation assumed that CIP holds; but if it does not, the determination of the forward exchange rate becomes even more complex, as we will discuss in Chapter 20.

Appendix 1 to this chapter develops a detailed model of foreign exchange market equilibrium with imperfect asset substitutability. The main conclusion of that model is that the risk premium on domestic assets rises when the stock of domestic government bonds available to be held by the public rises and falls when the central bank's domestic assets rise. It is not hard to grasp the economic reasoning behind this result. Private investors become more vulnerable to unexpected changes in the home currency's exchange rate as the stock of domestic government bonds they hold rises. Investors will be unwilling to assume the increased risk of holding more domestic government debt, however, unless they are compensated by a higher expected rate of return on domestic currency assets. An increased stock of domestic government debt will therefore raise the difference between the expected returns on domestic and foreign currency bonds. Similarly, when the central bank buys domestic assets, the market need no longer hold them; private vulnerability to home currency exchange rate risk is thus lower, and the risk premium on home currency assets falls.

This alternative model of foreign market equilibrium implies that the risk premium depends positively on the stock of domestic government debt, denoted by  $B$ , less the domestic assets of the central bank, denoted by  $A$ :

$$\rho = \rho(B - A). \quad (18-3)$$

The risk premium on domestic bonds therefore rises when  $B - A$  rises. This relation between the risk premium and the central bank's domestic asset holdings allows the

bank to affect the exchange rate through sterilized foreign exchange intervention. It also implies that official operations in domestic and foreign assets may differ in their asset market impacts.<sup>13</sup>

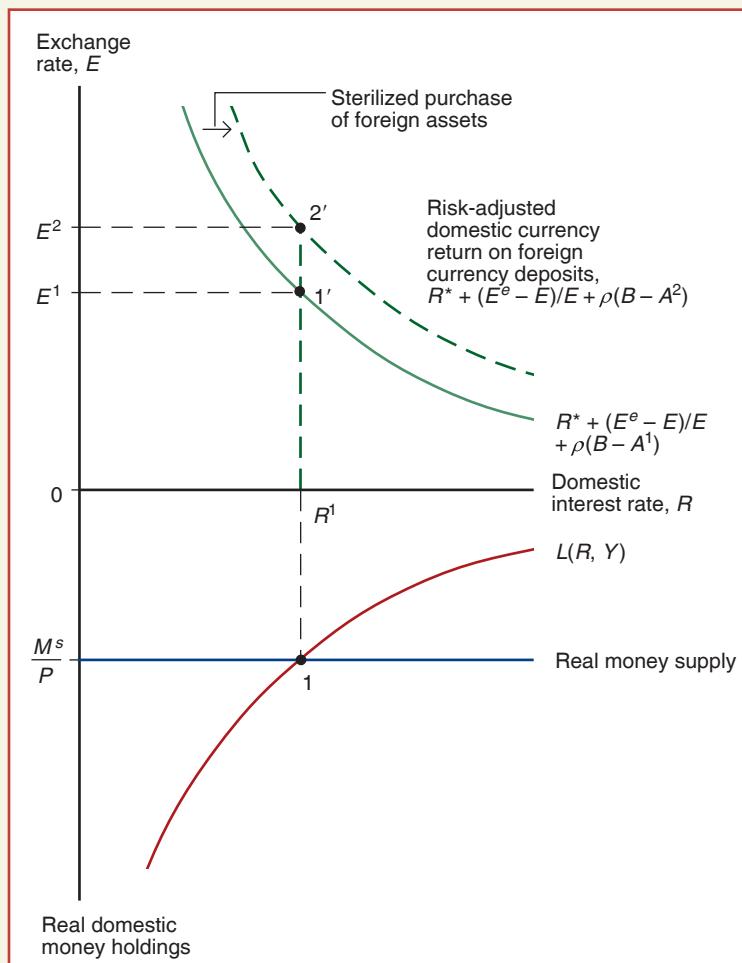
### The Effects of Sterilized Intervention with Imperfect Asset Substitutability

Figure 18-7 modifies our earlier picture of asset market equilibrium by adding imperfect asset substitutability to illustrate how sterilized intervention can affect the exchange rate. The lower part of the figure, which shows the money market in equilibrium at point 1, does not change. The upper part of the figure is also much the same as before, except that the downward-sloping schedule now shows how the *sum* of the expected domestic currency return on foreign assets *and* the risk premium depends on the exchange rate. (The curve continues to slope downward because the risk premium itself is assumed not

**FIGURE 18-7**

#### Effect of a Sterilized Central Bank Purchase of Foreign Assets under Imperfect Asset Substitutability

A sterilized purchase of foreign assets leaves the money supply unchanged but raises the risk-adjusted return that domestic currency deposits must offer in equilibrium. As a result, the return curve in the upper panel shifts up and to the right. Other things equal, this depreciates the domestic currency from  $E^1$  to  $E^2$ .



<sup>13</sup>The stock of central bank domestic assets is often called central bank *domestic credit*.

to depend on the exchange rate.) Equilibrium in the foreign exchange market is at point 1', which corresponds to a domestic government debt of  $B$  and central bank domestic asset holdings of  $A^1$ . At that point, the domestic interest rate equals the risk-adjusted domestic currency return on foreign deposits [as in equation (18-2)].

Let's use the diagram to examine the effects of a sterilized purchase of foreign assets by the central bank. By matching its purchase of foreign assets with a sale of domestic assets, the central bank holds the money supply constant at  $M^s$  and avoids any change in the lower part of Figure 18-7. As a result of its domestic asset sale, however, the central bank's domestic assets are lower (they fall to  $A^2$ ) and the stock of domestic assets that the market must hold,  $B - A^2$ , is therefore higher than the initial stock  $B - A^1$ . This increase pushes the risk premium  $\rho$  upward and shifts to the right the negatively sloped schedule in the upper part of the figure. The foreign exchange market now settles at point 2' and the domestic currency depreciates to  $E^2$ .

With imperfect asset substitutability, even sterilized purchases of foreign exchange cause the home currency to depreciate. Similarly, sterilized sales of foreign exchange cause the home currency to appreciate. A slight modification of our analysis shows that the central bank can also use sterilized intervention to hold the exchange rate fixed as it varies the money supply to achieve domestic objectives such as full employment. In effect, the exchange rate and monetary policy can be managed independently of each other in the short run when sterilized intervention is effective.

### Evidence on the Effects of Sterilized Intervention

Little evidence has been found to support the idea that for richer countries with highly developed financial markets, sterilized intervention exerts a major influence over exchange rates independent of the stances of monetary and fiscal policies.<sup>14</sup> As we noted in Chapter 14, however, there is also considerable evidence against the view that bonds denominated in different currencies are perfect substitutes.<sup>15</sup> Some economists conclude from these conflicting results that while risk premiums are important, they do not depend on central bank asset transactions in the simple way our model assumes. Others contend that the tests that have been used to detect the effects of sterilized intervention are flawed. Given the meager evidence that sterilized intervention has a reliable effect on advanced-economy exchange rates, however, a skeptical attitude is probably in order when considering the policy options available to major central banks like the Federal Reserve, the European Central Bank, and the Bank of Japan. When financial markets are less developed, however, as in many poorer countries, sterilized intervention can be effective, and many of these countries do practice it in some form.<sup>16</sup>

Our discussion of sterilized intervention has assumed that it does not change the market's exchange rate expectations. If market participants are unsure about the *future* direction of macroeconomic policies, however, sterilized intervention may give an indication of where the central bank expects (or desires) the exchange rate to move. This

<sup>14</sup>For evidence on sterilized intervention, see the Further Readings entry by Sarno and Taylor as well as the December 2000 issue of the *Journal of International Financial Markets, Institutions, and Money*.

<sup>15</sup>See our discussion in Chapter 20 as well as the paper by Froot and Thaler in that chapter's Further Readings.

<sup>16</sup>See, for example, Olivier J. Blanchard, Gustavo Adler, and Irineu de Carvalho Filho, "Can Foreign Exchange Intervention Stem Exchange Rate Pressures from Global Capital Flow Shocks?" International Monetary Fund Working Paper WP/15/159, July 2015. The greater effectiveness of intervention outside the advanced economies stems from frictions (including administrative controls) in international financial transactions as well as thinner markets for foreign exchange.

**signaling effect of foreign exchange intervention**, in turn, can alter the market's view of future monetary or fiscal policies and cause an immediate exchange rate change even when bonds denominated in different currencies are perfect substitutes.

The signaling effect is most important when the government is unhappy with the exchange rate's level and declares in public that it will alter monetary or fiscal policies to bring about a change. By simultaneously intervening on a sterilized basis, the central bank sometimes lends credibility to this announcement. A sterilized purchase of foreign assets, for example, may convince the market that the central bank intends to bring about a home currency depreciation because the bank will lose money if an appreciation occurs instead. Even central banks must watch their budgets!

However, a government may be tempted to exploit the signaling effect for temporary benefits even when it has no intention of changing monetary or fiscal policy to bring about a different long-run exchange rate. The result of crying, "Wolf!" too often is the same in the foreign exchange market as elsewhere. If governments do not follow up on their exchange market signals with concrete policy moves, the signals soon become ineffective. Thus, we cannot view intervention signaling as a policy weapon to be wielded independently of monetary and fiscal policy.<sup>17</sup>

## Reserve Currencies in the World Monetary System

Until now, we have studied a single country that fixes its exchange rate in terms of a hypothetical single foreign currency by trading domestic for foreign assets when necessary. In the real world there are many currencies, and it is possible for a country to manage the exchange rates of its domestic currency against some foreign currencies while allowing them to float against others.

This section and the next adopt a global perspective and study the macroeconomic behavior of the world economy under two possible systems for fixing the exchange rates of *all* currencies against each other.

The first such fixed-rate system is very much like the one we have been studying. In it, one currency is singled out as a **reserve currency**, the currency central banks hold in their international reserves, and each nation's central bank fixes its currency's exchange rate against the reserve currency by standing ready to trade domestic money for reserve assets at that rate. Between the end of World War II and 1973, the U.S. dollar was the main reserve currency and almost every country pegged the dollar exchange rate of its money.

The second fixed-rate system (studied in the next section) is a **gold standard**. Under a gold standard, central banks peg the prices of their currencies in terms of gold and hold gold as official international reserves. The heyday of the international gold standard was between 1870 and 1914, although many countries attempted unsuccessfully to restore a permanent gold standard after the end of World War I in 1918.

Both reserve currency standards and the gold standard result in fixed exchange rates between *all* pairs of currencies in the world. But the two systems have very different implications about how countries share the burden of balance of payments financing and about the growth and control of national money supplies.

---

<sup>17</sup>For discussion of the role played by the signaling effect, see Kathryn M. Dominguez and Jeffrey A. Frankel, *Does Foreign Exchange Intervention Work?* (Washington, D.C.: Institute for International Economics, 1993); and Richard T. Baillie, Owen F. Humpage, and William P. Osterberg, "Intervention from an Information Perspective," *Journal of International Financial Markets, Institutions, and Money* 10 (December 2000), pp. 407–421.

## The Mechanics of a Reserve Currency Standard

As a leading illustration of the workings of a reserve currency system, consider the system based on the U.S. dollar set up at the end of World War II. Under that system, every central bank fixed the dollar exchange rate of its currency through foreign exchange market trades of domestic currency for dollar assets. The frequent need to intervene meant that each central bank had to have on hand sufficient dollar reserves to meet any excess supply of its currency that might arise. Central banks therefore held a large portion of their international reserves in the form of U.S. Treasury bills and short-term dollar deposits, which pay interest and can be turned into cash at relatively low cost.

Because each central bank fixed its currency's dollar price, the exchange rate between any two currencies was automatically fixed as well through arbitrage in the foreign exchange market. How did this process work? Consider the following example based on the French franc and the deutsche mark, which were the currencies of France and Germany prior to the introduction of the euro. Let's suppose the French franc price of dollars was fixed at FFr 5 per dollar while the deutsche mark price of dollars was fixed at DM 4 per dollar. The exchange rate between the franc and the DM had to remain constant at  $DM\ 0.80\ per\ franc = (DM\ 4\ per\ dollar) \div (FFr\ 5\ per\ dollar)$ , even though no central bank was directly trading francs for DM to hold the relative price of those two currencies fixed. At a DM/FFr rate of DM 0.85 per franc, for example, you could have made a sure profit of \$6.25 by selling \$100 to the former French central bank, the Bank of France, for  $(\$100) \times (FFr\ 5\ per\ dollar) = FFr\ 500$ , selling your FFr 500 in the foreign exchange market for  $(FFr\ 500) \times (DM\ 0.85\ per\ franc) = DM\ 425$ , and then selling the DM to the German Bundesbank (Germany's central bank until 1999) for  $(DM\ 425) \div (DM\ 4\ per\ dollar) = \$106.25$ . With everyone trying to exploit this profit opportunity by selling francs for DM in the foreign exchange market, however, the DM would have appreciated against the franc until the DM/FFr rate reached DM 0.80 per franc. Similarly, at a rate of DM 0.75 per franc, pressure in the foreign exchange market would have forced the DM to depreciate against the franc until the rate of DM 0.80 per franc was reached.

Even though each central bank tied its currency's exchange rate only to the dollar, market forces automatically held all other exchange rates—called cross rates—constant at the values implied by the dollar rates. Thus, the post–World War II exchange rate system was one in which exchange rates between any two currencies were fixed.<sup>18</sup>

## The Asymmetric Position of the Reserve Center

In a reserve currency system, the country whose currency is held as reserves occupies a special position because it never has to intervene in the foreign exchange market. The reason is that if there are  $N$  countries with  $N$  currencies in the world, there are only  $N - 1$  exchange rates against the reserve currency. If the  $N - 1$  nonreserve currency countries fix their exchange rates against the reserve currency, there is no exchange rate left for the reserve center to fix. Thus, the center country need never intervene and bears none of the burden of financing its balance of payments.

This set of arrangements puts the reserve-issuing country in a privileged position because it can use its monetary policy for macroeconomic stabilization even though it has fixed exchange rates. We saw earlier in this chapter that when a country must

---

<sup>18</sup>The rules of the postwar system actually allowed currencies' dollar values to move as much as 1 percent above or below the “official” values. This meant cross rates could fluctuate by as much as 4 percent.

intervene to hold an exchange rate constant, any attempt to expand its money supply is bound to be frustrated by losses of international reserves. But because the reserve center is the one country in the system that can enjoy fixed exchange rates without the need to intervene, it is still able to use monetary policy for stabilization purposes.

What would be the effect of a purchase of domestic assets by the central bank of the reserve currency country? The resulting expansion in its money supply would momentarily push its interest rate below those prevailing abroad, and thereby cause an excess demand for foreign currencies in the foreign exchange market. To prevent their currencies from appreciating against the reserve currency, all other central banks in the system would be forced to buy reserve assets with their own currencies, expanding their money supplies and pushing their interest rates down to the level established by the reserve center. Output throughout the world, as well as at home, would expand after a purchase of domestic assets by the reserve country.

Our account of monetary policy under a reserve currency system points to a basic asymmetry. The reserve country has the power to affect its own economy, as well as foreign economies, by using monetary policy. Other central banks are forced to relinquish monetary policy as a stabilization tool and instead must passively “import” the monetary policy of the reserve center because of their commitment to peg their currencies to the reserve currency.

This inherent asymmetry of a reserve system places immense economic power in the hands of the reserve country and is therefore likely to lead eventually to policy disputes within the system. Such problems helped cause the breakdown of the postwar “dollar standard” in 1973, a topic we discuss in Chapter 19.

## The Gold Standard

An international gold standard avoids the asymmetry inherent in a reserve currency standard by avoiding the “*N*th currency” problem. Under a gold standard, each country fixes the price of its currency in terms of gold by standing ready to trade domestic currency for gold whenever necessary to defend the official price. Because there are *N* currencies and *N* prices of gold in terms of those currencies, no single country occupies a privileged position within the system: Each is responsible for pegging its currency’s price in terms of the official international reserve asset, gold.

### The Mechanics of a Gold Standard

Because countries tie their currencies to gold under a gold standard, official international reserves take the form of gold. Gold standard rules also require each country to allow unhindered imports and exports of gold across its borders. Under these arrangements, a gold standard, like a reserve currency system, results in fixed exchange rates between all currencies. For example, if the dollar price of gold is pegged at \$35 per ounce by the Federal Reserve while the pound price of gold is pegged at £14.58 per ounce by Britain’s central bank, the Bank of England, the dollar/pound exchange rate must be constant at  $(\$35 \text{ per ounce}) \div (\text{£}14.58 \text{ per ounce}) = \$2.40 \text{ per pound}$ . The same arbitrage process that holds cross exchange rates fixed under a reserve currency system keeps exchange rates fixed under a gold standard as well.<sup>19</sup>

---

<sup>19</sup>In practice, the costs of shipping gold and insuring it in transit determined narrow “gold points” within which currency exchange rates could fluctuate.

## Symmetric Monetary Adjustment under a Gold Standard

Because of the inherent symmetry of a gold standard, no country in the system occupies a privileged position by being relieved of the commitment to intervene. By considering the international effects of a purchase of domestic assets by one central bank, we can see in more detail how monetary policy works under a gold standard.

Suppose the Bank of England decides to increase its money supply through a purchase of domestic assets. The initial increase in Britain's money supply will put downward pressure on British interest rates and make foreign currency assets more attractive than British assets. Holders of pound deposits will attempt to sell them for foreign deposits, but no *private* buyers will come forward. Under floating exchange rates, the pound would depreciate against foreign currencies until interest parity had been reestablished. This depreciation cannot occur when all currencies are tied to gold, however. Why not? Because central banks are obliged to trade their currencies for gold at fixed rates, unhappy holders of pounds can sell these to the Bank of England for gold, sell the gold to other central banks for their currencies, and use these currencies to purchase deposits that offer interest rates higher than the interest rate on pounds. Britain therefore experiences a private financial outflow and foreign countries experience an inflow.

This process reestablishes equilibrium in the foreign exchange market. The Bank of England loses foreign reserves since it is forced to buy pounds and sell gold to keep the pound price of gold fixed. Foreign central banks gain reserves as they *buy* gold with their currencies. Countries share equally in the burden of balance of payments adjustment. Because official foreign reserves are declining in Britain and increasing abroad, the British money supply is falling, pushing the British interest rate back up, and foreign money supplies are rising, pushing foreign interest rates down. Once interest rates have again become equal across countries, asset markets are in equilibrium and there is no further tendency for the Bank of England to lose gold or for foreign central banks to gain it. The total world money supply (not the British money supply) ends up being higher by the amount of the Bank of England's domestic asset purchase. Interest rates are lower throughout the world.

Our example illustrates the symmetric nature of international monetary adjustment under a gold standard. Whenever a country is losing reserves and seeing its money supply shrink as a consequence, foreign countries are gaining reserves and seeing their money supplies expand. In contrast, monetary adjustment under a reserve currency standard is highly asymmetric. Countries can gain or lose reserves without inducing any change in the money supply of the reserve currency country, and only the latter country has the ability to influence domestic and world monetary conditions.<sup>20</sup>

## Benefits and Drawbacks of the Gold Standard

Advocates of the gold standard argue that it has another desirable property besides symmetry. Because central banks throughout the world are obliged to fix the money price of gold, they cannot allow their money supplies to grow more rapidly than real money demand, since such rapid monetary growth eventually raises the money prices

<sup>20</sup>Originally, gold coins were a substantial part of the currency supply in gold-standard countries. A country's gold losses to foreigners therefore did not have to take the form of a fall in central bank gold holdings: Private citizens could melt gold coins into ingots and ship them abroad, where they were either reminted as foreign gold coins or sold to the foreign central bank for paper currency. In terms of our earlier analysis of the central bank balance sheet, circulating gold coins are considered to make up a component of the monetary base that is not a central bank liability. Either form of gold export would thus result in a fall in the domestic money supply and an increase in foreign money supplies.

of all goods and services, including gold. A gold standard therefore places automatic limits on the extent to which central banks can cause increases in national price levels through expansionary monetary policies. These limits can make the real values of national monies more stable and predictable, thereby enhancing the transaction economies arising from the use of money (see Chapter 15). No such limits to money creation exist under a reserve currency system; the reserve currency country faces no automatic barrier to unlimited money creation.

Offsetting this potential benefit of a gold standard are some drawbacks:

1. The gold standard places undesirable constraints on the use of monetary policy to fight unemployment. In a worldwide recession, it might be desirable for all countries to expand their money supplies jointly even if this were to raise the price of gold in terms of national currencies.
2. Tying currency values to gold ensures a stable overall price level only if the relative price of gold and other goods and services is stable. For example, suppose the dollar price of gold is \$35 per ounce while the price of gold in terms of a typical output basket is one-third of a basket per ounce. This implies a price level of \$105 per output basket. Now suppose that there is a major gold discovery in South America and the relative price of gold in terms of output falls to one-fourth of a basket per ounce. With the dollar price of gold unchanged at \$35 per ounce, the price level would have to rise from \$105 to \$140 per basket. In fact, studies of the gold standard era do reveal surprisingly large price level fluctuations arising from such changes in gold's relative price.<sup>21</sup>
3. An international payments system based on gold is problematic because central banks cannot increase their holdings of international reserves as their economies grow unless there are continual new gold discoveries. Every central bank would need to hold some gold reserves to fix its currency's gold price and serve as a buffer against unforeseen economic mishaps. Central banks might thereby bring about world unemployment as they attempted to compete for reserves by selling domestic assets and thus shrinking their money supplies.
4. The gold standard could give countries with potentially large gold production, such as Russia and South Africa, considerable ability to influence macroeconomic conditions throughout the world through market sales of gold.

Because of these drawbacks, few economists favor a return to the gold standard today. As early as 1923, the British economist John Maynard Keynes characterized gold as a “barbarous relic” of an earlier international monetary system.<sup>22</sup> While most central banks continue to hold some gold as part of their international reserves, the price of gold now plays no special role in influencing countries’ monetary policies.

### The Bimetallic Standard

Up until the early 1870s, many countries adhered to a **bimetallic standard** in which the currency was based on both silver and gold. The United States was bimetallic from 1837 until the Civil War, although the major bimetallic power of the day was France, which abandoned bimetallism for gold in 1873.

---

<sup>21</sup>See, for example, Richard N. Cooper, “The Gold Standard: Historical Facts and Future Prospects,” *Brookings Papers on Economic Activity* 1 (1982), pp. 1–45.

<sup>22</sup>See John Maynard Keynes, “Alternative Aims in Monetary Policy,” reprinted in his *Essays in Persuasion* (New York: W. W. Norton & Company, 1963). For a dissenting view on the gold standard, see Robert A. Mundell, “International Monetary Reform: The Optimal Mix in Big Countries,” in James Tobin, ed., *Macroeconomics, Prices and Quantities* (Washington, D.C.: Brookings Institution, 1983), pp. 285–293.

In a bimetallic system, a country's mint will coin specified amounts of gold *or* silver into the national currency unit (typically for a fee). In the United States before the Civil War, for example, 371.25 grains of silver (a grain being 1/480th of an ounce) or 23.22 grains of gold could be turned into, respectively, a silver or a gold dollar. That mint parity made gold worth  $371.25/23.22 = 16$  times as much as silver.

The mint parity could differ from the market relative price of the two metals, however, and when it did, one or the other might go out of circulation. For example, if the price of gold in terms of silver were to rise to 20:1, a depreciation of silver relative to the mint parity of 16:1, no one would want to turn gold into gold dollar coins at the mint. More dollars could be obtained by instead using the gold to buy silver in the market, and then having the silver coined into dollars. As a result, gold would tend to go out of monetary circulation when its relative market price rose above the mint relative price, and silver coin would tend to disappear in the opposite case.

The advantage of bimetallism was that it might reduce the price level instability resulting from use of one of the metals alone. Were gold to become scarce and expensive, cheaper and relatively abundant silver would become the predominant form of money, thereby mitigating the deflation that a pure gold standard would imply. Notwithstanding this advantage, by the late 19th century most of the world had followed Britain, the leading industrial power of the day, onto a pure gold standard.

### The Gold Exchange Standard

Halfway between the gold standard and a pure reserve currency standard is the **gold exchange standard**. Under a gold exchange standard, central banks' reserves consist of gold *and* currencies whose prices in terms of gold are fixed, and each central bank fixes its exchange rate to a currency with a fixed gold price. A gold exchange standard can operate like a gold standard in restraining excessive monetary growth throughout the world, but it allows more flexibility in the growth of international reserves, which can consist of assets besides gold. A gold exchange standard is, however, subject to the other limitations of a gold standard listed previously.

The post–World War II reserve currency system centered on the dollar was, in fact, originally set up as a gold exchange standard. While foreign central banks did the job of pegging exchange rates, the U.S. Federal Reserve was responsible for holding the dollar price of gold at \$35 an ounce. By the mid-1960s, the system operated in practice more like a pure reserve currency system than a gold standard. For reasons explained in Chapter 19, President Richard M. Nixon unilaterally severed the dollar's link to gold in August 1971, shortly before industrial countries abandoned the system of fixed dollar exchange rates.

## CASE STUDY

### The Demand for International Reserves

The chapter explained that a central bank's assets consist of two components: domestic currency assets, such as domestic government bonds, and foreign currency assets, the bank's international reserves. Historically and up to the present day, central banks have prized international reserves because they can be traded to foreigners for goods and services even in circumstances, such as financial crises and wars, when the value of domestic assets may come into doubt. Gold played the role of international reserve

asset *par excellence* under the gold standard—and while the U.S. dollar remains the main reserve asset today, economists debate how long that unique American privilege can last. Because central banks and governments may alter their policies to affect national holdings of international reserves, it is important to understand the factors that influence countries' demands for international reserves.

A good starting point for thinking about international reserves is the model in this chapter in which domestic and foreign bonds are perfect substitutes, the exchange rate is fixed, and confidence in the fixed exchange rate is absolute. In that model, our result that monetary policy is ineffective also implies that individual central banks can painlessly acquire all the international reserves they need! They do so simply by an open-market sale of domestic assets, which immediately causes an equal inflow of foreign assets but no change in the home interest rate or in other domestic economic conditions. In real life, matters may not be so easy because the circumstances in which countries need reserves are precisely those in which the preceding conditions of perfect confidence in creditworthiness and in the exchange rate peg are likely to be violated. As a result, central banks manage their reserves in a *precautionary* manner, holding a stock that they believe will be sufficient in future times of crisis.<sup>23</sup>

As usual, there are costs as well as benefits of acquiring and holding reserves, and the level of reserves that a central bank wishes to hold will reflect a balance between those costs and benefits. Some monetary authorities (such as that of Hong Kong) value reserves so highly that the entire money supply is backed by foreign assets—there are no domestic monetary assets at all. In most cases, however, central banks hold both domestic and foreign assets, with the optimal level of reserves determined by the trade-off between costs and benefits.

Starting in the mid-1960s, economists developed and sought empirical verification of formal theories of the demand for international reserves. In that setting, with international capital markets much more limited than they are today (see Chapter 20), a major threat to reserves was a sudden drop in export earnings, and central banks measured reserve levels in terms of the number of months of import needs those reserves could cover. Accordingly, the variability levels of exports, imports, and international financial flows, all of which could cause reserves to fluctuate too close to zero, were viewed as prime determinants of the demand for international reserves. In this theory, higher variability would raise the demand for reserves. An additional variable raising the average demand for reserves might be the adjustment cost countries would suffer if they suddenly had to raise exports or reduce imports to generate a trade surplus, or raise interest rates to draw in foreign capital. Higher economic openness could make such adjustments easier, thereby reducing the demand for reserves, but might also make an economy more vulnerable to foreign trade shocks, thereby raising desired reserve holdings.<sup>24</sup>

On the other hand, the main cost of holding reserves is their interest cost. A central bank that switches from domestic bonds to foreign reserves loses the interest

---

<sup>23</sup>A different problem arises under a system like the gold standard, where the global stock of international reserves may be limited (in contrast to a reserve currency system). The difficulty is that all countries cannot simultaneously increase their reserve holdings, so efforts by many countries to do so at the same time will affect global economic conditions. End-of-chapter problem 18 asks you to think about this case.

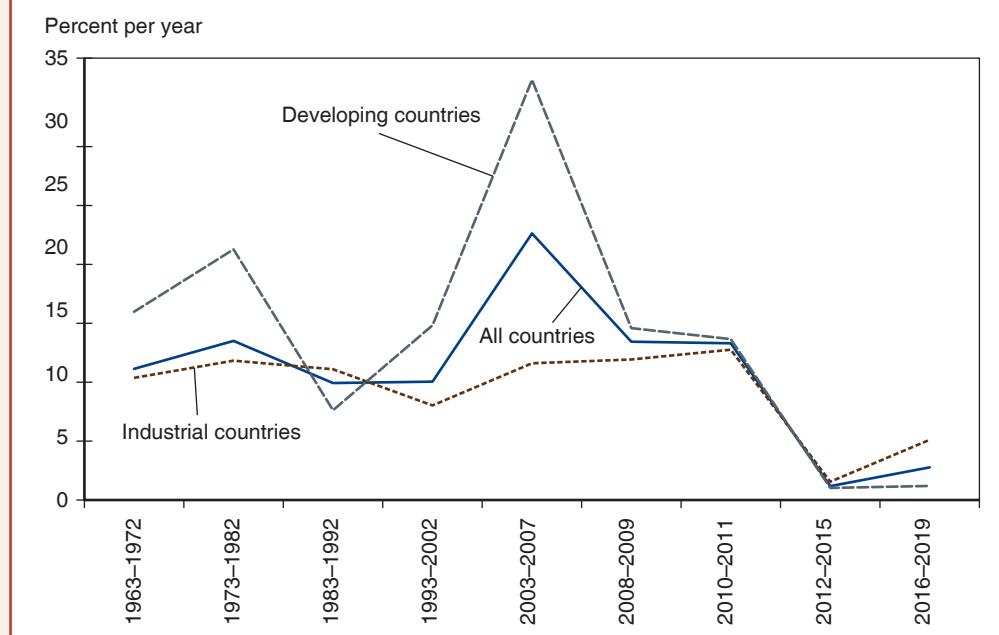
<sup>24</sup>An early influential study was by H. Robert Heller, "Optimal International Reserves," *Economic Journal* 76 (June 1966), pp. 296–311.

on the domestic bonds and instead earns the interest on the reserve currency, for example, on dollars. If markets harbor any fears that the domestic currency could be devalued, then domestic bonds will offer a higher interest rate than foreign reserves, implying that it is costly to switch the central bank's portfolio toward reserves. Of course, if the reserve currency does appreciate against domestic currency, the central bank will gain, with a corresponding loss if the reserve currency depreciates.

In addition, reserves may offer lower interest simply because of their higher liquidity. This interest cost of holding relatively liquid reserves is analogous to the interest cost of holding money, which we reviewed in Chapter 15.

Many economists argued in the 1960s that countries with more flexible exchange rates would find it easier to generate an export surplus if reserves ran low—they could allow their currencies to depreciate, perhaps avoiding the recession that might otherwise be needed to create a trade balance surplus. When industrial countries moved to floating exchange rates in the early 1970s, these same economists therefore expected that the demand for international reserves would drop sharply.

Figure 18-8 shows, however, that nothing of the sort happened. For industrial countries, the growth rate of international reserves has remained positive since



**FIGURE 18-8**

### Growth Rates of International Reserves

Annualized growth rates of international reserves did not decline sharply after the early 1970s. Recently, developing countries have added large sums to their reserve holdings, but their pace of accumulation has slowed starting with the crisis years of 2008–2009. The figure shows averages of annual growth rates.

**Source:** International Monetary Fund.

the 1960s. For developing countries, the growth rate of reserves has been high on average over the past four decades (the sharp upsurge in the mid-2000s is to some degree a reflection of huge reserve purchases by China). Reserve growth, regardless of a recent deceleration, has continued despite the adoption of more flexible exchange rates by many developing countries.

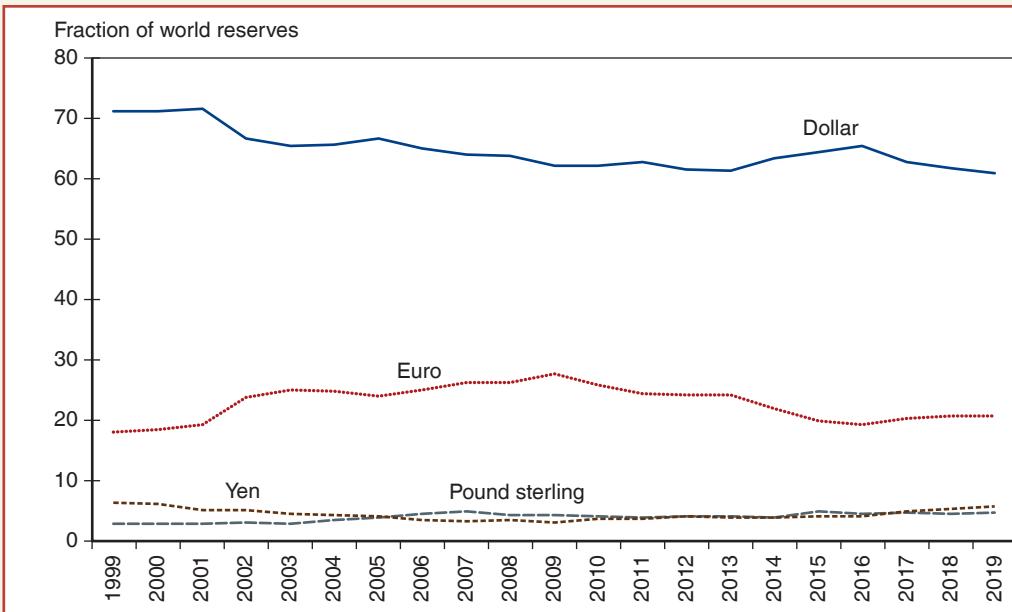
One explanation for this development, which we will discuss further in later chapters, is that the growth of global capital markets has vastly increased the potential variability of financial flows across national borders, especially across the borders of crisis-prone developing countries.<sup>25</sup> The sharp decline in developing-country reserve growth in the 1982–1992 period, shown in Figure 18-8, reflects an international debt crisis during the years 1982–1989. In that crisis, foreign lending sources dried up, forcing many developing countries to draw on their reserves. We see a bigger decline in reserve growth starting with the crisis years 2008–2009. These episodes illustrate why developing countries have added so eagerly to their reserve holdings. Even a developing country with a floating exchange rate might need to pay off foreign creditors and domestic residents with dollars to avoid a financial crisis and a currency collapse.

Nothing about this explanation contradicts earlier theories. The demand for international reserves still reflects the variability in the balance of payments. The rapid globalization of financial markets in recent years has, however, caused a big increase in potential variability and in the potential risks that variability poses.

Countries can and do choose to hold international reserves in currencies other than the U.S. dollar. They tend to hold only those currencies that are most likely to retain their value over time and to be readily accepted by foreign exporters and creditors. Thanks to the large and generally prosperous geographical region it serves, the euro, introduced in 1999, is the strongest challenger to the dollar's role.

Figure 18-9 shows the importance of four major currencies in countries' international reserve holdings. During the first decade of the euro's existence, from its birth in 1999 until 2009, its share in global reserves rose from 18 to 28 percent. Subsequently, however, the euro zone crisis that started in late 2009 (to be discussed in Chapter 21) sapped confidence in the euro as a reserve currency, and its share in global reserves fell back to 20 percent. The dollar's share has declined from 71 to 64 percent since 1999. Britain's pound sterling was the world's leading reserve currency up until the 1920s. That currency, however, now makes up only about 5 percent of global reserves, while the Japanese yen's share, about three times that of sterling during the mid-1990s, is now slightly lower, at 4 percent.

<sup>25</sup>Recent works on the modern determinants of the demand for international reserves include those of Robert Flood and Nancy Marion, "Holding International Reserves in an Era of High Capital Mobility," *Brookings Trade Forum* 2001, pp. 1–47; Joshua Aizenman and Jaewoo Lee, "International Reserves: Precautionary versus Mercantilist Views, Theory and Evidence," *Open Economies Review* 18 (April 2007), pp. 191–214; and Maurice Obstfeld, Jay C. Shambaugh, and Alan M. Taylor, "Financial Stability, the Trilemma, and International Reserves," *American Economic Journal: Macroeconomics* 2 (April 2010), pp. 57–94.

**FIGURE 18-9****Currency Composition of Global Reserve Holdings**

While the euro's role as a reserve currency increased during the first decade of its existence, it has taken a hit since the euro crisis. The dollar remains the overwhelming favorite.

**Source:** International Monetary Fund, Currency Composition of Foreign Exchange Reserves (COFER), at <http://www.imf.org/external/np/sta/cofer/eng/index.htm>. These data cover only the countries that report reserve composition to the IMF.

Upon its introduction in 1999, some economists speculated that the euro would overtake the dollar as the main international reserve currency. Given the recent apparent trend away from the euro shown in Figure 18-9, that day seems distant. Yet history certainly shows how leading reserve currencies can be toppled by newcomers.<sup>26</sup>

**SUMMARY**

- There is a direct link between central bank intervention in the foreign exchange market and the domestic money supply. When a country's central bank purchases foreign assets, the country's money supply automatically increases. Similarly, a central bank sale of foreign assets automatically lowers the money supply. The *central bank balance sheet* shows how foreign exchange intervention affects the money supply

<sup>26</sup>For an early formal statistical study of the euro's prospects, see Menzie Chinn and Jeffrey A. Frankel, "Will the Euro Eventually Surpass the Dollar as Leading International Reserve Currency?" in Richard H. Clarida, ed., *G7 Current Account Imbalances: Sustainability and Adjustment* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2007), pp. 283–322. A more recent survey of competition among major global currencies is the book by Eichengreen, Mehl, and Chitu in the Further Readings for Chapter 14.

because the central bank's liabilities, which rise or fall when its assets rise or fall, are the base of the domestic money supply process. The central bank can negate the money supply effect of intervention through *sterilization*. With no sterilization, there is a link between the balance of payments and national money supplies that depends on how central banks share the burden of financing balance of payments gaps.

- A central bank can fix the exchange rate of its currency against foreign currency if it is willing to trade unlimited amounts of domestic money against foreign assets at that rate. To fix the exchange rate, the central bank must intervene in the foreign exchange market whenever necessary to prevent the emergence of an excess demand or supply of domestic currency assets. In effect, the central bank adjusts its foreign assets—and, thus, the domestic money supply—to ensure that asset markets are always in equilibrium under the fixed exchange rate.
- A commitment to fix an exchange rate forces the central bank to sacrifice its ability to use monetary policy for stabilization. A purchase of domestic assets by the central bank causes an equal fall in its official international reserves, leaving the money supply and output unchanged. Similarly, a sale of domestic assets by the bank causes foreign reserves to rise by the same amount but has no other effects.
- Fiscal policy, unlike monetary policy, has a more powerful effect on output under fixed exchange rates than under floating rates. Under a fixed exchange rate, fiscal expansion does not, in the short run, cause a real appreciation that "crowds out" aggregate demand. Instead, it forces central bank purchases of foreign assets and an expansion of the money supply. *Devaluation* also raises aggregate demand and the money supply in the short run. (*Revaluation* has opposite effects.) In the long run, fiscal expansion causes a real appreciation, an increase in the money supply, and a rise in the home price level, while devaluation causes the long-run levels of the money supply and prices to rise in proportion to the exchange rate change.
- *Balance of payments crises* occur when market participants expect the central bank to change the exchange rate from its current level. If the market decides a devaluation is coming, for example, the domestic interest rate rises above the world interest rate and foreign reserves drop sharply as private capital flows abroad. *Self-fulfilling currency crises* can occur when an economy is vulnerable to speculation. In other circumstances an exchange rate collapse may be the inevitable result of inconsistent government policies.
- A system of *managed floating* allows the central bank to retain some ability to control the domestic money supply, but at the cost of greater exchange rate instability. If domestic and foreign bonds are *imperfect substitutes*, however, the central bank may be able to control both the money supply and the exchange rate through sterilized foreign exchange intervention. Empirical evidence provides little support for the idea that sterilized intervention has a significant direct effect on exchange rates. Even when domestic and foreign bonds are *perfect substitutes*, so that there is no *risk premium*, sterilized intervention may operate indirectly through a *signaling effect* that changes market views of future policies.
- A world system of fixed exchange rates in which countries peg the prices of their currencies in terms of a *reserve currency* involves a striking asymmetry: The reserve currency country, which does not have to fix any exchange rate, can influence economic activity both at home and abroad through its monetary policy. In contrast, all other countries are unable to influence their output or foreign output through monetary policy. This policy asymmetry reflects the fact that the reserve center bears none of the burden of financing its balance of payments.

- A *gold standard*, in which all countries fix their currencies' prices in terms of gold, avoids the asymmetry inherent in a reserve currency standard and places constraints on the growth of countries' money supplies. (A related arrangement was the *bimetallic standard* based on both silver and gold.) But the gold standard has serious drawbacks that make it impractical as a way of organizing today's international monetary system. Even the dollar-based *gold exchange standard* set up after World War II ultimately proved unworkable.

## KEY TERMS

balance of payments crisis, p. 557	gold standard, p. 567	revaluation, p. 555
bimetallic standard, p. 571	imperfect asset substitutability, p. 563	risk premium, p. 564
capital flight, p. 559	managed floating exchange rates, p. 543	self-fulfilling currency crises, p. 559
central bank balance sheet, p. 545	perfect asset substitutability, p. 561	signaling effect of foreign exchange intervention, p. 567
devaluation, p. 555	reserve currency, p. 567	sterilized foreign exchange intervention, p. 548
gold exchange standard, p. 572		

## PROBLEMS

1. Show how an expansion in the central bank's domestic assets ultimately affects its balance sheet under a fixed exchange rate. How are the central bank's transactions in the foreign exchange market reflected in the balance of payments accounts?
2. Do the exercises in problem 1 for an increase in government spending.
3. Describe the effects of an unexpected devaluation on the central bank's balance sheet and on the balance of payments accounts.
4. Explain why a devaluation improves the current account in this chapter's model. (Hint: Consider the  $XX$  curve developed in Chapter 17.)
5. Can you think of reasons why a government might willingly sacrifice some of its ability to use monetary policy so that it can have more stable exchange rates?
6. How does fiscal expansion affect the current account under a fixed exchange rate?
7. Explain why temporary and permanent fiscal expansions do not have different effects under fixed exchange rates, as they do under floating exchange rates.
8. Devaluation is often used by countries to improve their current accounts. Since the current account equals national saving less domestic investment, however (see Chapter 13), this improvement can occur only if investment falls, saving rises, or both. How might devaluation affect national saving and domestic investment?
9. Using the *DD-AA* model, analyze the output and balance of payments effects of an import tariff under fixed exchange rates. What would happen if all countries in the world simultaneously tried to improve employment and the balance of payments by imposing tariffs?
10. When a central bank devalues after a balance of payments crisis, it usually gains foreign reserves. Can this financial inflow be explained using our model? What would happen if the market believed that *another* devaluation would occur in the near future?
11. The Euro has become a reserve currency held by foreign central banks. Suppose that some of these banks held Euro reserves in the form of Euro notes kept in their vaults rather than in the form of government bonds. Would the international monetary adjustment mechanism be symmetric or asymmetric? Explain.

12. “When domestic and foreign bonds are perfect substitutes, a central bank should be indifferent about using domestic or foreign assets to implement monetary policy.” Discuss.
13. To control the money supply and prevent inflation, the People’s Bank of China (PBC), which is confronted with a permanent current account and capital account surpluses, uses mostly two tools to sterilize the foreign currency inflows: the variation of the Required Reserve Ratio (which obliges the banks to make a deposit to the Central Bank corresponding to a percentage of the credits they grant) and the selling of “Central Bank Bills.” Elaborate and explain the pros and cons of each type of intervention.
14. Use a diagram like Figure 18-7 to explain how a central bank can alter the domestic interest rate, while holding the exchange rate fixed, under imperfect asset substitutability.
15. In this chapter’s section on “Central Bank Intervention and the Money Supply,” we analyzed how the sale of \$100 worth of its foreign assets affects the central bank’s balance sheet. The assumption in that example was that the buyer of the foreign assets paid in the form of domestic currency cash. Suppose instead that the buyer pays with a check drawn on her account at Pecuniacorp, a private domestic bank. Using a balance sheet like the ones presented in the text, show how the transaction affects the central bank’s balance sheet and the money supply.
16. We observed in the text that “fixed” exchange-rate systems can result not in absolutely fixed exchange rates but in narrow bands within which the exchange rate can move. For example, the gold points (mentioned in footnote 18) produced such bands under a gold standard. (Typically those bands were on the order of plus or minus 1 percent of the “central” exchange parity.) To what extent would such bands for the exchange rate allow the domestic interest rate to move independently of a foreign rate? Show that the answer depends on the maturity or *term* of the interest rate. To help your intuition, assume plus or minus 1 percent bands for the exchange rate, and consider, alternatively, rates on three-month deposits, on six-month deposits, and on one-year deposits. With such narrow bands, would there be much scope for independence in 10-year loan rates?
17. In a three-country world, a central bank fixes one exchange rate but lets the others float. Can it use monetary policy to affect output? Can it fix both exchange rates?
18. In the Case Study on “The Demand for International Reserves,” we asserted that except in the case of a reserve currency system, an attempt by all central banks simultaneously to raise their international reserve holdings through open-market sales of domestic assets could have a contractionary effect on the world economy. Explain by contrasting the cases of a gold standard-type system and a reserve currency system.
19. If a country changes its exchange rate, the value of its foreign reserves, measured in the domestic currency, also changes. This latter change may represent a domestic currency gain or loss for the central bank. What happens when a country devalues its currency against the reserve currency? When it revalues? How might this factor affect the potential cost of holding foreign reserves? Make sure to consider the role of interest parity in formulating your answer.
20. Analyze the result of a permanent devaluation by an economy caught in a liquidity trap of the sort described in Chapter 17.

21. Recall our discussion of the Swiss franc's currency floor in the Case Study on "Can Markets Attack a *Strong* Currency? The Case of Switzerland." Also, recall the discussion of the liquidity trap in Chapter 17. Because Switzerland has been in a liquidity trap all the time it has defended its currency floor, does our discussion of liquidity trap theory in Chapter 17 suggest why Swiss inflation has not been raised by the SNB's heavy foreign exchange purchases?
22. Again returning to the case of the Swiss franc currency floor, with Swiss interest rates at zero, what do you think would happen if currency speculators expected the Swiss franc to appreciate by more than the euro rate of interest?

## FURTHER READINGS

- Graham Bird and Ramkishen Rajan. "Too Much of a Good Thing? The Adequacy of International Reserves in the Aftermath of Crises." *World Economy* 86 (June 2003), pp. 873–891. Accessible review of literature on the demand for international reserves.
- William H. Branson. "Causes of Appreciation and Volatility of the Dollar," in *The U.S. Dollar—Recent Developments, Outlook, and Policy Options*. Kansas City: Federal Reserve Bank of Kansas City, 1985, pp. 33–52. Develops and applies a model of exchange rate determination with imperfect asset substitutability.
- Barry Eichengreen. *Exorbitant Privilege: The Rise and Fall of the Dollar and the Future of the International Monetary System*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2011. A comprehensive historical perspective on the dollar's special status.
- Milton Friedman. "Bimetallism Revisited." *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 4 (Fall 1990), pp. 85–104. A fascinating reconsideration of economists' assessments of the dual silver-gold standard.
- Karl Habermeier, Annamaria Kokenyne, Romain Veyrune, and Harald Anderson. "Revised System for the Classification of Exchange Rate Arrangements." IMF Working Paper WP/09/211, September 2009. Explains how the International Monetary Fund classifies countries' diverse systems of exchange-rate determination.
- Owen F. Humpage. "Institutional Aspects of U.S. Intervention." *Federal Reserve Bank of Cleveland Economic Review* 30 (Quarter 1, 1994), pp. 2–19. How the U.S. Treasury and Federal Reserve coordinate foreign exchange intervention.
- Ethan Ilzetzki, Carmen M. Reinhart, and Kenneth S. Rogoff. "Exchange Arrangements Entering the 21st Century: Which Anchor Will Hold?" *Quarterly Journal of Economics* 134 (May 2019), pp. 599–646. Detailed chronicle of data tracking the evolution of exchange rate arrangements.
- Olivier Jeanne. *Currency Crises: A Perspective on Recent Theoretical Developments*. Princeton Special Papers in International Economics 20. International Finance Section, Department of Economics, Princeton University, March 2000. Recent thinking on speculative crises and attacks.
- Robert A. Mundell. "Capital Mobility and Stabilization Policy under Fixed and Flexible Exchange Rates." *Canadian Journal of Economics and Political Science* 29 (November 1963), pp. 475–485. Classic account of the effects of monetary and fiscal policies under alternative exchange rate regimes.
- Michael Mussa. *The Role of Official Intervention*. Occasional Paper 6. New York: Group of Thirty, 1981. Discusses the theory and practice of central bank foreign exchange intervention under a dirty float.
- Maurice Obstfeld. "Models of Currency Crises with Self-Fulfilling Features." *European Economic Review* 40 (April 1996), pp. 1037–1048. More on the nature of balance of payments crises.
- Jonathan D. Ostry, Atish R. Ghosh, and Marcos Chamon. "Two Targets, Two Instruments: Monetary and Exchange Rate Policies in Emerging Market Economies." IMF Staff Discussion Note SDN/12/01 (February 2012). Describes joint management of monetary policy and the exchange rate in an emerging-market context where uncovered interest parity does not hold.
- Lucio Sarno and Mark P. Taylor. "Official Intervention in the Foreign Exchange Market: Is It Effective and, If So, How Does It Work?" *Journal of Economic Literature* 39 (September 2001), pp. 839–868. A useful survey on foreign exchange intervention.



## Equilibrium in the Foreign Exchange Market with Imperfect Asset Substitutability

This appendix develops a model of the foreign exchange market in which risk factors may make domestic currency and foreign currency assets imperfect substitutes, so that UIP does not hold. The model gives rise to a risk premium that can separate the expected rates of return on domestic and foreign assets.

### Demand

Because individuals dislike risky situations in which their wealth may vary greatly from day to day, they decide how to allocate wealth among different assets by looking at the riskiness of the resulting portfolio as well as at the expected return the portfolio offers. Someone who puts her wealth entirely into British pounds, for example, may expect a high return, but the wealth can be wiped out if the pound unexpectedly depreciates. A more sensible strategy is to invest in several currencies even if some have lower expected returns than the pound and thus reduce the impact on wealth of bad luck with any one currency. By spreading risk among several currencies, an individual can reduce the variability of her wealth.

Considerations of risk make it reasonable to assume that an individual's demand for interest-bearing domestic currency assets increases when the interest they offer ( $R$ ) rises relative to the domestic currency return on foreign currency assets [ $R^* + (E^e - E)/E$ ]. Put another way, an individual will be willing to increase the riskiness of her portfolio by investing more heavily in domestic currency assets only if she is compensated by an increase in the relative expected return on those assets.

We summarize this assumption by writing individual  $i$ 's demand for domestic currency bonds,  $B_i^d$ , as an increasing function of the rate-of-return difference between domestic and foreign bonds,

$$B_i^d = B_i^d[R - R^* - (E^e - E)/E].$$

Of course,  $B_i^d$  also depends on other factors specific to individual  $i$ , such as her wealth and income. The demand for domestic currency bonds can be negative or positive, and in the former case, individual  $i$  is a net borrower in the home currency, that is, a *supplier* of domestic currency bonds.

To find the *aggregate* private demand for domestic currency bonds, we need only add up individual demands  $B_i^d$  for all individuals  $i$  in the world. This summation gives the aggregate demand for domestic currency bonds,  $B^d$ , which is also an increasing function of the expected rate-of-return difference in favor of domestic currency assets. Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Demand} &= B^d[R - R^* - (E^e - E)/E] \\ &= \text{sum for all } i \text{ of } B_i^d[R - R^* - (E^e - E)/E]. \end{aligned}$$

Since some private individuals may be borrowing, and therefore supplying bonds,  $B^d$  should be interpreted as the private sector's *net* demand for domestic currency bonds.

## Supply

Since we are interpreting  $B^d$  as the private sector's *net* demand for domestic currency bonds, the appropriate supply variable to define market equilibrium is the net supply of domestic currency bonds to the private sector, that is, the supply of bonds that are not the liability of any private individual or firm. Net supply therefore equals the value of domestic currency *government* bonds held by the public,  $B$ , less the value of domestic currency assets held by the central bank,  $A$ :

$$\text{Supply} = B - A.$$

$A$  must be subtracted from  $B$  to find the net supply of bonds because purchases of bonds by the central bank reduce the supply available to private investors. (More generally, we would also subtract from  $B$  domestic currency assets held by foreign central banks.)

## Equilibrium

The risk premium,  $\rho$ , is determined by the interaction of supply and demand. We define the risk premium as

$$\rho = R - R^* - (E^e - E)/E,$$

that is, as the expected return difference between domestic and foreign bonds (the deviation from UIP). We can therefore write the private sector's net demand for domestic currency bonds as an increasing function of  $\rho$ . Figure 18A1-1 shows this relationship by drawing the demand curve for domestic currency bonds with a positive slope.

The bond supply curve is vertical at  $B - A^1$  because the net supply of bonds to the market is determined by decisions of the government and central bank and is independent of the risk premium. Equilibrium occurs at point 1 (at a risk premium of  $\rho^1$ ), where the private sector's net demand for domestic currency bonds equals the net supply. Notice that for given values of  $R$ ,  $R^*$ , and  $E^e$ , the equilibrium shown in the diagram can also be viewed as determining the exchange rate, since  $E = E^e/(1 + R - R^* - \rho)$ .

FIGURE 18A1-1

### The Domestic Bond Supply and the Foreign Exchange Risk Premium under Imperfect Asset Substitutability

An increase in the supply of domestic currency bonds that the private sector must hold raises the risk premium on domestic currency assets.

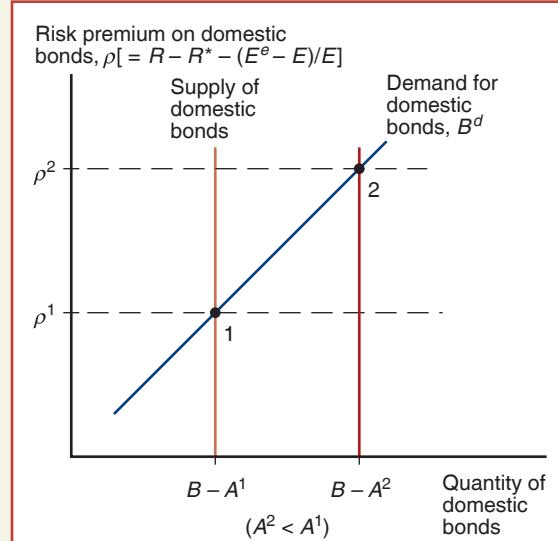


Figure 18A1-1 also shows the effect of a central bank sale of domestic assets that lowers its domestic asset holdings to  $A^2 < A^1$ . This sale raises the net supply of domestic currency bonds to  $B - A^2$  and shifts the supply curve to the right. The new equilibrium occurs at point 2, at a risk premium of  $\rho^2 > \rho^1$ . Similarly, an increase in the domestic currency government debt,  $B$ , would raise the risk premium.

The model therefore establishes that the risk premium is an increasing function of  $B - A$ , just as we assumed in the discussion of sterilized intervention that led to equation (18-3).

You should recognize that our discussion of risk premium determination is an oversimplification in a number of ways, not least because of the assumption that the home country is small, so that all foreign variables can be taken as given. In general, however, actions taken by foreign governments may also affect the risk premium, which of course can take *negative* as well as positive values. That is, policies or events that make foreign bonds progressively riskier will eventually make investors willing to hold domestic currency bonds at an expected rate of return *below* that on foreign currency bonds.

One way to capture this possibility would be to generalize equation (18-3) in the text and express the risk premium instead as

$$\rho = \rho(B - A, B^* - A^*),$$

where  $B^* - A^*$  is the net stock of foreign currency bonds that the public must hold. In this extended formulation, a rise in  $B - A$  still raises  $\rho$ , but a rise in  $B^* - A^*$  causes  $\rho$  to fall by making foreign bonds relatively riskier.



## APPENDIX 2 TO CHAPTER 18

### The Timing of Balance of Payments Crises

In the text, we modeled a balance of payments crisis as a sudden loss of confidence in the central bank's promise to hold the exchange rate fixed in the future. As previously noted, a currency crisis often is not the result of arbitrary shifts in market sentiment, contrary to what exasperated policy makers embroiled in crises often contend. Instead, an exchange rate collapse can be the inevitable result of government policies inconsistent with maintaining a fixed exchange rate permanently. In such cases, simple economic theory may allow us to predict the date of a crisis through a careful analysis of the government policies and the market's rational response to them.<sup>27</sup>

It is easiest to make the main points using the assumptions and notations of the monetary approach to the balance of payments (as developed in Appendix 3 to this chapter) and the monetary approach to the exchange rate (Chapter 16). To simplify, we will assume that output prices are perfectly flexible and that output is constant at its full-employment level. We will also assume that market participants have perfect foresight concerning the future.

The precise timing of a payments crisis cannot be determined independently of government policies. In particular, we have to describe not only how the government is behaving today, but also how it plans to react to future events in the economy. Two assumptions about official behavior are made: (1) The central bank is allowing the stock of central bank domestic credit,  $A$ , to expand steadily, and will do so forever. (2) The central bank is currently fixing the exchange rate at the level  $E^0$  but will allow the exchange rate to float freely forever if its foreign reserves,  $F^*$ , ever fall to zero. Furthermore, the authorities will defend  $E^0$  to the bitter end by selling foreign reserves at that price as long as they have any to sell.

The problem with the central bank's policies is that they are inconsistent with maintaining a fixed exchange rate indefinitely. The monetary approach suggests that foreign reserves will fall steadily as domestic assets continually rise. Eventually, therefore, reserves will have to run out and the fixed exchange rate  $E^0$  will have to be abandoned. In fact, speculators will force the issue by mounting a speculative attack and buying all of the central bank's reserves while reserves are still at a positive level.

We can describe the timing of this crisis with the help of a definition and a diagram. The *shadow* floating exchange rate at time  $t$ , denoted  $E_t^S$ , is the exchange rate that would prevail at time  $t$  if the central bank held no foreign reserves, allowed the currency to float, but continued to allow domestic credit to grow over time. We know from the monetary approach that the result would be a situation of *ongoing inflation* in which  $E_t^S$  trends upward over time in proportion to the domestic credit growth rate. The upper

<sup>27</sup>Alternative models of balance of payments crises are developed in Paul Krugman, "A Model of Balance-of-Payments Crises," *Journal of Money, Credit and Banking* 11 (August 1979), pp. 311–325; Robert P. Flood and Peter M. Garber, "Collapsing Exchange Rate Regimes: Some Linear Examples," *Journal of International Economics* 17 (August 1984), pp. 1–14; and Maurice Obstfeld, "Rational and Self-Fulfilling Balance-of-Payments Crises," *American Economic Review* 76 (March 1986), pp. 72–81. See also the paper by Obstfeld in Further Readings.

panel of Figure 18A2-1 shows this upward trend in the shadow floating rate, together with the level  $E^0$  at which the exchange rate is initially pegged. The time  $T$  indicated on the horizontal axis is defined as the date on which the shadow exchange rate reaches  $E^0$ .

The lower panel of the figure shows how reserves behave over time when domestic credit is steadily growing. (An increase in reserves is a move down from the origin along the vertical axis.) We have shown the path of reserves as a kinked curve that falls gradually until time  $T$ , at which point reserves drop in a single stroke to zero. This precipitous reserve loss (of size  $F_T^*$ ) is the speculative attack that forces the end of the fixed exchange rate, and we now argue that such an attack must occur precisely at time  $T$  if asset markets are to clear at each moment.

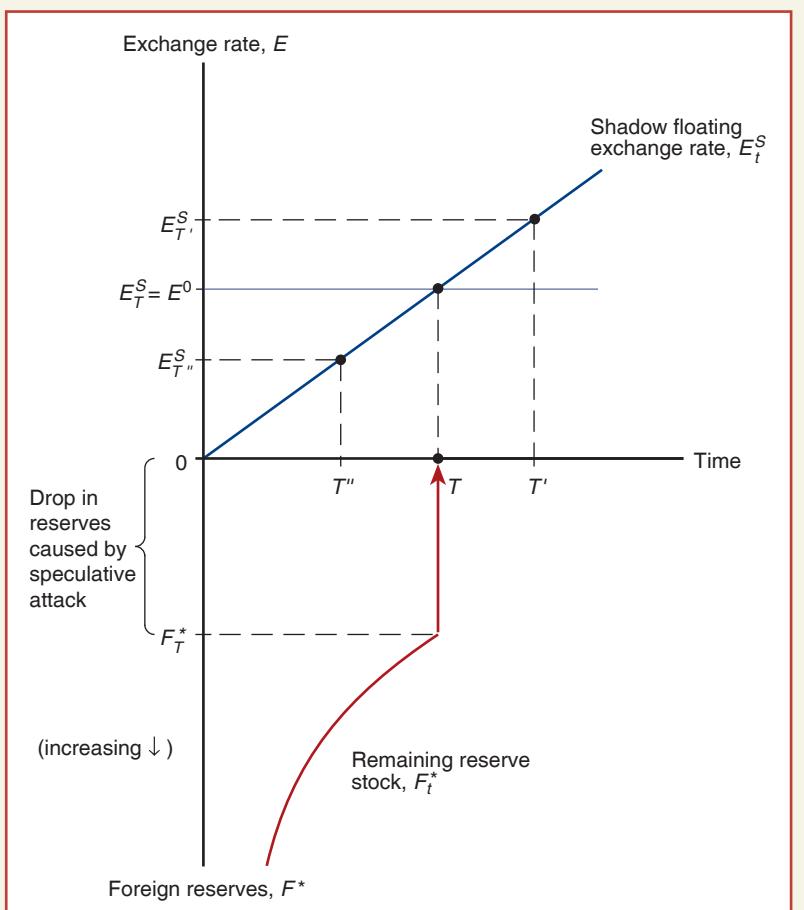
We are assuming that output  $Y$  is fixed, so reserves will fall over time at the same rate that domestic credit grows, as long as the domestic interest rate  $R$  (and thus the demand for domestic money) doesn't change. What do we know about the behavior of the interest rate? We know that while the exchange rate is convincingly fixed,  $R$  will equal the foreign interest rate  $R^*$  because no depreciation is expected. Thus, reserves fall gradually over time, as shown in Figure 18A2-1, as long as the exchange rate remains fixed at  $E^0$ .

Imagine now that reserves first hit zero at a time such as  $T'$ , which is *later* than time  $T$ . Our shadow exchange rate  $E^S$  is defined as the equilibrium floating rate that prevails

**FIGURE 18A2-1**

### How the Timing of a Balance of Payments Crisis Is Determined

The market stages a speculative attack and buys the remaining foreign reserve stock  $F_T^*$  at time  $T$ , which is when the shadow floating exchange rate  $E_t^S$  just equals the precollapse fixed exchange rate  $E^0$ .



when foreign reserves are zero, so if reserves first hit zero at time  $T'$ , the authorities abandon  $E^0$  forever and the exchange rate jumps immediately to the higher level  $E_T^S$ . There is something wrong with this “equilibrium,” however: Each market participant knows that the home currency will depreciate very sharply at time  $T'$  and will try to profit by buying foreign reserves from the central bank, at the lower price  $E^0$ , just an instant *before*  $T'$ . Thus the central bank will lose all of its reserves before  $T'$ , contrary to our assumption that reserves first hit zero *at*  $T'$ . So we have not really been looking at an equilibrium after all.

Do we get to an equilibrium by assuming instead that speculators buy out the official reserve stock at a time like  $T''$  that is *earlier* than time  $T$ ? Again the answer is no, as you can see by considering the choices facing an individual asset holder. He knows that if central bank reserves reach zero at time  $T''$ , the currency will appreciate from  $E^0$  to  $E_{T''}^S$  as the central bank leaves the foreign exchange market. It therefore will behoove him not to join any speculative attack that pushes reserves to zero at time  $T''$ ; in fact, he would prefer to *sell* as much foreign currency as possible to the central bank just before time  $T''$  and then buy it back at the lower market-determined price that would prevail after a crisis. Since every market participant would find it in his or her interest to act in this way, however, a speculative attack simply can't occur before time  $T$ . No speculator would want to buy central bank reserves at the price  $E^0$ , knowing that an immediate discrete capital loss was at hand.

Only if foreign reserves hit zero precisely at time  $T$  are asset markets continually in equilibrium. As noted above, time  $T$  is defined by the condition

$$E_T^S = E^0,$$

which states that if reserves suddenly drop to zero at time  $T$ , the exchange rate remains initially at its pegged level, and only subsequently floats upward.

The absence of any foreseen initial jump in the exchange rate, either upward or downward, removes the opportunities for arbitrage (described above) that prevent speculative attacks at times like  $T'$  or  $T''$ . In addition, the money market remains in equilibrium at time  $T$ , even though the exchange rate doesn't jump because two factors offset each other exactly. As reserves drop sharply to zero, the money supply falls. We also know that at the moment the fixed exchange rate is abandoned, people will expect the currency to begin depreciating over time. The domestic interest rate  $R$  will therefore move upward to maintain interest parity, reducing real money demand in line with the fall in the real money supply.

We have therefore tied down the exact date on which a balance of payments crisis forces the authorities off the fixed exchange rate. Note once again that in our example, a crisis must occur at *some* point because profligate monetary policies make one inevitable. The fact that a crisis occurs while the central bank's foreign reserves are still positive might suggest to superficial observers that ill-founded market sentiment is leading to a premature panic. This is not the case here. The speculative attack we have analyzed is the only outcome that does not confront market participants with arbitrage opportunities.<sup>28</sup> However, there are alternative self-fulfilling crisis models in which attacks can occur even when the exchange rate could have been sustained indefinitely in the absence of an attack.

---

<sup>28</sup>Our finding that reserves fall to zero in a single attack comes from our assumptions that the market can foresee the future perfectly and that trading takes place continuously. If we were instead to allow some discrete uncertainty—for example, about the rate of central bank domestic credit growth—the domestic interest rate would rise as a collapse became more probable, causing a series of “speculative” money demand reductions prior to the final depletion of foreign reserves. Each of these preliminary attacks would be similar to the type of crisis described in the chapter.



## The Monetary Approach to the Balance of Payments

The close link discussed in Chapter 18 between a country's balance of payments and its money supply suggests that fluctuations in central bank reserves can be thought of as the result of changes in the money market. This method of analyzing the balance of payments is called the *monetary approach to the balance of payments*. The monetary approach was developed in the 1950s and 1960s by the International Monetary Fund's research department under Jacques J. Polak, and by Harry G. Johnson, Robert A. Mundell, and their students at the University of Chicago.<sup>29</sup>

The monetary approach can be illustrated through a simple model linking the balance of payments to developments in the money market. To begin, recall that the money market is in equilibrium when the real money supply equals real money demand, that is, when

$$M^s/P = L(R, Y).$$

Now let  $F^*$  denote the central bank's foreign assets (measured in domestic currency) and  $A$  its domestic assets (domestic credit). If  $\mu$  is the *money multiplier* that defines the relation between total central bank assets ( $F^* + A$ ) and the money supply, then

$$M^s = \mu(F^* + A).$$

The change in central bank foreign assets over any time period,  $\Delta F^*$ , equals the balance of payments (for a nonreserve currency country). By combining the preceding two equations, we can express the central bank's foreign assets as

$$F^* = (1/\mu)PL(R, Y) - A.$$

If we assume that  $\mu$  is a constant, the balance of payments surplus is

$$\Delta F^* = (1/\mu)\Delta[PL(R, Y)] - \Delta A.$$

The last equation summarizes the monetary approach. The first term on its right-hand side reflects changes in nominal money demand and tells us that, all else equal, an increase in money demand will bring about a balance of payments surplus and an accompanying increase in the money supply that maintains money market equilibrium. The second term in the balance of payments equation reflects supply factors in the money market. An increase in domestic credit raises money supply relative to money demand, all else equal: So the balance of payments must go into deficit to reduce the money supply and restore money market equilibrium.

Because the balance of payments equals the sum of the current and (nonreserve) financial account surpluses (see Chapter 13), much of the economics literature that

<sup>29</sup>Many original articles using the monetary approach are collected in Jacob A. Frenkel and Harry G. Johnson, eds., *The Monetary Approach to the Balance of Payments* (London: George Allen and Unwin, 1976), and International Monetary Fund, *The Monetary Approach to the Balance of Payments* (Washington, D.C.: International Monetary Fund, 1977).

appeared before the monetary approach was developed explained balance of payments movements as the result of current or financial account changes. An important contribution of the monetary approach was to stress that in many situations, balance of payments problems result directly from imbalances in the money market, and that a policy solution that relies on monetary policy is therefore most appropriate. A large balance of payments deficit may be the result of excessive domestic credit creation, for example. Even though this balance of payments deficit will generally involve both a current account deficit and a positive private financial account balance, it would be misleading to view it as fundamentally due to an exogenous fall in relative world demand for domestic goods or assets.

There are many realistic cases, however, in which a balance of payments analysis based on the monetary approach is roundabout and possibly misleading as a guide to policy. Suppose, for example, that a temporary fall in foreign demand for domestic products does occur. This change will cause a fall in the current account and in the balance of payments, but these effects can be counteracted (when rigid capital account restrictions are not in place) by a temporary expansionary fiscal policy.

Because output and thus money demand fall, the monetary approach also predicts that a balance of payments deficit will result from a fall in export demand. It would be wrong, however, for policy makers to conclude that because the balance of payments deficit is associated with a fall in money demand, a contraction of domestic credit is the best response. If the central bank were to restrict domestic credit to improve the balance of payments, unemployment would remain high and might even rise.

While the monetary approach is an extremely useful analytical tool, it must be applied with caution in seeking solutions to macroeconomic problems. It is most useful for formulating solutions to policy problems that are a direct result of shifts in domestic money demand or supply.



## INTERNATIONAL MONETARY SYSTEMS: A HISTORICAL OVERVIEW

In Chapters 17 and 18, we saw how a single country can use monetary, fiscal, and exchange rate policies to change the levels of employment and production within its borders. Although this analysis usually assumes that macroeconomic conditions in the rest of the world are not affected by the actions of the country we are studying, that assumption is not, in general, a valid one: Any change in the home country's real exchange rate automatically implies an opposite change in foreign real exchange rates, and any shift in overall domestic spending is likely to change domestic demand for foreign goods. Unless the home country is insignificantly small, developments within its borders affect macroeconomic conditions abroad and therefore complicate the task of foreign policy makers.

The inherent interdependence of open national economies has sometimes made it more difficult for governments to achieve such policy goals as full employment and price level stability. The channels of interdependence depend, in turn, on the monetary, financial, and exchange rate arrangements that countries adopt—a set of institutions called the *international monetary system*. This chapter examines how the international monetary system influenced macroeconomic policy making and performance during four periods: the gold standard era (1870–1914), the interwar period (1918–1939), the post–World War II years during which exchange rates were fixed under the Bretton Woods agreement (1946–1973), and the recent period of widespread reliance on floating exchange rates (1973–present). As we shall see, alternative international monetary arrangements have posed different trade-offs for macroeconomic policy.

In an open economy, macroeconomic policy has two basic goals, internal balance (full employment with price stability) and external balance (avoiding excessive imbalances in international payments). Because a country cannot alter its international payments position without automatically causing an opposite change of equal magnitude in the payments position of the rest of the world, one country's pursuit of its macroeconomic goals inevitably influences how well other countries attain their goals. The goal of external balance therefore offers a clear illustration of how policy actions taken abroad may change an economy's position relative to the position its government prefers.

Throughout the period since 1870, with its various international currency arrangements, how did countries try to attain internal and external balance, and

how successful were they? Why did different international monetary systems prevail at different times? Did policy makers worry about the foreign repercussions of their actions, or did each adopt nationalistic measures that were self-defeating for the world economy as a whole? The answers to these questions depend on the international monetary system in effect at the time.

## LEARNING GOALS

After reading this chapter, you will be able to:

- Explain how the goals of internal and external balance motivate economic policy makers in open economies.
- Understand the monetary trilemma that policy makers in open economies inevitably face and how alternative international monetary systems address the trilemma in different ways.
- Describe the structure of the international gold standard that linked countries' exchange rates and policies prior to World War I and the role of the Great Depression of the 1930s in ending efforts to restore the pre-1914 world monetary order.
- Discuss how the post–World War II Bretton Woods system of globally fixed exchange rates was designed to combine exchange rate stability with limited autonomy of national macroeconomic policies.
- Explain how the Bretton Woods system collapsed in 1973 and why many economists at the time favored an international financial system such as the current one based on floating dollar exchange rates.
- Summarize how the monetary and fiscal policies of a large country such as the United States are transmitted abroad under floating exchange rates.
- Discuss how the world economy has performed in recent years and what lessons the post-1973 experience teaches about the need for international policy coordination.

## Macroeconomic Policy Goals in an Open Economy

In open economies, policy makers are motivated by the goals of internal and external balance. Simply defined, **internal balance** requires the full employment of a country's resources and domestic price level stability. **External balance** is attained when a country's current account is neither so deeply in deficit that the country may be unable to repay its foreign debts in the future nor so strongly in surplus that foreigners are put in that position.

In practice, neither of these definitions captures the full range of potential policy concerns. Along with full employment and stability of the overall price level, for example, policy makers may have a particular domestic distribution of income as an additional internal target. Depending on exchange rate arrangements or other factors, policy makers may worry about swings in balance of payments accounts other than the current account. To make matters even more complicated, the line between external and internal goals can be fuzzy. How should one classify an employment target for export industries, for example, when export growth influences the economy's ability to repay its foreign debts?

The simple definitions of internal and external balance given previously, however, capture the goals that most policy makers share regardless of the particular economic

environment. We therefore organize our analysis around these definitions and discuss possible additional aspects of internal and external balance when they are relevant.

### **Internal Balance: Full Employment and Price Level Stability**

When a country's productive resources are fully employed and its price level is stable, the country is in internal balance. The waste and hardship that occur when resources are underemployed is clear. If a country's economy is "overheated" and resources are *overemployed*, however, waste of a different (though probably less harmful) kind occurs. For example, workers on overtime might prefer to work less and enjoy leisure, but their contracts require them to put in longer hours during periods of high demand. Machines worked more intensely than usual will tend to suffer more frequent breakdowns and to depreciate more quickly.

Under- and overemployment also lead to general price level movements that reduce the economy's efficiency by making the real value of the monetary unit less certain and thus a less useful guide for economic decisions. Since domestic wages and prices rise when the demands for labor and output exceed full-employment levels and fall in the opposite case, the government must prevent substantial movements in aggregate demand relative to its full-employment level to maintain a stable, predictable price level.

Inflation or deflation can occur even under conditions of full employment, of course, if the expectations of workers and firms about future monetary policy lead to an upward or downward wage-price spiral. Such a spiral can continue, however, only if the central bank fulfills expectations through continuing injections or withdrawals of money (Chapter 15).

One particularly disruptive result of an unstable price level is its effect on the real value of loan contracts. Because loans tend to be denominated in the monetary unit, unexpected price level changes cause income to be redistributed between creditors and debtors. A sudden increase in the U.S. price level, for example, makes those with dollar debts better off, since the money they owe to lenders is now worth less in terms of goods and services. At the same time, the price level increase makes creditors worse off. Because such accidental income redistribution can cause considerable distress to those who are hurt, governments have another reason to maintain price level stability.<sup>1</sup>

Theoretically, a perfectly predictable trend of rising or falling prices would not be too costly, since everyone would be able to calculate easily the real value of money at any point in the future. But in the real world, there appears to be no such thing as a predictable inflation rate. Indeed, experience shows that the unpredictability of the general price level is magnified tremendously in periods of rapid price level change. The costs of inflation have been most apparent in the postwar period in countries such as Argentina, Brazil, Serbia, and Zimbabwe, where astronomical price level increases caused the domestic currencies practically to stop functioning as units of account or stores of value.

To avoid price level instability, therefore, the government must prevent large fluctuations in output, which are also undesirable in themselves. In addition, it must avoid inflation and deflation by ensuring that the money supply does not grow too quickly or too slowly.

---

<sup>1</sup>The situation is somewhat different when the government itself is a major debtor in domestic currency. In such cases, a surprise inflation that reduces the real value of government debt may be a convenient way of taxing the public. This method of taxation was quite common in developing countries in the past (see Chapter 22), but elsewhere it has generally been applied with reluctance and in extreme situations (for example, during or just after wars). A policy of trying to surprise the public with inflation undermines the government's credibility and, through the Fisher effect, worsens the terms on which the government can borrow in the future.

## External Balance: The Optimal Level of the Current Account

The notion of external balance is more difficult to define than internal balance because there are no unambiguous benchmarks like “full employment” or “stable prices” to apply to an economy’s external transactions. Whether an economy’s trade with the outside world poses macroeconomic problems depends on several factors, including the economy’s particular circumstances, conditions in the outside world, and the institutional arrangements governing its economic relations with foreign countries. A country committed to fixing its exchange rate against a foreign currency, for example, may well adopt a different definition of external balance than a country whose currency floats.

International economics textbooks often identify external balance with balance in a country’s current account. While this definition is appropriate in some circumstances, it is not appropriate as a general rule. Recall from Chapter 13 that a country with a current account deficit is borrowing resources from the rest of the world that it will have to repay in the future. This situation need not be undesirable, however. For example, the country’s opportunities for investing the borrowed resources may be attractive relative to the opportunities available in the rest of the world. In this case, paying back loans from foreigners poses no problem because a profitable investment will generate a return high enough to cover the interest and principal on those loans. Similarly, a current account surplus may pose no problem if domestic saving is being invested more profitably abroad than it would be at home.

More generally, we may think of current account imbalances as providing another example of how countries gain from trade. The trade involved is what we have called *intertemporal trade*, that is, the trade of consumption over time (see Chapters 6 and 17). Just as countries with differing abilities to produce goods at a single point in time gain from concentrating their production on what they do best and trading, countries can gain from concentrating the world’s investment in those economies best able to turn current output into future output. Countries with weak investment opportunities should invest little at home and channel their saving into more productive investment activity abroad. Put another way, countries where investment is relatively unproductive should be net exporters of currently available output (and thus have current account surpluses), while countries where investment is relatively productive should be net importers of current output (and have current account deficits). To pay off their foreign debts when the investments mature, the latter countries export output to the former countries and thereby complete the exchange of present output for future output.

Other considerations may also justify an unbalanced current account. A country where output drops temporarily (for example, because of an unusually bad crop failure) may wish to borrow from foreigners to avoid the sharp temporary fall in its consumption that would otherwise occur. In the absence of this borrowing, the price of present output in terms of future output would be higher in the low-output country than abroad, so the intertemporal trade that eliminates this price difference leads to mutual gains.

Insisting that all countries be in current account equilibrium makes no allowance for these important gains from trade over time. Thus, no realistic policy maker would want to adopt a balanced current account as a policy target appropriate in all circumstances.

At a given point, however, policy makers generally adopt *some* current account target as an objective, and this target defines their external balance goal. While the target level of the current account is generally not zero, governments usually try to avoid extremely large external surpluses or deficits unless they have clear evidence that large imbalances are justified by potential intertemporal trade gains. Governments are cautious because the exact current account balance that maximizes the gains from

intertemporal trade is difficult if not impossible to figure out. In addition, this optimal current account balance can change unpredictably over time as conditions in the domestic and global economies change. Current account balances that are very wide of the mark can, however, cause serious problems.

**Problems with Excessive Current Account Deficits** Why do governments prefer to avoid current account deficits that are too large? As noted, a current account deficit (which means that the economy is borrowing from abroad) may pose no problem if the borrowed funds are channeled into productive domestic investment projects that pay for themselves with the revenue they generate in the future. Sometimes, however, large current account deficits represent temporarily high consumption resulting from misguided government policies or some other malfunction in the economy. At other times, the investment projects that draw on foreign funds may be badly planned and based on overoptimistic expectations about future profitability. In such cases, the government might wish to reduce the current account deficit immediately rather than face problems in repaying debts to foreigners later. In particular, a large current account deficit caused by an expansionary fiscal policy that does not simultaneously make domestic investment opportunities more profitable may signal a need for the government to restore external balance by changing its economic course. Every open economy faces an **intertemporal budget constraint** that limits its spending over time to levels that allow it to pay the interest and principal on its foreign debts. A simple version of that budget constraint was discussed in the appendices to Chapters 6 and 17, and a more realistic version is derived in the following box on New Zealand's foreign borrowing and debt.

At times, the external target is imposed from abroad rather than chosen by the domestic government. When countries begin to have trouble meeting their payments on past foreign loans, foreign creditors become reluctant to lend them new funds and may even demand immediate repayment of the earlier loans. Economists refer to such an event as a **sudden stop** in foreign lending. In such cases, the home government may have to take severe action to reduce the country's desired borrowing from foreigners to feasible levels as well as to repay maturing loans that foreigners are unwilling to renew. A large current account deficit can undermine foreign investors' confidence and contribute to a sudden stop. In the event of a sudden stop, moreover, the larger the initial deficit, the larger and more painful the fall in domestic spending that is needed to make the economy live strictly within its means.

**Problems with Excessive Current Account Surpluses** An excessive current account surplus poses problems that are different from those posed by deficits. A surplus in the current account implies that a country is accumulating assets located abroad. Why are growing domestic claims to foreign wealth ever a problem? One potential reason stems from the fact that, for a given level of national saving, an increased current account surplus implies lower investment in domestic plant and equipment. (This follows from the national income identity,  $S = CA + I$ , which says that total domestic saving,  $S$ , is divided between foreign asset accumulation,  $CA$ , and domestic investment,  $I$ .) Several factors might lead policy makers to prefer that domestic saving be devoted to higher levels of domestic investment and lower levels of foreign investment. First, the returns on domestic capital may be easier to tax than those on assets located abroad. Second, an addition to the home capital stock may reduce domestic unemployment and therefore lead to higher national income than an equal addition to foreign assets. Finally, domestic investment by one firm may have beneficial technological spillover effects on other domestic producers that the investing firm does not capture.

## CAN A COUNTRY BORROW FOREVER? THE CASE OF NEW ZEALAND

The small Pacific country of New Zealand (with a population of about 5 million) has run current account deficits every year for many years, as far back as the country's official statistics reach. As a result, its net debt to foreign lenders stands at around 50 percent of its national output. Yet lenders continue to extend credit and seem not to worry about repayment (in contrast to many cases that we will study later on). Is it possible for an indebted country to borrow year after year without going broke? Perhaps surprisingly the answer is yes—if it does not borrow too much.

To understand why, we have to think about a country's budget constraint when it can borrow and lend over a long horizon.<sup>2</sup> (Our analysis will also underline why the *IIP*—the net international investment position, as defined in Chapter 13—is so important.) Let's continue to let *IIP* stand for a country's net foreign wealth (claims on foreigners less liabilities), and let *GDP* denote its gross domestic product or production within the country's borders. Let *r* stand for the (constant) interest rate the country both earns on wealth held abroad and pays on its liabilities to foreigners.<sup>3</sup> If we assume for simplicity that gross national product *Y* is the sum of *GDP* and net foreign investment income,  $Y = GDP + rIIP$ , then we can express the current account in any year *t* as

$$\begin{aligned} CA_t &= IIP_{t+1} - IIP_t = Y_t - (C_t + I_t + G_t) \\ &= rIIP_t + GDP_t - (C_t + I_t + G_t). \end{aligned}$$

(Think of *IIP*<sub>*t+1*</sub> as net foreign wealth at the *end* of year *t*. We saw in Chapter 13's Case Study that the preceding relationship is not quite accurate because of price gains and losses on net foreign liabilities that are not captured in the national income and product accounts. We say more about this at the end.)

Define net exports, the (possibly negative) difference between what a country produces domestically and what it demands, as  $NX_t = GDP_t - (C_t + I_t + G_t)$ . (Net exports are sometimes referred to as the “balance of trade.”) Then we can rewrite the preceding current account equation as

$$IIP_{t+1} = (1 + r)IIP_t + NX_t.$$

Now we have to resort to some simple, but devious, algebra. Imagine that in the last equation we are starting out in some year labeled *t* = 0 and that there is a year *T* far in the future at which everyone's debts have to be repaid, so that  $IIP_T = 0$ . We will apply the preceding equation for the *IIP* successively for years 1, 2, 3, and all the way through *T*. To start off, notice that the preceding equation can be manipulated to become

$$IIP_0 = -\frac{1}{1+r}NX_0 + \frac{1}{1+r}IIP_1.$$

But a similar relationship to this last one holds true with *IIP*<sub>1</sub> on the left-hand side and *IIP*<sub>2</sub> and *NX*<sub>1</sub> on the right. If we substitute this in for *IIP*<sub>1</sub> in the last equation, we get

$$\begin{aligned} IIP_0 &= -\frac{1}{1+r}NX_0 - \frac{1}{(1+r)^2}NX_1 \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{(1+r)^2}IIP_2. \end{aligned}$$

Of course, we can continue to make these substitutions until we reach  $IIP_T = 0$  (the point at which all debts have been fully repaid). The resulting

<sup>2</sup>Our discussion is closely related to that in the Chapters 6 and 17 appendices, but it is more general because it allows for many time periods (not just two) and for a starting nonzero *IIP*.

<sup>3</sup>A simple interpretation of the model is to imagine that all foreign assets and liabilities are bonds denominated in a single global currency, where *r* is the *nominal* interest rate measured in the global currency. In practice, however, the nominal rates of return on foreign assets and liabilities can differ, and can be somewhat unpredictable, as we discuss further in this box. In the appendices to Chapters 6 and 17, we interpreted *r* as a global *real* rate of interest, which we could do here too if we measured *GDP*, *Y*, and the *IIP* all in real terms (rather than in terms of the hypothetical global currency).

equation is the economy's *intertemporal budget constraint*:

$$\begin{aligned} IIP_0 = & -\frac{1}{1+r}NX_0 - \frac{1}{(1+r)^2}NX_1 \\ & - \frac{1}{(1+r)^3}NX_2 - \dots - \frac{1}{(1+r)^T}NX_{T-1}. \end{aligned}$$

If the country has an initially positive  $IIP$  (foreign assets in excess of liabilities), this intertemporal constraint states that the country can run a stream of net export deficits in the future ( $NX < 0$ ), provided the *present discounted value* of those deficits is not greater than the economy's initial net claims on foreigners. On the other hand, if initially  $IIP < 0$ , the economy must have future surpluses of net exports sufficient to repay its net debt to foreigners (with interest, which is why future net exports are discounted by  $r$ , and discounted more heavily the farther in the future they occur). So an indebted country such as New Zealand definitely cannot have *net export or trade balance* deficits forever. At some point the country must produce more goods and services than it absorbs in order to repay what it owes. Otherwise, it is perpetually borrowing more to repay what it owes—a strategy that must eventually collapse when the country runs out of fresh lenders (and probably long before then).<sup>4</sup>

But what about the current account balance, which equals net exports *plus* the negative flow of net interest payments implied by the country's negative  $IIP$ ? Perhaps surprisingly, it turns out that this sum need *never* be positive for the country to remain creditworthy.

To see why, it is helpful to rewrite the preceding intertemporal budget constraint in terms of *ratios* to nominal output (nominal GDP),  $iip = IIP/GDP$  and  $nx = NX/GDP$ . Assume that nominal GDP

grows at a constant annual rate  $g$  that is below  $r$ —meaning that  $GDP_t = (1 + g) GDP_{t-1}$ . Then after dividing the intertemporal budget constraint by GDP in year 0, we can see that

$$\begin{aligned} iip_0 &= \frac{IIP_0}{GDP_0} = -\frac{1}{1+r}\frac{NX_0}{GDP_0} - \frac{1}{(1+r)^2}\frac{NX_1}{GDP_1} \\ &\quad - \frac{GDP_1}{GDP_0} - \dots - \frac{1}{(1+r)^T}\frac{NX_{T-1}}{GDP_{T-1}}\frac{GDP_{T-1}}{GDP_0} \\ &= -\frac{1}{1+r}nx_0 - \frac{1+g}{(1+r)^2}nx_1 - \frac{(1+g)^2}{(1+r)^3}nx_2 \\ &\quad - \dots - \frac{(1+g)^{T-1}}{(1+r)^T}nx_{T-1}. \end{aligned}$$

Let's now apply this version of the country's budget constraint, which we simplify by assuming that the country's time horizon is very long, making the constraint approximately the same as the infinite-summation expression:

$$iip_0 = -\frac{1}{1+g}\sum_{t=1}^{\infty}\left(\frac{1+g}{1+r}\right)^tnx_{t-1}.$$

To illustrate how a country can easily run a perpetual current account deficit, let us ask what *constant* level of net exports  $\bar{nx}$  will allow the country to respect this budget constraint. We find this constant net export level by substituting  $\bar{nx}$  into the previous equation and simplifying using the summation formula for a geometric series,<sup>5</sup>

$$iip_0 = -\frac{1}{1+g}\sum_{t=1}^{\infty}\left(\frac{1+g}{1+r}\right)^t\bar{nx} = \frac{-\bar{nx}}{r-g}.$$

This solution implies net exports of  $\bar{nx} = -(r-g)iip_0$ . For example, if  $iip_0$  is negative—the country is a net debtor—then  $\bar{nx}$

<sup>4</sup>Strategies based on always repaying old creditors with money borrowed from new creditors—as opposed to repayment with genuine investment earnings—are known as *Ponzi schemes*. Charles Ponzi (1882–1949) promised gullible Massachusetts investors he could double their money in 90 days, but when he had to pay out to them, he did so with funds supplied by new investors. U.S. authorities arrested Ponzi in 1920 after the fraudulent nature of his business model came to light. More recently, financier Bernard Madoff ran a much bigger Ponzi scheme for many years.

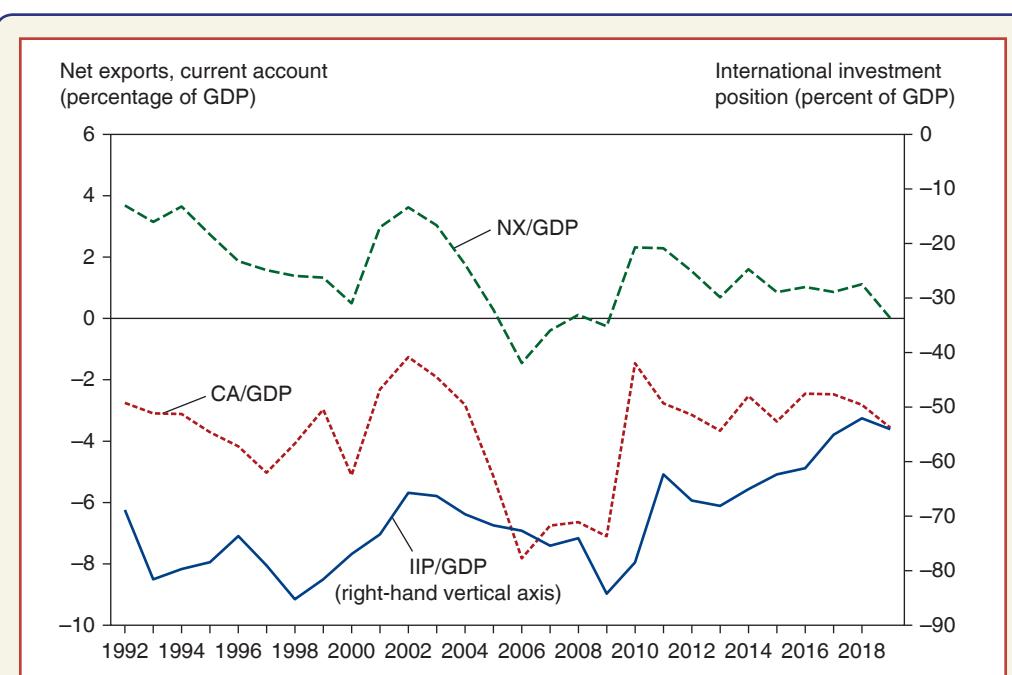
<sup>5</sup>Recall from your high school precalculus course that if  $x$  is a number less than 1 in absolute value, then  $x + x^2 + x^3 + \dots = \frac{x}{1-x}$ . In the present example,  $x = \frac{1+g}{1+r} < 1$ .

will need to be positive and, by construction, it is just big enough for the country to repay its debt over time.

What level of the current account balance does this imply, though? The country's current account balance in the initial year  $t = 0$  (expressed as a fraction of its GDP) is equal to  $ca_0 = r(iip_0) + \bar{nx} = r(iip_0) - (r - g)iip_0 = g(iip_0)$ . For a debtor country such as New Zealand, the initial current account is therefore in deficit. An important further implication of this current account level, however, is that the *IIP* ratio to GDP will remain constant forever at the level  $\bar{iip} = iip_0$ , so that the current account will also remain constant at  $g(\bar{iip})$ : This current account level is just enough to keep the ratio of net foreign assets or debt to nominal GDP constant, given that nominal GDP

is growing at the rate  $g$ .<sup>6</sup> Thus, if the ratio of net exports to GDP is held constant at the right value, a country with an initial net foreign debt will perpetually run deficits in its current account while still maintaining a constant ratio of net foreign liabilities to national output.

The accompanying figure shows New Zealand data on net exports and the current account (left-hand vertical axis) and the *IIP* (right-hand vertical axis), all expressed as percentages of GDP. In recent history, as you can see, New Zealand has had a negative current account balance every year, yet its *IIP*-to-GDP ratio has averaged about –70 percent of GDP since 1992 (and has been above that average and generally rising—that is, becoming less negative—since 2011). How has this been possible? Because the average growth



### New Zealand's Net Exports, Current Account, and Net International Investment Position, 1992–2019

New Zealand has consistently had a current account deficit for decades, yet its net foreign liabilities have averaged about 70 percent of GDP and have been falling in recent years.

**Source:** Statistics New Zealand.

<sup>6</sup>Thus, if nominal GDP grows by 5 percent per year, the current account will raise net foreign assets or debt by 5 percent as well, leaving the ratio constant. Problem 8 at the end of this chapter asks you to verify this algebraically.

rate of New Zealand's nominal GDP was about 5 percent over 1992–2019, our previous formula suggests that at an interest rate of  $r = 6$  percent per year, the  $IIP$ -to-GDP ratio remains constant at 70 percent if on average New Zealand has an annual net export surplus equal to

$$\begin{aligned}\overline{nx} &= -(r - g)iip_0 = (.06 - .05) \times (.7) \\ &= .01 \times .7 = 0.007,\end{aligned}$$

or 0.7 percent of GDP. But this number is safely below the average ratio of New Zealand's net exports to its GDP over the 1992–2019 period shown in the figure, which was 1.5 percent.<sup>7</sup>

Can we *independently* confirm that the rate of return on New Zealand's  $IIP$  was around 6 percent per year over this period? Such estimates are not easy to make because we would need detailed data on the country's foreign liabilities and investments and their rates of return. (Recall our discussion of the U.S.  $IIP$  at the end of Chapter 13.) We can get a partial answer—partial because it ignores capital gains and losses on foreign assets and liabilities—by looking at New Zealand's balance of international investment income, reckoned as a fraction of the  $IIP$ . Over 1992–2019, New Zealand paid out on average net interest and dividends equal to 7.5 percent of its net foreign debt. This is higher

than the 6 percent rate that stabilizes the  $IIP$  relative to GDP.

Should we be worried? There are several reasons not to be in this case. One possibility is that interest inflows to New Zealand are underestimated in the official data due to the standard underreporting problem (Chapter 13). In addition, New Zealand's gross foreign liabilities consist largely of bank debt, denominated in New Zealand (or “kiwi”) dollars, while its gross foreign assets include substantial stock shares plus other assets denominated in foreign currencies. Even though the kiwi has appreciated since 1992 (from about 55 to 72 U.S. cents per kiwi dollar), global stock markets have done very well over that period; for example, the Standard and Poor's 500 index of U.S. stock prices has risen roughly ninefold. Such gains on foreign assets have likely helped to reduce the average annual *total* cost of New Zealand's negative  $IIP$  closer to 6 percent. Finally, recall that New Zealand's average ratio of net exports to GDP has been comfortably above the 0.7 percent level that stabilizes its negative net foreign debt ratio at its long-term average when  $r = 6$  percent per year. All in all, therefore, the country would appear to be safely servicing its foreign debts. In recent years, net foreign liabilities have fallen despite continuing current account deficits.

If a large home current account surplus reflects excessive external borrowing by foreigners, the home country may in the future find itself unable to collect the money it is owed. Put another way, the home country may lose part of its foreign wealth if foreigners find they have borrowed more than they can repay. In contrast, nonrepayment of a loan between domestic residents leads to a redistribution of national wealth within the home country but causes no change in the level of national wealth.<sup>8</sup> Excessive current account surpluses may also be inconvenient for political reasons. Countries with large surpluses can become targets for discriminatory import barriers imposed by trading partners with external deficits. Japan has been in this position in the past, and China's surpluses inspire the most visible protectionist threats today. To avoid such damaging restrictions, surplus countries may try to keep their surpluses from becoming too large.

**Summary** The goal of external balance is a level of the current account that allows the most important gains from trade over time to be realized without risking the problems discussed previously. Because governments do not know this current account level

<sup>7</sup>The average current account deficit implied by this calculation is rather large:  $g(iip_0) = .05 \times .7 = 3.5$  percent of GDP annually.

<sup>8</sup>This fact was pointed out by John Maynard Keynes in “Foreign Investment and National Advantage,” *The Nation and Athenaeum* 35 (1924), pp. 584–587.

exactly, they may try to avoid large deficits or surpluses unless there is clear evidence of large gains from intertemporal trade.

There is a fundamental asymmetry, however, between the pressures pushing deficit and surplus countries to adjust their external imbalances downward. While big deficits that continue too long may be forcibly eliminated by a sudden stop in lending, there is unlikely to be a sudden stop in borrowing countries' willingness to absorb funds that are supplied by foreigners! Thus, the adjustment pressures that confront deficit countries are generally much stronger than those facing surplus countries.

## Classifying Monetary Systems: The Open-Economy Monetary Trilemma

The world economy has evolved through a variety of international monetary systems since the 19th century. A simple insight from the models we studied in the last part of this text will prove very helpful in understanding the key differences between these systems as well as the economic, political, and social factors that lead countries to adopt one system rather than another. The insight we will rely on is that policy makers in an open economy face an inescapable **monetary trilemma** in choosing the currency arrangements that best enable them to attain their internal and external balance goals.

Chapter 18 showed how a country that fixes its currency's exchange rate while allowing free international capital movements gives up control over domestic monetary policy. This sacrifice illustrates the impossibility of a country's having more than two items from the following list:

1. Exchange rate stability.
2. Monetary policy oriented toward domestic goals.
3. Freedom of international capital movements.

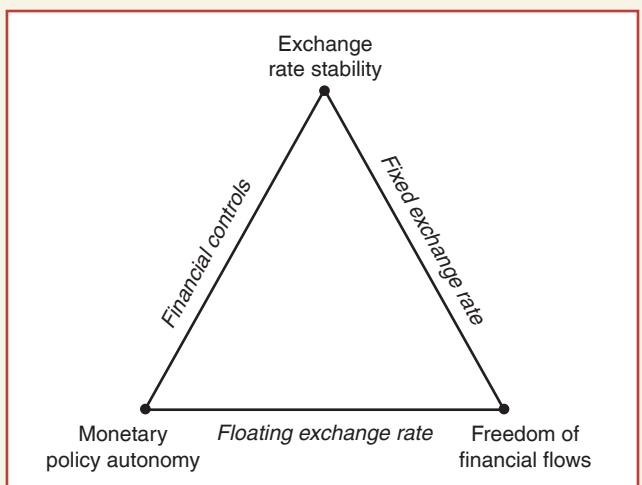
Because this list contains properties of an international monetary system that most economists would regard as desirable in themselves, the need to choose only two is a trilemma for policy regimes. It is a *trilemma* rather than a *dilemma* because the available options are three: 1 and 2, 1 and 3, or 2 and 3.

As we have seen, countries with fixed exchange rates that allow free cross-border capital mobility sacrifice item 2, a domestically oriented monetary policy. On the other hand, if a country with a fixed exchange rate restricts international financial flows so that the interest parity condition,  $R = R^*$ , does not need to hold true (thereby sacrificing item 3), it is still able to change the home interest rate so as to influence the domestic economy (thereby preserving item 2). In this way, for example, the country might be able to reduce domestic overheating (getting closer to internal balance by raising the interest rate) without causing a fall in its exports (preventing a potential departure from external balance due to an appreciation of its currency). Finally, as Chapter 17 showed, a country that has a floating exchange rate (and thus gives up item 1) can use monetary policy to steer the economy even though financial flows across its borders are free. But the exchange rate might become quite unpredictable as a result, complicating the economic planning of importers and exporters.

Figure 19-1 shows the preceding three desirable properties of an international monetary regime schematically as the vertices of a triangle. Only two can be reached simultaneously. Each edge of the triangle represents a policy regime consistent with the two properties shown at the edge's end points.

**FIGURE 19-1****The Monetary Trilemma for Open Economies**

The vertices of the triangle show three features that policy makers in open economies would prefer their monetary system to achieve. Unfortunately, at most two can coexist. Each of the three policy regime labels along the triangle's edges (floating exchange rate, fixed exchange rate, financial controls) is consistent with the two goals that it lies between in the diagram.



Of course, the trilemma does not imply that intermediate regimes are impossible, only that they will require the policy maker to trade off between different objectives. For example, more aggressive monetary intervention to manage the exchange rate can reduce exchange rate volatility, but only at the cost of reducing the ability of monetary policy to pursue targets other than the exchange rate. Similarly, a partial opening of the financial account will allow some cross-border borrowing and lending. At the same time, however, fixing the exchange rate in the face of domestic interest rate changes will require larger volumes of intervention, and potentially larger drains on foreign exchange reserves, than would be needed if cross-border financial transactions were entirely prohibited. The central bank's ability to guarantee exchange rate stability (by avoiding devaluations and crises) will therefore decline. Many middle-income countries (China is an example) limit exchange rate flexibility but at the same time bolster their domestic monetary control through restrictions on international payments and financial markets—and for a given degree of exchange stability, looser restrictions mean less monetary control.

## International Macroeconomic Policy under the Gold Standard, 1870–1914

The gold standard period between 1870 and 1914 was based on ideas about international macroeconomic policy very different from those that have formed the basis of international monetary arrangements since World War II. Nevertheless, the period warrants attention because subsequent attempts to reform the international monetary system based on fixed exchange rates can be viewed as attempts to build on the strengths of the gold standard while avoiding its weaknesses. (Some of these strengths and weaknesses were discussed in Chapter 18.) This section looks at how the gold standard functioned in practice before World War I and examines how well it enabled countries to attain goals of internal and external balance.

## Origins of the Gold Standard

The gold standard had its origin in the use of gold coins as a medium of exchange, unit of account, and store of value. While gold has played these roles since ancient times, the gold standard as a legal institution dates from 1819, when the British Parliament repealed long-standing restrictions on the export of gold coins and bullion from Britain.

Later in the 19th century, the United States, Germany, Japan, and other countries also adopted the gold standard. At the time, Britain was the world's leading economic power, and other nations hoped to achieve similar economic success by following British precedent. Given Britain's preeminence in international trade and the advanced development of its financial institutions and industry, London naturally became the center of the international monetary system built on the gold standard.

## External Balance under the Gold Standard

Under the gold standard, the primary responsibility of a central bank was to fix the exchange rate between its currency and gold. To maintain this official gold price, the central bank needed an adequate stock of gold reserves. Policy makers therefore viewed external balance not in terms of a current account target but as a situation in which the central bank was neither gaining gold from abroad nor (much more worrisome) losing gold to foreigners at too rapid a rate.

In the modern terminology of Chapter 13, central banks tried to avoid sharp fluctuations in the *balance of payments*, the difference between the current plus capital account balances and the balance of net nonreserve financial flows abroad. Because international reserves took the form of gold during this period, the surplus or deficit in the balance of payments had to be financed by gold shipments between central banks.<sup>9</sup> To avoid large gold movements, central banks adopted policies that pushed the balance of payments toward zero. A country is said to be in **balance of payments equilibrium** when the sum of its current and capital accounts, less the nonreserve component of net financial flows abroad, equals zero, so that the current plus capital account balance is financed entirely by private international lending without official reserve movements.

Many governments took a laissez-faire attitude toward the current account. Britain's current account surplus between 1870 and World War I averaged 5.2 percent of its GNP, a figure that is remarkably high by post-1945 standards. Several borrowing countries, however, did experience difficulty at one time or another in paying their foreign debts. Perhaps because Britain was the world's leading exporter of international economic theory as well as of capital during these years, the economic writing of the gold standard era places little emphasis on problems of current account adjustment.

## The Price-Specie-Flow Mechanism

The gold standard contains some powerful automatic mechanisms that contribute to the simultaneous achievement of balance of payments equilibrium by all countries. The most important of these, the **price-specie-flow mechanism**, was recognized by the 18th century (when precious metals were referred to as "specie"). In 1752, David Hume, the Scottish philosopher, described the price-specie-flow mechanism as follows:

Suppose four-fifths of all the money in Great Britain to be annihilated in one night, and the nation reduced to the same condition, with regard to specie, as in the reigns of the Harrys and the Edwards, what would be the consequence? Must not the price of all

<sup>9</sup>In reality, central banks had begun to hold foreign currencies in their reserves even before 1914. (The pound sterling was the leading reserve currency then.)

labour and commodities sink in proportion, and everything be sold as cheap as they were in those ages? What nation could then dispute with us in any foreign market, or pretend to navigate or to sell manufactures at the same price, which to us would afford sufficient profit? In how little time, therefore, must this bring back the money which we had lost, and raise us to the level of all the neighbouring nations? Where, after we have arrived, we immediately lose the advantage of the cheapness of labour and commodities; and the farther flowing in of money is stopped by our fulness and repletion.

Again, suppose that all the money in Great Britain were multiplied fivefold in a night, must not the contrary effect follow? Must not all labour and commodities rise to such an exorbitant height, that no neighbouring nations could afford to buy from us; while their commodities, on the other hand, became comparatively so cheap, that, in spite of all the laws which could be formed, they would run in upon us, and our money flow out; till we fall to a level with foreigners, and lose that great superiority of riches which had laid us under such disadvantages?<sup>10</sup>

It is easy to translate Hume's description of the price-specie-flow mechanism into more modern terms. Suppose Britain's current plus capital account surplus is greater than its nonreserve financial account balance. Because foreigners' net imports from Britain are not being financed entirely by British loans, the shortfall must be matched by flows of international reserves—that is, of gold—into Britain. These gold flows automatically reduce foreign money supplies and swell Britain's money supply, pushing foreign prices downward and British prices upward. (Notice that Hume fully understood the lesson of Chapter 15, that price levels and money supplies move proportionally in the long run.)

The simultaneous rise in British prices and fall in foreign prices—a real appreciation of the pound, given the fixed exchange rate—reduces foreign demand for British goods and services and at the same time increases British demand for foreign goods and services. These demand shifts work in the direction of reducing Britain's current account surplus and reducing the foreign current account deficit. Eventually, therefore, reserve movements stop and all countries reach balance of payments equilibrium. The same process also works in reverse, eliminating an initial situation of foreign surplus and British deficit.

### The Gold Standard “Rules of the Game”: Myth and Reality

In theory, the price-specie-flow mechanism could operate automatically. But the reactions of central banks to gold flows across their borders furnished another potential mechanism to help restore balance of payments equilibrium. Central banks that were persistently losing gold faced the risk of becoming unable to meet their obligations to redeem currency notes. They were therefore motivated to sell domestic assets when gold was being lost, pushing domestic interest rates upward and attracting inflows of funds from abroad. Central banks gaining gold had much weaker incentives to eliminate their own imports of the metal. The main incentive was the greater profitability of interest-bearing domestic assets compared with “barren” gold. A central bank that was accumulating gold might be tempted to purchase domestic assets, thereby lowering home interest rates, increasing financial outflows, and driving gold abroad.

These domestic credit measures, if undertaken by central banks, reinforced the price-specie-flow mechanism by pushing all countries toward balance of payments equilibrium. After World War I, the practices of selling domestic assets in the face of

---

<sup>10</sup>Hume, “Of the Balance of Trade,” reprinted (in abridged form) in Barry Eichengreen and Marc Flandreau, eds., *The Gold Standard in Theory and History* (London: Routledge, 1997), pp. 33–43.

a deficit and buying domestic assets in the face of a surplus came to be known as the gold standard “rules of the game”—a phrase reportedly coined by Keynes. Because such measures speeded the movement of all countries toward their external balance goals, they increased the efficiency of the automatic adjustment processes inherent in the gold standard.

Later research has shown that the supposed “rules of the game” of the gold standard were frequently violated before 1914. As noted, the incentives to obey the rules applied with greater force to deficit than to surplus countries, so in practice it was the deficit countries that bore the burden of bringing the payments balances of *all* countries into equilibrium. By not always taking action to reduce gold inflows, the surplus countries worsened a problem of international policy coordination inherent in the system: Deficit countries competing for a limited supply of gold reserves might adopt overly contractionary monetary policies that harmed employment while doing little to improve their reserve positions.

In fact, countries often reversed the rules and *sterilized* gold flows, that is, sold domestic assets when foreign reserves were rising and bought domestic assets as foreign reserves fell. Government interference with private gold exports also undermined the system. The picture of smooth and automatic balance of payments adjustment before World War I therefore did not always match reality. Governments sometimes ignored both the “rules of the game” and the effects of their actions on other countries.<sup>11</sup>

### Internal Balance under the Gold Standard

By fixing the prices of currencies in terms of gold, the gold standard aimed to limit monetary growth in the world economy and thus to ensure stability in world price levels. While price levels within gold standard countries did not rise as much between 1870 and 1914 as over the period after World War II, national price levels moved unpredictably over shorter horizons as periods of inflation and deflation followed each other. The gold standard’s mixed record on price stability reflected a problem discussed in Chapter 18: change in the relative prices of gold and other commodities.

In addition, the gold standard does not seem to have done much to ensure full employment. In comparison, the U.K. unemployment rate in the pre-1914 period averaged 6.2 percent, which is slightly below the U.S. unemployment rate but still indicates the lack of achieving full employment. After World War II, however, in the shorter period between 1947 and 1973, the U.K. unemployment rate averaged at a remarkably low level of 2.1 percent.<sup>12</sup>

A fundamental cause of short-term internal instability under the pre-1914 gold standard was the subordination of economic policy to external objectives. Before World War I, governments had not assumed responsibility for maintaining internal balance as fully as they did after World War II. In the United States, the resulting economic distress led to political opposition to the gold standard, as the Case Study that follows explains. In terms of the monetary policy trilemma discussed earlier, the gold standard allowed high degrees of exchange rate stability and international financial capital mobility but did not allow monetary policy to pursue internal policy goals. These priorities were consistent with the limited political power at the time of those most vulnerable to unemployment.

<sup>11</sup>An influential study of central bank practices under the gold standard is Arthur I. Bloomfield, *Monetary Policy under the International Gold Standard: 1880–1914* (New York: Federal Reserve Bank of New York, 1959).

<sup>12</sup>After 1973, the U.K. unemployment rate was much higher, averaging 10.1 percent between 1974 and 1999. Data on U.K. unemployment are from Timothy J. Hatton and George R. Boyer, “Unemployment and the UK labour market before, during and after the Golden Age,” European Review of Economic History 9 (April 2005), pp. 35–60.

The importance of internal policy objectives increased after World War II as a result of the worldwide economic instability of the interwar years, 1918–1939. And the unpalatable internal consequences of attempts to restore the gold standard after 1918 helped mold the thinking of the architects of the fixed exchange rate system adopted after 1945. To understand how the post–World War II international monetary system tried to reconcile the goals of internal and external balance, we therefore must examine the economic events of the period between the two world wars.

## CASE STUDY

### The Political Economy of Exchange Rate Regimes: Conflict over America's Monetary Standard during the 1890s



Pictorial Press Ltd/Alamy Stock Photo

As we learned in Chapter 18, the United States had a bimetallic monetary standard until the Civil War, with both silver and gold in circulation. Once war broke out, the country moved to a paper currency (called the “greenback”) and a floating exchange rate, but in 1879 a pure gold standard (and a fixed exchange rate against other gold-standard currencies such as the British pound sterling) was adopted.

World gold supplies had increased sharply after the 1849 discoveries in California,

fornia, but the 1879 return of the dollar to gold at the pre–Civil War parity required deflation in the United States. Furthermore, a global shortage of gold generated continuing downward pressure on price levels long after the American restoration of gold. By 1896, the U.S. price level was about 40 percent below its 1869 level. Economic distress was widespread and became especially severe after a banking panic in 1893. Farmers, who saw the prices of agricultural products plummet more quickly even than the general price level, were especially hard hit.

In the 1890s, a broad Populist coalition of U.S. farmers, miners, and others pressed for revival of the bimetallic silver-gold system that had prevailed before the Civil War. They desired a return to the old 16:1 relative mint parity for gold and silver, but by the early 1890s, the market price of gold in terms of silver had risen to around 30. The Populists foresaw that the monetization of silver at 16:1 would lead to an increase in the silver money stock, and possibly a reversal of deflation, as people used gold dollars to buy silver cheaply on the market and then took it to the mint for coining. These developments would have had several advantages from the standpoint of farmers and their allies, such as undoing the adverse terms of trade trends of the previous decades and reducing the real values of farmers' mortgage debts. Western silver mine owners, in particular, were wildly enthusiastic. On the other side, eastern financiers viewed “sound money”—that is, gold and gold alone—as essential for achieving more complete American integration into world markets.

The silver movement reached its high tide in 1896 when the Democratic Party nominated William Jennings Bryan to run for president after a stem-winding convention speech in which he famously proclaimed, “Thou shalt not crucify mankind upon a cross of gold.” But by then, new gold discoveries in South Africa, Alaska, and elsewhere were starting to reverse previous deflationary trends across the world, defusing silver as a political issue. Bryan lost the elections of 1896 and 1900 to Republican William McKinley, and in March 1900 Congress passed the Gold Standard Act, which definitively placed the dollar on an exclusive basis of gold.

Modern readers of L. Frank Baum’s classic 1900 children’s book *The Wonderful Wizard of Oz* usually don’t realize that the story of Dorothy, Toto, and their friends is an allegorical rendition of the U.S. political struggle over gold. The yellow brick road represents the false promise of gold, the name *Oz* is a reference to an ounce (oz.) of gold, and Dorothy’s silver slippers—changed to ruby slippers in the well-known Hollywood color-film version—offer the true way home to the heavily indebted farming state of Kansas.<sup>13</sup>

Although many observers have identified farming debt as a prime factor in the 1890s silver agitation, Harvard political scientist Jeffry Frieden shows that a more relevant factor was the desire of farming and mining interests to raise the prices of their products relative to nontraded goods.<sup>14</sup> Manufacturers, who competed with imports, had been able to obtain tariff protection as a counterweight to deflation. As a group, they therefore had little interest in changing the currency standard. Because the United States was nearly exclusively an exporter of primary products, import tariffs would have been ineffective in helping farmers and miners. A depreciation of the U.S. dollar, however, promised to raise the dollar prices of primary products relative to the prices of nontradables. Through a careful statistical analysis of congressional voting on bills related to the monetary system, Frieden shows that legislative support for silver was unrelated to debt levels but was indeed highly correlated with state employment in agriculture and mining.

## The Interwar Years, 1918–1939

Governments effectively suspended the gold standard during World War I and financed part of their massive military expenditures by printing money. Further, labor forces and productive capacity were reduced sharply through war losses. As a result, price levels were higher everywhere at the war’s conclusion in 1918.

Several countries experienced runaway inflation as their governments attempted to aid the reconstruction process through public expenditures. These governments financed their purchases simply by printing the money they needed, as they sometimes had during the war. The result was a sharp rise in money supplies and price levels.

<sup>13</sup>An informative and amusing account is Hugh Rockoff, “The ‘Wizard of Oz’ as a Monetary Allegory,” *Journal of Political Economy* 98 (August 1990), pp. 739–760.

<sup>14</sup>See “Monetary Populism in Nineteenth-Century America: An Open Economy Interpretation,” *Journal of Economic History* 57 (June 1997), pp. 367–395.

## The Fleeting Return to Gold

The United States returned to gold in 1919. In 1922, at a conference in Genoa, Italy, a group of countries including Britain, France, Italy, and Japan agreed on a program calling for a general return to the gold standard and cooperation among central banks in attaining external and internal objectives. Realizing that gold supplies might be inadequate to meet central banks' demands for international reserves (a problem of the gold standard noted in Chapter 18), the Genoa Conference sanctioned a partial gold exchange standard in which smaller countries could hold as reserves the currencies of several large countries whose own international reserves would consist entirely of gold.

In 1925, Britain returned to the gold standard by pegging the pound to gold at the pre-war price. Chancellor of the Exchequer Winston Churchill advocated returning to the old parity on the grounds that any deviation from the prewar price would undermine world confidence in the stability of Britain's financial institutions, which had played the leading role in international finance during the gold standard era. Though Britain's price level had been falling since the war, in 1925 it was still higher than in the days of the prewar gold standard. To return the pound price of gold to its prewar level, the Bank of England was therefore forced to follow contractionary monetary policies that contributed to severe unemployment.

British stagnation in the 1920s accelerated London's decline as the world's leading financial center. Britain's economic weakening proved problematic for the stability of the restored gold standard. In line with the recommendations of the Genoa Conference, many countries held international reserves in the form of deposits in London. Britain's gold reserves were limited, however, and the country's persistent stagnation did little to inspire confidence in its ability to meet its foreign obligations. Throughout the world, bank failures soon followed the onset of the Great Depression in 1929. Britain left gold in 1931 when foreign holders of sterling (including several central banks) lost confidence in Britain's promise to maintain its currency's value and began converting their sterling to gold.

## International Economic Disintegration

As the depression continued, many countries renounced the gold standard and allowed their currencies to float in the foreign exchange market. In the face of growing unemployment, a resolution of the trilemma in favor of fixed exchange rates became difficult to maintain. The United States left gold in 1933 but returned in 1934, having raised the dollar price of gold from \$20.67 to \$35 per ounce. Countries that clung to the gold standard without devaluing their currencies (the "Gold Bloc," led by France) suffered most during the Great Depression. In contrast, countries that abandoned the gold standard or at least devalued their currencies enjoyed a relatively quick recovery of both output and prices toward 1929 levels.<sup>15</sup> Indeed, recent research places much of the blame for the depression's worldwide propagation on the gold standard itself (see the Case Study "The International Gold Standard and the Great Depression").

Major economic harm resulted from restrictions on international trade and payments, which proliferated as countries attempted to discourage imports and keep aggregate demand bottled up at home. The Smoot-Hawley tariff imposed by the United States in 1930 was intended to protect American jobs, but it had a damaging effect on employment abroad. The foreign response involved retaliatory trade restrictions and preferential trading agreements among groups of countries. Canada immediately retaliated by imposing new tariffs of 30 percent on a range of goods exported by the United States, followed by an intensified economic cooperation with the British Empire. Several countries in Europe, most notably

<sup>15</sup>Other members of the "Gold Bloc": Belgium, Luxembourg, the Netherlands, Italy, Poland, and Switzerland; and Ben S Bernanke, "The world on a cross of gold: A Review of 'Golden Fetters: The Gold Standard and the Great Depression, 1919-1939,'" *Journal of Monetary Economics* 31, 1993, pp. 251–267.

Germany, Spain and, to a lesser degree, Italy, turned toward autarky. World trade collapsed dramatically. A measure that raises domestic welfare is called a *beggar-thy-neighbor policy* when it benefits the home country at the cost of worsening economic conditions abroad (recall Chapter 12). However, everyone is hurt when countries *simultaneously* adopt beggar-thy-neighbor policies.

Uncertainty about government policies led to sharp reserve movements for countries with pegged exchange rates and sharp exchange rate movements for those with floating rates. Many countries imposed prohibitions on private financial account transactions to limit these effects of foreign exchange market developments. Most notably, Germany installed capital controls to curb capital outflows and to maintain a fixed exchange rate, complemented by a complex system of bilateral trade clearing agreements to offset the price- and trade-distorting effects of the capital controls. This system was later utilized by the Nazi government to secure critical imports in the absence of foreign currency.<sup>16</sup> This was another way of addressing the trilemma. Trade barriers and deflation in the industrial economies of America and Europe led to widespread repudiations of private international debts, particularly by Latin American countries, whose export markets were disappearing. Governments in western Europe repudiated their debts to the United States and Britain incurred because of World War I. In short, the world economy disintegrated into increasingly autarkic (that is, self-sufficient) national units in the early 1930s.

## CASE STUDY



Everett Collection/Shutterstock

### The International Gold Standard and the Great Depression

One of the most striking features of the decade-long Great Depression that started in 1929 was its global nature. Rather than being confined to the United States and its main trading partners, the downturn spread rapidly and forcefully to Europe, Latin America, and elsewhere. What explains the Great Depression's nearly universal scope? Recent scholarship shows that the international gold standard played a central role in starting, deepening, and spreading the 20th century's greatest economic crisis.<sup>17</sup>

In 1929, most market economies were once again on the gold standard. At the time, however, the United States, attempting to slow its overheated economy through monetary contraction, and France, having just ended an inflationary period and returned to gold,

<sup>16</sup>A detailed discussion on capital controls in the 1930s is provided in Kris James Mitchener and Kirsten Wandschneider, “Capital Controls and Recovery from the Financial Crisis of the 1930s,” *Journal of International Economics* 95, pp. 188–201, 2015.

<sup>17</sup>Important contributions to this research include Ehsan U. Choudhri and Levis A. Kochin, “The Exchange Rate and the International Transmission of Business Cycle Disturbances: Some Evidence from the Great Depression,” *Journal of Money, Credit, and Banking* 12 (1980), pp. 565–574; Peter Temin, *Lessons from the Great Depression* (Cambridge, MA: MIT Press, 1989); and Barry Eichengreen, *Golden Fetters: The Gold Standard and the Great Depression, 1919–1939* (New York: Oxford University Press, 1992). A concise and lucid summary is Ben S. Bernanke, “The World on a Cross of Gold: A Review of ‘Golden Fetters: The Gold Standard and the Great Depression, 1919–1939,’” *Journal of Monetary Economics* 31 (April 1993), pp. 251–267.

faced large financial inflows. Through the resulting balance of payments surpluses, both countries were absorbing the world's monetary gold at a startling rate. (By 1932, the two countries alone held more than 70 percent of it!) Other countries on the gold standard had no choice but to engage in domestic asset sales and raise interest rates if they wished to conserve their dwindling gold stocks. The resulting worldwide monetary contraction, combined with the shock waves from the October 1929 New York stock market crash, sent the world into deep recession.

A cascade of bank failures around the world only accelerated the global economy's downward spiral. The gold standard again was a key culprit. Many countries desired to safeguard their gold reserves in order to be able to remain on the gold standard. This desire often discouraged their central banks from providing troubled private banks with the loans that might have allowed the banks to stay in business. After all, any cash provided to banks by their home central banks would have increased potential private claims to the government's precious gold holdings.<sup>18</sup>

Perhaps the clearest evidence of the gold standard's role is the contrasting behavior of output and the price level in countries that left the gold standard relatively early, such as Britain, and those that chose a different response to the trilemma and instead stubbornly hung on. Countries that abandoned the gold standard freed themselves to adopt more expansionary monetary policies that limited (or prevented) both domestic deflation and output contraction. The countries with the biggest deflations and output contractions over the years 1929–1935 included France, Switzerland, Belgium, the Netherlands, and Poland, all of which stayed on the gold standard until 1936.

In the face of the Great Depression, most countries resolved the choice between external and internal balance by curtailing their trading links with the rest of the world and eliminating, by government decree, the possibility of any significant external imbalance. By reducing the gains from trade, that approach imposed high costs on the world economy and contributed to the slow recovery from depression, which in many countries was still incomplete in 1939. All countries would have been better off in a world with freer international trade, provided international cooperation had helped each country preserve its external balance and financial stability without sacrificing internal policy goals. It was this realization that inspired the blueprint for the postwar international monetary system, the **Bretton Woods agreement**.

## The Bretton Woods System and the International Monetary Fund

In July 1944, representatives of 44 countries meeting in Bretton Woods, New Hampshire, drafted and signed the Articles of Agreement of the **International Monetary Fund (IMF)**. Remembering the disastrous economic events of the interwar period, statesmen in the Allied countries hoped to design an international monetary system that would

<sup>18</sup>Chang-Tai Hsieh and Christina D. Romer argue that the fear of being forced off gold cannot explain the U.S. Federal Reserve's unwillingness to expand the money supply in the early 1930s. See "Was the Federal Reserve Constrained by the Gold Standard During the Great Depression? Evidence from the 1932 Open Market Purchase Program," *Journal of Economic History* 66 (March 2006), pp. 140–176.

foster full employment and price stability while allowing individual countries to attain external balance without restrictions on international trade.<sup>19</sup>

The system set up by the Bretton Woods agreement called for fixed exchange rates against the U.S. dollar and an unvarying dollar price of gold—\$35 an ounce. Member countries held their official international reserves largely in the form of gold or dollar assets and had the right to sell dollars to the Federal Reserve for gold at the official price. The system was thus a gold exchange standard, with the dollar as its principal reserve currency. In the terminology of Chapter 18, the dollar was the “*Nth currency*” in terms of which the  $N - 1$  exchange rates of the system were defined. The United States itself intervened only rarely in the foreign exchange market. Usually, the  $N - 1$  foreign central banks intervened when necessary to fix the system’s  $N - 1$  exchange rates, while the United States was responsible in theory for fixing the dollar price of gold.

## Goals and Structure of the IMF

The IMF Articles of Agreement, through a mixture of discipline and flexibility, hoped to avoid a repetition of the turbulent interwar experience.

The major discipline on monetary management was the requirement that exchange rates be fixed to the dollar, which, in turn, was tied to gold. If a central bank other than the Federal Reserve pursued excessive monetary expansion, it would lose international reserves and eventually become unable to maintain the fixed dollar exchange rate of its currency. Since high U.S. monetary growth would lead to dollar accumulation by foreign central banks, the Fed itself was constrained in its monetary policies by its obligation to redeem those dollars for gold. The official gold price of \$35 an ounce served as a further brake on American monetary policy, since that price would be pushed upward if too many dollars were created.

Fixed exchange rates were seen as more than a device for imposing monetary discipline on the system, however. Rightly or wrongly, the interwar experience had convinced the IMF’s architects that floating exchange rates were a cause of speculative instability and were harmful to international trade.

The interwar experience had shown also that national governments would not be willing to maintain both free trade and fixed exchange rates at the price of long-term domestic unemployment. After the experience of the Great Depression, governments were widely viewed as responsible for maintaining full employment. The IMF agreement therefore tried to incorporate sufficient flexibility to allow countries to attain external balance in an orderly fashion without sacrificing internal objectives or predictable exchange rates.

Two major features of the IMF Articles of Agreement helped promote this flexibility in external adjustment. First, members of the IMF contributed their currencies and gold to form a pool of financial resources that the IMF could lend to countries in need. Second, although exchange rates against the dollar were fixed, these parities could be adjusted with the agreement of the IMF. Such devaluations and revaluations were supposed to be infrequent and carried out only in cases of an economy in *fundamental disequilibrium*. Although the IMF’s Articles did not define “fundamental disequilibrium,” the term was intended to cover countries that suffered permanent adverse shifts in the demand for their products, so that without devaluation, the countries would face long periods of unemployment and

<sup>19</sup>The same conference set up a second institution, the World Bank, whose goals were to help the belligerents rebuild their shattered economies and to help the former colonial territories develop and modernize theirs. In 1947, the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT) was inaugurated as a forum for the multilateral reduction of trade barriers. The GATT was supposed to be a prelude to the creation of an International Trade Organization (ITO), whose goals in the trade area would parallel those of the IMF in the financial area. Unfortunately, the failures of Congress and Britain’s Parliament to ratify its charter doomed the ITO. In the 1990s, the GATT became the current World Trade Organization (WTO).

external deficits. The flexibility of an adjustable exchange rate was not available, however, to the “Nth currency” of the Bretton Woods system, the U.S. dollar.

How did the Bretton Woods system resolve the trilemma? In essence, the system was based on the presumption that movements of private financial capital could be restricted, allowing some degree of independence for domestically oriented monetary policies. The new system thus was diametrically opposed to the gold standard’s subordination of monetary policy to external considerations such as freedom of financial flows. After the experience of high interwar unemployment, the architects of the Bretton Woods system hoped to ensure that countries would not be forced to adopt contractionary monetary policies for balance of payments reasons in the face of an economic downturn.

Supporting this emphasis on high employment, restrictions on cross-border financial flows would allow “orderly” exchange rate changes in situations of persistent imbalance. In theory, policy makers would be able to change exchange rates in a deliberate fashion, without the pressure of massive speculative attacks. As we shall see, however, while this approach worked well initially, the very success of the Bretton Woods system in rebuilding international trade made it progressively harder for policy makers to avoid speculative attacks as the years passed.

### Convertibility and the Expansion of Private Financial Flows

Just as the general acceptability of national currency eliminates the costs of barter within a single economy, the use of national currencies in international trade makes the world economy function more efficiently. To promote efficient multilateral trade, the IMF Articles of Agreement urged members to make their national currencies convertible as soon as possible. A **convertible currency** is one that may be freely exchanged for foreign currencies. The U.S. and Canadian dollars became convertible in 1945. This meant, for example, that a Canadian resident who acquired U.S. dollars could use them to make purchases in the United States, could sell them in the foreign exchange market for Canadian dollars, or could sell them to the Bank of Canada, which then had the right to sell them to the Federal Reserve (at the fixed dollar/gold exchange rate) in return for gold. General *inconvertibility* would make international trade extremely difficult. A French citizen might be unwilling to sell goods to a German in return for *inconvertible* German marks because these marks would then be usable only subject to restrictions imposed by the German government. With no market in *inconvertible* French francs, the German would be unable to obtain French currency to pay for the French goods. The only way of trading would therefore be through barter, the direct exchange of goods for goods. Most countries in Europe did not restore convertibility until the end of 1958, with Japan following in 1964.

The early convertibility of the U.S. dollar, together with its special position in the Bretton Woods system and the economic and political dominance of the United States, helped to make the dollar the postwar world’s key currency. Because dollars were freely convertible, much international trade tended to be invoiced in dollars, and importers and exporters held dollar balances for transactions. In effect, the dollar became an international money—a universal medium of exchange, unit of account, and store of value. Central banks naturally found it advantageous to hold their international reserves in the form of interest-bearing dollar assets.

The restoration of convertibility in Europe in 1958 gradually began to change the nature of policy makers’ external constraints. As foreign exchange trading expanded, financial markets in different countries became more tightly integrated—an important step toward the creation of today’s worldwide foreign exchange market. With growing opportunities to move funds across borders, national interest rates became more closely linked, and the speed with which policy changes might cause a country to lose or gain international reserves increased. After 1958, and increasingly over the next 15 years,

central banks had to be attentive to foreign financial conditions or take the risk that sudden reserve losses might leave them without the resources needed to peg exchange rates. Faced with a sudden rise in foreign interest rates, for example, a central bank would be forced to sell domestic assets and raise the domestic interest rate to hold its international reserves steady.

The restoration of convertibility did not result in immediate and complete international financial integration, as assumed in the model of fixed exchange rates set out in Chapter 18. On the contrary, most countries continued to maintain restrictions on financial account transactions, a practice that the IMF explicitly allowed. But the opportunities for *disguised* capital flows increased dramatically. For example, importers within a country could effectively purchase foreign assets by accelerating payments to foreign suppliers relative to actual shipments of goods; they could effectively borrow from foreign suppliers by delaying payments. These trade practices—known, respectively, as “leads” and “lags”—provided two of the many ways through which official barriers to private capital movements could be evaded. Even though the condition of international interest rate equality assumed in Chapter 18 did not hold exactly, the links among countries’ interest rates tightened as the Bretton Woods system matured. The Bretton Woods resolution of the trilemma was gradually coming undone.

### Speculative Capital Flows and Crises

Current account deficits and surpluses took on added significance under the new conditions of increasingly mobile private financial flows. A country with a large and persistent current account deficit might be suspected of being in “fundamental disequilibrium” under the IMF Articles of Agreement and thus ripe for a currency devaluation. Suspicion of an impending devaluation could, in turn, spark a balance of payments crisis (see Chapter 18).

Anyone holding pound deposits during a devaluation of the pound, for example, would suffer a loss, since the foreign currency value of pound assets would decrease suddenly by the amount of the exchange rate change. If Britain had a current account deficit, therefore, holders of pounds would become nervous and shift their wealth into other currencies. To hold the pound’s exchange rate against the dollar pegged, the Bank of England (Britain’s central bank) would have to buy pounds and supply the foreign assets that market participants wished to hold. This loss of foreign reserves, if large enough, might force devaluation by leaving the Bank of England without enough reserves to prop up the exchange rate.

Similarly, countries with large current account surpluses might be viewed by the market as candidates for revaluation. In this case, their central banks would find themselves swamped with official reserves, the result of selling the home currency in the foreign exchange market to keep the currency from appreciating. A country in this position would face the problem of having its money supply grow uncontrollably, a development that could push the price level up and upset internal balance. Governments thus became increasingly reluctant to contemplate exchange rate realignments, fearing the resulting speculative attacks.

Balance of payments crises nonetheless became increasingly frequent and violent throughout the 1960s and early 1970s. A record British trade balance deficit in early 1964 led to a period of intermittent speculation against the pound that complicated British policy making until November 1967, when the pound was finally devalued. France devalued its franc and Germany revalued its mark in 1969 after similar speculative attacks, in which France faced speculative financial outflows and Germany faced speculative financial inflows. (The two countries still had their own currencies at that time.) These crises became so massive by the early 1970s that they eventually brought

down the Bretton Woods structure of fixed exchange rates. The possibility of a balance of payments crisis therefore lent increased importance to the external goal of a current account target. Even current account imbalances justified by differing international investment opportunities or caused by purely temporary factors might have fueled market suspicions of an impending parity change. In this environment, policy makers had additional incentives to avoid sharp current account changes.

## Analyzing Policy Options for Reaching Internal and External Balance

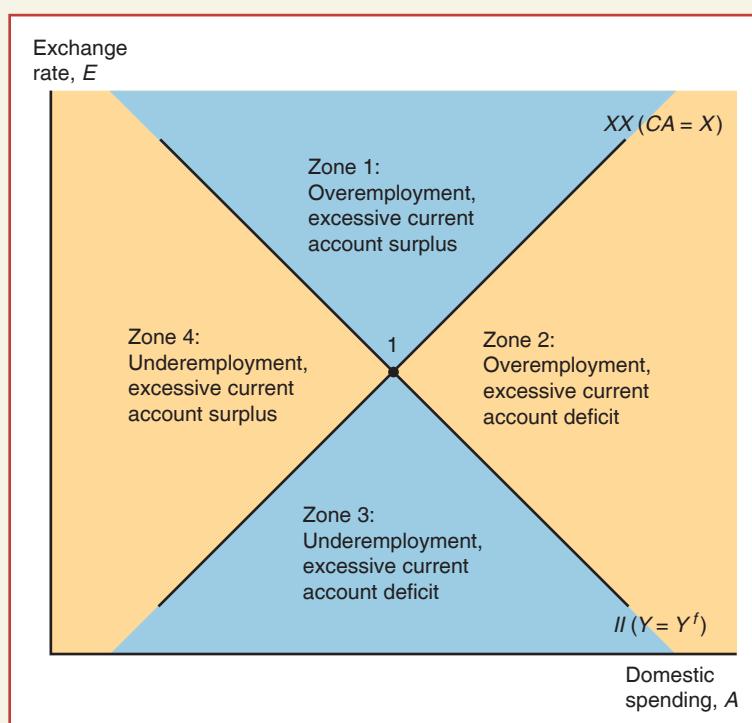
How were individual countries able to reach internal and external balance under the rules of the Bretton Woods system? A simple diagram will help you to visualize the available policy options. (The problem of the United States under the Bretton Woods system was somewhat different, as we describe later.) In line with the approximate conditions later in the Bretton Woods system, we will assume a high degree of financial capital mobility across borders, so that the domestic interest rate cannot be set independently of the exchange rate.

Our diagrammatic framework actually is applicable whether the exchange rate is fixed, as under the Bretton Woods system, or flexible. Figure 19-2 shows how a country's position with respect to its internal and external goals depends on the level of its exchange rate,  $E$ , and the level of domestic spending; and that position is not necessarily restricted by the exchange rate regime. Throughout,  $E$  is the domestic currency price of the foreign currency (the dollar under Bretton Woods). The analysis applies to the short run because the home and foreign price levels ( $P$  and  $P^*$ , respectively) are assumed to be fixed.

**FIGURE 19-2**

### Internal Balance ( $II$ ), External Balance ( $XX$ ), and the “Four Zones of Economic Discomfort”

The diagram shows what different levels of the exchange rate,  $E$ , and overall domestic spending,  $A$ , imply for employment and the current account. Along  $II$ , output is at its full-employment level,  $Y^f$ . Along  $XX$ , the current account is at its target level,  $X$ .



## Maintaining Internal Balance

First consider internal balance, which requires that aggregate demand equal the full-employment level of output,  $Y^f$ .<sup>20</sup>

Recall that aggregate demand for domestic output is the sum of consumption,  $C$ , investment,  $I$ , government purchases,  $G$ , and the current account,  $CA$ . Of this sum, total domestic spending, also called domestic *absorption*, is denoted by  $A = C + I + G$ . (Of course, some of this overall domestic spending falls on imports and therefore does not contribute to the aggregate demand for domestic output, whereas foreign demand for our exports adds to that aggregate demand.) In Chapter 17, we expressed the current account surplus as a decreasing function of disposable income and an increasing function of the real exchange rate,  $EP^*/P$ . However, because import spending rises as total domestic spending  $A$  rises, we can similarly express the current account as a decreasing function of spending and an increasing function of the real exchange rate,  $CA(EP^*/P, A)$ . Under this new notation, the condition of internal balance (full-employment output equals aggregate demand) is therefore

$$Y^f = C + I + G + CA(EP^*/P, A) = A + CA(EP^*/P, A). \quad (19-1)$$

Equation (19-1) suggests the policy tools that affect aggregate demand and, therefore, output, in the short run. The government can directly influence total spending  $A$  through fiscal policy, for example. Fiscal expansion (a rise in  $G$  or a fall in  $T$ ) stimulates aggregate demand and causes output to rise, even though a fraction of the additional spending goes toward import purchases. Similarly, a devaluation of the currency (a rise in  $E$ ) makes domestic goods and services cheaper relative to those sold abroad and thereby increases demand and output. The policy maker can hold output steady at its full employment level,  $Y^f$ , through fiscal policy or exchange rate changes.

Notice that monetary policy is not a policy tool under fixed exchange rates. This is because, as shown in Chapter 18, an attempt by the central bank to alter the money supply by buying or selling domestic assets will cause an offsetting change in foreign reserves, leaving the domestic money supply unchanged. If we were interpreting the diagram to apply to a situation of floating exchange rates, however, we would think of monetary policy as potentially bringing about exchange rate changes consistent with a position of internal and external balance.

The  $II$  schedule in Figure 19-2 shows combinations of exchange rates and domestic spending that hold output constant at  $Y^f$  and thus maintain internal balance. The schedule is downward sloping because currency devaluation (a rise in  $E$ ) and higher domestic absorption both tend to raise output. To hold output constant, a revaluation of the currency (which reduces aggregate demand) must therefore be matched by higher domestic spending (which increases aggregate output demand). Schedule  $II$  shows precisely how domestic spending must change as  $E$  changes to maintain full employment. To the right of  $II$ , spending is higher than needed for full employment, so the economy's productive factors are overemployed. To the left of  $II$ , spending is too low, and there is unemployment.

---

<sup>20</sup>We will assume the domestic price level is stable at full employment, but if  $P^*$  is unstable because of foreign inflation, for example, full employment alone will not guarantee price stability under a fixed exchange rate. This complex problem is considered in the following pages, when we examine worldwide inflation under fixed exchange rates.

## Maintaining External Balance

We have seen how domestic spending and exchange rate changes influence output and thus help the government achieve its internal goal of full employment. How do these variables affect the economy's external balance? To answer this question, assume the government has a target value,  $X$ , for the current account surplus. The goal of external balance requires the government to manage domestic spending (perhaps through fiscal policy) and the exchange rate so that the equation

$$CA(EP^*/P, A) = X \quad (19-2)$$

is satisfied.

Given  $P$  and  $P^*$ , a rise in  $E$  makes domestic goods cheaper and improves the current account. A rise in domestic spending,  $A$ , however, has the opposite effect on the current account, because it causes imports to rise. To maintain its current account at  $X$  as it devalues the currency (that is, as it raises  $E$ ), the government must enact policies that raise domestic spending. Figure 19-2 therefore shows that the  $XX$  schedule, along which external balance holds, is positively sloped. The  $XX$  schedule shows the amount of additional spending that will hold the current account surplus at  $X$  as the currency is devalued by a given amount.<sup>21</sup> Since a rise in  $E$  raises net exports, the current account is in surplus, relative to its target level  $X$ , above  $XX$ . Similarly, below  $XX$  the current account is in deficit relative to its target level.<sup>22</sup>

## Expenditure-Changing and Expenditure-Switching Policies

The  $II$  and  $XX$  schedules divide the diagram into four regions, sometimes called the “four zones of economic discomfort.” Each of these zones represents the effects of different policy settings. In zone 1, the level of employment is too high and the current account surplus too great; in zone 2, the level of employment is too high but the current account deficit is too great; in zone 3, there is underemployment and an excessive deficit; and in zone 4, underemployment is coupled with a current account surplus greater than the target level. Together, spending changes and exchange rate policy can place the economy at the intersection of  $II$  and  $XX$ (point 1), the point at which both internal and external balance hold. Point 1 shows the policy setting that places the economy in the position that the policy maker would prefer.

If the economy is initially away from point 1, appropriate adjustments in domestic spending and the exchange rate are needed to bring about internal and external balance. A change in fiscal policy that influences spending so as to move the economy to point 1 is called an **expenditure-changing policy** because it alters the *level* of the economy's total demand for goods and services. The accompanying exchange rate adjustment is called an **expenditure-switching policy** because it changes the *direction* of demand, shifting it between domestic output and imports. In general, both expenditure changing and expenditure switching are

<sup>21</sup>Can you see how to derive the  $XX$  schedule in Figure 19-2 from the different (but related)  $XX$  schedule shown in Figure 17-17? (Hint: Use the latter diagram to analyze the effects of fiscal expansion.)

<sup>22</sup>Since the central bank does not affect the economy when it raises its foreign reserves by an open-market sale of domestic assets, no separate reserve constraint is shown in Figure 19-2. In effect, the bank can borrow reserves freely from abroad by selling domestic assets to the public. (During a devaluation scare, this tactic would not work because no one would want to sell the bank foreign assets for domestic money.) Our analysis, however, assumes perfect asset substitutability between domestic and foreign bonds (see Chapter 18). Under imperfect asset substitutability, central bank domestic asset sales to attract foreign reserves would drive up the domestic interest rate relative to the foreign rate. Thus, while imperfect asset substitutability would give the central bank an additional policy tool (monetary policy), it would also make the bank responsible for an additional policy target (the domestic interest rate). If the government is concerned about the domestic interest rate because it affects investment, for example, the additional policy tool would not necessarily increase the set of attractive policy options. Central banks exploited imperfect substitutability under Bretton Woods, but it did not get countries out of the policy dilemmas illustrated in the text.

needed to reach internal and external balance. Apart from monetary policy, fiscal policy is the main government lever for pushing total domestic expenditure up or down.

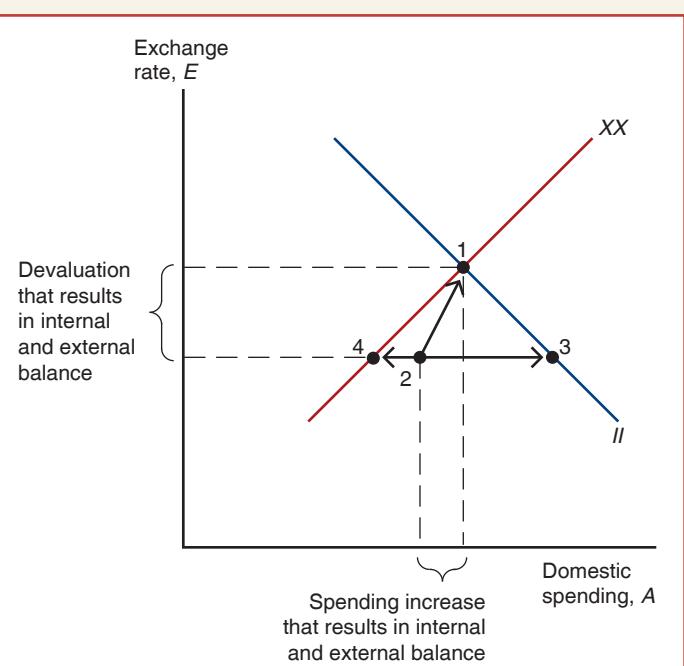
Under the Bretton Woods rules, exchange rate changes (expenditure-switching policy) were supposed to be infrequent. This left fiscal policy as the main policy tool for moving the economy toward internal and external balance. But as Figure 19-2 shows, one instrument, fiscal policy, is generally insufficient to attain the two goals of internal and external balance. Only if the economy had been displaced horizontally from point 1 would fiscal policy be able to do the job alone. In addition, fiscal policy is an unwieldy tool, since it often cannot be implemented without legislative approval. Another drawback is that a fiscal expansion, for example, might have to be reversed after some time if it leads to chronic government budget deficits.

As a result of the exchange rate's inflexibility during the Bretton Woods period, policy makers sometimes found themselves in difficult situations. With the spending level and exchange rate indicated by point 2 in Figure 19-3, there is underemployment and an excessive current account deficit. Only the combination of devaluation and spending expansion indicated in the figure moves the economy to internal and external balance (point 1). Expansionary fiscal policy, acting alone, can eliminate the unemployment by moving the economy to point 3, but the cost of reduced unemployment is a larger external deficit. While contractionary fiscal policy alone can bring about external balance (point 4), output falls as a result and the economy moves further from internal balance. It is no wonder that policy dilemmas such as the one at point 2 gave rise to suspicions that the currency was about to be devalued. Devaluation improves the current account and aggregate demand by raising the real exchange rate  $EP^*/P$  in one stroke; the alternative is a long and politically unpopular period of unemployment to bring about an equal rise in the real exchange rate through a fall in  $P$ .<sup>23</sup>

**FIGURE 19-3**

### Policies to Bring about Internal and External Balance

Unless the currency is devalued and the level of domestic spending rises, internal and external balance (point 1) cannot be reached. Acting alone, a change in fiscal policy, for example, enables the economy to attain either internal balance (point 3) or external balance (point 4), but only at the cost of increasing the economy's distance from the goal that is sacrificed.



<sup>23</sup>As an exercise to test your understanding, show that a fall in  $P$ , all else equal, lowers both  $II$  and  $XX$ , moving point 1 vertically downward.

In practice, countries did sometimes use changes in their exchange rates to move closer to internal and external balance, although the changes were typically accompanied by balance of payments crises. Many countries also tightened controls on financial account transactions to sever the links between domestic and foreign interest rates and make monetary policy more effective (in line with the trilemma). In this they were only partly successful, as the events leading to the breakdown of the system were to prove.

## The External Balance Problem of the United States under Bretton Woods

The external balance problem of the United States was different from the one faced by the other countries in the Bretton Woods system. As the issuer of the *N*th currency, the United States was not responsible for pegging dollar exchange rates. Its main responsibility was to hold the dollar price of gold at \$35 an ounce and, in particular, to guarantee that foreign central banks could convert their dollar holdings into gold at that price. For this purpose, it had to hold sufficient gold reserves.

Because the United States was required to trade gold for dollars with foreign central banks, the possibility that other countries might convert their dollar reserves into gold was a potential external constraint on U.S. macroeconomic policy. In practice, however, foreign central banks were willing to hold on to the dollars they accumulated, since these paid interest and were international money *par excellence*. And the logic of the gold exchange standard dictated that foreign central banks should continue to accumulate dollars. Because world gold supplies were not growing quickly enough to keep up with world economic growth, the only way central banks could maintain adequate international reserve levels (barring deflation) was by accumulating dollar assets. Official gold conversions did occur on occasion, and these depleted the American gold stock and caused concern. But as long as most central banks were willing to add dollars to their reserves and forgo the right of redeeming those dollars for American gold, the U.S. external constraint appeared looser than that faced by other countries in the system. This was particularly the case for Germany, where the booming economy in the 1950s and 1960s resulted in an appreciation pressure of the German mark against the dollar. In order to maintain the fixed exchange rate, the German central bank was permanently forced to buy dollars and to add them to its reserves.<sup>24</sup>

In an influential book that appeared in 1960, economist Robert Triffin of Yale University called attention to a fundamental long-run problem of the Bretton Woods system, the **confidence problem**.<sup>25</sup> Triffin realized that as central banks' international reserve needs grew over time, their holdings of dollars would necessarily grow until they exceeded the U.S. gold stock. Since the United States had promised to redeem these dollars at \$35 an ounce, it would no longer have the ability to meet its obligations should all dollar holders simultaneously try to convert their dollars into gold. This would lead to a confidence problem: Central banks, knowing that their dollars were no longer "as good as gold," might become unwilling to accumulate more dollars and might even bring down the system by attempting to cash in the dollars they already held.

<sup>24</sup>Martin Pontzen and Franziska Schobert, "Episodes in German Monetary History – Lessons for Transition Countries?" Peter Mooslechner and Ernest Gnan, "The Experience of Exchange Rate Regimes in South-eastern Europe in a Historical and Comparative Perspective," *Proceedings of OeNB Workshops*, Vienna: Oesterreichische Nationalbank, 2008, pp. 145–160.

<sup>25</sup>See Triffin, *Gold and the Dollar Crisis* (New Haven: Yale University Press, 1960).

One possible solution at the time was an increase in the official price of gold in terms of the dollar and all other currencies. But such an increase would have been inflationary and would have had the politically unattractive consequence of enriching the main gold-supplying countries. Further, an increase in gold's price would have caused central banks to expect further decreases in the gold value of their dollar reserve holdings in the future, thereby possibly worsening the confidence problem rather than solving it!

## CASE STUDY

### The End of Bretton Woods, Worldwide Inflation, and the Transition to Floating Rates

By the late 1960s, the Bretton Woods system of fixed exchange rates was beginning to show strains that would soon lead to its collapse. These strains related closely to the special position of the United States, where inflation was gathering strength because of higher monetary growth as well as higher government spending on new social programs such as Medicare and on the unpopular Vietnam War.

The acceleration of American inflation in the late 1960s was a worldwide phenomenon. Table 19-1 shows that by the start of the 1970s, inflation had also broken out in European economies.<sup>26</sup> The worldwide nature of the inflation problem was no accident. The theory in Chapter 18 predicts that when the reserve currency country speeds up its monetary growth, as the United States did in the second half of the 1960s, one effect is an automatic increase in monetary growth rates and inflation abroad as foreign central banks purchase the reserve currency to maintain their exchange rates and expand their money supplies in the process.

**TABLE 19-1 Inflation Rates in Industrial Countries, 1966–1972 (percent per year)**

Country	1966	1967	1968	1969	1970	1971	1972
Britain	3.6	2.6	4.6	5.2	6.5	9.7	6.9
France	2.8	2.8	4.4	6.5	5.3	5.5	6.2
Germany	3.4	1.4	2.9	1.9	3.4	5.3	5.5
Italy	2.1	2.1	1.2	2.8	5.1	5.2	5.3
United States	2.9	3.1	4.2	5.5	5.7	4.4	3.2

**Source:** Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development. *Main Economic Indicators: Historical Statistics, 1964–1983*. Paris: OECD, 1984. Figures are percentage increases in each year's average consumer price index over that of the previous year.

<sup>26</sup>The U.S. inflation numbers for 1971 and 1972 are artificially low because of President Nixon's resort to government-administered wage and price controls in August 1971. In principle, the U.S. commitment to peg the market price of gold should have limited U.S. inflation, but in practice, the United States was able to weaken that commitment over time, thus allowing the *market* price of gold to rise while still holding to the promise to redeem dollars from central banks at \$35 per ounce. By the late 1960s, the United States was therefore the unique country in the system in that it did not face the full monetary trilemma. It enjoyed fixed exchange rates because *other* countries pegged their currencies to the dollar, yet it could still orient monetary policy toward domestic goals. For recent assessments of the worldwide inflation of the 1970s, see Michael Bordo and Athanasios Orphanides, eds., *The Great Inflation* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2013).

One interpretation of the Bretton Woods system's collapse is that foreign countries were forced to *import* unwelcome U.S. inflation through the mechanism described in Chapter 18. To stabilize their price levels and regain internal balance, they had to abandon fixed exchange rates and allow their currencies to float. The monetary trilemma implies that these countries could not simultaneously peg their exchange rates and control domestic inflation.

Adding to the tensions, the U.S. economy entered a recession in 1970, and as unemployment rose, markets became increasingly convinced that the dollar would have to be devalued against all the major European currencies. To restore full employment and a balanced current account, the United States somehow had to bring about a real depreciation of the dollar. That real depreciation could be brought about in two ways: The first option was a fall in the U.S. price level in response to domestic unemployment, coupled with a rise in foreign price levels in response to continuing purchases of dollars by foreign central banks. The second option was a fall in the dollar's nominal value in terms of foreign currencies. The first route—unemployment in the United States and inflation abroad—seemed a painful one for policy makers to follow. The markets rightly guessed that a change in the dollar's value was inevitable. This realization led to massive sales of dollars in the foreign exchange market.

After several unsuccessful attempts to stabilize the system (including a unilateral U.S. decision in August 1971 to end completely the dollar's link to gold), the main industrialized countries allowed their dollar exchange rates to float in March 1973.<sup>27</sup> Floating was viewed at the time as a temporary response to unmanageable speculative capital movements. But the interim arrangements adopted in March 1973 turned out to be permanent and marked the end of fixed exchange rates and the beginning of a turbulent new period in international monetary relations.

### The Mechanics of Imported Inflation

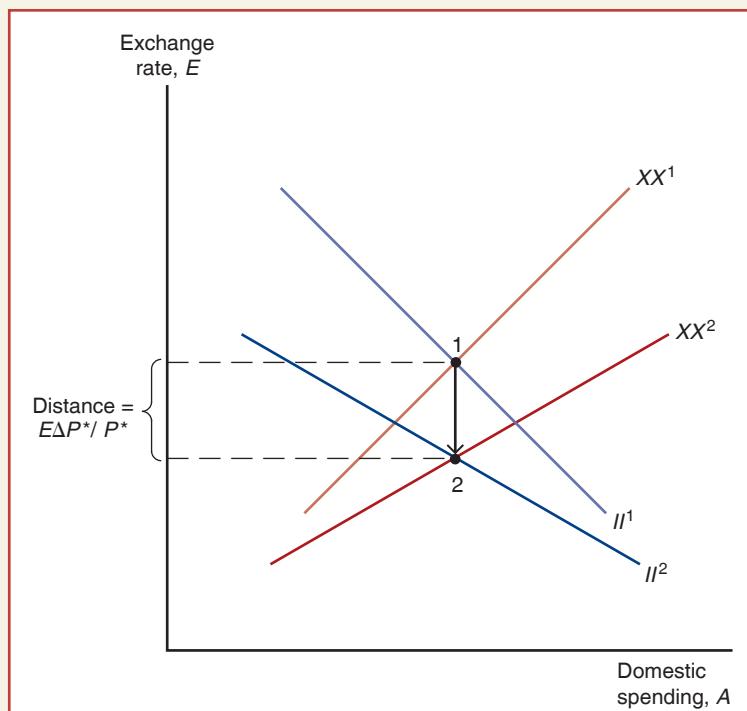
To understand how inflation can be imported from abroad unless exchange rates are adjusted, look again at the graphical picture of internal and external balance shown in Figure 19-2. Suppose the home country is faced with foreign inflation. In our earlier discussion, the foreign price level,  $P^*$ , was assumed to be given; now, however,  $P^*$  rises as a result of inflation abroad. Figure 19-4 shows the effect on the home economy.

You can see how the two schedules shift by asking what would happen if the nominal exchange rate were to fall in proportion to the rise in  $P^*$ . In this case, the real exchange rate  $EP^*/P$  would be unaffected (given  $P$ ), and the economy would remain in internal balance or in external balance if either of these conditions originally held. Figure 19-4 therefore shows that for a given initial exchange rate, a rise in  $P^*$  shifts both  $II^1$  and  $XX^1$  downward by the same distance (approximately equal to the proportional increase in  $P^*$  times the initial exchange rate). The intersection of the new schedules  $II^2$  and  $XX^2$  (point 2) lies directly below the original intersection at point 1.

<sup>27</sup>Many developing countries continued to peg to the dollar, and a number of European countries were continuing to peg their mutual exchange rates as part of an informal arrangement called the “snake.” The snake evolved into the European Monetary System (discussed in Chapter 21) and foreshadowed Europe's single currency, the euro.

**FIGURE 19-4**
**Effect on Internal and External Balance of a Rise in the Foreign Price Level,  $P^*$** 

After  $P^*$  rises, point 1 is in zone 1 (overemployment and an excessive surplus). Revaluation (a fall in  $E$ ) restores balance immediately by moving the policy setting to point 2.



If the economy starts out at point 1, a rise in  $P^*$  given the fixed exchange rate and the domestic price level therefore strands the economy in zone 1 with overemployment and an undesirably high surplus in its current account. The factor that causes this outcome is a real currency depreciation that shifts world demand toward the home country ( $EP^*/P$  rises because  $P^*$  rises).

If nothing is done by the government, overemployment puts upward pressure on the domestic price level, and this pressure gradually shifts the two schedules back to their original positions. The schedules stop shifting once  $P$  has risen in proportion to  $P^*$ . At this stage, the real exchange rate, employment, and the current account are at their initial levels, so point 1 is once again a position of internal and external balance.

The way to avoid the imported inflation is to revalue the currency (that is, lower  $E$ ) and move to point 2. A revaluation restores internal and external balance immediately, without domestic inflation, by using the nominal exchange rate to offset the effect of the rise in  $P^*$  on the real exchange rate. Only an expenditure-switching policy is needed to respond to a pure increase in foreign prices.

The rise in domestic prices that occurs when no revaluation takes place requires a rise in the domestic money supply, since prices and the money supply move proportionally in the long run. The mechanism that brings this rise about is foreign exchange intervention by the home central bank. As domestic output and prices rise after the rise in  $P^*$ , the real money supply shrinks and the demand for real money holdings increases. To prevent the resulting upward pressure on the home interest rate from appreciating the currency, the central bank must purchase international reserves and expand the home money supply. In this way, inflationary policies pursued by the reserve center spill over into foreign countries' money supplies.

## Assessment

The collapse of the Bretton Woods system was partly due to the lopsided macroeconomic power of the United States, which allowed it to generate global inflation. But it was also due in large measure to the fact that the key expenditure-switching tool needed for internal and external balance—discrete exchange rate adjustment—inspired speculative attacks that made both internal and external balance progressively more difficult to achieve. The system thus was a victim of the trilemma. As international financial flows became harder to restrain, policy makers faced an increasingly sharp trade-off between exchange rate stability and domestic monetary goals. By the 1970s, however, the electorates of the industrial countries had long expected governments to give priority to the domestic economy. So it was fixed exchange rates that gave way.

## The Case for Floating Exchange Rates

As international currency crises of increasing scope and frequency erupted in the late 1960s, most economists began advocating greater flexibility of exchange rates. Many argued that a system of floating exchange rates (one in which central banks do not intervene in the foreign exchange market to fix rates) not only would deliver necessary exchange rate flexibility but also would produce several other benefits for the world economy. Thus, the arrival of floating exchange rates in March 1973 was hailed by many economists as a healthy development in the evolution of the world monetary system, one that would put markets at center stage in determining exchange rates.

The case for floating exchange rates rested on at least four major claims:

1. *Monetary policy autonomy.* If central banks were no longer obliged to intervene in currency markets to fix exchange rates, governments would be able to use monetary policy to reach internal and external balance. Furthermore, no country would be forced to import inflation (or deflation) from abroad.
2. *Symmetry.* Under a system of floating rates, the inherent asymmetries of Bretton Woods would disappear and the United States would no longer be able to set world monetary conditions all by itself. At the same time, the United States would have the same opportunity as other countries to influence its exchange rate against foreign currencies.
3. *Exchange rates as automatic stabilizers.* Even in the absence of an active monetary policy, the swift adjustment of market-determined exchange rates would help countries maintain internal and external balance in the face of changes in aggregate demand. The long and agonizing periods of speculation preceding exchange rate realignments under the Bretton Woods rules would not occur under floating.
4. *Exchange rates and external balance.* Market-determined exchange rates would move automatically so as to prevent the emergence of big current account deficits and surpluses.

## Monetary Policy Autonomy

Toward the end of the Bretton Woods fixed-rate system, countries other than the United States had little scope to use monetary policy to attain internal and external balance. Countries could hold their dollar exchange rates fixed only if they kept the domestic interest rate in line with that of the United States. Thus, in the closing years of fixed exchange rates, central banks imposed increasingly stringent restrictions on international payments to keep control over their interest rates and money supplies.

However, these restrictions were only partially successful in strengthening monetary policy, and they had the damaging side effect of distorting international trade.

Advocates of floating rates pointed out that removal of the obligation to peg currency values would restore monetary control to central banks. If, for example, the central bank faced unemployment and wished to expand its money supply in response, there would no longer be any legal barrier to the currency depreciation this would cause. Similarly, the central bank of an overheated economy could cool down activity by contracting the money supply without worrying that undesired reserve inflows would undermine its stabilization effort. Enhanced control over monetary policy would allow countries to dismantle their distorting barriers to international payments. In other words, floating rates implied an approach to the monetary trilemma that sacrificed fixed exchange rates in favor of freedom of financial flows and of monetary policy.

Consistent with this view, advocates of floating also argued that floating rates would allow each country to choose its own desired long-run inflation rate rather than having to import passively the inflation rate established abroad. We saw in Chapter 18 that a country faced with a rise in the foreign price level will be thrown out of balance and ultimately will import the foreign inflation if it holds its exchange rate fixed. By the end of the 1960s, many countries felt that they were importing inflation from the United States. By revaluing its currency—that is, by lowering the domestic currency price of foreign currency—a country can insulate itself completely from an inflationary increase in foreign prices, and so remain in internal and external balance. One of the most telling arguments in favor of floating rates was their ability, in theory, to bring about automatically exchange rate changes that insulate economies from ongoing foreign inflation.

The mechanism behind this insulation is purchasing power parity (see Chapter 16). Recall that when all changes in the world economy are monetary, PPP holds true in the long run: Exchange rates eventually move to offset exactly national differences in inflation. If U.S. monetary growth leads to a long-run doubling of the U.S. price level while Europe's price level remains constant, PPP predicts that the long-run euro price of the dollar will be halved. This nominal exchange rate change leaves the *real* exchange rate between the dollar and the euro unchanged and thus maintains Europe's internal and external balance. In other words, the long-run exchange rate change predicted by PPP is exactly the change that insulates Europe from U.S. inflation.

A money-induced increase in U.S. prices also causes an *immediate* appreciation of foreign currencies against the dollar when the exchange rate floats. In the short run, the size of this appreciation can differ from what PPP predicts, but the foreign exchange speculators who might have mounted an attack on fixed dollar exchange rates speed the adjustment of floating rates. Since they know foreign currencies will appreciate according to PPP in the long run, they act on their expectations and push exchange rates in the direction of their long-run levels.

In contrast, countries operating under the Bretton Woods rules were forced to choose between matching U.S. inflation to hold their dollar exchange rates fixed or deliberately revaluing their currencies in proportion to the rise in U.S. prices. Under floating, however, the foreign exchange market automatically brings about exchange rate changes that shield countries from U.S. inflation. Since this outcome does not require any government policy decisions, the revaluation crises that occurred under fixed exchange rates are avoided.<sup>28</sup>

---

<sup>28</sup>Countries can also avoid importing undesired *deflation* by floating, since the analysis applies, in reverse, for a fall in the foreign price level.

## Symmetry

The second argument put forward by the advocates of floating was that abandonment of the Bretton Woods system would remove the asymmetries that caused so much international disagreement in the 1960s and early 1970s. There were two main asymmetries, both the result of the dollar's central role in the international monetary system. First, because central banks pegged their currencies to the dollar and accumulated dollars as international reserves, the U.S. Federal Reserve played the leading role in determining the world money supply, and central banks abroad had little scope to determine their own domestic money supplies. Second, any foreign country could devalue its currency against the dollar in conditions of “fundamental disequilibrium,” but the system’s rules did not give the United States the option to devalue against foreign currencies. Rather, dollar devaluation required a long and economically disruptive period of multilateral negotiation.

A system of floating exchange rates would do away with these asymmetries. Since countries would no longer peg dollar exchange rates, each would be in a position to guide monetary conditions at home. For the same reason, the United States would not face any special obstacle to altering its exchange rate through monetary or fiscal policies. All countries’ exchange rates would be determined symmetrically by the foreign exchange market, not by government decisions.<sup>29</sup>

## Exchange Rates as Automatic Stabilizers

The third argument in favor of floating rates concerned their ability, theoretically, to promote swift and relatively painless adjustment to certain types of economic changes. One such change, previously discussed, is foreign inflation. Figure 19-5, which uses the *DD-AA* model presented in Chapter 17, examines another type of change by comparing an economy’s response under a fixed and a floating exchange rate to a temporary fall in foreign demand for its exports.

A fall in demand for the home country’s exports reduces aggregate demand for every level of the exchange rate,  $E$ , and thus shifts the *DD* schedule leftward from  $DD^1$  to  $DD^2$ . (Recall that the *DD* schedule shows exchange rate and output pairs for which aggregate demand equals aggregate output.) Figure 19-5a shows how this shift affects the economy’s equilibrium when the exchange rate floats. Because the demand shift is assumed to be temporary, it does not change the long-run expected exchange rate and so does not move the asset market equilibrium schedule  $AA^1$ . (Recall that the *AA* schedule shows exchange rate and output pairs at which the foreign exchange market and the domestic money market are in equilibrium.) The economy’s short-run equilibrium is therefore at point 2; compared with the initial equilibrium at point 1, the currency depreciates ( $E$  rises) and output falls. Why does the exchange rate rise from  $E^1$  to  $E^2$ ? As demand and output fall, reducing the transactions demand for money, the home interest rate must also decline to keep the money market in equilibrium. This fall in the home interest rate causes the domestic currency to depreciate in the foreign exchange market, and the exchange rate therefore rises from  $E^1$  to  $E^2$ .

The effect of the same export demand disturbance under a fixed exchange rate is shown in Figure 19-5b. Since the central bank must prevent the currency depreciation that occurs under a floating rate, it buys domestic money with foreign reserves, an action that contracts the money supply and shifts  $AA^1$  left to  $AA^2$ . The new short-run equilibrium of the economy under a fixed exchange rate is at point 3, where output equals  $Y^3$ .

<sup>29</sup>The symmetry argument is not an argument against fixed-rate systems in general, but an argument against the specific type of fixed exchange rate system that broke down in the early 1970s. As we saw in Chapter 18, a fixed-rate system based on an international gold standard can be completely symmetric.

**FIGURE 19-5**

### Effects of a Fall in Export Demand

The response to a fall in export demand (seen in the shift from  $DD^1$  to  $DD^2$ ) differs under floating and fixed exchange rates. (a) With a floating rate, output falls only to  $Y^2$  as the currency's depreciation (from  $E^1$  to  $E^2$ ) shifts demand back toward domestic goods. (b) With the exchange rate fixed at  $E^1$ , output falls all the way to  $Y^3$  as the central bank reduces the money supply (reflected in the shift from  $AA^1$  to  $AA^2$ ).

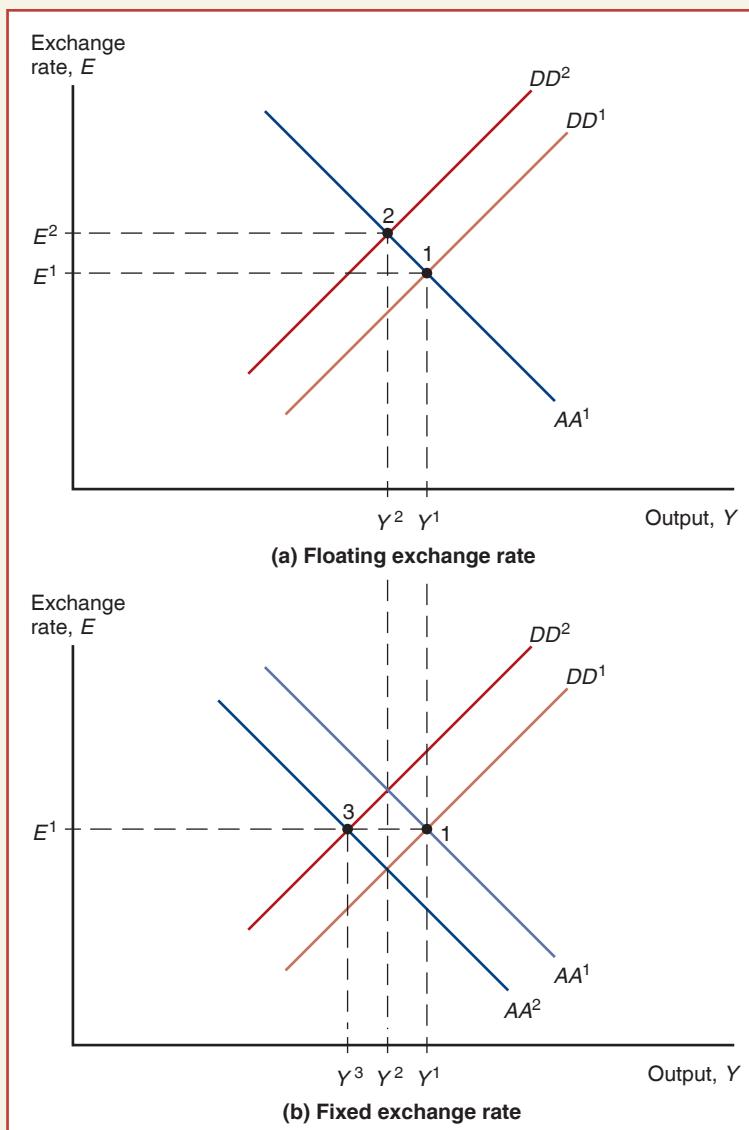


Figure 19-5 shows that output actually falls more under a fixed rate than under a floating rate, dropping all the way to  $Y^3$  rather than  $Y^2$ . In other words, the movement of the floating exchange rate stabilizes the economy by reducing the shock's effect on employment relative to its effect under a fixed rate. Currency depreciation in the floating-rate case makes domestic goods and services cheaper when the demand for them falls, partly offsetting the initial reduction in demand. In addition to reducing the departure from internal balance caused by the fall in export demand, the depreciation reduces the increased current account deficit that occurs under fixed rates by making domestic products more competitive in international markets.

We have considered the case of a transitory fall in export demand, but even stronger conclusions follow when there is a *permanent* fall in export demand. In this case, the

expected exchange rate  $E^e$  also rises and  $AA$  shifts upward as a result. A permanent shock causes a greater depreciation than does a temporary shock, and the movement of the exchange rate therefore cushions domestic output more when the shock is permanent.

Under the Bretton Woods system, a fall in export demand such as the one shown in Figure 19-5b would, if permanent, have led to a situation of “fundamental disequilibrium” calling for a devaluation of the currency or a long period of domestic unemployment as wages and prices fell. Uncertainty about the government’s intentions would have encouraged speculative capital outflows, further worsening the situation by depleting central bank reserves and contracting the domestic money supply at a time of unemployment. Advocates of floating rates pointed out that the foreign exchange market would automatically bring about the required *real* currency depreciation through a movement in the nominal exchange rate. This exchange rate change would reduce or eliminate the need to push the price level down through unemployment, and because it would occur immediately, there would be no risk of speculative disruption, as there would be under a fixed rate.

### Exchange Rates and External Balance

A final benefit claimed for floating exchange rates was that they would prevent the emergence of persistently large current account deficits or surpluses. Because a country with a large current account deficit is borrowing from foreigners and thereby increasing its foreign debt, it will eventually have to generate larger surpluses of exports over imports to pay the interest on that debt. Those larger surpluses, in turn, will require a depreciated currency. Advocates of floating suggested that speculators, anticipating this depreciation, would drive the currency down in advance, making exports more competitive and imports more expensive in the short run. Such stabilizing speculation, it was held, would prevent current account deficits from getting too large in the first place. (The same mechanism, with appreciation replacing depreciation, would limit external surpluses.)

A corollary of this view is that floating exchange rates would not be too volatile, because stabilizing speculators would constantly drive them toward levels consistent with external balance.

How well did these predictions fare after 1973? We shall show that while some predictions were borne out, advocates of floating were on the whole too optimistic that a system of market-determined exchange rates would function free of exchange market turbulence or policy conflicts among countries.

## CASE STUDY

### The First Years of Floating Rates, 1973–1990



Sal Veder/AP/Sipa/Stock

A review of the macroeconomic history of the world economy since 1973 offers key data for judging the successes and shortcomings of the modern international monetary system. We begin with a summary of the first turbulent years of floating exchange rates.

### INFLATION AND DISINFLATION, 1973–1982

The opening act of the floating exchange rate era was a quadrupling in the world price of petroleum between late 1973 and early 1974, engineered by the newly assertive Organization of the Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC), an international cartel that includes most large oil producers. Consumption and investment slowed down everywhere, and the world economy was thrown into recession. The current account balances of oil-importing countries worsened.

The model we developed in Chapters 14 through 18 predicts that inflation tends to rise in boom periods and fall in recessions. As the world went into deep recession in 1974, however, inflation accelerated in most countries. Table 19-2 shows how inflation in the main industrial regions spurted upward in the decade 1973–1982 even though unemployment was rising.

What happened? An important contributing factor was the oil shock itself: By directly raising the prices of petroleum products and the costs of energy-using industries, the increase in the oil price caused price levels to jump upward. Further, the worldwide inflationary pressures that had built up since the end of the 1960s had become entrenched in the wage-setting process and were continuing to contribute to inflation in spite of the deteriorating employment picture. The same inflationary expectations that were driving new wage contracts were also putting additional upward pressure on commodity prices as speculators built up stocks of commodities whose prices they expected to rise. Over the following years, central bankers proved unwilling to combat these inflationary pressures at the cost of yet-higher unemployment.

**TABLE 19-2** **Macroeconomic Data for Key Industrial Regions, 1963–2019**

Period	Macroeconomic Data for Key Industrial Regions, 1963–2019						
	1963–1972	1973–1982	1983–1992	1993–2006	2007–2009	2010–2015	2016–2019
<b>Inflation (percent per year)</b>							
United States	3.3	8.8	3.8	2.6	2.1	1.7	1.9
Europe	3.9	10.1	5.8	3.1	2.5	1.5	1.2
Japan	5.5	8.7	1.8	0.1	0.0	0.5	0.5
<b>Unemployment (percent of labor force)</b>							
United States	4.7	7.0	6.8	5.3	6.6	7.6	4.2
Europe	1.9	5.5	9.4	10.2	7.9	10.4	7.8
Japan	1.2	1.9	2.5	4.1	4.3	4.2	2.6
<b>Per Capita Real GDP Growth (percent per year)</b>							
United States	4.0	2.3	3.5	3.2	-0.3	2.2	2.2
Europe		2.6	2.5	2.2	-0.3	1.2	2.3
Japan	7.9	3.7	4.0	1.1	-1.7	1.5	1.1

Sources: International Monetary Fund, Eurostat, and World Bank.

To describe the unusual macroeconomic conditions of 1974–1975, economists coined a new word that has since become commonplace: **stagflation**, a combination of stagnating output and high inflation. Stagflation was the result of two factors:

1. Increases in commodity prices that directly raised inflation while at the same time depressing aggregate demand and supply
2. Expectations of future inflation that fed into wages and other prices in spite of recession and rising unemployment

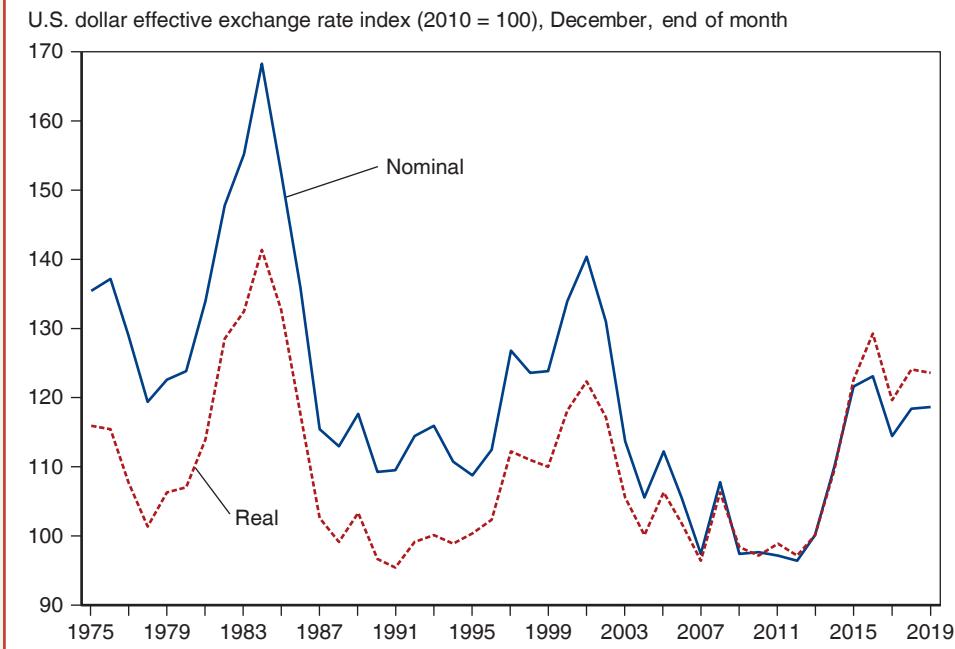
Freed of the need to defend a fixed exchange rate, governments responded with expansionary policies that further fueled inflation. Many countries, moving to a different vertex of the trilemma, had even been able to relax the capital controls they had set up before 1974. This relaxation eased the adjustment problem of the developing countries, which were able to borrow more easily from developed-country financial markets to maintain their own spending and economic growth. In turn, the relative strength of the developing world's demand for industrial-country exports helped mitigate the severity of the 1974–1975 recession. But in the industrial countries, unemployment nonetheless jumped upward and remained stubbornly high, as shown in Table 19-2.

In the mid-1970s, the United States attempted to combat this unemployment through expansionary monetary policy, whereas other countries such as Germany and Japan were more worried about inflation. The result of this policy imbalance—vigorous expansion in the United States that was unmatched by expansion abroad—was a steep depreciation of the dollar after 1976. U.S. inflation reached double-digit levels (as did inflation in a number of other countries, including Canada, France, Italy, and the United Kingdom). The depreciation of the dollar in these years is evident in Figure 19-6, which shows both **nominal and real effective exchange rate indexes** of the dollar. These indexes measure, respectively, the price of a dollar in terms of a basket of foreign currencies and the price of U.S. output in terms of a basket of foreign outputs. Thus, a rise in either index is a (nominal or real) dollar appreciation, while a fall is a depreciation.

To restore faith in the dollar, President Jimmy Carter appointed a new Federal Reserve Board chair with broad experience in international financial affairs, Paul A. Volcker. The dollar began to strengthen in October 1979 when Volcker announced a tightening of U.S. monetary policy and the adoption by the Fed of more stringent procedures for controlling money supply growth.

The fall of the shah of Iran in 1979 sparked a second round of oil price increases by disrupting oil exports from that country. In 1975 macroeconomic policy makers in the industrial countries had responded to the first oil shock with expansionary monetary and fiscal policies. They responded very differently to this second oil shock. Over 1979 and 1980, monetary growth was actually *restricted* in most major industrial countries in an attempt to offset the rise in inflation accompanying the oil price increase. This policy approach prevented an upsurge in inflation but helped cause a worldwide recession.

November 1980 saw the election of President Ronald Reagan, who had campaigned on an anti-inflation platform. In light of the election result and Volcker's monetary slowdown, the dollar's value soared (see Figure 19-6). U.S. interest rates had also risen sharply late in 1979; by 1981, short-term interest rates in the United States were nearly double their 1978 levels.

**FIGURE 19-6****Nominal and Real Effective Dollar Exchange Rate Indexes, 1975–2019**

The indexes are measures of the nominal and real value of the U.S. dollar in terms of a basket of foreign currencies. An increase in the indexes is a dollar appreciation; a decrease, a dollar depreciation. For both indexes, the 2010 value is 100.

**Source:** Bank for International Settlements.

By pushing up the U.S. interest rate and causing investors to expect a stronger dollar in the future, the U.S. action led to an immediate appreciation of the dollar. This appreciation made U.S. goods more expensive relative to foreign goods, thereby reducing U.S. output.

The dollar's appreciation was not welcomed abroad, however, even though it could, in theory, have lent foreign economies some positive stimulus in a period of slow growth. The reason was that a stronger dollar hindered foreign countries in their own fights against inflation, both by raising the import prices they faced and by encouraging higher wage demands from their workers. A stronger dollar had the opposite effect in the United States, hastening the decline of inflation there. The tight U.S. monetary policy therefore had a beggar-thy-neighbor effect abroad, in that it lowered American inflation in part by exporting inflation to foreign economies.

Foreign central banks responded by intervening in the currency markets to slow the dollar's rise. Through the process of selling dollar reserves and buying their own currencies, some central banks reduced their monetary growth rates for 1980 and 1981, driving interest rates upward. Synchronized monetary contraction in

the United States and abroad, following fast on the heels of the second oil shock, threw the world economy into a deep recession. In 1982 and 1983, unemployment throughout the world rose to levels unprecedented in the post–World War II period. While U.S. unemployment quickly returned to its pre-recession level, unemployment in Japan and especially in Europe remained permanently higher (see Table 19-2). Monetary contraction and the recession it brought quickly led, however, to a dramatic drop in the inflation rates of industrialized countries.

### THE STRONG DOLLAR AND THE PLAZA ACCORD

During his election campaign, President Reagan had promised to lower taxes and balance the federal budget. He made good on the first of these promises in 1981. At the same time, the Reagan administration pushed for an acceleration of defense spending. The net result of these and subsequent congressional actions was a ballooning U.S. government budget deficit and a sharp fiscal stimulus to the economy. The U.S. fiscal stance encouraged continuing dollar appreciation (see Figure 19-6). By February 1985, the dollar's cumulative appreciation against the German currency since the end of 1979 was 47.9 percent. The recession reached its low point in the United States in December 1982, and output began to recover both there and abroad as the U.S. fiscal stimulus was transmitted to foreign countries through the dollar's steady appreciation.

While the U.S. fiscal expansion contributed to world recovery, growing federal budget deficits raised serious worries about the future stability of the world economy. Because increasing government deficits were not met with offsetting increases in private saving or decreases in investment, the American current account balance deteriorated sharply. By 1987, the United States had become a net debtor to foreign countries and its current account deficit was at the (then) postwar record level of 3.6 percent of GNP. Some analysts worried that foreign creditors would lose confidence in the future value of the dollar assets they were accumulating and sell them, causing a sudden, precipitous dollar depreciation.

Equally worrisome was the strong dollar's impact on the distribution of income within the United States. The dollar's appreciation had reduced U.S. inflation and allowed consumers to purchase imports more cheaply, but those hurt by the terms of trade change were better organized and more vocal than those who had benefited. Protectionist pressures snowballed as import-competing industries demanded that the government shield them from foreign competition.

The Reagan administration had, from the start, adopted a policy of “benign neglect” toward the foreign exchange market, refusing to intervene except in unusual circumstances (for example, after a would-be assassin shot President Reagan). By 1985, however, the link between the strong dollar and the gathering protectionist storm became impossible to ignore.

Fearing a disaster for the international trading system, economic officials of the United States, Britain, France, Germany, and Japan announced at New York's Plaza Hotel on September 22, 1985, that they would jointly intervene in the foreign exchange market to bring about dollar depreciation. The dollar dropped sharply the next day and continued to decline through 1986 and early 1987 as the United States maintained a loose monetary policy and pushed dollar interest rates down relative to foreign currency interest rates. (See Figure 19-6.)

## Macroeconomic Interdependence under a Floating Rate

Up until now, our modeling of the open economy has focused on the relatively simple case of a small country that cannot affect foreign output, price levels, or interest rates through its own monetary and fiscal policies. That description obviously does not fit the United States, however, with its national output level equal to about a fifth of the world's total product. To discuss macroeconomic interactions between the United States and the rest of the world, we therefore must think about the transmission of policies between countries linked by a floating exchange rate. We will offer a brief and intuitive discussion rather than a formal model, and restrict ourselves to the short run, in which we can assume that nominal output prices are fixed.

Imagine a world economy made up of two large countries, Home and Foreign. Our goal is to evaluate how Home's macroeconomic policies affect Foreign. The main complication is that neither country can be thought of any longer as facing a fixed external interest rate or a fixed level of foreign export demand. To simplify, we consider only the case of *permanent* shifts in monetary and fiscal policy.

Let's look first at a permanent monetary expansion by Home. We know that in the small-country case (Chapter 17), Home's currency would depreciate and its output would rise. The same happens when Home's economy is large, but now, the rest of the world is affected too. Because Home is experiencing real currency depreciation, Foreign must be experiencing real currency *appreciation*, which makes Foreign goods relatively expensive and thus has a depressing effect on Foreign output. The increase in Home output, however, works in the opposite direction, since Home spends some of its extra income on Foreign goods and, on that account, aggregate demand for Foreign output rises. Home's monetary expansion therefore has two opposing effects on Foreign output, with the net result depending on which effect is the stronger. Foreign output may rise or fall.<sup>30</sup>

Next let's think about a permanent expansionary fiscal policy in Home. In the small-country case of Chapter 17, a permanent fiscal expansion caused a real currency appreciation and a current account deterioration that fully nullified any positive effect on aggregate demand. In effect, the expansionary impact of Home's fiscal ease leaked entirely abroad (because the counterpart of Home's lower current account balance must be a higher current account balance abroad). In the large-country case, Foreign output still rises, since Foreign's exports become relatively cheaper when Home's currency appreciates. In addition, now some of Foreign's increased spending increases Home exports, so Home's output actually does increase along with Foreign's.<sup>31</sup>

We summarize our discussion of macroeconomic interdependence between large countries as follows:

1. *Effect of a permanent monetary expansion by Home.* Home output rises, Home's currency depreciates, and Foreign output may rise or fall.
2. *Effect of a permanent fiscal expansion by Home.* Home output rises, Home's currency appreciates, and Foreign output rises.

---

<sup>30</sup>The Foreign money market equilibrium condition is  $M^*/P^* = L(R^*, Y^*)$ . Because  $M^*$  is not changing and  $P^*$  is sticky and therefore fixed in the short run, Foreign output can rise only if the Foreign nominal interest rate rises too and can fall only if the Foreign nominal interest rate falls.

<sup>31</sup>By considering the Home money market equilibrium condition (in analogy to footnote 27), you will see that Home's nominal interest rate must rise. A parallel argument shows that Foreign's interest rate rises at the same time.

## CASE STUDY

### Transformation and Crisis in the World Economy

The fall of the Berlin Wall in 1989 marked the beginning of the end of the Soviet empire. Ultimately, the former Soviet bloc countries would embrace market structures and enter the world economy. At the same time, China was continuing a gradual process of market-oriented reforms begun in 1978, reforms that were starting to lead to rapid economic growth and modernization. These simultaneous changes would greatly increase the size of the global economy and labor force by the turn of the century.

#### CRISES IN EUROPE AND ASIA, 1990–1999

The reunification of West and East Germany on July 1, 1990, set off inflationary pressures in Germany. At the same time, other European countries were pegging their exchange rates to Germany's former currency, the deutsche mark (DM), within the European Union's fixed exchange rate mechanism, the European Monetary System (EMS). Germany's contractionary monetary response to its internal inflation pressures led to slower growth in its EMS partners, many of whom were not afflicted by rising inflation as Germany was. The resulting asymmetric pressures within the EMS led to a massive speculative attack on the EMS fixed parities in 1992.

Japanese inflation rose in 1989, in part the result of a relatively loose monetary policy from 1986 to 1988 designed to avoid further yen appreciation after the sharp post–Plaza Accord rise. Two very visible symptoms of these pressures were skyrocketing prices for Japanese real estate and stocks. The Bank of Japan's strategy of puncturing these asset price bubbles through restrictive monetary policy and high interest rates succeeded well, and Tokyo's Nikkei stock price index lost more than half its value between 1990 and 1992. Unfortunately, the sharp fall in asset prices threw Japan's banking system into crisis and the economy into recession by early 1992.

Recovery never really took hold. By 1998, the Japanese economy seemed to be in free fall, with shrinking GDP, declining prices, and its highest unemployment level in more than four decades. Japan's deflation and stagnation would prove protracted indeed, lasting with little interruption through the following decade and a half.

In 1997–1998, however, the problems of the Japanese economy spilled over to the developing countries in East Asia, with which it trades heavily. As we shall see in Chapter 22, many of these economies had experienced spectacularly rapid rates of GDP growth for many years through 1997. Many of them also held their exchange rates fixed, or in target ranges, against the U.S. dollar. Japan's slowdown in 1997 therefore weakened the East Asian economies.

The eventual result was a cascading series of speculative attacks on East Asian currencies, beginning with Thailand's baht in the spring of 1997 and moving on to Malaysia, Indonesia, and Korea. These economies fell into deep recessions (as we discuss further in Chapter 22), pulled down by Japan but also pulling Japan down in a vicious circle. Russia defaulted on its internal and external debts in 1998,

setting off global investor jitters and domestic financial chaos. The fear of a worldwide depression prompted a series of interest rate cuts by the Federal Reserve as well as an unprecedented coordinated interest rate cut by the 11 European countries preparing to give up their national currencies in 1999 in favor of the euro. These measures helped to avert a global economic meltdown.

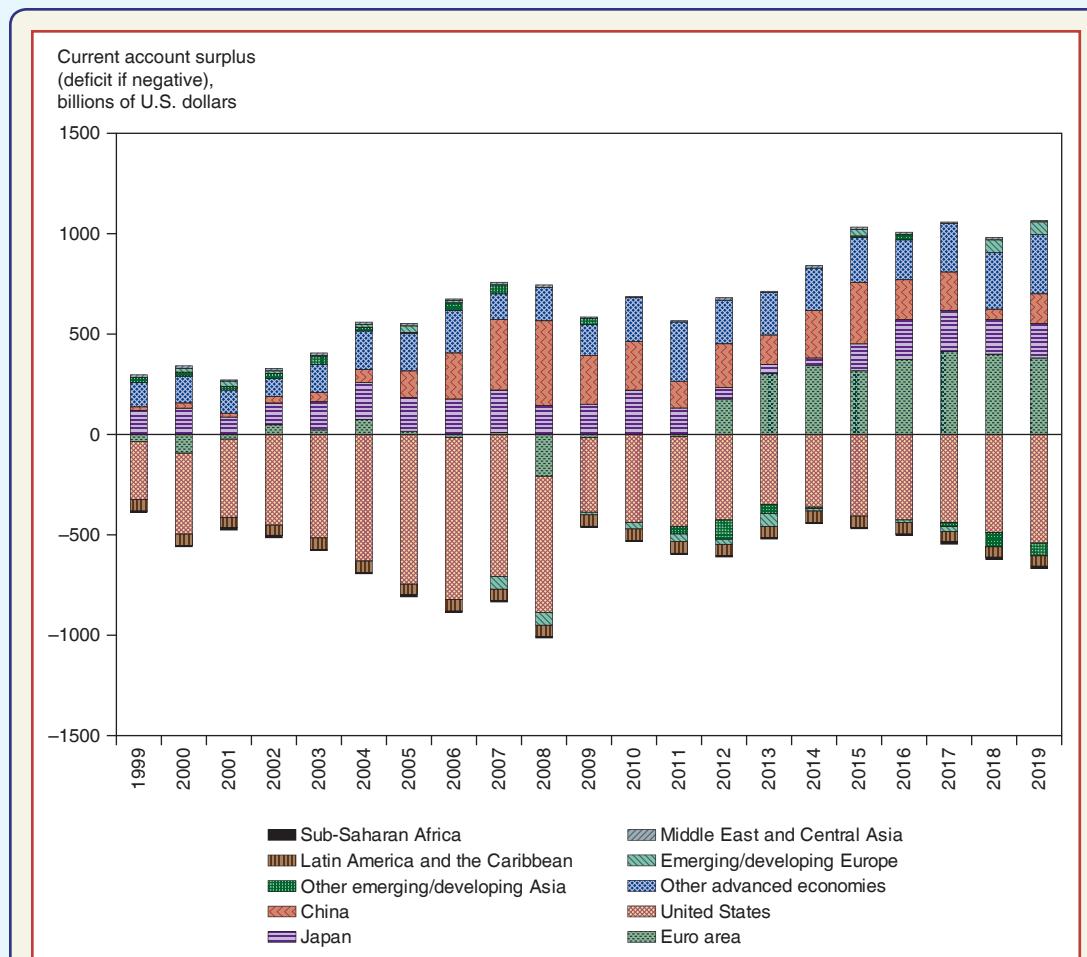
### THE DOT-COM CRASH AND THE EMERGENCE OF GLOBAL IMBALANCES

The U.S. stock market soared in the late 1990s as money flooded into high-tech, “dot-com” stocks related to new, Internet-based technologies. Investment rose and the U.S. current account deficit swelled. When stock prices began to collapse in 2000, helping to create a recession, the Federal Reserve cut interest rates aggressively. Despite a fall in investment, the U.S. current account deficit was soon on the rise again because of falling saving. One factor reducing U.S. saving was a rapid increase in real estate prices. Interest rates were low, and as Americans borrowed against their rising home equity values, the net U.S. household saving rate turned negative. As a result, the U.S. current account deficit reached an unprecedented 6 percent of GDP by the middle of the decade (see Figure 13-2), and the dollar began to depreciate (see Figure 19-6). Real estate prices escalated as well in many countries outside the United States, ranging from the United Kingdom to Spain to Estonia, and these countries, like the United States, also tended to run bigger trade deficits.

Indeed, during the years after 1999, the pattern of global external imbalances widened sharply. Figure 19-7 gives a picture of this process. It is useful to think of the negative entries in the figure (the deficit entries) as showing net demands for global saving, while the positive entries (the surplus entries) show net supplies of saving (saving in excess of domestic investment needs). In an equilibrium for the global financial markets, the worldwide demand for saving equals the worldwide supply, which is another way of saying that the current account balances of all countries must add up to zero.

On the demand side, the dramatic explosion of the U.S. current account deficit was the dominant development. Because the current account equals saving minus investment, a large U.S. deficit meant that American investment (in effect, a demand for saving) far exceeded the supply of saving generated by American households, firms, and governmental units. Also contributing to the global demand for saving, though on a much smaller scale, was the investment-driven demand coming from the rapidly developing countries of Central and Eastern Europe (see Figure 19-7).

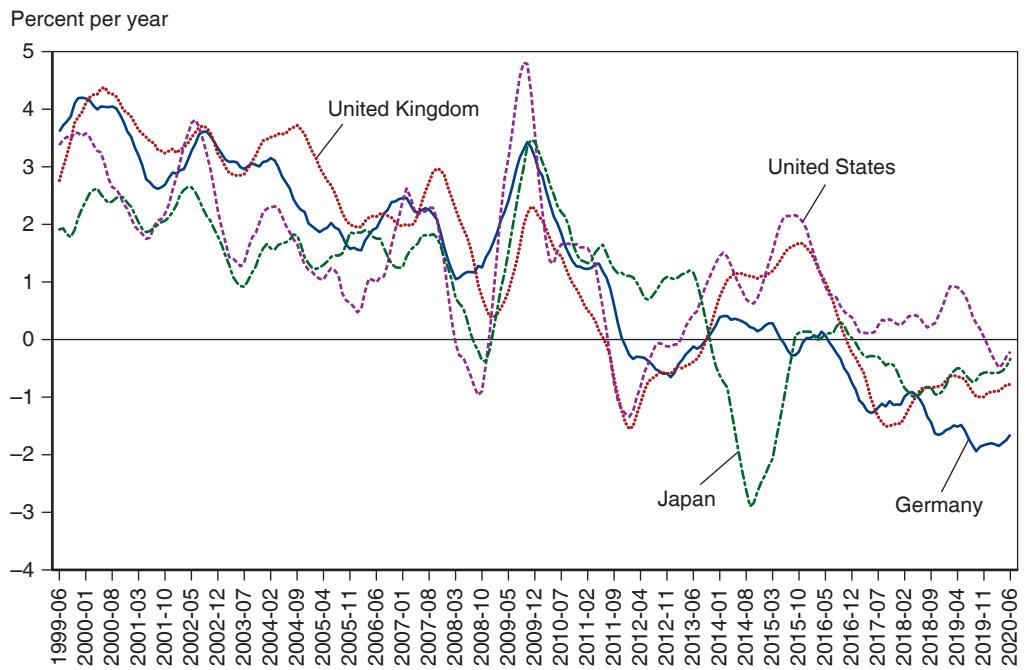
The puzzling feature of the data is that, as the U.S. deficit widened—reflecting an *increase* in American demand for the world’s saving—the U.S. real long-term interest rate *fell*, continuing a process that had begun around 2000 when the dot-com crash reduced investment demand and market expectations of future economic growth (see Figure 19-8). Lower real interest rates helped drive American home prices higher, encouraging people to borrow against home equity and spend more out of national income. It would seem more natural, instead, for real interest rates to have *risen*, encouraging U.S. saving and discouraging U.S. investment. How could the opposite, a fall in real interest rates, have happened? Why, moreover, was this phenomenon also seen in other countries, as shown in Figure 19-8? The answer must lie in a change in saving and investment behavior outside the United States.

**FIGURE 19-7****Global External Imbalances, 1999–2019**

During the first half of the 2000s, the large increase in the U.S. current account deficit was matched by increases in the surpluses of other countries, notably Asian countries (including China). After 2008 the imbalances shrank temporarily, but have since increased, with the euro area developing a big surplus.

**Source:** International Monetary Fund, *World Economic Outlook* database, October 2019. Numbers for 2019 are projections.

Figure 19-7 shows that over the 2000s, the current account surpluses of several countries outside the United States rose (notably China but also Japan and newly industrialized countries such as Singapore and Taiwan). Oil exporters' surpluses (not explicitly shown in the figure) also increased. Economists still debate the causes of these surpluses, but a number of likely factors stand out. One of these was the emergence of China as a major player in the world economy, especially after it joined the World Trade Organization in December 2001. Growth in the private Chinese economy starting in the late 1970s led to very rapid economic expansion

**FIGURE 19-8**

### Long-Term Real Interest Rates for the United States, Germany, Japan, and the United Kingdom, 1999–2020

Real interest rates fell to low levels in the 2000s. Many countries followed the same trend.

**Source:** OECD. Real interest rates are six-month moving averages of monthly nominal interest rates on 10-year government bonds less inflation over the preceding year.

but also to economic disruption for much of the country's huge population—for example, a reduction in social benefits such as health care, which state-owned firms had earlier supplied. As a precautionary measure, the Chinese saved more than they had in the past. At the same time, China's torrid economic growth (coupled with rather strong growth in the United States) increased the prices of a range of primary commodities, notably petroleum. The revenues from exporting Brazilian soybeans and iron, Malaysian palm oil, and Russian, Venezuelan, Congolese, and Saudi petroleum all soared. These economic windfalls, running ahead of the recipients' abilities to spend or invest them, also helped to raise worldwide saving.

A second factor was at work in raising current account surpluses outside the United States. The economic and financial crises of the late 1990s had made poorer countries more cautious in their fiscal policies, and also reduced their willingness to invest. Similarly, economic uncertainty in Japan depressed investment demand there. One result of more conservative economic policies in the developing world was the rapid accumulation of U.S. dollar reserves as mentioned previously, an outcome that provided these poorer countries with a welcome cushion against possible future economic misfortunes.

To summarize, the higher supply of saving from countries outside the United States, coupled with generally lower investment demand, more than offset the effects on the global financial markets of the higher American current account deficit. The result was a fall in global interest rates, which contributed to global house-price appreciation.<sup>32</sup>

### THE GLOBAL FINANCIAL CRISIS AND THE PANDEMIC

In August 2007, a severe financial crisis erupted, this time not in the developing world but in the credit markets of the United States and Europe. The crisis spread worldwide, snowballing into a worldwide financial panic and recession in 2008–2009. The roots of the crisis lay in the U.S. home mortgage market. We will study the financial aspects of the crisis and its spread in more detail in Chapter 20.

One key element leading to the crisis was the period of lower long-term real interest rates, shown in Figure 19-8. Low interest rates contributed to the run-up in home prices in the United States and in many other countries, and in the United States they led to much riskier practices among mortgage lenders (for example, lending with minimal or zero down payments or with temporarily low “teaser” interest rates). To make matters worse, these “subprime” or “nonprime” mortgages were repackaged and sold to other investors worldwide, investors who had little idea in many cases of the risks they were taking on.

These low real interest rates stimulated global demand. Eventually, commodity exporters’ consumption began to catch up to their income, and world investment demand rose. As you can see in Figure 19-8, real interest rates were low from 2003 to the end of 2005 and then rose sharply in the United States. This abrupt rise in interest rates left many who had borrowed to buy homes unable to meet their monthly mortgage payments. In turn, the homeowners’ creditors ran into trouble, and the credit crisis of 2007 erupted. At higher interest rate levels, many of the subprime home loans made earlier in the 2000s by aggressive mortgage lenders started to look as if they would never be repaid. The lenders (including banks around the world) then encountered serious difficulties in borrowing themselves.

Despite interest rate cuts by many central banks and other financial interventions aimed at aiding their economies, the world slipped into recession. The recession deepened dramatically as the financial crisis itself intensified in the autumn of 2008. Major countries, including the United States and China, rolled out large fiscal stimulus programs, while central banks, in many cases, slashed their target nominal interest rates. (Figure 14-2 shows the interest rates in the United States and Japan.) While these policies prevented the world economy from going into free fall, unemployment rose sharply the world over (see Table 19-2), and output generally contracted in 2009. By 2010, the world economy had stabilized, but growth remained tepid in the industrial world, unemployment was slow to decline, and the recession left many governments with sharply higher fiscal deficits that could not be sustained indefinitely. In the years following 2009, much of the developing world initially recovered more robustly from the crisis than did the industrial world, but in much of Europe and Japan, recovery from the worst global crisis since the Great Depression remained halting and fragile.

<sup>32</sup>Problem 13 at the end of this chapter suggests a simple economic framework that will help you think through the effects of shifts in the world’s demand and supply curves for saving. The article by Ben Bernanke in Further Readings offers a detailed analysis of the low real interest rates of the mid-2000s.

The United States and the United Kingdom returned to more robust growth by the mid-2010s, but in the latter, recovery was cut short by its unexpected June 2016 vote to withdraw from the European Union. China slowed in the 2010s as it reoriented its economy away from high investment and toward consumption, but together with slower growth elsewhere, China's transition depressed the global demand for commodities, hurting the economies of commodity exporters, especially in the developing world. We will discuss this linkage in more detail in Chapter 22. In developments that we will take up in Chapter 21, the euro area's recovery stalled and reversed as an existential crisis erupted late in 2009. The euro crisis was driven by the slow growth, unemployment, banking problems, and high public debts bequeathed by the 2007–2009 global crisis. The worst of the euro crisis was past by late 2012, and by the late 2010s the major industrial and emerging economies were mostly enjoying full employment and growth rates at or near potential.

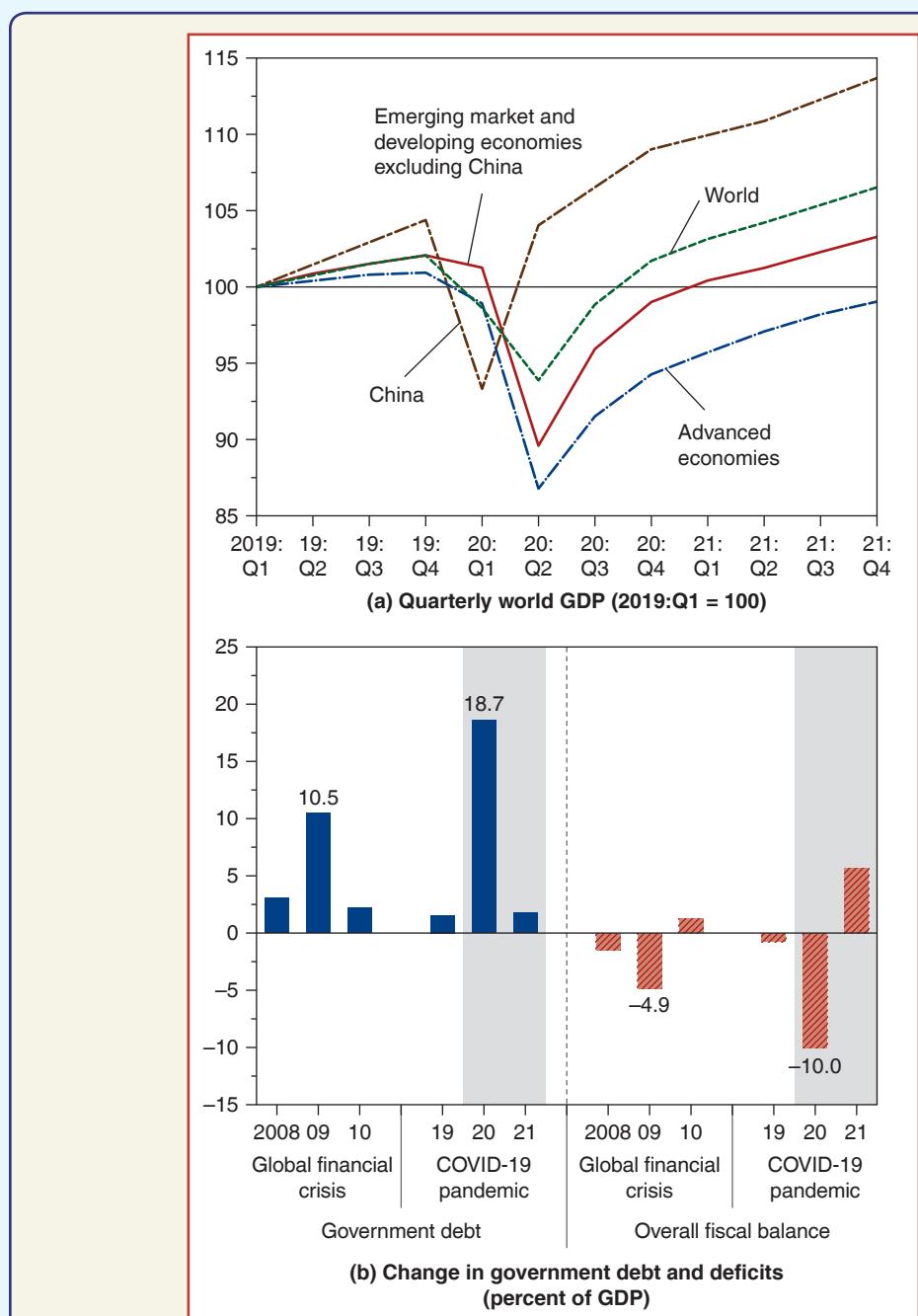
The election of Donald Trump as U.S. president had mixed consequences for the global economy. On one hand, a U.S. tax cut passed in December 2017 provided a short-term boost to U.S. growth, with some of that stimulus spilling into higher U.S. imports, to the benefit of foreign exporters. On the other hand, President Trump took aggressive protectionist actions against a range of U.S. trade partners, notably China and the European Union, while he also moved to renegotiate several trade agreements, such as the North American Free Trade Agreement. By 2019, the resulting trade disruption had become a drag on global growth and especially on global trade. According to the IMF, between 2018 and 2019, the global rate of real GDP growth dropped from 3.1 to 2.4 percent, while the growth rate of global trade volume dropped from 3.7 to only 1.1 percent.

Then, early in 2020, the world first felt the effects of the COVID-19 pandemic. Numerous economies went into partial lockdowns, which caused output to fall and unemployment to spike upward dramatically throughout the world. Despite a history of international health cooperation through the World Health Organization, the World Bank, and other international institutions, countries went in diverse directions in their attempts to control the spread of the novel coronavirus causing the disease, with differing outcomes. In the initial months of the crisis, a number of countries took the beggar-thy-neighbor step of limiting exports of medical supplies.

While national public health responses differed and in some cases clashed, many governments did respond with unprecedented levels of monetary and fiscal stimulus. In particular, fiscal policy blunted the contraction that otherwise would have occurred, in part by generously supplementing the income of the unemployed and keeping businesses afloat. Panel (a) of Figure 19-9 reports IMF estimates (as of late June 2020) of the output drop due to the pandemic lockdowns and the subsequent most likely recovery path through the end of 2021. Panel (b) compares the projected increases in government debt and deficits around the COVID-19 crisis (2020) with the previous great recession (2009).<sup>33</sup> As usual, the fiscal outcome numbers reflect both the impact of new spending as well as the loss in revenue due to the economy's contraction. But the impression from Figure 19-9 that the 2020 fiscal response was much bigger even than that of 2009 is accurate.

As of this writing, the time frame for global recovery from the crisis remained uncertain, with the pace of economic recovery closely tied to the

<sup>33</sup>The government's "fiscal balance" tracks its outlays less its revenues, so that a negative fiscal balance is a budgetary deficit.

**FIGURE 19-9****Immediate Output and Fiscal Consequences of the Global Pandemic Crisis**

Global output levels declined sharply because of the pandemic lockdown, while governments responded with fiscal measures even more aggressive than those during the earlier global financial crisis. Panel (a) shows indexes of the level of GDP. Panel (b) shows aggregate global public debt and deficits.

**Source:** International Monetary Fund, *World Economic Outlook*, June 2020 update, based on IMF staff estimates.

development of treatments and vaccines for the virus. The full recovery of labor markets will likely be slow. Also open is the question of how governments will manage the very high public debt levels that the crisis will leave behind. Finally, and very unfortunately, the breakdown of international cooperation before and during the crisis may leave a legacy of bitterness that impedes the world economy's recovery going forward.

## THE THORNY PROBLEM OF CURRENCY MANIPULATION

Toward the end of our Case Study “The First Years of Floating Exchange Rates, 1973–1990,” we noted that the sharp appreciation of the U.S. dollar in the 1980s led U.S. import-competing industries to pressure the government for protection from foreign competition. A delayed result of the strong dollar was the Omnibus Foreign Trade and Competitiveness Act of 1988, which to this day provides a basis in domestic law for many U.S. protectionist measures. Section 3004 of the act states that

The Secretary of the Treasury shall analyze on an annual basis the exchange rate policies of foreign countries, in consultation with the International Monetary Fund, and consider whether countries manipulate the rate of exchange between their currency and the United States dollar for purposes of preventing effective balance of payments adjustments or gaining unfair competitive advantage in international trade.

Such a finding was supposed to trigger intensive negotiations with the offending country, with the goal of changing the currency intervention policies leading to underpriced exports.

The question of competitive currency depreciation first emerged in the interwar years as countries left the gold standard and devalued their currencies to fight the Great Depression. These devaluations could be considered beggar-thy-neighbor policies—in the sense that each country might be “stealing”

some aggregate demand from others by devaluing. However, some scholars have argued that the collective result was actually *beneficial* to the global economy because the devaluations also allowed countries to adopt expansionary monetary policies that jointly promoted global economic expansion.<sup>34</sup> While this joint outcome was very different from the very negative collective effect of beggar-thy-neighbor trade protection, some competitive currency practices can do damage abroad. That is why in 1944, the IMF Articles of Agreement made member countries pledge to “avoid manipulating exchange rates or the international monetary system in order to prevent effective balance of payments adjustment or to gain an unfair competitive advantage over other members . . . ”

When a country artificially cheapens its currency in the foreign exchange market, it sells its exports to other countries at cut-rate prices. It may seem puzzling, then, that its trading partners protest rather than sending thank-you notes. There are several reasons why. If our economy is suffering from unemployment, then cheaper imports may siphon off aggregate demand from domestic goods, harming the home labor market even if some consumers benefit from lower import prices. Even with aggregate full employment, however, artificially cheap imports may harm our import-competing industries, forcing localized job losses. Finally, if a country that competes with us in foreign export markets cheapens its currency, we will need to lower our own export prices

<sup>34</sup>An influential study is Barry Eichengreen and Jeffrey Sachs, “Exchange Rates and Economic Recovery in the 1930s,” *Journal of Economic History* 45 (December 1985), pp. 925–946. We saw in this chapter’s section “Macroeconomic Interdependence under a Floating Rate” that a monetary expansion at home stimulates output abroad because the resulting domestic output gain raises imports but reduces foreign output by making domestic goods cheaper. The net result on foreign output is ambiguous. If both countries adopt similar monetary expansions, however, exchange rates will not change much, leaving an expansionary impact for both countries. Similar reasoning shows why fiscal contraction at home unambiguously lowers foreign output.

to compete—a terms of trade loss but also a possible cause of export-sector unemployment.

We have learned that many government policies affect the exchange rate, monetary and fiscal policy prominent among them. Which policies amount to “manipulation,” and which are legitimate policy actions that just happen to move exchange rates around? The answer is somewhat nuanced. Sterilized intervention policies or foreign exchange taxes designed to depreciate the currency beyond a value consistent with external balance count as manipulation. However, most observers would not bar conventional macroeconomic measures aimed at domestic stability, even when those work to some degree through a weaker currency, because these policies could have positive economic spillovers abroad and, more importantly, generally are motivated by domestic objectives. For the IMF, which is supposed to monitor currency practices, the *intent* behind a policy move matters. Debate continues over Switzerland’s 2011–2015 currency peg. (Recall the Case Study in Chapter 18 titled “Can Markets Attack a Strong Currency? The Case of Switzerland.”) Did Switzerland manipulate its currency to maintain an artificial competitive edge against the euro, or did it take appropriate action to prevent domestic deflation and unemployment when conventional monetary policy was unavailable?

This is not the end of the conversation, though. Some emerging market policy makers have argued that quantitative easing at the effective lower bound on interest rates (discussed in Chapter 17) is a beggar-thy-neighbor policy when it operates mainly through the exchange rate channel. This viewpoint is not yet widely accepted. Theoretical models show, however, that a country with a liquidity trap can spread it abroad by depreciating its currency (see the paper by Caballero, Farhi, and Gourinchas in Further Readings).

As China’s current account surplus expanded dramatically in the 2000s (recall Figure 19-7), Chinese goods flooded into industrial countries’ markets. Because China was heavily managing its currency’s value against the dollar—actually pegging the exchange rate until July 2005—several

U.S. political figures charged China with currency manipulation and called for countervailing tariffs to offset China’s artificial competitive edge. Faced with this threat, China began gradually to let its currency crawl upward, and while its current account surplus has declined significantly as a fraction of GDP, the process has been slow.

The U.S. Department of the Treasury currently relies on three quantitative indicators to judge whether it should name a country a currency manipulator:

1. Having a bilateral trade surplus of more than \$20 billion with the United States.
2. Having an overall (multilateral) current account surplus of more than 2 percent of GDP.
3. Official net intervention purchases of foreign currency totaling more than 2 percent of GDP, taking place in at least six of the past twelve months.

Despite carrying out frequent reviews, the Treasury has rarely called out major trade partners as currency manipulators. An exception occurred in August 2019 amid a tariff dispute with the United States, when China allowed its currency, the yuan renminbi, to weaken temporarily beyond ¥7 per dollar. At the time, China met only one of the Treasury’s criteria for being a manipulator (the bilateral surplus criterion). Because, in addition, labeling China in this way had no discernible repercussions, some observers concluded that the incident’s main result was to undermine the credibility of the Treasury assessment process.

Concern over China’s intervention practices has receded, especially as China has intervened extensively in recent years to *prevent* the yuan from depreciating. At the same time, new episodes of currency manipulation still have the potential to disrupt international trading relations, inflicting losses all around. Some commercial disputes can be resolved through the World Trade Organization, but the WTO is designed to adjudicate trade policy, not exchange rate policy. Diagnosing currency manipulation objectively and addressing it effectively therefore remain challenges for the international monetary system.<sup>35</sup>

---

<sup>35</sup>For a wide-ranging review of currency manipulation and options for discouraging it, see C. Fred Bergsten and Joseph E. Gagnon, *Currency Conflict and Trade Policy: A New Strategy for the United States* (Washington, D.C.: Peterson Institute for International Economics, 2017).

## CASE STUDY

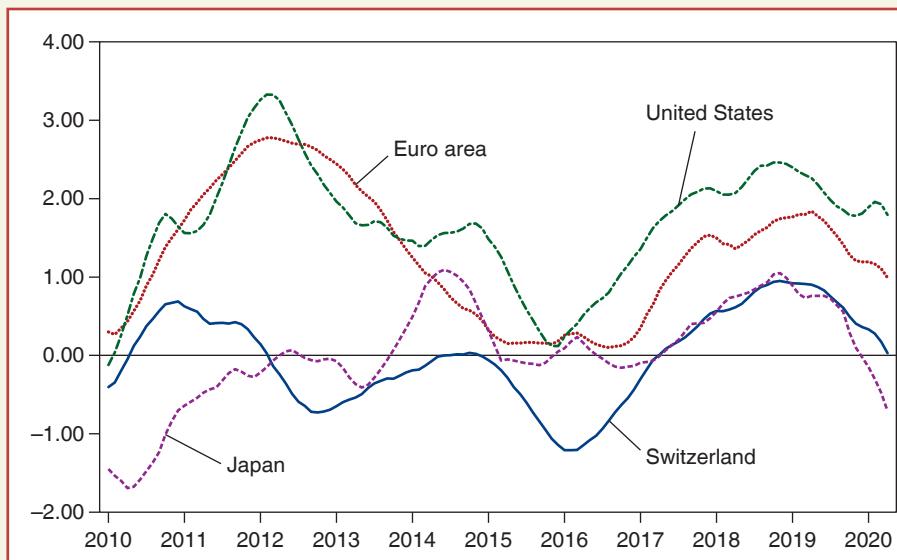
### The Dangers of Deflation

For the first decades after the demise of the Bretton Woods system in 1973, central banks across the world spent most of their time worrying about high inflation and its disruptive effects on the economy. It was to control high inflation that many central banks adopted regimes of inflation targeting, in which departures of actual or forecast inflation from an announced target—usually around 2 percent per year in industrial economies—triggers tighter or looser monetary policy.

While the case that high inflation is bad is easy to make, it may be less obvious why its opposite—below-target inflation or deflation—is also problematic. Of course, deflation may be a symptom of high unemployment, an extreme case being the Great Depression; but can deflation occur even when unemployment is not too different from historical averages, and in that case, should central bankers worry about it? Recent data (see the accompanying figure) show that inflation rates have persistently been below 2 percent in a number of industrial countries, in some cases bordering on deflation. Central banks have been vocally concerned and in most cases have responded aggressively.

Why have they done so? Here are a few of the dangers of deflation, dangers that also can apply (albeit to a lesser degree) to inflation rates that are below target and close to zero (sometimes referred to as “lowflation”):

1. *Debt deflation.* The economist Irving Fisher of Yale University, who also gave his name to the Fisher effect (Chapter 16), wrote about this problem during the Great Depression, but it remains quite relevant today because many households, businesses, and governments remain highly indebted after the series of financial crises that started in 2007. When prices fall, the real values of debts rise, making it harder for debtors to repay them. This change redistributes wealth from high-spending debtors to high-saving creditors, reducing overall aggregate demand, but it also raises the chances that debtors will default on their earlier borrowing. As a result, it becomes harder to escape the tepid economic growth that is likely the initial cause of the deflation, and deflationary forces may be reinforced, causing a downward spiral.
2. *Decreased economic resilience.* As we have seen, workers and firms may be reluctant to cut wages and prices in the face of economic changes, leading to unemployment. When there is some moderate inflation, however, necessary price changes can be accommodated more easily. For example, when energy prices rise sharply, businesses might need to cut labor costs in order to stay in business. If prices are rising at 2 percent and wages rise only 1 percent, then real labor costs will fall; but if prices are not rising at all, workers would have to accept a 1 percent wage cut. In the latter case, resistance to nominal wage cuts would likely result in unemployment.
3. *More frequent liquidity traps.* Low inflation and deflation mean that, other things equal, nominal interest rates will tend to be lower—the Fisher effect we discussed in Chapter 16. But if nominal interest rates are lower, it becomes more likely that the central bank will find itself in a liquidity trap



### Recent Inflation Rates in Some Advanced Economies

The numbers shown are 12-month moving averages of monthly year-over-year inflation rates. Japan's CPI has been adjusted for the April 2014 and October 2019 increases in its consumption tax rate.

Sources: OECD and Statistics Bureau of Japan.

(Chapter 17) and unable to respond to negative economic developments that could worsen unemployment. Central banks may move to unconventional monetary policies, but these may be less effective and come with undesirable side effects.

4. *Loss of inflation-target credibility.* Because the liquidity trap robs central banks of their prime tool for managing the inflation rate, central bank inflation targets can become less credible, allowing deflation or low-inflation expectations to feed on themselves and reinforce the downward price pressures. Of course, such pressures are reinforced by debt deflation and the economy's reduced resilience. These forces may make the trap of zero interest rates and low inflation extremely hard to escape.

The fear of deflation is an important reason why central banks adopt inflation targets with positive, rather than zero, inflation. Some economists think that even a 2 percent inflation target provides insufficient insurance against the perils of deflation. One proposal is for industrial-country central banks to raise their targets—say, to the 4 to 6 percent levels that tend to prevail in countries such as India or Brazil. Another idea is for central banks to target a fixed price-level path that has an upward slope of 2 percent per year rather than targeting the inflation rate itself. Under that proposal, if inflation ever falls below 2 percent, it must accelerate above that level later in order to regain the targeted CPI path; and thus, any fall in

inflation below target automatically creates expectations of temporary future above-target inflation. Implementing either of these ideas is difficult, however, once the liquidity trap has been reached and inflation targets begin to lose their credibility. What can be done in that case? Some economists suggest that central banks simply print money and send it to consumers, who would then increase their spending and drive prices up. That approach, however, would blur the lines between monetary and fiscal policy in a way that many policy makers believe would raise the risk of future excessive inflation. Time will tell if the current deflationary pressures become so intractable that governments are driven to such extreme countermeasures.

## What Has Been Learned Since 1973?

Earlier in this chapter, we outlined the main elements of the case for floating exchange rates. Having examined the events of the recent floating-rate period, we now briefly compare experience with the predictions made before 1973 by the proponents of floating.

### Monetary Policy Autonomy

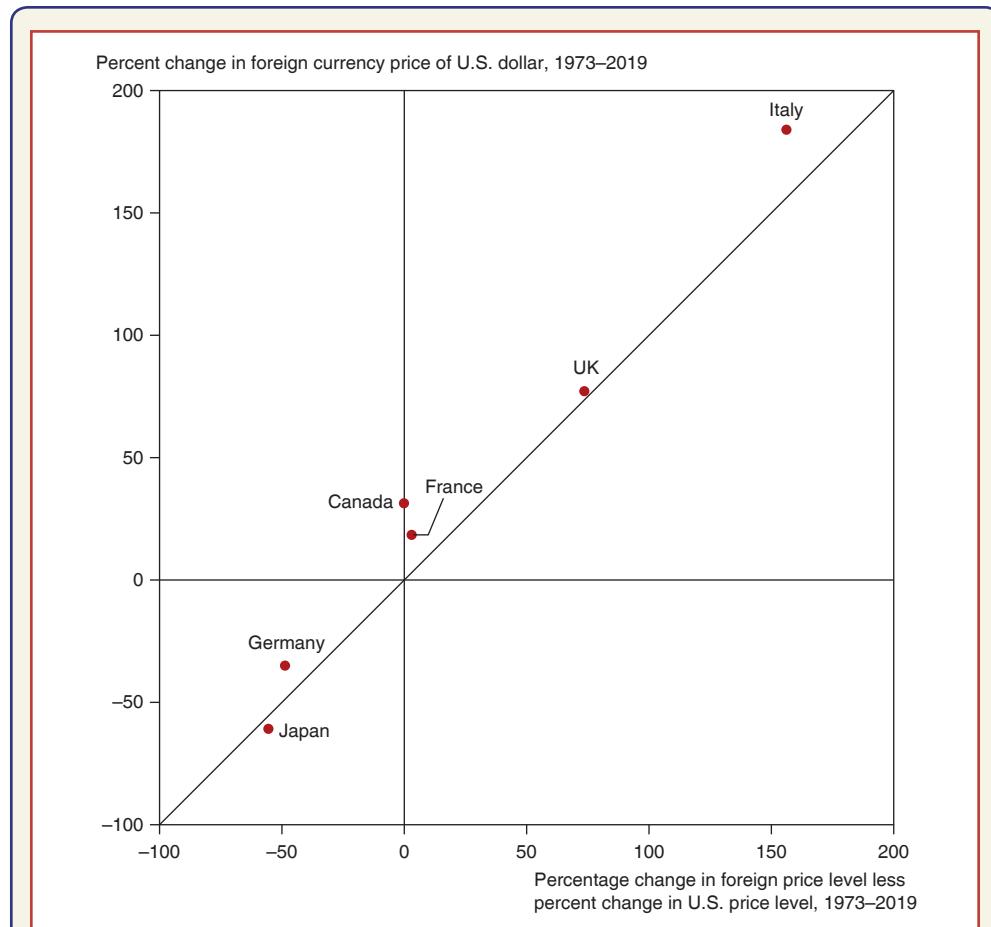
There is no question that floating gave central banks the ability to control their money supplies and to choose their preferred rates of trend inflation. As a result, floating exchange rates allowed a much larger international divergence in inflation. Did exchange depreciation offset inflation differentials between countries over the floating-rate period? Figure 19-10 compares domestic currency depreciation against the dollar with the difference between domestic and U.S. inflation for the six largest industrial market economies outside the United States. The PPP theory predicts that the points in the figure should lie along the 45-degree line, indicating proportional exchange rate and relative price level changes, but this is not exactly the case. While Figure 19-10 therefore confirms the lesson of Chapter 16 that PPP has not always held closely, even over long periods of time, it does show that on balance, high-inflation countries have tended to have weaker currencies than their low-inflation neighbors. Furthermore, most of the difference in depreciation rates is due to inflation differences, making PPP a major factor behind long-run nominal exchange rate variability.

While the inflation insulation part of the policy autonomy argument is broadly supported as a *long-run* proposition, economic analysis and experience both show that in the short run, the effects of monetary as well as fiscal changes are transmitted across national borders under floating rates. The two-country macroeconomic model developed earlier, for example, shows that monetary policy affects output in the short run both at home and abroad as long as it alters the real exchange rate. (Recall the section “Macroeconomic Interdependence under a Floating Exchange Rate.”) Skeptics of floating were therefore right in claiming that floating rates would not insulate countries completely from foreign policy shocks.

### Symmetry

Because central banks continued to hold dollar reserves and intervene, the international monetary system did not become symmetric after 1973. The euro gained importance as an international reserve currency (and the British pound declined), but the dollar remained the primary component of most central banks’ official reserves.

Economist Ronald McKinnon of Stanford University has argued that the current floating-rate system is similar in some ways to the asymmetric reserve currency system

**FIGURE 19-10****Exchange Rate Trends and Inflation Differentials, 1973–2019**

Over the floating-rate period as a whole, higher inflation has been associated with greater currency depreciation. The exact relationship predicted by relative PPP, however, has not held for most countries. The inflation difference on the horizontal axis is calculated as  $(\pi - \pi_{US}) \div (1 + \pi_{US}/100)$  using the exact relative PPP relation given in footnote 1 of Chapter 16.

**Source:** International Monetary Fund, *International Financial Statistics* and Global Financial Data.

underlying the Bretton Woods arrangements.<sup>36</sup> He suggests that changes in the world money supply would have been damped under a more symmetric monetary adjustment mechanism. In the 2000s, China's policy of limiting its currency's appreciation against the dollar led it to accumulate vast dollar reserves, possibly reinforcing the worldwide economic boom that preceded the 2007–2009 financial crisis. As a result, some economists have characterized the period of the early and mid-2000s as a “revived Bretton Woods system.”<sup>37</sup>

<sup>36</sup>Ronald I. McKinnon, *An International Standard for Monetary Stabilization*, Policy Analyses in International Economics 8 (Washington, D.C.: Institute for International Economics, 1984).

<sup>37</sup>See Michael Dooley, David Folkerts-Landau, and Peter Garber, *International Financial Stability: Asia, Interest Rates, and the Dollar*, 2nd edition (New York: Deutsche Bank Securities Inc., 2008).

## The Exchange Rate as an Automatic Stabilizer

The world economy has undergone major structural changes since 1973. Because these shifts changed relative national output prices (Figure 19-6), it is doubtful that any pattern of fixed exchange rates would have been viable without some significant parity changes. The industrial economies certainly wouldn't have weathered the two oil shocks as well as they did while defending fixed exchange rates. In the absence of capital controls, speculative attacks similar to those that brought down the Bretton Woods system would have occurred periodically, as recent experience has shown. Under floating, however, many countries were able to relax the capital controls put in place earlier. The progressive loosening of controls spurred the rapid growth of a global financial industry and allowed countries to realize greater gains from intertemporal trade and from trade in assets.

The effects of the U.S. fiscal expansion after 1981 illustrate the stabilizing properties of a floating exchange rate. As the dollar appreciated, U.S. inflation was slowed, American consumers enjoyed an improvement in their terms of trade, and economic recovery was spread abroad.

The dollar's appreciation after 1981 also illustrates a problem with the view that floating rates can cushion the economy from real disturbances such as shifts in aggregate demand. Even though *overall* output and the price level may be cushioned, some sectors of the economy may be hurt. For example, while the dollar's appreciation helped transmit U.S. fiscal expansion abroad in the 1980s, it worsened the plight of American agriculture, which did not benefit directly from the higher government demand. Real exchange rate changes can do damage by causing excessive adjustment problems in some sectors and by generating calls for increased protection.

Permanent changes in goods market conditions require eventual adjustment in real exchange rates that can be speeded by a floating-rate system. Foreign exchange intervention to peg nominal exchange rates cannot prevent this eventual adjustment because money is neutral in the long run and thus is powerless to alter relative prices permanently. The events of the 1980s show, however, that if it is costly for factors of production to move between sectors of the economy, there is a case for pegging rates in the face of temporary output market shocks. Unfortunately, this lesson leaves policy makers with the difficult task of determining which disturbances are temporary and which are permanent.

Experience also shows that a floating exchange rate can make a country more vulnerable to shocks arising from the foreign exchange market itself, such as fluctuations in the currency risk premium. In such cases, the exchange rate could actually be a shock amplifier.

## External Balance

As Figure 19-8 makes clear, the floating exchange rate system did not prevent large and persistent departures from external balance. True, China's refusal to allow a free float of its own currency is part of the story of the large global imbalances of the 2000s. If the Chinese yuan had been free to appreciate in the foreign exchange market, China's surpluses and the corresponding deficits elsewhere in the world might have been smaller.

But even before China's emergence as a world economic power and before the creation of the euro, large current account deficits and surpluses, such as the U.S. deficit of the 1980s and Japan's persistent surpluses, certainly occurred. Financial markets were evidently capable of driving exchange rates far from values consistent with external balance, as suggested by Figure 19-6 for the case of the dollar. Under floating, external imbalances have persisted for years before exchange rates have adjusted. Long swings in real exchange rates that leave countries far from external balance are called *misalignments*, and they frequently inspire political pressures for protection from imports.

## The Problem of Policy Coordination

Problems of international policy coordination clearly have not disappeared under floating exchange rates. The problem of resolving global imbalances provides a good example, in the sense that unilateral action by deficit countries to reduce their imbalances would lead to global deflation, while surplus countries have little incentive to avoid that outcome by pumping up their internal demand and appreciating their currencies.

There are other examples that are perhaps even more striking, in the sense that all countries would clearly benefit if they could commit to coordinating their policies rather than going it alone in beggar-thy-neighbor fashion. For example, during the disinflation of the early 1980s, industrial countries as a group could have attained their macroeconomic goals more effectively by negotiating a joint approach to common objectives. The appendix to this chapter presents a formal model, based on that example, to illustrate how all countries can gain through international policy coordination.

Another instance comes from the global fiscal response to the recession that the 2007–2009 crisis caused. We saw earlier in this chapter (and in Chapter 17) that when a country raises government spending, part of the expansionary impact leaks abroad. The country will pay the cost of the policy, however, in the form of a higher government deficit. Since countries do not internalize all the benefits of their own fiscal expansions but pay the cost in full, they will adopt too little of it in a global recession.

If countries could negotiate an agreement *jointly* to expand, however, they might be more effective in fighting the recession (and they might even experience lower fiscal costs). The response to the 2007–2009 crisis was discussed periodically by the Group of Twenty (G20) nations, an informal grouping of leading industrial and developing countries including Argentina, Brazil, China, India, and Russia. In the early stages of the crisis, there was widespread agreement on the fiscal response within the G20. Later on, as countries experienced more divergent rates of recovery, policy coordination became more difficult, and G20 meetings yielded fewer concrete results.

## Are Fixed Exchange Rates Even an Option for Most Countries?

Is there any practical alternative to floating exchange rates when financial markets are open to international trade? The post–Bretton Woods experience suggests a stark hypothesis: Durable fixed exchange rate arrangements may not even be *possible*. In a financially integrated world in which funds can move instantly between national financial markets, fixed exchange rates cannot be credibly maintained over the long run unless countries are willing to maintain controls over capital movements (as China does) or, at the other extreme, move to a shared single currency with their monetary partners (as in Europe). Short of these measures, the argument goes, attempts to fix exchange rates will necessarily lack credibility and be relatively short-lived. You will recognize that these predictions follow from the trilemma.<sup>38</sup>

---

<sup>38</sup>For an early statement of the hypothesis that fixed exchange rates combined with mobile capital can be unstable, see Maurice Obstfeld, “Floating Exchange Rates: Experience and Prospects,” *Brookings Papers on Economic Activity* 2 (1985), pp. 369–450. For more recent discussions see Barry Eichengreen, *International Monetary Arrangements for the 21st Century* (Washington, D.C.: Brookings Institution, 1994); Lars E. O. Svensson, “Fixed Exchange Rates as a Means to Price Stability: What Have We Learned?” *European Economic Review* 38 (May 1994), pp. 447–468; Maurice Obstfeld and Kenneth Rogoff, “The Mirage of Fixed Exchange Rates,” *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 9 (Fall 1995), pp. 73–96; and the book by Klein and Shambaugh in Further Readings.

This pessimistic view of fixed exchange rates is based on the theory that speculative currency crises can, at least in part, be self-fulfilling events (recall Chapter 18). According to that view, even a country following prudent monetary and fiscal policies is not safe from speculative attacks on its fixed exchange rate. Once the country encounters an economic reversal, as it eventually must, currency speculators will pounce, forcing domestic interest rates sky-high and inflicting enough economic pain that the government will choose to abandon its exchange rate target.

At the turn of the 21st century, speculative attacks on fixed exchange rate arrangements—in Europe, East Asia, and elsewhere—were occurring with seemingly increasing frequency. The number and circumstances of those crises lent increasing plausibility to the argument that it is impossible to peg currency values for long while maintaining open capital markets and national policy sovereignty. Moreover, many countries outside the industrial world have allowed much greater exchange rate flexibility in recent years, and apparently benefited from it, as we shall see in Chapter 22. Some countries appear to be moving toward either greater control over cross-border financial flows or more drastic sacrifices of monetary autonomy (for example, adopting the euro). It seems likely that policy coordination issues will be confronted in the future within a system in which different countries choose different policy regimes, subject to the constraints of the monetary trilemma.

## SUMMARY

- In an open economy, policy makers try to maintain *internal balance* (full employment and a stable price level) and *external balance* (a current account level that is neither so negative that the country may be unable to repay its foreign debts nor so positive that foreigners are put in that position). The definition of external balance depends on a number of factors, including the exchange rate regime and world economic conditions. Because each country's macroeconomic policies have repercussions abroad, a country's ability to reach internal and external balance depends on the policies other countries choose to adopt. A country running large, persistent deficits might appear to be violating its *intertemporal budget constraint*, putting it in danger of facing a *sudden stop* in foreign lending.
- The limitations of alternative exchange rate regimes can be understood in terms of the open-economy *monetary trilemma*, which states that countries must choose two of the following three features of a monetary policy system: exchange rate stability, freedom of cross-border financial flows, and monetary policy autonomy.
- The gold standard system contained a powerful automatic mechanism for ensuring external balance, the *price-specie-flow mechanism*. The flows of gold accompanying deficits and surpluses caused price changes that reduced current account imbalances and therefore tended to return all countries to external balance. The system's performance in maintaining internal balance was mixed, however. With the eruption of World War I in 1914, the gold standard was suspended.
- Attempts to return to the prewar gold standard after 1918 were unsuccessful. As the world economy moved into general depression after 1929, the restored gold standard fell apart, and international economic integration weakened. In the turbulent economic conditions of the period, governments made internal balance their main concern and tried to avoid the external balance problem by partially shutting their economies off from the rest of the world. The result was a world economy in which all countries' situations could have been bettered through international cooperation.

- The architects of the *International Monetary Fund (IMF)* hoped to design a fixed exchange rate system that would encourage growth in international trade while making the demands of external balance sufficiently flexible that they could be met without sacrificing internal balance. To this end, the IMF charter provided financing facilities for deficit countries and allowed exchange rate adjustments under conditions of “fundamental disequilibrium.” All countries pegged their currencies to the dollar. The United States pegged to gold and agreed to exchange gold for dollars with foreign central banks at a price of \$35 an ounce.
- After *currency convertibility* was restored in Europe in 1958, countries’ financial markets became more closely integrated, monetary policy became less effective (except for the United States), and movements in international reserves became more volatile. These changes revealed a key weakness in the system. To reach internal and external balance at the same time, *expenditure-switching* as well as *expenditure-changing* policies were needed. But the possibility of expenditure-switching policies (exchange rate changes) could give rise to speculative financial flows that would undermine fixed exchange rates. As the main reserve currency country, the United States faced a unique external balance problem: the *confidence problem*, which would arise as foreign official dollar holdings inevitably grew to exceed U.S. gold holdings. A series of international crises led in stages to the abandonment by March 1973 of both the dollar’s link to gold and fixed dollar exchange rates for the industrialized countries.
- Before 1973, the weaknesses of the Bretton Woods system led many economists to advocate floating exchange rates. They made four main arguments in favor of floating. First, they argued that floating rates would give national macroeconomic policy makers greater autonomy in managing their economies. Second, they predicted that floating rates would remove the asymmetries of the Bretton Woods arrangements. Third, they pointed out that floating exchange rates would quickly eliminate the “fundamental disequilibriums” that had led to parity changes and speculative attacks under fixed rates. Fourth, they claimed that these same exchange rate movements would prevent large, persistent departures from external balance.
- In the early years of floating, floating rates seemed, on the whole, to function well. In particular, it is unlikely that the industrial countries could have maintained fixed exchange rates in the face of the *stagflation* caused by two oil shocks. The dollar suffered a sharp depreciation after 1976, however, as the United States adopted macroeconomic policies more expansionary than those of other industrial countries.
- A sharp turn toward slower monetary growth in the United States, coupled with a rising U.S. government budget deficit, contributed to massive dollar appreciation between 1980 and early 1985. Other industrial economies pursued disinflation along with the United States, and the resulting worldwide monetary slowdown, coming soon after the second oil shock, led to a deep global recession. As the recovery from the recession slowed in late 1984 and the U.S. current account began to register record deficits, political pressure for wide-ranging trade restrictions gathered momentum in Washington. At the Plaza Hotel in New York in September 1985, the United States and four other major industrial countries agreed to take concerted action to bring down the dollar.
- Exchange rate stability was downplayed as a prime policy goal in the 1990s and 2000s. Instead, governments aimed to target low domestic inflation while maintaining economic growth. After 2000, global external imbalances widened dramatically. In the United States and other countries, external deficits were associated with rapidly increasing housing prices. When these collapsed starting in 2006, the global financial system seized up and the world economy went into deep recession.

- One unambiguous lesson of these experiences seems to be that no exchange rate system functions well when international economic cooperation breaks down. Severe limits on exchange rate flexibility among the major currencies are unlikely to be reinstated in the near future. But increased consultation among international policy makers should improve the performance of the international monetary system.

## KEY TERMS

balance of payments equilibrium, p. 600	expenditure-switching policy, p. 613	monetary trilemma, p. 598
Bretton Woods agreement, p. 607	external balance, p. 590	nominal and real effective exchange rate indexes, p. 625
confidence problem, p. 615	internal balance, p. 590	price-specie-flow mechanism, p. 600
convertible currency, p. 609	International Monetary Fund (IMF), p. 607	stagflation, p. 625
expenditure-changing policy, p. 613	intertemporal budget constraint, p. 593	sudden stop, p. 593

## PROBLEMS

1. If you were in charge of macroeconomic policies in a small open economy, what qualitative effect would each of the following events have on your target for external balance?
  - a. Large deposits of uranium are discovered in the interior of your country.
  - b. The world price of your main export good, copper, rises permanently.
  - c. The world price of copper rises temporarily.
  - d. There is a temporary rise in the world price of oil.
2. Under a gold standard of the kind Hume analyzed, describe how balance of payments equilibrium between two countries, A and B, would be restored after a transfer of income from B to A.
3. Despite the flaws of the pre-1914 gold standard, exchange rate changes were rare for the “core” countries (including the richer European countries and the United States). In contrast, such changes became frequent in the interwar period. Can you think of reasons for this contrast?
4. Under a gold standard, countries may adopt excessively contractionary monetary policies as all countries scramble in vain for a larger share of the limited supply of world gold reserves. Can the same problem arise under a reserve currency standard when bonds denominated in different currencies are all perfect substitutes?
5. A central bank that adopts a fixed exchange rate may sacrifice its autonomy in setting domestic monetary policy. It is sometimes argued that when this is the case, the central bank also gives up the ability to use monetary policy to combat the wage-price spiral. The argument goes like this: “Suppose workers demand higher wages and employers give in, but the employers then raise output prices to cover their higher costs. Now the price level is higher and real balances are momentarily lower, so to prevent an interest rate rise that would appreciate the currency, the central bank must buy foreign exchange currencies and expand the money supply. This action accommodates the initial wage demands with monetary growth, and the economy moves permanently to a higher level of wages and prices. With a fixed exchange rate, there is thus no way of keeping wages and prices down.” What is wrong with this argument?

6. Suppose the central bank of a small country with a fixed exchange rate is faced by a rise in the world interest rate,  $R^*$ . What is the effect on its foreign reserve holdings? On its money supply? Can it offset either of these effects through domestic open-market operations?
7. How might restrictions on private financial account transactions alter the problem of attaining internal and external balance with a fixed exchange rate? What costs might such restrictions involve?
8. In the box on New Zealand, we derived an equation showing how the  $IIP$  changes over time:  $IIP_{t+1} = (1 + r)IIP_t + NX_t$ . Show that if  $g = (GDP_{t+1} - GDP_t)/GDP_t$  is the growth rate of nominal output (GDP), and lowercase variables denote ratios to nominal GDP (as in the chapter), we can express this same equation in the form:

$$iip_{t+1} = \frac{(1 + r)iip_t + nx_t}{1 + g}.$$

Use this expression to find the ratio of net exports to GDP that holds the  $IIP$  to GDP ratio  $iip$  constant over time.

9. You are an economic adviser to the government of China in 2008. The country has a current account surplus and is facing gathering inflationary pressures.
  - a. Show the location of the Chinese economy on a diagram like Figure 19-2.
  - b. What would be your advice on how the authorities should move the yuan renminbi's exchange rate?
  - c. What would be your advice about fiscal policy? In that regard, you have three pieces of data: First, the current account surplus is big, in excess of 9 percent of GDP. Second, China currently provides a rather low level of government services to its people. Third, China's government would like to attract workers from the rural countryside into manufacturing employment, so Chinese officials would prefer to soften any negative impact of their policy package on urban employment.
10. Use the  $DD-AA$  model to examine the effects of a one-time rise in the foreign price level,  $P^*$ . If the expected future exchange rate  $E^e$  falls immediately in proportion to  $P^*$  (in line with PPP), show that the exchange rate will also appreciate immediately in proportion to the rise in  $P^*$ . If the economy is initially in internal and external balance, will its position be disturbed by such a rise in  $P^*$ ?
11. If the foreign *inflation rate* rises permanently, would you expect a floating exchange rate to insulate the domestic economy in the short run? What would happen in the long run? In answering the latter question, pay attention to the long-run relationship between domestic and foreign nominal interest rates.
12. Imagine that domestic and foreign currency bonds are imperfect substitutes and that investors suddenly shift their demand toward foreign currency bonds, raising the risk premium on domestic assets (Chapter 18). Which exchange rate regime minimizes the effect on output—fixed or floating?
13. The Case Study “Transformation and Crisis in the World Economy” discussed the big global imbalances of the 2000s and suggested that one can analyze factors determining world real interest rates in terms of the balance between the world demand for saving (in order to finance investment) and the world supply of saving (just as in a closed economy—which the world is). As a first step in formalizing such an analysis, assume there are no international differences in real interest rates due to expected real exchange rate changes. (For example, you might suppose that yours is a long-run analysis in which real exchange rates are expected to remain at their long-run levels.) As a second step, assume that a higher real interest rate reduces desired investment and raises desired saving throughout the world. Can you then devise a simple supply-demand picture of equilibrium in the world capital

market in which quantities (saved or invested) are on the horizontal axis and the real interest rate is on the vertical axis? In such a setting, how would an increase in world saving, defined in the usual way as an outward shift in the entire supply-of-saving schedule, affect equilibrium saving, investment, and the real interest rate? Relate your discussion to the Case Study “Transformation and Crisis in the World Economy” and to the paper by Ben S. Bernanke in Further Readings. (For a classic exposition of a similar model, see Lloyd A. Metzler, “The Process of International Adjustment under Conditions of Full Employment: A Keynesian View,” in Richard E. Caves and Harry G. Johnson, eds., *Readings in International Economics* [Homewood, IL: Richard D. Irwin, Inc. for the American Economic Association, 1968], pp. 465–486.)

14. The chapter suggested that the developing world recovered more robustly from the financial crisis of 2007–2009 than the industrial world. Using the World Outlook Economic databases (can be accessed directly on [www.imf.org](http://www.imf.org)) select the following groups of countries: the advanced economies (AE), the emerging market (EM), and the Sub-Saharan Africa (SSA)—as a representative of the developing countries and the following subjects: GDP growth, inflation, exports, current account, FDI, for the year 2006 to 2010. Comment on the results with respect to the impact of the financial crisis on international relationship and national economies.
15. Suppose that some central banks sell large amounts of their reserves in U.S. dollars on the foreign exchange market to buy an equivalent amount of Euro. Is this action equivalent to a sterilized sale of U.S. dollars in the foreign exchange market? What might be the effects on the European Central Bank? Explain your assumption about perfect versus imperfect asset substitutability.
16. Like its neighbor New Zealand, Australia has had a long string of current account deficits and is an international debtor. Go to the Australian Bureau of Statistics website at [www.abs.gov.au/statistics](http://www.abs.gov.au/statistics) and find the data you need to carry out an “external sustainability” analysis of the current account such as the one for New Zealand in the chapter. You will need data starting in 1992 for nominal GDP, the IIP, the current account, and the balance on goods and services  $NX$  (from the “time series spreadsheets” after clicking on “Data Downloads”). The goal of the exercise is to find the interest rate  $r$  on the IIP that stabilizes the ratio  $IIP/GDP$  at its most recent value given the historical average of  $NX$  and the historical average of nominal GDP growth (all since 1992). Warning: This challenging exercise requires you to navigate the Australian data system and judge the most appropriate data to use in light of what you learned in Chapter 13.

## FURTHER READINGS

- Liaquat Ahamed. *Lords of Finance: The Bankers Who Broke the World*. New York: Penguin Press, 2009. Lively historical account of international monetary crises between the world wars of the 20th century.
- Ben S. Bernanke. “The Global Saving Glut and the U.S. Current Account Deficit.” Sandridge Lecture, March 10, 2005, at [www.federalreserve.gov/boarddocs/speeches/2005/200503102/default.htm](http://www.federalreserve.gov/boarddocs/speeches/2005/200503102/default.htm). The former Federal Reserve chair’s diagnosis of the low real interest rates of the mid-2000s.
- Olivier J. Blanchard and Gian Maria Milesi-Ferretti. “(Why) Should Current Account Balances Be Reduced?” *IMF Economic Review* 60 (April 2012), pp. 139–150. The authors offer a concise, up-to-date survey of the hazards of very large current account deficits and surpluses.
- Ricardo J. Caballero, Emmanuel Farhi, and Pierre-Olivier Gourinchas. “Global Imbalances and Policy Wars at the Zero Lower Bound.” Working Paper 21670, National Bureau of Economic

- Research, February 2020 (revised version). Advanced analysis of how exchange rates and global imbalances can propagate deflation internationally.
- W. Max Corden. “The Geometric Representation of Policies to Attain Internal and External Balance.” *Review of Economic Studies* 28 (January 1960), pp. 1–22. A classic diagrammatic analysis of expenditure-switching and expenditure-changing macroeconomic policies.
- Barry Eichengreen. *Globalizing Capital: A History of the International Monetary System*, 3rd edition. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 2019. Compact, insightful overview of international monetary history since the gold standard.
- Milton Friedman. “The Case for Flexible Exchange Rates,” in *Essays in Positive Economics*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1953, pp. 157–203. A classic exposition of the merits of floating exchange rates.
- Joseph E. Gagnon. *Flexible Exchange Rates for a Stable World Economy*. Washington, D.C.: Peterson Institute for International Economics, 2011. The author presents an up-to-date case for exchange rate flexibility.
- Charles P. Kindleberger. *The World in Depression 1929–1939*, 40th Anniversary edition. Berkeley and Los Angeles: University of California Press, 2013. A leading international economist examines the global causes and effects of the Great Depression.
- Michael W. Klein and Jay C. Shambaugh. *Exchange Rate Regimes in the Modern Era*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press, 2010. Comprehensive analysis of the causes and consequences of alternative exchange rate regimes.
- Maurice Obstfeld. “Harry Johnson’s ‘Case for Flexible Exchange Rates’—50 Years Later.” *The Manchester School* 88 (September 2020), pp. 86–113. Surveys the recent state of the debate over pegged versus flexible exchange rates.
- Maurice Obstfeld and Alan M. Taylor. *Global Capital Markets: Integration, Crisis, and Growth*. Cambridge, U.K.: Cambridge University Press, 2004. Historical survey on the linkages between international financial integration and exchange rate regimes.
- Maurice Obstfeld and Alan M. Taylor. “International Monetary Relations: Taking Finance Seriously.” *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 31 (Summer 2017), pp. 3–28. Overview of the international monetary system in view of the growing importance of financial markets and financial stability.
- Robert Solomon. *The International Monetary System, 1945–1981*. New York: Harper & Row, 1982. Excellent chronicle of the Bretton Woods period and the early years of floating. The author was chief of the Federal Reserve’s international finance division during the period leading up to the breakdown of fixed exchange rates.



## International Policy Coordination Failures

This appendix illustrates the importance of macroeconomic policy coordination by showing how all countries can suffer as a result of self-centered policy decisions. The phenomenon is another example of the Prisoner's Dilemma of game theory. Governments can achieve macroeconomic outcomes that are better for all if they choose policies cooperatively.

These points are made using an example based on the disinflation of the early 1980s. Recall that contractionary monetary policies in the industrial countries helped throw the world economy into a deep recession in 1981. Countries hoped to reduce inflation by slowing monetary growth, but the situation was complicated by the influence of exchange rates on the price level. A government that adopts a less restrictive monetary policy than its neighbors is likely to face a currency depreciation that partially frustrates its attempts to disinflate.

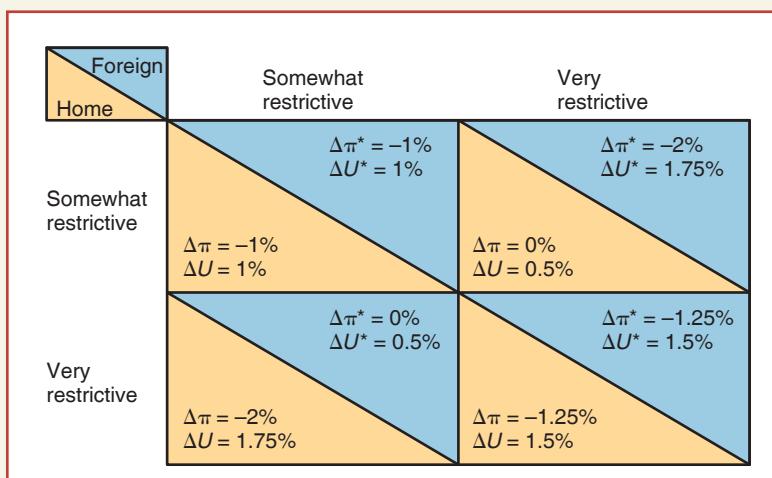
Many observers feel that in their individual attempts to resist currency depreciation, the industrial countries as a group adopted overly tight monetary policies that deepened the recession. All governments would have been happier if everyone had adopted looser monetary policies, but given the policies that other governments did adopt, it was not in the interest of any individual government to change course.

The argument above can be made more precise with a simple model. There are two countries, Home and Foreign, and each country has two policy options, a very restrictive monetary policy and a somewhat restrictive monetary policy. Figure 19A-1, which is similar to a diagram we used to analyze trade policies, shows the results in Home

**FIGURE 19A-1**

### Hypothetical Effects of Different Monetary Policy Combinations on Inflation and Unemployment

Monetary policy choices in one country affect the outcomes of monetary policy choices made abroad.



and Foreign of different policy choices by the two countries. Each row corresponds to a particular monetary policy decision by Home and each column to a decision by Foreign. The boxes contain entries giving changes in Home and Foreign annual inflation rates ( $\Delta\pi$  and  $\Delta\pi^*$ ) and unemployment rates ( $\Delta U$  and  $\Delta U^*$ ). Within each box, lower left entries are Home outcomes and upper right entries are Foreign outcomes.

The hypothetical entries in Figure 19A-1 can be understood in terms of this chapter's two-country model. Under somewhat restrictive policies, for example, inflation rates fall by 1 percent and unemployment rates rise by 1 percent in both countries. If Home suddenly shifts to a very restrictive policy while Foreign stands pat, Home's currency appreciates, its inflation drops further, and its unemployment rises. Home's additional monetary contraction, however, has two effects on Foreign. Foreign's unemployment rate falls, but because Home's currency appreciation is a currency depreciation for Foreign, Foreign inflation goes back up to its pre-disinflation level. In Foreign, the deflationary effects of higher unemployment are offset by the inflationary impact of a depreciating currency on import prices and wage demands. Home's sharper monetary crunch therefore has a beggar-thy-neighbor effect on Foreign, which is forced to "import" some inflation from Home.

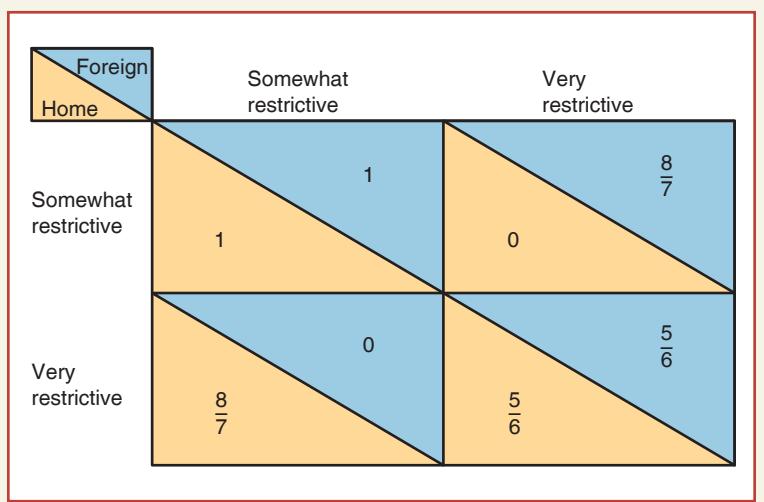
To translate the outcomes in Figure 19A-1 into policy payoffs, we assume each government wishes to get the biggest reduction in inflation at the lowest cost in terms of unemployment. That is, each government wishes to maximize  $-\Delta\pi/\Delta U$ , the inflation reduction per point of increased unemployment. The numbers in Figure 19A-1 lead to the payoff matrix shown as Figure 19A-2.

How do Home and Foreign behave faced with the payoffs in this matrix? Assume each government "goes it alone" and picks the policy that maximizes its own payoff given the other player's policy choice. If Foreign adopts a somewhat restrictive policy, Home does better with a very restrictive policy (payoff =  $\frac{8}{7}$ ) than with a somewhat restrictive one (payoff = 1). If Foreign is very restrictive, Home still does better by being very restrictive (payoff =  $\frac{5}{6}$ ) than by being somewhat restrictive (payoff = 0). So no matter what Foreign does, Home's government will always choose a very restrictive monetary policy.

**FIGURE 19A-2**

### Payoff Matrix for Different Monetary Policy Moves

Each entry equals the reduction in inflation per unit rise in the unemployment rate (calculated as  $-\Delta\pi/\Delta U$ ). If each country "goes it alone," they both choose very restrictive policies. Somewhat restrictive policies, if adopted by both countries, lead to an outcome better for both.



Foreign finds itself in a symmetric position. It, too, is better off with a very restrictive policy regardless of what Home does. The result is that both countries will choose very restrictive monetary policies, and each will get a payoff of  $\frac{5}{6}$ .

Notice, however, that *both* countries are actually better off if they simultaneously adopt the somewhat restrictive policies. The resulting payoff for each is 1, which is greater than  $\frac{5}{6}$ . Under this last policy configuration, inflation falls less in the two countries, but the rise in unemployment is far less than under very restrictive policies.

Since both countries are better off with somewhat restrictive policies, why aren't these adopted? The answer is at the root of the problem of policy coordination. Our analysis assumed that each country "goes it alone" by maximizing its own payoff. Under this assumption, a situation where both countries were somewhat restrictive would not be stable: Each country would want to reduce its monetary growth further and use its exchange rate to hasten disinflation at its neighbor's expense.

For the superior outcome in the upper left corner of the matrix to occur, Home and Foreign must reach an explicit agreement; that is, they must *coordinate* their policy choices. Both countries must agree to forgo the beggar-thy-neighbor gains offered by very restrictive policies, and each country must abide by this agreement in spite of the incentive to cheat. If Home and Foreign can cooperate, both end up with a preferred mix of inflation and unemployment.

The reality of policy coordination is more complex than in this simple example because the choices and outcomes are more numerous and more uncertain. These added complexities make policy makers less willing to commit themselves to cooperative agreements and less certain that their counterparts abroad will live up to the agreed terms.



## FINANCIAL GLOBALIZATION: OPPORTUNITY AND CRISIS

If a financier named Rip van Winkle had gone to sleep in the 1960s and awakened today, he would have been shocked by changes in both the nature and the scale of international financial activity. In the early 1960s, for example, most banking business was purely domestic, involving the currency and customers of the bank's home country. Five decades later, many banks were deriving a large share of their profits from international activities. To his surprise, Rip would have found that he could locate branches of Citibank in São Paulo, Brazil, and branches of Britain's Barclays Bank in New York. He would also have discovered that it had long since become routine for a branch of an American bank located in London to accept a deposit denominated in Japanese yen from a Swedish corporation or to lend Swiss francs to a Dutch manufacturer. Finally, he would have noticed much greater participation by nonbank financial institutions in international markets and a huge expansion in the sheer volume of global transactions.

The market in which residents of different countries trade assets is called the **international capital market**. The international capital market is not really a single market; it is instead a group of closely interconnected markets in which asset exchanges with some international dimension take place. International currency trades take place in the foreign exchange market, which is an important part of the international capital market. The main actors in the international capital market are the same as those in the foreign exchange market (Chapter 14): commercial banks, large corporations, nonbank financial institutions, central banks, and other government agencies. And, like the foreign exchange market, the international capital market's activities take place in a network of world financial centers linked by sophisticated communications systems. The assets traded in the international capital market, however, include different countries' stocks and bonds in addition to bank deposits denominated in their currencies.

This chapter discusses four main questions about the international capital market. First, how can this well-oiled global financial network enhance countries' gains from international trade? Second, what has caused the rapid growth in international financial activity since the early 1960s? Third, what dangers are posed by

an integrated world capital market straddling national borders? And fourth, how can policy makers minimize problems raised by the global capital market without sharply reducing the benefits it provides?

## LEARNING GOALS

After reading this chapter, you will be able to:

- Understand the economic function of international portfolio diversification.
- Explain factors leading to the explosive recent growth of international financial markets.
- Analyze problems in the regulation and supervision of international banks and nonbank financial institutions.
- Describe some different methods that have been used to measure the degree of international financial integration.
- Understand the factors leading to the worldwide financial crisis that started in 2007.
- Evaluate the performance of the international capital market in linking the economies of the industrial countries.

# The International Capital Market and the Gains from Trade

In earlier chapters, the discussion of gains from international trade concentrated on exchanges involving goods and services. By providing a worldwide payments system that lowers transaction costs, banks active in the international capital market enlarge the trade gains that result from such exchanges. Furthermore, the international capital market brings borrowers and lenders in different countries together in order to finance the global pattern of current account imbalances. But most deals that take place in the international capital market are exchanges of assets between residents of different countries, for example, the exchange of a share of IBM stock for some British government bonds. Although such asset trades are sometimes derided as unproductive “speculation,” they do, in fact, lead to gains from trade that can make consumers everywhere better off.

### Three Types of Gain from Trade

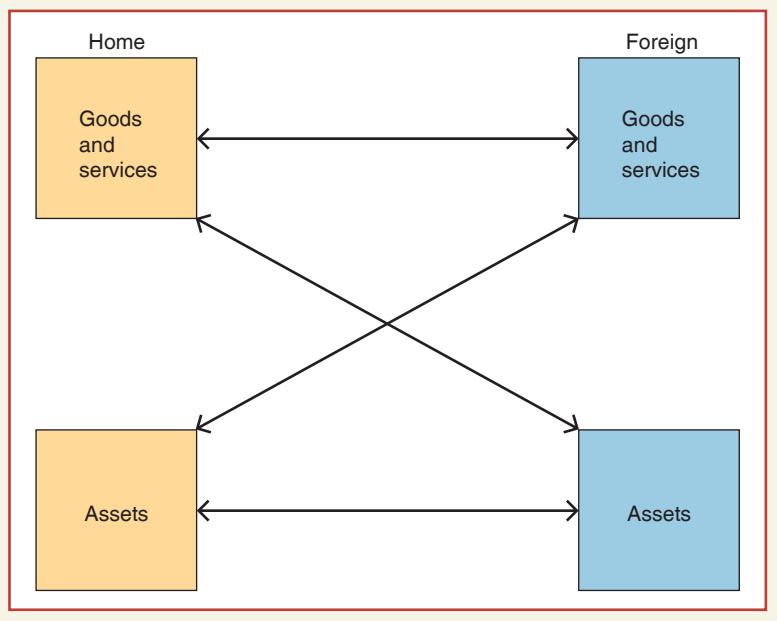
All transactions between the residents of different countries fall into one of three categories: trades of goods or services for goods or services, trades of goods or services for assets, and trades of assets for assets. At any moment, a country is generally carrying out trades in each of these categories. Figure 20-1 (which assumes that there are two countries, Home and Foreign) illustrates the three types of international transaction, each of which involves a different set of possible gains from trade.

So far in this book we have discussed two types of trade gain. Chapters 3 through 8 showed that countries can gain by concentrating on the production activities in which they are most efficient and by using some of their output to pay for imports of other products from abroad. This type of trade gain involves the exchange of goods or services for other goods or services. The top horizontal arrow in Figure 20-1 shows exchanges of goods and services between Home and Foreign.

**FIGURE 20-1**

### The Three Types of International Transaction

Residents of different countries can trade goods and services for other goods and services, goods and services for assets (that is, for future goods and services), and assets for other assets. All three types of exchange lead to gains from trade.



A second set of trade gains results from *intertemporal* trade, which is the exchange of goods and services for claims to future goods and services, that is, for assets (Chapters 6 and 19). When a developing country borrows abroad (that is, sells a bond to foreigners) so that it can import materials for a domestic investment project, it is engaging in intertemporal trade—trade that would not be possible without an international capital market. The diagonal arrows in Figure 20-1 indicate trades of goods and services for assets. If Home has a current account deficit with Foreign, for example, it is a net exporter of assets to Foreign and a net importer of goods and services from Foreign.

The bottom horizontal arrow in Figure 20-1 represents the last category of international transaction, trades of assets for assets, such as the exchange of real estate located in France for U.S. Treasury bonds. Looking at Table 13-2 (in Chapter 13's section on “The Balance of Payments Accounts”), you will see in the 2019 U.S. balance of payments financial account both a \$440.75 billion net purchase of foreign assets by U.S. residents and a \$797.96 billion net purchase of U.S. assets by foreign residents. (These numbers do not include derivatives; the BEA reports only *net* trade in derivatives.) So while the United States could have financed its current account deficit simply by selling assets to foreigners and not buying any from them, U.S. and foreign residents also engaged in pure asset swapping.<sup>1</sup> Such a large volume of trade in assets between countries occurs in part because international asset trades, like trades involving goods and services, can yield benefits to all the countries involved.

<sup>1</sup>Total gross asset transactions are much greater than even these *net* purchases indicate. Net U.S. purchases of foreign assets are gross U.S. purchases less gross U.S. sales of foreign assets, whereas net foreign purchases of U.S. assets similarly are gross foreign purchases less gross foreign sales. Therefore, the gross value of U.S. balance of payments debits from asset transactions with foreigners would be U.S. residents' gross purchases of foreign assets plus foreign residents' gross sales of their U.S. assets (which U.S. residents necessarily acquire, generating balance of payments debits).

While the preceding distinctions may appear clear-cut in theory, be aware that in the real world, different types of trade may occur together because they are complementary. For example, importers may need to buy foreign goods on the basis of credit from sellers and repay after they have sold the goods to domestic consumers. In this case, the importers' ability to obtain goods today in return for a promise to repay soon after—a form of intertemporal trade—is vital to promoting international exchange of goods and services. As a second example, exporters may need to hedge future foreign exchange receipts in forward exchange markets. In this case, a trade of assets for assets—future foreign currency against future domestic currency—lowers exporters' costs of carrying out goods and services exchanges.

### Risk Aversion

When individuals select assets, an important factor in their decisions is the riskiness of each asset's return (Chapter 14). Other things equal, people dislike risk. Economists call this property of people's preferences **risk aversion**. Chapter 18 showed that risk-averse investors in foreign currency assets base their demand for a particular asset on its riskiness (as measured by a risk premium) in addition to its expected return.

An example will make the meaning of risk aversion clearer. Suppose you are offered a gamble in which you win \$1,000 half the time but lose \$1,000 half the time. Since you are as likely to win as to lose the \$1,000, the average payoff on this gamble—its *expected value*—is  $(\frac{1}{2}) \times (\$1,000) + (\frac{1}{2}) \times (-\$1,000) = 0$ . If you are risk averse, you will not take the gamble because, for you, the possibility of losing \$1,000 outweighs the possibility that you will win, even though both outcomes are equally likely. Although some people (called *risk lovers*) enjoy taking risks and would take the gamble, there is much evidence that risk-averse behavior is the norm. For example, risk aversion helps explain the profitability of insurance companies, which sell policies that allow people to protect themselves or their families from the financial risks of theft, illness, and other mishaps.

If people are risk averse, they value a collection (or portfolio) of assets not only on the basis of its expected return but also on the basis of the riskiness of that return. Under risk aversion, for example, people may be willing to hold bonds denominated in several different currencies, even if the interest rates they offer are not linked by the interest parity condition, if the resulting portfolio of assets offers a desirable combination of return and risk. In general, a portfolio whose return fluctuates wildly from year to year is less desirable than one that offers the same average return with only mild year-to-year fluctuations. This observation is basic to understanding why countries exchange assets.

### Portfolio Diversification as a Motive for International Asset Trade

International trade in assets can make both parties to the trade better off by allowing them to reduce the riskiness of the return on their wealth. Trade accomplishes this reduction in risk by allowing both parties to diversify their portfolios—to divide their wealth among a wide spectrum of assets and thus reduce the amount of money they have riding on each individual asset. The late economist James Tobin of Yale University, an originator of the theory of portfolio choice with risk aversion, once described the idea of **portfolio diversification** as “Don’t put all your eggs in one basket.” When an economy is opened to the international capital market, it can reduce the riskiness of its wealth by placing some of its “eggs” in additional foreign “baskets.” This reduction in risk is the basic motive for asset trade.

A simple two-country example illustrates how countries are made better off by trade in assets. Imagine there are two countries, Home and Foreign, and residents of each own only one asset, domestic land yielding an annual harvest of kiwifruit.

The yield of the land is uncertain, however. Half of the time, Home's land yields a harvest of 100 tons of kiwifruit at the same time as Foreign's land yields a harvest of 50 tons. The other half of the time, the outcomes are reversed: The Foreign harvest is 100 tons, but the Home harvest is only 50. On average, then, each country has a harvest of  $(\frac{1}{2}) \times (100) + (\frac{1}{2}) \times (50) = 75$  tons of kiwifruit, but its inhabitants never know whether the next year will bring feast or famine.

Now suppose the two countries can trade shares in the ownership of their respective assets. A Home owner of a 10 percent share in Foreign land, for example, receives 10 percent of the annual Foreign kiwifruit harvest, and a Foreign owner of a 10 percent share in Home land is similarly entitled to 10 percent of the Home harvest. What happens if there is international trade in these two assets? Home residents will buy a 50 percent share of Foreign land, and they will pay for it by giving Foreign residents a 50 percent share in Home land.

To understand why this is the outcome, think about the returns to the Home and Foreign portfolios when both are equally divided between titles to Home and Foreign land. When times are good in Home (and therefore bad in Foreign), each country earns the same return on its portfolio: half of the Home harvest (100 tons of kiwifruit) plus half of the Foreign harvest (50 tons of kiwifruit), or 75 tons of fruit. In the opposite case—bad times in Home, good times in Foreign—each country *still* earns 75 tons of fruit. If the countries hold portfolios equally divided between the two assets, therefore, each country earns a *certain* return of 75 tons of fruit—the same as the average or expected harvest each faced before international asset trade was possible.

Since the two available assets—Home and Foreign land—have the same return on average, any portfolio consisting of those assets yields an expected (or average) return of 75 tons of fruit. People everywhere are risk averse, however, so all prefer to hold the fifty-fifty portfolio, which gives a sure return of 75 tons of fruit every year. After trade opens, therefore, residents of the two countries will swap titles to land until they reach the fifty-fifty outcome. Because this trade eliminates the risk faced by both countries without changing average returns, both countries are clearly better off owing to asset trade.

Our example oversimplifies because countries can never really eliminate *all* risk through international asset trade. (Unlike the model's world, the real world is a risky place even in the aggregate!) The example does demonstrate that countries can nonetheless *reduce* the riskiness of their wealth by diversifying their asset portfolios internationally. A major function of the international capital market is to make this diversification possible.<sup>2</sup>

### **The Menu of International Assets: Debt versus Equity**

International asset trades can be exchanges of many different types of assets. Among the many assets traded in the international capital market are bonds and deposits denominated in different currencies, shares of stock, and more complicated financial instruments such as stock or currency options. A purchase of foreign real estate and the direct acquisition of a factory in another country are other ways of diversifying abroad.

---

<sup>2</sup>The Mathematical Postscript to this chapter develops a detailed model of international portfolio diversification. You may have noticed that in our example, countries could reduce risk through transactions other than the asset swap we have described. The high-output country could run a current account surplus and lend to the low-output country, for example, thereby partially evening out the cross-country consumption difference in every state of the world economy. The economic functions of intertemporal trades and of pure asset swaps thus can overlap. To some extent, trade over time can substitute for trade across states of nature, and vice versa, simply because different economic states of the world occur at different points in time. In general, however, the two types of trade are not perfect substitutes for each other.

In thinking about asset trades, it is frequently useful to make a distinction between **debt instruments** and **equity instruments**. Bonds and bank deposits are debt instruments, since they specify that the issuer of the instrument must repay a fixed value (the sum of principal plus interest) regardless of economic circumstances. In contrast, a share of stock is an equity instrument: It is a claim to a firm's profits, rather than to a fixed payment, and its payoff will vary according to circumstances. Similarly, the kiwifruit shares traded in our example are equity instruments. By choosing how to divide their portfolios between debt and equity instruments, individuals and nations can arrange to stay close to desired consumption and investment levels despite the different eventualities that could occur.

The dividing line between debt and equity is not a neat one in practice. Even if an instrument's money payout is the same in different states of the world, its *real* payout in a particular state will depend on national price levels and exchange rates. In addition, the payments that a given instrument promises to make may not occur in cases of bankruptcy, government seizure of foreign-owned assets, and so on. Assets like low-grade corporate bonds, which superficially appear to be debt, may in reality be like equity in offering payoffs that depend on the doubtful financial fortunes of the issuer. The same has turned out to be true of the debt of many developing countries, as we will see in Chapter 22.

## International Banking and the International Capital Market

The earlier Home–Foreign kiwifruit example portrayed an imaginary world with only two assets. Since the number of assets available in the real world is enormous, specialized institutions have sprung up to bring together buyers and sellers of assets located in different countries.

### The Structure of the International Capital Market

As we have noted, the main actors in the international capital market include commercial banks, corporations, nonbank financial institutions (such as insurance companies, money market funds, hedge funds, and pension funds), central banks, and other government agencies.

1. *Commercial banks.* Commercial banks are at the center of the international capital market, not only because they run the international payments mechanism but also because of the broad range of financial activities they undertake. Bank liabilities consist chiefly of deposits of various maturities, as well as debt and short-term borrowing from other financial institutions, while their assets consist largely of loans (to corporations and governments), deposits at other banks (interbank deposits), and various securities including bonds. Multinational banks are also heavily involved in other types of asset transaction. For example, banks may *underwrite* issues of corporate stocks and bonds by agreeing, for a fee, to find buyers for those securities at a guaranteed price. One of the key facts about international banking is that banks are often free to pursue activities abroad that they could not legally pursue in their home countries. This type of regulatory asymmetry has spurred the growth of international banking over the past 50 years.
2. *Corporations.* Corporations—particularly those with multinational operations such as Coca-Cola, IBM, Toyota, and Nike—routinely finance their investments by drawing on foreign sources of funds. To obtain these funds, corporations may sell shares of stock, which give owners an equity claim to the corporation's assets,

or they may use debt finance. Debt finance often takes the form of borrowing from and through international banks or other institutional lenders; firms also sell short-term commercial paper and corporate debt instruments in the international capital market. Corporations frequently denominate their bonds in the currency of the financial center in which the bonds are for sale. Increasingly, however, corporations have been pursuing novel denomination strategies that make their bonds attractive to a wider spectrum of potential buyers.

3. *Nonbank financial institutions.* Nonbank institutions such as insurance companies, pension funds, mutual funds, and hedge funds have become important players in the international capital market as they have moved into foreign assets to diversify their portfolios. Of particular importance are *investment banks*, which are not banks at all but specialize in underwriting sales of stocks and bonds by corporations and (in some cases) governments, providing advice on mergers and acquisitions, and facilitating transactions for clients, among other functions. Investment banks may be freestanding but in most cases belong to large financial conglomerates that also include commercial banks. Prominent examples include Goldman Sachs, Deutsche Bank, Citigroup, and Barclays Capital.
4. *Central banks and other government agencies.* Central banks are routinely involved in the international financial markets through foreign exchange intervention. In addition, other government agencies frequently borrow abroad. Developing-country governments and state-owned enterprises have borrowed substantially from foreign commercial banks, and regularly sell bonds abroad.

On any measure, the scale of transactions in the international capital market has grown much more quickly than world GDP since the early 1970s. One major factor in this development is that, starting with the industrial world, countries have progressively dismantled barriers to private capital flows across their borders.

An important reason for that development relates to exchange rate systems. According to the monetary trilemma of Chapter 19, the widespread adoption of flexible exchange rates since the early 1970s has allowed countries to reconcile open capital markets with domestic monetary autonomy. The individual member countries of the European economic and monetary union (Chapter 21) have followed a different route with respect to their mutual exchange rates. However, the euro floats against foreign currencies and the euro zone as a unit orients its monetary policy toward internal macroeconomic goals while permitting freedom of cross-border payments.

## Offshore Banking and Offshore Currency Trading

One of the most pervasive features of today's commercial banking industry is that banking activities have become globalized as banks have branched out from their home countries into foreign financial centers. In 1960, only eight American banks had branches in foreign countries, but now hundreds have such branches. Similarly, the number of foreign bank offices in the United States has risen steadily. In Europe, Switzerland has been an attractive host country for foreign banks since World War II. In 1960, 48 foreign banks were active in Switzerland, and this number has surpassed 100 around the year 1980. In contrast, Swiss banks had only 12 branches in foreign countries in the year 1960, though this number has been steadily increasing since then as well.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>3</sup>Thibaud Giddey, "The Regulation of Foreign Banks in Switzerland," 1956–1972; and Melanie Aspey, Peter Hertner, Krzysztof Kaczmar, Jakub Skiba, Dieter Stiefel, Nuno Valério (eds.), "Studies in Banking and Financial History: Foreign Financial Institutions and National Financial Systems," Frankfurt: The European Association for Banking and Financial History (EABH) e.V., 2013, pp. 449–485.

We use the term **offshore banking** to describe the business that banks' foreign offices conduct outside their home countries. Banks may conduct foreign business through any of three types of institutions:

1. An *agency* office located abroad, which arranges loans and transfers funds but does not accept deposits.
2. A *subsidiary* bank located abroad. A subsidiary of a foreign bank differs from a local bank only in that a foreign bank is the controlling owner. Subsidiaries are subject to the same regulations as local banks but are not subject to the regulations of the parent bank's country.
3. A *foreign branch*, which is simply an office of the home bank in another country. Branches carry out the same business as local banks and are usually subject to local *and* home banking regulations. Often, however, branches can take advantage of cross-border regulatory differences.

The growth of **offshore currency trading** has gone hand in hand with that of offshore banking. An offshore deposit is simply a bank deposit denominated in a currency other than that of the country in which the bank resides—for example, yen deposits in a London bank or dollar deposits in Zurich. Many of the deposits traded in the foreign exchange market are offshore deposits. Offshore currency deposits are usually referred to as **Eurocurrencies**, which is something of a misnomer since much Eurocurrency trading occurs in such non-European centers as Singapore and Hong Kong. We call dollar deposits located outside the United States **Eurodollars**. Banks that accept deposits denominated in Eurocurrencies (including Eurodollars) are known as **Eurobanks**. The advent of the new European currency, the euro, has made this terminology even more confusing!

One motivation for the rapid growth of offshore banking and currency trading has been the growth of international trade and the increasingly multinational nature of corporate activity. American firms engaged in international trade, for example, require overseas financial services, and American banks have naturally expanded their domestic business with these firms into foreign areas. By offering more rapid clearing of payments and the flexibility and trust established in previous dealings, American banks compete with the foreign banks that could also serve American customers. Eurocurrency trading is another natural outgrowth of expanding world trade in goods and services. British importers of American goods frequently need to hold dollar deposits, for example, and it is natural for banks based in London to woo these importers' business.

World trade growth alone, however, cannot explain the growth of international banking since the 1960s. Another factor is the banks' desire to escape domestic government regulations on financial activity (and sometimes taxes) by shifting some of their operations abroad and into foreign currencies. A further factor is in part political: the desire by some depositors to hold currencies outside the jurisdictions of the countries that issue them. In recent years, the tendency for countries to open their financial markets to foreigners has allowed international banks to compete globally for new business.

Another factor behind the profitability of Eurocurrency trading has been regulatory: In formulating bank regulations, governments in the main Eurocurrency centers have discriminated between deposits denominated in the home currency and those denominated in others, between transactions with domestic customers and those with foreign customers, and between activities of foreign-owned and domestic banks. Domestic currency deposits, for example, often were more heavily regulated as a way of maintaining control over the domestic money supply, while banks were given more freedom in their dealings in foreign currencies.

Regulatory asymmetries explain why those financial centers whose governments historically imposed the fewest restrictions on foreign currency banking became the main Eurocurrency centers. London is the leader in this respect, but it has been followed by

Luxembourg, Bahrain, Hong Kong, and other countries that have competed for international banking business by lowering restrictions and taxes on foreign bank operations within their borders.

### The Shadow Banking System

In recent decades, a major regulatory asymmetry has arisen between banks and what is often referred to as the **shadow banking system**. Nowadays, numerous financial institutions provide payment and credit services similar to those that banks provide. U.S. money market mutual funds, for example, provide check-writing services to customers and also are major players in providing credit to firms (through commercial paper markets) and in lending dollars to banks outside the United States. Investment banks also have provided credit to other entities while offering payment services. The shadow banking system even has included investment conduits sponsored by banks but supposedly independent of the banks' own balance sheets. However, shadow banks have usually been minimally regulated compared to banks.

Why has this been the case? Historically, monetary policy makers have viewed banks as the prime focus of concern because of their centrality to the payments system, to the flow of credit to firms and household borrowers, and to the implementation of monetary policy. But the shadow banking system has grown dramatically and taken up many of the same functions as traditional banking. Total shadow banking sector assets are difficult to measure precisely, but in the United States today, they are probably comparable to the assets of the traditional banking sector.

Moreover, shadow banks are closely intertwined with banks as both creditors and borrowers. As a result, the stability of the shadow banking network cannot easily be divorced from that of the banks: If a shadow bank gets into trouble, so may the banks that have loaned it money. This became painfully clear during the 2007–2009 global financial crisis, as we shall see later in this chapter. We now turn to a discussion of banking regulation, but readers should be aware that banks are only one category of player in the international financial markets and that banks' fortunes are likely to depend on those of other players. Most of what we will say regarding "banks" also applies to shadow banks.

## Banking and Financial Fragility

Many observers believe that the freewheeling nature of global banking activity up until now left the world financial system vulnerable to bank failure on a massive scale. The financial crisis of 2007–2009, which we will soon discuss, supports that belief. To understand what went wrong with financial globalization, we need first to review the inherent fragility of banking activity, even when undertaken in a hypothetical closed economy, and the safeguards national governments have put in place to prevent bank failures.

### The Problem of Bank Failure

A bank fails when it is unable to meet its obligations to its depositors and other creditors. Banks use borrowed funds to make loans and to purchase other assets, but some of a bank's borrowers may find themselves unable to repay their loans, or the bank's assets may decline in value for some other reason. When this happens, the bank might be unable to repay its short-term liabilities, including demand deposits, which are largely repayable immediately, without notice.

A peculiar feature of banking is that a bank's financial health depends on depositors' (and other creditors') confidence in the value of its assets. If depositors, for example, come to believe that many of the bank's assets have declined in value, each has an incentive to withdraw his or her funds and place them in a different bank. A bank faced

with a large and sudden loss of deposits—a bank run—is likely to close its doors, even if the asset side of its balance sheet is fundamentally sound. The reason is that many bank assets are illiquid and cannot be sold quickly to meet deposit obligations without substantial loss to the bank. If an atmosphere of financial panic develops, therefore, bank failure may not be limited to banks that have mismanaged their assets. It is in the interest of each depositor to withdraw his or her money from a bank if all other depositors are doing the same, even when the bank’s assets, if only they could be held until maturity, would suffice to repay fully the bank’s liabilities.

Unfortunately, once a single bank gets into trouble, suspicion may fall on other banks that have lent it money: If they lose enough on the loans, they may be unable to meet their own obligations. When banks are highly interconnected through mutual loans and derivative contracts, bank runs therefore can be highly contagious. Unless policy makers can quickly quarantine the panic, the domino effects of a single bank’s troubles can result in a generalized, or *systemic*, banking crisis.

It is easiest to understand a bank’s vulnerability by looking at its balance sheet. The stylized balance sheet below shows the relationship between the bank’s assets, its liabilities, and their difference, the bank’s *capital* (its non-borrowed resources, supplied by the bank’s owners, who hold the bank’s stock):

Bank Balance Sheet			
Assets		Liabilities	
Loans	\$1,950	Demand deposits	\$1,000
Marketable securities	\$1,950	Time deposits and long debt	\$1,400
Reserves at central bank	\$ 75	Short-term wholesale liabilities	\$1,400
Cash on hand	\$ 25	Capital	\$ 200

In this example, the bank’s total assets (listed on the Assets side of its balance sheet) are \$4,000. They consist of a small amount of cash (\$25) and reserves (\$75, the latter being deposits at the home central bank), as well as potentially less liquid loans to businesses and households (\$1,950) and other securities (such as government or corporate bonds, totaling \$1,950). Cash in the bank’s vaults obviously can be used any time to meet depositors’ withdrawals, as can its central bank deposits, but loans (for example, mortgage loans) cannot be called in at will, and thus are usually highly illiquid. Marketable securities, in contrast, can be sold off, but if market conditions happen to be unfavorable, the bank might have to sell at a loss if forced to do so on short notice. In a financial panic, for example, other banks might simultaneously be trying to unload similar securities, driving down their market prices.

The bank makes its profits by accepting the risk that its assets may fall in value, while at the same time promising depositors and other short-term creditors that they can get their money back whenever they want it. The Liabilities side of its balance sheet reflects the bank’s provision of liquidity to its creditors. Banks’ time deposits and long-term debt (\$1,400) are sources of funding that *cannot* flee at the whim of the lenders, and the bank accordingly pays a higher rate of interest on these liabilities than on its two sources of short-term funding, (retail) demand deposits (\$1,000) and short-term wholesale liabilities (\$1,400). The latter might take various forms, including overnight loans from other banks (including the central bank) or a collateralized *repurchase agreement* (known as “repo”), in which the bank pledges an asset to the lender for cash, promising to buy the asset back later (often the next day) at a slightly higher price. If all wholesale lenders refuse to renew their short-term loans to the bank, however, it will have to scramble for cash by trying to sell off assets, just as in the case of a retail depositor bank run. In general, banks’ balance sheets are characterized by

*maturity mismatch*—they have more liabilities payable on short notice than they hold of such assets—and this is what makes them vulnerable to runs.

**Bank capital** (here, \$200) is the difference between assets and liabilities and is the amount the bank could lose on its assets before it becomes *insolvent*, that is, unable to pay off its debts by selling its assets. Without the buffer of bank capital, the bank would have no margin for error and creditors would never believe in the bank's ability always to repay. In that case, the bank could not conduct its business of exploiting the interest difference or "carry" between its liquid liabilities and less liquid assets. Because a bank depends on the confidence of its creditors, even the suspicion that it could be insolvent may lead creditors to demand instant repayment, forcing it to liquidate assets at a loss and making it insolvent in fact. This scenario is most likely in the case of a *systemic* financial crisis, in which the prices of marketable assets that the bank normally could sell easily are depressed due to distress selling by numerous financial institutions.<sup>4</sup>

The lower a bank's capital, the higher the chance that it becomes insolvent due to losses in asset values, whether these are due to external events in the economy or due to a run by its creditors. It may therefore surprise you that large, globally active banks have tended to operate in the past with fairly slim margins of capital. In our example, which is not unrealistic, the ratio of capital to total bank assets is only  $\$200/\$4,000 = 5$  percent, implying that the bank can tolerate at most a 5 percent loss on assets before it fails. Many large global banks have operated with even lower capital levels! Although banks usually avoid big positions in highly risky assets such as stock shares, and they also avoid unhedged or "open" positions in foreign currencies, numerous banks throughout the world still got into trouble during the global financial crisis of 2007–2009. Because of that experience, international policy makers are attempting to ensure that banks throughout the world maintain higher capital levels, as we explain later in this chapter.

Bank failures obviously inflict serious financial harm on individual depositors who lose their money. But beyond these individual losses, bank failure can harm the economy's macroeconomic stability. One bank's problems may easily spread to sounder banks if people suspect them of having lent to the bank that is in trouble. Such a general loss of confidence in banks undermines the credit and payments system on which the economy runs. A rash of bank failures can bring a drastic reduction in the banking system's ability to finance investment, consumer-durable expenditure, and home purchases, thus reducing aggregate demand and throwing the economy into a slump. There is strong evidence that the string of U.S. bank closings in the early 1930s helped start and worsen the Great Depression, and financial panic certainly worsened the severe worldwide recession that began in 2007.<sup>5</sup>

---

<sup>4</sup>Central banks also have capital positions, although we did not emphasize this fact in Chapter 18. Central bank assets normally exceed liabilities, and the resulting profits are used to cover the bank's expenses—for example, staff salaries and the operating cost of the central bank's physical plant. Any profits in excess of those expenses are usually turned over to the national treasury. Generally, shares in the central bank's capital are not publicly traded (they are owned by the government), although historically this was not always the case. (To take one notable case, the Bank of England was privately owned from its founding in 1694 until 1946.) If a central bank makes big enough losses—on foreign exchange intervention, for example—this might reduce its capital enough that the central bank has to request funding from the government. Central banks prefer not to be in this position because the government might attach conditions that reduce the central bank's independence.

<sup>5</sup>For an evaluation of the 1930s, see Ben S. Bernanke, "Nonmonetary Effects of the Financial Crisis in the Propagation of the Great Depression," chapter 2 in his *Essays on the Great Depression* (Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2000). Banking crises may also lead to balance-of-payments crises. The macroeconomic policies needed to counteract the banking system's collapse can make it harder to maintain a fixed exchange rate (as illustrated by the euro area crisis that we discuss later in this book). A classic study is Graciela L. Kaminsky and Carmen M. Reinhart, "The Twin Crises: The Causes of Banking and Balance-of-Payments Problems," *American Economic Review* 89 (June 1999), pp. 473–500.

## Government Safeguards against Financial Instability

Because the potential consequences of a banking collapse are so harmful, governments attempt to prevent bank failures through extensive regulation of their domestic banking systems. Well-managed banks themselves take precautions against failure even in the absence of regulation, but the costs of failure extend far beyond the bank's owners. Thus, some banks, taking into account their own self-interest but ignoring the costs of bank failure for society, might be led to shoulder a level of risk greater than what is socially optimal. In addition, even banks with cautious investment strategies may fail if rumors of financial trouble begin circulating. Many of the precautionary bank regulation measures taken by governments today are a direct result of their countries' experiences during the Great Depression.

In most countries, an extensive “safety net” has been set up to reduce the risk of bank failure. The main safeguards are:

1. *Deposit insurance.* One legacy of the Great Depression of the 1930s is deposit insurance. In the United States, the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC) insures bank depositors against losses of up to a current limit of \$250,000. Banks are required to contribute to the FDIC to cover the cost of this insurance. FDIC insurance discourages runs on banks by small depositors who know that their losses will be covered by the government: They no longer have an incentive to withdraw their money just because others are doing so. Since 1989, the FDIC has also provided insurance for deposits with savings and loan (S&L) associations.<sup>6</sup> The absence of government insurance is one reason policy makers sometimes give for the comparatively light regulation of banks’ offshore operations as well as of the shadow banking system. Also, in European countries, deposit insurance schemes were installed since the 1930s, albeit on a lower scale than in the U.S. Different national schemes existed in parallel until 1994, when the member countries of the European Community defined the common minimum requirement of guaranteeing at least 90 percent of the deposited amount, up to at least €20,000 per person. By the end of 2010, this common minimum requirement increased to €100,000, which is guaranteed for 100 percent in all countries.<sup>7</sup>
2. *Reserve requirements.* Reserve requirements are one possible tool of monetary policy, influencing the relation between the monetary base and monetary aggregates. At the same time, reserve requirements force the bank to hold a portion of its assets in a liquid form that is easy to mobilize to meet sudden deposit outflows. In the United States, banks tend to hold reserves in excess of required reserves, so reserve requirements are not important. In our preceding balance-sheet example, the bank’s total liquid reserves (including cash) are \$100, only 2.5 percent of its total assets. The reserve requirement for banks in the euro zone was 2 percent between 1999 and 2012, after which it got reduced to 1 percent. Like in the U.S., banks tended to hold excess reserves during and after the 2007–2009 crisis.<sup>8</sup>
3. *Capital requirements and asset restrictions.* U.S. and foreign bank regulators set minimum required levels of bank capital to reduce the system’s vulnerability to

<sup>6</sup>Holders of deposits over \$250,000 still have an incentive to run if they suspect trouble, of course, as do uninsured (and uncollateralized) bank creditors other than depositors, including other banks.

<sup>7</sup>“Directive 94/19/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 30 May 1994 on deposit-guarantee schemes,” <http://eur-lex.europa.eu/eli/dir/1994/19/oj>; and “Directive 2009/14/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 11 March 2009 amending Directive 94/19/EC on deposit-guarantee schemes as regards the coverage level and the payout delay,” <http://data.europa.eu/eli/dir/2009/14/oj>.

<sup>8</sup>European Central Bank, “How to calculate the minimum reserve requirements,” <https://www.ecb.europa.eu>; and “Recent developments in excess liquidity and money market rates” *European Central Bank Monthly Bulletin*, no. 1, January 2014, pp. 69–82.

failure. Other rules prevent banks from holding assets that are “too risky,” such as common stocks, whose prices tend to be volatile. Banks must also deal with rules against lending too large a fraction of their assets to a single private customer or to a single foreign government borrower. On the global level, a framework for voluntary capital requirements has been defined by the Basel Committee (discussed later in this chapter). The member states of the EU have already transposed the latest version of this framework, called Basel III, into binding EU law in 2013.<sup>9</sup>

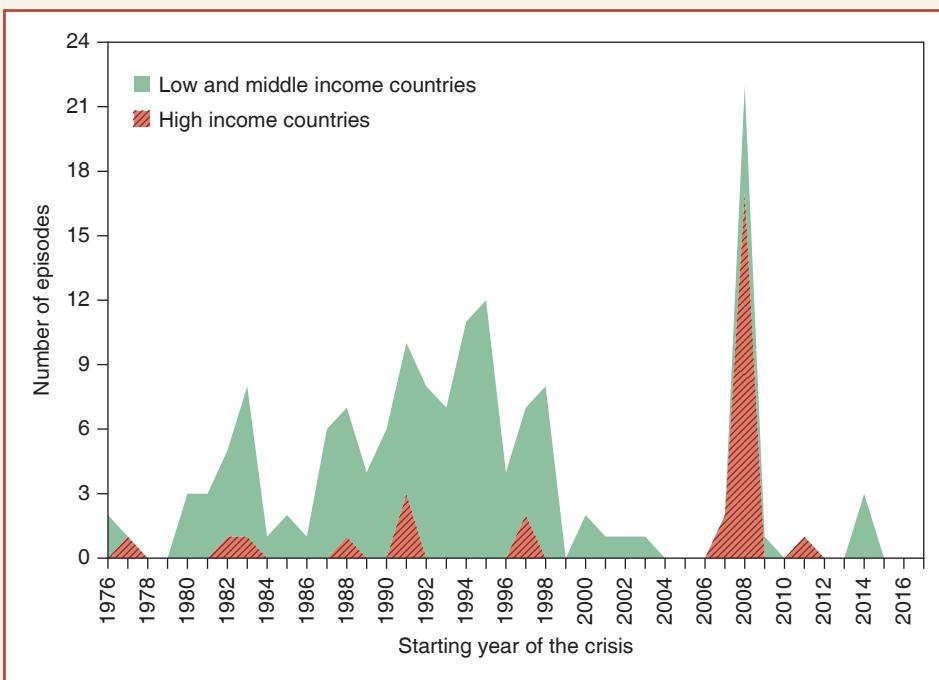
4. *Bank examination.* Government supervisors have the right to examine a bank’s books to ensure compliance with bank capital standards and other regulations. Banks may be forced to sell assets that the examiner deems too risky or to adjust their balance sheets by writing off loans the examiner thinks will not be repaid. In some countries, the central bank is the main bank supervisor, while in others a separate financial supervision authority handles that job. In the EU, the European Banking Authority was established in 2011 as a response to the 2007–2009 crisis. Its EU-wide examinations of large banks are commonly known as “stress tests”, as their aim is to quantify the resilience of banks against various crisis-like scenarios.
5. *Lender of last resort facilities.* Banks can borrow from the central bank’s discount window or from other facilities the central bank may make available (generally after they post assets of comparable or greater value as collateral). While lending to banks is a tool of monetary management, the central bank can also use discounting to prevent or quarantine bank panics. Since a central bank has the ability to create currency, it can lend to banks facing massive deposit outflows as much as they need to satisfy their depositors’ claims. When the central bank acts in this way, it is acting as a **lender of last resort (LLR)** to the bank. Indeed, the United States set up the Federal Reserve in 1913 precisely as a safeguard against financial panic. When depositors know the central bank is standing by as the LLR, they have more confidence in a private bank’s ability to withstand a panic and are therefore less likely to run if financial trouble looms. The administration of LLR facilities is complex, however. If banks think the central bank will *always* bail them out, they will take excessive risks. So the central bank must make access to its LLR services conditional on sound management. To decide when banks in trouble have not brought it on themselves through unwise risk taking, the LLR should ideally be closely involved in the bank examination process. A similar mechanism is in place for the euro zone countries, where national central banks may offer Emergency Liquidity Assistance to illiquid but solvent banks in their countries. During the 2007–2009 crisis, banks in several eurozone members made use of this mechanism, including banks in Belgium, Germany, Greece, Ireland and Cyprus.
6. *Government-organized restructuring and bailouts.* The central bank’s LLR role aims to tide over banks suffering *temporary* liquidity problems due to jittery creditors. Hopefully, the bank will be solvent if the central bank can give it enough time to dispose of assets at favorable prices; and if so, the central bank will not lose money as a result of its intervention. Often, however, creditors are jittery for a good reason and big losses on assets are unavoidable. In this case, the national fiscal authorities, along with taxpayer money, enter the picture. The central bank and fiscal authorities may organize the purchase of a failing bank by healthier institutions, sometimes

---

<sup>9</sup>“Regulation (EU) No 575/2013 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 26 June 2013 on prudential requirements for credit institutions and investment firms and amending Regulation (EU) No 648/2012, <http://data.europa.eu/eli/reg/2013/575/oj>; and “Directive 2013/36/EU of the European Parliament and of the Council of 26 June 2013 on access to the activity of credit institutions and the prudential supervision of credit institutions and investment firms, amending Directive 2002/87/EC and repealing Directives 2006/48/EC and 2006/49/EC Text with EEA relevance,” <http://data.europa.eu/eli/dir/2013/36/oj>.

throwing their own money into the deal as a sweetener. The fiscal authorities may also recapitalize the bank with public monies, in effect making the government a full or part owner of the bank until the bank is back on its feet and the public shares can be sold to private buyers. In these cases, bankruptcy can be avoided thanks to the government's intervention as a crisis manager, but perhaps at public expense. The government may alternatively choose to protect taxpayers by imposing losses—sometimes called *haircuts*—on the claims of unsecured bondholders or uninsured depositors.<sup>10</sup>

How successful have safeguards such as these been? Figure 20-2 shows the frequency of ongoing national banking crises—systemic crises that have affected large portions of countries' banking systems—between 1976 and 2017.<sup>11</sup> Banking crises in the poorer developing and emerging market economies are shown in the solid peaks, while crises in industrial economies including the United States are shown in the hatched peaks. Obviously, such systemic crises have not been rare events! As we will discuss in Chapter 22, through much of recent history poorer countries have regulated their banks much less effectively than richer countries, implying a much greater frequency of financial instability in the developing world. However, that changed in 2007–2009 as many more prosperous economies' banks required extensive government support in order to survive. The 2007–2009 crisis thus revealed serious gaps in the banking safety net, gaps that we will soon analyze.



**FIGURE 20-2**

### Frequency of Systemic Banking Crises by Country Income Level, 1976–2017

Generalized banking crises have been plentiful around the world since the mid-1970s, mainly in poorer countries, but starting in 2008, a substantial number of richer countries were also hit hard.

**Source:** Reproduced from Laeven and Valencia, *op. cit.* Thanks to Luc Laeven for supplying these data.

<sup>10</sup>Unsecured bondholders are creditors who have not demanded collateral for their loans. Those who demand collateral receive a lower interest rate because their loans are less risky.

<sup>11</sup>The crisis chronology is taken from Luc Laeven and Fabián Valencia, "Systemic Banking Crises Database II," *IMF Economic Review* 68 (June 2020), pp. 307–361.

The U.S. commercial bank safety net worked reasonably well until the late 1980s, but as a result of deregulation, the 1990–1991 recession, and a sharp fall in commercial property values, bank closings rose dramatically and the FDIC insurance fund was depleted. Like the United States, other countries that deregulated domestic banking in the 1980s—including Japan, the Scandinavian countries, the United Kingdom, and Switzerland—faced serious problems a decade later. Many overhauled their systems of banking safeguards as a result, but as we shall see, those safeguards were not nearly sufficient to prevent the massive financial crisis of 2007–2009.

### Moral Hazard and the Problem of “Too Big to Fail”

The listed banking safeguards fall into two categories: facilities for emergency financial support to banks or their customers and curbs on unwise risk taking by banks.

It is important to realize that these two types of safeguard are complements, not substitutes. An expectation of LLR support or a government-organized bailout package in case of problems may cause banks to extend excessively risky loans and to provision inadequately for investment losses. Deposit insurance will reassure depositors that they need not monitor the bank management’s decisions; and without the threat of a bank run to discipline them, bank managers will pursue riskier strategies on the margin, including maintaining an inadequate capital cushion and holding insufficient cash.

The possibility that someone who is insured against an accident will take less care to prevent it is called **moral hazard**. Domestic bank supervision and balance-sheet restrictions are necessary to limit the moral hazard resulting from deposit insurance and access to the lender of last resort, which otherwise would lead banks to make excessively risky loans and inadequate provision for their possible failure.

### DOES THE IMF CREATE MORAL HAZARD?

As seen in chapter 19, the IMF was created to ensure the stability of the international monetary system. A crucial responsibility of the IMF is to extend loans to member countries that are experiencing or may experience balance of payments problems.

Over the years, the IMF has customized the kind of loans it provides, based on the actual or potential crisis it is responding to. These include Stand-By Arrangement, Extended Fund Facility, Flexible Credit Line, and Rapid Credit Line. At the end of 2016, around 40 countries had received a loan from one of these categories.

Though IMF loans are a helpful tool in times of crises, they also raise the issue of moral hazard. These loans may be perceived by countries as the assurance of safety nets and lead to risky or unbalanced policies.

What can prevent the IMF from becoming an insurer? First, the IMF has put a conditionality

agreement in place. This means that it intervenes only if the country requesting a loan commits to adopting a relevant recovery program. To create this program, the IMF focuses on the policies on subsidies and public sector among other things. That may be causing economic malfunction. The result is a tough negotiation, which has even led some Latin American governments to protest against the IMF.

Second, like World Bank loans, IMF loans are never included in any rescheduling agreements as part of the recovery plan. This means these loans must always be fully repaid. Thus, a country cannot treat the IMF’s aid as a windfall gain. Finally, the call to the IMF is stigmatizing in the eyes of the international community: a country asking for help from the IMF signals that its situation is critical. This leads to a drop in confidence in the country’s economy and discourages foreigners to continue to lend and to invest in it.

The FDIC limit of \$250,000 on the size of insured deposits is meant to limit moral hazard by encouraging big depositors, and other bank creditors including interbank lenders, to monitor the actions of bank managers. In principle, those big depositors could take their business elsewhere if their bank appears to be taking unwise risks. The problem is that some banks have become so big in global markets and so interconnected with other banks and shadow banks that their failure might set off a chain reaction that throws the entire financial system into crisis.

When rumors began circulating in May 1984 that the Continental Illinois National Bank had made a large number of bad loans, the bank began rapidly to lose its large, uninsured deposits. At the time, the bank was the seventh biggest in the United States and many of its deposits were owned by foreign banks, so its failure could have set off a much bigger global banking crisis. As part of its rescue effort, the FDIC extended its insurance coverage to all of Continental Illinois's deposits, regardless of size. This and later episodes have convinced people that the U.S. government was following a “too-big-to-fail” policy of fully protecting all creditors of the largest banks. Even more far-reaching policies were implemented in several Northern European countries in the early 1990s, when their banking and financial sectors were on the brink of a systemic collapse. In Sweden, for example, the government had to rescue three of the four largest banks from insolvency either by providing large loans (in case of Första Sparbanken) or by nationalization (in the cases of Nordbanken and Gota Bank). Moreover, the Swedish government declared an unlimited guarantee for all forms of debt of all Swedish banks, thereby effectively reducing the probability of additional insolvencies. The policy of maintaining the peg of Swedish krona to the ECU, however, turned out to be less successful. When international financial investors anticipated a devaluation of the krona in late 1992, the resulting outflow of capital and foreign reserves could not be stopped even by raising the overnight interest rate to the extremely high level of 500 percent (expressed at an annual rate). The fixed exchange rate was abandoned eventually, allowing the krona to freely float against other currencies ever since. During the course of the year 1993, financial markets calmed down and the Swedish government was able to sell off most of its bank holdings thereafter. All in all, this decisive combination of temporary nationalization, creation of “bad banks” for nonperforming assets, and unlimited guarantees for creditors (but not for shareholders) became a general benchmark for countries in financial crises.

At the same time in the U.K., the financial crisis primarily affected small banks who were not by themselves systematically important. More specifically, the group of banks whose solvency was threatened accounted for less than 1 percent of the stock of U.K. lending to the non-financial private sector. Although 25 banks failed over the course of four years (i.e., much more than in Sweden at the same time), their combined assets amounted to just 0.2 percent of GDP. Due to the high degree of interconnectedness of financial institutions, however, the Bank of England (i.e., the central bank) became increasingly worried about the possibility of contagion to larger, systemically important banks. Eventually, it decided to intervene by arranging financial support to three small banks and by providing close supervisory review to further 40 small banks.<sup>12</sup>

When a financial institution is *systemically important*—that is, “too big to fail” or “too interconnected to fail”—its managers and creditors expect that the government

<sup>12</sup>Peter Englund and Vesa Viirilä, “Banking Crises in the North: A Comparative Analysis of Finland and Sweden”; Stefano Battilossi and Jaime Reis, (eds.), “State and Financial Systems in Europe and the USA: Historical Perspectives on Regulation and Supervision in the Nineteenth and Twentieth Centuries,” Ashgate Publishing, 2010, pp. 177–196; and Knut Sandal, “The Nordic Banking Crises in the Early 1990s: Resolution Methods and Fiscal Costs,” *Norges Banks Occasional Papers* No 33 (2004), pp. 77–115.

will have no choice but to support it in case it gets into trouble. The resulting moral hazard sets off a vicious circle: Because people perceive that the institution is under the umbrella of government support, it can borrow cheaply and engage in risky strategies that (while times are good) yield high returns. The resulting profits allow the institution to become even bigger and more interconnected, leading to more profits, more growth, and more moral hazard. The entire financial system becomes less stable as a result.

For this reason, economists are increasingly in favor of curbs on the size of financial firms despite the possible sacrifice of scale efficiencies. As former Federal Reserve chair Alan Greenspan put it, “If they’re too big to fail, they’re too big.” Many economists also favor forcing large complex banks and shadow banks to draw up “living wills” allowing them to be closed and wound down, in case of insolvency, with minimal disruption and minimal cost to taxpayers. The credible threat of bank closure is necessary for limiting moral hazard—bank managers need to know they can be put out of business if they misbehave—but devising concrete procedures is not easy, especially in an international context.

As we shall see, the problem of moral hazard is central to understanding both the 2007–2009 global financial crisis and the measures that were taken to avoid future crises. Another important element in that crisis and its international transmission, however, was the globalized nature of banking.

## The Challenge of Regulating International Banking

In this section, we will learn how the internationalization of banking (and financial institutions more generally) weakens purely national safeguards against banking collapse. At the same time, however, global financial interdependence has made the need for effective safeguards more urgent. The result is a second *trilemma* for international policy makers.<sup>13</sup>

### The Financial Trilemma

Offshore banking involves a tremendous volume of interbank deposits—roughly 80 percent of all Eurocurrency deposits, for example, are owned by private banks. A high level of interbank depositing implies that problems affecting a single bank can be highly contagious and spread quickly to banks with which people believe it does business. Through this domino effect, a localized disturbance can set off a banking panic on a global scale, as in the 2007–2009 crisis.

Despite these very high stakes, banking regulations of the type used in the United States and other countries become even less effective in an international environment where banks can shift their business among different regulatory jurisdictions. A good way to see why an international banking system is harder to regulate than a national system is to look at how the effectiveness of the U.S. safeguards that we described in the last section is reduced owing to offshore banking activities.

1. Deposit insurance is essentially absent in international banking. National deposit insurance systems may protect domestic and foreign depositors alike, but the amount of insurance available is invariably too small to cover the size of the deposits that are usual in international banking. In particular, interbank deposits and other wholesale funding sources are unprotected.

---

<sup>13</sup>As you will see, the financial trilemma that we introduce in this section is different from the monetary trilemma that we introduced in Chapter 19 and mentioned again earlier in this chapter. However, both trilemmas concern the connections between international financial integration and other potential policy goals.

2. The absence of overseas reserve requirements was historically a major factor in the growth of Eurocurrency trading. While Eurobanks derived a competitive advantage from escaping the required reserve tax, there was a social cost in terms of the reduced stability of the banking system. No country could solve the problem single-handedly by imposing reserve requirements on its own banks' overseas branches. Concerted international action was blocked, however, by the political and technical difficulty of agreeing on an internationally uniform set of regulations and by the reluctance of some countries to drive banking business away by tightening regulations. Nowadays, reserve requirements are less important in many countries. In part this is because governments simply realized the requirements' futility in a world of globalized banking.
3. and 4. Bank examination to enforce capital requirements and asset restrictions becomes more difficult in an international setting. National bank regulators usually monitor the balance sheets of domestic banks and their foreign branches on a consolidated basis. But they are less strict in keeping track of banks' foreign subsidiaries and affiliates, which are in theory more tenuously tied to the parent bank but whose financial fortunes may well affect the parent's solvency. Banks have often been able to take advantage of this laxity by shifting risky business that home regulators might question to regulatory jurisdictions where fewer questions are asked. This process is known as **regulatory arbitrage**. Further, it is often unclear which group of regulators would ideally be responsible for monitoring a given bank's assets. Suppose the London subsidiary of an Italian bank deals primarily in Eurodollars. Should the subsidiary's assets be the concern of British, Italian, or American regulators?
5. There is uncertainty over which central bank, if any, is responsible for providing LLR assistance in international banking. The problem is similar to the one that arises in allocating responsibility for bank supervision. Let's return to the example of the London subsidiary of an Italian bank. Should the Fed bear responsibility for saving the subsidiary from a sudden drain of dollar deposits? Should the Bank of England step in? Or should the European Central Bank bear the ultimate responsibility? When central banks provide LLR assistance, they increase their domestic money supplies and may compromise domestic macroeconomic objectives. In an international setting, a central bank may also be providing resources to a bank located abroad whose behavior it is not equipped to monitor. Central banks are therefore reluctant to extend the coverage of their LLR responsibilities.
6. When a bank has assets and liabilities in many countries, several governments may have to share operational and financial responsibility for a rescue or reorganization. The resulting uncertainties can slow down or even impede the operation. Big, complex, highly interconnected global banks know how hard it would be for governments to shut them down and reorganize them rather than simply bailing them out, and this can encourage excessive risk taking.

The preceding difficulties in regulating international financial institutions show that a **financial trilemma** constrains what policy makers in an open economy can achieve. At most two goals from the following list of three are simultaneously feasible:

1. Financial stability.
2. National control over financial safeguard policy.
3. Freedom of international capital movements.

For example, a country that closes itself financially from the outside world can regulate its banks strictly without worrying about regulatory arbitrage across borders, thereby promoting domestic financial stability regardless of what foreign regulators do. On the

other hand, if countries were to delegate the design and implementation of financial safeguards to a global regulatory body immune to national political pressures, they could enjoy greater financial stability and financial openness at the same time.<sup>14</sup>

The utopian goal of an omniscient global financial authority is remote, of course. In its absence, however, national regulators for four decades have been trying to reconcile growing financial integration with financial stability through a process of ever-increasing international cooperation. It is no accident that this process began precisely when the new system of floating exchange rates allowed countries to move to a new edge of the monetary trilemma (Chapter 19) by liberalizing international capital movements.

### International Regulatory Cooperation through 2007

In the early 1970s, the new regime of floating exchange rates presented a new source of disturbance: a large, unexpected exchange rate change that might wipe out the capital of an exposed bank.

In response to this threat, central bank heads from 11 industrialized countries in 1974 set up a group called the **Basel Committee**, whose job is to “strengthen the regulation, supervision and practices of banks worldwide with the purpose of enhancing financial stability,” per the Basel Committee Charter. (The group got its name from Basel, Switzerland, the home of the central bankers’ meeting place, the Bank for International Settlements, or BIS.) The Basel Committee remains the major forum for cooperation among bank regulators from different countries.

In 1975, the Basel Committee reached an agreement, called the Concordat, which allocates responsibility for supervising multinational banking establishments between parent and host countries. In addition, the Concordat calls for the sharing of information about banks by parent and host regulators and for “the granting of permission for inspections by or on behalf of parent authorities on the territory of the host authority.”<sup>15</sup> In 1988, the Basel Committee suggested a minimally prudent level of bank capital (generally speaking, 8 percent of assets) and a system for measuring capital. These guidelines, widely adopted throughout the world, have become known as Basel I. The committee revised the Basel I framework in 2004, issuing a new set of rules for bank capital known as Basel II.

A major change in international financial relations has been the rapidly growing importance of new **emerging markets** as sources and destinations for private capital flows. Emerging markets are the capital markets of industrializing countries that have liberalized their financial systems to allow at least some private asset trade with foreigners. Countries such as Brazil, Mexico, Indonesia, and Thailand were all major recipients of private capital inflows from the industrial world after 1990.

Emerging market financial institutions have proven in the past, however, to be weak. This vulnerability contributed to the emerging markets’ severe financial crisis of 1997–1999 (Chapter 22). Among other problems, developing countries tended to lack experience in bank regulation, had looser prudential and accounting standards than developed countries, and had been prone to moral hazard by offering domestic banks implicit guarantees that they will be bailed out if they get into trouble.

---

<sup>14</sup>For a recent examination of international banking in the context of the financial trilemma, see Dirk Schoenmaker, *Governance of International Banking: The Financial Trilemma* (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2013).

<sup>15</sup>The Concordat was summarized in these terms by W. P. Cooke of the Bank of England, then chair of the Basel Committee, in “Developments in Co-operation among Banking Supervisory Authorities,” *Bank of England Quarterly Bulletin* 21 (June 1981), pp. 238–244.

Thus, the need to extend internationally accepted “best practice” regulatory standards to emerging market countries became a priority for the Basel Committee. In September 1997, the Committee issued its *Core Principles for Effective Banking Supervision*, worked out in cooperation with representatives from many developing countries (and revised in 2006). That document set out 25 principles deemed to describe the minimum necessary requirements for effective bank supervision, covering licensing of banks, supervision methods, reporting requirements for banks, and cross-border banking. The Basel Committee and the IMF were monitoring the international implementation of the revised *Core Principles* and Basel II when the global financial crisis erupted in August 2007. The crisis revealed weaknesses in Basel II that led the Basel Committee to agree on a new framework, Basel III, which we will describe further in due course. The international activities of nonbank financial institutions are another potential trouble spot. The failure of a major actor in the shadow banking system, like the failure of a bank, could seriously disrupt national payments and credit networks. Increasing **securitization** (in which bank assets are repackaged in readily marketable forms and sold off) and trade in options and other derivative securities have made it harder for regulators to get an accurate picture of global financial flows by examining bank balance sheets alone. Indeed, as we shall see, securitization and derivatives were at the heart of the 2007–2009 crisis, which is the subject of the following Case Study.

## CASE STUDY

### The Global Financial Crisis of 2007–2009

The global financial and economic meltdown of 2007–2009 was the worst since the Great Depression. Banks throughout the world failed or required extensive government support to survive; the global financial system froze; and the entire world economy was thrown into recession. Unlike some recessions, this one originated in a shock to financial markets, and the shock was transmitted from country to country by financial markets, at lightning speed.

The crisis had a seemingly unlikely source: the U.S. mortgage market.<sup>16</sup> Over the course of the mid-2000s, with U.S. interest rates very low and U.S. home prices bubbling upward (recall Chapter 19), mortgage lenders had extended loans to borrowers with shaky credit. In many cases, the borrowers planned to hold the homes only for brief periods, selling them later for a profit. Many people borrowed at low, temporary “teaser” rates of interest, when in fact they lacked the financial means to meet mortgage payments if interest rates were to rise. And then U.S. interest rates started moving up as the Federal Reserve gradually tightened monetary policy to ward off inflation. U.S. housing prices started to decline in 2006.

The total amount of shaky, “subprime” U.S. mortgage loans was not very big compared to total U.S. financial wealth. However, the subprime loans were securitized quickly and sold off by the original lenders, often bundled with other assets.

<sup>16</sup>For useful accounts of the crisis, see Markus Brunnermeier, “Deciphering the Liquidity and Credit Crunch of 2007–2008,” *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 23 (Winter 2009), pp. 77–100; Gary B. Gorton, *Slapped in the Face by the Invisible Hand: The Panic of 2007* (New York: Oxford University Press, 2010); Chapter 12 in Frederic S. Mishkin, *The Economics of Money, Banking and Financial Markets*, 12th edition (New York: Pearson, 2018); and the book by Blinder in Further Readings.

This factor made it very hard to know exactly which investors were exposed to the risk that subprime mortgage loans would not be repaid. In addition, banks throughout the world, but especially in the United States and Europe, were avid buyers of securitized subprime-related assets, in some cases setting up—outside the reach of regulators—opaque, off-balance-sheet vehicles for that purpose. A major motivation was regulatory arbitrage. Banks were eager to exploit loopholes in prudential rules, including the Basel II guidelines, in order to minimize the amount of capital they were required to hold against assets and thereby maximize the amount they could borrow to buy securitized credit products. Funding for these banks' securitized asset purchases came from U.S. lenders, including money market mutual funds.<sup>17</sup> Much of the European banks' demand was for U.S. products, but as we noted in Chapter 19, the housing boom of the 2000s was a global phenomenon, and European banks were also heavily exposed to downturns in highly priced housing markets outside the United States. Home prices in those markets would soon follow U.S. prices downward. (In Chapter 21, we will see how the problems of Europe's banks led to a crisis in the euro zone.)

As subprime borrowers increasingly missed their payments during 2007, lenders became more aware of the risks they faced and pulled back from markets. No one could tell who was exposed to subprime risk or how vulnerable he or she was. Borrowing costs rose, and many participants in financial markets had no choice but to sell assets to get cash. A number of the derivative assets being offered for sale were so poorly understood by the markets that potential buyers could not value them.

During the week of August 9, 2007, central banks provided markets with the most extensive liquidity support since the September 11, 2001, terrorist attacks. On August 9, a major French bank, BNP Paribas, disclosed that three of its investment funds faced potential trouble due to subprime-related investments. Credit markets went into panic, with interbank interest rates rising above central bank target rates around the world. Banks feared that other banks would go under and be unable to repay, and fearing an inability to obtain interbank funding themselves, they all hoarded cash. The European Central Bank stepped in as lender of last resort to the European interbank market, and the Fed followed suit in the United States, announcing that it would accept mortgage-backed securities as collateral for loans to banks. Stock markets fell everywhere. The U.S. economy slipped into recession late in 2007, pushed by the disappearance of credit and a collapsing housing market.

<sup>17</sup>For documentation of the two-way financial flows between Europe and the United States prior to the crisis, see Ben S. Bernanke, Carol Bertaut, Laurie Pounder DeMarco, and Steven Kamin, "International Capital Flows and the Returns to Safe Assets in the United States, 2003–2007," *Financial Stability Review*, Banque de France 15 (2011), pp. 13–26. Viral V. Acharya and Philipp Schnabl illustrate regulatory arbitrage in "Do Global Banks Spread Global Imbalances? Asset-Backed Commercial Paper during the Financial Crisis of 2007–09," *IMF Economic Review* 58 (August 2010), pp. 37–73. Many securitized U.S. mortgage-backed securities (MBS) were bundled by their issuers so that they would pay off fully except in circumstances where nonpayment of mortgage obligations was extremely widespread—essentially, a severe housing market collapse affecting most regions of the United States. Because rating agencies deemed such an event highly improbable, they gave the MBS their highest ratings. Under the Basel capital guidelines, however, banks were required to hold relatively less capital against such seemingly bulletproof assets. So European banks piled into MBS and related securities both because of their (slightly) higher returns and because they could thereby borrow and lend on slimmer capital bases.



Richard Drew/AP Images

were mounting, home prices were still heading downward and yet banks and shadow banks retained on their books toxic assets that were difficult to value or sell. Against this background, the U.S. government took control of the two giant privately owned but government-sponsored mortgage intermediaries, Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac.

Lehman Brothers, the fourth largest investment bank, filed for bankruptcy on September 15, 2008, after frantic but unsuccessful efforts by the U.S. Treasury and the Fed to find a buyer. There is still controversy about the legal standing of the U.S. authorities to have prevented the collapse; surely they were still smarting from the criticism over Bear and hoping that the Lehman fallout could be contained. Instead, the situation quickly spun out of control. A day after Lehman's filing, the giant insurance firm American International Group (AIG, with over \$1 trillion in assets) suffered a run. Apparently without the approval of senior management, traders for the firm had issued more than \$400 billion in derivatives called *credit default swaps* (CDS), which are insurance policies against nonrepayment of loans (including loans made to Lehman as well as mortgage-backed securities). With the world financial system in a state of meltdown, those CDS looked increasingly likely to be triggered, yet AIG lacked the funds to cover them. The Fed stepped in immediately with an \$85 billion loan, and ultimately the U.S. government loaned AIG billions more.

The same month saw several other dramatic events. American money market mutual funds (some with claims on Lehman) suffered a run and had their liabilities guaranteed by the U.S. Treasury. Washington Mutual Bank (the sixth largest in the United States) failed. Ailing Wachovia (the fourth largest bank) and investment bank Merrill Lynch were bought by Wells Fargo Bank and Bank of America, respectively. The last two independent U.S. investment banks, Goldman Sachs and Morgan Stanley, became bank-holding companies subject to Fed supervision but with essential access to the Fed's lending facilities. Interbank lending spreads over Treasury bill rates reached historic levels. Finally, amid all this turmoil, world stock

More trouble lay ahead. In March 2008, institutional lenders refused to roll over their short-term credits to the fifth largest investment bank, Bear Stearns, which had extensive subprime-related investments. Even though Bear Stearns was not a bank, it effectively suffered a run by its lenders. In a hastily organized rescue, the Fed bought \$30 billion of Bear's "toxic" assets in order to persuade the bank J.P. Morgan Chase to buy Bear at a fire-sale price. The Fed was criticized for not wiping out Bear's shareholders (to deter moral hazard) and for putting taxpayer money at risk.

Even after this bailout, however, financial stability did not return. Foreclosures on delinquent U.S. mortgages

markets swooned. The U.S. Congress, after much debate, passed a bill allocating \$700 billion to buy troubled assets from banks, in hopes that this would allow them to resume normal lending—but the funds were not, in the end, used for that purpose. The post-Lehman turmoil spread to Europe, where a number of financial institutions failed and EU governments issued blanket deposit guarantees to head off bank runs. In addition, a number of countries guaranteed interbank loans. But by this time, the economic downturn had gone global, with devastating effects on output and employment throughout the world.

Limited space prevents a detailed review of the many financial, fiscal, and unconventional monetary policies that central banks and governments undertook to end the global economy's seeming free fall in late 2008 and the first part of 2009.<sup>18</sup> (The box on foreign exchange instability explores one aspect of the policy response that is especially relevant to international monetary economics.) With housing markets depressed in the industrial countries, however, recovery of financial and household-sector balance sheets was slow, as was the recovery in aggregate demand. When the COVID-19 crisis erupted in March 2020, many of the same policy tools were deployed again, but even more extensively. In that case, the underlying trigger for the crisis was a global pandemic, and financial fragility was a consequence, not a cause.

## FOREIGN EXCHANGE INSTABILITY AND CENTRAL BANK SWAP LINES

Traditionally, the lender of last resort provides liquidity in its own currency, which it can print freely. The crisis of 2007–2009 made clear, however, that in the modern world of globalized finance, banks may need liquidity in currencies other than that of their home central bank. One area in which central banks innovated during the crisis was in making such support readily available to foreign central banks. In effect, the Federal Reserve, which pioneered this approach, became a *global LLR* for U.S. dollars.

Why was this necessary? The need was a spill-over effect of the disruption in U.S. credit markets, particularly interbank markets. As we have pointed out, in the years leading up to the crisis, European banks had invested heavily in U.S. mortgage-backed securities and other similar securitized assets. The European banks did not wish, however, to bear the currency risk of holding these dollar-denominated claims. Lacking an ability to obtain dollars through retail deposits, they borrowed

short-term dollars in wholesale markets (from U.S. banks and money market funds) to finance their purchases of U.S. asset-backed securities.

Then the crisis hit and interbank credit markets stopped functioning. European banks did not want to sell their now-toxic U.S. assets at a loss (even if they had been able to), so they needed to borrow dollars to repay their short-term loans and maintain their hedged positions in dollars. Even though the banks' dollar liabilities were on paper balanced with dollar assets, the liquidity mismatch between the assets and liabilities created a currency mismatch once the assets could no longer be sold quickly at face value. Where could these banks get dollars loans quickly now that private dollar credit markets were frozen? Some, but not all, were able to borrow from the Fed through U.S. affiliates. Other European banks lacked collateral acceptable to the Fed. To make matters worse, the Fed was closed during European morning trading.

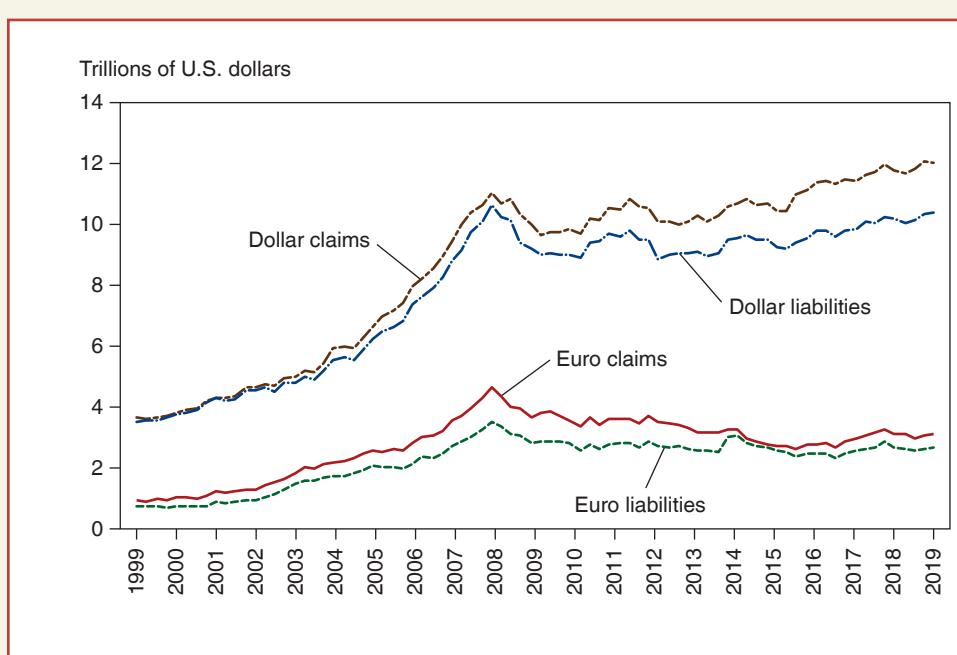
<sup>18</sup>A readable account of Fed policies during the crisis is David Wessel, *In Fed We Trust: Ben Bernanke's War on the Great Panic* (New York: Crown Business, 2009). A more comprehensive review of government policy responses is the book by Blinder in Further Readings.

The ECB could print euros and lend them to banks, but it could not print U.S. dollars. European banks thus tried to swap the borrowed euros into dollars (selling them in the spot market for dollars and buying them back with forward dollars in the forward market). Under *covered* interest parity (CIP), this complicated operation has the same cost as a straight loan of dollars (recall Chapter 14's section on "Forward Exchange Rates and Covered Interest Parity"). But CIP was breaking down because banks did not want to lend dollars to each other. Swaps of euros into dollars thus yielded too few spot dollars and too few forward euros. In particular, the dollar shortage led to a tendency for the dollar to strengthen sharply in the spot market. This episode marked the start of the persisting breakdown of CIP that we discussed in Chapter 14, which we will return to later

in this chapter. Figure 14-8 shows how deviations from CIP were especially large during the 2007–2009 crisis period.

The Fed's swap lines, initially extended to the ECB and the Swiss National Bank (SNB) in December 2007, were intended to remedy the shortage and prevent disorderly conditions in foreign exchange markets. The lines allowed the ECB and SNB to borrow dollars directly from the Fed and lend them to domestic banks in need.

But the dollar shortage became much more severe after the Lehman collapse in September 2008. The Fed extended the swaps to a wider set of central banks, including four in emerging countries (Brazil, Mexico, Korea, and Singapore), and made the swap lines unlimited for several industrial-country central banks (including the ECB and SNB), thus fully outsourcing its LLR



### Cross-Border Bank Positions in Dollars and Euros, 1999–2019

Data on international banking transactions illustrate how the U.S. dollar is the world's premier funding currency, far outstripping the euro.

**Source:** Bank for International Settlements, Locational Banking Statistics data on reporting banks.

function. Ultimately, the Fed lent hundreds of billions of dollars in this way.<sup>19</sup>

Central banks other than the Fed (notably the ECB) likewise extended swap lines in their currencies, though typically these were more limited in scope than the Fed's. The Federal Reserve's role as the global LLR in U.S. dollars has been so critical because the dollar, alongside its starring roles as the world's dominant vehicle, reserve, and invoice currency, is the world's premier *funding* currency, that is, the most common currency for denominating loans. The accompanying figure shows the volumes of cross-border dollar claims and liabilities by international banks, illustrating how dollar-denominated positions far outstrip those for the number two funding currency, the euro.

The Fed wound down its swap lines in February 2010 but reactivated some when the European debt crisis erupted shortly afterward and interbank markets again became jittery (Chapter 21). Recent

experience clearly shows the need for global lenders of last resort in different currencies, and as a result, six major central banks—the U.S. Federal Reserve, the European Central Bank, the Bank of England, the Bank of Japan, the Bank of Canada, and the Swiss National Bank—made their mutual swap lines permanent late in 2013. This agreement among industrial-country central banks leaves out the emerging markets, which typically can borrow from the IMF, but only through a process that is generally less automatic than a central bank swap. And while the IMF saw its lending resources triple as world governments responded to the crisis, those resources remain limited, in contrast to the unlimited currency a central bank can provide simply by printing it. As the COVID-19 pandemic emerged early in 2020 and financial markets reeled, use of central bank swap lines ballooned and the Federal Reserve again extended them to selected emerging market countries.

## International Regulatory Initiatives after the Global Financial Crisis

The severity and breadth of the 2007–2009 crisis have led to initiatives to reform both national financial systems and the international system. We now describe some of these measures, which have sought to fill gaps in existing regulatory frameworks while also paying more attention to the macroeconomic causes and consequences of banking problems.

**Basel III** The financial crisis made obvious the inadequacies of the Basel II regulatory framework, so in 2010, the Basel Committee proposed a tougher set of capital standards and regulatory safeguards for international banks, Basel III. Regarding capital, the new Basel framework makes it harder for banks to get around capital requirements. For example, Basel III takes a broader view of the risks banks are running, including through off-balance sheet entities, and to that end, it requires banks to maintain at least a 3 percent *leverage ratio* of capital to total risk exposures, including off-balance exposures that importantly include forward foreign exchange contracts. The framework also requires banks to guard against more pessimistic scenarios than previously. But like

---

<sup>19</sup>For further discussion, see Maurice Obstfeld, Jay C. Shambaugh, and Alan M. Taylor, "Financial Instability, Reserves, and Central Bank Swap Lines in the Panic of 2008," *American Economic Review* 99 (May 2009), pp. 480–486; Patrick McGuire and Götz von Peter, "The US Dollar Shortage in Global Banking and the International Policy Response," BIS Working Papers No. 291, October 2009; and Linda S. Goldberg, Craig Kennedy, and Jason Miu, "Central Bank Dollar Swap Lines and Overseas Dollar Funding Costs," *Economic Policy Review*, Federal Reserve Bank of New York (May 2011), pp. 3–20. On the role of the swap lines in containing deviations from CIP, see Saleem Bahaj and Ricardo Reis, "Central Bank Swap Lines," CESifo Working Paper Series 7124, August 2018.

Basel II, Basel III still attaches risk weights to different assets, with assets deemed less risky leading to lower required capital. Basel III also mandates a Liquidity Coverage Ratio, under which banks must hold enough cash or highly liquid bonds to cover 30 days of cash outflow in specified crisis conditions. A Net Stable Funding Ratio seeks to limit banks' reliance on short-term wholesale funding (in contrast to retail deposits).<sup>20</sup>

**The Financial Stability Board** In 1999, policy makers from a handful of industrialized countries established the Financial Stability Forum, housed (like the Basel Committee) in the BIS. The goal, however, was to promote international coordination over a broader set of financial stability issues (including, but going beyond, bank regulation), and among a potentially broader group of macroeconomic policy makers. In April 2009, at the height of the global crisis, the Financial Stability Forum became the Financial Stability Board (FSB), with a broader membership (including a number of emerging market economies) and a larger permanent staff. The FSB's job is to monitor the global financial system and make recommendations for global policy coordination and reform, sometimes in cooperation with other international agencies such as the IMF.

**National Reforms** Individual countries have not limited themselves to implementing the Basel III recommendations. In a number of cases, including the euro zone, the United Kingdom, and the United States, countries have embarked on far-reaching reforms of their domestic financial systems. In 2010, the U.S. Congress passed the Dodd-Frank act, which, among other things, empowers the government to regulate nonbank financial institutions deemed "systemically important" (such as Lehman or AIG) and also allows the government to take over those firms in much the same way that the FDIC takes over and resolves failing banks.<sup>21</sup> A major goal of Dodd-Frank was to eliminate the problem of "too big to fail," although critics contend it has not succeeded.

**The Macroprudential Perspective** An important lesson of the global financial crisis is that it is not enough for financial regulators to ensure that each individual financial institution is sound. This in itself will not ensure that the financial system *as a whole* is sound, and in fact, measures that would make an individual institution more resilient, given that the broader financial system is healthy, could put the broader system into jeopardy if implemented simultaneously by all institutions. The **macroprudential perspective** on financial regulation seeks to avoid such fallacies of composition at the aggregate level.<sup>22</sup>

As an example, consider the Basel capital standards, which apply different risk weights to different assets to determine the amount of capital banks need to hold. If there are two assets, A and B, with similar returns, but asset B has the lower Basel risk weight, all banks will wish to hold asset B rather than asset A. But in this case, the system *as a whole* will be more vulnerable to a fall in asset B's price than if banks were more diversified between the two assets. This is exactly what happened in 2007 when U.S. and European banks were all so heavily invested in securities tied to the U.S. housing market,

<sup>20</sup>You can explore the Basel III framework at <http://www.bis.org/bcbs/basel3.htm?ql=1>.

<sup>21</sup>See Mishkin, *op. cit.*

<sup>22</sup>The monograph by Brunnermeier et al., in Further Readings, provides an excellent overview.

and therefore all vulnerable to the U.S. housing downturn. A major concern about the new Basel rules is that they do not do enough to correct this system-level problem.

However, in other respects the Basel III proposals recognize the macroprudential problem. For example, the Basel Committee has proposed that banks increase their capital ratios during lending booms in order to make the system more resilient during downturns, at which time capital requirements would be loosened. Why is this plan for “countercyclical capital buffers” helpful? If instead all banks simultaneously sell assets to increase their capital buffers in a financial crisis—which is what a *micro* prudential approach might suggest that they do—the result would be an asset “fire sale” that depresses securities prices and therefore endangers the solvency of the system as a whole.

In the United States, the Dodd-Frank act set up a Financial Stability Oversight Council (FSOC), which includes the Fed chair and the Treasury Secretary, to monitor macroeconomic aspects of financial stability, including risks from the shadow banking system. The FSOC has the power to designate individual financial institutions as systemically important and subject them to enhanced supervision. It can also recommend breaking up institutions that are so big or interconnected as to pose a threat to the economy. However, the biggest financial institutions are, if anything, even bigger after the financial crisis, and many observers remain concerned that the United States and other countries have done too little to solve the “too big to fail” problem and reduce moral hazard in financial markets. After seeing the effects of the Lehman failure, policy makers still may remain too fearful of contagion to allow a major international bank to fail.

**National Sovereignty and the Limits of Globalization** National financial regulators often face fierce lobbying from their home financial institutions, which argue that stricter rules would put them at a disadvantage relative to foreign rivals (while also being ineffective due to the foreign competition). The Basel multilateral process, like multilateral trade liberalization under the GATT and the WTO, plays an essential role in allowing governments to overcome domestic political pressures against adequate oversight and control of the financial sector. The process partially addresses the financial trilemma by facilitating some limited delegation of national sovereignty over financial policy. The constraints of the trilemma are still important, however. For example, a country wishing to control a domestic housing boom may forbid its banks from lending too much to prospective homebuyers, but may be unable to prevent foreign banks from lending. In this case, there is a trade-off between financial stability and financial integration; and countries may be tempted to react through capital controls or other measures that segregate domestic financial markets. Unless governments can successfully contain the risks posed by financial markets, it seems unlikely that financial globalization can continue to proceed as it has over recent decades.

## Metrics for International Capital Market Performance

The present structure of the international capital market involves risks of financial instability that can be reduced only through the close cooperation of bank and financial supervisors in many countries. But the same profit motive that leads multinational financial institutions to innovate their way around national regulations can also provide important gains for consumers. As we have seen, the international capital market allows residents of different countries to diversify their portfolios by trading risky assets. Further, by ensuring a rapid international flow of information about investment opportunities around the world, the market can help allocate the world’s savings to their most productive uses. How well has the international capital market performed in these respects?

## The Extent of International Portfolio Equity Diversification

Since accurate data on the overall portfolio positions of a country's residents are sometimes impossible to assemble, it can be difficult to gauge the extent of international portfolio diversification in stock markets by direct observation. Nonetheless, as far as we can tell, investors display a significant *home bias*: They much prefer to invest in domestic stocks rather than diversifying abroad.

What makes the apparently incomplete extent of international equity portfolio diversification so puzzling is the presumption most economists would make that the potential gains from diversification are large. An influential study by the French financial economist Bruno Solnik, for example, estimated that a U.S. investor holding only American stocks could more than halve the riskiness of her portfolio by further diversification into stocks from European countries.<sup>23</sup> Thus, the observed home bias in equity holdings is hard to understand.

We have certainly observed an explosion of gross international assets and liabilities since the early 1990s. But most of these external assets and liabilities are debt instruments, including bank debts, in some cases driven by regulatory or tax arbitrage. (Recall the box in Chapter 13 on how global tax avoidance has inflated Ireland's measured GDP.) It is also likely that international debt positions include systemically risky borrowing, as when a bank in the United Kingdom borrows short-term funds to invest in less liquid securities abroad. Thus, even though the data show that the volume of international asset transactions has increased enormously over the past decades, they also remind us that there is no foolproof measure of the socially optimal extent of foreign investment.<sup>24</sup>

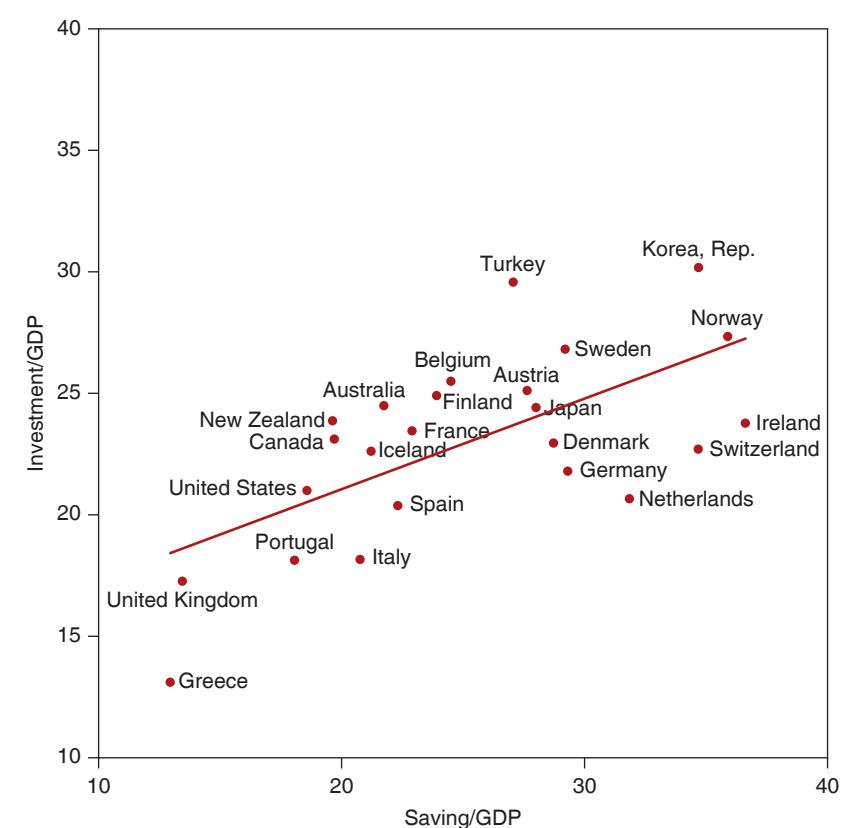
## The Extent of Intertemporal Trade

An alternative way of evaluating the performance of the world capital market was suggested by economists Martin Feldstein and Charles Horioka. Feldstein and Horioka pointed out that a smoothly working international capital market allows countries' domestic investment rates to diverge widely from their saving rates. In such an idealized world, saving seeks out its most productive uses worldwide, regardless of their location; at the same time, domestic investment is not limited by national saving because a global pool of funds is available to finance it.

For many countries, however, differences between national saving and domestic investment rates (that is, current account balances) have not been large since World War II: Countries with high saving rates over long periods also have usually had high investment rates, as Figure 20-3 illustrates. Feldstein and Horioka concluded from this evidence that cross-border capital mobility is low, in the sense that most of any sustained increase in national saving will lead to increased capital accumulation at home. The

<sup>23</sup>See Solnik, "Why Not Diversify Internationally Rather Than Domestically?" *Financial Analysts Journal* (July–August 1974), pp. 48–54.

<sup>24</sup>For a survey of the equity home bias puzzle and hypotheses about its causes, see Ian Cooper, Piet Sercu, and Rosanne Vanpée, "The Equity Home Bias Puzzle: A Survey," *Foundations and Trends in Finance* 7 (2013), pp. 289–416. A complementary discussion is the entry by Coeurdacier and Rey in Further Readings. The extent of home bias for U.S. investors has decreased over time, and as firms' operations increasingly become global, an investor holding shares in a U.S. resident firm increasingly faces exposure to cash flows originating abroad. A recent study suggests that when the latter factor is considered, U.S. investors hold only 45 percent of their stocks in the form of U.S. equities, rather than the earlier 70 percent estimate. (Even in this case some home bias would remain, since the United States accounts for at most a quarter of the world economy.) See Carol Bertaut, Beau Bressler, and Stephanie Cururu, "Globalization and the Reach of Multinationals: Implications for Portfolio Exposures, Capital Flows, and Home Bias," FEDS Notes, Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, December 18, 2020.

**FIGURE 20-3****Saving and Investment Rates for 24 Countries, 1990–2019 Averages**

OECD countries' saving and investment ratios to output tend to be positively related. The straight regression line in the graph represents a statistician's best guess of the level of the investment ratio, conditional on the saving ratio, in this country sample.

**Source:** World Bank, *World Development Indicators*.

world capital market, according to this view, does not do a good job of helping countries reap the long-run gains of intertemporal trade.<sup>25</sup>

The main problem with the Feldstein-Horioka argument is that it is impossible to gauge if the extent of intertemporal trade is deficient without knowing if there are unexploited trade gains, and knowing this requires more knowledge about actual economies than we generally have. For example, a country's saving and investment may usually move together simply because the factors that generate a high saving rate (such as rapid economic growth) also generate a high investment rate. In such cases, the country's gain from intertemporal trade may simply be small. An alternative explanation of

<sup>25</sup>See Martin Feldstein and Charles Horioka, "Domestic Savings and International Capital Flows," *Economic Journal* 90 (June 1980), pp. 314–329.

high saving–investment correlations is that governments have tried to manage macroeconomic policy to avoid large current account imbalances. In any case, events appear to be overtaking this particular debate. For industrialized countries, the empirical regularity noted by Feldstein and Horioka has weakened considerably in the face of the high external imbalances of the United States, Japan, Switzerland, and some of the euro zone countries. At the time of the original Feldstein-Horioka estimates, which used data through the middle 1970s, the slope in Figure 20-3 was close to 1; now it is around 0.4.

### The Efficiency of International Asset-Price Arbitrage

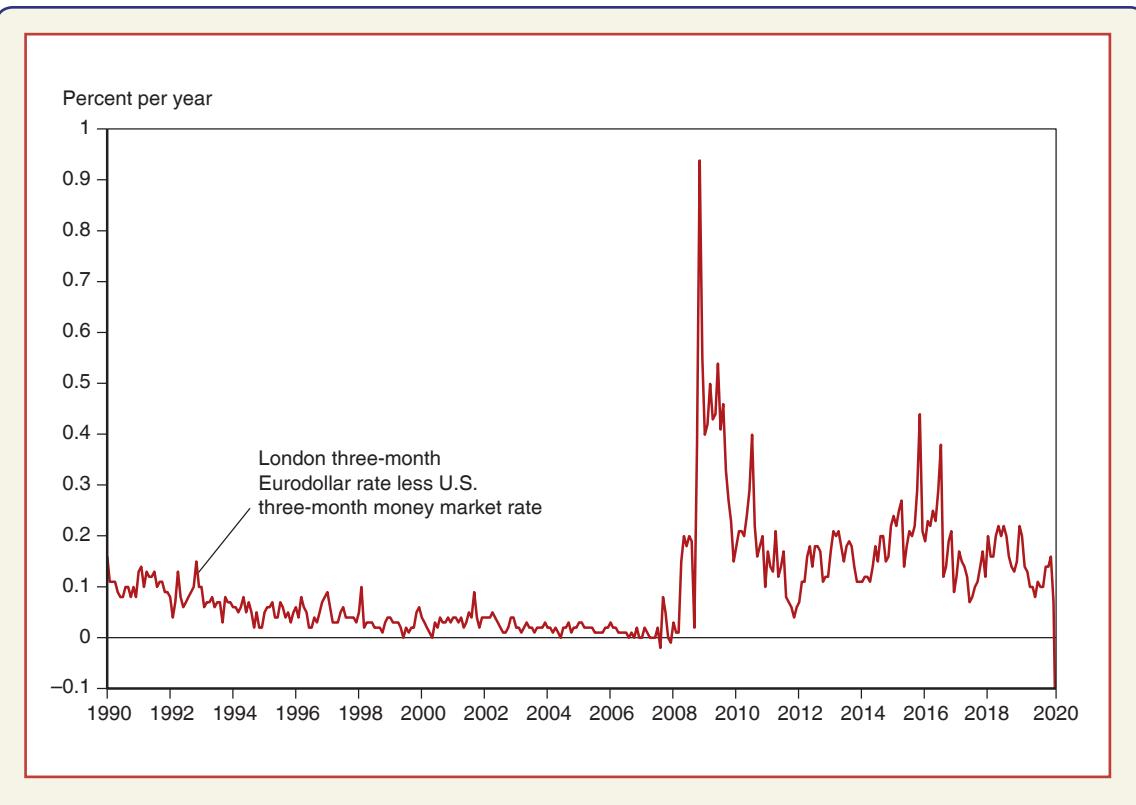
A quite different barometer of the international capital market's performance is the relationship between onshore and offshore interest rates on similar assets denominated in the same currency. If the world capital market is doing its job of communicating information about global investment opportunities, these interest rates should move closely together and not differ too greatly. Large interest rate differences would be strong evidence of unrealized gains from trade. A similar conclusion might apply to deviations from covered interest parity (CIP), which entail very low risk in normal circumstances. How should we interpret the evidence?

Figure 20-4 shows data since the end of 1990 on the interest rate difference between two comparable debt liabilities, dollar deposits in London and money market instruments issued in the United States. These data are imperfect because the interest rates compared are not measured at precisely the same moment. Nonetheless, they provide no indication of any large unexploited gains in normal times. The pattern of onshore–offshore interest differences is similar for other industrial countries.

The London–U.S. differential did begin to creep up with the outbreak of global financial turbulence in August 2007, and it reached a peak in October 2008, the month after the Lehman Brothers collapse. Evidently, investors perceived that U.S. money market instruments, including the dollar deposits of U.S. banks, would be backstopped by the U.S. Treasury and Federal Reserve but that dollar deposits in London might not receive the same protection. This problem may not have receded completely in recent years, as the differential has remained elevated and somewhat volatile.

A different set of factors could be contributing, however, and these factors also lie behind deviations from CIP. Chapter 14 explained that the prevailing CIP differences mean it is in principle profitable to borrow U.S. dollars and invest them in euro or yen deposits, which are then covered through forward purchases of dollars. However, these transactions are most clearly profitable for large international banks with the best credit ratings; lower-rated banks might have to pay higher rates for dollar borrowing, eliminating potential CIP profits. CIP arbitrage should also be profitable for U.S. money market mutual funds, which manage large pools of dollars and could buy foreign deposits outright, without borrowing. Why don't these large players arbitrage away CIP differentials?

A leading hypothesis is that the reluctance to arbitrage CIP deviations fully is due to financial regulations put in place after the 2007–2009 financial crisis. We offer two examples. A 2016 U.S. reform of prime money market mutual funds, which generally hold assets that are riskier than U.S. government securities, made it clear that deposits could fluctuate in value and might not be available on demand. The resulting migration of deposits to safer borrowers made it more expensive for prime funds to arbitrage CIP differentials. As for large creditworthy banks, the Basel III leverage ratio likely played a key role. CIP arbitrage involves an exceedingly low probability of loss in normal times, but under Basel III, even a CIP trade requires a bank to put aside capital if it is to meet the leverage ratio. The bank will thus require some positive return on the trade

**FIGURE 20-4**

### Comparing Onshore and Offshore Interest Rates for the Dollar

The difference between the London and U.S. interest rates on dollar deposits is usually very close to zero, but it spiked up sharply in the fall of 2008 as the investment bank Lehman Brothers collapsed and has remained volatile.

**Source:** Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System and OECD, monthly data.

(a non-negligible CIP difference) to compensate it for the opportunity cost of not deploying that capital to support other profitable business.<sup>26</sup>

Asset-pricing anomalies due to regulatory restrictions are not necessarily an indictment of market efficiency, however. The intention behind financial regulation (especially macroprudential regulation) is to force market actors to internalize the social costs of potential financial instability when they calculate profitability. Whether current regulations do so accurately, excessively, or insufficiently remains the topic of study and debate.

### The Efficiency of the Foreign Exchange Market

The foreign exchange market is a central component of the international capital market, and the exchange rates it sets help determine the profitability of international transactions of all types. Exchange rates therefore communicate important economic signals to

<sup>26</sup>For more details and evidence, see the paper by Du, Tepper, and Verdelhan cited in Chapter 14. Complementary recent studies of CIP are by Stefan Avdjiev, Wenxin Du, Cathérine Koch, and Hyun Song Shin, "The Dollar, Bank Leverage, and Deviations from Covered Interest Parity," *American Economic Review: Insights* 1 (September 2019), pp. 193–208; and Eugenio M. Cerutti, Maurice Obstfeld, and Haonan Zhou, "Covered Interest Parity Deviations: Macrofinancial Determinants," *Journal of International Economics* 130 (May 2021). You may also want to refer back to the paper by Levich in the Further Readings for Chapter 14.

households and firms engaged in international trade and investment. If these signals do not reflect all available information about market opportunities, a misallocation of resources will result. Studies of the foreign exchange market's use of available information are therefore potentially important in judging whether the international capital market is sending the right signals to markets. We examine three types of tests: tests based on interest parity, tests based on modeling risk premiums, and tests for excessive exchange rate volatility.

**Studies Based on Interest Parity** The uncovered interest parity (UIP) condition that was the basis of the discussion of exchange rate determination in Chapter 14 has also been used to study whether market exchange rates incorporate all available information. Recall that interest parity holds when the interest difference between deposits denominated in two different currencies is the market's forecast of the percentage by which the exchange rate between those currencies will change. More formally, if  $R_t$  is the date  $t$  interest rate on home currency deposits,  $R_t^*$  is the interest rate on foreign currency deposits,  $E_t$  is the exchange rate (defined as the home currency price of foreign currency), and  $E_{t+1}^e$  is the exchange rate that market participants expect when the deposits paying interest  $R_t$  and  $R_t^*$  mature, UIP states that:

$$R_t - R_t^* = (E_{t+1}^e - E_t)/E_t. \quad (20-1)$$

Equation (20-1) implies a simple way to test whether the foreign exchange market is doing a good job of using current information to forecast exchange rates. Since the interest difference,  $R_t - R_t^*$ , is the market's forecast, a comparison of this *predicted* exchange rate change with the *actual* exchange rate change that subsequently occurs indicates the market's skill in forecasting.<sup>27</sup>

Statistical studies of the relationship between interest rate differences and later depreciation rates show that the interest difference has been a very bad predictor, in the sense that it has failed to catch any of the large swings in exchange rates. We noted this failure in Chapter 14's discussion of the carry trade. Even worse, as we noted there, the interest difference has, on average, failed to predict correctly the *direction* in which the spot exchange rate would change. If the interest rate difference were a poor but unbiased predictor, we could argue that the market is setting the exchange rate according to interest parity and doing the best job possible in a rapidly changing world where prediction is inherently difficult. The finding of bias, however, seems at odds with that interpretation of the data.

UIP also furnishes a test of a second implication of the hypothesis that the market uses all available information in setting exchange rates. Suppose that  $E_{t+1}$  is the actual future exchange rate people are trying to guess; then the forecast error they make in predicting future depreciation,  $u_{t+1}$ , can be expressed as actual minus expected depreciation:

$$u_{t+1} = (E_{t+1} - E_t)/E_t - (E_{t+1}^e - E_t)/E_t. \quad (20-2)$$

If the market is making use of all available information, its forecast error,  $u_{t+1}$ , should be statistically unrelated to data known to the market on date  $t$ , when expectations formed. In other words, there should be no opportunity for the market to exploit known data to reduce its later forecast errors.

---

<sup>27</sup>Most studies of exchange market efficiency study how the forward exchange rate premium does as a predictor of subsequent spot exchange rate changes. That procedure is equivalent to the one we are following if the covered interest parity condition holds, so that the interest difference  $R_t - R_t^*$  equals the forward premium (see Chapter 14). As we have seen, however, CIP has not held closely since the late 2000s.

Under UIP, we can test this hypothesis by writing  $u_{t+1}$  as actual currency depreciation less the international interest difference:

$$u_{t+1} = (E_{t+1} - E_t)/E_t - (R_t - R_t^*). \quad (20-3)$$

Statistical methods can be used to examine whether  $u_{t+1}$  is predictable, on average, based on past information. A number of researchers have found that forecast errors, when defined as in equation (20-3), *can* be predicted. For example, past forecast errors, which are widely known, are useful in predicting future errors.<sup>28</sup>

**The Role of Risk Premiums** One explanation of the research results we have described is that the foreign exchange market simply ignores easily available information in setting exchange rates. Such a finding would throw doubt on the international capital market's ability to communicate appropriate price signals. Before jumping to this conclusion, however, recall that when people are risk averse, the interest parity condition may *not* be a complete account of how exchange rates are determined. If, instead, bonds denominated in different currencies are *imperfect* substitutes for investors, the international interest rate difference equals expected currency depreciation *plus* a risk premium,  $\rho_t$ :

$$R_t - R_t^* = (E_{t+1}^e - E_t)/E_t + \rho_t \quad (20-4)$$

(see Chapter 18). In this case, the interest difference is not necessarily the market's forecast of future depreciation. Thus, under imperfect asset substitutability, the empirical results just discussed cannot be used to draw inferences about the foreign exchange market's efficiency in processing information.

Because people's expectations are inherently unobservable, there is no simple way to decide between equation (20-4) and the interest parity condition, which is the special case that occurs when  $\rho_t$  is always zero. Several econometric studies have attempted to explain departures from interest parity on the basis of particular theories of the risk premium, but none has been entirely successful.<sup>29</sup>

**Tests for Excessive Volatility** One of the most worrisome findings is that statistical forecasting models of exchange rates based on standard "fundamental" variables like money supplies, government deficits, and output perform badly—even when *actual* (rather than predicted) values of future fundamentals are used to form exchange rate forecasts! Indeed, in a famous study, Richard A. Meese of Barclays Global Investors and Kenneth Rogoff of Harvard University showed that a naive, "random walk" model, which simply takes today's exchange rate as the best guess of tomorrow's, performs better. Some have viewed this finding as evidence that exchange rates have a life of their own, unrelated to the macroeconomic determinants we have emphasized in our models. More recent research has confirmed, however, that while the random walk outperforms more sophisticated

<sup>28</sup>For further discussion, see Robert E. Cumby and Maurice Obstfeld, "International Interest Rate and Price Level Linkages Under Flexible Exchange Rates: A Review of Recent Evidence," in John F. O. Bilson and Richard C. Marston, eds., *Exchange Rate Theory and Practice* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1984), pp. 121–151; and Geert J. Bekaert and Robert J. Hodrick, *International Financial Management*, 3d edition (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2017), chapters 6 and 7.

<sup>29</sup>For useful surveys, see Charles Engel, "The Forward Discount Anomaly and the Risk Premium: A Survey of Recent Evidence," *Journal of Empirical Finance* 3 (1996), pp. 123–192; Karen Lewis, "Puzzles in International Finance," in Gene M. Grossman and Kenneth Rogoff, eds., *Handbook of International Economics*, Vol. 3 (Amsterdam: North-Holland, 1996); and Hanno Lustig and Adrien Verdelhan, "Exchange Rates in a Stochastic Discount Factor Framework," in Jessica James, Ian W. Marsh, and Lucio Sarno, eds., *Handbook of Exchange Rates* (Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, 2012), pp. 391–420.

models for forecasts up to a year away, the models seem to do better at horizons longer than a year and have explanatory power for long-run exchange rate movements.<sup>30</sup>

An additional line of research on the foreign exchange market examines whether exchange rates have been excessively volatile, perhaps because the foreign exchange market “overreacts” to events. A finding of excessive volatility would prove that the foreign exchange market is sending confusing signals to traders and investors who base their decisions on exchange rates. But how volatile must an exchange rate be before its volatility becomes excessive? As we saw in Chapter 14, exchange rates *should* be volatile because to send the correct price signals, they must move swiftly in response to economic news. Exchange rates are generally less volatile than stock prices. It is still possible, though, that exchange rates are substantially more volatile than the underlying factors that move them—such as money supplies, national outputs, and fiscal variables. Attempts to compare exchange rates’ volatility with those of their underlying determinants have, however, produced inconclusive results. A basic problem underlying tests for excessive volatility is the impossibility of quantifying exactly all the variables that convey relevant news about the economic future. For example, how does one attach a number to a political assassination attempt, a major bank failure, or a terrorist attack?

A more recent but closely related area of study focuses on the **exchange rate disconnect puzzle**, originally described as the challenge of understanding “the remarkably weak short-term feedback links between the exchange rate and the rest of the economy.”<sup>31</sup> The problem, once again, is that exchange rates are so much more volatile than measurable macroeconomic aggregates. Moreover, they often seem to bear little relation to the behavior of those aggregates. Economists are making some progress in rationalizing the exchange rate disconnect within comprehensive economic models of the global economy, but any explanation seems likely to rely on substantial and persistent deviations from UIP.<sup>32</sup> Such deviations certainly exist, as we have seen, but since we do not have a good grasp of what causes them, it may be an excessive leap of faith to pin our confidence in our theories on such “dark matter.”

**The Bottom Line** The ambiguous evidence on the foreign exchange market’s performance warrants an open-minded view. A judgment that the market is doing its job well would support a laissez-faire attitude by governments and a continuation of the present trend toward increased cross-border financial integration in the industrial world. A judgment of market failure, on the other hand, might imply a need for increased foreign exchange intervention by central banks and a reversal of the global trend toward external financial liberalization. The stakes are high, and we need more research and experience before reaching a firm conclusion.

<sup>30</sup>The original Meese-Rogoff study is “Empirical Exchange Rate Models of the Seventies: Do They Fit Out of Sample?” *Journal of International Economics* 14 (February 1983), pp. 3–24. On longer-run forecasts, see Menzie D. Chinn and Richard A. Meese, “Banking on Currency Forecasts: How Predictable Is Change in Money?” *Journal of International Economics* 38 (February 1995), pp. 161–178; and Nelson C. Mark, “Exchange Rates and Fundamentals: Evidence on Long-Horizon Predictability,” *American Economic Review* 85 (March 1995), pp. 201–218. A recent survey is Pasquale Della Corte and Ilias Tsiakas, “Statistical and Economic Methods for Evaluating Exchange Rate Predictability,” in Jessica James, Ian W. Marsh, and Lucio Sarno, eds., *Handbook of Exchange Rates* (Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, 2012), pp. 221–263.

<sup>31</sup>See Maurice Obstfeld and Kenneth Rogoff, “The Six Major Puzzles in International Macroeconomics: Is There a Common Cause?” in Ben Bernanke and Kenneth Rogoff, eds., *NBER Macroeconomics Annual 2000* 51 (2001), pp. 339–390.

<sup>32</sup>See, for example, Oleg Itskhoki and Dmitry Mukhin, “Exchange Rate Disconnect in General Equilibrium,” *Journal of Political Economy* 129 (August 2021), pp. 2183–2232.

## SUMMARY

- When people are *risk averse*, countries can gain through the exchange of risky assets. The gains from trade take the form of a reduction in the riskiness of each country's consumption. International *portfolio diversification* can be accomplished through the exchange of *debt instruments* or *equity instruments*.
- The *international capital market* is the market in which residents of different countries trade assets. One of its important components is the foreign exchange market. Banks are at the center of the international capital market, and many operate offshore, that is, outside the countries where their head offices reside.
- Regulatory and political factors have encouraged *offshore banking*. The same factors have encouraged *offshore currency trading*, that is, trade in bank deposits denominated in currencies of countries other than the one in which the bank is located. Such *Eurocurrency* trading received a major stimulus from the absence of reserve requirements on deposits in *Eurobanks*.
- Creation of a Eurocurrency deposit does not occur because that currency leaves its country of origin; rather, all that is required is that a Eurobank accept a deposit liability denominated in the currency. Eurocurrencies therefore pose no threat to central banks' control over their domestic monetary bases, and fears that *Eurodollars*, for example, will some day come "flooding into" the United States are misplaced.
- Offshore banking is largely unprotected by the safeguards that national governments have imposed to prevent domestic bank failures. In addition, the opportunity that banks have to shift operations offshore, thereby profiting from *regulatory arbitrage*, has undermined the effectiveness of national bank supervision. These problems create a *financial trilemma* that international policy makers have tried to mitigate through increasingly ambitious cross-border collaboration. Since 1974, the *Basel Committee* of industrial-country bank supervisors has worked to enhance global regulatory cooperation, including international standards for *bank capital*. A third generation of proposed prudential regulations (Basel III) was released in 2010 and is in process of implementation by national regulators. There is still uncertainty, however, about a central bank's obligations as an international *lender of last resort*. That uncertainty may reflect an attempt by international authorities to reduce *moral hazard*. The trend toward securitization has increased the need for international cooperation in monitoring and regulating nonbank financial institutions. So has the rise of *emerging markets* and of large *shadow banking systems*. Gaps in the global financial safety net became evident during the global financial crisis of 2007–2009. A key lesson of the crisis is that governments should adopt a *macroprudential perspective* in evaluating financial risks, rather than worrying only about the soundness of individual institutions.
- The losses caused by financial crises must be evaluated against the gains that international capital markets potentially offer. The international capital market has contributed to an increase in international portfolio diversification since 1970, but the extent of diversification still appears incomplete compared with what economic theory would predict. Similarly, some observers have claimed that the extent of intertemporal trade, as measured by countries' current account balances, has been too small. Such claims are hard to evaluate without more detailed information about the functioning of the world economy than is yet available. Less ambiguous evidence comes from international interest rate comparisons, and this evidence points to a well-functioning market (apart from rare periods of international financial crisis). Rates of return on similar deposits issued in the major financial centers are normally quite close.

- International equity diversification seems too limited to explain by simple models of global diversification. At the same time, the foreign exchange market's record in communicating appropriate price signals to international traders and investors is mixed. Tests of excessive exchange rate volatility, for example, yield a mixed verdict on the foreign exchange market's performance. In addition, the *exchange rate disconnect puzzle* challenges our understanding of the short-term links between exchange rate changes and the broader economy. Together with the recent history of financial crises, these gaps in our knowledge argue for caution rather than a pure laissez-faire approach to financial globalization.

## KEY TERMS

bank capital, p. 663	financial trilemma, p. 670	offshore currency trading, p. 660
Basel Committee, p. 671	international capital market, p. 653	portfolio diversification, p. 656
debt instruments, p. 658	lender of last resort (LLR), p. 665	regulatory arbitrage, p. 670
emerging markets, p. 671	macroprudential perspective, p. 678	risk aversion, p. 656
equity instruments, p. 658	moral hazard, p. 667	securitization, p. 672
Eurobanks, p. 660	offshore banking, p. 660	shadow banking system, p. 661
Eurocurrencies, p. 660		
Eurodollars, p. 660		
exchange rate disconnect puzzle, p. 686		

## PROBLEMS

1. Which portfolio is better diversified—one that contains stock in a petrol company and a car company or one that contains stock in a petrol company and a pharmaceutical company?
2. Imagine a world of two countries in which the only causes of fluctuations in stock prices are unexpected shifts in monetary policies. Under which exchange rate regime would the gains from international asset trade be greater, fixed or floating?
3. The text points out that covered interest parity holds quite closely for deposits of differing currency denominations issued in a single financial center. Why might covered interest parity fail to hold when comparing deposits issued in *different* financial centers?
4. After the global financial crisis, the central banks that fall within the framework of the Bank of International Settlement (BIS) set up the “Basel III” agreement in 2010. This new agreement includes more rigorous requirements for banks’ management and introduces some new ratios. One of the notable ratios is the LCR (liquidity coverage ratio), which requires a sufficient stock of unencumbered high quality liquid assets (HQLA). These assets should be easily and quickly convertible into cash in private markets to allow banks to meet their liquidity requirements in a 30 calendar-days liquidity stress scenario. Explain why such a ratio has been introduced. What is its rationale?
5. In their article (and the book) “This Time is Different,” Carmen M. Reinhart and Kenneth S. Rogoff asserted the view that both countries and creditors do learn from their mistakes, and due to better-informed macroeconomic policies and more discriminating lending practices, it is argued that the world may not see

any major defaults again. What elements can you find in chapter 20 to support this assertion?

6. The reforms introduced in the banking system after the financial crisis of 2007–2009 have sometimes been criticized by federation of bankers, who warned that requiring banks to hold more capital and reduce risk-taking will increase the lending cost and restrain investments and economy activity. In its last report on the “Implementation and Effects of the G20 Financial Regulatory Reforms,” the Financial Stability Board (August 2016) stated on the contrary that “The improvement in bank resilience has been achieved while maintaining the overall provision of credit to the real economy . . . Overall, banks have met the higher capital requirements . . . following a sharp decline after the crisis, both total and bank lending growth have resumed in all regions, albeit at different paces.” Comment on this debate.
7. Why might growing securitization make it harder for bank supervisors to keep track of risks to the financial system?
8. Take the example of two countries that produce random amounts of rice and can trade claims on that product. Suppose the two countries also develop fisheries but cannot export the fishes because of a health regulation. How do you think this development of fisheries would affect the ratio of international asset trade to GNP for Home and Foreign?
9. Sometimes it is claimed that the international equality of *real* interest rates is the most accurate barometer of international financial integration. Do you agree? Why or why not?
10. Several multilateral or regional development banks have been created since World War II. The last born is the Asian Infrastructure Investment Bank (AIIB) created effectively in January 2016. It counts 50 members, mostly all the Asian countries plus some western and emerging economies. Apart from the political reasons which have been prevailing in the creation of this bank, do you think that its creation is a sign of a wrong functioning of the international financing market?
11. In interpreting ratios such as those in Table 20-1, one must be cautious about drawing the conclusion that diversification is rising as rapidly as the reported numbers rise. Suppose a Brazilian buys a Japanese international equity fund, which places its client’s money in Brazil’s stock market. What happens to Brazilian and Japan gross foreign assets and liabilities? What happens to Brazilian and Japan international diversification?
12. Banks are not happy when regulators force them to raise the ratio of capital to total assets: They argue that this reduces their potential profits. When a bank *borrow*s more in order to purchase more risky assets, however, the interest rate it must pay on the borrowing should be high enough to compensate the lenders for the risk that the bank cannot repay in full—and the higher interest rate reduces bank profits. In light of this observation, is it obvious to you that it is more profitable for the bank to finance its asset purchase by borrowing, rather than by issuing additional shares of stock (and thereby increasing rather than reducing its ratio of capital to total assets)?
13. How would your answer to problem 12 change if the bank’s creditors expect the government sometimes to step in with a bailout that prevents losses on the bank’s debt liabilities?
14. If you return to Figure 20-4, you will notice that London Eurodollar interest rates tend to exceed U.S. certificate of deposit rates after the global financial crisis, but not before. Why do you think this is the case? (Be sure to return to this question after you read Chapter 21!)

## FURTHER READINGS

---

- Viral V. Acharya, Nirupama Kulkarni, and Matthew Richardson. "Capital, Contingent Capital, and Liquidity Requirements," in Viral V. Acharya, Thomas F. Cooley, Matthew P. Richardson, and Ingo Walter, eds., *Regulating Wall Street: The Dodd-Frank Act and the Architecture of Global Finance*. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, 2011, pp. 143–180. Clear discussion of the goals and limitations of the Dodd-Frank act and Basel III.
- Anat Admati and Martin Hellwig. *The Bankers' New Clothes: What's Wrong with Banking and What to Do about It*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2013. A lucid account of banks' incentives to propagate financial fragility by financing their asset holdings with debt rather than capital.
- Alan S. Blinder. *After the Music Stopped: The Financial Crisis, the Response, and the Work Ahead*. New York: Penguin Press, 2013. An influential economist's account of the origins and repercussions of the global financial crisis of 2007–2009.
- Markus K. Brunnermeier, Andrew Crockett, Charles A. E. Goodhart, Avinash Persaud, and Hyun Song Shin. *The Fundamental Principles of Financial Regulation*. Geneva and London: International Center for Monetary and Banking Studies and Centre for Economic Policy Research, 2009. Comprehensive review of regulatory approaches to financial crisis prevention, with emphasis on the macroprudential perspective.
- Stijn Claessens, Richard J. Herring, and Dirk Schoenmaker. *A Safer World Financial System: Improving the Resolution of Systemic Institutions*. Geneva and London: International Center for Monetary and Banking Studies and Centre for Economic Policy Research, 2010. Discusses the reorganization of insolvent institutions in a global setting.
- Nicolas Coeurdacier and Hélène Rey. "Home Bias in Open Economy Financial Macroeconomics." *Journal of Economic Literature* 51 (March 2012), pp. 63–115. Advanced theoretical and empirical overview of home bias in international asset portfolios.
- Barry Eichengreen. "International Financial Regulation after the Crisis." *Daedalus* (Fall 2010), pp. 107–114. Description and critique of the current institutional framework for global cooperation in regulating international finance.
- Stanley Fischer. "On the Need for an International Lender of Last Resort." *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 13 (Fall 1999), pp. 85–104. Focuses on the IMF's ability to function as an international LLR.
- Kenneth A. Froot and Richard H. Thaler. "Anomalies: Foreign Exchange." *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 4 (Summer 1990), pp. 179–192. Clear, nontechnical discussion of the empirical evidence on the interest parity condition.
- Charles A. E. Goodhart. "Myths about the Lender of Last Resort." *International Finance* 2 (November 1999), pp. 339–360. Clear discussion of the theory and practice of the LLR function.
- Charles P. Kindleberger and Robert Aliber. *Manias, Panics, and Crashes: A History of Financial Crises*, 5th edition. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, 2005. An historical review of international financial crises from the 17th century to the present day.
- Richard M. Levich. "Is the Foreign Exchange Market Efficient?" *Oxford Review of Economic Policy* 5 (1989), pp. 40–60. Valuable survey of research on the efficiency of the foreign exchange market.
- Haim Levy and Marshall Sarnat. "International Portfolio Diversification," in Richard J. Herring, ed. *Managing Foreign Exchange Risk*. Cambridge, U.K.: Cambridge University Press, 1983, pp. 115–142. A nice exposition of the logic of international asset diversification.
- Nelson C. Mark. *International Macroeconomics and Finance*. Oxford: Blackwell Publishers, 2001. Chapter 6 discusses the efficiency of the foreign exchange market.
- Maurice Obstfeld. "The Global Capital Market: Benefactor or Menace?" *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 12 (Fall 1998), pp. 9–30. Overview of the functions, operations, and implications for national sovereignty of the international capital market.

- Maurice Obstfeld and Kenneth Rogoff. "Global Imbalances and the Financial Crisis: Products of Common Causes," in Reuven Glick and Mark Spiegel, eds. *Asia and the Global Financial Crisis*. San Francisco, CA: Federal Reserve Bank of San Francisco, 2010. An analysis of the links between global financial flows and the financial crisis of 2007–2009.
- Eswar S. Prasad. *The Dollar Trap: How the U.S. Dollar Tightened Its Grip on Global Finance*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2015. Panoramic analysis of the U.S. dollar's central role in global financial markets.
- Carmen M. Reinhart and Kenneth S. Rogoff. *This Time Is Different: Eight Centuries of Financial Folly*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2009. Data-based historical overview of the precedents and effects of financial crises around the world.
- Garry J. Schinasi. *Safeguarding Financial Stability: Theory and Practice*. Washington, D.C.: International Monetary Fund, 2006. Thorough overview of financial stability threats in a context of globalized financial markets.



# CHAPTER 21

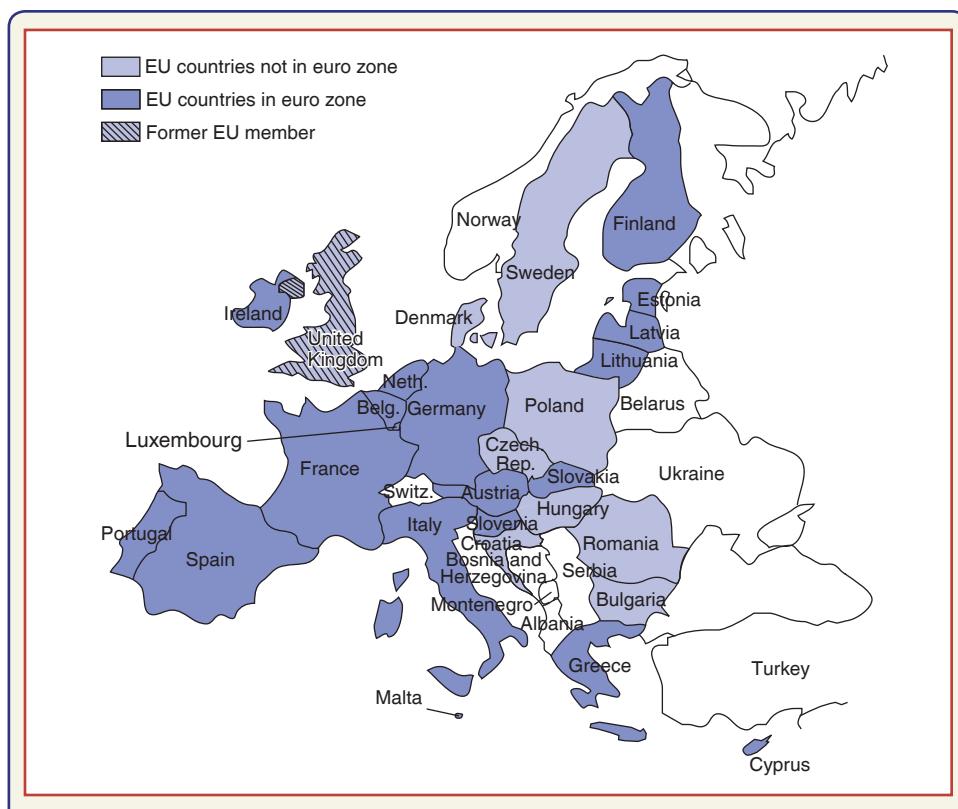
## OPTIMUM CURRENCY AREAS AND THE EURO

**O**n January 1, 1999, 11 member countries of the European Union (EU) adopted a common currency, the euro. They have since been joined by eight more EU members. Europe's bold experiment in economic and monetary union (EMU), which many had viewed as a visionary fantasy only a few years earlier, created a currency area with more than 340 million consumers—roughly 4.5 percent more populous than the United States. If the countries of Eastern Europe were all eventually to enter the euro zone, it would comprise more than 25 countries and stretch from the Arctic Ocean in the north to the Mediterranean Sea in the south, and from the Atlantic Ocean in the west to the Black Sea in the east. Figure 21-1 shows the extent of the euro zone as of 2021.

The birth of the euro resulted in fixed exchange rates between all EMU member countries. In deciding to form a monetary union, however, EMU countries sacrificed even more sovereignty over their monetary policies than a fixed exchange rate regime normally requires. They agreed to give up national currencies entirely and to hand over control of their monetary policies to a shared European Central Bank (ECB). The euro project thus represents an extreme solution to the monetary policy trilemma of Chapter 19: absolute exchange rate stability, absolute openness to financial trade, but no monetary autonomy whatsoever.

The European experience raises a host of important questions. How and why did Europe set up its single currency? What benefits has the euro delivered for the economies of its members, and why have they found themselves in a protracted crisis? How does the euro affect countries outside the EMU, notably the United States? And what lessons does the European experience carry for other potential currency blocs, such as the Mercosur trading group in South America?

This chapter focuses on Europe's experience of monetary unification to illustrate the economic benefits and costs of fixed exchange rate agreements and more comprehensive currency unification schemes. As we see in Europe's experience, the effects of joining a fixed exchange rate agreement are complex and depend crucially on microeconomic and macroeconomic factors. Our discussion of Europe will throw light not only on the forces promoting or obstructing greater unification of national economies but also on the forces that make a country think twice before giving up completely its control over monetary policy.

**FIGURE 21-1****Members of the Euro Zone as of January 1, 2021**

The heavily shaded countries on the map are the 19 members of EMU: Austria, Belgium, Cyprus, Estonia, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Ireland, Italy, Latvia, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Malta, the Netherlands, Portugal, the Slovak Republic, Slovenia, and Spain. The United Kingdom never adopted the euro, and it left the EU in 2020 owing to the exit referendum of June 2016.

Any discussion of Europe's institutions is replete with abbreviations and acronyms. Table 21-1 provides a partial list for easy reference.

**TABLE 21-1 A Brief Glossary of Euronyms**

ECB	European Central Bank
EIB	European Investment Bank
EMS	European Monetary System
EMU	Economic and Monetary Union
ERM	Exchange Rate Mechanism
ESCB	European System of Central Banks
ESM	European Stability Mechanism
EU	European Union
OMT	Outright Monetary Transactions
PEPP	Pandemic Emergency Purchase Program
SGP	Stability and Growth Pact
SSM	Single Supervisory Mechanism

## LEARNING GOALS

After reading this chapter, you will be able to:

- Discuss why Europeans have long sought to stabilize their mutual exchange rates while floating against the U.S. dollar.
- Describe how the European Union, through the Maastricht Treaty of 1991, placed itself on the road to having a single currency, the euro, issued and managed by a European Central Bank (ECB).
- Detail the structure of the ECB, the European System of Central Banks, and the European Union's arrangements for coordinating member states' economic policies.
- Articulate the main lessons of the theory of optimum currency areas.
- Recount how the 19 countries using the euro have fared so far in their currency union and the steps they have taken in response to prolonged series of economic crises.

## How the European Single Currency Evolved

Until its demise in 1973, the Bretton Woods system fixed every member country's exchange rate against the U.S. dollar and as a result automatically fixed the exchange rate between every pair of nondollar currencies. EU countries allowed their currencies to float against the dollar after 1973 but have tried progressively to narrow the extent to which they let their currencies fluctuate against each other. These efforts culminated in the birth of the euro on January 1, 1999.

### What Has Driven European Monetary Cooperation?

What prompted the EU countries to seek closer coordination of monetary policies and greater mutual exchange rate stability? Two main motives inspired these moves and remained major reasons for the adoption of the euro:

1. *To enhance Europe's role in the world monetary system.* The events leading up to the collapse of the Bretton Woods system were accompanied by declining European confidence in the readiness of the United States to place its international monetary responsibilities ahead of its national interests (Chapter 19). By speaking with a single voice on monetary issues, EU countries hoped to defend more effectively their own economic interests in the face of an increasingly self-absorbed United States.
2. *To turn the European Union into a truly unified market.* Even though the 1957 Treaty of Rome founding the EU had established a customs union, significant official barriers to the movements of goods and factors within Europe remained. A consistent goal of EU members has been to eliminate all such barriers and transform the EU into a huge unified market on the model of the United States, including the free movement of workers across internal borders. European officials believed, however, that exchange rate uncertainty, like official trade barriers, was a major factor reducing trade within Europe. They also feared that exchange rate swings causing large changes in intra-European relative prices would strengthen political forces hostile to free trade within Europe.

The aspiration of a single European currency was first set out officially in 1970—and it was no coincidence that at the time, the Bretton Woods system of fixed exchange

rates (which implied mutually fixed exchange rates among European countries) was fraying.<sup>1</sup>

The key to understanding how Europe has come so far in both market and monetary unification lies in the continent's war-torn history. After the end of World War II in 1945, many European leaders agreed that economic cooperation and integration among the former belligerents would be the best guarantee against a repetition of the 20th century's two devastating wars. The result was a gradual ceding of national economic policy powers to centralized European Union governing bodies, such as the European Commission in Brussels, Belgium (the EU's executive body), and the European Central Bank in Frankfurt, Germany.

Some Europeans argue that this governance structure became unwieldy and too distant from voters in member states, especially as the EU rapidly expanded eastward starting in 2004 to absorb nations of the former Soviet bloc. Mirroring these frustrations, and amid other EU tensions, British voters directed their government to negotiate the United Kingdom's exit from the EU in a June 2016 referendum. The subsequent U.K. exit, referred to as "Brexit," represents the first departure of a member country and a major setback for the European project.

## BREXIT

**O**n June 23, 2016, British citizens voted on the referendum question "Should the United Kingdom remain a member of the European Union or leave the European Union?" To the surprise of many, nearly 52 percent of them voted "Leave." After more than four decades of membership, Britain wanted a divorce—dubbed "Brexit"—from its Continental partners. In the immediate aftermath of the vote, stock markets across the world tumbled, and as you can see in the accompanying chart, the pound sterling plummeted.

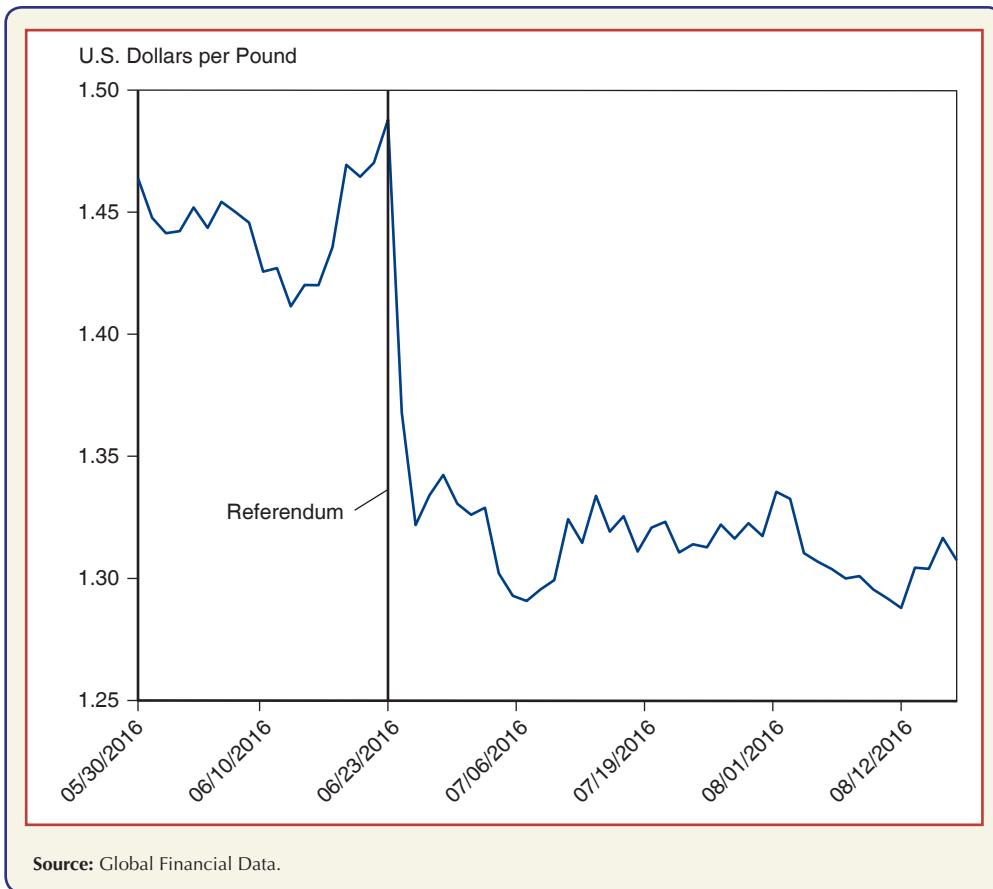
Not only did betting and financial markets, pundits, and economists alike mostly expect the "Remain" option to beat "Leave," so did most businesses. Brexit therefore caught many of them

by surprise. According to *The Economist* magazine, a pre-referendum survey by Germany's industry federation found that 70 percent of firms didn't have any contingency plans in the event of Brexit.<sup>2</sup> As it turned out, neither did Her Majesty's Government. In the months after the vote, Britain's political leaders scrambled to figure out how to carry out the voters' wishes.

Perhaps this development should not have been quite so shocking. Britain's relationship with the Continental European trade bloc has been ambivalent since its initial incarnation as the European Coal and Steel Community in 1952. For example, Britain did not join the euro, choosing instead to retain its own currency, a development that left the

<sup>1</sup>A very important administrative reason Europeans have sought to avoid big movements in European cross-exchange rates relates to the Common Agricultural Policy (CAP), the EU's system of agricultural price supports. Prior to the euro, agricultural prices were quoted in terms of the European Currency Unit (ECU), a basket of EU currencies. Exchange rate realignments within Europe would abruptly alter the real domestic value of the supported prices, provoking protests from farmers in the revaluing countries. While the annoyance of administering the CAP under exchange rate realignments was undoubtedly crucial in hastening Europeans on the road to currency unification, the two motives cited in the text are more important in explaining how Europe ultimately came to embrace a common currency. The 1970 Werner Report, which was the first official road map to a single European currency, expresses these motivations clearly. See Pierre Werner et al., *Report to the Council and the Commission on the Realization by Stages of Economic and Monetary Union in the Community* (Brussels: Council-Commission of the European Communities, 1970); available online at [https://ec.europa.eu/economy\\_finance/publications/pages/publication6142\\_en.pdf](https://ec.europa.eu/economy_finance/publications/pages/publication6142_en.pdf).

<sup>2</sup>See "After the Brexit Vote: Rules and Britannia," *The Economist*, July 9, 2016.



country feeling increasingly marginalized within the EU. Less than 30 months after its initial embrace of Europe in January 1973, the United Kingdom held a first referendum on leaving, with voters opting to remain by a two-to-one margin. Leaving decades later in 2020, after nearly five decades of deep integration between the British and Continental economies, would prove much more costly. Nonetheless, that is what British voters chose to do.

Why did British voters decide to leave? The reasons are complex, but a number of factors stand out. First and foremost was the desire to limit immigration from Eastern Europe and the benefits, such as medical care, the U.K. government must provide to immigrants under EU law. In the year ending March 2015, net migration into Britain was 330,000 (though not all migrants came from other EU countries). Many voters were

angry owing to beliefs that immigrants were taking local jobs and crowding social services, although there is little evidence to back up such fears. (Indeed, regions that voted for Brexit tended to have far fewer immigrants than those voting to remain.) Another factor was the panoply of regulations from EU headquarters in Brussels, felt by many to be intrusive, overly detailed, and unnecessary to promote intra-EU trade. The very effective slogan of the campaign for the “Leave” position was “Take Back Control.”<sup>3</sup>

Britain’s departure from the EU has required it to renegotiate its trade relationship not just with the remaining 27 EU countries but also with the rest of the world: While in the EU, its trade with non-EU partners was governed by agreements negotiated by the EU on behalf of all its members. Another problem is the need to replace the body of EU

<sup>3</sup>The 2019 film *Brexit: The Uncivil War*, starring Benedict Cumberbatch, dramatizes the political events in the months before the referendum.

regulations that, while arguably too detailed at times, were at least predictable. Sectors as diverse as airlines, universities, energy, pharmaceuticals, and telecommunications—even beekeepers—faced uncertainty regarding regulations, subsidies, and patents that could seriously hinder investment going forward. An extended and chaotic negotiation process between Britain and the EU27 finally led to Parliament approving a Withdrawal Agreement Bill in October 2019. Under the bill, Brexit took place on January 31, 2020, followed by an 11-month transition period during which Britain continued to follow EU rules and enjoy frictionless trade with other EU countries. The purpose of the transition period was to negotiate a permanent trading relationship.

One key feature of the withdrawal agreement was a protocol on Ireland and Northern Ireland. The protocol set up a framework allowing the boundary between Northern Ireland (a part of the United Kingdom) and the Republic of Ireland to remain free of border controls—no matter what the eventual U.K.–EU trade relationship. A foundation of the Good Friday Agreement of April 1998, which ended decades of sectarian violence in Northern Ireland, was the full integration of economic activity on the Irish island, only possible because both parts belonged to the EU. Within the Good Friday framework, complete elimination of any physical border between the Irish republic and Northern Ireland took on immense symbolic and practical significance. With the United Kingdom and the EU in separate customs and regulatory areas, however, how could they avoid some kind of border controls between the two parts of Ireland? The Irish protocol's solution essentially moves the customs border off the island. It leaves Northern Ireland partially within the EU single market *de facto*, requiring administrative checks (essentially, a customs border) for trade between the island of Great Britain (encompassing England, Scotland, and Wales) and the island of Ireland. Without these checks, goods not subject to EU tariffs or health standards would be able to find their way into the EU market via Northern Ireland. For example, goods transiting from Great Britain to the

Republic of Ireland via Northern Ireland are supposed to pay EU tariffs before they cross the Irish Sea. This requires some form of control procedures as goods reach the water's edge. In short, the protocol avoids barriers on the Irish island itself, but at the cost of imposing them between Northern Ireland and the rest of the United Kingdom.<sup>4</sup>

The stringency of such barriers depends, of course, on the extent of trade frictions in the ultimate trade relationship between the United Kingdom and the EU. The United Kingdom's negotiating goal has been to enjoy tariff- and quota-free trade with the EU. As 2020 passed, however, issues ranging from regulatory harmonization to dispute resolution to state aid to fishing rights remained in contention. As governments were swept up in their responses to the COVID-19 pandemic and the resulting economic crisis, it began to look increasingly likely that the year could end with only a very limited permanent trade agreement or with none at all. Under the latter outcome, Britain would simply trade with the EU under general World Trade Organization (WTO) rules, like most other non-EU countries. It would face tariffs and other trade barriers in its trade with the EU that would also disadvantage its financial sector, a large contributor to British GDP that enjoyed privileged access to other EU countries prior to Brexit. Britain's integration into European supply chains, built up over nearly a half century, could have been undermined overnight.

At virtually the last possible moment, around Christmas 2020, the United Kingdom and the EU finally reached an agreement on their permanent trading relationship. The British achieved tariff- and quota-free trade, but with at least two hitches. First, tariffs and quotas were avoided on important components of manufacturing trade, thus giving some protection to European supply chains. British services, particularly financial services, are a very important element in exports to the EU, however, and these remained subject to regulatory barriers. Second, the agreement allows trade barriers to be imposed if U.K. and EU regulatory standards (for example, on the labor or environmental

<sup>4</sup>The book by O'Rourke in Further Readings offers a comprehensive historical view of the U.K.–EU relationship, with a focus on Ireland. A gripping account of how the Irish border problem became so central to the negotiations following the U.K. referendum is Tony Connelly, *Brexit and Ireland: The Dangers, the Opportunities, and the Inside Story of the Irish Response* (London: Penguin Books, 2018). The Irish protocol requires Northern Ireland periodically to consent to renew its trading arrangements, the first time after four years.

regulations that firms face) diverge too markedly, giving one partner an export-cost advantage. This feature of the agreement leaves costly uncertainty for exporters and importers.

It is difficult to predict how costly the effects of Brexit will turn out to be under the new U.K.–EU trading relationship—especially because many features are left to be worked out over time. The lively pre-referendum debate over the economic costs of Brexit illustrated the difficulties of estimation. Early on after the Brexit referendum, the International Monetary Fund estimated that if the U.K. ended up trading under WTO rules, it would be 3.4 percent poorer in the long run than it would have been without Brexit. Perhaps ironically, a large share of these losses came from subtracting

the contribution of immigrants to the British economy. The rest of the EU would have been 0.4 percent poorer under WTO rules, according to the IMF. Pro-Brexiters have accused the IMF of fear-mongering, but two years later, the British government itself estimated that the long-term losses to Britain from reverting to WTO rules would be 7.7 percent of GDP with no change in immigration policies, and 9.3 percent of GDP if inflows of European workers ceased. Keep in mind that these losses not only are large, they are permanent.<sup>5</sup> The trade agreement reached at the end of 2020 will be far less costly than a “no-deal” outcome would have been, but will nonetheless leave the British economy considerably poorer than it would have been had it remained in the EU.

## The European Monetary System, 1979–1998

The immediate precursor to EMU on the road to European monetary unification was the **European Monetary System (EMS)**. The eight original participants in the EMS’s exchange rate mechanism—France, Germany, Italy, Belgium, Denmark, Ireland, Luxembourg, and the Netherlands—began operating a formal network of mutually pegged exchange rates in March 1979. A complex set of EMS intervention arrangements worked to restrict the exchange rates of participating currencies within specified fluctuation margins.<sup>6</sup>

The prospects for a successful fixed-rate area in Europe seemed bleak in early 1979, when recent yearly inflation rates ranged from Germany’s 2.7 percent to Italy’s 12.1 percent. Through a mixture of policy cooperation and realignment, however, the EMS fixed exchange rate club survived and even grew, adding Spain to its ranks in 1989, Britain in 1990, and Portugal early in 1992. Only in September 1992 did this growth suffer a sudden setback when Britain and Italy left the EMS exchange rate mechanism at the start of a protracted European currency crisis that forced the remaining members to retreat to very wide exchange rate margins.

Several safety valves that initially helped reduce the frequency of such crises aided the EMS’s operation. Most exchange rates “fixed” by the EMS until August 1993 actually could fluctuate up or down by as much as 2.25 percent relative to an assigned par value. A few members were able to negotiate bands of  $\pm 6$  percent, making a greater sacrifice of exchange rate stability but gaining more room to choose their own

<sup>5</sup>See International Monetary Fund, *World Economic Outlook*, October 2016, chapter 1; and HM Government, *EU Exit: Long-Term Economic Analysis*, November 2018 (London: Controller of Her Majesty’s Stationery Office, 2018). The U.K. government study incorporates dynamic positive effects of trade integration on productivity, effects that raise the costs of Brexit beyond the more limited but standard costs due to “static” consumption and production deadweight losses. An influential academic study puts the static U.K. loss from reversion to WTO rules at 2.7 percent of income (not far from the IMF number) and the loss including dynamic effects at about three times that level, similar to the U.K. government’s analysis. See Swati Dhingra, Hanwei Huang, Gianmarco Ottaviano, João Paulo Pessoa, Thomas Sampson, and John Van Reenen, “The Costs and Benefits of Leaving the EU: Trade Effects,” *Economic Policy* 32 (October 2017), pp. 651–705.

<sup>6</sup>As a technical matter, all EU members were members of the EMS, but only those EMS members who enforced the fluctuation margins belonged to the EMS exchange rate mechanism (ERM).

monetary policies. In August 1993, EMS countries decided to widen nearly all of the bands to  $\pm 15$  percent under the pressure of speculative attacks.

As another crucial safety valve, the EMS developed generous provisions for the extension of credit from strong- to weak-currency members. If the French franc (France's former currency) depreciated too far against the deutsche mark (or DM, Germany's former currency), Germany's central bank, the Bundesbank, was expected to lend the Bank of France DM to sell for francs in the foreign exchange market.

Finally, during the system's initial years of operation several members (notably France and Italy) reduced the possibility of speculative attack by maintaining *capital controls* that directly limited domestic residents' sales of home for foreign currencies.

The EMS went through periodic currency realignments. In all, 11 realignments occurred between the start of the EMS in March 1979 and January 1987. Capital controls played the important role of shielding members' reserves from speculators during these adjustments. Starting in 1987, however, a phased removal of capital controls by EMS countries increased the possibility of speculative attacks and thus reduced governments' willingness openly to consider devaluing or revaluing. The removal of controls greatly reduced member countries' monetary independence (a consequence of the monetary policy trilemma), but freedom of payments and capital movements within the EU had always been a key element of EU countries' plan to turn Europe into a unified single market.

For a period of five and a half years after January 1987, no adverse economic event was able to shake the EMS's commitment to its fixed exchange rates. This state of affairs came to an end in 1992, however, as economic shocks caused by the reunification of East and West Germany in 1990 led to asymmetrical macroeconomic pressures in Germany and in its major EMS partners.

The result of reunification was a boom in Germany and higher inflation, which Germany's very inflation-averse central bank, the Bundesbank, resisted through sharply higher interest rates. (Germany's very high inflation after both world wars left permanent scars.) Other EMS countries such as France, Italy, and the United Kingdom, however, were not simultaneously booming. By matching high German interest rates to hold their currencies fixed against Germany's, they were unwillingly pushing their own economies into deep recession. The policy conflict between Germany and its partners led to a series of fierce speculative attacks on the EMS exchange parities starting in September 1992. By August 1993, as previously noted, the EMS was forced to retreat to very wide ( $\pm 15$  percent) bands, which it kept in place until the introduction of the euro in 1999.

## German Monetary Dominance and the Credibility Theory of the EMS

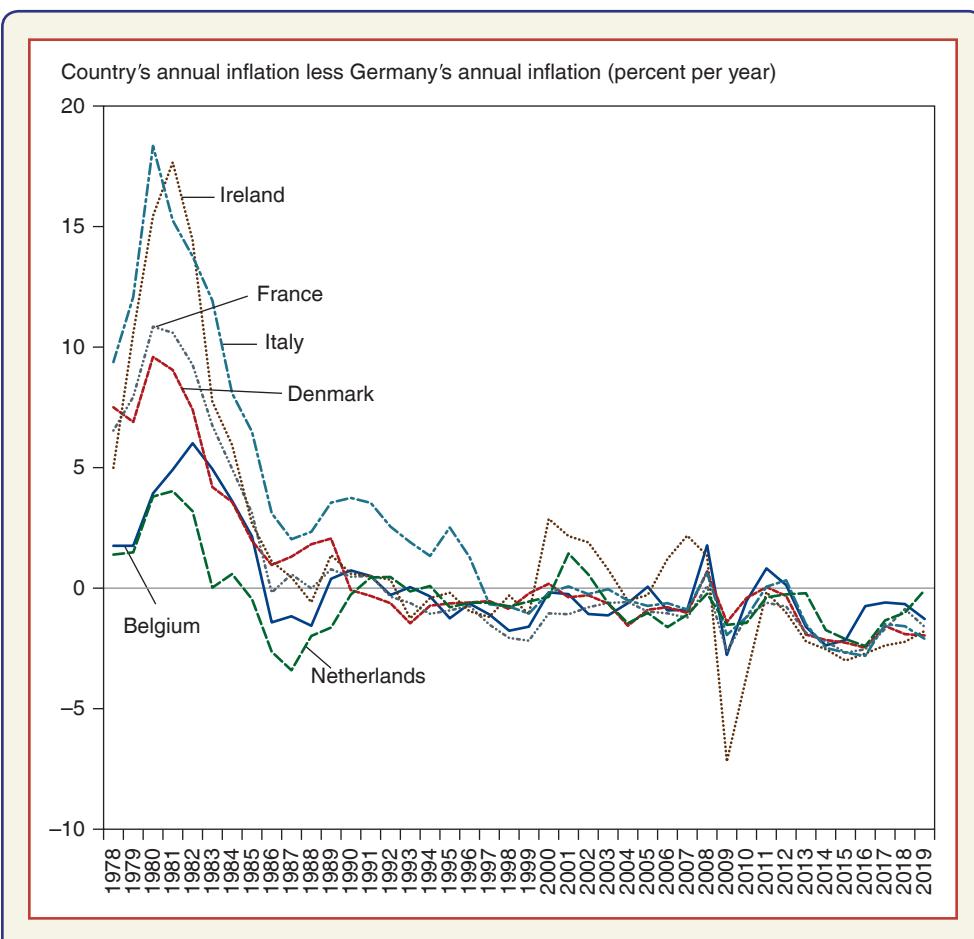
Earlier, we identified two main reasons why the European Union sought to fix internal exchange rates: a desire to defend Europe's economic interests more effectively on the world stage and the ambition to achieve greater internal economic unity.

Europe's experience of high inflation in the 1970s suggests an additional purpose that the EMS grew to fulfill. By fixing their exchange rates against the DM, the other EMS countries in effect imported the German Bundesbank's credibility as an inflation fighter and thus discouraged the development of inflationary pressures at home—pressures they might otherwise have been tempted to accommodate through monetary expansion. This view, the **credibility theory of the EMS**, holds that the political costs of violating an international exchange rate agreement may be useful. They can restrain governments from depreciating their currencies to gain the short-term advantage of an economic boom at the long-term cost of higher inflation.

Policy makers in inflation-prone EMS countries, such as Italy, clearly gained credibility by placing monetary policy decisions in the hands of the inflation-fearing

German central bank. Devaluation was still possible, but only subject to EMS restrictions. Because politicians also feared that they would look incompetent to voters if they devalued, a government's decision to peg to the DM reduced both its willingness and its ability to create domestic inflation.<sup>7</sup>

Added support for the credibility theory comes from the behavior of inflation rates relative to Germany's, shown in Figure 21-2 for six of the other original EMS



**FIGURE 21-2**

### Inflation Convergence for Six Original EMS Members, 1978–2019

Shown are the differences between domestic inflation and German inflation for six of the original EMS members: Belgium, Denmark, France, Ireland, Italy, and the Netherlands.

**Source:** CPI inflation rates from International Monetary Fund, *International Financial Statistics*, and BLS.

<sup>7</sup>The general theory that an inflation-prone country gains from vesting its monetary policy decisions with a “conservative” central bank is developed in an influential paper by Kenneth Rogoff. See “The Optimal Degree of Commitment to an Intermediate Monetary Target,” *Quarterly Journal of Economics* 100 (November 1985), pp. 1169–1189. For application to the EMS, see Francesco Giavazzi and Marco Pagano, “The Advantage of Tying One’s Hands: EMS Discipline and Central Bank Credibility,” *European Economic Review* 32 (June 1988), pp. 1055–1082.

members.<sup>8</sup> As the figure shows, annual inflation rates gradually converged toward the low German levels.<sup>9</sup>

### Market Integration Initiatives

The EU countries have tried to achieve greater internal economic unity not only by fixing mutual exchange rates but also through direct measures to encourage the free flow of goods, services, and factors of production. Later in this chapter you will learn that the extent of product and factor market integration within Europe helps to determine how fixed exchange rates affect Europe's macroeconomic stability. Europe's efforts to raise *microeconomic* efficiency through direct market liberalization have also increased its preference for mutually fixed exchange rates on *macroeconomic* grounds.

The process of market unification that began when the original EU members formed their customs union in 1957 was still incomplete 30 years later. In a number of industries, such as automobiles and telecommunications, trade within Europe was discouraged by government-imposed standards and registration requirements. Often government licensing or purchasing practices gave domestic producers virtual monopoly positions in their home markets. In the Single European Act of 1986 (which amended the founding Treaty of Rome), EU members took the crucial political steps to remove remaining internal barriers to trade, capital movements, and labor migration. Most important, they dropped the Treaty of Rome's requirement of unanimous consent for measures related to market completion, so that one or two self-interested EU members could not block trade liberalization measures as in the past. Further moves toward market integration have followed. Financial capital, for example, now can move quite freely not only within the European Union but also between the European Union and outside jurisdictions.

### European Economic and Monetary Union

Countries can link their currencies together in many ways. We can imagine that the different modes of linkage form a spectrum, with the arrangements at one end requiring little sacrifice of monetary policy independence and those at the other end requiring giving up independence entirely.

The early EMS, characterized by frequent currency realignments and widespread government control over capital movements, left some scope for national monetary policies. In 1989, a committee headed by Jacques Delors, president of the European Commission, recommended a three-stage transition to a goal at the extreme end of the policy spectrum just described. That goal was an **economic and monetary union (EMU)**, a European Union in which a single EU currency, managed by a sole central bank operating on behalf of all EU members, would replace national currencies.

On December 10, 1991, the leaders of the EU countries met at the ancient Dutch city of Maastricht and agreed to propose for national ratification far-reaching amendments to the Treaty of Rome. These amendments were meant to place the EU squarely on the road to EMU. Included in the 250-page **Maastricht Treaty** was a provision calling for the introduction of a single European currency and a European Central Bank no later than January 1, 1999. By 1993, all 12 countries then belonging to the EU had

<sup>8</sup>Figure 21-2 does not include the tiny country of Luxembourg because before 1999, that country had a currency union with Belgium and an inflation rate very close to Belgium's.

<sup>9</sup>Those skeptical of the credibility theory of EMS inflation convergence point out that the United States, Britain, and Japan also reduced inflation to low levels over the 1980s but did so without fixing their exchange rates. Many other countries have done the same since.

ratified the Maastricht Treaty. The 16 countries that joined the EU afterward accepted the Treaty's provisions upon joining (see Figure 21-1).<sup>10</sup>

Why did the EU countries move away from the EMS and toward the much more ambitious goal of a single shared currency? There were four reasons:

1. They believed a single EU currency would produce a greater degree of European market integration than fixed exchange rates by removing the threat of EMS currency realignments and eliminating the costs to traders of converting one EMS currency into another. The single currency was viewed as a necessary complement to plans for melding EU markets into a single, continent-wide market.
2. Some EU leaders thought that Germany's management of EMS monetary policy had placed a one-sided emphasis on German macroeconomic goals at the expense of its EMS partners' interests. The European Central Bank that would replace the German Bundesbank under EMU would have to be more considerate of other countries' problems, and it would automatically give those countries the same opportunity as Germany to participate in system-wide monetary policy decisions.
3. Given the move to complete freedom of capital movements within the EU, there seemed to be little to gain, and much to lose, from keeping national currencies with fixed (but adjustable) parities rather than irrevocably locking parities through a single currency. Any system of fixed exchange rates among distinct national currencies would be subject to ferocious speculative attacks, as in 1992–1993. If Europeans wished to combine permanently fixed exchange rates with freedom of capital movements, a single currency was the best way to accomplish this.
4. As previously noted, all of the EU countries' leaders hoped the Maastricht Treaty's provisions would guarantee the political stability of Europe. Beyond its purely economic functions, the single EU currency was intended as a potent symbol of Europe's desire to place cooperation ahead of the national rivalries that often had led to war in the past. Under this scenario, the new currency would align the economic interests of individual European nations to create an overwhelming political constituency for peace on the continent.

The Maastricht Treaty's critics denied that EMU would have these positive effects and opposed the treaty's provisions for vesting stronger governmental powers with the European Union. To these critics, EMU was symptomatic of a tendency for the European Union's central institutions to ignore local needs, meddle in local affairs, and downgrade prized symbols of national identity (including, of course, national currencies). Germany's citizens in particular, traumatized by memories of severe postwar inflations, feared that the new European Central Bank would not fight inflation as fiercely as their Bundesbank did.

## The Euro and Economic Policy in the Euro Zone

How were the initial members of EMU chosen, how are new members admitted, and what is the structure of the complex of financial and political institutions that govern economic policy in the euro zone? This section provides an overview.

<sup>10</sup>Denmark and the United Kingdom, however, ratified the Maastricht Treaty subject to special exceptions that allowed them to "opt out" of the treaty's monetary provisions and retain their national currencies. Sweden has no formal opt out, but it has exploited other technicalities in the Maastricht Treaty to avoid joining the euro zone so far.

## The Maastricht Convergence Criteria and the Stability and Growth Pact

The Maastricht Treaty requires EU countries to satisfy several macroeconomic convergence criteria prior to admission to EMU. Among these criteria are:

1. The country's inflation rate in the year before admission must be no more than 1.5 percent above the average rate of the three EU member states with the lowest inflation.
2. The country must have maintained a stable exchange rate within the ERM without devaluing on its own initiative.
3. The country must have a public-sector deficit no higher than 3 percent of its GDP (except in exceptional and temporary circumstances).
4. The country must have a public debt that is below or approaching a reference level of 60 percent of its GDP.

The treaty provides for the ongoing monitoring of criteria 3 and 4 mentioned previously by the European Commission even after admission to EMU, and for the levying of penalties on countries that violate these fiscal rules and do not correct situations of “excessive” deficits and debt. The surveillance and sanctions over high deficits and debts place national governments under constraints in the exercise of their national fiscal powers. For example, a highly indebted EMU country facing a national recession might be unable to use expansionary fiscal policy for fear of breaching the Maastricht limits—a possibly costly loss of policy autonomy, given the absence of a national monetary policy!

In addition, a supplementary **Stability and Growth Pact (SGP)** negotiated by European leaders in 1997 tightened the fiscal straitjacket further. The SGP set out “the medium-term budgetary objective of positions close to balance or in surplus.” It also set a timetable for the imposition of financial penalties on countries that fail to correct situations of “excessive” deficits and debt promptly enough. What explains the macroeconomic convergence criteria, the fear of high public debts, and the SGP? Before they would sign the Maastricht Treaty, low-inflation countries such as Germany wanted assurance that their EMU partners had learned to prefer an environment of low inflation and fiscal restraint. They feared that otherwise, the euro might be a weak currency, falling prey to the types of policies that have fueled French, Greek, Italian, Portuguese, Spanish, and United Kingdom inflation at various points since the early 1970s. A highly indebted government that continues to borrow may find that the market demand for its bonds disappears—a nightmare scenario that finally came to pass for several European countries in the euro crisis starting in 2009. Another fear about EMU was that the new European Central Bank would face pressures to purchase government debt directly in such situations, thereby fueling money supply growth and inflation. Voters in traditionally low-inflation countries worried that prudent governments within EMU would be forced to pick up the tab for profligate governments that borrowed more than they could afford to repay. This was especially true in Germany, where taxpayers in the country’s western part were bearing the cost of absorbing the formerly Communist east. Consistent with this fear, the Maastricht Treaty also contained a “no bailout clause” prohibiting EU member countries from taking on other members’ debts.

As EMU came closer in 1997, German public opinion therefore remained opposed to the euro. The German government demanded the SGP as a way of convincing domestic voters that the new European Central Bank would indeed produce low inflation and avoid bailouts. Ironically, because Germany (along with France) is one of the countries that was subsequently in violation of the Maastricht fiscal rules, the SGP was not enforced in practice during the euro’s first decade—even though later experience showed the concerns that motivated it to be valid, as we shall see.

By May 1998, it was clear that 11 EU countries had satisfied the convergence criteria based on 1997 data and would be founding members of EMU: Austria, Belgium, Finland, France, Germany, Ireland, Italy, Luxembourg, the Netherlands, Portugal, and Spain. Greece failed to qualify on any of the criteria in 1998, although it ultimately appeared to pass all of its tests and entered EMU on January 1, 2001. Since then, Slovenia (on January 1, 2007), Cyprus and Malta (both on January 1, 2008), the Slovak Republic (January 1, 2009), Estonia (January 1, 2011), Latvia (January 1, 2014), and Lithuania (January 1, 2015) also have joined the euro zone.

### The European Central Bank and the Eurosystem

The *Eurosystem* conducts monetary policy for the euro zone and consists of the *European Central Bank* (ECB) in Frankfurt plus the 19 national central banks of the euro area, which now play roles analogous to those of the regional Federal Reserve banks in the United States. The Eurosystem makes decisions by votes of the governing council of the ECB, consisting of the six-member ECB executive board (including the president of the ECB) and the heads of the national central banks of the euro area. The European System of Central Banks (ESCB) consists of the ECB plus all 28 EU central banks, including those of countries that do not use the euro. Like members of the Eurosystem, non-euro area central banks are committed to pursue domestic price stability as well as various forms of cooperation with the Eurosystem. Some countries chose to peg their currencies to the euro, most notably a group of 14 formerly French-ruled countries in West and Central Africa. In 1945, these countries have replaced the French franc with their own currencies, the West African CFA franc and the Central African CFA franc, because they did not want to follow the devaluation of the French franc at that time. Since then, they maintain a peg to the French franc (with a devaluation in 1994) and later to the Euro.<sup>11</sup>

The authors of the Maastricht Treaty hoped to create an independent central bank free of the political influences that might lead to inflation.<sup>12</sup> The treaty gives the ECB an overriding mandate to pursue price stability and includes many provisions intended to insulate monetary policy decisions from political influence. In addition, unlike any other central bank in the world, the ECB operates beyond the reach of any single national government. In the United States, for example, Congress could easily pass laws reducing the independence of the Federal Reserve. In contrast, while the ECB is required to brief the European Parliament regularly on its activities, the European Parliament has no power to alter the statute of the ECB and ESCB. That would require an amendment to the Maastricht Treaty approved by legislatures or voters in every member country of the EU. However, critics of the treaty argue that it goes too far in shielding the ECB from normal democratic processes.

### The Revised Exchange Rate Mechanism

For EU countries that are not yet members of EMU, a revised exchange rate mechanism—referred to as ERM 2—defines broad exchange rate zones against the euro ( $\pm 15$  percent) and specifies reciprocal intervention arrangements to support these target zones. The EU viewed ERM 2 as necessary to discourage competitive devaluations against the euro by EU members outside the euro zone and to give would-be EMU entrants a way of

<sup>11</sup>For an overview on the CFA franc, see: Jean-Claude Tchatchouang, “The CFA Franc Zone: A Biography”, in Célestin Monga and Justin Yifu Lin (eds.), “The Oxford Handbook of Africa and Economics: Volume 2: Policies and Practices”, Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2015.

<sup>12</sup>Several studies show that central bank independence appears to be associated with lower inflation. For an assessment, see Christopher Croce and Ellen E. Meade, “Central Bank Independence and Transparency: Evolution and Effectiveness,” *European Journal of Political Economy* 24 (December 2008), pp. 763–777.

satisfying the Maastricht Treaty's exchange rate stability convergence criterion. Under ERM 2 rules, either the ECB or the national central bank of an EU member with its own currency can suspend euro intervention operations if they result in money supply changes that threaten to destabilize the domestic price level. In practice, ERM 2 is asymmetric, with peripheral countries pegging to the euro and adjusting passively to ECB decisions on interest rates.

## The Theory of Optimum Currency Areas

There is little doubt that the European monetary integration process has helped advance the *political* goals of its founders by giving the European Union a stronger position in international affairs. The survival and future development of the European monetary experiment depend more heavily, however, on its ability to help countries reach their *economic* goals. Here the picture is less clear because a country's decision to fix its exchange rate can in principle lead to economic sacrifices as well as benefits.

We saw in Chapter 19 that by changing its exchange rate, a country may succeed in cushioning the disruptive impact of various economic shocks. On the other hand, exchange rate flexibility can have potentially harmful effects, such as making relative prices less predictable or undermining the government's resolve to keep inflation in check. To weigh the economic costs against the advantages of joining a group of countries with mutually fixed exchange rates, we need a framework for thinking systematically about the stabilization powers a country sacrifices and the gains in efficiency and credibility it may reap.

In this section, we show that a country's costs and benefits from joining a fixed exchange rate area such as the euro zone depend on how integrated its economy is with those of its potential partners. The analysis leading to this conclusion, which is known as the theory of **optimum currency areas**, predicts that fixed exchange rates are most appropriate for areas closely integrated through international trade and factor movements.<sup>13</sup>

### Economic Integration and the Benefits of a Fixed Exchange Rate Area: The GG Schedule

Consider how an individual country, for example, Norway, might approach the decision of whether to join an area of fixed exchange rates, for example, the euro zone. Our goal is to develop a simple diagram that clarifies Norway's choice.

We begin by deriving the first of two elements in the diagram, a schedule called *GG* that shows how the potential gain to Norway from joining the euro zone depends on Norway's trading links with that region. Let us assume that Norway is considering pegging its currency, the krone, to the euro.

A major economic benefit of fixed exchange rates is that they simplify economic calculations and, compared to floating rates, provide a more predictable basis for decisions that involve international transactions. Imagine the time and resources American consumers and businesses would waste every day if each of the 50 United States had its own currency that fluctuated in value against the currencies of all the other states! Norway faces a similar disadvantage in its trade with the euro zone when it allows its krone to float against the euro. The **monetary efficiency gain** from joining the fixed exchange rate

---

<sup>13</sup>The original reference is Robert A. Mundell's classic article "The Theory of Optimum Currency Areas," *American Economic Review* 51 (September 1961), pp. 717–725. The book by Tower and Willett listed in Further Readings summarizes subsequent contributions. Mundell was arguing that the optimum currency area need not coincide with national boundaries. As we shall see, however, recent experience in the euro area suggests that if the currency area does reach beyond national borders, some key governmental functions may need to be delegated to supra-national authorities acting on behalf of the currency union as a whole.

system equals the joiner's savings from avoiding the uncertainty, confusion, and calculation and transaction costs that arise when exchange rates float.<sup>14</sup> For example, the fixed exchange rate between the Euro and the CFA franc is said to facilitate trade between Europe and the 14 West and Central African countries that use the CFA franc.<sup>15</sup>

In practice, it may be hard to attach a precise number to the total monetary efficiency gain Norway would enjoy if it pegged to the euro. We can be sure, however, that this gain will be higher if Norway trades a lot with euro zone countries. For example, if Norway's trade with the euro zone amounts to 50 percent of its GNP while its trade with the United States amounts to only 5 percent of GNP, then, other things equal, a fixed krone/euro exchange rate clearly yields a greater monetary efficiency gain to Norwegian traders than a fixed krone/dollar rate. Similarly, the efficiency gain from a fixed krone/euro rate is greater when trade between Norway and the euro zone is extensive than when it is small.

The monetary efficiency gain from pegging the krone to the euro will also be higher if factors of production can migrate freely between Norway and the euro area. Norwegians who invest in euro zone countries benefit when the returns on their investments are more predictable. Similarly, Norwegians who work in euro zone countries may benefit if a fixed exchange rate makes their wages more stable relative to Norway's cost of living.

Our conclusion is that *a high degree of economic integration between a country and a fixed exchange rate area magnifies the monetary efficiency gain the country reaps when it fixes its exchange rate against the area's currencies.* The more extensive are cross-border trade and factor movements, the greater is the gain from a fixed cross-border exchange rate.

The upward-sloping *GG* curve in Figure 21-3 shows the relation between a country's degree of economic integration with a fixed exchange rate area and the monetary efficiency gain to the country from joining the area. The figure's horizontal axis measures the extent to which Norway (the joining country in our example) is economically integrated into euro zone product and factor markets. The vertical axis measures the monetary efficiency gain to Norway from pegging to the euro. *GG*'s positive slope reflects the conclusion that the monetary efficiency gain a country gets by joining a fixed exchange rate area rises as its economic integration with the area increases.

In our example, we have implicitly assumed that the larger exchange rate area, the euro zone, has a stable and predictable price level. If it does not, the greater variability in Norway's price level that would follow a decision to join the exchange rate area would likely offset any monetary efficiency gain a fixed exchange rate might provide. A different problem arises if Norway's commitment to fix the krone's exchange rate is not fully believed by economic actors. In this situation, some exchange rate uncertainty would remain and Norway would therefore enjoy a smaller monetary efficiency gain. If the euro zone's price level is stable and Norway's exchange rate commitment is firm, however, the main conclusion follows: When Norway pegs to the euro, it gains from the stability of its currency against the euro, and this efficiency gain is greater the more closely tied are Norway's markets with euro zone markets.

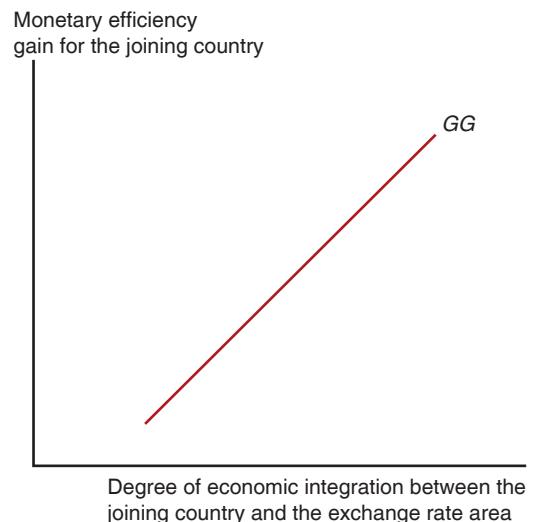
---

<sup>14</sup>To illustrate just one component of the monetary efficiency gain, potential savings of commissions paid to brokers and banks on foreign exchange transactions, Charles R. Bean of the London School of Economics estimated that in 1992, a "round-trip" through all the European Union currencies would result in the loss of fully half the original sum. See his paper "Economic and Monetary Union in Europe," *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 6 (Fall 1992), pp. 31–52.

<sup>15</sup>A detailed discussion on the benefits of the CFA franc is presented in Martin Halle, "The role of the euro in Sub-Saharan Africa and in the CFA franc zone," *Economic Papers* 347 (2008), Directorate General Economic and Financial Affairs, European Commission.

**FIGURE 21-3****The GG Schedule**

The upward-sloping *GG* schedule shows that a country's monetary efficiency gain from joining a fixed exchange rate area rises as the country's economic integration with the area rises.



Earlier in this chapter, we learned that a country may wish to peg its exchange rate to an area of price stability to import the anti-inflationary resolve of the area's monetary authorities. When the economy of the pegging country is well integrated with that of the low-inflation area, however, low domestic inflation is easier to achieve. The reason is that close economic integration leads to international price convergence and therefore lessens the scope for independent variation in the pegging country's price level. This argument provides another reason why high economic integration with a fixed exchange rate area enhances a country's gain from membership.

### Economic Integration and the Costs of a Fixed Exchange Rate Area: The *LL* Schedule

Membership in an exchange rate area may involve costs as well as benefits, even when the area has low inflation. These costs arise because a country that joins an exchange rate area gives up its ability to use the exchange rate and monetary policy for the purpose of stabilizing output and employment. This **economic stability loss** from joining, like the country's monetary efficiency gain, is related to the country's economic integration with its exchange rate partners. We can derive a second schedule, the *LL* schedule, that shows the relationship graphically.

In Chapter 19's discussion of the relative merits of fixed and floating exchange rates, we concluded that when the economy is disturbed by a change in the output market (that is, by a shift in the *DD* schedule), a floating exchange rate has an advantage over a fixed rate: It automatically cushions the economy's output and employment by allowing an immediate change in the relative price of domestic and foreign goods. Furthermore, you will recall from Chapter 18 that when the exchange rate is fixed, purposeful stabilization is more difficult to achieve because monetary policy has no power at all to affect domestic output. Given these two conclusions, we would expect changes in the *DD* schedule to have more severe effects on an economy in which the monetary authority is required

to fix the exchange rate against a group of foreign currencies. The *extra* instability caused by the fixed exchange rate is the economic stability loss.<sup>16</sup>

To derive the *LL* schedule, we must understand how the extent of Norway's economic integration with the euro zone will affect the size of this loss in economic stability. Imagine that Norway is pegging to the euro and that there is a fall in the aggregate demand for Norway's output—a leftward shift of Norway's *DD* schedule. If the *DD* schedules of the other euro zone countries happen simultaneously to shift to the left, the euro will simply depreciate against outside currencies, providing the automatic stabilization we studied in the previous chapter. Norway has a serious problem only when it *alone* faces a fall in demand—for example, if the world demand for oil, one of Norway's main exports, drops.

How will Norway adjust to this shock? Since nothing has happened to budge the euro, to which Norway is pegged, its krone will remain stable against *all* foreign currencies. Thus, full employment can return only after a period of costly slump during which the prices of Norwegian goods and the wages of Norwegian workers fall.

How does the severity of this slump depend on the level of economic integration between the Norwegian economy and those of the EMU countries? The answer is that greater integration implies a shallower slump and therefore a less costly adjustment to the adverse shift in *DD*. There are two reasons for this reduction in the cost of adjustment: First, if Norway has close trading links with the euro zone, a small reduction in its prices will lead to an increase in euro zone demand for Norwegian goods that is large relative to Norway's output. Thus, full employment can be restored fairly quickly. Second, if Norway's labor and capital markets are closely meshed with those of its euro zone neighbors, unemployed workers can easily move abroad to find work, and domestic capital can be shifted to more profitable uses in other countries. The ability of factors to migrate abroad thus reduces the severity of unemployment in Norway and the fall in the rate of return available to investors.<sup>17</sup>

Notice that our conclusions also apply to a situation in which Norway experiences an *increase* in demand for its output (a rightward shift of *DD*). If Norway is tightly integrated with euro zone economies, a small increase in Norway's price level, combined

---

<sup>16</sup>You might think that when Norway unilaterally fixes its exchange rate against the euro but leaves the krone free to float against noneuro currencies, it is able to keep at least some monetary independence. Perhaps surprisingly, this intuition is *wrong*. The reason is that any independent money supply change in Norway would put pressure on krone interest rates and thus on the krone/euro exchange rate. So by pegging the krone even to a single foreign currency, Norway completely surrenders its domestic monetary control. This result has, however, a positive side for Norway. After Norway unilaterally pegs the krone to the euro, domestic money market disturbances (shifts in the *AA* schedule) will no longer affect domestic output, despite the continuing float against noneuro currencies. Why? Because Norway's interest rate must equal the euro interest rate, any pure shifts in *AA* will result in immediate reserve inflows or outflows that leave Norway's interest rate unchanged. Thus, a krone/euro peg alone is enough to provide automatic stability in the face of any monetary shocks that shift the *AA* schedule. This is why the discussion in the text can focus on shifts in the *DD* schedule.

<sup>17</sup>Installed plant and equipment typically are costly to transport abroad or to adapt to new uses. Owners of such relatively immobile Norwegian capital therefore will always earn low returns on it after an adverse shift in the demand for Norwegian products. If Norway's capital market is integrated with those of its EMU neighbors, however, Norwegians will invest some of their wealth in other countries, while at the same time part of Norway's capital stock will be owned by foreigners. As a result of this process of international wealth *diversification* (see Chapter 20), unexpected changes in the return to Norway's capital will automatically be shared among investors throughout the fixed exchange rate area. Thus, even owners of capital that cannot be moved can avoid more of the economic stability loss due to fixed exchange rates when Norway's economy is open to capital flows.

When international labor mobility is low or nonexistent, higher international capital mobility may *not* reduce the economic stability loss from fixed exchange rates, as we discuss in evaluating the European experience in the Case Study "Is Europe an Optimum Currency Area?"

with some movement of foreign capital and labor into Norway, quickly eliminates the excess demand for Norwegian products.<sup>18</sup>

Closer trade links between Norway and countries *outside* the euro zone will also aid the country's adjustment to Norwegian *DD* shifts that are not simultaneously experienced by the euro zone. However, greater trade integration with countries outside the euro zone is a double-edged sword, with negative as well as positive implications for macroeconomic stability. The reason is that when Norway pegs the krone to the euro, euro zone disturbances that change the euro's exchange rate will have more powerful effects on Norway's economy when its trading links with noneuro countries are more extensive. The effects would be analogous to an increase in the size of movements in Norway's *DD* curve and would raise Norway's economic stability loss from pegging to the euro. In any case, these arguments do not change our earlier conclusion that Norway's stability loss from fixing the krone/euro exchange rate falls as the extent of its economic integration with the euro zone rises.

An additional consideration that we have not yet discussed strengthens the argument that the economic stability loss to Norway from pegging to the euro is lower when Norway and the euro zone engage in a large volume of trade. Since imports from the euro zone make up a large fraction of Norwegian workers' consumption in this case, changes in the krone/euro exchange rate may quickly affect nominal Norwegian wages, reducing any impact on employment. A depreciation of the krone against the euro, for example, causes a sharp fall in Norwegians' living standards when imports from the euro zone are substantial; workers are thus likely to demand higher nominal wages from their employers to compensate for the loss. In this situation, the additional macroeconomic stability Norway gets from a floating exchange rate is small, so the country has little to lose by fixing the krone/euro exchange rate.

We conclude that *a high degree of economic integration between a country and the fixed exchange rate area that it joins reduces the resulting economic stability loss due to output market disturbances*.

The *LL* schedule shown in Figure 21-4 summarizes this conclusion. The figure's horizontal axis measures the joining country's economic integration with the fixed exchange rate area; the vertical axis, the country's economic stability loss. As we have seen, *LL* has a negative slope because the economic stability loss from pegging to the area's currencies falls as the degree of economic interdependence rises.

### The Decision to Join a Currency Area: Putting the *GG* and *LL* Schedules Together

Figure 21-5 combines the *GG* and *LL* schedules to show how Norway should decide whether to fix the krone's exchange rate against the euro. The figure implies that Norway should do so if the degree of economic integration between Norwegian markets and those of the euro zone is at least equal to  $\theta_1$ , the integration level determined by the intersection of *GG* and *LL* at point 1.

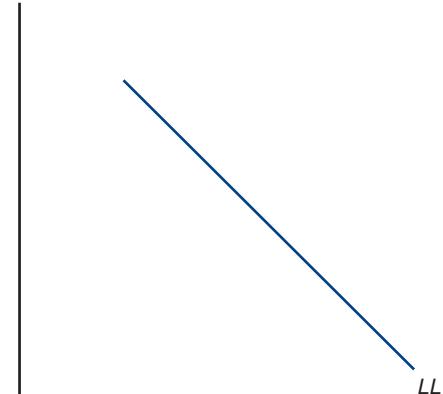
Let's see why Norway should peg to the euro if its degree of economic integration with euro zone markets is at least  $\theta_1$ . Figure 21-5 shows that for levels of economic integration below  $\theta_1$ , the *GG* schedule lies below the *LL* schedule. Thus, the loss Norway would suffer from greater output and employment instability after joining exceeds the monetary efficiency gain, and the country would do better to stay out.

<sup>18</sup>The preceding reasoning applies to other economic disturbances that fall unequally on Norway's output market and those of its exchange rate partners. Problem 5 at the end of this chapter asks you to think through the effects of an increase in demand for EMU exports that leaves Norway's export demand schedule unchanged.

**FIGURE 21-4****The *LL* Schedule**

The downward-sloping *LL* schedule shows that a country's economic stability loss from joining a fixed exchange rate area falls as the country's economic integration with the area rises.

Economic stability loss for the joining country

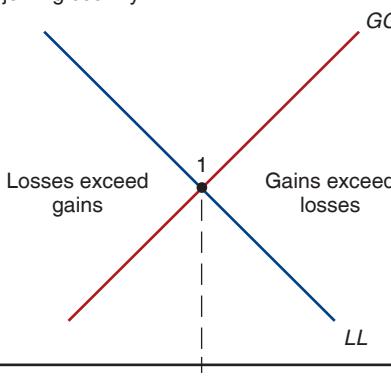


Degree of economic integration between the joining country and the exchange rate area

**FIGURE 21-5****Deciding When to Peg the Exchange Rate**

The intersection of *GG* and *LL* at point 1 determines a critical level of economic integration,  $\theta_1$ , between a fixed exchange rate area and a country considering whether to join. At any level of integration above  $\theta_1$ , the decision to join yields positive net economic benefits to the joining country.

Gains and losses for the joining country



Degree of economic integration between the joining country and the exchange rate area

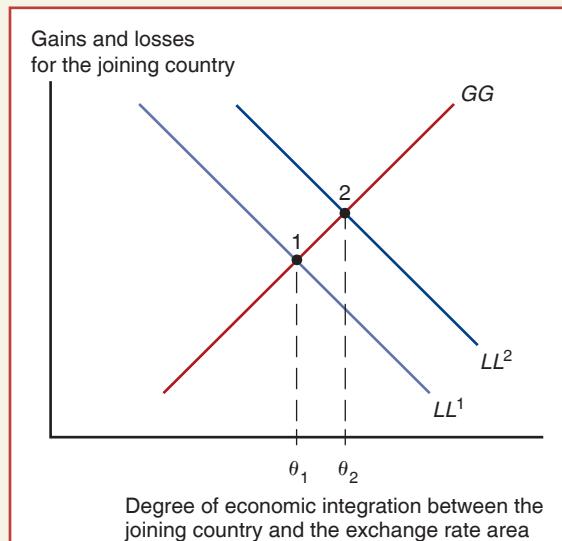
When the degree of integration is  $\theta_1$  or higher, however, the monetary efficiency gain measured by *GG* is greater than the stability sacrifice measured by *LL*, and pegging the krone's exchange rate against the euro results in a net gain for Norway. Thus the intersection of *GG* and *LL* determines the minimum integration level (here,  $\theta_1$ ) at which Norway will desire to peg its currency to the euro.

The *GG-LL* framework has important implications about how changes in a country's economic environment affect its willingness to peg its currency to an outside currency area. Consider, for example, an increase in the size and frequency of sudden shifts in the demand for the country's exports. As shown in Figure 21-6, such a change pushes *LL*<sup>1</sup> upward to *LL*<sup>2</sup>. At any level of economic integration with the currency area, the

**FIGURE 21-6**

### An Increase in Output Market Variability

A rise in the size and frequency of country-specific disturbances to the joining country's product markets shifts the  $LL$  schedule upward from  $LL^1$  to  $LL^2$  because for a given level of economic integration with the fixed exchange rate area, the country's economic stability loss from pegging its exchange rate rises. The shift in  $LL$  raises the critical level of economic integration at which the exchange rate area is joined to  $\theta_2$ .



extra output and unemployment instability the country suffers by fixing its exchange rate is now greater. As a result, the level of economic integration at which it becomes worthwhile to join the currency area rises to  $\theta_2$  (determined by the intersection of  $GG$  and  $LL^2$  at point 2). Other things equal, increased variability in their product markets makes countries less willing to enter fixed exchange rate areas—a prediction that helps explain why the oil price shocks after 1973 made countries unwilling to revive the Bretton Woods system of fixed exchange rates (Chapter 19).

### What Is an Optimum Currency Area?

The  $GG$ - $LL$  model we have developed suggests a theory of the optimum currency area. *Optimum currency areas* are groups of regions with economies closely linked by trade in goods and services and by factor mobility. This result follows from our finding that a fixed exchange rate area will best serve the economic interests of each of its members if the degree of output and factor trade among the included economies is high.

This perspective helps us understand, for example, why it may make sense for the United States, Japan, and Europe to allow their mutual exchange rates to float. Even though these regions trade with each other, the extent of that trade is modest compared with regional GNPs, and interregional labor mobility is low.

### Other Important Considerations

While the  $GG$ - $LL$  model is useful for organizing our thinking about optimum currency areas, it is not the whole story. At least three other elements affect our evaluation of the euro currency area's past and prospective performances.

**Similarity of Economic Structure** The  $GG$ - $LL$  model tells us that extensive trade with the rest of the currency area makes it easier for a member to adjust to product market disturbances that affect it and its currency partners differently. But it does not tell us what factors will reduce the frequency and size of member-specific product market shocks.

A key element in minimizing such disturbances is similarity in economic structure, especially in the types of products produced. Euro zone countries, for example, are not entirely dissimilar in manufacturing structure, as evidenced by the very high volume of

*intra-industry trade*—trade in similar products—within Europe (see Chapter 8). There are also important differences, however. The countries of northern Europe are better endowed with capital and skilled labor than the countries in Europe’s south, and EU products that make intensive use of low-skill labor thus are likely to come from Portugal, Spain, Greece, or southern Italy. The different export patterns of northern and southern European countries create more opportunities for asymmetric shocks.

We can view greater structural dissimilarity between a country and its potential currency union partners as shifting the *LL* schedule upward, raising the degree of economic integration required before membership in the currency union becomes a good idea.

**Fiscal Federalism** Another consideration in evaluating a currency area is its ability to transfer economic resources from members with healthy economies to those suffering economic setbacks. In the United States, for example, states faring poorly relative to the rest of the nation automatically receive support from Washington in the form of welfare benefits and other federal transfer payments that ultimately come out of the taxes other states pay. In addition, the federal tax revenues sent back to Washington automatically decline when the local economy suffers. Such **fiscal federalism** can help offset the economic stability loss due to fixed exchange rates, as it does in the United States. More fiscal federalism shifts the *LL* curve downward.<sup>19</sup> When the euro was launched, it was hoped that closer fiscal cooperation between the euro zone countries will follow soon. The current scale of fiscal transfers within the euro zone, however, is by far not sufficient to overcome the radical economic imbalances between its members. For further discussion on the current shortcomings of the Euro, see Case Study “Is Europe an Optimum Currency Area?”.

**Banking Union** Suppose that countries in an area of mutually fixed exchange rates maintain national control over banking regulation, supervision, and resolution but at the same time allow freedom of financial transactions across borders, including for banks (and other financial institutions). As we saw in Chapter 20, the *financial trilemma* implies that their financial systems will be less stable than with centralized, supra-national control over financial regulatory policy.

The problem is even worse than usual in an area of fixed exchange rates, however. If member countries print money in large quantities while acting as lenders of last resort, for example, they may run out of international reserves and find themselves in a currency crisis (Chapter 18). Each central bank will therefore be reluctant to act as LLR for its domestic banks, and public perceptions of this reluctance could, in itself, encourage bank runs and thereby raise the risk of financial instability and currency crises. In terms of our *GG-LL* framework, less area-wide unification of banking policy raises the *LL* schedule. As we shall see, this problem has been central to the recent crisis in the euro area, although the preceding example based on the central bank’s LLR function works in the EMU context in a more complex fashion.

As the financial trilemma suggests, one way to maintain fixed exchange rates, while retaining national control over financial policy, is to prohibit cross-border capital movements. This is not an option within a currency union such as EMU, with a single shared central bank, because the central bank’s interest rate policy could not be transmitted to all the member states if they prevented cross-border borrowing and lending.

---

<sup>19</sup>The classic statement of the role of fiscal federalism in the theory of optimum currency areas is by Peter B. Kenen, “The Theory of Optimum Currency Areas: An Eclectic View,” in Robert Mundell and Alexander Swoboda, eds., *Monetary Problems of the International Economy* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1969), pp. 41–60. Perhaps surprisingly, the Kenen argument is valid even when people have access to very efficient private markets for sharing risks. See Emmanuel Farhi and Iván Werning, “Fiscal Unions,” *American Economic Review* 107 (December 2017), pp. 3788–3834.

## CASE STUDY

### Is Europe an Optimum Currency Area?

The critical question for judging the economic success of EMU is whether Europe itself makes up an optimum currency area. A nation's gains and losses from pegging its currency to an exchange rate area are hard to measure numerically, but by combining our theory with information on actual economic performance, we can evaluate the claim that Europe, most of which is likely to adopt or peg to the euro, is an optimum currency area.



Angelo D'Amico/Shutterstock

#### THE EXTENT OF INTRA-EUROPEAN TRADE

Our earlier discussion suggested that a country is more likely to benefit from joining a currency area if the area's economy is closely integrated with the country's. We can judge the overall degree of economic integration by looking at the integration of product markets, that is, the extent of trade between the joining country and the currency area, and at the integration of factor markets, that is, the ease with which labor and capital can migrate between the joining country and the currency area.

In January 1999, at the time of the euro's launch, most EU members exported from 10 to 20 percent of their output to other EU members. That number is far larger than the extent of EU-U.S. trade. While the average volume of intra-EU trade has increased somewhat since the late 1990s, however, it remains below the level of trade between regions of the United States. If we take trade relative

to GNP as a measure of goods-market integration, the *CG-LL* model of the last section suggests that a joint float of Europe's currencies against those of the rest of the world is a better strategy for EU members than a fixed dollar/euro exchange rate would be. The extent of intra-European trade, however, is not large enough to convey an overwhelming reason for believing that the European Union itself is an optimum currency area.

When the euro arrived, supporters entertained high hopes that it would promote trade substantially within the currency union. These hopes were bolstered by an influential econometric study by Andrew K. Rose, of the National University of Singapore, who suggested that on average, members of currency unions trade three times more with each other than with nonmember countries—even after one controls for other determinants of trade flows. A more recent study of EU trade data by Richard Baldwin, of Geneva's Graduate Institute of International and Development Studies, greatly scaled back these expectations as they applied to the euro zone's early experience.<sup>20</sup> Baldwin estimated that by the mid-2000s, the euro had increased the mutual trade levels of its users only by about 9 percent,

<sup>20</sup>See Baldwin, *In or Out: Does It Matter? An Evidence-Based Analysis of the Euro's Trade Effects* (London: Centre for Economic Policy Research, 2006). Rose reported his initial analysis and results in "One Money, One Market: The Effects of Common Currencies on Trade," *Economic Policy* 30 (April 2000), pp. 8–45. He based his methods on the "gravity model" of international trade (Chapter 2). Rose qualified his originally optimistic estimates in Reuven Glick and Andrew K. Rose, "Currency Unions and Trade: A Post-EMU Mea Culpa," Working Paper 21525, National Bureau of Economic Research, September 2015.

with most of the effect taking place in the euro's first year, 1999. But he also concluded that Britain, Denmark, and Sweden, which did not adopt the euro, saw their trade with euro zone countries increase by about 7 percent at the same time. These EU countries therefore would gain little more if they adopted the euro.

EU measures aimed at promoting market integration following the Single European Act of 1986 probably have helped to bolster intra-EU trade. For some goods (such as consumer electronics), there has been considerable price convergence across EU countries, but for others, among them cars, similar items still can sell for widely differing prices in different European locations. One hypothesis about the persistence of price differentials that is favored by euro enthusiasts is that multiple currencies made big price discrepancies possible, but these were bound to disappear under the single currency. Has the euro itself contributed to market integration? In a careful study of European price behavior since 1990, economists Charles Engel of the University of Wisconsin and John Rogers of the Federal Reserve find that intra-European price discrepancies indeed decreased over the 1990s. They find no evidence, however, of further price convergence after the euro's introduction in 1999.<sup>21</sup>

On balance, considering both the price and the quantity evidence to date, it seems unlikely that the combination of Single European Act reforms and the single currency has yet turned the euro zone into an optimum currency area.

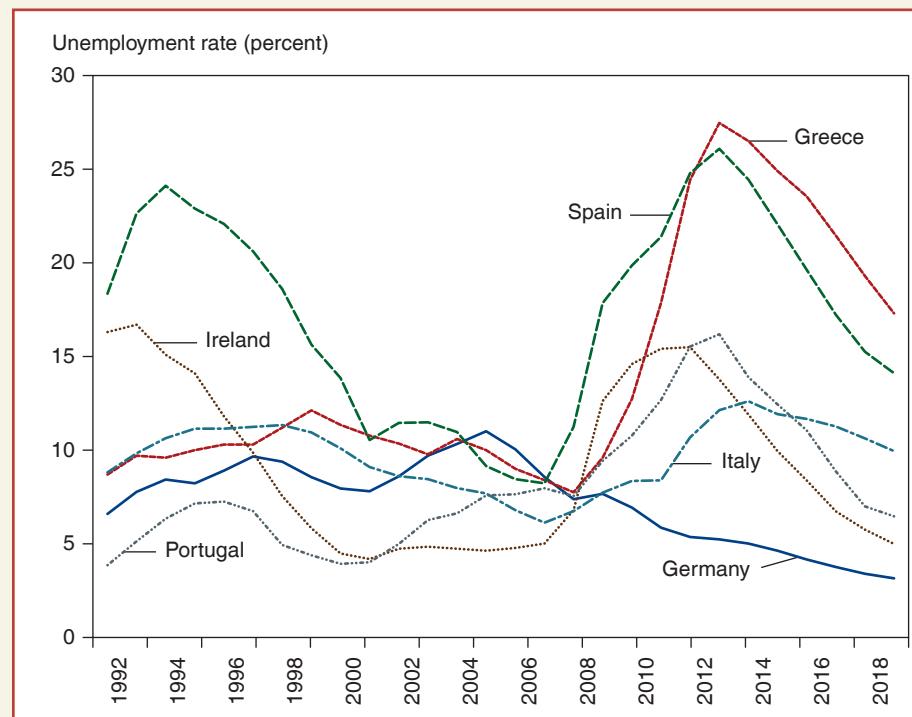
### HOW MOBILE IS EUROPE'S LABOR FORCE?

The main barriers to labor mobility within Europe are no longer due to border controls. Differences in language and culture discourage labor movements between European countries to a greater extent than is true, for example, between regions of the United States. In a 1990 econometric study comparing unemployment patterns in U.S. regions with those in EU countries, Barry Eichengreen of the University of California–Berkeley found that differences in regional unemployment rates are smaller and less persistent in the United States than are the differences between national unemployment rates in the European Union.<sup>22</sup> Figure 21-7 shows the evolution of selected EU unemployment rates since the early 1990s. In the next section, we will discuss how the evident divergence after the late 2000s relates to the concurrent crisis in the euro area.

Even *within* European countries, labor mobility appears limited, partly because of government regulations. For example, the requirement in some countries that workers establish residence before receiving unemployment benefits makes it harder for unemployed workers to seek jobs in regions that are far from their current homes. Table 21-2 presents evidence on the frequency of regional labor movement in three of the largest EU countries, as compared with that in the United States. These data must be interpreted with caution because of their vintage and because the definition

<sup>21</sup>See their paper "European Product Market Integration after the Euro," *Economic Policy* 39 (July 2004), pp. 347–381. For confirmation, see Jesús Crespo Cuaresma, Balázs Égert, and Maria Antoinette Silgoner, "Price Level Convergence in Europe: Did the Introduction of the Euro Matter?" *Monetary Policy and the Economy*, Oesterreichische Nationalbank (Q1 2007), pp. 100–113.

<sup>22</sup>See Barry Eichengreen, "One Money for Europe? Lessons of the U.S. Currency Union," *Economic Policy* 10 (April 1990), pp. 118–166. Further study of the U.S. labor market has shown that regional unemployment is eliminated almost entirely by worker migration rather than by changes in regional real wages. See Olivier Jean Blanchard and Lawrence F. Katz, "Regional Evolutions," *Brookings Papers on Economic Activity* 1 (1992), pp. 1–75. For a more detailed discussion of the evidence from just before the euro's launch, see Maurice Obstfeld and Giovanni Peri, "Regional Non-Adjustment and Fiscal Policy," *Economic Policy* 26 (April 1998), pp. 205–259.

**FIGURE 21-7****Unemployment Rates in Selected EU Countries**

Widely divergent unemployment rates moved closer together after the euro's launch in 1999 but since the late 2000s have moved sharply apart again.

**Source:** International Monetary Fund, *World Economic Outlook* database, April 2020. Numbers for 2020 are IMF forecasts.

**TABLE 21-2** **People Changing Region of Residence in the 1990s (percent of total population)**

Britain	Germany	Italy	United States
1.7	1.1	0.5	3.1

**Sources:** Peter Huber, "Inter-regional Mobility in Europe: A Note on the Cross-Country Evidence," *Applied Economics Letters* 11 (August 2004), pp. 619–624; and "Geographical Mobility, 2003–2004," U.S. Department of Commerce, March 2004. Table data are for Britain in 1996, Germany in 1990, Italy in 1999, and the United States in 1999.

of "region" differs from country to country. However, studies that are more recent also suggest that in a typical year, Americans remain more footloose than Europeans, and that labor mobility within Europe remains limited.<sup>23</sup>

<sup>23</sup>Several studies show that Americans have become less mobile in the decades since the Blanchard-Katz and Obstfeld-Peri studies that the previous footnote cites, and Europeans more mobile. This development has driven some convergence between modes of labor-market adjustment in the U.S. and Europe, but it still leaves Europe away from the ideal that an optimum currency area would demand. For a recent comparison of labor mobility in the U.S. and Europe, see Robert C. M. Beyer and Frank Smets, "Labour Market Adjustments in Europe and the US: How Different?" Working Paper Series 1767, European Central Bank, March 2015.

There is some evidence that the extreme unemployment divergences visible in Figure 21-7 promoted more labor mobility, as did the prospect of migrating toward higher living standards. But to some degree this is a mixed blessing. The workers who tend to be most mobile are younger and more productive, while those who remain are closer to retirement. This migration pattern can deprive governments of the tax base they need to fund pension and health benefits, thereby worsening fiscal deficits in countries already hit hard by deep recession. A case in point is the steady migration of young people from formerly Soviet countries like Poland to west European countries like Ireland and (until Brexit) the United Kingdom.<sup>24</sup>

### OTHER CONSIDERATIONS

Previously, we identified three additional considerations (alongside economic integration) that are relevant to the costs and benefits of forming a currency area: similarity of structure, fiscal federalism, and the unification of policy toward bank and financial market stability. On all three counts, the EU comes up short, reinforcing the hypothesis that the EU is not an optimum currency area.

As we have noted, EU members have very different export mixes and therefore different vulnerabilities to identical economic disturbances. For example, Portugal competes with China in export markets, whereas China is a big destination market for German machine tools. Thus, higher Chinese growth has very different effects on the Portuguese and German economies.

Regarding fiscal federalism, it is quite limited in the EU, which has no substantial centralized fiscal capacity. Therefore, inflows of budgetary resources from currency-union partners do not offset country-specific shocks. Finally, regarding financial stability policy, the Maastricht Treaty left virtually all powers at the national level, giving the Eurosystem no explicit authority to oversee financial markets. The story of the euro crisis, to which we turn next, is intimately related to these last two shortcomings in the architecture underlying the single currency—and has given rise to (so far limited) attempts to overcome them.

## The Euro Crisis and the Future of EMU

Like the rest of the world, the euro area suffered in the global financial crisis of 2007–2009 (described in Chapters 19 and 20). It was only toward the end of the acute phase of the global financial crisis, however—late in 2009—that the euro zone entered a new crisis so severe as to threaten its continuing existence. In this section we help you to understand the nature of the euro crisis, the ways in which it has been managed so far, and the implications for the future of EMU.

### Origins of the Crisis

The spark that ignited the crisis came from an unlikely source: Greece, which accounted for only 3 percent of the euro area's output. However, the spark landed on a broad and deep pile of very dry tinder, assembled during the period of low interest rates, real estate speculation, and heightened financial-market growth that preceded the global financial crisis.

<sup>24</sup>For example, see Ruben Atoyan and others, "Emigration and Its Economic Impact on Eastern Europe," Staff Discussion Note SDN/16/07, International Monetary Fund, July 2016.

**The Tinder** The global assets of internationally active banks grew rapidly in the years leading up to the 2007–2009 crisis, but especially so for European banks, and especially banks in the euro zone. The asset sides of their balance sheets grew through purchases of U.S. credit-backed products but also through lending to other euro zone countries, including purchases of government debt and lending to finance consumption spending, housing investment, and mortgage lending. This lending helped to fuel, and in turn was fueled by, massive housing booms, especially in Ireland and Spain. An important factor promoting these developments, as you learned in Chapter 19, was an environment of very low global interest rates, which induced banks to take greater risks in search of profits.

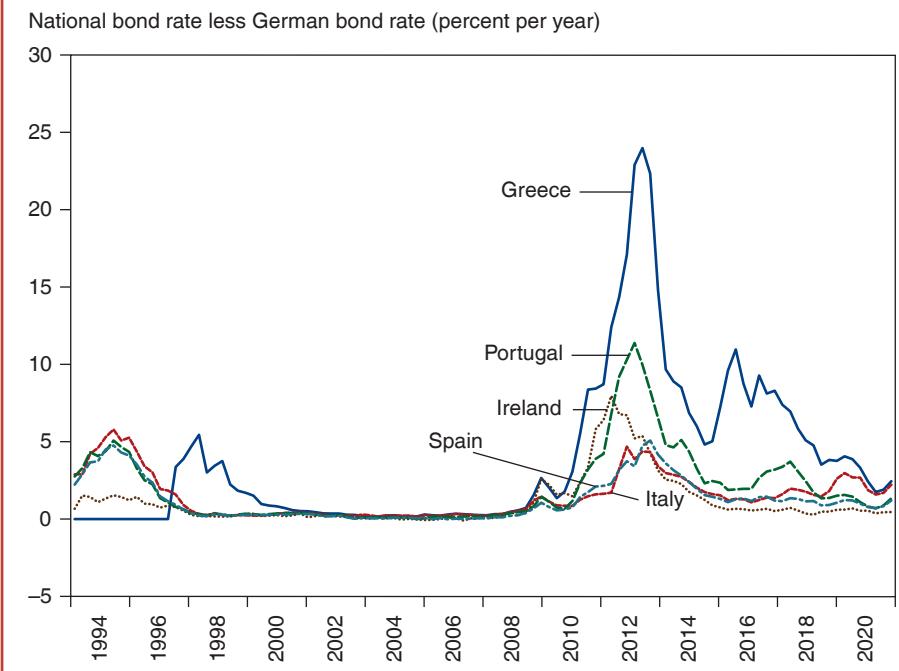
As a result of this credit expansion, bank assets grew to very large levels compared to the GDPs of the banks' home countries. Table 21-3 illustrates the positions of some large euro area banks at the end of 2011; balance sheets were even larger relative to output in 2007. In a number of countries individual banks had become "too big to save" based on the resources the home government could raise from the home economy alone; and the government's predicament would of course be much worse in a systemic crisis, with several banks in trouble at the same time. For example, if a failed bank's assets are equal to GDP and the government must inject capital equal to 5 percent of assets to restore the bank to solvency, then the government would have to issue debt or raise taxes by 5 percent of GDP—a very big fraction—to keep the bank in operation. And what if several large banks all fail at the same time?

With exchange-rate risk now eliminated between euro area countries, government bond yields moved closer to equality. In addition, markets seemed convinced that no European government would ever **default** on its debts—after all, no advanced country anywhere had done so since the late 1940s. (A default occurs when a debtor does not make the debt payments it has promised to creditors. The event is called a *sovereign default* when the debtor is a country's government.) As a result, spreads between the governments judged most creditworthy by ratings agencies such as Moody's (for example, Germany) and the least creditworthy (for example, Greece) became very small—often on the order of 25 basis points or below (see Figure 21-8). This development encouraged more spending and borrowing in countries including Greece, Portugal, and Spain.

**TABLE 21-3 Assets of Some Individual Banks as a Ratio to National Output, End-2011**

Bank	Home country	Bank assets
Erste Group Bank	Austria	0.68
Dexia	Belgium	1.10
BNP Paribas	France	0.97
Deutsche Bank	Germany	0.82
Bank of Ireland	Ireland	0.95
UniCredit	Italy	0.59
ING Group	Netherlands	2.12
Banco Commercial Português	Portugal	0.57
Banco Santander	Spain	1.19

**Source:** GDP data from International Monetary Fund, *World Economic Outlook* database. Data on bank assets from Viral V. Acharya and Sascha Steffen, "The 'Greatest' Carry Trade Ever? Understanding Eurozone Bank Risks," Discussion Paper 9432, Centre for Economic Policy Research, April 2013.

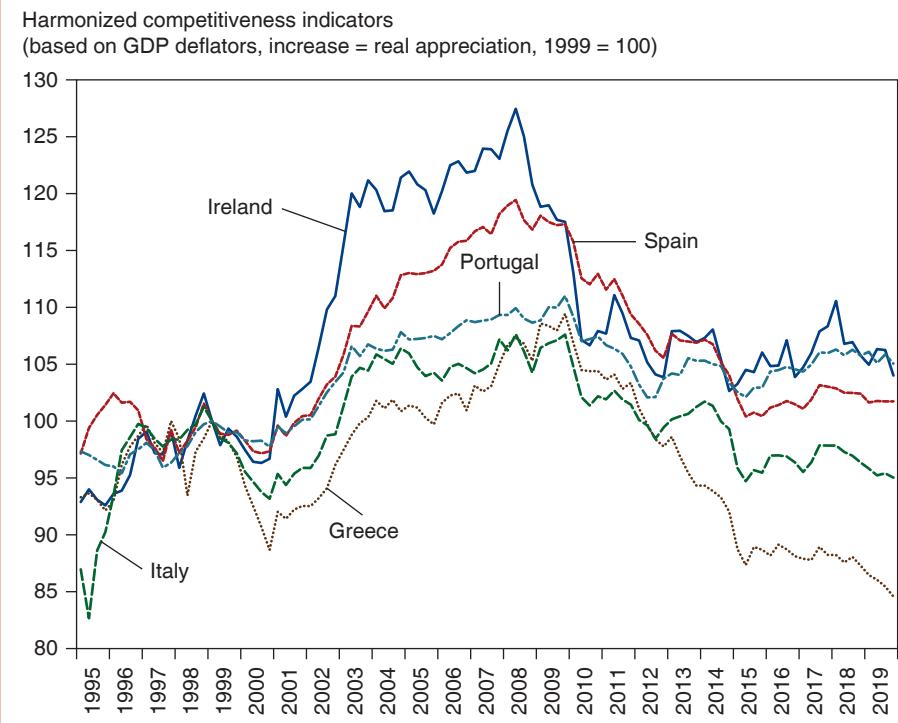
**FIGURE 21-8****Nominal Government Borrowing Spreads over Germany**

Euro countries' long-term government bond yields converged to Germany's level as they prepared to join the euro. The yields began to diverge again with the global financial crisis of 2007–2009 and moved sharply apart after the euro crisis broke out late in 2009.

**Source:** Federal Reserve Economic Data (FRED), 10-year government bond yields.

With higher spending, however, also came higher inflation relative to the German level. As a result, countries on the euro zone periphery—Ireland, Portugal, Spain, Italy, and Greece—all saw their currencies appreciate in real terms, not only relative to Germany, but relative to all of their trading partners, both within and outside EMU. Figure 21-9, which reports European Commission indexes of real appreciation with respect to GDP deflators, shows how all of these countries lost competitiveness after the early 2000s, most notably the two countries with the most extreme housing booms, Ireland and Spain. With higher inflation than Germany's, but essentially equal bond rates, these countries had lower *real* interest rates during the mid-2000s, a factor that spurred spending and inflation even further (see Figure 21-10 for real interest rates).<sup>25</sup> As a result, while Germany had

<sup>25</sup>This type of monetary instability was predicted by Sir Alan Walters, an economic adviser to Prime Minister Margaret Thatcher of Britain and a prominent opponent of fixed exchange rates within Europe. See his polemical book *Sterling in Danger: Economic Consequences of Fixed Exchange Rates* (London: Fontana, 1990). Alert students will wonder about the very sharp and temporary fall shown for Ireland's real interest rate in 2015. The real interest rates in the figure are calculated using GDP deflators, which measure the ratio of nominal to real GDP. In Chapter 13, we described how Ireland's 2015 GDP was distorted by international firms' shifting of profits to that country. The resulting statistical difficulties also made it hard to measure the GDP deflator accurately. (In other words, even taking nominal GDP as given, the estimate of real GDP is suspect.) In 2015, nominal GDP rose by around 35 percent as real GDP rose by around 25 percent. This difference implies a measured rise in the GDP deflator of 10 percent and, therefore, a quite low realized real interest rate.

**FIGURE 21-9****Real Appreciation in Peripheral Euro Zone Countries**

After entry into the euro, real appreciation set in for peripheral euro zone countries, most noticeably the two with massive housing booms, Ireland and Spain.

**Source:** ECB. Harmonized multilateral competitiveness index based on GDP deflators. An increase in the index is a real appreciation (loss in competitiveness).

growing current account surpluses, the peripheral countries had growing deficits, in some cases very large ones, as Table 21-4 shows. So external debts built up, raising the question of how these countries would ever generate the net export surpluses necessary to repay foreign creditors. The dilemma became more acute once growth slowed owing to the 2007–2009 global crisis. Because currency devaluation by individual euro area countries was not an option to spur net exports, it became increasingly likely that the adjustment to a more competitive real exchange rate would require a period of low inflation or even deflation, in all likelihood accompanied by significant unemployment due to the rigidity of labor and product markets. Among other negative effects, protracted recession would weaken banks.

In these circumstances, countries with conventional fixed exchange rates might well have fallen victim to speculative currency attacks, forcing the government to devalue. In EMU, however, countries do not have their own currencies, so conventional attacks are not possible. Nonetheless, a different sort of speculation set in, working through bank runs and government debt markets. The effects were devastating.

**The Spark** The 2007–2009 crisis certainly caused headaches in the euro zone. Some banks were in trouble due to their exposure to U.S. real estate markets. Also troublesome

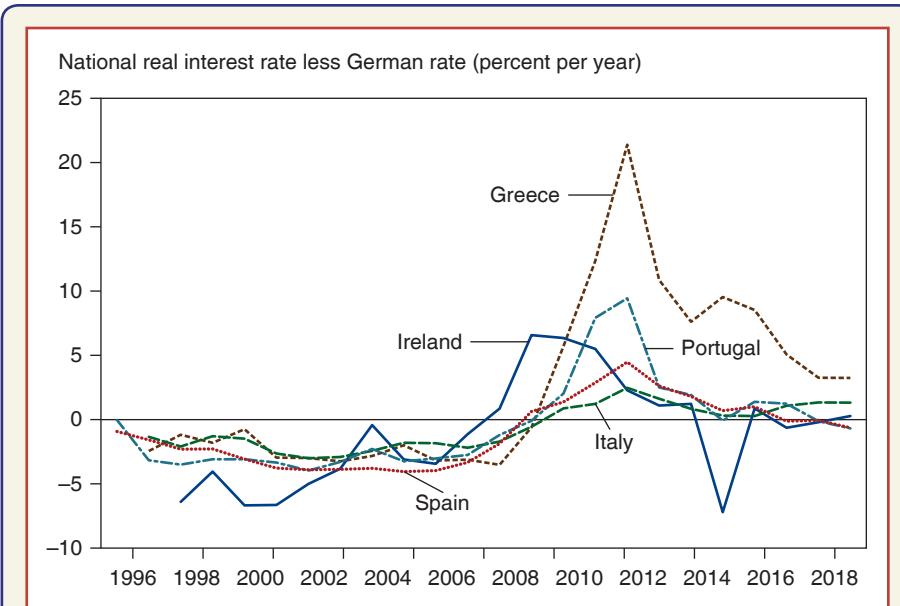


FIGURE 21-10

### Divergent Real Interest Rates in the Euro Zone

As the 1999 launch date for the euro approached, nominal long-term bond rates in prospective member countries converged, leading to lower real interest rates in those countries with relatively high inflation. The graph shows each country's long-term real interest rate minus Germany's long-term real interest rate. Real interest rates are average nominal rates on 10-year government bonds minus the same year's inflation rate.

**Source:** Federal Reserve Economic Data (FRED). Long-term government bond yields (10-year maturity), not seasonally adjusted, and GDP implicit price deflator index (2015 = 100).

**TABLE 21-4 Current Account Balances of Euro Zone Countries, 2005–2009 (percent of GDP)**

	Greece	Ireland	Italy	Portugal	Spain	Germany
2005	-7.5	-3.5	-1.7	-9.4	-7.4	5.1
2006	-11.2	-4.1	-2.6	-9.9	-9.0	6.5
2007	-14.4	-5.3	-2.4	-9.4	-10.0	7.6
2008	-14.6	-5.3	-3.4	-12.0	-9.8	6.7
2009	-11.2	-2.9	-3.1	-10.3	-5.4	5.0

**Source:** International Monetary Fund.

were exposures to European housing markets, which began to fall following the U.S. example (and with Ireland leading the way). But markets had few fears about the creditworthiness of euro zone governments until Greece's intractable fiscal problems became apparent late in 2008. This was the spark that ignited the tinder of overextended banks and uncompetitive, indebted economies.

The crisis began when a new Greek government was elected in October 2009. Very quickly, the new government announced some bad news: The Greek fiscal deficit stood at



Dimitri Messinis/AP Images

12.7 percent of GDP, more than double the numbers announced by the previous government. Apparently the previous government had been misreporting its economic statistics for years, and the public debt actually amounted to more than 100 percent of GDP.

Holders of Greek bonds, including many banks within the euro zone, began to worry about the Greek government's ability to close its yawning deficit and repay its debts. In December 2009, the major rating agencies all downgraded Greek government debt. (As Figure 21-8 shows, the Greek government's borrowing spread over German bonds rose to levels much higher than those seen in

late 2008 and early 2009, when global financial markets had been in turmoil over the fallout from the subprime crisis.) The Greek government announced harsh budget cuts and raised some taxes in the first months of 2010, but was soon faced with street protests and strikes. Further downgrades followed and Greek borrowing costs soared, making it even harder for the country to repay creditors. Investors began to worry that other deficit countries might face problems similar to those of Greece. The figure shows that borrowing costs for Portugal and Ireland, and even for two larger countries, Spain and Italy, came under pressure. World stock markets plunged as the prospect of a much wider financial crisis in Europe grew.

How did the EU deal with the Greek crisis? A bailout of Greece by richer EU countries would have quelled the market turmoil, but that was exactly the outcome that countries like Germany had wished to avoid when they negotiated the Maastricht Treaty and the SGP. In mid-March 2010, euro zone finance ministers declared their intention to help Greece but provided no details of what they planned to do. With the EU unable to take concrete action, the crisis snowballed, and the value of the euro fell in the foreign exchange markets.

Finally, in mid-April 2010, euro zone countries, working with the IMF, agreed on a €110 billion loan package for Greece. But by this time, the panic over government debt had spread, and the Portuguese, Spanish, and Italian governments (following what Ireland had already undertaken late in 2008) were proposing their own deficit-reduction measures in an effort to keep borrowing spreads from rising to Greek levels. Fearing a continental meltdown, the euro zone's leaders embedded the Greek support within a broader European Financial Stability Facility (EFSF), with funding of €750 billion provided by its own borrowing from markets, the European Commission, and the IMF. (The EFSF was explicitly temporary, but was replaced by a permanent European Stability Mechanism, or ESM, in October 2012.) The ECB then reversed a policy it had earlier announced and began to purchase the bonds of troubled euro zone debtor countries, sparking accusations that it was violating the spirit of the Maastricht Treaty by rewarding fiscal excesses. In fact, the ECB's motivation was to avoid a banking panic by supporting the prices of assets widely held by European banks.

Greek borrowing costs remained high, and soon Ireland's market borrowing rates rose sharply as it became clear that the government's cost of supporting shaky Irish banks would amount to a large fraction of GDP. Late in 2010, Ireland negotiated a €67.5 billion EFSF loan package with the *troika* consisting of the European Commission, ECB, and IMF. Portugal negotiated a €78 billion *troika* loan in May 2011.<sup>26</sup> Both loans, like the Greek loan, came with conditions requiring the recipients to slash government budgets and institute structural economic reforms (such as labor-market deregulation). The *troika* was in charge of monitoring compliance.

<sup>26</sup>The term "*troika*" came into widespread use during the euro crisis. The word is Russian and refers to a three-horse harness setup for pulling a sleigh.

## Self-Fulfilling Government Default and the “Doom Loop”

Why did market panic develop and spread so quickly? The contentious debate surrounding the initial Greek package made it clear that the northern European countries such as Germany, Finland, and the Netherlands had only a very limited willingness to underwrite the borrowing of countries like Greece facing unfavorable market conditions, either directly or indirectly through support for ECB bond purchases. Some politicians from northern Europe had spoken openly about default by Greece or even about the possibility that it would exit the euro. Thus, sovereign default on Greek debt, even though EU officials initially denied it as a possibility, appeared eminently possible, as did default by other countries (such as Portugal) with rapidly growing government debts.

The fear of default was a particular problem of the euro area: The government of the United States can always print dollars to pay off its debts, and so is very unlikely to default, but countries using the euro cannot, since the decision to print euros rests with the ECB, not national governments. (This is why Greece, Portugal, and Ireland were in the anomalous position of borrowing euros—their own currency—from the IMF.) The possibility of default gives rise to a self-fulfilling dynamic that is analogous to a bank run (as discussed in Chapter 20) or a self-fulfilling currency crisis (as discussed in Chapter 18): If markets expect a default, they will charge the borrowing government very high interest rates, and if it is unable to raise taxes or cut spending sufficiently, it will be forced to miss debt repayments and therefore it will default. This is exactly what happened in the euro area.<sup>27</sup>

Because bank balance sheets had become so big, the weakened state of the euro countries’ banks strongly reinforced the likelihood of government default. Countries needing to support their banking systems with infusions of public money had to borrow the money, leading to big increases in public debt levels and heightened market fears of default. Figure 21-11 shows the evolution of public debts (as a ratio to GDP) in the euro area. While Greece had by far the largest debt (reaching a staggering 180 percent of GDP by 2011), you can see that other countries’ debts were increasing rapidly, fueled partly, in several cases, by the need to bail out banks. Ireland provides the most dramatic example, with debt rising from only 24 percent of GDP in 2007 to almost 90 percent in 2010, driven not only by recession but by a bailout of the banks that had driven the Irish property boom.<sup>28</sup>

To make matters worse, the perilous state of each government’s credit, in turn, weakened the solvency of domestic banks. For one thing, banks were heavily invested in their governments’ bonds, so when those bonds’ prices fell, bank assets and bank capital were reduced. In addition, banks’ lenders (including depositors) understood that if the government itself could not obtain cash, it might be unable to make good on promises to support banks, for example, through injections of public capital or deposit insurance.

Economists call the two-way feedback from bank distress to government borrowing problems a **doom loop** by economists. Owing to the doom loop, private money fled from banks in countries where the government was having trouble borrowing. These countries experienced a *sudden stop* in private lending, and to keep their banks from collapsing, the ECB had to engage in lender of last resort operations on a massive scale. In effect, the euro zone’s financial market became segmented along national lines, with

<sup>27</sup>For a model of this process, see Guillermo A. Calvo, “Servicing the Public Debt: The Role of Expectations,” *American Economic Review* 78 (September 1988), pp. 647–661. The model is applied to the euro crisis in the paper by De Grauwe in Further Readings.

<sup>28</sup>Vivid accounts of the Greek and Irish crises are included in Michael Lewis, *Boomerang: Travels in the New Third World* (New York: W.W. Norton & Company, 2011).

the creditworthiness of banks in the weaker countries judged by the creditworthiness of their governments. Firms and households in those countries faced higher interest rates, if they could borrow at all.

Because of fiscal cutbacks and the credit squeeze, output plummeted and unemployment soared. Many observers questioned whether the austerity programs included in governments' financial support packages, and being practiced more generally in the EU, were actually helping in reducing public debts, especially when implemented by several neighboring countries simultaneously.

### A Broader Crisis and Policy Responses

Even after its initial rescue package, Greece proved unable to put its public debt onto a sustainable path. European leaders began openly to discuss the need for mechanisms that would allow insolvent countries to restructure their debt in the future. With officially sanctioned default now on the table, Italy's bond spreads rose sharply in the second half of 2011. Italy was much bigger than Greece, Ireland, or Portugal and its fiscal problems were too big to be addressed without a much bigger budgetary commitment from its euro zone partners. Borrowing costs for Spain, another large country, had also been edging up in view of its very big banking sector, which had been seriously weakened by the country's housing collapse.

In March 2012, Greece finally did restructure its government debt, imposing big losses on private bond holders. However, the country's overall debt fell only slightly (Figure 21-11). By then, much of the debt was held officially (notably by the ECB). In June 2012, euro area finance ministers extended to Spain an ESM loan potentially as big as €100 billion to cover recapitalization of its ailing banks. Despite these developments, Greece and Spain remained in turmoil.

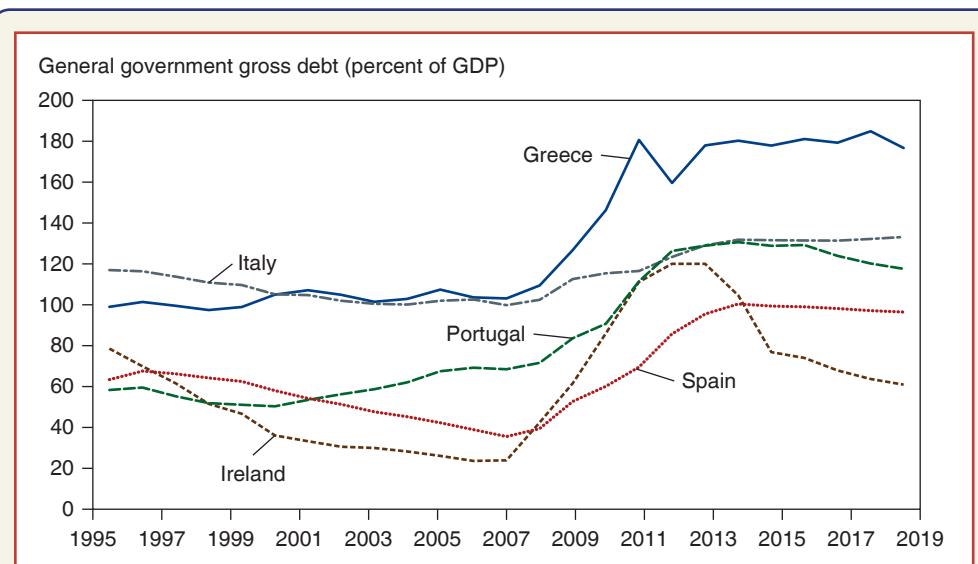


FIGURE 21-11

#### Gross Public Debt to GDP Ratios in the Euro Area

Public debts in the euro area grew rapidly after 2007, in part due to the need for governments to support their weak banks.

**Source:** International Monetary Fund, *World Economic Outlook* database, October 2019.

In the face of the ongoing turbulence, euro zone leaders launched two key initiatives, one regarding fiscal policy and one regarding banking policy unification. Germany sponsored a Fiscal Stability Treaty for EU countries, under which signatories commit themselves to amend domestic legislation in a way that produces government budgets that are more nearly in balance. The treaty, an updated and more stringent version of the SGP, was motivated by similar concerns and reflected the official German position that the main cause of the crisis was the fiscal misbehavior of national governments. It came into force for the 16 countries that had signed it at the start of 2013.

Critics of the Fiscal Stability Treaty pointed out that countries such as Ireland and Spain had favorable fiscal indicators, with falling levels of debt relative to GDP, prior to the crisis (Figure 21-11). While the German diagnosis described Greece, other countries' debts exploded because their banking systems melted down, and the German strategy did nothing to improve bank supervision, or to break the doom loop between banks and sovereign governments. As in our discussion of optimum currency areas, a closer *banking union* would be needed in order to stabilize the euro zone.

This second direction also was pursued by EU leaders, who met in June 2012 and directed the European Commission to prepare a blueprint for a Single Supervisory Mechanism (SSM) with powers to police banks throughout the euro zone. The leaders also recommended that once the SSM was in place, the ESM should have the power to recapitalize banks *directly*, with any resulting borrowing showing up as a liability of the ESM, that is, as a joint liability of the euro zone and not of any member government, regardless of where the recapitalized banks reside. This important recommendation was intended to reduce the force of the doom loop at the national level, but it made some governments uneasy at the prospect of being forced to bail out banks in other countries.

In response to the summit directive, the Commission in September 2012 recommended a three-pronged approach to banking union, meant to centralize financial supervision, deposit insurance, and the resolution (that is, the reorganization or sale) of insolvent banks within the euro area. These measures, as just noted, were meant to deactivate the doom loop at the national level and enhance the quality and credibility of financial oversight for the currency union. Specifically, the Commission recommended the creation of an SSM, of a euro area-wide deposit insurance scheme, and of a Single Resolution Mechanism (SRM), to be operated (like the SSM) at the level of the euro area. The SSM opened its doors on November 4, 2014. Although housed in the ECB with authority over the larger and more interconnected euro area banks, the SSM still gave home countries the primary say in regulating smaller banks. Starting January 1, 2016, the SRM became operational. Nevertheless, the idea of centralized euro area deposit insurance is strongly opposed by a group of countries led by Germany, and the resources for resolving insolvent banks remain largely national. Thus, the doom loop is still substantially in place, and it is hard to see how the ECB will be able to enforce its supervisory edicts if it does not actually have the clout and financial resources to close down and reorganize failing banks in the face of potential opposition from national politicians.

Many observers have recommended that the euro area enhance fiscal federalism through a larger centralized budget, managed by a fiscal authority with the capability to tax, spend, and issue joint eurobonds. Some euro area countries have been vigorously opposed to any such move toward what they derisively call a “transfer union.” As we shall see, however, the economic downturn due to the COVID-19 pandemic nonetheless led the EU to take a limited first step in this direction.<sup>29</sup>

<sup>29</sup>For a survey of eurobond proposals see Stijn Claessens, Ashoka Mody, and Shahin Vallée, “Paths to Eurobonds,” Working Paper WP/12/172, International Monetary Fund, July 2012.

## ECB Outright Monetary Transactions

Despite the preceding reform efforts, markets for peripheral euro zone sovereign debts remained volatile through the summer of 2012, with investors speculating that Greece might even leave EMU. Such an outcome—known colloquially as a “Grexit”—would have destabilized other countries’ borrowing rates even more by setting the precedent that a government might abandon the euro and introduce a national currency in its place. On July 26, 2012, ECB President Mario Draghi made the dramatic statement: “Within our mandate, the ECB is ready to do whatever it takes to preserve the euro. And believe me, it will be enough.” Six weeks later he unveiled a program called Outright Monetary Transactions (OMT) under which the ECB would do exactly that—purchase sovereign bonds, potentially without limit, to prevent their interest rates from rising too far. To qualify for OMT, countries would first have to agree to an ESM stabilization plan.

Even though OMT had not actually been used, bond yields in the peripheral countries receded sharply, as Figure 21-8 shows, simply because of the *expectation* of what the ECB could do with its unlimited monetary firepower. (The 2015 spike in Greece’s borrowing rate reflects further troubles, but its bond yields also fell as the country undertook a new adjustment program, and European official creditors granted it additional debt relief in 2018.)

## Response to the COVID-19 Pandemic

EU countries went into lockdowns to halt the spread of the COVID-19 virus in the first quarter of 2020, resulting in sharp falls in economic activity across the continent. National governments, even those that were already heavily indebted, took strong fiscal actions to support their economies. In addition, a strong joint policy response by EU institutions helped blunt the effects of the crisis. The ESM made loans available to euro area countries under the sole condition of a promise to use the funds exclusively for pandemic related health expenditures. A European Commission initiative supported EU members’ short-time work programs in which businesses reduce workers’ hours rather than fire them, but continue to pay them normal or near-normal wages. The European Investment Bank (EIB) extended credit to hard-hit small- and medium-sized enterprises. Importantly, the ECB rolled out a Pandemic Emergency Purchase Program (PEPP) worth €750 billion (more than 5 percent of 2019 euro area GDP) to purchase euro area assets. The ECB stated, “To the extent that some self-imposed limits might hamper action that the ECB is required to take in order to fulfil its mandate, the Governing Council will consider revising them to the extent necessary to make its action proportionate to the risks that we face. The ECB will not tolerate any risks to the smooth transmission of its monetary policy in all jurisdictions of the euro area.”<sup>30</sup> The PEPP helped prevent a large spike in borrowing costs for heavily indebted euro area members (Figure 21-8). The ECB soon expanded the PEPP substantially beyond its original size.

The EU took further action in July of 2020, agreeing to create a €750 billion recovery fund (called Next Generation EU) to support pandemic reconstruction by member states. More than half of the support is to be in the form of grants rather than loans, with the European Commission financing the program by issuing joint EU bonds—something never done before on any significant scale. This initiative represented an unprecedented extension of fiscal federalism, partially intended to preserve political support for the EU in the face of the pandemic’s asymmetric impact in different countries.

<sup>30</sup>The ECB’s press release announcing the PEPP is at [https://www.ecb.europa.eu/press/pr/date/2020/html/ecb.pr200318\\_1~3949d6f266.en.html](https://www.ecb.europa.eu/press/pr/date/2020/html/ecb.pr200318_1~3949d6f266.en.html).

## The Future of EMU

Europe's single currency experiment is the boldest attempt ever to reap the efficiency gains from using a single currency over a large and diverse group of sovereign states. If EMU succeeds, it will promote European political as well as economic integration, fostering peace and prosperity in a region that could someday include all of Eastern Europe and even Turkey. If the euro project fails, however, its driving force, the goal of European political unification, will be set back.

EMU must overcome some difficult challenges, however, if it is to survive its current crisis and prosper:

1. Europe is not an optimum currency area. Therefore, asymmetric economic developments within different countries of the euro zone—developments that might well call for different national interest rates under a regime of individual national currencies—will remain hard to handle through monetary policy. The single-currency project has taken the economic union to a level far beyond what the EU has so far been able (or willing) to do in the area of political union. Nonetheless, in response to the euro crisis, the EU is increasing the centralized control over economic policy beyond the initial ECB blueprint through the Fiscal Stability Treaty, enhanced powers for the Commission, and the euro zone banking union. Many Europeans hoped that economic union would lead to closer political union, but it is possible that continuing quarrels over economic policies will sabotage that aim. Enhanced governmental powers at the center of EMU require enhanced democratic accountability as well, but little has been done to fulfill this need. Brexit illustrates a broader trend of some voters throughout Europe viewing the EU superstructure, including those governing the euro, as being under the control of a distant and politically unaccountable group of technocrats who are unresponsive to people's needs.
2. In most EU countries, labor markets remain rigid and subject to employment taxes and regulations that impede labor mobility between industries and regions. The result has been persistently high levels of unemployment. Unless labor markets become much more flexible, as in the United States' currency union, individual euro zone countries will have a difficult time adjusting toward full employment and competitive real exchange rates. Other structural problems abound.

It remains to be seen if the euro zone will develop more elaborate institutions for carrying out fiscal transfers from country to country. At the least, some sort of centralized fiscal backstop for the planned banking union is essential to ensure its effectiveness. The euro crisis showed the need for enough of a centralized European fiscal capacity to deal rapidly with inherently contagious member-country financial instability. It also showed the strength of opposition in some countries to such an institutional change. The COVID-19 crisis again underscored the need for centralized fiscal tools. Some observers believe that the Next Generation EU initiative, strongly promoted by France and Germany, could represent a first step on the road to more ambitious fiscal federalism.

The experience of the United States shows that a large monetary union composed of diverse economic regions can work quite well. For the euro zone to achieve comparable economic success, however, it will have to make progress in creating more flexible labor and product markets, in reforming its fiscal and financial regulatory systems, and in deepening its political union. European unification itself will be imperiled unless the euro project and its defining institution, the ECB, succeed in delivering prosperity as well as price stability.

**SUMMARY**

- European Union countries have had two main reasons for favoring mutually fixed exchange rates: They believe monetary cooperation will give them a heavier weight in international economic negotiations, and they view fixed exchange rates as a complement to EU initiatives aimed at building a common European market.
- The *European Monetary System* of fixed intra-EU exchange rates was inaugurated in March 1979 and originally included Belgium, Denmark, France, Germany, Ireland, Italy, Luxembourg, and the Netherlands. Austria, Britain, Portugal, and Spain joined much later. Capital controls and frequent realignments were essential ingredients in maintaining the system until the mid-1980s, but since then, controls have been abolished as part of the European Union's wider program of market unification.
- In practice, all EMS currencies were pegged to Germany's former currency, the deutsche mark (DM). As a result, Germany was able to set monetary policy for the EMS, just as the United States did in the Bretton Woods system. The *credibility theory of the EMS* holds that participating governments profited from the German Bundesbank's reputation as an inflation fighter. In fact, inflation rates in EMS countries ultimately tended to converge around Germany's generally low inflation rate.
- On January 1, 1999, 11 EU countries initiated an *economic and monetary union (EMU)* by adopting a common currency, the euro, issued by a European Central Bank (ECB) headquartered in Frankfurt, Germany. (The initial 11 members were joined by several other countries later on.) The Eurosystem consists of euro members' national central banks and the ECB, whose governing council runs monetary policy in EMU. The transition process from the EMS's fixed exchange rate system to EMU was spelled out in the *Maastricht Treaty* signed by European leaders in December 1991.
- The Maastricht Treaty specified a set of macroeconomic convergence criteria that EU countries would need to satisfy in order to qualify for admission to EMU. A major purpose of the convergence criteria was to reassure voters in low-inflation countries such as Germany that the new, jointly managed European currency would be as resistant to inflation as the DM had been. A *Stability and Growth Pact (SGP)*, devised by EU leaders in 1997 at Germany's insistence, was intended to limit government deficits and debt at the national level.
- The theory of *optimum currency areas* implies that countries will wish to join fixed exchange rate areas closely linked to their own economies through trade and factor mobility. A country's decision to join an exchange rate area is determined by the difference between the *monetary efficiency gain* from joining and the *economic stability loss* from joining. The *GG-LL* diagram relates both of these factors to the degree of economic integration between the joining country and the larger, fixed exchange rate zone. Only when economic integration passes a critical level is it beneficial to join.
- The European Union does not appear to satisfy all of the criteria for an optimum currency area. Although many barriers to market integration within the European Union have been removed since the 1980s and the euro appears to have promoted intra-EU trade, the level of trade still is not very extensive. In addition, labor mobility between and even within EU countries appears more limited than that within other large currency areas such as the United States. Finally, the level of *fiscal federalism* in the European Union is too small to cushion member countries from adverse economic events, and policies for banking sector stability are not adequately centralized.
- The euro crisis was sparked by Greek fiscal problems revealed at the end of 2009, but the crisis spread so widely because euro area banks were overextended and some countries had suffered big real appreciations that they could not unwind through

devaluation. The prospect that some governments might *default* on their debts hurt banks, and conversely, bank weakness forced governments into expensive bailouts, in a self-reinforcing *doom loop*. The results were soaring government borrowing rates and capital flight from fiscally stressed countries. The ECB offered massive lender of last resort support to peripheral banks as money fled; at the same time, their governments required loans from other EU members and the IMF, loans that came on condition of fiscal austerity and structural reforms. Austerity combined with tight credit in so many neighboring countries gave rise to deep recessions.

- Responses to the crisis included revamped fiscal restrictions on euro area governments as well as helpful but incomplete progress toward a euro zone banking union. The most effective initiative in pushing government borrowing rates down, however, was the ECB's promise of Outright Monetary Transactions. In recent years, the ECB has carried out large-scale purchases of sovereign bonds (among other assets) in order to reduce long-term interest rates and prevent deflation, and it extended these actions further to respond to the economic effects of the COVID-19 pandemic. On the fiscal side, the European Commission's Next Generation EU pandemic recovery fund could be a promising step on the road to more fiscal federalism.

## KEY TERMS

credibility theory of the EMS, p. 699	economic stability loss, p. 707	optimum currency areas, p. 705
default, p. 717	European Monetary System (EMS), p. 698	Stability and Growth Pact (SGP), p. 703
doom loop, p. 722	fiscal federalism, p. 712	
economic and monetary union (EMU), p. 701	Maastricht Treaty, p. 701	
	monetary efficiency gain, p. 705	

## PROBLEMS

1. Why might EMS provisions for the extension of central bank credits from strong-to-weak-currency members have increased the stability of EMS exchange rates?
2. In the EMS before September 1992, the Italian lira/DM exchange rate could fluctuate by up to 2.25 percent up or down. Assume that the lira/DM central parity and band were set in this way and could not be changed. What would have been the maximum possible difference between the interest rates on *one-year* lira and DM deposits? What would have been the maximum possible difference between the interest rates on *six-month* lira and DM deposits? On *three-month* deposits? Do the answers surprise you? Give an intuitive explanation.
3. Continue with problem 2. Imagine that in Italy, the interest rate on five-year government bonds was 11 percent per annum and that in Germany, the rate on five-year government bonds was 8 percent per annum. What would have been the implications for the credibility of the current lira/DM exchange parity?
4. Do your answers to problems 2 and 3 require an assumption that interest rates and expected exchange rate changes are linked by interest parity? Why or why not?
5. Suppose that soon after Norway pegs to the euro, EMU benefits from a favorable shift in the world demand for non-Norwegian EMU exports. What happens to the exchange rate of the Norwegian krone against noneuro currencies? How is Norway affected? How does the size of this effect depend on the volume of trade between Norway and the euro zone economies?

6. Use the *GG-LL* diagram to show how an increase in the size and frequency of unexpected shifts in a country's money demand function affects the level of economic integration with a currency area at which the country will wish to join.
7. During the speculative pressure on the EMS exchange rate mechanism (ERM) shortly before Britain allowed the pound to float in September 1992, *The Economist*, a London weekly news magazine, opined as follows:
 

The [British] government's critics want lower interest rates, and think this would be possible if Britain devalued sterling, leaving the ERM if necessary. They are wrong. Quitting the ERM would soon lead to higher, not lower, interest rates, as British economic management lost the degree of credibility already won through ERM membership. Two years ago British government bonds yielded three percentage points more than German ones. Today the gap is half a point, reflecting investors' belief that British inflation is on its way down—permanently. (See “Crisis? What Crisis?” *The Economist*, August 29, 1992, p. 51.)

  - a. Why might the British government's critics have thought it possible to lower interest rates after taking sterling out of the ERM? (Britain was in a deep recession at the time the article appeared.)
  - b. Why did *The Economist* think the opposite would occur soon after Britain exited the ERM?
  - c. In what way might ERM membership have gained credibility for British policy makers? (Britain entered the ERM in October 1990.)
  - d. Why would a high level of British nominal interest rates relative to German rates have suggested an expectation of high future British inflation? Can you think of other explanations?
  - e. Suggest two reasons why British interest rates might have been somewhat higher than German rates at the time of writing, despite the alleged “belief that British inflation is on its way down—permanently.”
8. Imagine that the EMS had become a monetary union with a single currency but that it had created no European Central Bank to manage this currency. Imagine instead that the task had been left to the various national central banks, each of which was allowed to issue as much of the European currency as it liked and to conduct open-market operations. What problems can you see arising from such a scheme?
9. Why would the failure to create a unified EU labor market be particularly harmful to the prospects for a smoothly functioning EMU, if at the same time capital is completely free to move among EU countries?
10. Before Brexit Britain was firmly within the EU, but it didn't adopt the euro, and fierce debate raged over the issue.
  - a. Find macro data on the British economy's performance since 1998 (inflation, unemployment, real GDP growth) and compare these with euro zone data.
  - b. What were nominal interest rates in Britain and the euro zone after 1998? How would Britain have fared if the ECB had been setting Britain's nominal interest rate at the euro zone level and the pound sterling's euro exchange rate had been fixed?
11. Movements in the euro's external exchange rate can be seen as goods-market shocks that have asymmetric effects on different euro zone members. When the euro appreciated against China's currency in 2007, which country suffered the greater fall in aggregate demand, Finland, which does not compete directly with China in its export markets, or Spain, which does? What would have happened had Spain retained its old currency, the peseta?

12. In the United States' currency union, we seem never to worry if a state has a big current account deficit. Have you ever seen such data in the newspaper? Can you even find the data in any U.S. government statistical sources? For example, one would guess that the state of Louisiana ran large current account deficits after it was devastated by Hurricane Katrina in 2005. But Louisiana's possible current account deficit was not deemed worthy of coverage by the financial press. We do know, however, that in 2008, Greece had a current account deficit of 14.6 percent of GDP, Portugal had a deficit of 12 percent of GDP, and Spain had a deficit of 9.8 percent of GDP (Table 21-4). Should the governments of these countries worry about such large deficits? (Hint: Relate your answer to the debate over the need for the SGP.)
13. Go to the IMF website at [www.imf.org](http://www.imf.org) and find the *World Economic Outlook* database; then download data on the current account balance (as a percent of GDP) for Greece, Spain, Portugal, Italy, and Ireland. What happens to the current accounts of these countries after 2009 during the euro crisis? Can you explain what you see?
14. Suppose it is possible for a country to leave the euro zone and begin printing its own currency. Suppose also that there is some point at which the ECB (perhaps it is worried about financial losses) will stop lending to the country's banks. What would happen if creditors suddenly begin to flee from the country's banks?
15. In the spring of 2013 Cyprus followed Greece, Ireland, and Portugal in agreeing to an emergency loan from the *troika* of the EU, ECB, and IMF. The cause was big losses in the Cypriot banking system. After imposing losses on some Cypriot bank deposits, the government, with EU approval, imposed capital controls to prevent residents from taking money abroad. Why do you think this step (which violated the EU's single-market philosophy) was taken? (Greece was forced to follow a similar approach in mid-2015, as deposits fled the country fearing a possible exit from the euro. So far, however, Greece's creditors have remained willing to extend enough credit to keep the country afloat.)
16. Imagine that a single large country within the euro area, for example, Germany, carries out a fiscal expansion, in which its government purchases more of its own country's output. What would be the effect on the other members of the euro area?
  - a. Start by using the *DD-AA* model, considering the euro area to be a single economy with an exchange rate that floats against the rest of the world. Then consider the channels through which the German policy change could affect other currency union members if the change is permanent. What if it is temporary?
  - b. Now imagine that the euro area is in a liquidity trap, with the ECB policy rate fixed at zero (recall Chapter 17). Referring to Figure 17-19, how do you think a temporary German fiscal expansion affects other currency union members? What about a permanent expansion?

## FURTHER READINGS

- Alberto Alesina and Francesco Giavazzi, eds. *Europe and the Euro*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2010. Essays on the euro's first decade.
- Helge Berger, Giovanni Dell'Ariccia, and Maurice Obstfeld. "Revisiting the Economic Case for Fiscal Union in the Euro Area." *IMF Economic Review* 67 (September 2019), pp. 657–683. Makes the case that severing the doom loop in the euro area requires extensive fiscal federalism.
- Markus K. Brunnermeier, Harold James, and Jean-Pierre Landau. *The Euro and the Battle of Ideas*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2016. Wide-ranging analysis of tensions in the governance of the euro area.

- W. Max Corden. *Monetary Integration*. Princeton Essays in International Finance 32. International Finance Section, Department of Economics, Princeton University, April 1972. Classic analysis of monetary unification.
- Paul De Grauwe. "The Governance of a Fragile Eurozone." *Australian Economic Review* 45 (September 2012), pp. 255–268. Interprets the crisis in the euro zone in terms of self-fulfilling speculation in sovereign debt markets.
- Barry Eichengreen and Peter Temin. "Fetters of Gold and Paper." *Oxford Review of Economic Policy* 26 (Autumn 2010), pp. 370–384. Explores similarities between the implications of fixed exchange rates in the euro zone and of the gold standard during the Great Depression.
- Martin Feldstein. "The Political Economy of the European Economic and Monetary Union: Political Sources of an Economic Liability." *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 11 (Fall 1997), pp. 23–42. A leading American economist makes the case against EMU.
- Harold James. *Making the European Monetary Union*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 2012. Detailed historical account of the pre-history of EMU, including negotiations over the design of the ECB.
- Peter B. Kenen and Ellen E. Meade. *Regional Monetary Integration*. Cambridge, U.K.: Cambridge University Press, 2008. A comprehensive overview of the euro zone's experience and of the prospects for other large currency areas in East Asia and Latin America.
- Philip R. Lane. "The European Sovereign Debt Crisis." *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 26 (Summer 2012), pp. 49–68. Concise overview of the euro area's debt crisis.
- Kevin O'Rourke. *A Short History of Brexit*. London: Penguin UK, 2019. Readable account of the historical background to Brexit and the immediate aftermath of the 2016 referendum.
- Jean Pisani-Ferry, André Sapir, Nicolas Véron, and Guntram B. Wolff. "What Kind of European Banking Union?" Bruegel Policy Contribution 2012/12, June 2012. Compact review of issues in setting up a banking union within the EU.
- Thomas Sampson. "Brexit: The Economics of International Disintegration." *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 31 (Fall 2017), pp. 163–184. Clear discussion of Brexit's lessons for European and global integration.
- Jay C. Shambaugh. "The Euro's Three Crises." *Brookings Papers on Economic Activity* 1 (2012), pp. 157–211. A broad look at the euro zone problems leading to the crisis.
- Edward Tower and Thomas D. Willett. *The Theory of Optimal Currency Areas and Exchange Rate Flexibility*. Princeton Special Papers in International Economics 11. International Finance Section, Department of Economics, Princeton University, May 1976. Surveys the theory of optimum currency areas.



# CHAPTER 22

## DEVELOPING COUNTRIES: GROWTH, CRISIS, AND REFORM

Until now, we have studied macroeconomic interactions between industrialized market economies like those of the United States and Western Europe. Richly endowed with capital and skilled labor, these politically stable countries generate high levels of income for their residents. And their markets, compared to those of some poorer countries, have long been relatively free of direct government control.

Several times since the 1980s, however, the macroeconomic problems of the world's developing countries have been at the forefront of concerns about the stability of the entire international economy. Over the decades following World War II, trade between developing and industrial nations has expanded, as have developing-country financial transactions with richer lands. In turn, the more extensive links between the two groups of economies have made each group more dependent than before on the economic health of the other. Events in developing countries therefore have a significant impact on welfare and policies in more advanced economies. Since the 1960s, some countries that once were poor have increased their living standards dramatically, while others have fallen even further behind the industrial world. By understanding these contrasting development experiences, we can derive important policy lessons that can spur economic growth in all countries.

This chapter studies the macroeconomic problems of developing countries and the repercussions of those problems on the developed world. Although the insights from international macroeconomics that we gained in previous chapters also apply to developing countries, the distinctive problems those countries have faced in their quest to catch up to the rich economies warrant separate discussion. In addition, the lower income levels of developing areas make macroeconomic slumps there even more painful than in developed economies, with consequences that can threaten political and social cohesion.

## LEARNING GOALS

After reading this chapter, you will be able to:

- Describe the persistently unequal world distribution of income and the evidence on its causes.
- Summarize the major economic features of developing countries.
- Explain the position of developing countries in the world capital market and the problem of default by developing borrowers.
- Recount the recent history of developing-country financial crises.
- Discuss proposed measures to enhance poorer countries' gains from participation in the world capital market.

# Income, Wealth, and Growth in the World Economy

Poverty is the basic problem that developing countries face, and escaping from poverty is their overriding economic and political challenge. Compared with industrialized economies, most developing countries are poor in the factors of production essential to modern industry: capital and skilled labor. The relative scarcity of these factors contributes to low levels of per capita income and often prevents developing countries from realizing the economies of scale from which many richer nations benefit. But factor scarcity is largely a symptom of deeper problems. Political instability, insecure property rights, and misguided economic policies frequently have discouraged investment in capital and skills while also reducing economic efficiency in other ways.

## The Gap between Rich and Poor

The world's economies fall into four main categories according to their annual per capita income levels:

1. Low-income economies (including Afghanistan, North Korea, Tajikistan, Syria, Yemen, and Haiti along with much of sub-Saharan Africa).
2. Lower middle-income economies (including Bangladesh, Cambodia, Vietnam, India, Pakistan, the Philippines, several Middle Eastern countries, several Latin American and Caribbean countries, some former Soviet countries including Ukraine, and most of the remaining African countries).
3. Upper middle-income economies (including the remaining Latin American countries, a handful of African countries, several Caribbean countries, Bulgaria, Georgia, Kazakhstan, Turkey, Indonesia, Iran, Iraq, Malaysia, China, and Russia).
4. High-income economies (including the rich industrial market economies; the remaining Caribbean countries; Panama and Uruguay; a handful of exceptionally fortunate former developing countries such as Israel, South Korea, and Singapore; oil-rich Kuwait and Saudi Arabia; and some successfully transitioned Eastern European countries such as the Czech and Slovak Republics, Hungary, Poland, and Estonia).

The first two categories consist mainly of countries at a backward stage of development relative to industrial economies, while the last two comprise most of the emerging market economies (as well as the industrial economies, of course). Table 22-1 shows 2019 average per capita annual dollar income levels for these country groups, together with another indicator of economic well-being, average life expectancy at birth in 2018.

Table 22-1 illustrates the sharp disparities in international income levels in the second decade of the 21st century. Average national income per capita in the richest

TABLE 22-1

**Indicators of Economic Welfare in Four Groups of Countries**

Income Group	GDP per Capita (2019 U.S. dollars)	Life Expectancy in 2018 (years)
Low-income	780	63
Lower middle-income	2,177	68
Upper middle-income	9,040	75
High-income	44,584	81

Source: World Bank, World Development Indicators.

economies is 57 times that of the average in the poorest developing countries! Even the upper middle-income countries enjoy only about one-fifth of the per capita income of the industrial group. The life expectancy figures generally reflect international differences in income levels. Average life spans fall as relative poverty increases.<sup>1</sup>

### Has the World Income Gap Narrowed Over Time?

Explaining the income differences among countries is one of the oldest goals of economics. It is no accident that Adam Smith's classic 1776 book was titled *The Wealth of Nations*. Since at least a century before Smith's time, economists have sought not only to explain why countries' incomes differ at a given point in time but also to solve the more challenging puzzle of why some countries become rich while others stagnate. Debate over the best policies for promoting economic growth has been fierce, as we shall see in this chapter.

Both the depth of the economic growth puzzle and the payoff to finding growth-friendly policies are illustrated in Table 22-2, which shows per capita output *growth rates* for several country groups between 1960 and 2017. (These real output data are corrected to account for departures from purchasing power parity.) Over that period, the United States grew at the roughly 2 percent annual per capita rate that many economists would argue is the long-run maximum for a mature economy. The industrial countries that were most prosperous in 1960 generally grew at mutually comparable rates. As a result, their income gaps compared to the United States changed relatively little. The poorest industrialized countries as of 1960, however, often grew much more quickly than the United States on average, and as a result, their per capita incomes tended to catch up to that of the United States. For example, Japan, which had been 63 percent poorer than the United States in 1960, was only around 28 percent poorer in 2017—thereby having narrowed the earlier income gap significantly.

Japan's catching-up process illustrates the tendency for differences among *industrial* countries' living standards to narrow over the postwar era. The theory behind this observed **convergence** in per capita incomes is deceptively simple. If trade is free, if capital can move to countries offering the highest returns, and if knowledge itself moves across political borders so that countries always have access to cutting-edge production technologies, then there is no reason for international income gaps to persist for long. Some gaps do persist in reality because of policy differences across industrial countries; however, the preceding forces of convergence seem to be strong enough to

<sup>1</sup>Chapter 16 showed that an international comparison of *dollar* incomes portrays relative welfare levels inaccurately because countries' price levels measured in a common currency (here, U.S. dollars) generally differ. The World Bank supplies national income numbers adjusted to take account of deviations from purchasing power parity (PPP). Those adjustments greatly reduce, but do not eliminate, the disparities in Table 22-1. Table 22-2 reports some PPP-adjusted incomes.

**TABLE 22-2 Output per Capita in Selected Countries, 1960–2017  
(in 2011 U.S. dollars)**

Country	Output per Capita		Annual Average Growth Rate (percent per year)
	1960	2017	
<b>Industrialized in 1960</b>			
Canada	15,573	44,975	1.9
France	11,344	38,170	2.2
Germany	13,337	46,349	2.2
Italy	10,176	35,668	2.2
Japan	6,400	39,381	3.2
Spain	7,301	33,593	2.7
Sweden	14,478	45,844	2.0
United Kingdom	12,719	38,153	1.9
United States	17,319	54,586	2.0
<b>Africa</b>			
Kenya	1,952	3,090	0.8
Nigeria	2,665	5,270	1.2
Senegal	2,917	3,111	0.1
South Africa	7,204	12,004	0.9
Zimbabwe	1,132	1,914	0.9
<b>Latin America</b>			
Argentina	9,283	16,432	1.0
Brazil	3,995	14,066	2.2
Chile	5,734	22,123	2.4
Colombia	4,059	13,585	2.1
Costa Rica	4,329	14,712	2.2
Mexico	6,633	16,792	1.6
Paraguay	2,618	8,948	2.2
Peru	5,135	11,808	1.5
Venezuela	11,935	11,321	-0.1
<b>Asia</b>			
China	815	13,465	5.0
Hong Kong	4,459	50,271	4.3
India	1,048	6,548	3.3
Indonesia	1,635	11,173	3.4
Malaysia	2,639	24,574	4.0
Singapore	4,368	69,150	5.0
South Korea	1,573	36,999	5.7
Taiwan	2,070	43,501	5.5
Thailand	1,162	14,884	4.7

**Note:** Data come from the Penn World Table, Version 9.1, and use PPP exchange rates to compare national incomes (variables *RGDPNA/POP*). For a description, see the Penn World Table website at <https://www.rug.nl/ggdc/productivity/pwt/>.

keep industrial-country incomes roughly in the same ballpark. Remember, too, that differences in output *per capita* may not accurately reflect differences in output *per employed worker* because other industrial countries have different unemployment and labor-force participation rates compared with the United States.

Despite the appeal of a simple convergence theory, no clear tendency for per capita incomes to converge characterizes the world as a whole, as the rest of Table 22-2 shows. We see vast discrepancies in long-term growth rates among different regional country groupings but no general tendency for poorer countries to grow faster. Several countries in sub-Saharan Africa, although at the bottom of the world income scale, have grown (for most of the postwar years) at rates far below those of the main industrial countries.<sup>2</sup> Growth has also been relatively slow in Latin America, where only a few countries (such as Brazil and Chile) have surpassed the average growth rate of the United States despite lower income levels.

In contrast, East Asian countries *have* tended to grow at rates far above those of the industrialized world, as the convergence theory would predict. South Korea, with an income level below Senegal's in 1960, has grown nearly 6 percent per year (in per capita terms) since then and in 1997, the World Bank classified it as a high-income country. Singapore's 5 percent annual average growth rate likewise propelled it to high-income status. Some of the Eastern European countries that lived under Soviet rule until 1989 have also graduated rapidly to the upper income brackets.

A country that can muster even a 3 percent annual growth rate will see its real per capita income double every generation. But at the growth rates seen in East Asian countries such as Hong Kong, Singapore, South Korea, and Taiwan, per capita real income increases *fivefold* every generation!

What explains the sharply divergent long-run growth patterns in Table 22-2? The answer lies in the economic and political features of developing countries and the ways these have changed over time in response to both world events and internal pressures. The structural features of developing countries have also helped to determine their success in pursuing key macroeconomic goals other than rapid growth, such as low inflation, low unemployment, and financial-sector stability.

### The Importance of Developing Countries for Global Growth

One crucial change in the global economy over the past half century is that poorer economies now account for a much bigger share of global income than in the past—more than half measured on a PPP basis—and also account for a bigger share of global economic growth. Figure 22-1 illustrates this evolution, allocating total global GDP growth to its different regional components since the 1960s.

As you can see, in the 1960s the United States and other advanced economies made the lion's share of contributions to world growth. By the 2010s, however, rich countries were explaining substantially less than half of it. Two main facts explain this change. First, emerging and developing economies, despite considerable heterogeneity in performance, overall tended to grow faster than the advanced countries; so as their global GDP shares increased, they became more important contributors to world growth. In this process, giants like China and India have played a notable role. Second, growth slowed in the advanced economies.

To understand global economic growth, we must look increasingly to the world's poorer economies. Moreover, what happens to those countries' economies will have important consequences for richer countries. What features and policies have determined their performance?

<sup>2</sup>On the other hand, other countries in sub-Saharan Africa have now reached upper middle-income status. Botswana in southern Africa did so early. The country enjoyed an average per capita growth rate well above 5 percent per year during the three decades after 1960. South Africa is also upper middle-income, but while it has long had relatively high GDP per capita compared with most of Africa, it has grown slowly and therefore never attained high-income status. Its *average* relative prosperity conceals severe inequality across households—even more than in other African countries—and therefore considerable poverty.

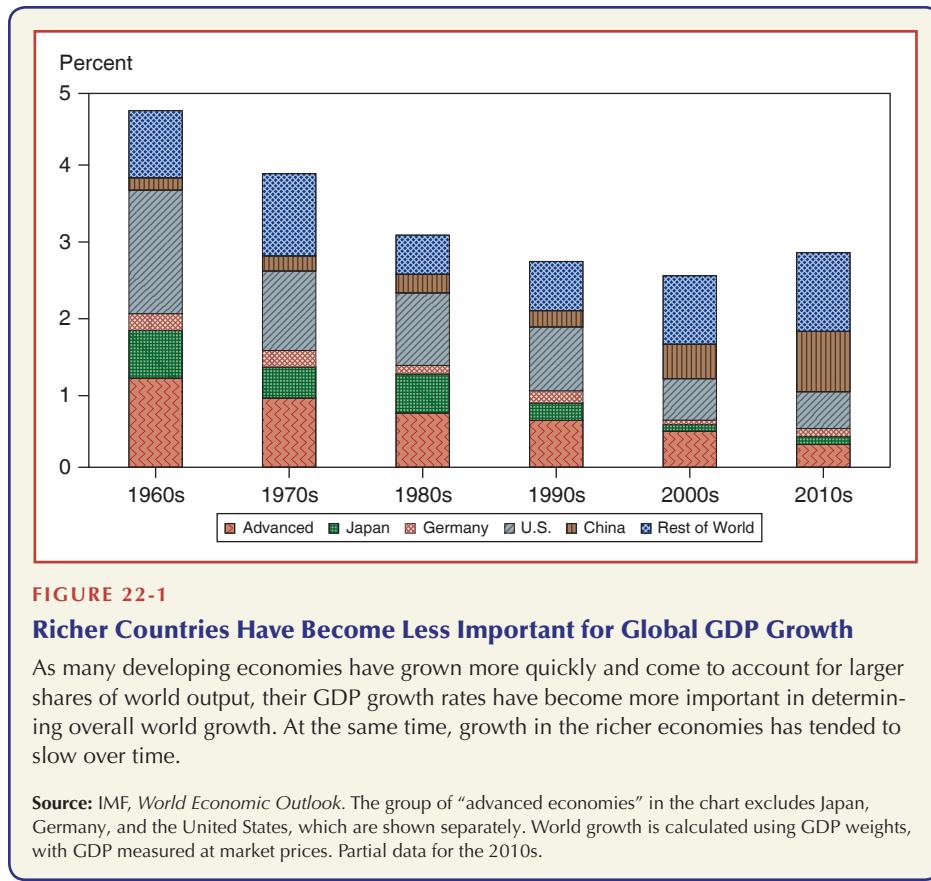


FIGURE 22-1

### Richer Countries Have Become Less Important for Global GDP Growth

As many developing economies have grown more quickly and come to account for larger shares of world output, their GDP growth rates have become more important in determining overall world growth. At the same time, growth in the richer economies has tended to slow over time.

**Source:** IMF, *World Economic Outlook*. The group of “advanced economies” in the chart excludes Japan, Germany, and the United States, which are shown separately. World growth is calculated using GDP weights, with GDP measured at market prices. Partial data for the 2010s.

## Structural Features of Developing Countries

Developing countries differ widely among themselves these days, and no single list of “typical” features would accurately describe all developing countries. In the early 1960s, these countries were much more similar to each other in their approaches to trade policy, macroeconomic policy, and other government interventions in the economy. Then things began to change. East Asian countries abandoned import-substituting industrialization, embracing an export-oriented development strategy instead. This strategy proved very successful. Later on, countries in Latin America reduced trade barriers while simultaneously attempting to rein in government’s role in the economy, reduce chronically high inflation, and, in many cases, open capital accounts to private transactions. These efforts have been successful in some dimensions— inflation is much lower across the region—but not in others—growth in much of Latin America still faces impediments.

While many developing countries therefore have reformed their economies to come closer to the structures of the successful industrial economies, the process remains incomplete, and many developing countries tend to be characterized by at least some of the following features:

1. There is a history of extensive direct government control of the economy, including restrictions on international trade, government ownership or control of large

industrial firms, direct government control of internal financial transactions, and a high level of government consumption as a share of GNP. Developing countries differ widely among themselves in the extent to which they have reduced government's economic role in these various areas over the past decades.

2. There is a history of high inflation. In many countries, the government was unable to pay for its heavy expenditures and the losses of state-owned enterprises through taxes alone. Tax evasion was rampant, and much economic activity was driven underground, so it proved easiest simply to print money. **Seigniorage** is the name economists give to the real resources a government earns when it prints money that it spends on goods and services. When their governments were expanding money supplies continually to extract high levels of seigniorage, developing countries experienced inflation and even hyperinflation. (See, for example, the discussion of inflation and money supply growth in Latin America in the discussion of “Empirical Evidence on Money Supplies and Price Levels” in Chapter 15.)
3. Where domestic financial markets have been liberalized, weak credit institutions often abound. Banks frequently lend funds they have borrowed to finance poor or very risky projects. Loans may be made on the basis of personal connections rather than prospective returns, and government safeguards against financial fragility, such as bank supervision (Chapter 20), tend to be ineffective due to incompetence, inexperience, and outright fraud. While public trade in stock shares has developed in many emerging markets, it is usually harder in developing countries for shareholders to find out how a firm’s money is being spent or to control firm managers. The legal framework for resolving asset ownership in cases of bankruptcy typically is also weak. Notwithstanding the recent instability in advanced-country financial markets, it is still true that by comparison, developing countries’ financial markets remain less effective in directing savings toward their most efficient investment uses. As a result, developing countries remain even more prone to crisis.
4. Where exchange rates are not pegged outright (as in Saudi Arabia), they tend to be managed more heavily by developing-country governments. Government measures to limit exchange rate flexibility reflect both a desire to keep inflation under control and the fear that floating exchange rates would be subject to huge volatility in the relatively thin markets for developing-country currencies. There is a history of allocating foreign exchange through government decree rather than through the market, a practice (called *exchange control*) that some developing countries still maintain. Most developing countries have, in particular, tried at some point to control capital movements by limiting foreign exchange transactions connected with trade in assets. More recently, however, many emerging markets have opened their capital accounts.
5. Natural resources or agricultural commodities make up an important share of exports for many developing countries—for example, Russian petroleum, Malaysian timber, South African gold, and Colombian coffee. In turn, primary commodity exporters are vulnerable to the vagaries of international prices, as the following box on “The Commodity Super Cycle” discusses.
6. Attempts to circumvent government controls, taxes, and regulations have helped to make corrupt practices such as bribery and extortion a way of life in many if not most developing countries. Even though the development of underground economic activity (the “informal” economy) has in some instances aided economic efficiency by restoring a degree of market-based resource allocation, on balance it is clear from the data that informality, corruption, and poverty go hand in hand.

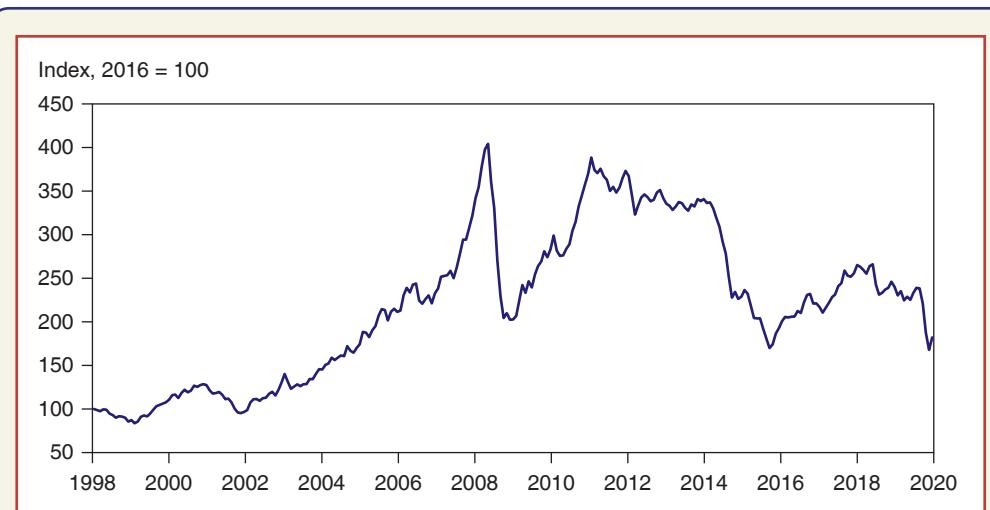
## THE COMMODITY SUPER CYCLE

Over the past two decades, aggregate commodity prices have experienced a boom-bust cycle, rising by more than 400 percent between 1998 and 2020 with a sharp but brief interruption during the Great Recession that began in 2007 and then falling by more than 50 percent between 2011 and 2016. Such cycles have occurred repeatedly in the past, leading economists Bilge Erten and José Antonio Ocampo to identify a number of long-term “commodity super cycles” since the 19th century, each usually lasting about 30 to 40 years.<sup>3</sup>

The recent cycle applied quite generally across different commodity groups. Between 1999 and 2008, most commodity prices saw double-digit annual growth, including fuels like oil, coal, and natural gas; metals like aluminum, iron, and tin; and foodstuffs, like corn, rice, and wheat. You can see the recent cycle in aggregate commodity prices in the accompanying chart, as measured by the IMF’s dollar commodity price index.

Several factors contributed to the commodity price run-up between 1999 and 2011, most notably the rapid growth of emerging economies, supply constraints, and low global real interest rates.

1. *Growth in emerging economies.* During the first decade of the 21st century, China’s economy grew rapidly and by 2011 was responsible for around half of global demand for a number of natural resources, particularly industrial metals. Hundreds of millions of its citizens transitioned from the rural economy to industrial occupations, fueling resource-intensive manufacturing and construction. One much-cited fact indicating the pace of China’s urbanization is that the country used more cement between 2011 and 2013 than the United States did over all of the 20th century! Other emerging markets—for example, Brazil, Russia, and India—also contributed to the high demand



**Commodity Price Index**

**Source:** IMF. All Commodity Price Index (2016 = 100). Includes both fuel and non-fuel price indices.

<sup>3</sup>See Bilge Erten and José Antonio Ocampo, “Super Cycles of Commodity Prices since the Mid-Nineteenth Century,” *World Development* 44 (April 2013), pp. 14–30.

for commodities during most of this period. Some of these were also commodity exporters, in which high world demand for their own exports supported their demand for commodity imports from others.

2. *Supply constraints.* A number of supply disruptions also helped push up prices, for example, droughts in some important agricultural regions and violence and turmoil in some oil-producing countries. In addition, the long lead times for some extractive investments imply that supply can be relatively inelastic in the short run. Similarly, some commodity exporters faced supply bottlenecks, for example, inadequate transport facilities.
3. *Low interest rates.* The low interest rate environment that we discussed in previous chapters (recall Figure 19-8) also contributed to the increase in commodity prices, as investors searched for yield in alternative assets and invested in commodity stockpiles. Abundant global credit up to the financial crisis of 2007–2009 made this speculation easier.

Since 2011, China has attempted to shift its economy away from investment and manufacturing, including construction, in the direction of more domestic consumption, especially of services. Its government has viewed such an evolution as necessary both to reduce an inefficiently high level of investment and to meet the needs of a growing middle class. This reorientation, however, led the overall pace of Chinese economic growth to slow considerably, from double digits to somewhere around 6 percent per year before the COVID-19 pandemic. The slowdown took a toll on global commodity prices. What was at first a gradual decline became a rout in 2014–2015 as the world price of oil plummeted, driven by slowing world growth as well as a

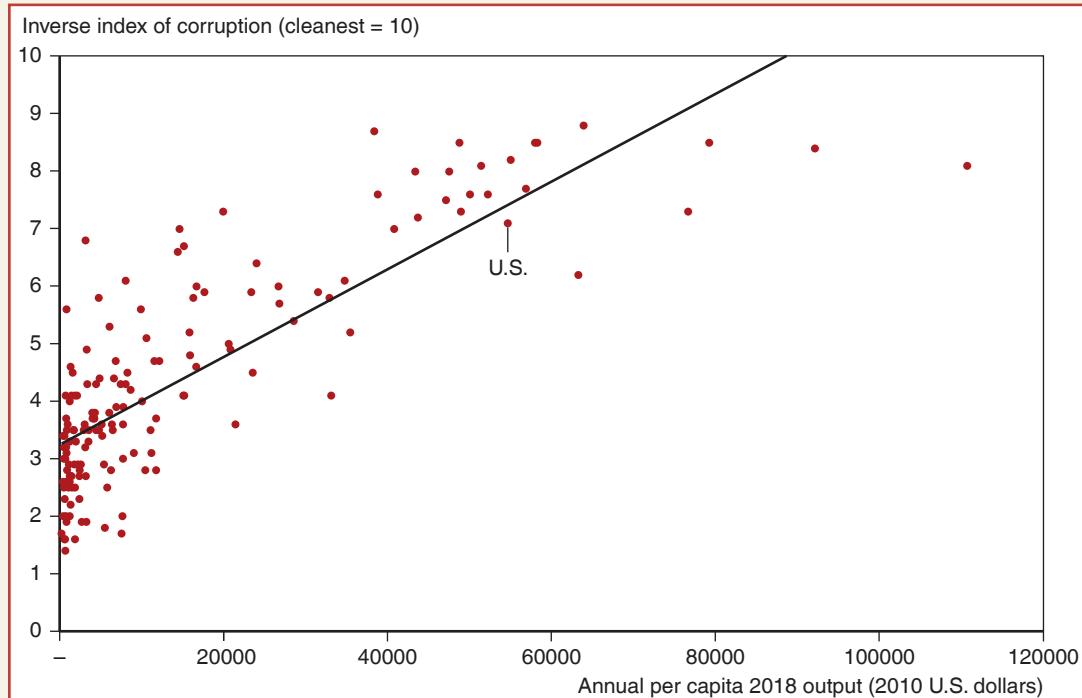
price war among oil producers. It is still too early to tell how long the present period of depressed commodity prices will last, but it is hard to imagine a quick return to the boom conditions that ended in the early 2010s. The commodity-price decline has meant slower growth for commodity-exporting emerging lower-income countries, some of which are quite dependent on only a small number of primary exports. Africa, which benefited from booming commodity prices in the 2000s, was especially hard hit. Commodity exporters may well have to diversify their exports further into non-commodity areas if they want to boost growth and return to rising per capita incomes.

The recent struggles of commodity exporters have revived interest in a hypothesis advanced in 1950 by economists Raúl Prebisch and Hans Singer. Prebisch and Singer predicted that developing commodity exporters were doomed to a secular process of terms of trade decline and therefore would have a hard time converging to advanced-country income levels. They argued that global commodity demand is income inelastic while demand for manufactured goods and services rises strongly with incomes, so that as the world economy grew, the terms of trade would inevitably fall for primary exporters.

At first glance, the data do not bear out the Prebisch-Singer hypothesis—certainly the real price of petroleum, even after its recent decline, is far above where it was in 1950! Furthermore, some commodity exporters that were poor in 1950 have successfully diversified into manufactures and grown at impressive rates. Researchers who have used historical data to study very long time periods, however, have detected some tendency for commodity prices to trend downward over time, despite the presence of long cycles in commodity prices.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>4</sup>Erten and Ocampo, *op. cit.*, detect a long-term downward trend in real commodity prices since the mid-19th century. The original references on the Prebisch-Singer hypothesis are Raúl Prebisch, “The Economic Development of Latin America and Its Principal Problems,” *Economic Bulletin for Latin America* 7 (1950), pp. 1–12; and Hans Singer, “The Distribution of Gains between Investing and Borrowing Countries,” *American Economic Review* 40 (May 1950), pp. 473–485. A recent study of the Prebisch-Singer hypothesis using very long time series data is Rabah Arezki, Kaddour Hadri, Prakash Loungani, and Yao Rao, “Testing the Prebisch-Singer Hypothesis since 1650: Evidence from Panel Techniques That Allow for Multiple Breaks,” *Journal of International Money and Finance* 42 (April 2014), pp. 208–223.

For a large sample of developing and industrial countries, Figure 22-2 shows the strong positive relationship between annual real per capita output and an inverse index of corruption—ranging from 1 (most corrupt) to 10 (cleanest)—published by the organization Transparency International.<sup>5</sup> Several factors underlie this strong positive relationship. Government regulations that promote corruption also harm economic prosperity. Statistical studies have found that corruption itself tends to have net negative effects on economic efficiency and growth.<sup>6</sup> Finally, poorer countries lack the



**FIGURE 22-2**

### Corruption and Per Capita Output

Corruption tends to rise as real per capita output falls.

**Note:** The figure plots 2018 values of an (inverse) index of corruption and 2018 values of PPP-adjusted real per capita output, measured in constant 2010 U.S. dollars (the amount a dollar could buy in the United States in 2010). The straight line represents a statistician's best guess of a country's corruption level based on its real per capita output.

**Source:** Transparency International, Corruption Perception Index; World Bank, World Development Indicators.

<sup>5</sup>According to Transparency International's 2018 rankings, the cleanest country in the world was Denmark (scoring a high 8.8), and the most corrupt was South Sudan (scoring a dismal 1.3). The score for the United States was 7.1, down from 7.6 in 2015. For detailed data and a general overview of the economics of corruption, see Vito Tanzi, "Corruption around the World," *International Monetary Fund Staff Papers* 45 (December 1998), pp. 559–594. The second chapter of International Monetary Fund, *Fiscal Monitor: Curbing Corruption* (Washington, D.C., April 2019) is devoted to a more recent survey.

<sup>6</sup>There is, of course, abundant anecdotal evidence on the economic inefficiencies associated with corruption. Consider the following description from 1999 of doing business in Brazil, which had a 2015 Transparency International ranking of 3.8:

Corruption goes well beyond shaking down street sellers. Almost every conceivable economic activity is subject to some form of official extortion.

resources to police corruption effectively, and poverty itself breeds a greater willingness to go around the rules.

Many of the broad features that still characterize developing countries today took shape in the 1930s and can be traced to the Great Depression (Chapter 19). Most developing countries experimented with direct controls over trade and payments to conserve foreign exchange reserves and safeguard domestic employment. Faced with a massive breakdown of the world market system, industrial and developing countries alike allowed their governments to assume increasingly direct roles in employment and production. Often, governments reorganized labor markets, established stricter control over financial markets, controlled prices, and nationalized key industries. The trend toward government control of the economy proved much more persistent in developing countries, however, where political institutions allowed those with vested financial interests in the status quo to perpetuate it.

Cut off from traditional suppliers of manufactures during World War II, developing countries encouraged new manufacturing industries of their own. Political pressure to protect these industries was one factor behind the popularity of import-substituting industrialization in the first postwar decades. In addition, colonial areas that gained independence after the war believed they could attain the income levels of their former rulers only through rapid, government-directed industrialization and urbanization. Finally, developing-country leaders feared that their efforts to escape poverty would be doomed if they continued to specialize in primary-commodity exports such as coffee, copper, and wheat. In the 1950s, as we have seen, the influential Prebisch-Singer hypothesis argued that developing countries would suffer continually declining terms of trade unless they used commercial policy to move resources out of primary exports and into import substitutes. These forecasts turned out to be wrong, but they did influence developing countries' policies in the first postwar decades.

## Developing-Country Borrowing and Debt

One further feature of developing countries is crucial to understanding their macroeconomic problems: Many have relied heavily on financial inflows from abroad to finance domestic investment. Before World War I and in the period up to the Great Depression, developing countries (including the United States for much of the 19th century) received large financial inflows from richer lands. Britain was the biggest international lender, but France, Germany, and other European powers contributed as well to finance industrial development in some then-developing countries (such as Argentina, Australia, Canada, and the United States) and natural resource extraction or plantation agriculture in others (such as Brazil, Peru, Kenya, and Indonesia).

In the decades after World War II, many developing economies again tapped the savings of richer countries and built up a substantial debt to the rest of the world (around \$11 trillion in gross terms at the start of 2020). Developing-country debt was at the center of several international lending crises that preoccupied economic policy makers throughout the world starting in the early 1980s.

---

Big Brazilian companies generally agree to pay bribes, but multinationals usually refuse and prefer to pay fines. The money—paid at municipal, state and federal levels—is shared out between bureaucrats and their political godfathers. They make sure that it is impossible to comply fully with all of Brazil's tangle of laws, regulations, decrees and directives.

The bribes and fines make up part of the “Brazil Cost,” shorthand for the multitude of expenses that inflate the cost of conducting business in Brazil.

See “Death, Decay in São Paulo May Stir Reformist Zeal,” *Financial Times* (March 20/21, 1999), p. 4.

## The Economics of Financial Inflows to Developing Countries

As we have stated, many developing countries have received extensive financial inflows from abroad and now carry substantial debts to foreigners. Table 22-3 shows the pattern of borrowing since 1973 by non-oil developing countries (see the second column of data). As you can see, developing countries as a group have been generally consistent borrowers (leaving aside the major oil exporters, who run big surpluses when the world oil price is high). What factors have caused financial inflows to the developing world?

Recall the identity (analyzed in Chapter 13) that links national saving,  $S$ , domestic investment,  $I$ , and the current account balance,  $CA:S - I = CA$ . If national saving falls short of domestic investment, the difference equals the current account deficit. Because of poverty and poor financial institutions, national saving often is low in developing countries. Because these same countries are relatively poor in capital, however, the opportunities for profitably introducing or expanding plant and equipment can be abundant. Such opportunities justify a high level of investment. By running a deficit in its current account, a country can obtain resources from abroad to invest even if its domestic saving level is low. However, a deficit in the current account implies that the country is borrowing abroad. In return for being able to import more foreign goods today than its current exports can pay for, the country must promise to repay in the future either the interest and principal on loans or the dividends on shares in firms sold to foreigners.

Thus, the incentives for *intertemporal trade* that Chapter 6 examined could potentially explain much developing-country borrowing. Low-income countries generate too little saving of their own to take advantage of all their profitable investment opportunities, so they must borrow abroad. Capital-rich countries, on the other hand, have exploited many productive investment opportunities already, but saving levels are relatively high. Savers in developed countries can earn higher rates of return, however, by lending to finance investments in the developing world.

Notice that when developing countries borrow to undertake productive investments that they would not otherwise be able to carry out, both they and the lenders reap gains from trade. Borrowers gain because they can build up their capital stocks despite limited national savings. Lenders simultaneously gain because they earn higher returns on their savings than they could earn at home.

While our reasoning provides a rationale for developing countries' external deficits and debt, it does not imply that all loans from developed to developing countries are justified.

TABLE 22-3

**Cumulative Current Account Balances of Major Oil Exporters, Other Developing Countries, and Advanced Countries, 1973–2019 (billions of dollars)**

	Major Oil Exporters	Other Developing Countries	Advanced Countries
1973–1981	253	−246	−184
1982–1989	−65	−143	−427
1990–1998	−58	−523	−106
1999–2019	5,313	−852	−758

**Source:** International Monetary Fund, *International Financial Statistics* and World Economic Outlook data. Global current accounts generally do not sum to zero because of errors, omissions, and the exclusion of some countries in some periods.

Loans that finance unprofitable investments—for example, huge shopping malls that are never occupied—or imports of consumption goods may result in debts that borrowers cannot repay. In addition, faulty government policies that artificially depress national saving rates may lead to excessive foreign borrowing. The 1982–1989 fall in low-income country borrowing evident in Table 22-3 is associated with difficulties that some poorer countries had in keeping up their payments to creditors.

A surprising development starting around 2000 was that some developing countries (including many that were not oil exporters, notably China) ran substantial surpluses, a counterpart of wealthier countries' deficits (mainly that of the United States). Contrary to what simple economic theory would predict, capital was flowing *uphill*, from poorer to richer countries. We mentioned this pattern of global imbalances in Chapter 19 (see the Case Study on “Transformation and Crisis in the World Economy”) and probe further into the phenomenon later in this chapter in the box on “Capital Paradoxes.” One reason for these surpluses was developing countries’ strong desire to accumulate international reserves, as we discuss in the box on “Why Have Developing Countries Accumulated High Levels of International Reserves?”

### The Problem of Default

Potential gains from international borrowing and lending will not be realized unless lenders are confident they will be repaid. As we noted in Chapter 21, a loan is said to be in *default* when the borrower, without the agreement of the lender, fails to repay on schedule according to the loan contract. Both social and political instability in developing countries, as well as the frequent weaknesses in their public finances and financial institutions, make it much more risky to lend to developing than to industrial countries. And indeed, the history of financial flows to developing countries is strewn with the wreckage of financial crises and defaulted loan contracts:

1. In the early 19th century, a number of American states defaulted on the European loans they had taken out to finance the building of infrastructure such as canals.
2. Throughout the 19th century, Latin American countries ran into repayment problems. This was particularly true of Argentina, which sparked a global financial crisis in 1890 (the Baring Crisis) when it proved unable to meet its obligations.
3. In 1917, the new communist government of Russia repudiated the foreign debts incurred by previous rulers. The communists closed the Soviet economy to the rest of the world and embarked on a program of centrally planned economic development that was often ruthlessly enforced.
4. During the Great Depression of the 1930s, world economic activity collapsed and developing countries found themselves shut out of industrial-country export markets by a wall of protection (recall Chapter 19). Nearly every developing country defaulted on its external debts as a result, and private financial flows to developing countries dried up for four decades. Several European countries defaulted on their World War I debts to allied governments, mainly the United States.
5. Many developing countries have defaulted (or restructured their foreign debts) in recent decades. For example, in 2005, after lengthy negotiations, most of Argentina’s private creditors agreed to settle for only about a third of the contractual values of their claims on the country. After settling remaining claims and returning to global capital markets in 2016, Argentina again negotiated debt reduction with private creditors in 2020.

Sharp contractions in a country's output and employment invariably occur after a *sudden stop* in which the country suddenly loses access to all foreign sources of funds (recall Chapter 19). At a very basic level, the necessity for such contractions can be seen from the current account identity,  $S - I = CA$ . Imagine that a country is running a current account deficit that is 5 percent of its initial GNP, when suddenly foreign lenders become fearful of default and cut off all new loans. Since this action forces the current account balance to be at least zero ( $CA \geq 0$ ), the identity  $S - I = CA$  tells us that through some combination of a fall in investment or a rise in saving,  $S - I$  must immediately rise by at least 5 percent. The required sharp fall in aggregate demand necessarily depresses the country's output dramatically. Even if the country were not on the verge of default initially—imagine that foreign lenders were originally seized by a sudden irrational panic—the harsh contraction in output that the country would suffer would make default a real possibility.

Indeed, matters are likely to be even worse for the country than the preceding example suggests. Foreign lenders will not only withhold new loans if they fear default, they will naturally also try to get as much money out of the country as possible by demanding the *full* repayment on any loans for which principal can be demanded on short notice (for example, liquid short-term bank deposits). When the developing country repays the principal on debt, it is increasing its *net* foreign wealth. To generate the corresponding positive current account item (see Chapter 13), the country must somehow raise its net exports. Thus, in a sudden stop crisis, the country will not only have to run a current account of zero, it will also actually be called upon to run a *surplus* ( $CA > 0$ ). The bigger the country's *short-term* foreign debt—debt whose principal can be demanded by creditors—the larger the rise in saving or compression of investment that will be needed to avoid a default. You already may have noticed that developing-country sudden stops and default crises can be driven by a self-fulfilling mechanism analogous to the ones behind self-fulfilling balance of payments crises (Chapter 18), bank runs (Chapter 20), and the sovereign debt problems in the euro area (Chapter 21). Indeed, the underlying logic is the same. Furthermore, balance of payments crises (when the exchange rate is pegged) *and* bank runs are likely to accompany developing-country default crises. A balance of payments crisis results because the country's official foreign exchange reserves may be the only ready means it has to pay off foreign short-term debts. Through running down its official reserves, the government can cushion aggregate demand by reducing the size of the current account surplus needed to meet creditors' demands for repayment.<sup>7</sup> But the loss of its reserves leaves the government unable to peg the exchange rate any longer. At the same time, the banks get into trouble as domestic and foreign depositors, fearing currency depreciation and the consequences of default, withdraw funds and purchase foreign reserves in the hope of repaying foreign-currency debts or sending wealth safely abroad. Since the banks are often weak to begin with, the large-scale withdrawals quickly push them to the brink of failure. Finally, a negative impact on the public finances may complete the doom loop. If the government needs to issue more debt because of bailing out the banks, then its own credit standing weakens, which causes higher borrowing costs and a greater chance that it defaults on its debts.

---

<sup>7</sup>Make certain you understand why this is so. If necessary, review the open-economy accounting concepts from Chapter 13. For a statistical analysis of the characteristics of default, banking, and currency crises, see Pierre-Olivier Gourinchas and Maurice Obstfeld, "Stories of the Twentieth Century for the Twenty-First," *American Economic Journal: Macroeconomics* 4 (January 2012), pp. 226–265.

Because each of these crisis “triplets” reinforces the others, a developing country’s financial crisis is likely to be severe, to have widespread negative effects on the economy, and to snowball very quickly. The immediate origin of such a pervasive economic collapse can be in the financial account (as in a sudden stop), in the foreign exchange market, or in the banking system, depending on the situation of the particular country.

When a government defaults on its obligations, we call the event a *sovereign default*. A conceptually different situation occurs when a large number of *private* domestic borrowers cannot pay their debts to foreigners. In practice in developing countries, however, the two types of default go together. The government might bail out the private sector by taking on its foreign debts, thereby hoping to avoid widespread economic collapse. In addition, a government in trouble may provoke private defaults by limiting domestic residents’ access to its dwindling foreign exchange reserves. That action makes it much harder to pay foreign currency debts. In either case, the government becomes closely involved in the subsequent negotiations with foreign creditors.

Default crises were rare in the first three decades after World War II: Debt issue by developing countries was limited, and the lenders typically were governments or official international agencies such as the International Monetary Fund (IMF) and World Bank. As the free flow of private global capital expanded after the early 1970s, however, major default crises occurred repeatedly (as we shall see), leading many to question the stability of the world capital market.<sup>8</sup>

### Alternative Forms of Financial Inflow

When a developing country has a current account deficit, it is selling assets to foreigners to finance the difference between its spending and its income. Although we have lumped these asset sales together under the catchall term *borrowing*, the financial inflows that finance developing countries’ deficits (and, indeed, any country’s deficit) can take several forms. Different types of financial inflows have predominated in different historical periods. Because different obligations to foreign lenders result, an understanding of the macroeconomic scene in developing countries requires a careful analysis of the five major channels through which these countries have financed their external deficits.

1. *Bond finance.* Developing countries have sometimes sold bonds to private foreign citizens to finance their deficits. Bond finance was dominant in the period up to 1914 and in the interwar years (1918–1939). It regained popularity after 1990 as many developing countries tried to liberalize and modernize their financial markets.
2. *Bank finance.* Between the early 1970s and late 1980s, developing countries borrowed extensively from commercial banks in the advanced economies. In 1970, roughly a quarter of developing-country external finance was provided by banks. In 1981, banks provided an amount of finance roughly equal to the non-oil developing countries’ aggregate current account deficit for that year. Banks still lend directly to developing countries, but in the 1990s the importance of bank lending shrank.

<sup>8</sup>On the history of default through the mid-1980s, see Peter H. Lindert and Peter J. Morton, “How Sovereign Debt Has Worked,” in Jeffrey D. Sachs, ed., *Developing Country Debt and Economic Performance*, Vol. 1 (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1989). An overview of 20th-century default crises is in Atish Ghosh et al., *IMF-Supported Programs in Capital Account Crises*, Occasional Paper 210 (Washington, D.C.: International Monetary Fund, 2002). For a comprehensive historical survey, see Carmen Reinhart and Kenneth Rogoff, *This Time Is Different: Eight Centuries of Financial Folly* (Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2009). Reinhart and Rogoff document that for developing countries, default crises can occur at comparatively low levels of external debt relative to output.

3. *Official lending.* Developing countries sometimes borrow from official foreign agencies such as the World Bank or the Inter-American Development Bank. Such loans can be made on a “concessional” basis, that is, at interest rates below market levels, or on a market basis, which allows the lender to earn the market rate of return. Over the post–World War II period, official lending flows to developing nations have shrunk relative to total flows but remain dominant for some countries, for example, many of those in sub-Saharan Africa.
4. *Foreign direct investment.* In foreign direct investment, a firm largely owned by foreign residents acquires or expands a subsidiary firm or factory located in the host developing country (Chapter 8). A loan from IBM to its assembly plant in Mexico, for example, would be a direct investment by the United States in Mexico. The transaction would enter Mexico’s balance of payments accounts as a financial asset sale (and the U.S. balance of payments accounts as an equal financial asset acquisition). Since World War II, foreign direct investment has been a consistently important source of developing-country capital.
5. *Portfolio investment in ownership of firms.* Since the early 1990s, investors in developed countries have shown an increased appetite for purchasing shares of stock in developing countries’ firms. The trend has been reinforced by many developing countries’ efforts at **privatization**—that is, selling to private owners large state-owned enterprises in key areas such as electricity, telecommunications, and petroleum. In the United States, numerous investment companies offer mutual funds specializing in emerging market shares.

We can classify the five types of finance just described into two categories: *debt* finance and *equity* finance (Chapter 20). Bond, bank, and official finance are all forms of debt finance. In this case, the debtor must repay the face value of the loan, plus interest, regardless of its own economic circumstances. Direct investment and portfolio purchases of stock shares are, on the other hand, forms of equity finance. Foreign owners of a direct investment, for example, have a claim to a share of the investment’s net return, not a claim to a fixed stream of money payments. Adverse economic events in the host country thus result in an automatic fall in the earnings of direct investments and in the dividends paid to foreigners.

The distinction between debt and equity finance is useful in analyzing how developing-country payments to foreigners adjust to unforeseen events such as recessions or terms of trade changes. When a country’s liabilities are in the form of debt, its scheduled payments to creditors do not fall even if its real income falls. It may then become very painful for the country to continue honoring its foreign obligations—painful enough to cause the country to default. Life often is easier, however, with equity finance. In the case of equity, a fall in domestic income automatically reduces the earnings of foreign shareholders without violating any loan agreement. By acquiring equity, foreigners have effectively agreed to share in both the bad and the good times of the economy. Equity rather than debt financing of its investments therefore leaves a developing country much less vulnerable to the risk of a foreign lending crisis.

### The Problem of “Original Sin”

When developing countries incur debts to foreigners, those debts are often denominated in terms of a major foreign currency—the U.S. dollar, the euro, or the yen. This practice is not always a matter of choice. In general, lenders from richer countries, fearing the extreme devaluation and inflation that have occurred so often in the past, insist that poorer countries promise to repay them in the lenders’ own currencies. If sovereign

debts were denominated in domestic rather than foreign currencies—in other words, if the loan contract was a promise to repay foreign lenders with domestic currency—then developing-country governments could simply print their own currencies to repay their creditors. Governments would never need to default, although by creating inflation they would be reducing the *real* value of their obligations.

In contrast to developing countries, richer countries almost always borrow in terms of their own currencies. Thus, the United States borrows dollars from foreigners, Britain borrows pounds sterling, Japan borrows yen, and Switzerland borrows Swiss francs.

For these richer countries, the ability to denominate their foreign debts in their own currencies, while holding foreign assets denominated in foreign currencies, is a considerable advantage—even apart from the leeway it gives to repay in a currency that the home government can print. For example, suppose a fall in world demand for U.S. products leads to a dollar depreciation. We saw in Chapter 19 how such a depreciation can cushion output and employment in the United States. The U.S. portfolio of foreign assets and liabilities, in fact, yields a further cushioning advantage: Because U.S. assets are mostly denominated in foreign currencies, the dollar value of those assets *rises* when the dollar depreciates against foreign currencies. At the same time, because U.S. foreign liabilities are predominantly (about 95 percent) in dollars, their dollar value rises very little. So a fall in world demand for U.S. goods leads to a substantial wealth transfer from foreigners to the United States—a kind of international insurance payment.

For poor countries that must borrow in a major foreign currency, a fall in export demand has the opposite effect. Because poorer countries tend to be net debtors in the major foreign currencies, a depreciation of domestic currency causes a transfer of wealth to foreigners by *raising* the domestic currency value of the net foreign debt. This amounts to negative insurance!

A country that can borrow abroad in its own currency can reduce the real resources it owes to foreigners, without triggering a default, simply by depreciating its currency. A developing country forced to borrow in foreign currency lacks this option and can reduce what it owes to foreigners only through some form of outright default.<sup>9</sup>

Economists Barry Eichengreen of the University of California–Berkeley and Ricardo Hausmann of Harvard University coined the phrase **original sin** to describe developing countries' inability to borrow in their own currencies.<sup>10</sup> In these economists' view, that inability of poor countries is a structural problem caused primarily by features of the global capital market—such as the limited additional diversification potential that a small country's currency provides to creditors from rich countries, who already hold all the major currencies in their portfolios. Other economists believe that the “sin” of developing countries is not particularly “original” but instead derives from their own histories of ill-advised economic policies. The debate is far from settled, but whatever the truth, it is clear that because of original sin, debt finance in international markets is more problematic for developing than for developed economies.

A related but distinct phenomenon is the large scale of private, *internal* borrowing in dollars or other major foreign currencies in many developing countries. As a result,

<sup>9</sup>As we saw in Chapter 21, Greece's government defaulted on its debt in 2012, the first default by a high-income country since the 1940s. Euro area countries face a unique constraint compared to other high-income countries, however. Because the ECB controls monetary policy, a single euro area government cannot choose to devalue its debts legally through depreciation of the domestic currency.

<sup>10</sup>See their paper “Exchange Rates and Financial Fragility” in *New Challenges for Monetary Policy* (Kansas City, MO: Federal Reserve Bank of Kansas City, 1999), pp. 329–368.

foreign currency debtors may find themselves in considerable difficulty when the domestic currency depreciates.<sup>11</sup>

### The Debt Crisis of the 1980s

In 1981–1983, the world economy suffered a steep recession. Just as the Great Depression made it hard for developing countries to make payments on their foreign loans—quickly causing an almost universal default—the great recession of the early 1980s also sparked a crisis over developing-country debt.

Chapter 19 described how the U.S. Federal Reserve in 1979 adopted a tough anti-inflation policy that raised dollar interest rates and helped push the world economy into recession by 1981. The fall in industrial countries' aggregate demand had a direct negative impact on the developing countries, of course, but three other mechanisms were also important. Because the developing world had extensive adjustable-rate dollar-denominated debts (original sin in action), there was an immediate and spectacular rise in the interest burden that debtor countries had to carry. The problem was magnified by the dollar's sharp appreciation in the foreign exchange market, which raised the real value of the dollar debt burden substantially. Finally, primary commodity prices collapsed, depressing the terms of trade of many poor economies.

The crisis began in August 1982 when Mexico announced that its central bank had run out of foreign reserves and that it could no longer meet payments on its foreign debt. Seeing potential similarities between Mexico and other large Latin American debtors such as Argentina, Brazil, and Chile, banks in the industrial countries—the largest private lenders to Latin America at the time—scrambled to reduce their risks by cutting off new credits and demanding repayment on earlier loans.

The results were a widespread inability of developing countries to meet prior debt obligations and a rapid move to the edge of a generalized default. Latin America was perhaps hardest hit, but also hit were Soviet bloc countries like Poland that had borrowed from European banks. African countries, most of whose debts were to official agencies such as the IMF and World Bank, also fell behind on their debts. Most countries in East Asia were able to maintain economic growth and avoid rescheduling their debt (that is, stretching out repayments by promising to pay additional interest in the future). Nonetheless, by the end of 1986 more than 40 countries had encountered severe external financing problems. Growth had slowed sharply (or gone into reverse) in much of the developing world, and developing-country borrowing fell dramatically. Initially, industrial countries, with heavy involvement by the International Monetary Fund, attempted to persuade the large banks to continue lending, arguing that a coordinated lending response was the best assurance that earlier debts would be repaid. Policy makers in the industrialized countries feared that banking giants like Citicorp and Bank of America, which had significant loans in Latin America, would fail in the event of a generalized default, dragging down the world financial system with them.<sup>12</sup> (As you can

---

<sup>11</sup>For insight into the reasons for foreign-currency liability denomination, see the item by Rajan and Tokatlidis in Further Readings. When the currency of denomination is the U.S. dollar, the phenomenon is called **dollarization**. Increasingly, some of the more prosperous emerging market economies' governments have been able to issue domestic currency bonds in home bond markets, with some demand coming from foreign investors (notably mutual funds). This development has helped to mitigate (but not eliminate) the original sin problem.

<sup>12</sup>By 1981, the developing country loans of the eight largest U.S. banks amounted to 264 percent of their capital, so loan losses of 50 percent would have made them insolvent. See Table 5.1a in Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, *History of the 80s: Lessons for the Future. Volume I: An Examination of the Banking Crises of the 1980s and Early 1990s* (Washington: FDIC, 1997).

see, there was more than one near miss on the road to the 2007–2009 financial meltdown!) But the crisis didn't end until 1989 when the United States, fearing political instability to its south, insisted that American banks give some form of debt relief to indebted developing countries. In 1990, banks agreed to reduce Mexico's debt by 12 percent, and within a year, debt-reduction agreements had also been negotiated by the Philippines, Costa Rica, Venezuela, Uruguay, and Niger. When Argentina and Brazil reached preliminary agreements with their creditors in 1992, it looked as if the debt crisis of the 1980s had finally been resolved, but only after years of economic stagnation.

## Reforms, Capital Inflows, and the Return of Crisis

The early 1990s saw a renewal of private capital flows into developing countries, including some of the highly indebted Latin American countries at the center of the previous decade's debt crisis. As Table 22-3 shows, the foreign borrowing of non-oil developing countries as a group expanded sharply.

Low interest rates in the United States in the early 1990s certainly provided an initial impetus to these renewed capital flows. Perhaps more important, however, were serious efforts in the recipient economies to stabilize inflation, a move requiring governments to limit their roles in the economy and raise tax revenues. At the same time, governments sought to lower trade barriers, to deregulate labor and product markets, and to improve the efficiency of financial markets. Widespread privatization served both the microeconomic goal of fostering efficiency and competition, and the macroeconomic goal of eliminating the government's need to cover the losses of sheltered and mismanaged state-owned firms.

What finally pushed countries to undertake serious reform despite the vested political interests favoring the status quo? One factor was the 1980s debt crisis itself, which resulted in what many commentators have called a “lost decade” of Latin American growth. Many of the relatively young policy makers who came to power in Latin America as the debt crisis ended were well-trained economists who believed that misguided economic policies and institutions had brought on the crisis and worsened its effects. Another factor was the example of East Asia, which had survived the 1980s debt crisis largely unscathed. Despite having been poorer than Latin America as recently as 1960, East Asia now was richer.

Recent economic reforms have taken different shapes in different Latin American countries, and some have made significant progress. Here we contrast the macroeconomic aspects of the approaches taken in four large countries that have made wide-ranging (though not equally successful) reform attempts. All of these countries were facing difficulties in the late 2010s even before the COVID-19 pandemic erupted.

**Argentina** Argentina suffered under military rule between 1976 and 1983, but the economy remained a shambles even after the return of democracy. Following years marked by banking crises, fiscal instability, and even hyperinflation, Argentina finally turned to radical institutional reform in the early 1990s. Import tariffs were slashed, government expenditures were cut, major state companies including the national airline were privatized, and tax reforms led to increased government revenues.

The most daring component of Argentina's program, however, was the new Convertibility Law of April 1991 making Argentina's currency fully convertible into U.S. dollars at a *fixed* rate of exactly one peso per dollar. The Convertibility Law also required that the monetary base be backed entirely by gold or foreign currency, so in one stroke it sharply curtailed the central bank's ability to finance government deficits through continuing money creation. Argentina's Convertibility Law represented an extreme version of the exchange rate-based approach to reducing inflation that had been tried many times in the past, but had typically ended in a currency crisis. The 1991 monetary law

requiring 100 percent foreign exchange backing for the monetary base made Argentina an example of a **currency board**, in which the monetary base is backed entirely by foreign currency and the central bank therefore holds no domestic assets at all. This time, the approach worked for nearly a decade. Backed as it was by genuine economic and financial reforms, Argentina's plan had a dramatic effect on inflation, which remained low after dropping from 800 percent in 1990 to well under 5 percent by 1995. However, continuing inflation in the first years of the convertibility plan, despite a fixed exchange rate, implied a steep real appreciation of the peso, about 30 percent from 1990 to 1995. The real appreciation led to unemployment and a growing current account deficit.

In the mid-1990s the peso's real appreciation process ended, but unemployment remained high because of rigidities in labor markets. Although by 1997 the economy was growing rapidly, growth subsequently turned negative and the government deficit once again swelled out of control. As the world economy slipped into recession in 2001, Argentina's foreign credit dried up. The country defaulted on its foreign debts in December 2001 and abandoned the peso/dollar peg in January 2002. The peso depreciated sharply and inflation soared once again. Argentine output fell by nearly 11 percent in 2002, although growth returned in 2003 as inflation fell.

Economic performance is somewhat murky after 2003 because the government did not report economic statistics accurately. In 2015, the country elected a reforming government, which settled with international creditors and began to borrow again in international capital markets. Unfortunately, inflation and government deficits remained problematic, and international investors soon panicked once more in the face of stubborn macroeconomic imbalances and weather-related shocks. The result was another round of debt default in 2019.

**Brazil** Like Argentina, Brazil suffered runaway inflation in the 1980s as well as multiple failed attempts at stabilization accompanied by currency reforms. The country took longer to get inflation under control, however, and approached its disinflation less systematically than the Argentines did.<sup>13</sup>

In 1994, the Brazilian government introduced a new currency, the real (pronounced ray-AL), pegged to the dollar. At the cost of widespread bank failures, Brazil defended the new exchange rate with high interest rates in 1995 and then shifted to a fixed, upwardly crawling peg in the face of substantial real appreciation. Inflation dropped from an annual rate of 2,669 percent (in 1994) to under 10 percent in 1997.

Economic growth remained unimpressive, however. Although Brazil's government undertook a reduction in import barriers, privatization, and fiscal retrenchment, the country's overall progress on economic reform was much slower than in the case of Argentina, and the government's fiscal deficit remained worryingly high. A good part of the problem was the very high interest rate the government had to pay on its debt, a rate that reflected skepticism in markets that the limited upward crawl of the real against the dollar could be maintained.

Finally, in January 1999, Brazil devalued the real by 8 percent and then allowed it to float. Very quickly, the real lost 40 percent of its value against the dollar. Recession followed as the government struggled to prevent the real from going into a free fall. But the recession proved short-lived, inflation did not take off, and (because Brazil's financial institutions had avoided heavy borrowing in dollars) financial-sector collapse was avoided. Brazil elected a populist president, Ignacio Lula da Silva, in October 2002, but the market-friendly policies he ultimately (and rather unexpectedly) adopted preserved

---

<sup>13</sup>For an account, see Rudiger Dornbusch, "Brazil's Incomplete Stabilization and Reform," *Brookings Papers on Economic Activity* 1 (1997), pp. 367–404.

Brazil's access to international credit markets. Economic growth was healthy, and Brazil became a power in the emerging world. A key factor in Brazil's success was its strong commodity exports, notably to China. However, in 2014 Brazil entered a recession that intensified in 2015, amid allegations of widespread corruption in both the ruling and opposition parties. Another contributor to the recession was China's slowdown around the same time, which put downward pressure on global commodity prices (recall the box on "The Commodity Super Cycle"). In 2018, a new right-wing populist administration promised to tackle corruption and introduce economic reforms, but progress was limited. In 2020, the Brazilian president's dismissive attitude toward the COVID-19 pandemic led Brazil to have some of the highest infection and death rates in the world.

**Chile** Having learned the lessons of deep unemployment and financial collapse at the start of the 1980s, Chile implemented more consistent reforms later in the decade. Very importantly, the country instituted a tough regulatory environment for domestic financial institutions and removed an explicit bailout guarantee that had helped to worsen Chile's earlier debt crisis. Chile used a crawling peg type of exchange rate regime to bring inflation down gradually, but operated the system flexibly to avoid extreme real appreciation. The Chilean central bank became independent of the fiscal authorities in 1990 (the same year a democratic government replaced the military regime of General Pinochet). That action further solidified the commitment not to finance government deficits by ordering the central bank to print money.<sup>14</sup>

Another new policy, introduced in 1991, required all capital inflows (other than equity purchases) to be accompanied by a one-year, non-interest-bearing deposit equal to as much as 30 percent of the transaction. Because the duration of the deposit requirement was limited, the penalty fell disproportionately on short-term inflows, those most prone to withdrawal by foreign investors in a crisis. One motivation for the implied capital inflow tax was to limit real currency appreciation; the other was to reduce the risk that a sudden withdrawal of foreign short-term funds would provoke a financial crisis. There is considerable controversy among economists as to whether the Chilean capital inflow barriers succeeded in their aims, although it is doubtful that they did much harm.<sup>15</sup> In any case, the government dismantled the controls in 1998, as Chile felt repercussions of the financial crisis in Asia (see the next section).

For a time, Chile's policies paid off handsomely. Between 1991 and 1997, the country enjoyed GDP growth rates averaging better than 8 percent per year. At the same time, inflation dropped from 26 percent per year in 1990 to only 6 percent by 1997. Chile has been rated not only as being the least corrupt country in Latin America but also as being less corrupt than several European Union members and the United States. Commodity exports such as copper are important for Chile, and its economy therefore slowed as commodity prices fell during the 2010s. But Chilean economic management remained among the best in Latin America.

Chile's market-oriented reforms came with higher income inequality, however. Popular frustration built over time but erupted into open and sometimes violent civil

<sup>14</sup>For an overview of aspects of the Chilean approach to economic reform, see Barry P. Bosworth, Rudiger Dornbusch, and Raúl Labán, eds., *The Chilean Economy: Policy Lessons and Challenges* (Washington, D.C.: Brookings Institution, 1994). A classic account of Chilean financial problems at the start of the 1980s is Carlos F. Díaz-Alejandro, "Goodbye Financial Repression, Hello Financial Crash," *Journal of Development Economics* 19 (September/October 1985), pp. 1–24. This paper is highly recommended, as the problems discussed by Díaz-Alejandro have proven relevant far beyond the specific context of Chile.

<sup>15</sup>For a discussion, see Kevin Cowan and José De Gregorio, "International Borrowing, Capital Controls, and the Exchange Rate: Lessons from Chile," in Sebastian Edwards, ed., *Capital Controls and Capital Flows in Emerging Economies* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2007), pp. 241–296.

protest after a seemingly trivial event, a hike in the subway fare in Chile's capital, Santiago. Very soon after, the pandemic hit the economy as well.

**Mexico** Mexico introduced a broad stabilization and reform program in 1987, combining an aggressive reduction in public-sector deficits and debt with exchange rate targeting and wage-price guidelines negotiated with representatives of industry and labor unions.<sup>16</sup> That same year, the country made a significant commitment to free trade by joining the GATT. (Mexico subsequently joined the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development and, in 1994, joined the North American Free Trade Agreement.)

Mexico fixed its peso's exchange rate against the U.S. dollar at the end of 1987, moved to a crawling peg at the start of 1989, and moved to a crawling band at the end of 1991. The government kept a level ceiling on the peso's possible appreciation but announced each year after 1991 a gradually rising limit on the currency's allowable extent of depreciation. Thus, the range of possible exchange rate fluctuation was permitted to increase over time.

Despite this potential flexibility, the Mexican authorities held the exchange rate near its appreciation ceiling. The peso therefore appreciated sharply in real terms, and a large current account deficit emerged. During 1994, the country's foreign exchange reserves fell to very low levels. Civil strife, a looming presidential transition, and devaluation fears contributed to this fall. Another important factor behind the foreign reserve leakage, however, was a continuing extension of government credits to banks experiencing loan losses. Mexico had rapidly privatized its banks without adequate regulatory safeguards, and it had also opened its capital account, thus giving the banks free access to foreign funds. Because banks were confident they would be bailed out by the government if they met trouble, moral hazard was rampant. Hoping to spur growth and reduce a current account deficit that by then was nearly 8 percent of GNP, the new Mexican government that took over in December 1994 devalued the peso 15 percent beyond the depreciation limit promised a year before. The devalued currency peg was immediately attacked by speculators, and the government retreated to a float. Foreign investors panicked, pushing the peso down precipitously, and soon Mexico found itself unable to borrow except at penalty interest rates. As in 1982, default loomed again. The country avoided disaster only with the help of a \$50 billion emergency loan orchestrated by the U.S. Treasury and the IMF.

Inflation, which had dropped from 159 percent in 1987 to only 7 percent in 1994, soared as the peso depreciated. Mexico's national output shrank by more than 6 percent in 1995. Unemployment more than doubled amid sharp fiscal cutbacks, sky-high interest rates, and a generalized banking crisis. But the contraction lasted only a year. By 1996, inflation was falling and the economy was recovering as the peso continued to float. Mexico regained access to private capital markets and repaid the U.S. Treasury ahead of schedule. A major achievement of Mexico has been expanding its democratic institutions and moving away from the virtual one-party rule that had characterized much of the country's 20th-century history.

As in Brazil, corruption has been a major problem in Mexico. So have been the ravages of drug cartels. The election of a left-wing populist president in 2018 led to backtracking on reforms, and in 2020, a halting response to the COVID-19 pandemic. Both developments harmed Mexico's economy.

---

<sup>16</sup>The ideas underlying the Mexican approach are explained by one of its architects, Pedro Aspe Armella, an economist trained at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology who was Mexico's finance minister for the period 1988–1994. See his book *Economic Transformation the Mexican Way* (Cambridge, MA: MIT Press, 1993). See also Nora Lustig, *Mexico: The Remaking of an Economy* (Washington, D.C.: Brookings Institution, 1992).

## East Asia: Success and Crisis

At the start of 1997, the countries of East Asia were the envy of the developing world. Their rapid growth rates were bringing them far up the development scale, putting several in striking distance of advanced-country status (which several have now reached). Then a disastrous financial crisis overwhelmed them. The speed with which East Asia's economic success turned into economic chaos came as a rude shock to most observers. East Asia's setback sparked a broader crisis that engulfed developing countries as distant as Russia and Brazil. In this section, we review the East Asian experience. The lessons, as we will see, reinforce those from Latin America.

### The East Asian Economic Miracle

As we saw in Table 22-2, South Korea was a desperately poor nation in the 1960s, with little industry and apparently few economic prospects. In 1963, however, the country launched a series of sweeping economic reforms, shifting from an inward-looking, import-substitution development strategy to one that emphasized exports. And the country began a remarkable economic ascent. Over the next 50 years, South Korea increased its real per capita GDP by a factor of about 16—more than the increase that the United States has achieved over the past century.

Even more remarkable was that South Korea was not alone. Its economic rise was paralleled by that of a number of other East Asian economies. In the first wave were Hong Kong, Taiwan, and Singapore, all of which began growing rapidly in the 1960s. In the course of the 1970s and 1980s, the club of rapidly growing Asian economies expanded to include Malaysia, Thailand, Indonesia, and—awesomely—China, the world's most populous nation. For the first time since the rise of Japan as an industrial power in the late 19th century, a substantial part of the world appeared to be making the transition from third world to first.

There remains considerable dispute about the reasons for this economic “miracle.” In the early 1990s, it was fashionable among some commentators to ascribe Asia’s growth to a common Asian system of industrial policy and business–government cooperation. However, even a cursory look at the economies involved makes the claim of a common system dubious. The high-growth economies did include regimes such as South Korea’s, where the government took an active role in the allocation of capital among industries, but it also included regimes such as those of Hong Kong and Taiwan, where this type of industrial policy was largely absent. Some economies, such as those of Taiwan and Singapore, relied heavily on the establishment of local subsidiaries of multinational firms. Others, such as South Korea and Hong Kong, relied mainly on domestic entrepreneurs.

What the high-growth economies did have in common were high rates of saving and investment; rapidly improving educational levels among the workforce; relatively moderate inflation rates; and if not free trade, at least a high degree of openness to and integration with world markets.

Perhaps surprisingly, before 1990 most rapidly growing Asian economies financed the bulk of their high investment rates out of domestic savings. In the 1990s, however, the growing popularity of emerging markets among investors in the advanced world led to substantial lending to developing Asia; several of the Asian countries began running, as a counterpart to these loans, large current account deficits as a share of GDP. A few economists worried that these deficits might pose the risk of a crisis similar to the one that had hit Mexico in late 1994, but most observers regarded large capital flows to such rapidly growing and macroeconomically stable economies as justified by the expected profitability of investment opportunities.

## WHY HAVE DEVELOPING COUNTRIES ACCUMULATED HIGH LEVELS OF INTERNATIONAL RESERVES?

**D**eveloping countries facing financial crises typically find that their international reserves have reached very low levels. A country that is fixing its exchange rate may have little choice but to let its currency depreciate once its reserves have run out. A country without liquid foreign exchange reserves may have no means to repay lenders who have previously extended short-term foreign currency loans. Like a run on a bank, market fears about potential default or depreciation can be self-fulfilling. If market confidence fails, reserves will quickly disappear and no new borrowing from foreigners will be possible. The resulting liquidity crunch may make it impossible for a country to meet its remaining foreign obligations.

This type of “bank run” mechanism has been at the heart of many developing-country crises, including the Asian economic crisis of 1997–1998, which we will discuss soon. Following the Asian crisis, which affected a large number of countries throughout the world, several economists suggested that developing countries take matters into their own hands. Because foreign credit tends to dry up precisely when it is most needed, countries could best protect themselves by accumulating large war chests of ready cash—dollars, euros, and other widely acceptable foreign currencies.

When countries had little involvement with world capital markets (as during the 1950s and early 1960s), reserve adequacy was judged largely by reference to the likelihood that export earnings might temporarily fall short of import needs. But in today’s world of globalized finance, the volume of reserves needed to deter an attack might be orders of magnitude greater. As economist Martin Feldstein of Harvard put it,

The most direct way for a country to achieve liquidity is to accumulate substantial

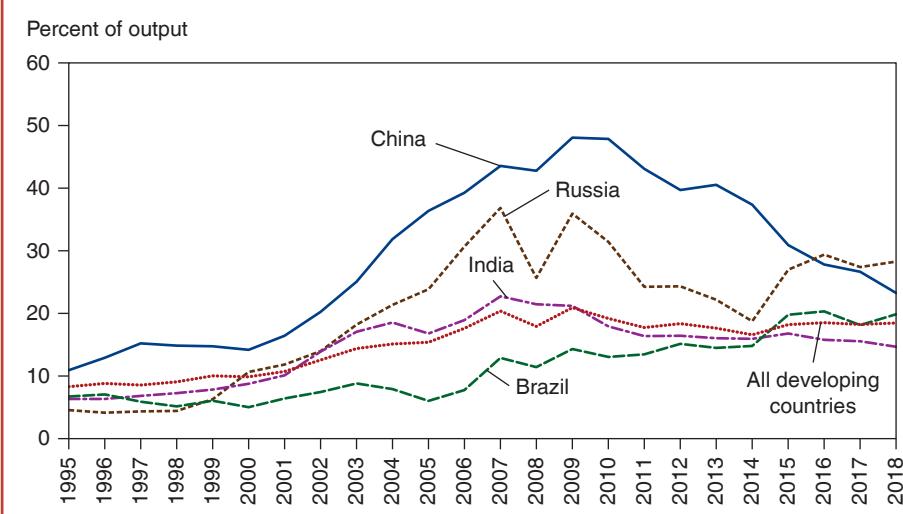
amounts of liquid foreign reserves. . . . [A] government should not judge the adequacy of its reserves in relation to the value of imports. A common reserve goal of, say, six months of imports ignores the fact that currency crises are about capital flows, not trade financing. What matters is the value of reserves relative to the potential selling of assets by speculators even if the country’s fundamental economic conditions do not warrant a currency deterioration.<sup>17</sup>

We touched on the growth of international reserves in Chapter 18. As we observed in that chapter, while reserves have grown for all countries, since the debt crisis of the 1980s they have grown especially quickly for developing countries. For developing countries as a group, however, the pace of reserve accumulation has accelerated most dramatically since the financial crises of the late 1990s. The accompanying figure shows international reserve holdings as a fraction of national output for the group of all developing countries, as well as for Brazil, Russia, India, and China. (These four countries are often referred to as the “BRICs” in view of their recent strong growth performances.) In all the cases shown, reserves better than doubled (as a share of national product) between 1999 and 2009, before falling in three of the four countries. China’s reserve ratio rose by a factor of 3.3 over that period, and Russia’s increased by a factor of 5.7.<sup>18</sup>

For a number of developing countries, the levels of reserves are so high as to exceed their total short-term foreign currency debts to foreigners. These large reserve holdings therefore provide a high degree of protection against a sudden stop of capital inflows. Indeed, they helped the developing countries weather the industrial-country credit crunch of 2007–2009 (recall Chapter 20).

<sup>17</sup>See Feldstein, “A Self-Help Guide for Emerging Markets,” *Foreign Affairs* 78 (March/April 1999), pp. 93–109. For a recent analytical treatment, see Olivier Jeanne, “International Reserves in Emerging Market Countries: Too Much of a Good Thing?” *Brookings Papers on Economic Activity* 1 (2007), pp. 1–79.

<sup>18</sup>Developing countries hold roughly a 60 percent share of their reserves in the form of U.S. dollars. They hold the remaining balance mostly in euros but also in a few alternative major currencies such as the Japanese yen, British pound, and Swiss franc.



### International Reserves Held by Developing Countries

Since the 1990s, developing countries have sharply increased their holdings of foreign currency reserves, mostly U.S dollars.

**Source:** World Bank, World Development Indicators. In this chart, developing countries include low- and middle-income countries according to the World Bank's country-income classification.

As you can see in the figure, developing countries generally spent some reserves to shield themselves during the 2007–2009 crisis.

The self-insurance motive for holding reserves is not the entire story, however. In some cases, reserve growth has been a byproduct of intervention policies to keep the currency from appreciating (recall the box on currency manipulation in Chapter 19). China provides a case in point. For many years, China's development strategy relied on increasing export levels of labor-intensive goods to fuel a rapid rise in living standards. In effect,

appreciation of the Chinese yuan renminbi makes Chinese labor more expensive relative to foreign labor, so China tightly limited the currency's appreciation over time by buying up dollars. Despite capital controls limiting inflows of foreign funds, speculative money entered the country in anticipation of future appreciation, and reserves swelled enormously. Starting in 2015 the outflow of capital reversed, and for a time, China allowed its currency to fall gradually in response to depreciation pressures. At the end of 2018, China's reserves still stood at nearly a quarter of national output.

### Asian Weaknesses

As it turned out, in 1997 Asian economies did indeed experience a severe financial crisis. And with the benefit of hindsight, several weaknesses in their economic structures—some shared by Latin American countries that had gone through crises—became apparent. Three issues in particular stood out:

1. *Productivity.* Although the rapid growth of East Asian economies was not in any sense an illusion, even before the crisis a number of studies had suggested that some limits to expansion were appearing. The most surprising result of several studies was that the bulk of Asian output growth could be explained simply by the

rapid growth of production *inputs*—capital and labor—and that there had been relatively little increase in productivity, that is, in output per unit of input. Thus, in South Korea, for example, the convergence toward advanced-country output per capita appeared to be mainly due to a rapid shift of workers from agriculture to industry, a rise in educational levels, and a massive increase in the capital–labor ratio within the nonagricultural sector. Evidence for a narrowing of the technological gap with the West was unexpectedly hard to find. The implication of these studies was that continuing high rates of capital accumulation would eventually produce diminishing returns and, possibly, that the large financial inflows taking place were not justified by future profitability after all.

2. *Banking regulation.* Of more immediate relevance to the crisis was the poor state of banking regulation in most Asian economies. Domestic depositors and foreign investors regarded Asian banks as safe, not only because of the strength of the economies but also because they believed that the governments would stand behind the banks in case of any difficulties. But banks and other financial institutions were not subject to effective government supervision over the kinds of risks they were undertaking. As the experience in Latin America should have made clear, moral hazard was present in spades. Despite this, several of the East Asian countries had eased private access to financial inflows in the 1990s, and foreign money was readily available both to East Asian banks and directly to East Asian corporate borrowers. Because of original sin, foreign debts were fixed in foreign currency terms.

In several Asian countries, close ties between business interests and government officials appear to have helped foster considerable moral hazard in lending. In Thailand, so-called finance companies, often run by relatives of government officials, lent money to highly speculative real estate ventures; in Indonesia, lenders were far too eager to finance ventures by members of the president's family. These factors help to explain how, despite high saving rates, several East Asian countries were led to invest so much that their current accounts were in deficit prior to the crisis.

Some analysts have suggested that excessive lending, driven by moral hazard, helped create an unsustainable boom in Asian economies—especially in real estate—that temporarily concealed the poor quality of many of the investments and that the inevitable end of this boom caused a downward spiral of declining prices and failing banks. However, while moral hazard was certainly a factor in the run-up to the crisis, its importance remains a subject of considerable dispute.

3. *Legal framework.* One important weakness of Asian economies became apparent only after they'd stumbled: the lack of a good legal framework for dealing with companies in trouble. In the United States, there is a well-established procedure for bankruptcy—that is, for dealing with a company that cannot pay its debts. In such a procedure, the courts take possession of the firm on behalf of its creditors, and then seek to find a way to satisfy their claims as adequately as possible. Often this means keeping the company in existence and converting the debts it cannot pay into ownership shares. In Asian economies, however, bankruptcy law was weak, in part because the astonishing growth of the economies had made corporate failures a rare event. When times did turn bad, a destructive impasse developed. Troubled companies would simply stop paying their debts. They then could not operate effectively because nobody would lend to them until the outstanding debts were repaid. Yet the creditors lacked any way to seize the limping enterprises from their original owners.

## WHAT DID EAST ASIA DO RIGHT?

The growth of East Asian economies between the 1960s and the 1990s demonstrated that it is possible for a country to move rapidly up the development ladder. But what are the ingredients for such success?

One way to answer this question may be to look at the distinctive attributes of what the World Bank, in its 1993 study titled *The East Asian Miracle*, dubs the HPAEs, the high-performing Asian economies.

One important ingredient was a high saving rate: In 1990, HPAEs saved 34 percent of GDP, compared with only half that in Latin America, slightly more in South Asia.

Another important ingredient was a strong emphasis on education. Even in 1965, when the HPAEs were still quite poor, they had high enrollment rates in basic education: Essentially all



De Visu/Shutterstock

children received basic schooling in Hong Kong, Singapore, and South Korea, and even desperately poor Indonesia had a 70 percent enrollment rate.

By 1987, rates of enrollment in secondary school in East Asia were well above those in Latin American nations such as Brazil.

Finally, two other characteristics of the HPAEs, as noted earlier, were a relatively stable macroeconomic environment,

free from high inflation or major economic slumps, and a high share of trade in GDP. These features made the East Asian economies look quite different from crisis-prone countries in Latin America. These contrasts played an important role in the “conversion” of many leaders in Latin America and elsewhere to the idea of economic reform, in terms of both a commitment to price stability and the opening of markets to the world.

Of course, every economy has weaknesses, but the performance of the East Asian economies had been so spectacular that few paid much attention to theirs. Even those who were aware that the “miracle” economies had problems could hardly have anticipated the catastrophe that overtook them in 1997.

### The Asian Financial Crisis

The Asian financial crisis is generally considered to have started on July 2, 1997, with the devaluation of the Thai baht. Thailand had been running a huge current account deficit and showing signs of financial strain for more than a year. During 1996, it became apparent that far too many office towers had been built; first the nation’s real estate market and then its stock market went into decline. In the first half of 1997, speculation about a possible devaluation of the baht led to an accelerating loss of foreign exchange reserves, and on July 2 the country attempted a controlled 15 percent devaluation. As in the case of Mexico in 1994, however, the attempted moderate devaluation spun out of control, sparking massive speculation and a far deeper plunge.

Thailand itself is a small economy. However, the sharp drop in the Thai currency was followed by speculation against the currencies, first of its immediate neighbor, Malaysia; then of Indonesia; and eventually of the much larger and more developed economy of South Korea. All of these economies seemed to speculators to share with Thailand the weaknesses previously listed; all were feeling the effects in 1997 of renewed economic slowdown in their largest industrial neighbor, Japan. In each case, governments were faced with awkward dilemmas, stemming partly from the dependence of

their economies on trade and partly from the fact that domestic banks and companies had large debts denominated in dollars. If the countries had simply allowed their currencies to drop, rising import prices would have threatened to produce dangerous inflation, and the sudden increase in the domestic currency value of debts might have pushed many potentially viable banks and companies into bankruptcy. On the other hand, defending the currencies would have required at least temporary high interest rates to persuade investors to keep their money in the country, and these high interest rates would themselves have produced an economic slump and caused banks to fail.

All of the afflicted countries except Malaysia thus turned to the IMF for assistance and received loans in return for implementing economic plans that were supposed to contain the damage. These plans included higher interest rates to limit the exchange rate depreciation, efforts to avoid large budget deficits, and “structural” reforms that were supposed to deal with the weaknesses that had brought on the crisis in the first place. Despite the IMF’s aid, however, the result of the currency crisis was a sharp economic downturn. All of the troubled countries went from growth rates in excess of 6 percent in 1996 to a severe contraction in 1998.

Worst of all was the case of Indonesia, where economic crisis and political instability reinforced each other in a deadly spiral, all made much worse by the collapse of domestic residents’ confidence in the nation’s banks. By the summer of 1998, the Indonesian rupiah had lost 85 percent of its original value, and few if any major companies were solvent. The Indonesian population faced mass unemployment and, in some cases, the inability to afford even basic foodstuffs. Ethnic violence broke out.

Because of the collapse in confidence, the troubled Asian economies were also forced into a dramatic reversal of their current account positions. Most moved abruptly from sometimes large deficits to huge surpluses. Most of this reversal came not through increased exports but through a huge drop in imports, as the economies contracted.

Currencies eventually stabilized throughout crisis-stricken Asia and interest rates decreased, but the direct spillover from the region’s slump caused slowdowns or recessions in several neighboring countries, including Hong Kong, Singapore, and New Zealand. Japan and even parts of Europe and Latin America felt the effects. Most governments continued to take the IMF-prescribed medicine, but in September 1998 Malaysia—which had never accepted an IMF program—broke ranks and imposed extensive controls on capital outflows, hoping that the controls would allow the country to ease monetary and fiscal policies without sending its currency into a tailspin. China and Taiwan, which maintained capital controls and had current account surpluses over the pre-crisis period, were largely unscathed in the crisis.

Fortunately, the downturn in East Asia was “V-shaped”: After the sharp output contraction in 1998, growth returned in 1999 as depreciated currencies spurred higher exports. However, not all of the region’s economies fared equally well, and controversy remains over the effectiveness of Malaysia’s experiment with capital controls. The economies that instead relied on IMF help were generally unhappy with its management of the crisis, which they viewed as clumsy and intrusive. These resentments have proved to be long lived: While governments can turn to the IMF for conditional funding in case of a sudden stop, the Asian crisis countries vowed never to do so again. This determination has been an important motive for “self-insurance” with large stockpiles of international reserves.

## Lessons of Developing-Country Crises

The emerging market crisis that started with Thailand’s 1997 devaluation produced what might be called an orgy of finger-pointing. Some Westerners blamed the crisis on the policies of the Asians themselves, especially the “crony capitalism” under which

businesspeople and politicians had excessively cozy relationships. Some Asian leaders, in turn, blamed the crisis on the machinations of Western financiers; even Hong Kong, normally a bastion of free-market sentiment, began intervening to block what it described as a conspiracy by speculators to drive down its stock market and undermine its currency. And almost everyone criticized the IMF, although some were saying that it was wrong to tell countries to try to limit the depreciation of their currencies, and others that it was wrong to allow the currencies to depreciate at all.

Nonetheless, some very clear lessons emerge from a careful study of the Asian crisis and earlier developing-country crises in Latin America and elsewhere.

1. *Choosing the right exchange rate regime.* It is perilous for a developing country to fix its exchange rate unless it has the means and commitment to do so, come what may. East Asian countries found that confidence in official exchange rate targets encouraged borrowing in foreign currencies. When devaluation occurred nonetheless, much of the financial sector and many corporations became insolvent as a result of extensive foreign currency–denominated debts. The developing countries that have successfully stabilized inflation have adopted more flexible exchange rate systems or moved to greater flexibility quickly after an initial period of pegging aimed at reducing inflation expectations. Even in Argentina, where the public's fear of returning to the hyperinflationary past instilled a widely shared determination to prevent inflation, a fixed exchange rate proved untenable over the long term. The experiences of Brazil, Chile, Mexico, and other Latin American countries show that larger developing countries can manage quite well with a floating exchange rate.
2. *The central importance of banking.* A large part of what made the Asian crisis so devastating was that it was not purely a currency crisis, but rather a currency crisis inextricably mixed with banking and financial crises. In the most immediate sense, governments were faced with the conflict between restricting the money supply to support the currency and the need to print large quantities of money to deal with bank runs. More broadly, the collapse of many banks disrupted the economy by cutting off channels of credit, which made it difficult for even profitable companies to stay in business. This should not have come as a surprise in Asia. Similar effects of banking fragility had earlier played roles in the crises of Argentina, Chile, and Uruguay in the 1980s; of Mexico in 1994–1995; and even of industrial countries like Sweden during the 1992 attacks on the EMS (Chapter 21). Unfortunately, Asia's spectacular economic performance prior to its crisis blinded people to its financial vulnerabilities. The advanced-country banking crises of 2007–2009 (Chapter 20) were another lesson in the perils of such reasoning.
3. *The proper sequence of reform measures.* Economic reformers in developing countries have learned the hard way that the order in which liberalization measures occur really does matter. That truth also follows from basic economic theory: The principle of the *second best* tells us that when an economy suffers from multiple distortions, the removal of only a few may make matters worse, not better. Developing countries generally suffer from many, many distortions, so this point is especially important for them. Consider the sequencing of financial account liberalization and financial sector reform, for example. It is clearly a mistake to open up the financial account before sound safeguards and supervision are in place for domestic financial institutions. Otherwise, the ability to borrow abroad will simply encourage reckless lending by domestic banks. When the economy slows down, foreign capital will flee, leaving domestic banks insolvent. Thus, developing countries should delay opening the financial account until the domestic financial

system is strong enough to withstand the sometimes violent ebb and flow of world capital. Economists also argue that trade liberalization should precede financial account liberalization. Financial account liberalization may cause real exchange rate volatility and impede the movement of factors of production from nontraded into traded goods industries.

4. *The importance of contagion.* A final lesson of developing-country experience is the vulnerability of even seemingly healthy economies to crises of confidence generated by events elsewhere in the world—a domino effect that has come to be known as **contagion**. Contagion was at work when the crisis in Thailand, a small economy in Southeast Asia, provoked another crisis in South Korea, a much larger economy some 2,000 miles away. An even more spectacular example emerged in August 1998, when a plunge in the Russian ruble sparked massive speculation against Brazil's real. The problem of contagion, and the concern that even the most careful economic management may not offer full immunity, has become central to the discussion of possible reforms of the international financial system, to which we now turn.

## Reforming the World's Financial "Architecture"

Economic difficulties lead, inevitably, to proposals for economic reforms. After the Asian economic crisis and its repercussions, many people concluded that the international financial and monetary system, or at least the part of it that applies to developing countries, was in need of change. Proposals for such an overhaul have come to be grouped under the impressive if vague title of plans for a new financial "architecture."

Why did the Asian crisis convince nearly everyone of a need for rethinking international monetary relations, when earlier crises of the 1990s did not? One reason was that the Asian countries' problems seemed to stem primarily from their connections with the world capital market. The crisis clearly demonstrated that a country can be vulnerable to a currency crisis even if its own position looks healthy by normal measures. None of the troubled Asian economies had serious budget deficits, excessive rates of monetary expansion, worrisome levels of inflation, or any of the other indicators that have traditionally signaled vulnerability to speculative attack. If there were severe weaknesses in the economies—a proposition that is the subject of dispute, since some economists argue that the economies would have been quite healthy had it not been for the speculative attacks—they involved issues such as the strength of the banking system that might have remained dormant in the absence of sharp currency depreciations.

The second reason for rethinking international finance was the apparent strength of contagion throughout the international capital markets. The speed and force with which market disturbances could be spread between distant economies suggested that preventive measures taken by individual economies might not suffice. Just as a concern about economic interdependence had inspired the Bretton Woods blueprint for the world economy in 1944, world policy makers again put the reform of the international system on their agendas after the Asian crisis.

Developing countries generally recovered quickly from the financial crisis of 2007–2009—this time, unlike after 1982, the rich countries were the ones that suffered protracted recessions (Chapter 19). But it was unclear whether developing-country resilience was due to reforms adopted after the Asian crisis, higher holdings of international reserves, strong commodity prices, greater flexibility of exchange rates, or the historically low interest rates enforced by industrial-country central banks. Moreover, crisis fears returned when growth in developing countries fell sharply as global growth slowed and commodity prices declined after the early 2010s. In view of the breathtaking

contagion again displayed as the 2007–2009 crisis spread across the globe, sentiment that international finance needs an overhaul has remained strong. Here we look at some of the main issues involved.

## Capital Mobility and the Trilemma of the Exchange Rate Regime

One effect of the Asian crisis was to dispel any illusions we may have had about the availability of easy answers to the problems of international macroeconomics and finance. The crisis and its spread made it all too clear that some well-known policy trade-offs for open economies remain as stark as ever—and perhaps have become even more difficult to manage.

Chapter 19 spelled out the basic *monetary trilemma* for open economies. Of the three goals that most countries share—*independence in monetary policy, stability in the exchange rate, and the free movement of capital*—only two can be reached simultaneously. Exchange rate stability is more important for the typical developing country than for the typical developed country. Developing countries have less ability to influence their terms of trade than developed countries, and exchange rate stability can be more important for keeping inflation in check and avoiding financial stress in developing countries. In particular, the widespread developing-country practice of borrowing in dollars or other major currencies (both externally and internally) means that currency depreciations can sharply increase the real burden of debts.

The conundrum facing would-be reformers of the world's financial architecture can then be summarized as follows: Because of the threat of the kind of currency crises that hit Mexico in 1994–1995 and Asia in 1997, it seems hard if not impossible to achieve all three objectives at the same time. That is, to achieve one of them, a country must give up one of the other two objectives. Until the late 1970s, most developing countries maintained exchange controls and limited private capital movements in particular, as we have seen. (Some major developing countries, notably China and India, still retain such controls.) While there was considerable evasion of the controls, they did slow the movement of capital. As a result, countries could peg their exchange rates for extended periods—producing exchange rate stability—yet devalue their currencies on occasion, which offered considerable monetary autonomy. The main problem with controls was that they imposed onerous restrictions on international transactions, thus reducing efficiency and contributing to corruption.

In the last two decades of the 20th century, capital became substantially more mobile, largely because controls were lifted but also because of improved communications technology and financial innovation and deregulation in advanced economies. This new capital mobility made developing countries' adjustable peg regimes extremely vulnerable to speculation, since capital would flee a currency on the slightest hint that it might be devalued. (The same phenomenon occurred among developed countries in the 1960s and early 1970s, as we saw in Chapter 19.) Developing countries have become increasingly exposed to ever more powerful global financial cycles, as we discuss in the box on this topic.

The result has been to drive developing countries toward one or the other sides of the triangle in Figure 19-1: either rigidly fixed exchange rates and a renunciation of monetary autonomy, like dollarization or the currency board system we have described, or flexibly managed (and even floating) exchange rates. But even when they choose a flexible exchange rate, developing countries have been uncomfortable with the extreme of a purely market-determined rate. While a major economy like the United States can accept a widely fluctuating exchange rate, a smaller, developing economy often finds the costs of such volatility hard to sustain, in part because it is more open and in part

because it suffers from original sin. As a result, even countries claiming to “float” their currencies may display a “fear of floating” and instead limit currency fluctuations over long periods.<sup>19</sup> Meanwhile, a rigid system like a currency board can deprive a country of flexibility, especially when it is dealing with financial crises in which the central bank must act as the lender of last resort.

Several respected economists, including Columbia University’s Jagdish Bhagwati and Joseph Stiglitz and Harvard University’s Dani Rodrik, have argued that developing countries should keep or reinstate restrictions on capital mobility to be able to exercise monetary autonomy while enjoying stable exchange rates.<sup>20</sup> In the face of the Asian crisis, China and India, for example, put plans to liberalize their capital accounts on hold; some countries that had liberalized capital movements considered the possibility of reimposing restrictions (as Malaysia actually did). Most policy makers, both in the developing world and in the industrial countries, continue to regard capital controls as either difficult to enforce for long or disruptive of normal business relationships (as well as a potent source of corruption). These reservations apply most strongly to controls on capital *outflows* because restrictions are particularly hard to maintain effectively when wealth owners are fleeing abroad to avoid potentially big losses.

Nonetheless, in recent years a number of emerging market countries, ranging from Brazil to Israel, have become more open to imposing limited controls on financial *inflows*, and even the IMF has become more open to their use. One reason for this change is a *macroprudential* motive: Limits on financial inflows could limit excessive bank lending during booms and thereby temper the resulting contraction in case of a sudden stop or financial-flow reversal later. Equally (if not more) important as a motivation has been the desire to limit real currency appreciation, and the resulting harm to exports, without resorting to inflationary monetary policies.<sup>21</sup>

While there is a renewed openness to capital inflow controls, most discussion of financial architecture has focused instead on meliorative measures—ways to make the remaining choices less painful even when capital controls are not used.

### **“Prophylactic” Measures**

Since the risk of financial crisis is what makes the decisions surrounding the choice of exchange rate regime so difficult, some recent proposals focus on ways to reduce that risk. Typical proposals include calls for the following:

*More “transparency.”* At least part of what went wrong in Asia was that foreign banks and other investors lent money to Asian enterprises without any clear idea of what the risks were, and then pulled their money out equally blindly when it became clear that those risks were larger than they had imagined. There have therefore been many proposals for greater “transparency”—that is, better provision of

---

<sup>19</sup>See Guillermo A. Calvo and Carmen M. Reinhart, “Fear of Floating,” *Quarterly Journal of Economics* 117 (May 2002), pp. 379–408.

<sup>20</sup>See Jagdish N. Bhagwati, “The Capital Myth,” *Foreign Affairs* 77 (May–June, 1998), pp. 7–12; Dani Rodrik, “Who Needs Capital-Account Convertibility?” in Stanley Fischer et al., *Should the IMF Pursue Capital-Account Convertibility? Princeton Essays in International Finance* 207 (May 1998); and Joseph E. Stiglitz, *Globalization and Its Discontents* (New York: W. W. Norton & Company, 2003).

<sup>21</sup>As an indication of the IMF’s current approach, see, for example, Jonathan D. Ostry, Atish R. Ghosh, Marcos Chamon, and Mahvash S. Qureshi, “Capital Controls: When and Why?” *IMF Economic Review* 59 (2011), pp. 562–580; and International Monetary Fund, *The IMF’s Institutional View on Capital Flows in Practice* (Group of Twenty background note, July 2018, available at <https://www.imf.org/external/np/g20/pdf/2018/073018.pdf>).

financial information—in the same way that corporations in the United States are required to provide accurate public reports of their financial positions. The hope is that increased transparency will reduce both the tendency of too much money rushing into a country when things are going well, and the rush for the exits when the truth turns out to be less favorable than the image.

*Stronger banking systems.* As we have seen, one factor that made the Asian crisis so severe was the way that the currency crisis interacted with bank runs. It is at least possible that these interactions would have been milder if the banks themselves had been stronger. So there have also been many proposals for strengthening banks, through both closer regulation of the risks they take and increased capital requirements, which ensure that substantial amounts of the owners' own money is at risk. Of course, the 2007–2009 crisis demonstrated that industrial-country financial markets were actually less robust than they had seemed. The need for greater transparency and stricter regulation of financial institutions is universal.

*Enhanced credit lines.* Some reformers also want to establish special credit lines that nations could draw on in the event of a currency crisis, in effect adding to their foreign exchange reserves. The idea would be that the mere existence of these credit lines would usually make them unnecessary: As long as speculators knew that countries had enough credit to meet even a large outflow of funds, they would not hope or fear that their own actions would produce a sudden devaluation. Such credit lines could be provided by private banks or by public bodies such as the IMF. This reform area, too, can be seen as applicable to richer countries after the events of 2007–2009 (see the box on central bank currency swaps in Chapter 20).

*Increased equity capital inflows relative to debt inflows.* If developing countries financed a greater proportion of their private foreign capital inflows through equity portfolio investment or direct foreign investment rather than through debt issuance, the probability of default would be much lower. The countries' payments to foreigners would then be more closely linked to their economic fortunes and would fall automatically when times were hard. In fact, there has been a trend toward greater emerging-market reliance on foreign equity rather than debt finance, and this development probably enhanced emerging markets' resilience in the face of the 2007–2009 global financial crisis.<sup>22</sup>

The international community recognizes that developing countries play increasingly important roles, as lenders as well as borrowers, in world financial markets. Ongoing discussions of global cooperation in bank regulation, in Basel and elsewhere, increasingly include the main emerging market countries as key participants.

## Coping with Crisis

Even with the proposed prophylactic measures, crises would still surely happen. Thus, there have also been proposals to modify the way the world responds to such crises.

Many of these proposals relate to the role and policies of the IMF. Here opinion is bitterly divided. Some conservative critics believe that the IMF should simply be abolished, arguing that its very existence encourages irresponsible lending by making borrowers and lenders believe that they will always be saved from the consequences of

<sup>22</sup>This trend is documented by Eswar S. Prasad, "Role Reversal in Global Finance," in *Achieving Maximum Long-Run Growth: A Symposium Sponsored by the Federal Reserve Bank of Kansas City* (Kansas City, MO: Federal Reserve Bank of Kansas City, 2012), pp. 339–390. See also the paper by Forbes listed in Further Readings.

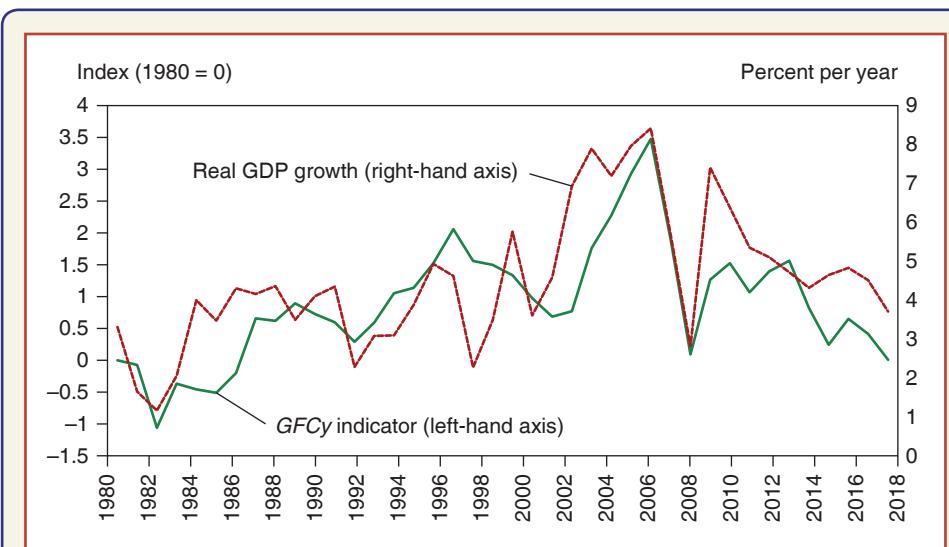
## EMERGING MARKETS AND GLOBAL FINANCIAL CYCLES

Even though emerging and developing countries make up a large and increasing share of the global economy measured by GDP, their financial markets are much smaller than those of the advanced economies. Events in rich-country financial markets therefore have outsized spillover effects in poorer countries, especially in the emerging market economies, which are most exposed to international capital flows.

Booms in global asset prices and capital flows lift emerging economies, whereas busts lead to slowdowns, notwithstanding countercyclical monetary and fiscal responses. Given the central position of the U.S. dollar in the world economy (recall Chapter 20), the monetary policies of the Federal Reserve are a main driver of such

global financial cycles. The cycles can also reflect other factors, such as the risk appetites of global investors and in particular their attraction to emerging market investments.<sup>23</sup>

Silvia Miranda-Agrrippino of the Bank of England and Hélène Rey of the London Business School have constructed an index of the global financial cycle derived from global equity, bond, and commodity prices. The figure plots their index, *GFCy*, against the aggregate real GDP growth rate of middle- and lower-income countries since 1980. (That aggregate includes the emerging market economies.) The positive correlation is striking and supports the idea that global asset-price developments are a major driver of events in poorer countries.



### Global Financial Cycles and Movements in the Developing World's GDP

The GDP growth rate of poorer countries moves closely in tandem with the global financial cycle.

**Source:** *GFCy*: Miranda-Agrrippino and Rey, "U.S. Monetary Policy and the Global Financial Cycle," *Review of Economic Studies* 87 (November 2020), pp. 2754–2776. Yearly observations on *GFCy* are averages of monthly observations. GDP growth in emerging and developing economies: World Economic Outlook database, April 2020.

<sup>23</sup>The paper by Reinhart, Reinhart, and Trebesch in Further Readings chronicles capital flow cycles since the early 19th century.

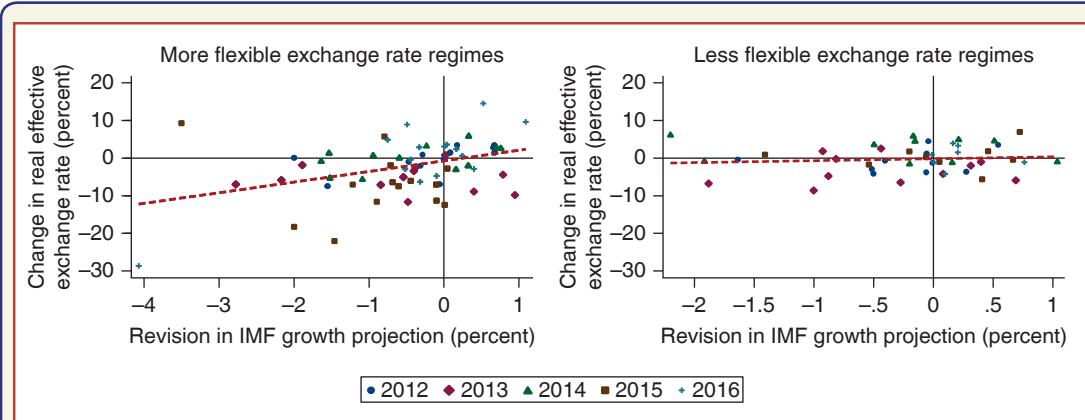
Not only is economic growth in poorer countries highly correlated with the global financial cycle: The cycle itself has U.S. monetary policy as a major driver. Miranda-Agrippino and Rey show statistically that contractionary Federal Reserve monetary policy reduces global asset prices, makes global financial intermediaries shrink their balance sheets, and reduces cross-border and domestic credit flows. These effects indicate that restrictive U.S. monetary policy dampens economic activity in developing countries.

In other writing, Hélène Rey has asked if the strong influence on emerging markets of the global financial cycle—and in particular the central role of U.S. monetary policy—eliminates their ability to steer their domestic economies with their monetary policies, even when the exchange rate is flexible. If so, the only practicable way to regain a degree of monetary independence is to blunt global financial forces through strong capital-flow controls. Put more provocatively, the trilemma collapses to a dilemma: The two choices are monetary autonomy with capital controls or submission

to global forces without capital controls, irrespective of the exchange rate regime. If accurate, Rey's grim paradigm tightens poor countries' policy constraints far beyond those that the trilemma implies.<sup>24</sup>

We have seen that many emerging market economies intervene to manage their exchange rates—but does this eliminate advantages of flexibility? The evidence suggests not. The two-panel chart plots effective real exchange rate changes against GDP growth surprises for the largest emerging market economies. In the chart, we measure GDP growth surprises on the horizontal axis by revisions in the IMF's forecasts of countries' growth rates between April and October of each year. An increase along the horizontal axis means that growth turned out higher than projected, whereas an increase along the vertical axis is a real effective currency appreciation.

When we divide country-year observations between more and less flexible regimes, we see in the figure that currencies of countries with more flexible rates depreciate when negative growth surprises



### GDP Growth Shocks and Real Effective Exchange Rate Changes

Under more flexible exchange rate regimes but not under less flexible regimes, real exchange rates depreciate in the face of negative growth surprises.

**Source:** IMF World Economic Outlook database and Bank for International Settlements.

<sup>24</sup>See her paper "Dilemma Not Trilemma: The Global Financial Cycle and Monetary Policy Independence," in *Global Dimensions of Unconventional Monetary Policy: A Symposium Sponsored by the Federal Reserve Bank of Kansas City* (Kansas City, MO: Federal Reserve Bank of Kansas City, 2014), pp. 285–333.

occur, but this is not true for countries with less flexible rates.<sup>25</sup> The conclusion is that flexible exchange rates can still play a useful role in buffering the economy against negative shocks, whether these come from the global financial cycle or elsewhere. For the flexible-rate economies, growth outcomes would likely have been far more variable had they been forced to defend more rigid exchange rates.

These findings do not imply, however, that foreign-exchange intervention and capital controls cannot be helpful in some circumstances.

Exchange rates can be disruptively volatile in emerging markets. Moreover, we have seen that even the IMF has become more open to capital controls (although some countries fear that foreign investors will judge them harshly if they resort to controls—the problem of stigma). Going forward, emerging markets will need to use an array of tools—intervention, monetary policy, macroprudential policy, and even capital-flow measures—to navigate an increasingly complex global financial environment.

their actions—a version of the moral hazard argument previously described. Other critics argue that the IMF is necessary but that it has misconstrued its role—by, for example, trying to insist on structural reform when it should instead restrict itself to narrow macroeconomic and financial issues. A number of Asian countries bitterly resented having to follow IMF advice during their crisis in the late 1990s; for them, as we have seen, one motive for reserve accumulation has been to avoid having to borrow IMF dollars—and accept IMF conditions. Finally, defenders of the IMF—and also some of its critics—argue that the agency has simply been underfunded for its task, that in a world of high capital mobility, it needs to have the ability to provide much larger loans much more quickly than it presently can. IMF resources rose sharply as a result of the 2007–2009 crisis, and the institution has moved to represent the developing world more effectively by giving poorer countries a greater voting weight in its management. Measures like these should improve the functioning of the international system.

Another set of proposals is based on the idea that sometimes a country simply cannot pay its debts and that the international financial system should therefore be deliberately structured so as to speed—and reduce the costs of—renegotiation between creditors and debtors. As we noted in our discussion of the debt crisis of the 1980s, limited debt write-offs did bring that crisis to an end.

Within the group of government lenders, the Paris Club serves as a forum for developing-country debt restructuring. Unfortunately, China, which has become a major official lender, is not a member—raising problems of equal treatment of all government lenders. Matters are even more complex, however, for private bondholders. After the Asian crisis, the IMF proposed a Sovereign Debt Restructuring Mechanism that would serve as a kind of bankruptcy court for troubled sovereign borrowers.<sup>26</sup> Several rich countries including the United States shot down the scheme. Instead, many sovereign debt contracts have evolved to contain “collective action clauses,” which allow a qualified majority of bondholders to vote to enter debt restructuring negotiations with a distressed sovereign. Even in the euro zone, sovereign bond issues starting in January 2013 contained clauses making it easier for governments to renegotiate their debts with private creditors. This alternative approach has fallen short in some respects, however.

<sup>25</sup>The analysis uses the “coarse” exchange rate classifications from the paper by Ilzetzki, Reinhart, and Rogoff listed in the Further Readings for Chapter 18, available at <https://www.ilzetzki.com/irr-data>. The borderline regime (classified as “less flexible”) is “de facto crawling band that is narrower than or equal to ±2 percent.”

<sup>26</sup>See Anne O. Krueger, *A New Approach to Sovereign Debt Restructuring* (Washington, D.C.: International Monetary Fund, 2002); available at <https://www.imf.org/external/pubs/ft/exrp/sdrm/eng/sdrm.pdf>.

The COVID-19 pandemic sparked massive private capital outflows from poorer countries, bringing back into focus the prospect of widespread debt defaults and the absence of dependable orderly restructuring procedures.<sup>27</sup> Critics of up-front restructuring provisions have argued that they are either ineffective or counterproductive because they encourage countries to borrow too much, in the knowledge that they can more easily renegotiate their debts—moral hazard once again. The answer to this critique is that there is at least as much moral hazard on the side of international lenders, who too often have underestimated risks while reaching for yield. Making restructuring less costly for debtors, and therefore making its prospect more credible, may well instill appropriate caution in prospective lenders.

## Understanding Global Capital Flows and the Global Distribution of Income: Is Geography Destiny?

As we pointed out at the start of this chapter, today's world is characterized by a vast international dispersion in levels of income and well-being. In contradiction of a simple theory of convergence, however, there is no systematic tendency for poorer countries' income levels to converge, even slowly, to those of richer countries.<sup>28</sup> In conventional macroeconomic models of economic growth, countries' per capita real incomes depend on their stocks of physical and human capital, whose marginal products are highest where stocks are low relative to the stock of unskilled labor. Because high marginal products of investment present strong incentives for capital accumulation, including capital inflows from abroad, the standard models predict that poorer countries will tend to grow more quickly than rich ones. Ultimately, if they have access to the same technologies used in richer countries, poor countries will themselves become rich.

In practice, however, this happy story is the exception rather than the rule. Furthermore, relatively little capital flows to developing countries despite the prediction of the simple convergence theory that the marginal product of capital, and therefore the returns to foreign investment, should be high there. The scale of capital flows to the developing world is dwarfed by the gross flows between advanced countries. And since the late 1990s, the United States has sucked in most of the world's available current account surpluses.

In fact, the risks of investing in several of the developing countries limit their attractiveness for investors, both foreign and domestic alike, and those risks are closely related to the countries' poor economic growth performances. When governments are unwilling or unable to protect property rights, investors will be unwilling to invest in either physical or human capital, so growth will be nonexistent or low. (The box on "Capital Paradoxes" probes more deeply into the behavior of capital flows from rich to poor countries.)

<sup>27</sup>For a discussion see Anna Gelpern, Sean Hagan, and Adnan Mazarei, "Debt Standstills Can Help Vulnerable Governments Manage the COVID-19 Crisis," in Maurice Obstfeld and Adam S. Posen, eds., *How the G20 Can Hasten Recovery from COVID-19* (Washington, D.C.: Peterson Institute for International Economics, 2020), pp. 44-51.

<sup>28</sup>While this statement is true when the unit of study is the country, it is less accurate when the unit of study is the individual. A preponderance of the world's poor in 1960 lived in China and India, two countries that have experienced relatively rapid growth in recent years. A main cause of their growth, however, has been market-friendly economic reforms. For further discussion, see Stanley Fischer, "Globalization and Its Challenges," *American Economic Review* 93 (May 2003), pp. 1–30. On measures of global inequality, see the book by Bourguignon in Further Readings.

What explains the fact that some countries have grown very rich while some attract little or no foreign investment and remain in extreme poverty? Two main schools of thought on the question focus, alternatively, on countries' *geographical features* and on their *institutions of government*.

A leading proponent of the geography theory is UCLA geographer Jared Diamond, whose fascinating and influential book *Guns, Germs, and Steel: The Fates of Human Societies* (New York: W. W. Norton & Company, 1997) won a Pulitzer Prize in 1998. In one version of the geography view, aspects of a country's physical environment such as climate, soil type, diseases, and geographical accessibility determine its long-run economic performance. Thus, for example, unfriendly weather, an absence of easily domesticated large animal species, and the presence of yellow fever and malaria doomed tropical zones to lag behind the more temperate regions of Europe, which could support agricultural innovations such as crop rotation. For these reasons, Diamond argues, it was the Europeans who conquered the inhabitants of the New World and not vice versa.

## CAPITAL PARADOXES

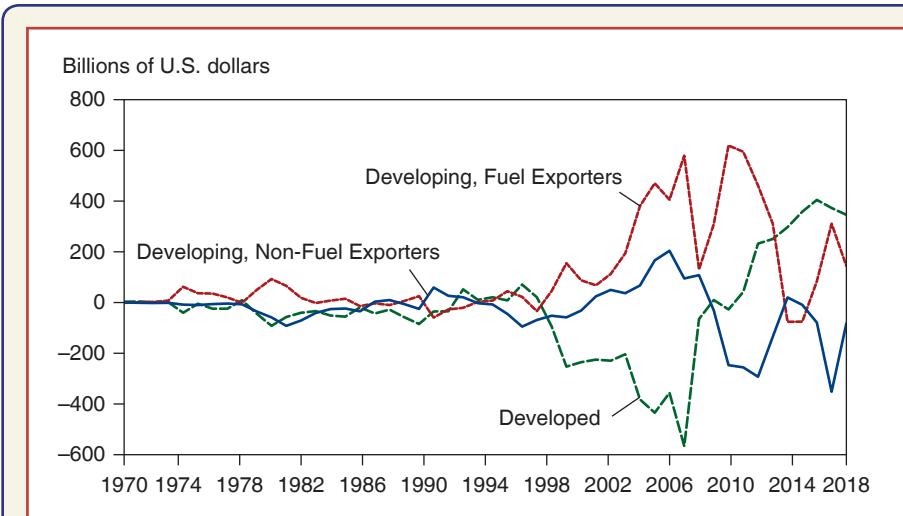
**A**lthough many developing countries have borrowed from developed lenders over the years since World War II, the global pattern of financial flows from rich to poor countries has long diverged from what basic economic theory would seem to predict: a strong flow of lending from high-income countries, rich in capital, to low-income countries, where capital is scarce and where investment opportunities therefore are presumably abundant.

The accompanying figure illustrates the global pattern of current account balances since 1980. Until the 2010s, borrowing by non-oil producing low-income countries was quite limited, with the partial exception of the decade of the 1990s, when a number of developing borrowers (among them, Mexico and Thailand) eventually came to grief. At the same time, current account surpluses by the group of rich countries were small or nonexistent. Then, in the 2000s, high-income countries developed sizable deficits and borrowed extensively from emerging and low-income countries.

Just before the low-income country borrowing boomlet of the 1990s got underway, economist Robert E. Lucas Jr. of the University of Chicago observed that the big income disparities between rich and poor countries, if caused by differences in capital endowments, should imply large opportunities for foreign capital to move profitably into the developing world. Why, then, was investment not far below saving in rich countries and far higher than saving in poor countries? Lucas suggested that the answer was related to the scarcity in poor countries of *human capital*—in the form of a highly educated work force and managerial know-how. Other scholars put more weight on the greater fragility of property rights and government stability in poorer countries, a position that was partially borne out by the crises of the 1990s.<sup>29</sup>

Interestingly, the limited postwar flow of capital from rich to poor countries was predicted in the early 1950s by Columbia University economist Ragnar Nurkse. The 19th century saw a boom in European overseas investment, during which

<sup>29</sup>These theories are not mutually exclusive; as we have mentioned, poor protection of property rights discourages investment in human capital. On the puzzle of low capital flows to poor countries, see Robert E. Lucas Jr., "Why Doesn't Capital Flow from Rich to Poor Countries?" *American Economic Review* 80 (May 1990), pp. 92–96. A study that ties limited capital flows to poor institutional quality is Laura Alfaro, Sebnem Kaleli-Ozcan, and Vadym Volosovych, "Why Doesn't Capital Flow from Rich to Poor Countries? An Empirical Investigation," *Review of Economics and Statistics* 90 (May 2008), pp. 347–368. Carmen Reinhart and Kenneth Rogoff ascribe the Lucas puzzle to the likelihood of developing-country default. See "Serial Default and the 'Paradox' of Rich-to-Poor Capital Flows," *American Economic Review* 94 (May 2004), pp. 53–58.



### Current Account Balances of Major Country Groups, 1980–2019

**SOURCE:** International Monetary Fund, *World Economic Outlook* and External Wealth of Nations databases. Note that regional imbalances generally do not sum to zero due to errors and omissions. Thanks to Gian Maria Milesi-Ferretti for assistance with these data.

Britain, the leading global lender, invested roughly 4 percent of its income abroad annually for the five decades preceding World War I. Nurkse argued that the conditions of this lending were very special and unlikely to be replicated after World War II. Most of the investment, he noted, flowed to a very few countries of “recent settlement,” funding infrastructure (such as railways) needed by the waves of European migrants that accompanied the flow of capital. These migrants transplanted European know-how as well as governance institutions that made the successful use of investment resources more likely. Not surprisingly, most of the recipient countries—notably Australia, New Zealand, Canada, and the United States—are rich, while most of the poorer “extractive” economies that received a much smaller share of foreign investment before 1914 remain poor today.<sup>30</sup>

Developments in the early 21st century made the international pattern of capital flows look even more paradoxical than before. Not only was capital failing to flow from rich to poor

countries in appreciable amounts, it was actually flowing *uphill*, from poor to rich, and on a huge scale. Behind this pattern lay a number of specific developments: Asset booms in rich countries spurred consumption and housing investment, for example, causing big current account deficits, while rapid growth in rich countries and especially China boosted commodity prices, allowing more relatively poor exporters of raw materials (notably fossil fuels) to run surpluses. China also ran huge current account surpluses in the 2000s as its spending failed to keep up with rapid growth and as it intervened in the foreign exchange market to keep its currency artificially weak. (Recall Figure 19-7.) These patterns have abated more recently as advanced economies and China have slowed and commodity prices have fallen. In the 2010s, non-oil producing developing countries as a group began to run deficits again, even as rich countries moved into surplus and oil exporters, facing a collapse in oil prices starting in 2014, moved sharply from surplus to deficit. The recent deficits of non-oil producing developing countries

<sup>30</sup>See Ragnar Nurkse, “International Investment To-Day in the Light of Nineteenth-Century Experience,” *Economic Journal* 64 (December 1954), pp. 744–758.

have, however, been small compared to the size of the world economy.

As economists looked more carefully at the data, however, they discovered new paradoxes even more puzzling than the one Lucas had raised in 1990.

First, experience since 1970 has revealed that, on average, foreign capital does not appear to drive economic growth. Instead, the countries that have grown fastest are those that have relied most on domestic savings and run the smallest current account deficits (and oftentimes surpluses). For example, the successful economies of East Asia, notably China, generally have had high saving levels. A second, related, paradox, highlighted by Pierre-Olivier Gourinchas of the University of California–Berkeley and Olivier Jeanne of Johns Hopkins University, is called the

“allocation puzzle”: Countries with lower growth in the productivity of labor and capital actually attract relatively more foreign financial inflows than countries with high productivity growth.

Researchers are still seeking to resolve these new puzzles. Many poor countries have weak financial systems that cannot handle big foreign lending inflows without a high risk of crisis. Thus, countries that generate large volumes of savings themselves may have a growth advantage. Gourinchas and Jeanne suggest that their allocation puzzle is related to accumulation of international reserves by some fast-growing economies (such as China’s). These economies often do receive substantial inflows of foreign direct investment, but their saving is so high that they still run overall surpluses in their current accounts.<sup>31</sup>

Another factor stressed in some geographical theories is access to international trade. Countries that are landlocked and mountainous trade less with the outside world—and therefore fare worse—than those countries blessed with good ocean harbors, navigable internal waterways, and easily traveled roadways.

In contrast, those favoring the institutions of government as the decisive factor for economic prosperity focus on the success of government in protecting private property rights, thereby encouraging private enterprise, investment, innovation, and ultimately economic growth. According to this view, a country that cannot protect its citizens from arbitrary property confiscation—for example, through extortion by private gangsters or crooked public officials—will be a country in which people do not find it worthwhile to exert effort in the pursuit of wealth.<sup>32</sup> This mechanism is one factor underlying the positive association between lower corruption and higher per capita income shown in Figure 22-2: A low corruption level promotes productive economic activity by ensuring investors that the fruits of their labors will not be arbitrarily seized. As we noted in discussing this evidence, however, the positive slope in the figure is not decisive evidence that national institutions determine national income. It could be, for example, that the slope shown is primarily caused by richer countries’ desire to stem corruption and the greater resources they can devote to that task. Even if this is the case, it might still be true that geography determines income levels and thereby ultimately determines institutions as well. However, if more favorable geography leads to higher income and, through higher income, to a better institutional environment (characterized, among other things, by lower corruption), then the geography school of

<sup>31</sup>See Eswar Prasad, Raghuram Rajan, and Arvind Subramanian, “The Paradox of Capital,” *Finance & Development* 44 (March 2007); and Gourinchas and Jeanne, “Capital Flows to Developing Countries: The Allocation Puzzle,” *Review of Economic Studies* 80 (October 2013), pp. 1484–1515.

<sup>32</sup>See, for example, Douglass C. North, *Institutions, Institutional Change, and Economic Performance* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1990).

thought would appear to have it right. For policy makers, the possibility of enhancing economic growth through the reform of institutions would appear bleaker.<sup>33</sup>

How can we hope to distinguish among the various statistical possibilities? One strategy is to find some measurable factor that influences the institutions governing private property but is otherwise unrelated to current per capita income levels. Statisticians call such a variable an *instrumental variable* (or, more simply, an *instrument*) for institutions. Because the instrument is not affected by current income, its measured statistical relationship with current income reflects a causal effect of institutions on income rather than the reverse. Unfortunately, because of the complex interrelationships among economic variables, valid instrumental variables are, as a general rule, notoriously hard to find.

Economists Daron Acemoglu and Simon Johnson of the Massachusetts Institute of Technology and James Robinson of the University of Chicago suggest an imaginative approach to this dilemma. They propose historical mortality rates of early European settlers in former colonies as an instrument for institutional quality.<sup>34</sup> Their case that settler mortality provides a useful instrument rests on two arguments.

First, they argue that the level of settler mortality determined the later institutions governing property rights. (This is another case of geography influencing income *through* its effect on institutions.) In areas with high mortality rates (such as the former Belgian Congo in Africa), Europeans could not settle successfully. Many of these areas were relatively densely populated before Europeans arrived, and the European colonizers' goal was to plunder wealth as effectively as possible, oppressing the native people in the process. The institutions Europeans set up were thus directed to the goal of resource extraction rather than to the protection of property rights, and those exploitative institutions were taken over by new, indigenous ruling elites when the former colonies gained independence. In contrast, Europeans themselves settled in sparsely populated low-mortality regions such as North America and Australia and demanded institutions that would protect political and economic rights, safeguarding private property against arbitrary seizures. (Recall the dispute over taxation without representation that sparked the American Revolution!) Those countries received the biggest inflows of foreign capital in the 19th century, and they prospered and are rich today.

A valid instrument must satisfy a second requirement besides having an influence on institutions. It must otherwise not affect today's per capita incomes. Acemoglu, Johnson, and Robinson argue that this requirement is satisfied also. As they put it,

The great majority of European deaths in the colonies were caused by malaria and yellow fever. Although these diseases were fatal to Europeans who had no immunity,

<sup>33</sup>In countries that formerly were European colonies, current institutions often were implanted by foreign rulers. Geography itself played a role in the types of institutions that colonizers set up. Thus, in the West Indies and the American South, climates and soil were conducive to plantation agriculture based on slave labor and an increasing-returns technology that ensured large farming units and an unequal income distribution. The resulting institutions—even if set up by colonists whose mother countries had limited enlightened rule—were fundamentally hostile to egalitarian political ideals and property protection. Inequality of wealth and power perpetuated itself in many cases, thus hampering long-term growth. For a classic discussion, see Stanley L. Engerman and Kenneth D. Sokoloff, "Factor Endowments, Institutions, and Differential Paths of Growth among New World Economies: A View from Economic Historians of the United States," in Stephen Haber, ed., *How Latin America Fell Behind* (Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press, 1997). The institutions hypothesis allows geography to affect income but requires that geography affect income only (or mainly) by influencing institutions.

<sup>34</sup>The data cover soldiers, sailors, and bishops and come from the 17th through the 19th centuries. See Daron Acemoglu, Simon Johnson, and James Robinson, "The Colonial Origins of Comparative Development: An Empirical Investigation," *American Economic Review* 91 (December 2001), pp. 1369–1401.

they had limited effect on indigenous adults who had developed various types of immunities. These diseases are therefore unlikely to be the reason why many countries in Africa and Asia are very poor today. . . . This notion is supported by the [lower] mortality rates of local people in these areas.<sup>35</sup>

Acemoglu, Johnson, and Robinson show that the effect of early European-settler mortality rates on current per capita income, operating through the influence of mortality on later institutions, is large. They further argue that once the latter effect is taken into account, geographical variables such as distance from the equator and malarial infection rates have no independent influence on current income levels. If one accepts the premises of the statistical analysis, the institutions theory would seem to emerge victorious over the geography theory. But the debate has not ended there.

Some critics have suggested that Acemoglu, Johnson, and Robinson's measures of institutional quality are inadequate; others argue that their mortality data are faulty or even that historical mortality rates could be related directly to productivity today. In one recent paper, a group of economists argues that the main influence on institutions is human capital, that is, the accumulated skills and education of the population. Even an authoritarian dictatorship may establish democracy and property rights as its citizens become more educated. These writers point out that South Korea did just this and suggest that perhaps European settlers' human capital, not their transplantation of institutions, is what spurred subsequent growth.<sup>36</sup> As we pointed out earlier, one cause of East Asia's high subsequent growth was a high level of investment in education, often decreed by nondemocratic governments.

A number of Asian former colonies arguably offer counterexamples to the theory of Acemoglu, Johnson, and Robinson. India, Indonesia, and Malaysia, for example, all were European colonies with overwhelmingly indigenous populations, yet their economic growth rates generally have exceeded those of the advanced economies.

## SUMMARY

- There are vast differences in per capita income and in well-being among countries at different stages of economic development. Furthermore, developing countries have not shown a uniform tendency of *convergence* to the income levels of industrial countries. However, some developing countries, notably several in East Asia, have seen dramatic increases in living standards since the 1960s. Explaining why some countries remain poor and which policies can promote economic growth remains one of the most important challenges in economics.

<sup>35</sup>Acemoglu, Johnson, and Robinson, *ibid.*, p. 1371.

<sup>36</sup>See Edward L. Glaeser, Rafael La Porta, Florencio Lopez-de-Silanes, and Andrei Shleifer, "Do Institutions Cause Growth?" *Journal of Economic Growth* 9 (September 2004), pp. 271–303. In support of institutional over geographical explanations, see Dani Rodrik, Arvind Subramanian, and Francesco Trebbi, "Institutions Rule: The Primacy of Institutions over Geography and Integration in Economic Development," *Journal of Economic Growth* 9 (June 2004), pp. 131–165. For a contrary view, see Jeffrey D. Sachs, "Institutions Don't Rule: Direct Effects of Geography on Per Capita Income," Working Paper 9490, National Bureau of Economic Research, February 2003. The role of international trade in growth is another focus of current research. Rodrik and his co-authors argue that openness to international trade is not a prime direct determinant of per capita income, but rather that openness leads to better institutions and, through that indirect channel, to higher income.

- Developing countries form a heterogeneous group, especially since many have embarked on wide-ranging economic reform in recent years. Many have at least some of the following features: heavy government involvement in the economy, including a large share of public spending in GNP; a track record of high inflation, usually reflecting government attempts to extract *seigniorage* from the economy in the face of ineffective tax collection; weak credit institutions and undeveloped capital markets; pegged exchange rates and exchange or capital controls, including crawling peg exchange rate regimes aimed at either controlling inflation or preventing real appreciation; a heavy reliance on primary commodity exports. Corruption seems to increase as a country's relative poverty rises. Many of the preceding developing-country features date from the Great Depression of the 1930s, when industrialized countries turned inward and world markets collapsed.
- Because many developing economies offer potentially rich opportunities for investment, it is natural for them to have current account deficits and to borrow from richer countries. In principle, developing-country borrowing can cause gains from trade that make both borrowers and lenders better off. In practice, however, borrowing by developing countries has sometimes led to default crises that generally cause currency and banking crises. Like currency and banking crises, default crises can contain a self-fulfilling element even though their occurrence depends on fundamental weaknesses in the borrowing country. Often default crises begin with a *sudden stop* of financial inflows.
- In the 1970s, as the Bretton Woods system collapsed, countries in Latin America entered an era of distinctly inferior macroeconomic performance with respect to growth and inflation. Uncontrolled external borrowing led, in the 1980s, to a generalized developing-country debt crisis, its greatest impact being in Latin America and Africa. Starting with Chile in the mid-1980s, some large Latin American countries started to undertake more thorough economic reform, including not just disinflation but also control of the government budget, vigorous *privatization*, deregulation, and trade policy reform. Argentina adopted a *currency board* in 1991. Not all the Latin American reformers succeeded equally in strengthening their banks, and failures were evident in a number of countries. For example, Argentina's currency board collapsed after ten years.
- Despite their astoundingly good records of high output growth and low inflation and budget deficits, several key developing countries in East Asia were hit by severe panics and devastating currency depreciation in 1997. In retrospect, the affected countries had several vulnerabilities, most of them related to widespread moral hazard in domestic banking and finance and linked to the *original sin* of foreign currency denominated debts. The effects of the crisis spilled over to countries as distant as Russia and Brazil, illustrating the element of *contagion* in modern-day international financial crises. This factor, plus the fact that the East Asian countries had few apparent problems before their crises struck, has given rise to demands for rethinking the international financial "architecture." These demands were reinforced by the global nature of the 2007–2009 financial crisis.
- Proposals to reform the international architecture can be grouped as preventive measures or as ex post (that is, after the fact) measures, with the latter applied once safeguards have failed to stop a crisis. Among preventive measures are greater transparency concerning countries' policies and financial positions; enhanced regulation of domestic banking; and more extensive credit lines, either from private sources or from the IMF. Ex post measures that have been suggested include more extensive and flexible lending by the IMF. Some observers suggest extensive use of capital controls, both to prevent and manage crises, but in general not too many countries have taken this route. In the years to come, developing countries will no doubt experiment with

capital controls, *dollarization*, floating exchange rates, and other regimes. The architecture that will ultimately emerge is not at all clear.

- Recent research on the ultimate determinants of economic growth in developing countries has focused on geographical issues such as the disease environment, institutional features such as government protection of property rights, and human capital endowments. The flow of capital from rich to poor countries also depends on these factors. While economists agree that all of these determinants are important, it is less clear where policy should focus first in its attempts to lift poor countries out of their poverty. For example, institutional reform might be an appropriate first step if human capital accumulation depends on the protection of property rights and personal security. On the other hand, it makes little sense to create an institutional framework for government if there is insufficient human capital to run government effectively. In that case, education should come first. The statistical obstacles to reaching unambiguous answers are formidable and therefore justify a balanced effort on all fronts.

## KEY TERMS

contagion, p. 761  
convergence, p. 734  
currency board, p. 751

dollarization, p. 749  
original sin, p. 748  
privatization, p. 747

seigniorage, p. 738

## PROBLEMS

1. Can a government always collect more seigniorage simply by letting the money supply grow faster? Explain your answer.
2. Assume that a country's inflation rate was 100 percent per year in both 1990 and 2000 but that inflation was falling in the first year and rising in the second. Other things equal, in which year was seigniorage revenue greater? (Assume that asset holders correctly anticipated the path of inflation.)
3. In the early 1980s, Brazil's government, through an average inflation rate of 147 percent per year, got only 1.0 percent of output as seigniorage, while Sierra Leone's government got 2.4 percent through an inflation rate less than a third as high as Brazil's. Can you think of differences in financial structure that might partially explain this contrast? (Hint: In Sierra Leone, the ratio of currency to nominal output averaged 7.7 percent; in Brazil, it averaged only 1.4 percent.)
4. Suppose an economy open to international capital movements has a crawling peg exchange rate under which its currency is pegged at each moment but is continuously devalued at a rate of 10 percent per year. How would the domestic nominal interest rate be related to the foreign nominal interest rate? What if the crawling peg is not fully credible?
5. The external debt buildup of some developing countries (such as Argentina) in the 1970s was due, in part, to (legal or illegal) capital flight in the face of expected currency devaluation. (Governments and central banks borrowed foreign currencies to prop up their exchange rates, and these funds found their way into private hands and into bank accounts in New York and elsewhere.) Since capital flight leaves a government with a large debt but creates an offsetting foreign asset for citizens who take money abroad, the consolidated net debt of the country as a whole does not

change. Does this mean that countries whose external government debt is largely the result of capital flight face no debt problem?

6. Much developing-country borrowing during the 1970s was carried out by state-owned companies. In some of these countries, there have been moves to privatize the economy by selling state companies to private owners. Would the countries have borrowed more, or less, if their economies had been privatized earlier?
7. How might a developing country's decision to reduce trade restrictions such as import tariffs affect its ability to borrow in the world capital market?
8. Given output, a country can improve its current account by cutting either investment or consumption (private or government). After the debt crisis of the 1980s began, many developing countries achieved improvements in their current accounts by cutting investment. Was this a sensible strategy?
9. Why would Argentina have to give the United States seigniorage if it gave up its peso and completely dollarized its economy? How would you measure the size of Argentina's sacrifice of seigniorage? (To complete this exercise, think through the actual steps Argentina would have to take to dollarize its economy. You may assume that the Argentine central bank's assets consist of 100 percent of interest-bearing U.S. Treasury bonds.)
10. Early studies of the economic convergence hypothesis, which looked at data for a group of currently industrialized countries, found that those that were relatively poor a century ago subsequently grew more quickly. Is it valid to infer from this finding that the convergence hypothesis is true?
11. Some critics of the adoption of fixed exchange rates by emerging market economies argue that these exchange rates create a kind of moral hazard. Do you agree? (Hint: Might borrowers behave differently if they knew exchange rates were changeable from day to day?)
12. In some emerging market economies, not only are debt obligations to foreigners denominated in dollars, but so are many of the economies' internal debts, that is, debts of one domestic resident to another. In the chapter, we called this phenomenon liability dollarization. How might liability dollarization worsen the financial market disruption caused by a sharp depreciation of the domestic currency against the dollar?
13. Suppose the production function for aggregate output in the United States is the same as in India,  $Y = AK^\alpha L^{1-\alpha}$ , where  $A$  is a total productivity factor,  $K$  is the capital stock, and  $L$  is the supply of labor. From Table 22-2, calculate the ratio of per capita incomes  $Y/L$  in India and the United States in 2010. Use this information to figure out the ratio of capital's marginal product in India and the United States. (The marginal product of capital is given by  $\alpha AK^{\alpha-1} L^{1-\alpha}$ .) Relate the answer to the Lucas puzzle of capital flows from rich to poor. How much would  $A$  have to differ between India and the United States to make the marginal product of capital the same in the two countries?

## FURTHER READINGS

- 
- S. Ali Abbas, Alex Pienkowski, and Kenneth Rogoff, eds. *Sovereign Debt: A Guide for Economists and Practitioners*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2020. Comprehensive discussion of sovereign debt history, theory, measurement, and restructuring.
- Jahangir Aziz, Steven V. Dunaway, and Eswar Prasad, eds. *China and India: Learning from Each Other*. Washington, D.C.: International Monetary Fund, 2006. Essays on Chinese and Indian strategies for promoting economic stability and growth.

- François Bourguignon. *The Globalization of Inequality*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2012. Comprehensive survey of the evolution of global inequality and its drivers.
- Guillermo A. Calvo and Frederic S. Mishkin. "The Mirage of Exchange Rate Regimes for Emerging Market Countries." *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 17 (Winter 2003), pp. 99–118. Argues that institutions are more important than exchange rate regimes for understanding developing-country macroeconomic performance.
- Barry Eichengreen and Ricardo Hausmann, eds. *Other People's Money: Debt Denomination and Financial Instability in Emerging Market Economies*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2005. Essays on original sin.
- Albert Fishlow. "Lessons from the Past: Capital Markets during the 19th Century and the Interwar Period." *International Organization* 39 (Summer 1985), pp. 383–439. Historical review of the international borrowing experience, including comparisons with the post-1982 debt crisis.
- Kristin Forbes. "The 'Big C': Identifying and Mitigating Contagion." In *The Changing Policy Landscape: A Symposium Sponsored by the Federal Reserve Bank of Kansas City*. Kansas City, MO: Federal Reserve Bank of Kansas City, 2013, pp. 23–87. A comprehensive survey of contagious shock transmission through international markets.
- Morris Goldstein. *Managed Floating Plus*. Washington, D.C.: Institute for International Economics, 2002. A proposal for managing exchange rate flexibility by emerging market economies.
- International Monetary Fund. "The International Architecture for Resolving Sovereign Debt Involving Private-Sector Creditors—Recent Developments, Challenges, and Reform Options." Policy Paper 2020/043, October 1, 2020 (available at <https://www.imf.org/en/Publications/Policy-Papers/Issues/2020/09/30/The-International-Architecture-for-Resolving-Sovereign-Debt-Involving-Private-Sector-49796>). Overview of the sovereign debt restructuring process in practice and options for improvements.
- Olivier Jeanne, Arvind Subramanian, and John Williamson. *Who Needs to Open the Capital Account?* Washington, D.C.: Peterson Institute for International Economics, 2011. Reassessment of the case for financial openness by developing countries.
- M. Ayhan Kose and Eswar S. Prasad. *Emerging Markets: Resilience and Growth amid Global Turmoil*. Washington, D.C.: Brookings Institution, 2010. A wide-ranging study of the relative resilience of emerging economies in the face of the 2007–2009 global financial crisis.
- David S. Landes. *The Wealth and Poverty of Nations*. New York: W. W. Norton & Company, 1999. Broad-ranging overview of the global development experience.
- Ronald I. McKinnon. *The Order of Economic Liberalization: Financial Control in the Transition to a Market Economy*, 2nd edition. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press, 1993. Essays on the proper sequencing of economic reforms.
- Edward Miguel. *Africa's Turn?* Cambridge, MA: MIT Press, 2009. A presentation of perspectives on Africa's economic performance and prospects.
- Peter J. Montiel. *Macroeconomics in Emerging Markets*, 2nd edition. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2011. Comprehensive analytical overview of macroeconomic policy issues for developing economies.
- Eswar S. Prasad. *Gaining Currency: The Rise of the Renminbi*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2017. Assesses the past and likely future role of China's currency in international currency markets.
- Raghuram G. Rajan and Ioannis Tokatlidis. "Dollar Shortages and Crises." *International Journal of Central Banking* 1 (September 2005), pp. 177–220. Excellent overview of the institutional weaknesses in developing economies that give rise to liability dollarization.
- Carmen M. Reinhart, Vincent Reinhart, and Christoph Trebesch. "Global Cycles: Capital Flows, Commodities, and Sovereign Defaults, 1815–2015." *American Economic Review* 106 (May 2016): 574–580. Two centuries of the relation between booms and busts in capital flows and commodity prices.
- Dani Rodrik. *One Economics, Many Recipes: Globalization, Institutions, and Economic Growth*. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 2007. Essays on the interplay of institutions and globalization in the process of economic growth.



# POSTSCRIPT TO CHAPTER 5

## The Factor-Proportions Model

In this postscript we set out a formal mathematical treatment for the factor-proportions model of production explained in Chapter 5. The mathematical treatment is useful in deepening your understanding of the model.

### Factor Prices and Costs

Consider the production of some good that requires capital and labor as factors of production. Provided the good is produced with constant returns to scale, the technology of production may be summarized in terms of the *unit isoquant* ( $II$  in Figure 5P-1), a curve showing all the combinations of capital and labor that can be used to produce one unit of the good. Curve  $II$  shows that there is a trade-off between the quantity of capital used per unit of output,  $a_K$ , and the quantity of labor per unit of output,  $a_L$ . The curvature of the unit isoquant reflects the assumption that it becomes increasingly difficult to substitute capital for labor as the capital-labor ratio increases, and vice versa.

In a competitive market economy, producers will choose the capital-labor ratio in production that minimizes their cost. Such a cost-minimizing production choice is shown in Figure 5P-1 as point  $E$ , the point at which the unit isoquant  $II$  is tangent to a line whose slope is equal to minus the ratio of the price of labor,  $w$ , to the price of capital,  $r$ .

The actual cost of production is equal to the sum of the cost of capital and labor inputs,

$$c = a_K r + a_L w, \quad (5P-1)$$

where the input coefficients,  $a_K$  and  $a_L$ , have been chosen to minimize  $c$ .

Because the capital-labor ratio has been chosen to minimize costs, it follows that a change in that ratio cannot reduce costs. Costs cannot be reduced by increasing  $a_K$  while reducing  $a_L$ , nor conversely. It follows that an infinitesimal change in the capital-labor ratio from the cost-minimizing choice must have no effect on cost. Let  $da_K$ ,  $da_L$  be small changes from the optimal input choices. Then

$$rda_K + wda_L = 0 \quad (5P-2)$$

for any movement along the unit isoquant.

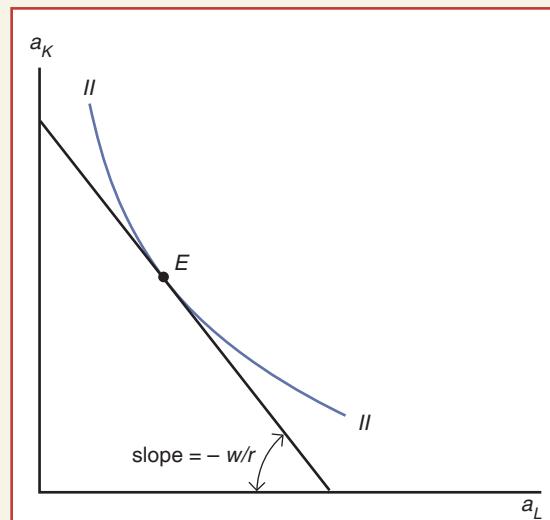
Consider next what happens if the factor prices  $r$  and  $w$  change. This will have two effects: It will change the choice of  $a_K$  and  $a_L$ , and it will change the cost of production.

First, consider the effect on the relative quantities of capital and labor used to produce one unit of output. The cost-minimizing labor-capital ratio depends on the ratio of the price of labor to that of capital:

$$\frac{a_K}{a_L} = \Phi\left(\frac{w}{r}\right). \quad (5P-3)$$

**FIGURE 5P-1****Efficient Production**

The cost-minimizing capital-labor ratio depends on factor prices.



The cost of production will also change. For small changes in factor prices  $dr$  and  $dw$ , the change in production cost is

$$dc = a_K dr + a_L dw + rda_K + wda_L. \quad (5P-4)$$

From equation (5P-2), however, we already know that the last two terms of equation (5P-4) sum to zero. Hence the effect of factor prices on cost may be written

$$dc = a_K dr + a_L dw. \quad (5P-4')$$

It turns out to be very convenient to derive a somewhat different equation from equation (5P-4'). Dividing and multiplying some of the elements of the equation leads to the following new equation:

$$\frac{dc}{c} = \left( \frac{a_K r}{c} \right) \left( \frac{dr}{r} \right) + \left( \frac{a_L w}{c} \right) \left( \frac{dw}{w} \right). \quad (5P-5)$$

The term  $dc/c$  may be interpreted as the *percentage change* in  $c$ , and may conveniently be designated as  $\hat{c}$ ; similarly, let  $dr/r = \hat{r}$  and  $dw/w = \hat{w}$ . The term  $a_K r/c$  may be interpreted as the *share of capital in total production costs*; it may be conveniently designated  $\theta_K$ . Thus equation (5P-5) can be compactly written

$$\hat{c} = \theta_K \hat{r} + \theta_L \hat{w}, \quad (5P-5')$$

where

$$\theta_K + \theta_L = 1.$$

This is an example of “hat algebra,” an extremely useful way to express mathematical relationships in international economics.

### The Basic Equations in the Factor-Proportions Model

Suppose a country produces two goods, cloth  $C$  and food  $F$ , using two factors of production, capital and labor. Assume that food production is capital-intensive. The price of each good must equal its production cost:

$$P_F = a_{KF}r + a_{LF}w, \quad (5P-6)$$

$$P_C = a_{KC}r + a_{LC}w, \quad (5P-7)$$

where  $a_{KF}, a_{LF}, a_{KC}, a_{LC}$  are the cost-minimizing input choices given the price of capital,  $r$ , and labor,  $w$ .

Also, the economy's factors of production must be fully employed:

$$a_{KF}Q_F + a_{KC}Q_C = K, \quad (5P-8)$$

$$a_{LF}Q_F + a_{LC}Q_C = L, \quad (5P-9)$$

where  $K, L$  are the total supplies of capital and labor.

The factor-price equations (5P-6) and (5P-7) imply equations for the rate of change for factor prices.

$$\hat{P}_F = \theta_{KF}\hat{r} + \theta_{LF}\hat{w}, \quad (5P-10)$$

$$\hat{P}_C = \theta_{KC}\hat{r} + \theta_{LC}\hat{w}, \quad (5P-11)$$

where  $\theta_{KF}$  is the share of capital in production cost of  $F$ , etc.,  $\theta_{KF} > \theta_{KC}$  and  $\theta_{LF} < \theta_{LC}$  because  $F$  is more capital-intensive than  $C$ .

The quantity equations (5P-8) and (5P-9) must be treated more carefully. The unit inputs  $a_{KF}$ , etc., can change if factor prices change. If goods prices are held constant, however, then factor prices will not change. Thus for *given* prices of  $F$  and  $C$ , it is also possible to write hat equations in terms of factor supplies and outputs:

$$\alpha_{KF}\hat{Q}_F + \alpha_{KC}\hat{Q}_C = \hat{K}, \quad (5P-12)$$

$$\alpha_{LF}\hat{Q}_F + \alpha_{LC}\hat{Q}_C = \hat{L}, \quad (5P-13)$$

where  $\alpha_{KF}$  is the share of the economy's capital supply that is used in production of  $F$ , etc.,  $\alpha_{KF} > \alpha_{LF}$  and  $\alpha_{KC} < \alpha_{LC}$  because of the greater capital intensity of  $F$  production.

### Goods Prices and Factor Prices

The factor-price equations (5P-10) and (5P-11) may be solved together to express factor prices as the outcome of goods prices (these solutions make use of the fact that  $\theta_{LF} = 1 - \theta_{KF}$  and  $\theta_{LC} = 1 - \theta_{KC}$ ):

$$\hat{r} = \left( \frac{1}{D} \right) [(1 - \theta_{KC})\hat{P}_F - \theta_{LF}\hat{P}_C], \quad (5P-14)$$

$$\hat{w} = \left( \frac{1}{D} \right) [\theta_{KF}\hat{P}_C - \theta_{KC}\hat{P}_F], \quad (5P-15)$$

where  $D = \theta_{KF} - \theta_{KC}$  (implying that  $D > 0$ ). These may be arranged in the form

$$\hat{r} = \hat{P}_F + \left( \frac{\theta_{LF}}{D} \right) (\hat{P}_F - \hat{P}_C), \quad (5P-14')$$

$$\hat{w} = \hat{P}_C + \left( \frac{\theta_{KC}}{D} \right) (\hat{P}_F - \hat{P}_C). \quad (5P-15')$$

Suppose that the price of  $F$  rises relative to the price of  $C$ , so that  $\hat{P}_F > \hat{P}_C$ . Then it follows that

$$\hat{r} > \hat{P}_F > \hat{P}_C > \hat{w}. \quad (5P-16)$$

That is, the real price of capital rises in terms of both goods, while the real price of labor falls in terms of both goods. In particular, if the price of  $F$  were to rise with no change in the price of  $C$ , the wage rate would actually fall.

### Factor Supplies and Outputs

As long as goods prices may be taken as given, equations (5P-12) and (5P-13) can be solved, using the fact that  $\alpha_{KC} = 1 - \alpha_{KF}$  and  $\alpha_{LC} = 1 - \alpha_{LF}$ , to express the change in output of each good as the outcome of changes in factor supplies:

$$\hat{Q}_F = \left( \frac{1}{\Delta} \right) [\alpha_{LC} \hat{K} - \alpha_{KC} \hat{L}], \quad (5P-17)$$

$$\hat{Q}_C = \left( \frac{1}{\Delta} \right) [-\alpha_{LF} \hat{K} + \alpha_{KF} \hat{L}], \quad (5P-18)$$

where  $\Delta = \alpha_{KF} - \alpha_{LF}$ ,  $\Delta > 0$ .

These equations may be rewritten

$$\hat{Q}_F = \hat{K} + \left( \frac{\alpha_{KC}}{\Delta} \right) (\hat{K} - \hat{L}), \quad (5P-17')$$

$$\hat{Q}_C = \hat{L} - \left( \frac{\alpha_{LF}}{\Delta} \right) (\hat{K} - \hat{L}). \quad (5P-18')$$

Suppose that  $P_F$  and  $P_C$  remain constant, while the supply of capital rises relative to the supply of labor— $\hat{K} > \hat{L}$ . Then it is immediately apparent that

$$\hat{Q}_F > \hat{K} > \hat{L} > \hat{Q}_C. \quad (5P-19)$$

In particular, if  $K$  rises with  $L$  remaining constant, output of  $F$  will rise by a greater proportion than  $K$ , while output of  $C$  will actually fall.



# POSTSCRIPT TO CHAPTER

# 6

## The Trading World Economy

### Supply, Demand, and Equilibrium

#### World Equilibrium

Although for graphical purposes it is easiest to express world equilibrium as an equality between relative supply and relative demand, for a mathematical treatment, it is preferable to use an alternative formulation. This approach focuses on the conditions of equality between supply and demand of either one of the two goods, cloth and food. It does not matter which good is chosen because equilibrium in the cloth market implies equilibrium in the food market and vice versa.

To see this condition, let  $Q_C, Q_C^*$  be the output of cloth in Home and Foreign, respectively;  $D_C, D_C^*$  the quantity demanded in each country; and corresponding variables with an  $F$  subscript the food market. Also, let  $p$  be the price of cloth relative to that of food.

In all cases, world expenditure will be equal to world income. World income is the sum of income earned from sales of cloth and sales of food; world expenditure is the sum of purchases of cloth and purchases of food. Thus the equality of income and expenditure may be written

$$p(Q_C + Q_C^*) + Q_F + Q_F^* = p(D_C + D_C^*) + D_F + D_F^*. \quad (6P-1)$$

Now suppose that the world market for cloth is in equilibrium; that is,

$$Q_C + Q_C^* = D_C + D_C^*. \quad (6P-2)$$

Then from equation (6P-1), it follows that

$$Q_F + Q_F^* = D_F + D_F^*. \quad (6P-3)$$

That is, the market for food must be in equilibrium as well. Clearly the converse is also true: If the market for food is in equilibrium, so too is the market for cloth.

It is therefore sufficient to focus on the market for cloth to determine the equilibrium relative price.

#### Production and Income

Each country has a production possibility frontier along which it can trade off between producing cloth and producing food. The economy chooses the point on the frontier that maximizes the value of output at the given relative price of cloth. This value may be written

$$V = pQ_C + Q_F. \quad (6P-4)$$

As in the cost-minimization cases described in the postscript to Chapter 5, the fact that the output mix chosen maximizes value implies that a small shift in production

along the production possibility frontier away from the optimal mix has no effect on the value of output:

$$pdQ_C + dQ_F = 0. \quad (6P-5)$$

A change in the relative price of cloth will lead to both a change in the output mix and a change in the value of output. The change in the value of output is

$$dV = Q_C dp + pdQ_C + dQ_F. \quad (6P-6)$$

However, because the last two terms are, by equation (6P-5), equal to zero, this expression reduces to

$$dV = Q_C dp. \quad (6P-6')$$

Similarly, in Foreign,

$$dV^* = Q_C^* dp. \quad (6P-7)$$

### Income, Prices, and Utility

Each country is treated as if it were one individual. The tastes of the country can be represented by a utility function depending on consumption of cloth and food:

$$U = U(D_C, D_F). \quad (6P-8)$$

Suppose a country has an income  $I$  in terms of food. Its total expenditure must be equal to this income, so that

$$pD_C + D_F = I. \quad (6P-9)$$

Consumers will maximize utility given their income and the prices they face. Let  $MU_C, MU_F$  be the marginal utility that consumers derive from cloth and food; then the change in utility that results from any change in consumption is

$$dU = MU_C dD_C + MU_F dD_F. \quad (6P-10)$$

Because consumers are maximizing utility given income and prices, there cannot be any affordable change in consumption that makes them better off. This condition implies that at the optimum,

$$\frac{MU_C}{MU_F} = p. \quad (6P-11)$$

Now consider the effect on utility of changing income and prices. Differentiating equation (6P-9) yields

$$p dD_C + dD_F = dI - D_C dp. \quad (6P-12)$$

But from equations (6P-10) and (6P-11),

$$dU = MU_F [p dD_C + dD_F]. \quad (6P-13)$$

Thus,

$$dU = MU_F [dI - D_C dp]. \quad (6P-14)$$

It is convenient to introduce now a new definition: The change in utility divided by the marginal utility of food, which is the commodity in which income is measured, may be defined as the change in *real income* and indicated by the symbol  $dy$ :

$$dy = \frac{dU}{MU_F} = dI - D_C dp. \quad (6P-15)$$

For the economy as a whole, income equals the value of output:  $I = V$ . Thus the effect of a change in the relative price of cloth on the economy's real income is

$$dy = [Q_C - D_C]dp. \quad (6P-16)$$

The quantity  $Q_C - D_C$  is the economy's exports of cloth. A rise in the relative price of cloth, then, will benefit an economy that exports cloth; it is thus an improvement in that economy's terms of trade. It is instructive to restate this idea in a slightly different way:

$$dy = [p(Q_C - D_C)] \left( \frac{dp}{p} \right). \quad (6P-17)$$

The term in brackets is the value of exports; the term in parentheses is the percentage change in the terms of trade. The expression therefore says that the real income gain from a given percentage in terms of trade change is equal to the percentage change in the terms of trade multiplied by the initial value of exports. If a country is initially exporting \$100 billion and its terms of trade improve by 10 percent, the gain is equivalent to a gain in national income of \$10 billion.

### Supply, Demand, and the Stability of Equilibrium

In the market for cloth, a change in the relative price will induce changes in both supply and demand.

On the supply side, a rise in  $p$  will lead both Home and Foreign to produce more cloth. We will denote this supply response as in Home and Foreign, respectively, so that

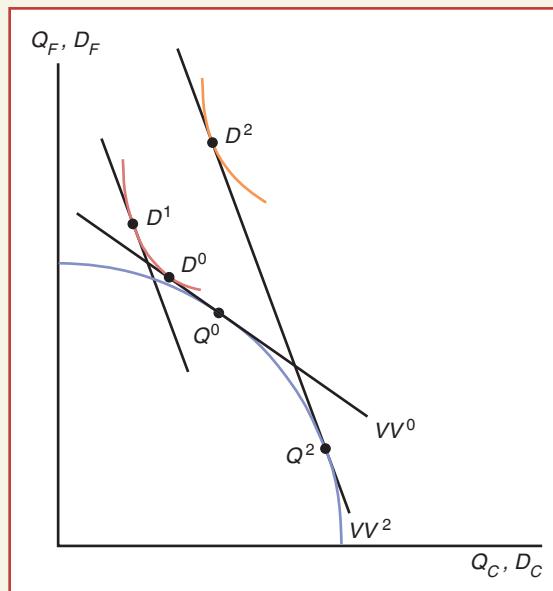
$$dQ_C = s dp, \quad (6P-18)$$

$$dQ_C^* = s^* dp. \quad (6P-19)$$

The demand side is more complex. A change in  $p$  will lead to both *income* and *substitution* effects. These effects are illustrated in Figure 6P-1. The figure shows an economy that initially faces a relative price indicated by the slope of the line  $VV^0$ . Given this relative price, the economy produces at point  $Q^0$  and consumes at point  $D^0$ . Now suppose the relative price of cloth rises to the level indicated by the slope of  $VV^2$ . If there were no increase in utility, consumption would shift to  $D^1$ , which would involve an unambiguous fall in consumption of cloth. There is also, however, a change in the economy's real income; in this case, because the economy is initially a net exporter of cloth, real income rises. This change leads to consumption at  $D^2$  rather than  $D^1$ , and this income effect tends to raise consumption of cloth. Analyzing the effect of change in  $p$  on demand requires taking account of both the substitution effect, which is the change in consumption that would take place if real income were held constant, and the income effect, which is the additional change in consumption that is the consequence of the fact that real income changes.

**FIGURE 6P-1**  
**Consumption Effects of a Price Change**

A change in relative prices produces both income and substitution effects.



Let the substitution effect be denoted by  $-e dp$ ; it is always negative. Also, let the income effect be denoted by  $n dy$ ; as long as cloth is a normal good for which demand rises with real income, it is positive if the country is a net exporter of cloth, negative if it is a net importer.<sup>1</sup> Then the total effect of a change in  $p$  on Home's demand for cloth is

$$\begin{aligned} dD_C &= -e dp + n dy \\ &= [-e + n(Q_C - D_C)]dp. \end{aligned} \quad (6P-20)$$

The effect on Foreign's demand similarly is

$$dD_C^* = [-e^* + n^*(Q_C^* - D_C^*)]dp. \quad (6P-21)$$

Because  $Q_C^* - D_C^*$  is negative, the income effect in Foreign is negative.

The demand and supply effect can now be put together to get the overall effect of a change in  $p$  on the market for cloth. The *excess supply* of cloth is the difference between desired world production and consumption:

$$ES_C = Q_C + Q_C^* - D_C - D_C^*. \quad (6P-22)$$

The effect of a change in  $p$  on world excess supply is

$$dES_C = [s + s^* + e + e^* - n(Q_C - D_C) - n^*(Q_C^* - D_C^*)]dp. \quad (6P-23)$$

<sup>1</sup>If food is also a normal good,  $n$  must be less than  $1/p$ . To see this effect, notice that if  $I$  were to rise by  $dI$  without any change in  $p$ , spending on cloth would rise by  $np dI$ . Unless  $n < 1/p$ , then, more than 100 percent of the increase in income would be spent on cloth.

If the market is initially in equilibrium, however, Home's exports equal Foreign's imports, so that  $Q_C^* - D_C^* = -(Q_C - D_C)$ ; the effect of  $p$  on excess supply may therefore be written

$$dES_C = [s + s^* + e + e^* - (n - n^*)(Q_C - D_C)]dp. \quad (6P-23')$$

Suppose the relative price of cloth were initially a little higher than its equilibrium level. If the result were an excess supply of cloth, market forces would push the relative price of cloth down and thus lead to restoration of equilibrium. On the other hand, if an excessively high relative price of cloth leads to an excess *demand* for cloth, the price will rise further, leading the economy away from equilibrium. Thus equilibrium will be *stable* only if a small increase in the relative price of cloth leads to an excess supply of cloth; that is, if

$$\frac{dES_C}{dp} > 0. \quad (6P-24)$$

Inspection of equation (6P-23') reveals the factors determining whether or not equilibrium is stable. Both supply effects and substitution effects in demand work toward stability. The only possible source of instability lies in income effects. The net income effect is of ambiguous sign: It depends on whether  $n > n^*$ ; that is, on whether Home has a higher marginal propensity to consume cloth when its real income increases than Foreign does. If  $n > n^*$ , the income effect works against stability, while if  $n < n^*$ , it reinforces the other reasons for stability. The income effects can lead to equilibrium instability because they can generate a relative demand curve for the world that is upward sloping.

In what follows, it will be assumed that equation (6P-24) holds, so that the equilibrium of the world economy is in fact stable.

## Effects of Changes in Supply and Demand

### The Method of Comparative Statics

To evaluate the effects of changes in the world economy, a method known as *comparative statics* is applied. In each of the cases considered in the text, the world economy is subjected to some change that will lead to a change in the world relative price of cloth. The first step in the method of comparative statics is to calculate the effect of the change in the world economy on the excess supply of cloth *at the original p*. This change is denoted by  $dES|_p$ . Then the change in the relative price needed to restore equilibrium is calculated by

$$dp = \frac{-dES|_p}{(dES/dp)}, \quad (6P-25)$$

where  $dES/dp$  reflects the supply, income, and substitution effects described earlier.

The effects of a given change on national welfare can be calculated in two stages. First there is whatever direct effect the change has on real income, which we can denote by  $dy|_p$ ; then there is the indirect effect of the resulting change in the terms of trade, which can be calculated using equation (6P-16). Thus the total effect on welfare is

$$dy = dy|_p + (Q_C - D_C)dp. \quad (6P-26)$$

## Economic Growth

Consider the effect of growth in the Home economy. As pointed out in the text, by growth we mean an outward shift in the production possibility frontier. This change will lead to changes in both cloth and food output at the initial relative price  $p$ ; let  $dQ_C, dQ_F$  be these changes in output. If growth is strongly biased, one or the other of these changes may be negative, but because production possibilities have expanded, the value of output at the initial  $p$  must rise:

$$dV = pdQ_C + dQ_F = dy|_p > 0. \quad (6P-27)$$

At the initial  $p$ , the supply of cloth will rise by the amount  $dQ_C$ . The demand for cloth will also rise, by an amount  $ndy|_p$ . The net effect on world excess supply of cloth will therefore be

$$dES|_p = dQ_C - n(pdQ_C + dQ_F). \quad (6P-28)$$

This expression can have either sign. Suppose first that growth is biased toward cloth, so that while  $dQ_C > 0$ ,  $dQ_F \leq 0$ . Then demand for cloth will rise by

$$dD_C = n(pdQ_C + dQ_F) \leq npdQ_C > dQ_C.$$

(See footnote 1.)

Thus the overall effect on excess supply will be

$$dES|_p = dQ_C - dD_C > 0.$$

As a result,  $dp = -dES|_p/(dES/dp) < 0$ : Home's terms of trade worsen.

On the other hand, suppose that growth is strongly biased toward food, so that  $dQ_C \leq 0$ ,  $dQ_F > 0$ . Then the effect on the supply of cloth at the initial  $p$  is negative, but the effect on the demand for cloth remains positive. It follows that

$$dES|_p = dQ_C - dD_C < 0,$$

so that  $dp > 0$ . Home's terms of trade improve.

Growth that is less strongly biased can move  $p$  either way, depending on the strength of the bias compared with the way Home divides its income at the margin.

Turning next to the welfare effects, the effect on Foreign depends only on the terms of trade. The effect on Home, however, depends on the combination of the initial income change and the subsequent change in the terms of trade, as shown in equation (6P-26). If growth turns the terms of trade against Home, this condition will oppose the immediate favorable effect of growth.

But can growth worsen the terms of trade sufficiently to make the growing country actually worse off? To see that it can, consider first the case of a country that experiences a biased shift in its production possibilities that raises  $Q_C$  and lowers  $Q_F$  while leaving the value of its output unchanged at initial relative prices. [This change would not necessarily be considered growth because it violates the assumption of equation (6P-27), but it is a useful reference point.] Then there would be no change in demand at the initial  $p$ , whereas the supply of cloth rises; hence  $p$  must fall. The change in real income is  $dy|_p - (Q_C - D_C)dp$ ; by construction, however, this is a case in which  $dy|_p = 0$ , so  $dy$  is certainly negative.

Now, this country did not grow, in the usual sense, because the value of output at initial prices did not rise. By allowing the output of either good to rise slightly more, however, we would have a case in which the definition of growth is satisfied. If the extra

growth is sufficiently small, however, it will not outweigh the welfare loss from the fall in  $p$ . Therefore, sufficiently biased growth can leave the growing country worse off.

### A Transfer of Income

We now describe how a transfer of income (say as foreign aid) affects the terms of trade.<sup>2</sup> Suppose Home makes a transfer of some of its income to Foreign. Let the amount of the transfer, measured in terms of food, be  $da$ . What effect does this aid have on the terms of trade?

At unchanged relative prices, there is no effect on supply. The only effect is on demand. Home's income is reduced by  $da$ , while Foreign's is raised by the same amount. This adjustment leads to a decline in  $D_C$  by  $-n da$ , while  $D_C^*$  rises by  $n^* da$ . Thus,

$$dES|_p = (n - n^*)da \quad (6P-29)$$

and the change in the terms of trade is

$$dp = -da \frac{n - n^*}{dES/dp}. \quad (6P-30)$$

Home's terms of trade will worsen if  $n > n^*$ , which is widely regarded as the normal case; they will, however, improve if  $n^* > n$ .

The effect on Home's real income combines a direct negative effect from the transfer and an indirect terms of trade effect that can go either way. Is it possible for a favorable terms of trade effect to outweigh the income loss? In this model it is not.

To see the reason, notice that

$$\begin{aligned} dy &= dy|_n + (Q_C - D_C)dp \\ &= -da + (Q_C - D_C)dp \\ &= -da \left\{ 1 + \frac{(n - n^*)(Q_C - D_C)}{s + s^* + e + e^* - (n - n^*)(Q_C - D_C)} \right\} \\ &= -da \frac{s + s^* + e + e^*}{s + s^* + e + e^* - (n - n^*)(Q_C - D_C)} < 0. \end{aligned} \quad (6P-31)$$

Similar algebra will reveal correspondingly that a transfer cannot make the recipient worse off.

An intuitive explanation of this result is the following. Suppose  $p$  were to rise sufficiently to leave Home as well off as it would be if it made no transfer and to leave Foreign no better off as a result of the transfer. Then there would be no income effects on demand in the world economy. But the rise in price would produce both increased output of cloth and substitution in demand away from cloth, leading to an excess supply that would drive down the price. This result demonstrates that a  $p$  sufficiently high to reverse the direct welfare effects of a transfer is above the equilibrium  $p$ .

---

<sup>2</sup>In the online appendix to Chapter 6, we discuss an important historical example of a large income transfer and its implications for the terms of trade of the donor and recipient countries.

## A Tariff

Suppose Home places a tariff on imports, imposing a tax equal to the fraction  $t$  of the price. Then for a given world relative price of cloth  $p$ , Home consumers and producers will face an internal relative price  $\bar{p} = p/(1 + t)$ . If the tariff is sufficiently small, the internal relative price will be approximately equal to

$$\bar{p} = p - p. \quad (6P-32)$$

In addition to affecting  $p$ , a tariff will raise revenue, which will be assumed to be redistributed to the rest of the economy.

At the initial terms of trade, a tariff will influence the excess supply of cloth in two ways. First, the fall in relative price of cloth inside Home will lower production of cloth and induce consumers to substitute away from food toward cloth. Second, the tariff may affect Home's real income, with resulting income effects on demand. If Home starts with no tariff and imposes a small tariff, however, the problem may be simplified because the tariff will have a negligible effect on real income. To see this relation, recall that

$$dy = p dD_C + dD_F.$$

The value of output and the value of consumption must always be equal at world prices, so that

$$p dD_C + dD_F = p dQ_C + dQ_F$$

at the initial terms of trade. But because the economy was maximizing the value of output before the tariff was imposed,

$$p dQ_C + dQ_F = 0.$$

Because there is no income effect, only the substitution effect is left. The fall in the internal relative price  $\bar{p}$  induces a decline in production and a rise in consumption:

$$dQ_C = -sp dt, \quad (6P-33)$$

$$dD_C = ep dt, \quad (6P-34)$$

where  $dt$  is the tariff increase. Hence,

$$dES|_p = -(s + e)p dt < 0, \quad (6P-35)$$

implying

$$\begin{aligned} dp &= \frac{-dES|_p}{dES/dp} \\ &= \frac{p dt(s + e)}{s + s^* + e + e^* - (n - n^*)(Q_C - D_C)} > 0. \end{aligned} \quad (6P-36)$$

This expression shows that a tariff unambiguously improves the terms of trade of the country that imposes it.



## POSTSCRIPT TO CHAPTER

# 8

### The Monopolistic Competition Model

We want to consider the effects of changes in the size of the market on equilibrium in a monopolistically competitive industry. Each firm has the total cost relationship

$$C = F + cX, \quad (8P-1)$$

where  $c$  is marginal cost,  $F$  a fixed cost, and  $X$  the firm's output. This implies an average cost curve of the form

$$AC = C/X = F/X + c. \quad (8P-2)$$

Also, each firm faces a demand curve of the form

$$X = S [1/n - b(P - \bar{P})], \quad (8P-3)$$

where  $S$  is total industry sales (taken as given),  $n$  is the number of firms, and  $\bar{P}$  is the average price charged by other firms (which each firm is assumed to take as given).

Each firm chooses its price to maximize profits. Profits of a typical firm are

$$\pi = PX - C = PS [1/n - b(P - \bar{P})] - F - cS [1/n - b(P - \bar{P})]. \quad (8P-4)$$

To maximize profits, a firm sets the derivative  $d\pi/dP = 0$ . This implies

$$X - SbP + Sbc = 0. \quad (8P-5)$$

Since all firms are symmetric, however, in equilibrium,  $P = \bar{P}$  and  $X = S/n$ . Thus (8P-5) implies

$$P = 1/bn + c, \quad (8P-6)$$

which is the relationship derived in the text.

Since  $X = S/n$ , average cost is a function of  $S$  and  $n$ ,

$$AC = Fn/S + c. \quad (8P-7)$$

In zero-profit equilibrium, however, the price charged by a typical firm must also equal its average cost. So we must have

$$1/bn + c = Fn/S + c, \quad (8P-8)$$

which in turn implies

$$n = \sqrt{S/bF}. \quad (8P-9)$$

This shows that an increase in the size of the market,  $S$ , will lead to an increase in the number of firms,  $n$ , but not in proportion—for example, a doubling of the size of the market will increase the number of firms by a factor of approximately 1.4.

The price charged by the representative firm is

$$P = 1/bn + c = c + \sqrt{F/Sb}, \quad (8P-10)$$

which shows that an increase in the size of the market leads to lower prices.

Finally, notice that the sales per firm,  $X$ , equal

$$X = S/n = \sqrt{SbF}. \quad (8P-11)$$

This shows that the scale of each individual firm also increases with the size of the market.



## Risk Aversion and International Portfolio Diversification

This postscript develops a model of international portfolio diversification by risk-averse investors. The model shows that investors generally care about the risk as well as the return of their portfolios. In particular, people may hold assets whose expected returns are lower than those of other assets if this strategy reduces the overall riskiness of their wealth.

A representative investor can divide her real wealth,  $W$ , between a Home asset and a Foreign asset. Two possible states of nature can occur in the future, and it is impossible to predict in advance which one it will be. In state 1, which occurs with probability  $q$ , a unit of wealth invested in the Home asset pays out  $H_1$  units of output and a unit of wealth invested in the Foreign asset pays out  $F_1$  units of output. In state 2, which occurs with probability  $1 - q$ , the payoffs to unit investments in the Home and Foreign assets are  $H_2$  and  $F_2$ , respectively.

Let  $\alpha$  be the share of wealth invested in the Home asset and  $1 - \alpha$  the share invested in the Foreign asset. Then if state 1 occurs, the investor will be able to consume the weighted average of her two assets' values,

$$C_1 = [\alpha H_1 + (1 - \alpha)F_1] \times W. \quad (20P-1)$$

Similarly, consumption in state 2 is

$$C_2 = [\alpha H_2 + (1 - \alpha)F_2] \times W. \quad (20P-2)$$

In either state, the investor derives utility  $U(C)$  from a consumption level of  $C$ . Since the investor does not know beforehand which state will occur, she makes the portfolio decision to maximize the average or *expected* utility from future consumption,

$$qU(C_1) + (1 - q)U(C_2).$$

### An Analytical Derivation of the Optimal Portfolio

After the state 1 and state 2 consumption levels given by (20P-1) and (20P-2) are substituted into the expected utility function above, the investor's decision problem can be expressed as follows: Choose the portfolio share  $\alpha$  to maximize expected utility,

$$qU\{\alpha H_1 + (1 - \alpha)F_1\} \times W + (1 - q)U\{\alpha H_2 + (1 - \alpha)F_2\} \times W.$$

This problem is solved (as usual) by differentiating the expected utility above with respect to  $\alpha$  and setting the resulting derivative equal to 0.

Let  $U'(C)$  be the derivative of the utility function  $U(C)$  with respect to  $C$ ; that is,  $U'(C)$  is the *marginal utility* of consumption. Then  $\alpha$  maximizes expected utility if

$$\frac{H_1 - F_1}{H_2 - F_2} = -\frac{(1 - q)U'\{\alpha H_2 + (1 - \alpha)F_2\} \times W}{qU'\{\alpha H_1 + (1 - \alpha)F_1\} \times W}. \quad (20P-3)$$

This equation can be solved for  $\alpha$ , the optimal portfolio share.

For a risk-averse investor, the marginal utility of consumption,  $U'(C)$ , falls as consumption rises. Declining marginal utility explains why someone who is risk averse will not take a gamble with an expected payoff of zero: The extra consumption made possible by a win yields less utility than the utility sacrificed if the gamble is lost. If the marginal utility of consumption does not change as consumption changes, we say the investor is *risk neutral* rather than risk averse. A risk-neutral investor is willing to take gambles with a zero expected payoff.

If the investor is risk neutral, however, so that  $U'(C)$  is constant for all  $C$ , equation (20P-3) becomes

$$qH_1 + (1 - q)H_2 = qF_1 + (1 - q)F_2,$$

which states that *the expected rates of return on Home and Foreign assets are equal*. This result is the basis for the assertion in Chapter 14 that all assets must yield the same expected return in equilibrium when considerations of risk (and liquidity) are ignored. Thus, the interest parity condition of Chapter 14 is valid under risk-neutral behavior but not, in general, under risk aversion.

For the analysis above to make sense, neither of the assets can yield a higher return than the other in *both* states of nature. If one asset did dominate the other in this way, the left-hand side of equation (20P-3) would be positive while its right-hand side would be negative (because the marginal utility of consumption is usually assumed to be positive). Thus, (20P-3) would have no solution. Intuitively, no one would want to hold a particular asset if another asset that *always* did better were available. Indeed, if anyone did wish to do so, other investors would be able to make riskless arbitrage profits by issuing the low-return asset and using the proceeds to purchase the high-return asset.

To be definite, we therefore assume that  $H_1 > F_1$  and  $H_2 < F_2$ , so that the Home asset does better in state 1 but does worse in state 2. This assumption is now used to develop a diagrammatic analysis that helps illustrate additional implications of the model.

## A Diagrammatic Derivation of the Optimal Portfolio

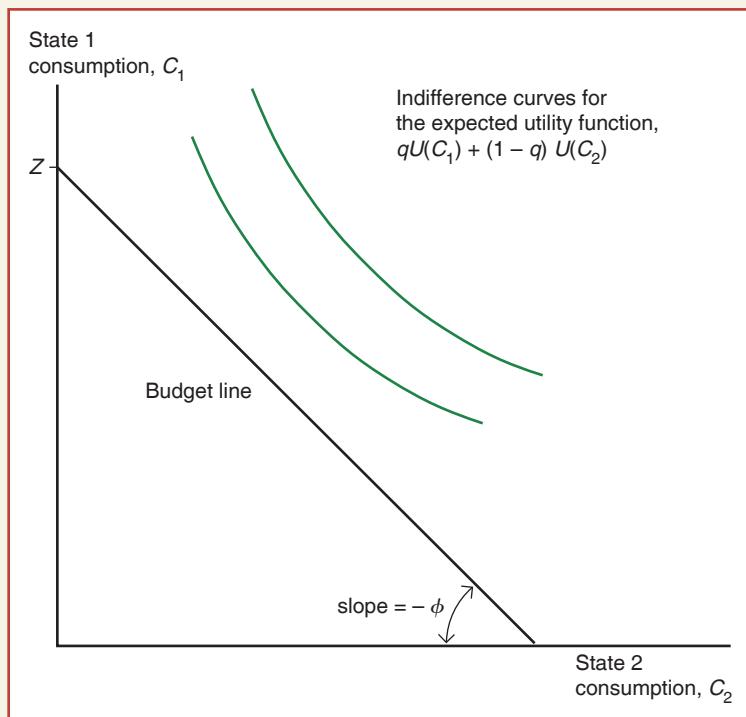
Figure 20P-1 shows indifference curves for the expected utility function described by  $qU(C_1) + (1 - q)U(C_2)$ . The points in the diagram should be thought of as contingency plans showing the level of consumption that will occur in each state of nature. The preferences represented apply to these contingent consumption plans rather than to consumption of different goods in a single state of nature. As with standard indifference curves, however, each curve in the figure represents a set of contingency plans for consumption with which the investor is equally satisfied.

To compensate the investor for a reduction of consumption in state 1 ( $C_1$ ), consumption in state 2 ( $C_2$ ) must rise. The indifference curves therefore slope downward. Each curve becomes flatter, however, as  $C_1$  falls and  $C_2$  rises. This property of the curves reflects the property of  $U(C)$  that the marginal utility of consumption declines when  $C$  rises. As  $C_1$  falls, the investor can be kept on her original indifference curve only by successively greater increments in  $C_2$ : Additions to  $C_2$  are becoming less beneficial at the same time as subtractions from  $C_1$  are becoming more painful.

Equations (20P-1) and (20P-2) imply that by choosing the portfolio division given by  $\alpha$ , the investor also chooses her consumption levels in the two states of nature. Thus, the problem of choosing an optimal portfolio is equivalent to the problem of optimally choosing the contingent consumption levels  $C_1$  and  $C_2$ . Accordingly, the indifference curves in Figure 20P-1 can be used to determine the optimal portfolio for

**FIGURE 20P-1**
**Indifference Curves for Uncertain Consumption Levels**

The indifference curves are sets of state-contingent consumption plans with which the individual is equally happy. The budget line describes the trade-off between state 1 and state 2 consumption that results from portfolio shifts between Home and Foreign assets.



the investor. All that is needed to complete the analysis is a budget line showing the trade-off between state 1 consumption and state 2 consumption that the market makes available.

This trade-off is given by equations (20P-1) and (20P-2). If equation (20P-2) is solved for  $\alpha$ , the result is

$$\alpha = \frac{F_2 W - C_2}{F_2 W - H_2 W}.$$

After substitution of this expression for  $\alpha$  in (20P-1), the latter equation becomes

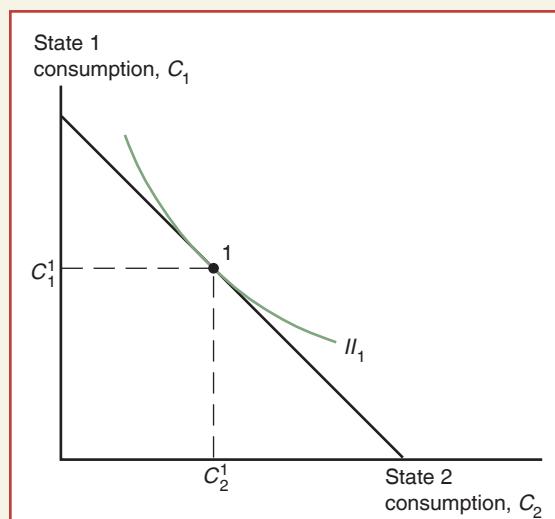
$$C_1 + \phi C_2 = Z, \quad (20P-4)$$

where  $\phi = (H_1 - F_1)/(F_2 - H_2)$  and  $Z = W \times (H_1 F_2 - H_2 F_1)/(F_2 - H_2)$ . Notice that because  $H_1 > F_1$  and  $H_2 < F_2$ , both  $\phi$  and  $Z$  are positive. Thus, equation (20P-4) looks like the budget line that appears in the usual analysis of consumer choice, with  $\phi$  playing the role of a relative price and  $Z$  the role of income measured in terms of state 1 consumption. This budget line is graphed in Figure 20P-1 as a straight line with slope  $-\phi$  intersecting the vertical axis at  $Z$ .

To interpret  $\phi$  as the market trade-off between state 2 and state 1 consumption (that is, as the price of state 2 consumption in terms of state 1 consumption), suppose the investor shifts one unit of her wealth from the Home to the Foreign asset. Since the Home asset has the higher payoff in state 1, her net loss of state 1 consumption is  $H_1$  less the Foreign asset's state 1 payoff,  $F_1$ . Similarly, her net gain in state 2 consumption is  $F_2 - H_2$ . To obtain additional state 2 consumption of  $F_2 - H_2$ , the investor

**FIGURE 20P-2****Maximizing Expected Utility**

To maximize expected utility, the investor makes the state-contingent consumption choices shown at point 1, where the budget line is tangent to the highest attainable indifference curve,  $II_1$ . The optimal portfolio share,  $\alpha$ , can be calculated as  $(F_2 W - C_2^1) \div (F_2 W - H_2 W)$ .



therefore must sacrifice  $H_1 - F_1$  in state 1. The price of a single unit of  $C_2$  in terms of  $C_1$  is therefore  $H_1 - F_1$  divided by  $F_2 - H_2$ , which equals  $\phi$ , the absolute value of the slope of budget line (20P-4).

Figure 20P-2 shows how the choices of  $C_1$  and  $C_2$ —and, by implication, the choice of the portfolio share  $\alpha$ —are determined. As usual, the investor picks the consumption levels given by point 1, where the budget line just touches the highest attainable indifference curve,  $II_1$ . Given the optimal choices of  $C_1$  and  $C_2$ ,  $\alpha$  can be calculated using equation (20P-1) or (20P-2). As we move downward and to the right along the budget constraint, the Home asset's portfolio share,  $\alpha$ , falls. (Why?)

For some values of  $C_1$  and  $C_2$ ,  $\alpha$  may be negative or greater than 1. These possibilities raise no conceptual problems. A negative  $\alpha$ , for example, means that the investor has “gone short” in the Home asset, that is, issued some positive quantity of state-contingent claims that promise to pay their holders  $H_1$  units of output in state 1 and  $H_2$  units in state 2. The proceeds of this borrowing are used to increase the Foreign asset's portfolio share,  $1 - \alpha$ , above 1.

Figure 20P-3 shows the points on the investor's budget constraint at which  $\alpha = 1$  (so that  $C_1 = H_1 W$ ,  $C_2 = H_2 W$ ) and  $\alpha = 0$  (so that  $C_1 = F_1 W$ ,  $C_2 = F_2 W$ ). Starting from  $\alpha = 1$ , the investor can move upward and to the left along the constraint by going short in the Foreign asset (thereby making  $\alpha$  greater than 1 and  $1 - \alpha$  negative). She can move downward and to the right from  $\alpha = 0$  by going short in the Home asset.

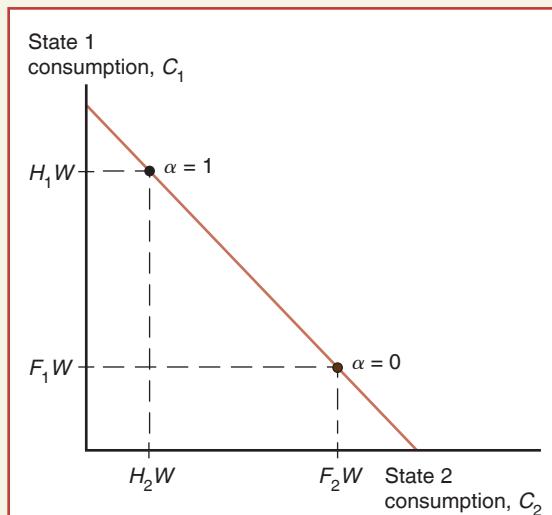
### The Effects of Changing Rates of Return

The diagram we have developed can be used to illustrate the effect of changes in rates of return under risk aversion. Suppose, for example, the Home asset's state 1 payoff rises while all other payoffs and the investor's wealth,  $W$ , stay the same. The rise in  $H_1$  raises  $\phi$ , the relative price of state 2 consumption, and therefore steepens the budget line shown in Figure 20P-3.

We need more information, however, to describe completely how the position of the budget line in Figure 20P-3 changes when  $H_1$  rises. The following reasoning fills the

**FIGURE 20P-3****Nondiversified Portfolios**

When  $\alpha = 1$ , the investor holds all her wealth in the Home asset. When  $\alpha = 0$ , she holds all her wealth in the Foreign asset. Moves along the budget constraint upward and to the left from  $\alpha = 1$  correspond to short sales of the Foreign asset, which raise  $\alpha$  above 1. Moves downward and to the right from  $\alpha = 0$  correspond to short sales of the Home asset, which push  $\alpha$  below 0.



gap. Consider the portfolio allocation  $\alpha = 0$  in Figure 20P-3, under which all wealth is invested in the Foreign asset. The contingent consumption levels that result from this investment strategy,  $C_1 = F_1 W$ ,  $C_2 = F_2 W$ , do not change as a result of a rise in  $H_1$ , because the portfolio we are considering does not involve the Home asset. Since the consumption pair associated with  $\alpha = 0$  does not change when  $H_1$  rises, we see that  $C_1 = F_1 W$ ,  $C_2 = F_2 W$  is a point on the new budget constraint: After a rise in  $H_1$ , it is still feasible for the investor to put all of her wealth into the Foreign asset. It follows that the effect of a rise in  $H_1$  is to make the budget constraint in Figure 20P-3 pivot clockwise around the point  $\alpha = 0$ .

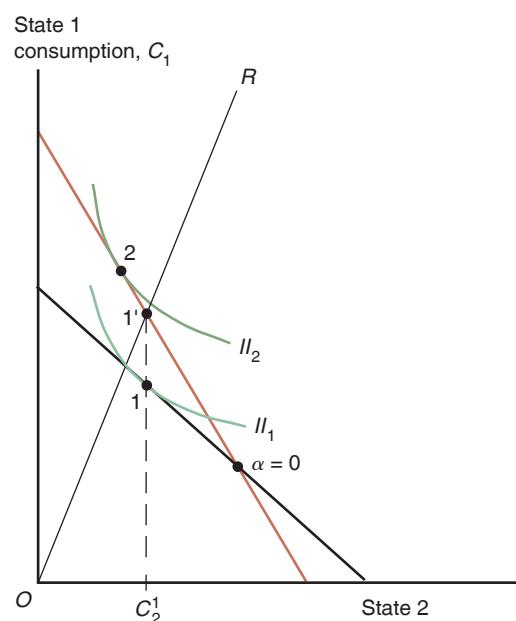
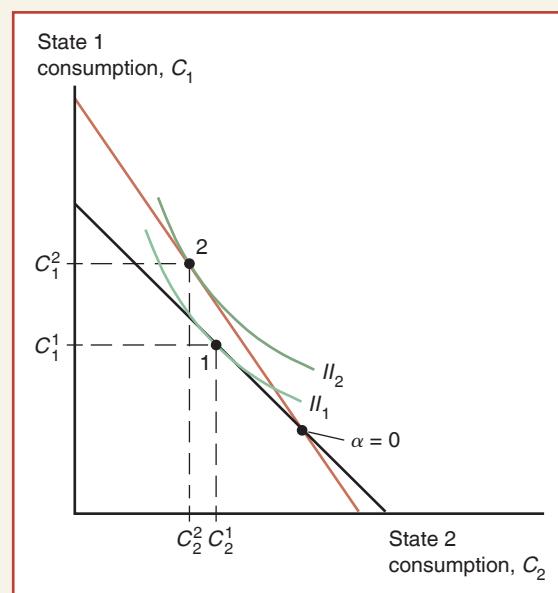
The effect on the investor of a rise in  $H_1$  is shown in Figure 20P-4, which assumes that initially,  $\alpha > 0$  (that is, the investor initially owns a positive amount of the Home asset).<sup>1</sup> As usual, both a “substitution” and an “income” effect influence the shift of the investor’s contingent consumption plan from point 1 to point 2. The substitution effect is a tendency to demand more  $C_1$ , whose relative price has fallen, and less  $C_2$ , whose relative price has risen. The income effect of the rise in  $H_1$ , however, pushes the entire budget line outward and tends to raise consumption in *both* states (as long as  $\alpha > 0$  initially). Because the investor will be richer in state 1, she can afford to shift some of her wealth toward the Foreign asset (which has the higher payoff in state 2) and thereby even out her consumption in the two states of nature. Risk aversion explains the investor’s desire to avoid large consumption fluctuations across states. As Figure 20P-4 suggests,  $C_1$  definitely rises while  $C_2$  may rise or fall. (In the case illustrated, the substitution effect is stronger than the income effect, and  $C_2$  falls.)

Corresponding to this ambiguity is an ambiguity concerning the effect of the rise in  $H_1$  on the portfolio share,  $\alpha$ . Figure 20P-5 illustrates the two possibilities. The key to understanding this figure is to observe that if the investor does *not* change  $\alpha$  in response to the rise in  $H_1$ , her consumption choices are given by point 1', which lies on the new budget constraint vertically above the initial consumption point 1. Why is

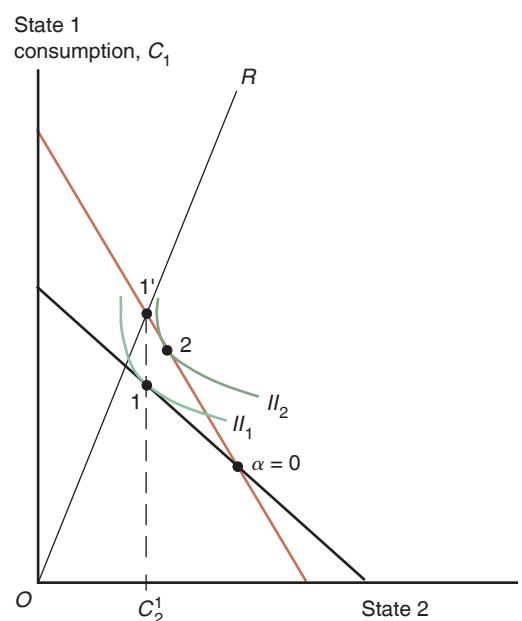
<sup>1</sup>The case in which  $\alpha < 0$  initially is left as an exercise.

**FIGURE 20P-4**  
**Effects of a Rise in  $H_1$  on Consumption**

A rise in  $H_1$  causes the budget line to pivot clockwise around  $\alpha = 0$ , and the investor's optimum shifts to point 2. State 1 consumption always rises; in the case shown, state 2 consumption falls.



(a)



(b)

**FIGURE 20P-5****Effects of a Rise in  $H_1$  on Portfolio Shares**

Panel (a): If the investor is not too risk averse, she shifts her portfolio toward the Home asset, picking a  $C_1/C_2$  ratio greater than the one indicated by the slope of  $OR$ . Panel (b): A very risk-averse investor might increase state 2 consumption by shifting her portfolio toward the Foreign asset.

this the case? Equation (20P-2) implies that  $C_2^l = [\alpha H_2 + (1 - \alpha)F_2] \times W$  doesn't change if  $\alpha$  doesn't change; the new, higher value of state 1 consumption corresponding to the original portfolio choice is then given by the point on the new budget constraint directly above  $C_2^l$ . In both panels of Figure 20P-5, the slope of the ray  $OR$  connecting the origin and point  $1'$  shows the ratio  $C_1/C_2$  implied by the initial portfolio composition after the rise in  $H_1$ .

It is now clear, however, that to shift to a lower value of  $C_2$ , the investor must raise  $\alpha$  above its initial value, that is, shift the portfolio toward the Home asset. To raise  $C_2$ , she must lower  $\alpha$ , that is, shift toward the Foreign asset. Figure 20P-5a shows again the case in which the substitution effect outweighs the income effect. In that case,  $C_2$  falls as the investor shifts her portfolio toward the Home asset, whose expected rate of return has risen relative to that on the Foreign asset. This case corresponds to those we studied in the text, in which the portfolio share of an asset rises as its relative expected rate of return rises.

Figure 20P-5b shows the opposite case, in which  $C_2$  rises and  $\alpha$  falls, implying a portfolio shift toward the Foreign asset. You can see that the factor giving rise to this possibility is the sharper curvature of the indifference curves  $II$  in Figure 20P-5b. This curvature is precisely what economists mean by the term *risk aversion*. An investor who becomes more risk averse regards consumptions in different states of nature as poorer substitutes and thus requires a larger increase in state 1 consumption to compensate her for a fall in state 2 consumption (and vice versa). Note that the paradoxical case shown in Figure 20P-5b, in which a rise in an asset's expected rate of return can cause investors to demand *less* of it, is unlikely in the real world. For example, an increase in the interest rate a currency offers, other things equal, raises the expected rate of return on deposits of that currency in all states of nature, not just in one. The portfolio substitution effect in favor of the currency therefore is much stronger.

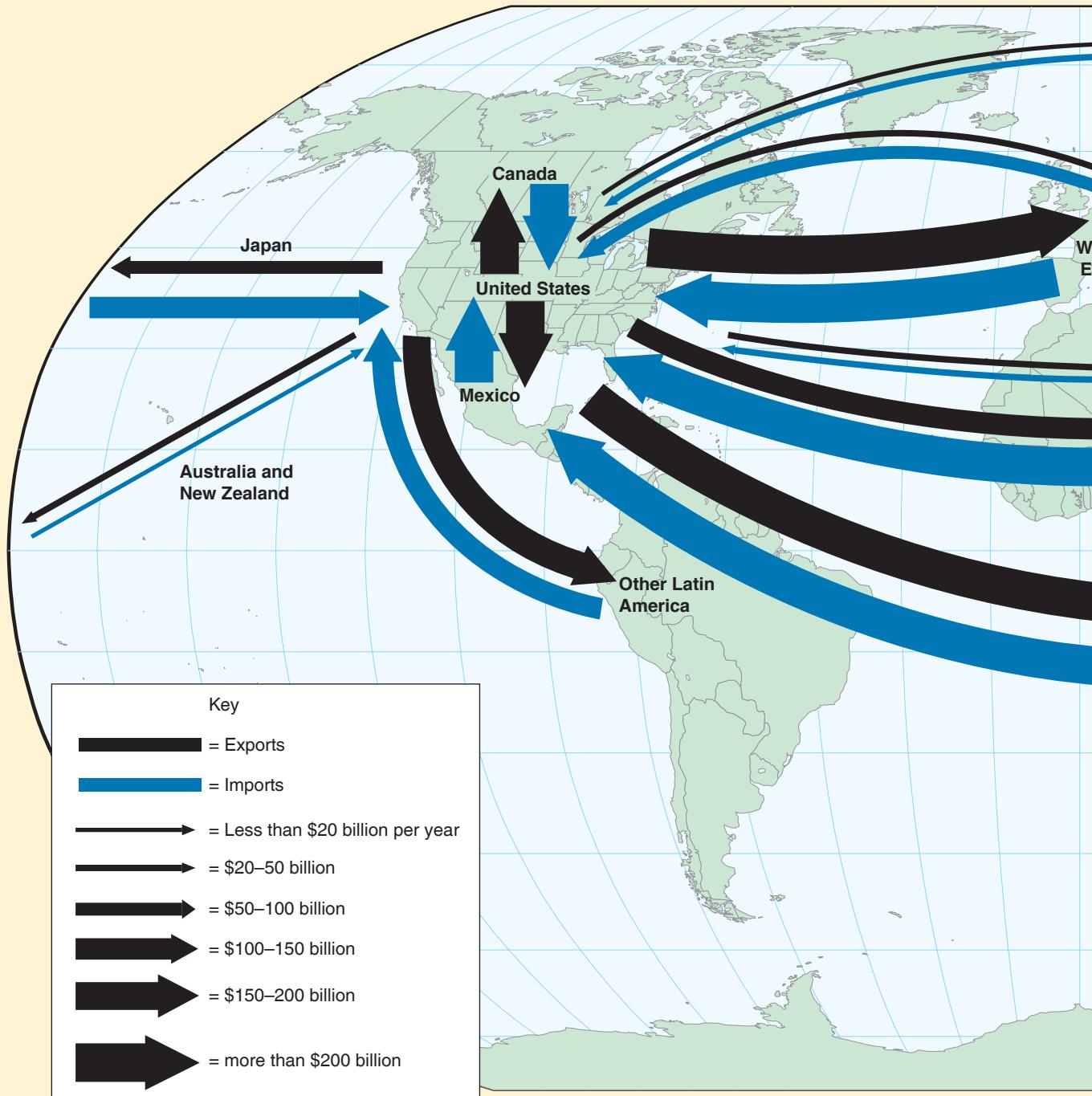
The results we have found are quite different from those that would occur if the investor were risk neutral. A risk-neutral investor would shift all of her wealth into the asset with the higher expected return, paying no attention to the riskiness of this move.<sup>2</sup> The greater the degree of risk aversion, however, the greater the concern with the riskiness of the overall portfolio of assets.

---

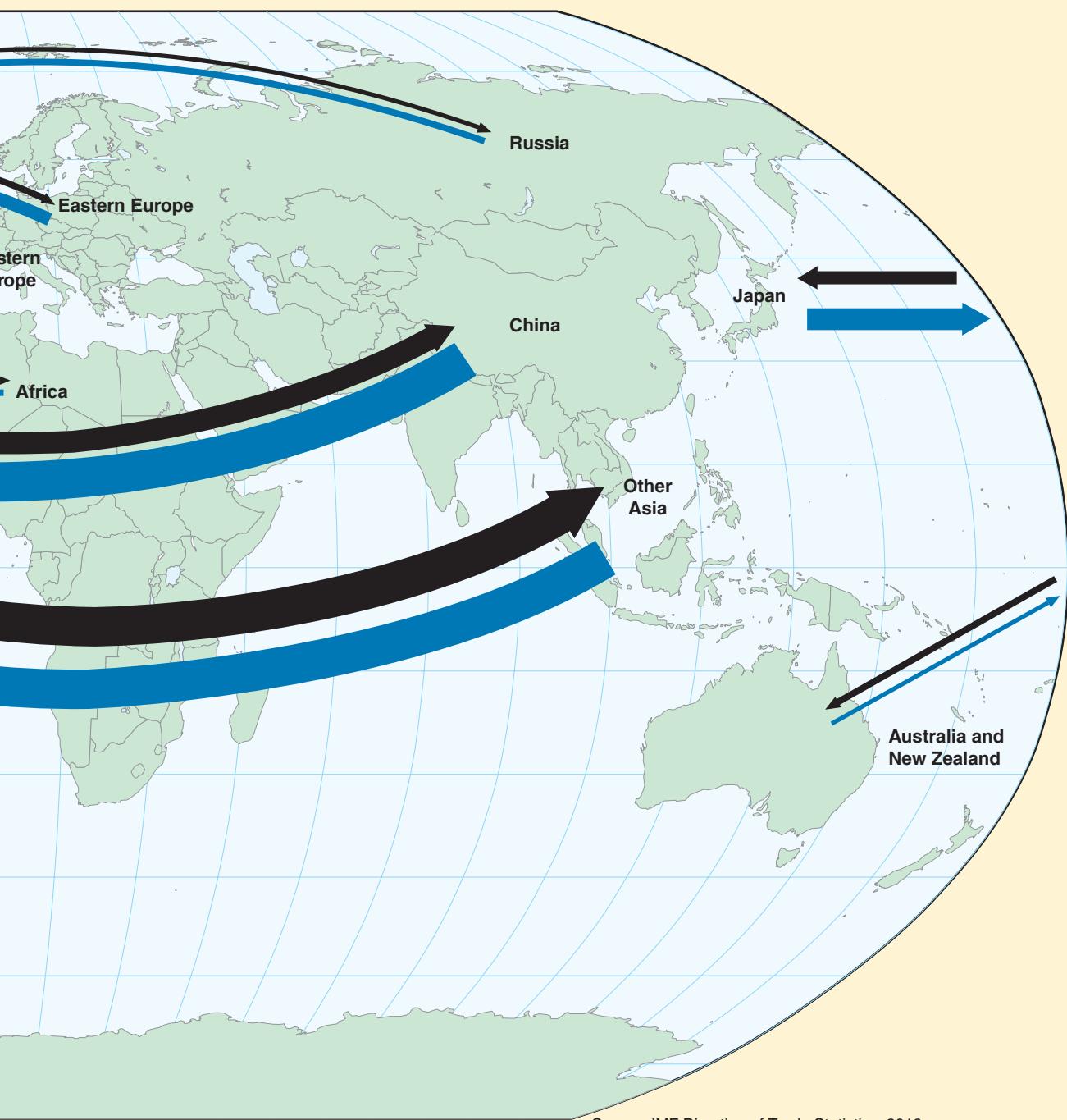
<sup>2</sup>In fact, a risk-neutral investor would always like to take the maximum possible short position in the low-return asset and, correspondingly, the maximum possible long position in the high-return asset. It is this behavior that gives rise to the interest parity condition.



# *Merchandise Trade Flows with the United States*

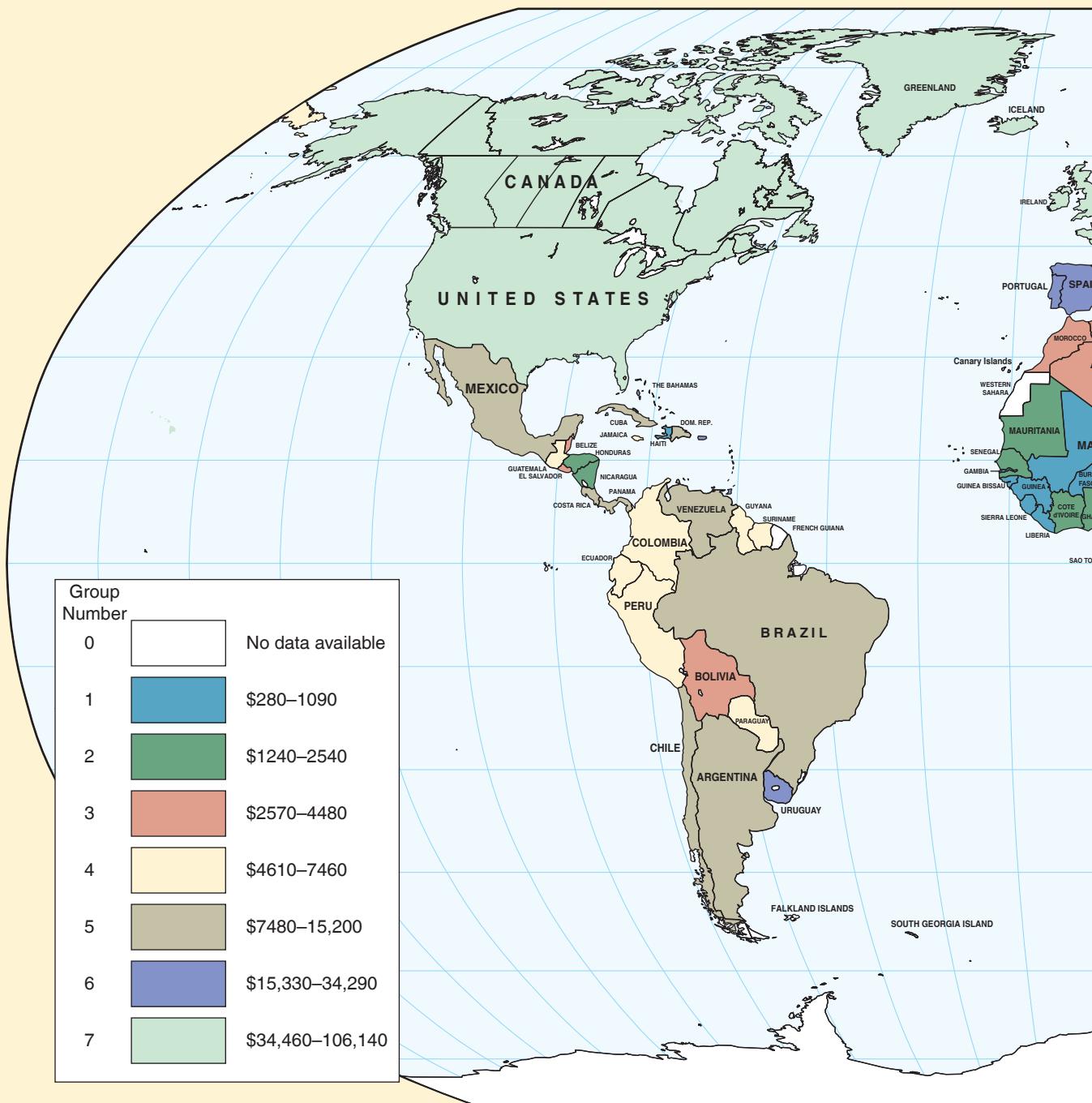


(in 2018 U.S. Dollars)

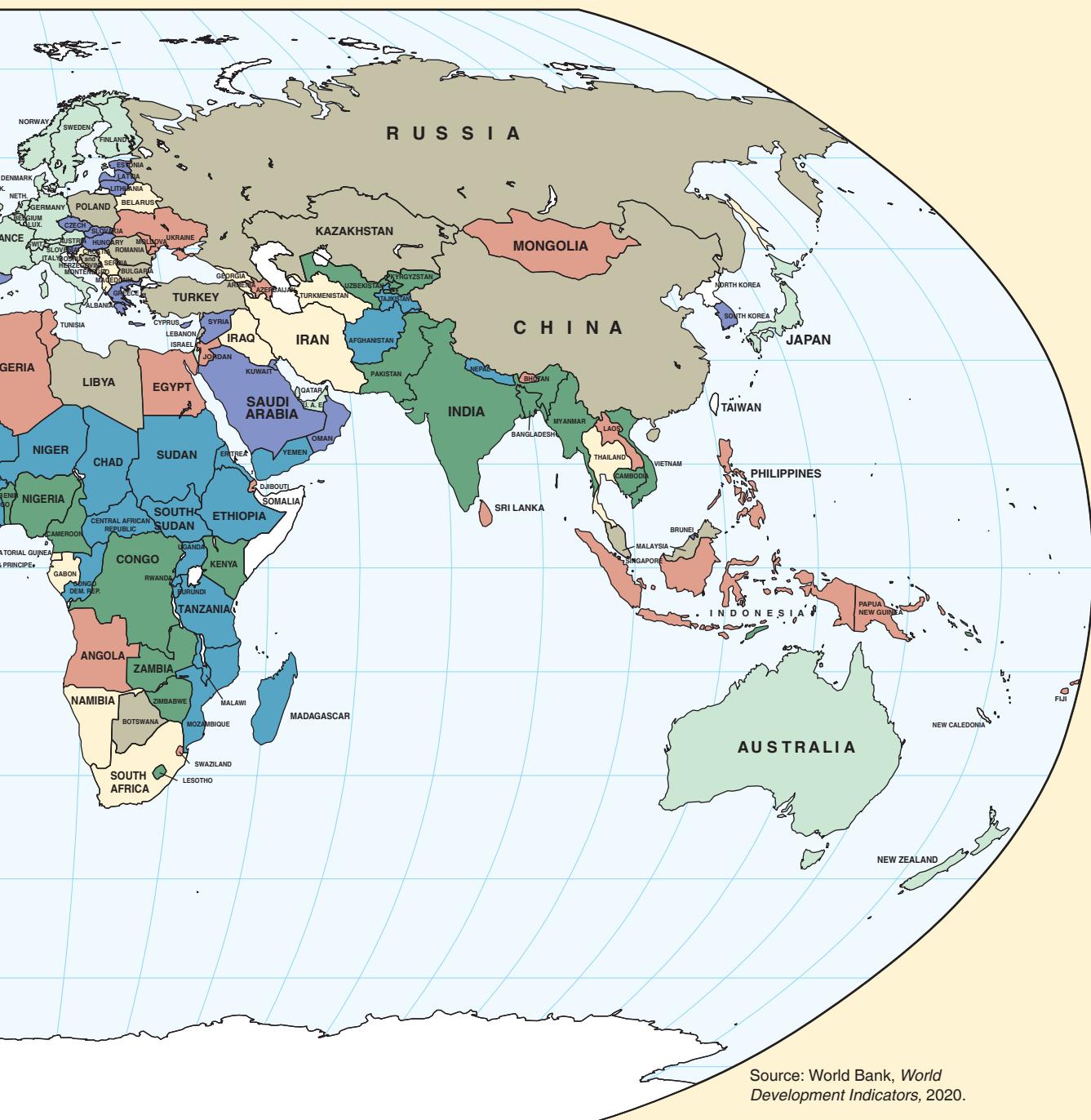


Source: IMF Direction of Trade Statistics, 2018.

# Gross National Product per Capita (in 2019 U.S. Dollars)



2. Dollars)



# INDEX

Note: Page numbers followed by f indicate figures; those followed by t indicate tables.

## A

- AA* schedule, 502–505
- DD* schedule combined with, 505–507, 506f
- derivation of, 504, 504f
- factors shifting, 504–505
- output and exchange rate and, 502–504, 503f
- Abel, Andrew B., 511n
- Absolute advantage, 55–56
- Absolute PPP, 455–456
- Absorption, 612
- Abundant factors, 125
- Account, money as unit of, 418–419
- Acemoglu, Daron, 772–773
- Acharya, Viral V., 673n
- Adler, Gustavo, 522n, 566n
- Advanced industrial nations. *See* Developed nations
- Adjiev, Stefan, 683n
- Africa. *See also specific countries*
  - debt crisis of the 1980s and, 749
  - output per capita of countries in, 735t, 736
- Aggregate demand
  - determinants of, 491–494
  - equation of, 494–495
  - real exchange rate and, 494–495
  - real income and, 495, 495f
- Aggregate money demand, 421–422, 423f
- Agreement on Trade-Related Aspects of Intellectual Property (TRIPS), 295
- Agriculture
  - free trade in agricultural products and, 294
  - subsidies for, effect on third world, 300
  - trade protection for, 288–289
  - U.S.–China trade war and, 289
- AIG (American International Group), 674
- Airbus, 197, 259
- Aizeman, Joshua, 575n
- Alfaro, Laura, 769n
- Aliber, Robert Z., 409n
- Allocation puzzle, 771
- American International Group (AIG), 674
- American Sugar Alliance, 94
- Amiti, Mary, 254n
- Annual Report on Exchange Arrangements and Exchange Restrictions 2018*, 445, 545n
- Antidumping duties, 221–222
- Antidumping, protectionism, 221–222
- Anti-globalization movement, 336–337
- Antrás, Pol, 232n
- Apple, 232, 295, 370
- Appreciation of currencies, 384, 443, 444, 458, 462
  - depreciation vs., 555n
  - rate of, 396
  - real, 474
- Appropriability, 315, 316
- Arbitrage, 387
  - regulatory, 670

## B

- Arezki, Rabah, 740n
- Argentina
  - automobile industry in, 278
  - debt crisis of the 1980s and, 750, 760
  - default by, 744
  - inflation in, 591
  - Mercosur and, 305–306
  - output per capita of, 735t
  - reforms, capital inflows, and return of crisis in, 750–751
  - wage rate in, 134t
- ASEAN Free Trade Agreement (AFTA), 212–213
- Asia. *See also East Asia; specific countries*
  - financial crises in, 749, 758–759
  - HPAEs and, 758
  - output per capita of countries in, 735t, 736
  - trade and economic growth in, 322–325, 323f, 324f
- Asian Financial Crisis of 1997–1998, 445
- Aspe Armella, Pedro, 753n
- Asplund, Marcus, 475
- Asset market equilibrium, in short run, 502–505
  - AA* schedule derivation and, 504, 504f
  - factors shifting the *AA* schedule and, 504–505
  - output and exchange rate and, 502–504, 503f
- Asset-price arbitrage, international, efficiency of, 682–683, 683f
- Asset restrictions, for banks, 664–665
- Asset returns, 391–392
  - exchange rates and, 393–395
  - expected, exchange rate and, 398–401, 399t, 400f
  - rate of, 391–392
  - risk and liquidity and, in foreign exchange market, 396–397
- Assets, international. *See* International assets
- Assignats*, 439
- Association of Southeast Asian Nations-4 (ASEAN-4), 212–213
- Atkeson, Andrew, 465n
- Atoyan, Ruben, 716n
- Auerbach, Alan, 528
- Australia, carry trade and, 405–407, 406f
- Automatic stabilizers
  - exchange rates as, 621–623, 622f
  - floating exchange rates as, 642
- Automobile industry
  - Argentinian, 278
  - Japanese, VER on auto exports to United States and, 264
  - South Korean, 315
  - U.S. import quota on automobiles and, 284
- Autor, David H., 346
- Average cost
  - marginal cost vs., 199–200, 200f
  - of production, 183
- Baba, Naohiko, 409n
- Bahaj, Saleem, 677n
- Bahrain, as Eurocurrency center, 661
- Baillie, Richard T., 567n
- Bailouts, of banks, 665–666
- Balance of payments, 32–33, 363–376
  - capital account and, 367–368
  - current account and, 366–367, 367t
  - financial account and, 368
  - fundamental balance of payments identity and, 365–366
  - money supply and, 548–549
  - official reserve transactions and, 371–372
  - paired transaction examples and, 364–365
  - speculative capital flows and crises and, 610–611
  - statistical discrepancy and, 368–369
- Balance of payments accounting, 351–352
- Balance of payments crises, 557–560, 558f
  - capital flight and, 559
- Balance of payments equilibrium, 600
- Balance sheet, of central bank, money supply and, 545–547
- Balassa, Bela, 71n, 72, 470
- Balassa-Samuelson theory, 470–471, 482
- Baldwin, Richard, 713
- Baldwin, Robert E., 287
- Banco Commercial Português, assets of, 717t
- Banco Santander, assets of, 717t
- Bangalore, India, 186
- Bangladesh
  - comparative advantage in clothing, 73, 73t
  - export pattern of, 139–140, 139f
  - exports of, 336
  - GDP per capita in, 314t
  - poverty of, 313
  - technological efficiency of, 137t
  - working conditions in, 341
- Bank capital, 663
- Bank examination, 665
- Bank failures, 661–663
- Bank finance, by developing countries, 746
- Banking
  - financial crises and, 760
  - strengthening, to avoid financial crises, 764
- Banking crises
  - government safeguards against, 664–667, 666f
  - U. S. housing bust and, 34
- Banking, international, 658–661
  - international capital market structure and, 658–659
  - offshore banking and offshore currency trading and, 659–661
  - shadow banking system and, 661
- Banking regulation
  - of East Asian banking, weakness of, 757
  - international. *See* Regulating international banking
- Bank of America, 674, 749

- Bank of Ireland, assets of, 717t  
 Banks  
     bailouts of, 665–666  
     commercial. *See* Commercial banks  
     investment, in international capital market, 659  
     restructuring of, 665–666  
     too big to fail, 667–669  
 Barclays Capital, 659  
 Baring Crisis, 744  
 Basel Committee, 671–672  
 Basel I, 671  
 Basel II, 671  
 Basel III, 677–678  
*BEA.* *See* Bureau of Economic Analysis  
 Bean, Charles R., 706n  
 Beggar-thy-neighbor policies, 334, 606  
 Bektaert, Geert J., 685n  
 Belgium, U. S. trade with, 39  
 Bergsten, C. Fred, 637n  
 Bernanke, Ben S., 511n, 606n, 663n, 673n  
 Bernard, Andrew B., 217n, 219n, 230n  
 Bertaut, Carol, 673n, 680n  
 Beyer, Robert C. M., 715n  
 Bhagwati, Jagdish N., 160, 471, 763  
 Biased expansion of production possibilities, 122  
 Biased growth, 157, 158f, 159f  
 Biden, Joseph R., Jr., 370  
 Bimetallic standard, 571–572  
 Binding, 293  
 Birka Line ferries, 475–476  
 Blanchard, Olivier Jean, 566n, 714n  
 Blinder, Alan, 46  
 Bloomfield, Arthur I., 602n  
 BNP Paribas, 673  
     assets of, 717t  
 Boeing, 197, 259  
 Bogen, Jeffrey R., 363n  
 Bolt, Usain, 59  
 Bond finance, by developing countries, 746  
 Bookkeeping, double-entry, examples of, 364–365  
 Borjas, George, 103n  
 Borrowing, by developing countries, 743–746, 743t  
 Boryusyak, Kirill, 254n  
 Bowen, Harry P., 136  
 Brander, James, 331  
 Brander-Spender analysis, 331–334, 331t, 332t  
 Brazil  
     debt crisis of the 1980s and, 750  
     financial crisis in, 761  
     import-substituting industrialization in, 320t  
     inflation in, 591  
     Mercosur and, 305–306  
     output per capita of, 735t  
     reforms, capital inflows, and return of crisis in, 751–752  
     rise in value of *real* of, 33  
     wage rate in, 134t  
 Bressler, Beau, 680n  
 Bretton Woods agreement, 607  
     case for abandoning, 619–623  
     end of, 616–617  
     external balance and, 615–619  
     IMF and, 607–611  
 Brexit, 32, 304, 695–698  
 BRICS countries. *See also* Brazil; China; India; Russia; South Africa  
     FDI flows to, 225  
 Britain. *See also* United Kingdom  
     current account of, 600  
     exit from European Union, 32, 304, 695–698  
     inflation rate in, 616t  
     return to gold standard, 605  
     Ricardian model and, 72, 72f  
 British Virgin Islands, 225  
 Broda, Christian, 211  
 Brownfield FDI, 222  
 Brunnermeier, Markus K., 407n, 672n, 678n  
 Buchanan, Patrick, 51  
 Budget constraint, 91, 92f  
     intertemporal, 593–597  
 Budget deficits, 361–362  
 Buitron, Carolina Osorio, 522n  
 Bureau of Economic Analysis (BEA), 363n  
     international investment position and, 372–373  
 Burnside, Craig, 407n  
 Burstein, Ariel, 465n  
 Bush, George W., 501, 507n  
 Button industry, external economies of scale in, 184–185, 184f, 185f, 188
- C**
- Cagan, Phillip, 440n  
 Call options, 390  
 Calvo, Guillermo A., 722n, 763n  
 Cambodia, export pattern of, 139–140, 139f  
 Canada  
     economic integration with the U.S., 214  
     imported parts from, 230  
     NAFTA and. *See* North American Free Trade Agreement  
     output per capita of, 735t  
     as supply location for United States, 230  
     U.S. trade with, 40, 40f, 41, 41t, 42f, 113  
     USMCA and. *See* United States-Mexico-Canada Agreement  
 CAP (Common Agricultural Policy), 288, 695n  
 Capital abundance, 124  
 Capital account, 363–364  
     balance of payments and, 367–368  
 Capital controls, 699  
 Capital depreciation, GNP and, 354  
 Capital flight, 559  
 Capital inflows, increasing, to avoid financial crises, 764  
 Capital-intensive production, 119  
 Capital markets. *See also* International capital market  
     imperfect, 315, 316  
 Capital mobility, trilemma of exchange rate regime and, 762–763  
 Capital requirements, for banks, 664–665  
 Capital-skill complementarity, declining labor share of income and, 132–133, 132f  
 Carbon tariffs, 345–346  
 Carry trade, 405–407, 406f  
 Carter, Jimmy, 625  
 Cassel, Gustav, 454  
 Cayman Islands, 225n  
 CDSs (credit default swaps), 674  
 Central banks. *See also* Money supply  
     balance sheet of, money supply and, 545–547  
     capital positions of, 663n  
     fixing of exchange rate by, 549–552  
     in foreign exchange market, 386  
     in international capital market, 659  
     as lender of the last resort, 665  
     reserve transactions and, 371–372  
     swap line of, 675–677  
     of United States, 371, 675  
 Cerutti, Eugenio M., 683n  
 Chamom, Marcos, 763n  
 Chile  
     financial crisis in, 760  
     import-substituting industrialization in, 320t  
     output per capita of, 735t  
     reforms, capital inflows, and return of crisis in, 752–753  
 China  
     button industry in, 184–185, 184f, 185f, 188  
     clothing exports of, 73, 73f  
     currency manipulation by, 637, 642, 756  
     dumping by, 222  
     economic growth of, 322–323, 323f, 324f, 740, 754  
     export pattern of, 140, 140f  
     external economy in, 180  
     GDP per capita in, 314t  
     German exports to, 716  
     import competition from, U. S. employment and, 96–98, 97f  
     imported parts from, 230  
     income distribution in, 128  
     iPhone assembly in, 232, 233  
     migrant mobility, 101–102  
     output per capita of, 735t  
     pollution in, 343–344, 344f  
     Portuguese competition with, 716  
     productivity and wages in, 64  
     rapid growth of exports from, 346–347  
     as supply location for United States, 230  
     trade surplus of, 32  
     U.S. consumer gains from imports from, 155  
     U.S. tariff on solar panel exports from, 166–167  
     U.S. tariffs on imports from, 253  
     U.S. trade war with, 97n, 98–99, 289  
     wage and social benefits, migrant mobility in, 101–102  
 Chinn, Menzie D., 407n, 576n, 686n  
 Chitu, Livia, 388n, 576n  
 Choudhri, Ehsan U., 606n  
 Christiano, Lawrence, 528  
 Churchill, Winston, 605  
 CIP. *See* Covered interest parity  
 Citicorp, 749  
 Citigroup, 659  
 Claessens, Stijn, 724n  
 Clean Air Act, WTO and, 340  
 Clinton, Kevin, 409n  
 Clinton, Bill, 339  
 Clothing industry  
     in Bangladesh, 341  
     MFA and, 294–295  
     trade protection for, 289, 289t

- Coca-Cola, 658  
 Collective action, trade policy and, 286–288  
 Colombia, output per capita of, 735t  
 Commercial banks  
     in foreign exchange market, 385–386  
     in international capital market, 658  
 Commodity prices, run-up of, 739–740  
 Common Agricultural Policy (CAP), 288, 695n  
 Common Market, 211, 304  
 Comparative advantage, 51–52, 52t  
     intertemporal, 169–170  
     with many goods, 66–70  
     misconceptions about, 63–66  
     productivity and competitiveness and, 63–65  
     relative wages and, 66–70, 67t, 69f  
     specialization and, 68  
     Usain Bolt example of, 59  
 Concordat, 671  
 Confidence problem, 615  
 Connolly, Tony, 697n  
 Consumer surplus, 248–249, 249f  
 Consumption demand, determinants of, 491–492  
 Consumption distortion loss  
     in national income accounting, 355  
     patterns of, purchasing power parity and, 466  
     tariffs and, 252  
 Contagion, financial crises and, 761  
 Continental Illinois National Bank, 668  
 Conventional pegs, 545n  
 Convergence, in per capita incomes, 734–736, 735t  
 Convertibility Law (Argentina), 750–751  
 Convertible currencies, 609  
 Cooper, Ian, 680n  
 Cooper, Richard N., 571n  
*Core Principles for Effective Banking Supervision* (Basel Committee), 672  
 Corporations  
     in foreign exchange market, 386  
     in international capital market, 658–659  
     multinational. *See* Multinational corporations  
 Corruption  
     Chilean, 752  
     in developing countries, 738, 741, 741f  
     Mexican, 753  
 Costa Rica, output per capita of, 735t  
 Covered interest parity (CIP)  
     breakdown of, 676  
     derivations from, 682–683  
     forward exchange rates and, 408–411, 410f  
 COVID-19 pandemic, 634, 635f, 636  
     in Brazil, 752  
     developing nations and, 163  
     economic growth and, 350  
     EU response to, 725  
     foreign direct investment, 226–228  
     in Mexico, 753  
     policy tools deployed in response to, 675  
     private capital outflows from poorer countries and, 768  
 Cowan, Kevin, 752n  
 Cox, Lydia, 99  
 Crawling pegs, 545n  
 Credibility theory of the EMS, 699–701, 700f  
 Credit default swaps (CDSs), 674  
 Credit lines, enhancing, to avoid financial crises, 764  
 Credits, 363  
 Croushore, Dean, 511n  
 Crowe, Christopher, 704n  
 Crucini, Mario J., 462n  
 Cuaresma, Jesús, 714n  
 Cultural issues, trade policy and, 339–340  
 Cumby, Robert E., 685n  
 Curcuru, Stephanie, 680n  
 Currencies  
     appreciation of. *See* Appreciation of currencies  
     Argentinian Convertibility Law and, 750–751  
     Chinese currency manipulation and, 637, 642, 756  
     convertible, 609–610  
     depreciation of. *See* Depreciation of currencies  
     devaluation of, 555  
     exchange rates and. *See* Exchange rates; Foreign exchange market  
     foreign, borrowing in, 747–749  
     foreign, demand for, 390  
     invoice, 522  
     manipulation of, 636–637, 642, 756  
     reserve. *See* Reserve currencies  
     revaluation of, 555  
     vehicle, 388, 522  
 Currency boards, 751  
 Currency crises, self-fulfilling, 559  
 Currency reform, 434  
 Currency trading, offshore, 660  
 Current account balance (current account), 357–359, 359f  
     balance of payments and, 366–367, 367t  
     deficits in, 358, 593, 719, 746–747  
     determinants of, 492, 494t  
     disposable income change effects on, 494, 494t  
     external balance and, 592–598, 599, 600–602, 603–604  
     gradual trade flow adjustment and, 518–523  
     macroeconomic policy and, 516–518, 517f  
     real exchange rate effects on, 493–494  
     saving and, 360  
     speculative capital flows and crises and, 610–611  
     surpluses in, 593, 597, 600, 719  
 Customs and Tariffs Acts, 221  
 Customs unions, 301, 302  
     European Union as, 304  
     free trade areas vs., 303  
 Czech Republic, wage rate in, 134t
- D**
- Dairy industry, trade protection and, 286  
 Davis, Donald, 137  
 DD schedule, 497–502  
     AA schedule combined with, 505–507, 506f  
     derivation of, 498–499, 499f  
     factors shifting, 499–502, 500f  
     LL schedule and, 707–709  
 Deardorff, Alan, 125n  
 Debits, 363  
 Debt deflation, 638  
 Debt instruments, 658  
 De Carvalho Filho, Ilrineu, 566n  
 Default, 717  
     by developing countries, 744–746  
 Deficits  
     budget, 361–362  
     in current account, 358, 593, 719  
     in current account, financial inflows to finance, 746–747  
 Deflation, 437  
     dangers of, 638–640  
 De Grauwe, Paul, 464n  
 De Gregorio, José, 752n  
 Della Corte, Pasquale, 686n  
 Delors, Jacques, 701  
 Demand  
     aggregate. *See* Aggregate demand  
     consumption, determinants of, 491–492  
     derived, 68  
     for foreign currency assets, 390  
     for international reserves, 572–576, 574f, 576f  
     for labor, in specific factors model, 83–85, 84f  
     long-run real exchange rate and, 474–477, 477f  
     for money. *See* Money demand  
     relative prices and, in standard trade model, 151–154, 153f, 154f  
 Demand curve, relative, 57, 57f  
 DeMarco, Laurie Pounder, 673n  
 Deng Xiaoping, 323  
 Denmark  
     corruption in, 741n  
     exchange rate of, 544  
     ratification of Maastricht Treaty by, 702n  
     trade of, 714  
 Deposit insurance, 664, 667  
     absence in international banking, 670  
 Depreciation of currencies, 384, 458, 462  
     appreciation vs., 555n  
     rate of, 395  
     real, 473–474  
 Derived demand, 68  
 Desai, Mihir, 234n  
 Deutsche Bank, 659  
     assets of, 717t  
 Devaluation, 555  
     revaluation vs., 555n  
 Developed nations  
     growth of newly industrializing economies and, 161–162, 162f  
     trade patterns with developing nations, 138–140, 139f, 140f  
     trade with developing nations, income inequality and, 126–128  
 Developing countries, 732–775. *See also specific countries*  
     agricultural subsidies and, 300  
     alternative forms of financial inflow to, 746–747  
     Asian financial crisis and, 758–759  
     Asian weaknesses and, 756–758  
     borrowing in foreign currencies and, 747–749  
     corruption in, 738, 741, 741f  
     debt crisis of 1980s and, 749–750  
     default by, 744–746  
     East Asian economic miracle and, 754  
     exchange rates of, 544–545  
     exports of, 45–46, 45t  
     exposure to terms of trade shocks and COVID-19 pandemic and, 163  
     FDI outflows from, 227  
     financial inflows to, 743–744, 743t, 746–747, 750–753  
     gap between rich and poor and, 733–734, 734t

- global capital flows and global income distribution and, 768–773  
 global financial cycles and, 765–766  
 importance for global growth, 736, 737f  
 international reserves accumulated by, 755–756  
 lessons of crises in, 759–761  
 narrowing of world income gap and, 734–736, 735t  
 reforming financial “architecture” and, 761–768  
 reforms and return of crisis in, 750–753  
 structural features of, 737–742, 741f  
 trade patterns with developed nations, 138–140, 139f, 140f  
 trade policy in, 313–326  
 trade with developed nations, income inequality and, 126–128
- Dexia, assets of, 717t  
 Dhingra, Swati, 698n  
 Diamond, Jared, 769  
 Diaz-Alejandro, Carlos P., 752n  
 Differentiated products, 200  
 Diminishing returns, 80–81, 81f  
 DiPace, F., 163n  
 Dirty float, 544  
 Disposable income  
   changes in, current account effects of, 494, 494t  
   national, 354n  
 Dodd-Frank Act, 678, 679  
 Doha Round, 299–300, 306  
 Dollar (U.S.)  
   appreciation of, 625–626  
   strong, Plaza Accord and, 627  
 Dollarization, 749n  
 Domestic absorption, 358n  
 Domestic market failures, 282  
   as argument against free trade, 281–284, 282f  
 Dominguez, Kathryn M., 567n  
 Dooley, Michael, 641n  
 Doom loop, 722–723  
 Dorn, David, 346  
 Dornbusch, Rüdiger, 465n, 523n, 751n  
 Dot-com crash, 630  
 Double-entry bookkeeping, examples of, 364–365  
 Downs, Anthony, 285n  
 Draghi, Mario, 725  
 Drug cartels, in Mexico, 753  
 Du, Wenxin, 410, 683n  
 Dumping, 220–222  
 Dynamic increasing returns, 189–190, 189f
- E**
- East Asia. *See also specific countries*  
 economic miracle of, 754  
 financial crisis in, 758–759  
 weaknesses of, 756–758  
 ECB. *See* European Central Bank  
 Economic and monetary union (EMU), 701–702  
 Economic geography, 192  
 Economic growth, 157–163  
   Asian, trade and, 322–325, 323f, 324f  
   biased, 157, 158f, 159  
   COVID-19 pandemic and, 350  
   export-biased, 159
- global, importance of developing countries for, 736, 737f  
 globalization and, 342–344, 343f, 344f  
 immiserizing, 160–161  
 import-biased, 159  
 international effects of, 159–163  
 of newly industrializing nations, effect on advanced nations, 161–162, 162f  
 production possibility frontier and, 157, 158f, 159  
 world relative supply and the terms of trade and, 159, 160f
- Economic integration  
 market size and, 216–217, 217f  
 performance differences across producers and, 214–216, 215f  
 trade costs and export decisions and, 217–219, 220f
- Economic isolation, 62
- Economic stability loss, 707
- Economies of scale  
 external. *See* External economies of scale  
 free trade and, 278  
 internal. *See* Internal economies of scale  
 international trade and, 178–179, 178f  
 market structure and, 179–180
- ECU (European Currency Unit), 695n
- Ederington, Josh, 345n
- Education, in Asian countries, 758
- Edwards, Lawrence, 127n
- EEC (European Economic Community), 211, 304
- Effective lower bound (ELB), 524
- Effective rate of protection, 247
- Efficiency case for free trade, 277–278, 277f, 278t
- Efficiency loss, tariffs and, 251–252, 252f
- EFSF (European Financial Stability Facility), 721
- Égert, Balázs, 714n
- EIB (European Investment Bank), 693t, 725
- Eichenbaum, Martin, 528
- Eichengreen, Barry, 388n, 576n, 606n, 636n, 643n, 714, 748
- ELB (effective lower bound), 524
- Elliott, Kimberly Ann, 339
- Emerging markets  
   financial systems of, 671  
   global financial cycles and, 765–766
- Employment. *See also* Labor; Relative wages; Wages  
   full, internal balance and, 591
- EMS. *See* European Monetary System
- EMU. *See* Economic and monetary union; European Monetary Union
- Engel, Charles, 469n, 685n, 714
- Engerman, Stanley L., 772n
- Environment  
   carbon tariffs and, 345–346  
   globalization and, 342–346  
   trade policy and, 339
- Environmental Kuznets curve, 342–343, 343f
- Equalization of factor prices, 133–134, 134t  
   in money market, 424–425, 424f
- Equilibrium  
   in asset market. *See* Asset market equilibrium, in short run  
   balance of payments, 600  
   changes in exchange rate and, expected returns and, 398–401, 399t, 400f  
   changes in expectations and, exchange rates and, 404–405
- changes in interest rates and, exchange rates and, 403–404, 403f, 404f  
 equilibrium exchange rate and, 401–402, 401f  
   in foreign exchange market, 397–407  
 general equilibrium analysis and, 56  
 interest parity condition and, 397–398  
 interest rates and expectations and, 402–403  
 long-run. *See* Long-run equilibrium market. *See also* Asset market equilibrium, in short run; Market equilibrium  
 money market, under fixed exchange rates, 550–551
- Equilibrium exchange rates, 401–402, 401f
- Equilibrium interest rate, interaction of money supply and demand and, 423–427
- Equity instruments, 658
- ERM. *See* Exchange Rate Mechanism
- Erste Group Bank, assets of, 717t
- Erten, Bilge, 739, 740n
- ESCB (European System of Central Banks), 693t, 704
- ESM (European Stability Mechanism), 693t, 721
- EU. *See* European Union
- Euro, 33, 545n  
   Brexit and, 695–698  
   COVID-19 pandemic and, 725  
   EMS and, 698–699  
   EMU and, 701–702, 726  
   evolution of, 694–702  
   Fiscal Stability Treaty and, 724  
   German monetary dominance and, 699–701, 700f  
   intra-European trade extent and, 713–716  
   market integration initiatives and, 701  
   motives for European monetary cooperation and, 694–695
- Eurobanks, 660
- Euro crisis, 716–726  
   broadening of, 723  
   ECB outright monetary transactions and, 725  
   origins of, 716–721, 717t, 718f–720f, 720t  
   policy response to, 723–724, 723f
- Eurocurrencies, 660
- Eurodollars, 660
- Europe. *See also specific countries*  
   Asian financial crisis and, 759  
   Common Agricultural Policy in, 288  
   inflation in, 624t  
   intra-industry trade within, 712  
   as optimum currency area, 713–716, 715f, 715t  
   per capita real GDP in, 624t  
   unemployment in, 624t
- European Central Bank (ECB), 673, 692, 693t  
   establishment of, 701  
   functioning of, 704  
   Outright Monetary Transactions program and, 725  
   swap lines and, 676, 677
- European Coal and Steel Community, 695
- European Currency Unit (ECU), 695n
- European Economic Community (EEC), 211, 304
- European Financial Stability Facility (EFSF), 721
- European Investment Bank (EIB), 693t, 725

European Monetary System (EMS), 693t, 698–699  
credibility theory of, 699–701, 700f

European Monetary Union (EMU), 692, 693t  
future of, 726

European Recovery Plan (ERP), 62

European Stability Mechanism (ESM), 693t, 721

European System of Central Banks (ESCB), 693t, 704

European Union (EU), 211, 693t  
British exit from, 32, 304, 695–698  
as customs union, 302  
labor force mobility in, 714–716, 715f, 715t  
newly industrializing economies, 161–162  
oilseeds, 260–264  
origins of, 694–695  
response to COVID-19 pandemic, 725  
tariffs and retaliation, 257  
trade dispute regarding airlines and, 259

Eurosystem, structure of, 704

Excess returns, 331

Exchange rate disconnect puzzle, 686

Exchange Rate Mechanism (ERM), 226, 544, 693t, 698n  
revised, 704

Exchange rate overshooting, 443–444

Exchange rate pass-through, 519–520, 522–523

Exchange rate regime, trilemma of, 762–763

Exchange rates, 381–385. *See also* Foreign exchange market  
asset market equilibrium and, 502–504, 503f  
asset returns and, 393–395  
determination of, 33  
in developing countries, 738  
domestic and foreign prices and, 382, 384  
equilibrium, 401–402, 401f  
European money supply and dollar/euro exchange rate and, 430–433, 431f, 432f  
expectations and interest rates and, 402–403  
expected returns and, 398–401, 399t, 400f, 402–403, 404–405  
export and import price effects of, 520–523, 521f  
financial crises and, 760  
forward, covered interest parity and, 388–389, 389f, 408–411, 410f  
inflation and current account and, 519–520  
interest rates and, 402–404, 403f, 404f  
long-run, general model of, 472–480  
monetary approach to, 456–462  
money and interest rate linked to, 427–430, 428f, 429f  
money as medium of, 418  
money supply and, in long run, 436–437  
money supply and, in short run, 427–433  
nominal, 472  
optimum currency areas and. *See* Optimum currency areas  
output market equilibrium in short run and, 497–498, 498f  
permanent money supply changes and, 442–444, 443f, 444f  
political economy of, 603–604  
real, 472–474  
relative prices and, 384–385, 385t  
spot, 388–389, 389f  
U.S. money supply and dollar/euro exchange rate and, 430

Exchange rate unions, 544

Exchange Stabilization Fund, 371

Ex factor price, 220n

Expected returns  
exchange rates and, 398–401, 399t, 400f, 402–403, 404–405  
money demand and, 420–421

Expenditure-changing policies, 613–614

Expenditure-switching policies, 613–614

Exploitation, 65–66

Export-biased growth, 159

Export credit subsidies, 267

Export-Import Bank, 267

Export-led strategy, 318–319

Exports. *See also* Trade  
of developing countries, 738  
as share of GDP, 27, 28, 28f, 29f

Export subsidies, 258, 258f  
effects of, 165, 166f, 267t  
in standard trade model, 163–164, 165, 166–167, 166f  
terms of trade and, 165–167, 166f

External balance  
under Bretton Woods system, 615–619  
definition of, 590  
exchange rates and, 623, 642  
under the gold standard, 599, 600–602, 603–604  
as macroeconomic policy goal, 592–598  
maintaining, 613  
monetary trilemma and, 598–599, 599f  
policy options for reaching, 611–615, 611f

External economies of scale, 179–190  
dynamic increasing returns and, 189–190, 189f  
international trade and, 184–190  
knowledge spillovers and, 182–183  
labor market pooling and, 181–182  
market equilibrium and, 183, 183f  
output and prices and, 184–185, 184f, 185f  
specialized suppliers and, 180–181  
theory of, 180  
trade and welfare with, 187–189, 188f  
trade patterns and, 185–187, 187f

Externalities, trade policy and, 328

External prices, 164

**F**

Factor abundance, 113

Factor content of trade, 135–138  
global data and, 136  
improved empirical fit for, 137–138, 138t  
missing trade and, 136–137, 137t  
U.S. data tests and, 135–136, 135t

Factor intensity, 113

Factor prices  
equalization of, 133–134, 134t  
in Heckscher-Ohlin model, 119–122, 120f, 121f

Factor-proportions theory. *See* Heckscher-Ohlin model; Heckscher-Ohlin model in two-factor economy

Factors  
abundant, 125  
scarce, 125

Fair price rule, 221

Fajgelbaum, Pablo D., 254n, 255n

Fallick, Bruce, 79n

Fallows, James, 334

Fannie Mae, 674

Farhi, Emmanuel, 712n

FDI. *See* Foreign direct investment

Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC), 664, 668

Federal Reserve System, 371  
swap lines and, 675

Feenstra, Robert, 131n

Feldstein, Martin, 680–682, 755

Financial account balance, 363  
balance of payments and, 368

Financial centers, 186

Financial crises  
Asian, of 1997–1998, 758–759  
coping with, 764, 767–768  
debt crisis of the 1980s, 749–750  
developing-country, lessons of, 759–761  
global, of 2007–2009. *See* Global financial crisis of 2007–2009  
Great Depression. *See* Great Depression  
Latin American, return of, 750–753  
reducing risk of, 763–764

Financial cycles, global, emerging markets and, 765–766

Financial derivatives, 368, 390

Financial instability, government safeguards against, 664–667, 666f

Financial institutions, in developing countries, 738

Financial Stability Board (FSB), 678

Financial Stability Forum, 678

Financial Stability Oversight Council (FSOC), 679

Financial trilemma, 712  
international banking and, 669–671

Fiscal federalism, 712, 716  
currency areas and, 711

Fiscal policy  
adjustment to, exchange rate changes and, 556–557  
definition of, 507  
under fixed exchange rates, 554–555, 555f  
to maintain full employment, 509–510, 510f, 511f  
permanent shifts in, 515–516, 515f  
temporary changes in, 507, 508–509, 509f

Fiscal Stability Treaty, 724

Fischer, Stanley, 523n, 768n

Fisher, Irving, 460n, 638

Fisher effect, 459–462, 461f, 591n, 638

Fixed exchange rates  
adjustment to fiscal policy and, 556–557  
benefits of, economic integration and, 705–707, 707f  
changes in, 555–557, 556f  
costs of, economic integration and, 707–709, 710f  
diagrammatic analysis of, 551–552, 552f  
fiscal policy under, 554–555, 555f  
fixing of, by central banks, 549–552  
foreign exchange market equilibrium under, 550  
impossibility of, 643–644  
monetary policy under, 553–554, 553f  
money market equilibrium under, 550–551  
reasons to study, 544–545  
stabilization policies with, 552–557

Flaaen, Aaron, 99n

Floating exchange rates  
as automatic stabilizers, 621–623, 622f, 642  
case for, 619–623  
external balance and, 623  
first years of, 623–627, 624t, 626f

- inflation and, 624–627, 624t, 626f  
 macroeconomic independence under, 628  
 managed, 543  
 monetary policy autonomy and, 619–620  
 symmetry and, 621  
 transition to, 616–617
- Flood, Robert, 575n
- Foley, C. Fritz, 234n
- Folkerts-Landau, David, 641n
- Forbes, Kristin, 523
- Foreign direct investment (FDI), 222–235  
 brownfield, 222  
 COVID-19 pandemic, 226–228  
 to developing countries, 747  
 flow patterns of, 224–226, 225f  
 foreign sourcing decisions and, 230–231  
 greenfield, 222  
 horizontal, 223, 229–230  
 outsourcing and, 231–235  
 vertical, 223
- Foreign exchange instability, central bank swap lines and, 675–677
- Foreign exchange intervention  
 money supply and, 547–548  
 sterilized, 548, 549t
- Foreign exchange market, 385–407. *See also* Exchange rates  
 actors in, 385–386  
 assets and asset returns in, 391–392, 393–395  
 carry trade and, 405–407, 406f  
 characteristics of, 387–388  
 demand for foreign currency assets and, 390–397  
 efficiency of, 683–686  
 equilibrium in. *See* Foreign exchange market equilibrium  
 exchange rates and returns and, 398–401, 399t, 400f  
 futures in, 390  
 interest parity and, 397–398  
 interest rates and, 393, 394f  
 liquidity and, 392, 396–397  
 options in, 390  
 risk and, 392, 396–397  
 swaps in, 390
- Foreign exchange market equilibrium, 397–407  
 under fixed exchange rates, 550  
 under imperfect asset substitutability, 564–565
- Foreign exchange options, 390
- Foreign exchange swaps, 390
- Foreign indebtedness, 358–359
- Foreign outsourcing. *See* Outsourcing
- Foreign sourcing, 230–231
- Forward exchange rates, 388–389, 389f  
 covered interest parity and, 408–411, 410f
- Forward-falling supply curve, 183
- Forward premium (forward discount), 409
- France  
 bimetallic standard and, 571  
 export pattern of, 139–140, 139f  
 inflation in, 439, 616t  
 output per capita of, 735t
- Frankel, Jeffrey A., 470n, 567n, 576n
- Freddie Mac, 674
- Free trade agreements, 32  
 case for, 277–280  
 economies of scale and, 278
- efficiency and, 277–278, 277f, 278t, 279  
 innovation and, 278–279  
 national welfare arguments against, 280–284  
 political argument for, 279–280  
 productivity and, 279  
 rent seeking and, 279
- Free trade areas, 301, 302  
 customs unions vs., 303
- Mercosur as, 304–305
- NAFTA as, 302
- USMCA as, 302, 303
- Friberg, Richard, 475
- Frieden, Jeffry, 604
- Froot, Kenneth A., 566n
- FSB (Financial Stability Board), 678
- FSOC (Financial Stability Oversight Council), 679
- Full employment, internal balance and, 591
- Fundamental balance of payments identity, 365–366
- Futures, in foreign exchange market, 390
- G**
- Gagnon, Joseph E., 637n
- Gains from trade, 30–31  
 free trade and, 278–279  
 income distribution and, 90–93, 92f  
 international capital market and, 654–658  
 menu of international assets and, 657–658  
 portfolio diversification as motive for international asset trade and, 656–657  
 risk aversion and, 656  
 from specialization, 60–61  
 types of, 654–656, 655f  
 U.S., from Chinese imports, 155
- Garber, Peter, 641n
- GATS (General Agreement on Trade in Services), 295
- GATT. *See* General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade
- GDP. *See* Gross domestic product
- Gelpern, Anna, 768n
- Genberg, Hans, 464n
- General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT), 33, 292, 294, 608n  
 congressional vote on, 287  
 preferential trading agreements and, 301  
 WTO vs., 295–296
- General Agreement on Trade in Services (GATS), 295
- General equilibrium analysis, 56
- General Motors, 295
- Geography, interregional trade and, 190–192, 190t
- Georgiadis, Georgios, 522n
- Germany  
 export pattern of, 139–140, 139f  
 Fiscal Stability Treaty sponsored by, 724  
 GDP per capita in, 314t  
 inflation rate in, 616t  
 interest rates in, 33  
 monetary dominance of, 699–701  
 output per capita of, 735t  
 reunification of, 629, 699  
 shipping jobs overseas, 233–235  
 as supply location for United States, 230
- trade with China, 716  
 wage rate in, 134t
- GG schedule, 705–707, 707f  
*LL* schedule combined with (GG-*LL* model), 709–711, 710f, 711f
- Ghosh, Atish R., 763n
- Giavazzi, Francesco, 700n
- Glaeser, Edward L., 773n
- Glick, Reuven, 713n
- Global capital flows  
 global income distribution and, 768–773  
 paradoxical patterns of, 769–771  
 Global financial crisis of 2007–2009, 633–634, 672–675  
 central bank swap lines and, 675–677  
 international regulatory initiatives following, 677–679
- Global financial cycles, emerging markets and, 765–766
- Global imbalances, emergence of, 630–634, 631f, 632f
- Global income distribution, global capital flows and, 768–773
- Globalization  
 anti-globalization movement and, 336–337  
 backlash against, 32  
 environment and, 342–346  
 trade and, 42–44  
 trade policy and, 336–342
- Global value chains, exchange rate effects on export and import prices and, 520–522, 521f
- GNI (gross national income), 354
- GNP. *See* Gross national product
- Goldberg, Linda S., 677n
- Goldberg, Pinelopi K., 254n, 255n, 462n, 465n
- Gold exchange standard, 572
- Goldin, Claudia, 128n
- Goldman Sachs, 659, 674
- Goldsmith, James, 65
- Gold standard, 567, 569–572  
 benefits and drawbacks of, 570–571  
 bimetallic standard and, 571–572  
 external balance under, 599, 600–602, 603–604  
 gold exchange standard and, 572  
 Great Depression and, 606–607  
 internal balance under, 599, 602–603  
 international macroeconomic policy under, 599–604  
 mechanics of, 569  
 origins of, 600  
 “rules of the game” of, 601–602  
 symmetric monetary adjustment under, 570  
 U.S. return to, in 1919, 605
- Good Friday Agreement of April 1998, 697
- Goods prices, in Heckscher-Ohlin model, 119–122, 120f, 121f
- Goods trade, 366
- Google, 295, 370
- Googleplex, 46
- Gopinath, Gita, 462n, 465n, 469n
- Gorodnichenko, Yuriy, 528
- Gorton, Gary B., 672n
- Gourinchas, Pierre-Olivier, 462n, 469n, 745n, 771
- Government agencies, in international capital market, 659
- Government budget deficit, 361–362
- Government control, in developing countries, 737–738

Government purchases, in national income accounting, 356  
 Government saving, 361  
 Government spending multiplier, 527–528  
 Gräß, Johannes, 522n  
 Gravity model of world trade, 36, 37–39, 38f  
 Great Depression  
     bank failures and, 605  
     developing country defaults during, 744  
     gold standard and, 606–607  
 Greece  
     borrowing by, 717, 718f  
     debt restructuring by, 723  
     euro crisis and, 716, 720–721, 722  
     inflation in, 718  
     wage rate in, 134t  
 Greenfield FDI, 224  
 Greenhouse gas emissions, 345–346. *See also* Environment  
 Greenpeace, 345  
 Gross domestic product (GDP), 355  
     imports and exports as share of, 27, 28, 28f, 29f  
     international trade and, 37–39, 38f, 40–41, 40f, 41t  
     of Ireland, 369–370  
     national income accounting and, 355  
     per capita, differences in, 313, 314t  
     trade and, 37–39, 38f  
 Grossman, Gene M., 233n, 288n, 342–343  
 Gross national income (GNI), 354  
 Gross national product (GNP), 352  
     capital depreciation and, 354  
     international transfers and, 354  
     national income and, 353–354  
 Grove, Andy, 333

## H

Hadri, Kaddour, 740n  
 Hagan, Sean, 768n  
 Haiti, export pattern of, 139–140, 139f  
 Hall, Robert E., 439n, 527  
 Hanson, Gordon H., 105n, 131n, 346  
 Hausmann, Ricardo, 748  
 Healthcare protection, LCR, 266  
 Heckscher, Eli, 113  
 Heckscher-Ohlin model, 113–142, 149  
     in two-factor economy. *See* Heckscher-Ohlin model in two-factor economy  
 Heckscher-Ohlin model in two-factor economy, 114–123  
     empirical evidence on, 135–141  
     export patterns between developed and developing countries and, 138–140, 139f, 140f  
     factor content of trade and, 135–138, 135t, 137t, 138t  
     factor-price equalization and, 133–134, 134t  
     factor prices and goods prices in, 119–122, 120f, 121f  
     income distribution and trade and, 125–128  
     input mix and, 117, 118f, 119, 119f  
     international trade between two-factor economies and, 123–134  
     prices and production in, 114–117, 117f–119f  
     relative prices and trade patterns and, 124–125, 124f  
     resources and output in, 122–123, 123f  
     skill-based technological change and  
         income inequality and, 27, 128–133, 129f  
 Heckscher-Ohlin Theorem, 125

Hedgers, speculators vs., 397n  
 Hedging, 389  
 Heller, H. Robert, 573n  
 Helpman, Elhanan, 288n  
 Henderson, J. Vernon, 191n  
 Herbert, Bob, 65n  
 Hewlett-Packard, 186  
 High-income economies, 733–734, 732t  
 High-performing Asian economies (HPAEs), 758  
 High-technology industries, trade policy and, 328–329, 330f, 331  
 Hoang, Mai-Chi, 363n  
 Hodrick, Robert J., 685n  
 Hong Kong  
     Asian financial crisis and, 759  
     economic rise of, 754  
     education in, 758  
     as Eurocurrency center, 660  
     free trade and, 277  
     output per capita of, 735t  
     technological efficiency of, 137t  
 Horioka, Charles, 680–682  
 Horizontal FDI, 223, 229–230  
 Housing booms, Euro crisis and, 717, 718  
 Howard, John, 342  
 Howell, Kristy L., 363n  
 HPAEs (high-performing Asian economies), 758  
 Hsieh, Chang-Tai, 462n, 469n, 607n  
 Huang, Hanwei, 698n  
 Hume, David, 27, 28, 600–601  
 Humpage, Owen F., 567n  
 Hyperinflation, Zimbabwean, 439–441

**I**

IBM, 658  
*IIP* (net international investment position), 359, 359f  
 IMF. *See* International Monetary Fund  
 Immigration, U.S. economy and, 103–105, 103f, 104f  
 Immiserizing growth, 160–161  
 Imperfect asset substitutability, 563  
     foreign exchange market equilibrium under, 564–565  
     sterilized intervention effects with, 565–566, 565f  
 Imperfect capital markets, 315, 316  
 Imperfect competition, 197–205  
     monopolistic competition as. *See* Monopolistic competition  
     monopoly as, 198–200, 198f  
     trade policy and, 331–335  
 Import-biased growth, 159  
 Import quotas, 259–264  
     effects of, 267t  
 Import restrictions, U. S., on sugar, 94–95  
 Imports. *See also* Trade  
     as share of GDP, 27, 28, 28f, 29f  
 Import-substituting industrialization, 314–319  
     infant industry argument and, 314–316  
     problems of, 319–320, 320t  
 Income  
     disposable. *See* Disposable income  
     national, GNP and, 353–354  
     primary, 366  
 real, aggregate demand and, 495, 495f  
 secondary, 366–367

Income distribution  
     gains from trade and, 90–93, 92f  
     gap between rich and poor nations and, 733–734, 734t  
     labor share of, declining, 132–133, 132f  
     narrowing of gap in, 734–736, 735t  
     relative prices and, 87–89  
     skill-based technological change and, 128–133, 129f, 130f  
     trade and, 93–94, 125–128  
         trade policy and, 284–289

Income effect, 153  
 Increasing returns, dynamic, 189–190, 189f  
 India  
     economic growth in, 322–325, 323f, 324f  
     external economy in, 180  
     import-substituting industrialization in, 317  
     output per capita of, 735t  
     productivity and wages in, 64  
     shipbreaking in, 345  
 Indifference curves, 152–153, 153f  
 Indonesia  
     Asian financial crisis and, 758, 759  
     economic rise of, 754  
     output per capita of, 735t  
 Infant industry argument, 190, 314–316  
     market failure justifications and, 315–316  
     problems with, 315  
 Inflation  
     Argentinian, 750, 751  
     Brazilian, 751  
     costs of, 591  
     definition of, 437  
     in developing countries, 738  
     in euro zone, 717–718  
     exchange rate and current account and, 519–520  
     exchange rates and, 437–441  
     floating exchange rates and, 624–627, 624t, 626f  
     imported, 617–618, 618f  
     ongoing, interest parity and PPP and, 458–459  
     short-run price rigidity vs. long-run price flexibility and, 437–439, 438f  
     worldwide, end of Bretton Woods and, 616–617

Inflation bias, 511  
 Inflation targeting countries, 445–447  
 ING Group, assets of, 717t  
 Inputs, mix of, in Heckscher-Ohlin model, 117, 118f, 119, 119f  
 Instrumental variables (instruments), 772  
 Intel, 223, 333  
 Intellectual property, 370  
 Interbank lending, 674  
 Interbank trading, 386  
 Interest parity condition, 397–398  
     foreign exchange market efficiency and, 684–685  
     ongoing inflation and PPP and, 458–459  
     real, 481–482

Interest rates  
     aggregate money demand and, 421, 423f  
     effective lower bound and, 524  
     equilibrium, interaction of money supply and demand and, 423–427

- exchange rates and, 402–404, 403f, 404f  
 international differences in, real exchange rate and, 480–481  
 monetary approach to the exchange rate and, 457  
 money and exchange rate linked to, 427–430, 428f, 429f  
 money supply and, 425–426, 426f  
 output and, 426, 427f  
 zero lower bound on, 524
- I**  
**Internal balance**  
 definition of, 590  
 under the gold standard, 599, 602–603  
 as macroeconomic policy goal, 591  
 maintaining, 612  
 monetary trilemma and, 598–599, 599f  
 policy options for reaching, 611–615, 611f  
**Internal economies of scale**, 179, 196  
**Internalization motive**, 231  
**Internal prices**, 164  
**International assets**  
 menu of, 657–658  
 portfolio diversification as motive for, 656–657  
**International capital market**, 34–35  
 banking regulation and. *See Banking regulation*  
 definition of, 653  
 financial fragility and, 661–669  
 gains from trade and, 654–658  
 international banking and, 658–661  
 metrics for performance of, 679–686  
 offshore banking and offshore currency trading and, 659–661  
 shadow banking system and, 661  
 structure of, 658–659  
**International comparison program (ICP)**, 466–468  
**International economics**  
 importance of, 27–28  
 subfields of, 35  
 subject matter of, 29–35  
**International Ladies' Garment Worker's Union**, 289  
**International Monetary Fund (IMF)**, 545n, 607–611, 667, 746  
 convertibility and expansion of private financial flows and, 609–610  
 goals and structure of, 608–609  
**Sovereign Debt Restructuring Mechanism of**, 767  
 speculative capital flows and crises and, 610–611  
**International monetary systems**, 589  
 Bretton Woods system and, 607–611, 615–619  
 exchange rates and. *See Exchange rates; Foreign exchange market*  
 under the gold standard, 599–604  
 internal and external balance options and, 611–615, 611f  
 during 1918–1939, 604–607  
 policy goals in open economies and, 590–598  
 U.S. external balance problem and, 615–619  
**International money. *See Money***  
**International negotiation, trade policy and**, 290–299, 290f  
 administrative reforms and, 295–296  
 advantages of negotiation and, 290–292, 291t  
 benefits and costs of, 296–299  
 history of, 292–294  
 trade liberalization and, 294–295  
**International reserves**  
 accumulation by developing countries, 755–756  
 demand for, 572–576, 574f, 576f  
**International trade. *See Trade***  
**International Trade Commission**, 220, 221  
**International Trade Organization (ITO)**, 292, 608n  
**International transfers**, GNP and, 354  
**Interregional trade**, 190–192, 190t  
**Intertemporal budget constraint**, 593, 594–597  
**Intertemporal production possibility frontier**, 167–168, 168f  
**Intertemporal trade**, 167, 358  
 comparative advantage and, 169–170  
 developing-country borrowing and, 743  
 extent of, 680–682, 681f  
 gains from, 655  
 intertemporal production possibility frontier and, 167–168, 168f  
 real interest rate and, 168–169, 169f  
**Intra-European trade**, extent of, 713–714  
**Intra-industry trade**, 210–211, 211t, 712  
**Investment**  
 foreign. *See Foreign direct investment*  
 in national income accounting, 355–356  
 U.S. international investment position and, 372–373, 373t–375t, 376, 376f  
**Investment banks**, in international capital market, 659  
**Invoice currency**, U.S. dollar as, 522  
**iPhone manufacturing**, 232–233  
**Ireland**  
 GDP of, 369–370  
 housing boom in, 717, 718  
 inflation in, 717  
 U.S. trade with, 39  
**Isard, Peter**, 462n  
**Isovalue lines**, 151  
**Italy**  
 euro crisis and, 723  
 inflation in, 616t, 717  
 output per capita of, 735t  
**ITO (International Trade Organization)**, 292, 608n  
**Itskhoki, Oleg**, 686n  
**Ivashina, Victoria**, 409n
- J**  
**Janssens, Marc**, 464n  
**Japan**  
 agricultural trade protection in, 288–289  
 Asian financial crisis and, 759  
 carry trade and, 405–407, 406f  
 economic crisis in, 629  
 GDP per capita in, 314t  
 inflation in, 624t  
 interest rates in, 524, 526  
 output per capita of, 735t  
 per capita real GDP in, 624t  
 technological efficiency of, 137t  
 trade policy and, 334–335  
 unemployment in, 624t  
**VER on auto exports to United States and**, 264  
 wage rate in, 134t  
**Jaravel, Xavier**, 155n, 254n  
**J-curve**, 518–519, 519f  
**Jeanne, Olivier**, 771  
**Jensen, J. Bradford**, 217n, 219n, 230n  
**Johnson, Robert C.**, 233n  
**Johnson, Simon**, 772–773  
**Jones, Ronald W.**, 78  
**J.P Morgan Chase**, 674
- K**  
**Kalemli-Ozcan, Sebnem**, 769n  
**Kambourov, Gueorgui**, 79n  
**Kamin, Steven**, 673n  
**Kaminsky, Graciela L.**, 663n  
**Katz, Lawrence F.**, 128n, 714n  
**Kenen, Peter B.**, 712n  
**Kennedy, Craig**, 677n  
**Kennedy, Patrick J.**, 254n, 255n  
**Kennedy, Paul**, 63n  
**Kennedy Round**, 293, 294  
**Kenya**, output per capita of, 735t  
**Keynes, John Maynard**, 43, 571, 597n, 602  
**Khalil, Makram**, 522n  
**Khandelwal, Amit K.**, 254n, 255n  
**Klenow, Peter J.**, 439n  
**Knetter, Michael M.**, 462n, 465n  
**Knowledge spillovers**, 180, 182–183  
**Koch, Cathérine**, 683n  
**Kochin, Levis A.**, 606n  
**Koech, Janet**, 441n  
**Korea**, trade surplus of, 32  
**Kravis, Irving B.**, 471  
**Krueger, Alan**, 342–343  
**Krueger, Anne O.**, 767n  
**Krugman, Paul R.**, 464n, 465n, 526n
- L**  
**Labor. *See also Employment; Relative wages; Wages***  
 allocation of, in specific factors model, 85  
 demand for, in specific factors model, 83–85, 84f  
 marginal product of, 80–81, 81f, 83  
**Labor abundance**, 124  
**Labor-intensive production**, 119  
**Labor market outcomes**, Germany, 233–235  
**Labor market pooling**, 180, 181–182  
**Labor mobility**, 99–105, 100f  
 causes and effects of, 100, 100f  
 in EU, 714–716, 715f, 715t  
 migrant mobility in China, 101–102, 102f  
**Labor productivity**  
 as mobile factor, 78  
 Ricardian model and. *See Comparative advantage; Ricardian model*  
**Labor standards**, trade negotiations and, 339  
**Laeven, Luc**, 666n  
**Landry, Anthony**, 462n  
**La Porta, Rafael**, 773n  
**Latin America. *See also specific countries***  
 Asian financial crisis and, 759  
 debt crisis of the 1980s and, 749–750  
 default in, 744  
 output per capita of countries in, 735t, 736  
 reforms, capital inflows, and return of crisis in, 750–753

- Law of one price, 453–454  
 purchasing power parity and, 454–455  
 sticky prices and, 475–476
- Lawrence, Robert Z., 93n, 127n
- Leamer, Edward E., 136
- Learning curve, 189–190, 189f
- Lee, Jaewoo, 575n
- Legal framework, East Asian, weakness of, 757
- Lehman Brothers, 674
- Leliaert, Hilda, 464n
- Lender of the last resort (LLR), 665, 712
- Leontief, Wassily, 135
- Leontief paradox, 135–136, 135t
- Less-developed nations. *See* Developing countries
- Levich, Richard M., 409n
- Levinson, Arik, 345n
- Lewis, Karen, 685n
- Lewis, Michael, 722n
- Li, Nicholas, 462n, 469n
- Lindert, Peter H., 744n
- Lipsey, Robert E., 471
- Liquidity, 392  
 money demand and, 421  
 return and risk and, in foreign exchange market, 396–397
- Liquidity trap, 524–526, 526f
- LLR (lender of the last resort), 665, 712
- LL schedule, 707–709, 709f  
*GG* schedule combined with, 709–711, 710f, 711f
- Loans, to developing countries, 743–746, 743t, 747
- Local content requirements, 265–266
- Location motive, 231
- London, England, as financial center, 186, 191–192, 660
- Long run, 427
- Long-run equilibrium, 433  
 nominal and real exchange rates in, 477–480, 479t
- Lopez-de-Silanes, Florencio, 773n
- Los Angeles, as film industry center, 191
- Loungani, Prakash, 740n
- Lower middle-income economies, 733, 735t
- Low-income economies, 733, 735t
- Lucas, Robert E., Jr., 769
- Lula da Silva, Ignacio, 751
- Lustig, Hanno, 685n
- Luxembourg, as Eurocurrency center, 660–661
- M**
- M1, 419
- M2, 419n
- M3, 419n
- Maastricht Treaty, 701–702, 716  
 convergence criteria of, 703–704
- MacDougall, G. D. A., 71n
- Macroeconomic environment, stability of, in Asian countries, 758
- Macroeconomic policy. *See also* Fiscal policy; Monetary policy  
 Bretton Woods system and, 607–611, 615–619  
 coordination problems with, 643  
 current account and, 516–518, 517f  
 exchange rates and. *See* Exchange rates  
 expenditure-changing, 613–614  
 expenditure-switching, 613–614
- goals of, in open economies, 590–598  
 under the gold standard, 599–604  
 internal and external balance options and, 611–615, 611f  
 during 1918–1939, 604–607  
 problems in formulating, 511–512  
 U.S. external balance problem and, 615–619
- Macroeconomics, 350–351
- Macroprudential perspective, 678–679, 763
- Madoff, Bernard, 595n
- Magee, Christopher S., 287
- Malaysia  
 Asian financial crisis and, 758, 759  
 economic rise of, 754  
 output per capita of, 735t  
 solar panel production in, 167
- Malin, Benjamin A., 439n
- Managed floating exchange rates, 543, 544  
 sterilized intervention and, 560–567
- Manovskii, Iourii, 79n
- Mantegna, Guido, 33
- Marginal cost, average cost vs., 199–200, 200f
- Marginal product of labor, 80–81, 81f, 83
- Marginal revenue  
 for monopolists, 198  
 price and, 198–199
- Marginal social benefit, 282
- Marion, Nancy, 575n
- Mark, Nelson C., 686n
- Market equilibrium. *See also* Asset market equilibrium, in short run; Output market equilibrium in short run  
 external economies and, 183, 183f  
 foreign exchange, under imperfect asset substitutability, 564–565  
 in monopolistic competition, 202–205, 203f
- Market failure, infant industry protection and, 315–316
- Market size  
 international trade and, 216–217, 217f  
 monopolistic competition and, 205–206, 206f
- Market structure, economies of scale and, 179–180
- Markup over marginal cost, 204
- Marshall, Alfred, 179–180, 182
- Marshall-Lerner condition, 493n
- Marshal Plan, 62
- Mayer, Thierry, 219n
- Mazarei, Adnan, 768n
- McConnell, Mitch, 99n
- Cormick, Frank, 409n
- McDonald's, 340  
 wage convergence of workers at, 102f, 103
- McGuire, Patrick, 677n
- McIndoe-Calder, Tara, 441n
- McKinnon, Ronald I., 641n
- Meade, Ellen E., 704n
- Median voter, 285–286, 285f
- Meese, Richard A., 685, 686n
- Mehl, Arnaud, 388n, 576n
- Meleshchuk, Sergii, 522n
- Melitz, Marc J., 214n
- Mercosur, as free trade area, 304–305
- Merrill Lynch, 674
- Mexico  
 debt crisis of the 1980s and, 749  
 financial crisis in, 760
- GDP per capita in, 314t  
 imported parts from, 230  
 import-substituting industrialization in, 320t  
 income distribution in, 128  
 labor abundance of, 124  
 NAFTA and. *See* North American Free Trade Agreement  
 output per capita of, 735t  
 U.S. trade with, 40, 40f
- USMCA and. *See* United States-Mexico-Canada Agreement  
 wages in, 134t
- Mexico City, pollution in, 345
- MFA (Multi-Fiber Arrangement), 265, 289, 294–295
- MFN (most favored nation) status, 301
- Microeconomics, 350
- Microsoft, 46, 370
- Migrant mobility, China, 101–102
- Minier, Jenny, 345n
- Miranda-Agrippino, Silvia, 765, 766
- Misalignments, 642
- Mishkin, Frederic S., 419n, 547n, 672n, 678n
- Miu, Jason, 677n
- Mobile factors, 78
- Mody, Ashoka, 726n
- Monetary approach to the exchange rate, 456–462  
 Fisher effect and, 459–462, 461f  
 fundamental equation of, 456–458  
 ongoing inflation, interest parity, and PPP and, 458–459
- Monetary efficiency gain, 705
- Monetary policy. *See also* Money supply  
 autonomy of, 640, 641f  
 definition of, 507  
 under fixed exchange rates, 553–554, 553f  
 floating exchange rates and, 619–620  
 to maintain full employment, 509–510, 510f, 511f  
 permanent shifts in, 512–515, 513f, 514f  
 symmetric monetary adjustment under gold standard and, 570  
 temporary changes in, 507, 508, 508f  
 unconventional, 526
- Monetary trilemma, 598–599, 599f
- Money, 351, 418–419  
 definition of, 419  
 interest rate and exchange rate linked to, 427–430, 428f, 429f  
 in long run, 433–434  
 long-run neutrality of, 434n  
 as medium of exchange, 418  
 as store of value, 419  
 as unit of account, 418–419
- Money demand  
 aggregate, 421–422, 423f  
 equilibrium in money market and, 424–425, 424f  
 expected return and, 420–421  
 by individuals, 420–421  
 interaction with money supply, 423–427  
 liquidity and, 421  
 output and the interest rate and, 426, 427f  
 risk and, 421
- Money market  
 equalization of factor prices in, 424–425, 424f  
 equilibrium in, under fixed exchange rates, 550–551

Money multiplier effect, 547  
 Money supply. *See also* Monetary policy  
 adjustment to permanent increase in, 513–515, 514f  
 balance of payments and, 548–549  
 central bank balance sheet and, 545–547  
 definition of, 419  
 determination of, 419–420  
 empirical evidence on, 435, 436f, 437f  
 European, dollar/euro exchange rate and, 430–433, 431f, 432f  
 exchange rate and, in long run, 433–437  
 exchange rate and, in short run, 427–433  
 foreign exchange intervention and, 547–548  
 hyperinflation and, 439–441  
 interaction with money demand, 423–427  
 interest rates and, 425–426, 426f  
 long-run effect of changes in, 434–435  
 monetary approach to the exchange rate and, 457  
 permanent changes in, exchange rate and, 442–444, 443f, 444f  
 permanent increase in, 512–513, 513f  
 U.S., dollar/euro exchange rate and, 430  
 Monopolistic competition, 200–205  
 assumptions of model of, 201–202  
 dumping and, 220–222  
 gains from an integrated market and, 207, 208f, 209–210, 209t  
 intra-industry trade and, 210–213, 211t  
 market equilibrium in, 202–205, 203f  
 market size and trade and, 205–206, 206f  
 trade costs and export decisions and, 217–219, 220f  
 Monopoly, 198–200, 198f  
 average and marginal costs and, 199–200  
 marginal revenue and price and, 198–199, 198  
 Moore's Law, 334  
 Moral hazard, 667–669  
 Morgan Stanley, 674  
 Morton, Peter J., 744n  
 Most favored nation (MFN) status, 301  
 Mukhin, Dmitry, 686n  
 Multi-Fiber Arrangement (MFA), 265, 289, 294–295  
 Multinational affiliates, 222  
 Multinational corporations, 222–226, 225f  
 consequences of, 235  
 profit shifting by, 369–370  
 Multinational parents, 222  
 Mundell, Robert A., 571n, 705n  
 Mussa, Michael, 469

## N

NAFTA. *See* North American Free Trade Agreement  
 Nagel, Stefan, 407n  
 National disposable income, 354n  
 National income, GNP and, 353–354  
 National income accounting, 351, 352–362  
 for an open economy, 356–362, 357t, 359f  
 capital depreciation and international transfers and, 354  
 consumption in, 355  
 current account and foreign indebtedness and, 357–359, 359f  
 GDP and, 355

government purchases in, 356  
 investment in, 355–356  
 national product and national income and, 353–354  
 private and government saving and, 361–362  
 saving and the current account and, 360  
 National income identity, for an open economy, 356–357  
 National procurement, 267  
 National saving, 360  
 National welfare arguments against free trade, 280–284  
 Net financial flows, 363  
 Net foreign investment, 360  
 Netherlands, U.S. trade with, 39  
 Net international investment position (*IIP*), 359, 359f  
 Net national product (NNP), 354  
 Neutrality of money, long-run, 434n  
 Newly industrializing economies (NIEs), 161–162  
 growth of, effect on advanced nations, 161–162, 162f  
 labor share of income and, 132–133, 132f  
 New York City, as financial center, 186, 191, 192  
 New Zealand  
 Asian financial crisis and, 759  
 budget constraint of, 594–597  
 Next Generation EU, 725  
 NIEs. *See* Newly industrializing economies  
 Nigeria, output per capita of, 735t  
 Nike, 658  
 NNP (net national product), 354  
 Noko, Joseph, 441n  
 Nominal effective exchange rate indexes, 625, 626f  
 Nominal exchange rate, 472  
 in long-run equilibrium, 477–480, 479t  
 Nominal interest rates, real interest rates vs., 481  
 Nonbank financial institutions  
 in foreign exchange market, 386  
 in international capital market, 659  
 regulation of, 678  
 Nontradables, purchasing power parity and, 465  
 Nontraded goods, in Ricardian model, 71  
 North. *See* Developed nations  
 North, Douglass C., 771n  
 North American Auto Pact, 211  
 North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA), 32, 40, 131, 211  
 congressional vote on, 287  
 as free trade area, 302  
 local content requirements under, 265  
 Nurske, Ragnar, 769–770

**O**

Obama, Barack, 104  
 Obstfeld, Maurice, 522n, 575n, 643n, 677n, 683n, 685n, 686n, 714n, 745n  
 Ocampo, José Antonio, 739, 740n  
 O'Connell, Paul G. J., 470n  
 Official foreign exchange intervention, 371  
 Official international reserves, 371  
 Official lending, to developing countries, 747

Official settlements balance, 371–372. *See also* Balance of payments  
 Offshore banking, 659–660  
 Offshore currency trading, 660  
 Offshoring, Germany, 233–235f  
 Ohlin, Bertil, 113  
 Oilseeds, 260–264  
 Oligopoly, 201  
 Olivier, Jeanne, 755n  
 Olson, Mancur, 286  
 OMAs (orderly marketing agreements), 265  
 Omnibus Foreign Trade and Competitiveness Act of 1988, 636  
 OMT (Outright Monetary Transactions), 693t, 725  
 OPEC (Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries), 624  
 Open economies  
 aggregate demand in, determinants of, 491–494  
 macroeconomic policy goals in, 590–598  
 monetary trilemma in, 598–599, 599f  
 national income accounting for, 355–362  
 national income identity for, 356–357  
 short-run equilibrium for, 505–507, 506f  
 Opportunity cost, 51  
 interest rate and money demand and, 421  
 production possibility frontier and, 54  
 Optimum currency areas, 692–698  
 banking union and, 712  
 definition of, 711  
 euro and. *See* Euro; Euro crisis  
 Europe as, 712–716, 715f, 715t  
 fiscal federalism and, 711–712  
 GG-LL framework and, 709–712, 710f, 711f  
 GG schedule and, 705–707, 707f  
 LL schedule and, 707–709, 709f  
 similarity of economic structure and, 711–712  
 theory of, 705–716  
 Optimum tariff, 280–281, 281f  
 Options, in foreign exchange market, 390  
 Orderly marketing agreements (OMAs), 265  
 Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development, 296  
 Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC), 624  
 Original sin, 747–749  
 O'Rourke, Kevin, 697n  
 Osterberg, William P., 567n  
 Ostry, Jonathan D., 763n  
 Other managed arrangements, 545n  
 Ottaviano, Gianmarco I. P., 219n, 698n  
 Output  
 asset market equilibrium and, 502–504, 503f  
 determination in short run, 496, 497f  
 external economies and, 184–185, 184f, 185f  
 in Heckscher-Ohlin model, 122–123, 123f  
 interest rates and, 426, 427f  
 monetary approach to the exchange rate and, 457  
 output market equilibrium and, 497–502  
 Output market equilibrium in short run, 497–502  
 DD schedule derivation and, 498–499, 499f  
 exchange rate and, 497–498, 498f  
 factors shifting the DD schedule and, 499–502, 500f

Outright Monetary Transactions (OMT), 693t, 725  
 Outsourcing, 231–235  
     consequences of, 235

**P**

Packer, Frank, 409n  
 Pagano, Marco, 700n  
 Pakistan, import-substituting industrialization in, 320t  
 Panagariya, Arvind, 325n  
 Pandemic Emergency Purchase Program (PEPP), 693t, 725  
 Papell, David H., 439n  
 Paraguay  
     Mercosur and, 305–306  
     output per capita of, 735t  
 Partial equilibrium, 184n  
 Partial equilibrium analysis, 56, 57f  
 Pass-through, 519–520, 522–523  
 Patterns of trade. *See* Trade patterns  
 Pauper labor argument, 65  
 Pedersen, Lasse H., 407n  
 Perfect asset substitutability, 561, 563–564  
 Peri, Giovanni, 714n  
 Perot, Ross, 65  
 Peru, output per capita of, 735t  
 Pessoa, João, 698n  
 Petrella, I., 163n  
 Petroleum prices, 624  
 Philippines  
     import-substituting industrialization in, 320t  
     wage rate in, 134t  
 Pierce, Justin, 99  
 Plaza Accord, 627  
 Poland  
     debt crisis of the 1980s and, 749  
     wage rate in, 134t  
 Policy coordination, 33–34  
 Political argument for free trade, 279–280  
 Political competition, trade policy and, 285–286, 285f  
 Political economy, 276–307  
     of exchange rate regimes, 603–604  
     free trade and, 277–284. *See also* Free trade agreements  
     income distribution and trade and, 284–289  
     international negotiations of trade policy and, 290–299, 290f  
     liberalization of trade policy and, 299–306, 300t, 301t  
     of trade protection, 94–95  
     unemployment and, 95–99, 96f  
 Political process, modeling of, 288  
 Pollution. *See* Environment  
 Pollution havens, 344–345  
 Ponzi, Charles, 595n  
 Ponzi schemes, 595n  
 Portes, Richard, 388n  
 Portfolio diversification  
     international, extent of, 680  
     as motive for international asset trade, 656–657  
 Portugal  
     borrowing by, 717–718, 718f  
     competition with China, 716  
     inflation in, 717  
     wage rate in, 134t  
 Postel, Virginia, 214n

Powell, Asafa, 59  
 PPP. *See* Purchasing power parity  
 Prasad, Eswar S., 764n, 771n  
 Prebisch, Raúl, 740  
 Prebisch-Singer hypothesis, 740, 742  
 Preferential trading agreements, 301–304  
 Price discrimination, 221  
 Price levels, 351  
     aggregate money demand and, 422  
     empirical evidence on, 435, 436f, 437f  
     inflation and, 437–439, 438f  
     internal balance and, 591  
     in long run, 433–434  
     measurement of, purchasing power parity and, 466  
     in poorer countries, 470–472  
 Prices  
     commodity, run-up of, 739–740  
     domestic and foreign, exchange rates and, 382–385, 383t  
     of exports and imports, global value chains and exchange rate effects on, 520–522, 521f  
     external, 164  
     external economies and, 184–185, 184f, 185f  
     internal, 164  
     law of one price and, 453–454  
     marginal revenue and, 198–199  
     of petroleum, 624  
     production and, in Heckscher-Ohlin model, 114–117, 117f–119f  
     relative. *See* Relative prices  
     sticky, law of one price and, 475–476  
 Price setters, 198  
 Price-specie-flow mechanism, 600–601  
 Pricing to market, 465–466  
 Primary income payments, 354n, 366  
 Private saving, 361  
 Privatization, in developing countries, 747  
 Producer surplus, 249–250, 250f  
 Product differentiation, 200  
 Production  
     average cost of, 183  
     capital-intensive, 119  
     labor-intensive, 119  
     prices and, in Heckscher-Ohlin model, 114–117, 117f–119f  
 Production distortion loss, tariffs and, 252  
 Production function, 79–80  
 Production possibilities  
     biased expansion of, 122  
     relative supply and, in standard trade model, 150–151, 151f, 152f  
 Production possibility frontier, 53–54, 53f, 56, 56f  
     economic growth and, 157, 158f, 159f  
     Heckscher-Ohlin model and, 115–117, 117f, 118f  
     intertemporal, 167–168, 168f  
     specific factors model and, 80–83, 80f–82f  
 Productivity  
     East Asian, weakness of, 756–757  
     free trade and, 279  
     wages and, 64–65  
 Protectionism, 77  
     antidumping as, 221–222  
     politics of, 94–95  
     promoting manufacturing through. *See* Import-substituting industrialization  
     tariffs and. *See* Tariffs

Proximity-concentration trade-off, 229  
 Purchasing power parity (PPP), 452, 454–472  
     absolute and relative, 455–456  
     departures from free competition and, 465–466  
     differences in consumption patterns and price level measurement and, 466–469  
     law of one price and, 454–455  
     long-run exchange rate model based on, 456–462  
     nontradables and, 465  
     ongoing inflation and interest parity and, 458–459  
     in short and long run, 469–470  
     trade barriers and, 464–465  
 Pure monopoly, 198  
 Put options, 390

**Q**

Quota rents, 260  
 Qureshi, Mahvash S., 763n

**R**

Rajan, Raghuram G., 749n, 771n  
 Rao, Yao, 740n  
 Rate of appreciation, 396  
 Rate of depreciation, 395  
 Rate of return, 391–392  
 Reagan, Ronald, 625, 627  
 Real appreciation, 474  
 Real depreciation, 473–474  
 Real effective exchange rate indexes, 625, 626f  
 Real exchange rate, 472–474  
     aggregate demand and, 494–495  
     current account and, 493–494  
     international interest rate differences and, 480–481  
     long-run, demand and supply and, 474–477, 477f  
     in long-run equilibrium, 477–480, 479t  
 Real income, aggregate demand and, 495, 495f  
 Real interest rate  
     intertemporal trade and, 168–169, 169f  
     nominal interest rate vs., 481  
     real interest parity condition and, 481–482  
 Real national income (real GNP), aggregate  
     money demand and, 422, 423f  
 Real rate of return, 391–392  
 Rebello, Sergio, 528  
 Redding, Stephen J., 219n, 230n, 254n  
 Red-tape barriers, 267  
 Reform measures  
     financial crises and, 760–761  
     Latin American, 750–753  
     new financial “architecture” and, 761–768  
 Regulating international banking, 669–679  
     after the global financial crisis, 677–679  
     financial trilemma and, 669–671  
     foreign exchange instability and central bank swap lines and, 675–677  
     global financial crisis of 2007–2009 and, 672–675  
     international cooperation through 2007 and, 671–672  
 Regulatory arbitrage, 670  
 Reinhart, Carmen M., 663n, 744n, 763n, 765n, 769n  
 Reinhart, Vincent, 765n  
 Reis, Ricardo, 677n

- Relative demand curve, 57, 57f  
 Relative PPP, 455–456  
 Relative prices  
     after trade, determining, 56–59, 57f, 60f  
     demand and, in standard trade model, 151–154, 153f, 154f  
     determination of, 155, 156f, 157  
     exchange rates and, 384–385, 385t  
     income distribution and, 87–89  
     in specific factors model, 85, 86–89, 86f–88f  
     supply and, 54–55  
     trade patterns and, 124–125, 124f  
 Relative supply  
     production possibilities and, in standard trade model, 150–151, 151f, 152f  
     world, terms of trade and, 159, 160f  
 Relative supply curve, 57, 57f  
 Relative wages  
     comparative advantage and, 66–70, 67t, 69f  
     determination of, in multigood model, 68–70, 69f  
     Ricardian model and, 61  
 Rent seeking, 279  
 Reserve Bank of India (RBI), 445  
 Reserve currencies, 567–569  
     asymmetric position of the reserve center and, 568–569  
     mechanics of, 568  
 Reserve requirements, 664  
     absence in international banking, 670  
 Reserves, international. *See* International reserves  
 Resources, in Heckscher-Ohlin model, 122–123, 123f  
 Restructuring, of banks, 665–666  
 Revaluation, 555  
     devaluation vs., 555n  
 Rey, Hélène, 766  
 Ricardian model, 50–74, 77, 149  
     comparative advantage and. *See* Comparative advantage  
     definition of, 52  
     empirical evidence on, 71–73, 72f, 73t  
     gains from trade in, 60–61  
     nontraded goods in, 71  
     production possibility frontier and, 53–54, 53f  
     relative prices and supply in, 54–55, 56–59, 57f, 60f  
     relative wages and, 61  
     transport costs in, 70–71  
 Ricardo, David, 28, 31, 47, 52, 454, 470n  
 Risk, 392  
     money demand and, 421  
     return and liquidity and, in foreign exchange market, 396–397  
 Risk aversion, gains from trade and, 656  
 Risk premiums, 564  
     foreign exchange market efficiency and, 685  
 Robinson, James, 772–773  
 Rockoff, Hugh, 604n  
 Rodrik, Dani, 325n, 763, 773n  
 Rogers, John, 714  
 Rogoff, Kenneth, 643n, 685, 686n, 700n, 744n, 769n  
 Romalis, John, 138–139  
 Romer, Christina D., 602n, 607n  
 Rose, Andrew K., 470n, 713  
 Rossi-Hansberg, Esteban, 233n  
 Rules of origin, 265–266  
 Russ, Kadiee, 99  
 Russia, default by, 629–630, 744  
 Ryan, Paul, 99n  
 Rybczynski, T. M., 122n  
 Rybczynski effect, 122n
- S**
- Sachs, Jeffrey D., 127n, 636n, 773n  
 Saez, Emmanuel, 370n  
 Sager, Erick, 155n  
 Salop, Stephen, 201n  
 Sampson, Thomas, 698n  
 Samsung, 233  
 Samuelson, Paul, 50, 78, 92n, 122n, 470  
 Sarno, Lucio, 566n  
 Saving, 351  
     in Asian countries, 758  
     current account and, 360  
     government, 361  
     national, 360  
     private, 361  
 Saxenian, Annalee, 182n  
 Seahill, Edward, 59n  
 Scarce factors, 125  
 Scharfstein, David S., 409n  
 Schnabl, Philipp, 673n  
 Schoenmaker, Dirk, 671n  
 Schott, Peter K., 140n, 217n, 219n, 230n  
 Secondary income payments, 354n, 366–367  
 Securitization, 672  
 Seigniorage, 738  
 Self-fulfilling currency crises, 559  
 Semiconductor industry, trade policy and, 334–335  
 Senegal, output per capita of, 735t  
 Serbia, inflation in, 591  
 Sercu, Piet, 680n  
 Service offshoring, 46, 47f  
 Service outsourcing. *See* Trade Services, 366  
 SGP (Stability and Growth Pact), 693t, 703  
 Shadow banking system, 661  
 Shambaugh, Jay C., 575n, 677n  
 Shatz, Howard, 127n  
 Shin, Hyun Song, 683n  
 Shipbreaking, 344–345  
 Shipping jobs overseas, 233–235  
 Shleifer, Andrei, 773n  
 Short run, 427  
 Silgomer, Maria Antionette, 714n  
 Silicon Valley  
     external economy in, 180–181, 182–183, 186  
     tradable industry in, 191  
 Singapore  
     Asian financial crisis and, 759  
     economic rise of, 754  
     education in, 758  
     output per capita of, 735t, 736  
 Singer, Hans, 740  
 Single European Act of 1986, 701, 714  
 Single Resolution Mechanism (SRM), 724  
 Single Supervisory Mechanism (SSM), 693t, 724  
 Skill-based technological change, income inequality and, 128–133, 129f, 130f  
 Slaughter, Matthew J., 93n, 127n  
 Smets, Frank, 715n  
 Smith, Adam, 27, 734  
 Smoot-Hawley Act, 292  
 SNB. *See* Swiss National Bank  
 Sokoloff, Kenneth D., 772n  
 Solar panels  
     Malaysian production of, 167  
     U.S. tariff on Chinese exports of, 166–167  
 Solnik, Bruno, 680  
 South. *See* Developing countries  
 South Africa, output per capita of, 735t  
 South Korea  
     as advanced country, 313  
     Asian financial crisis and, 758  
     automobile industry of, 315  
     economic growth of, 322–323, 323f, 324f, 754  
     education in, 758  
     financial crisis in, 761  
     GDP per capita in, 314t  
     output per capita of, 735t, 736  
     productivity and, 65  
     wage rate in, 134t  
 South Sudan, corruption in, 741n  
 Sovereign Debt Restructuring Mechanism, 767  
 Sovereign default, 717  
 Soviet bloc, debt crisis of the 1980s and, 749, 750  
 Soviet Union, 318  
 Soviet Union, end of, 629  
 Spain  
     borrowing by, 717, 718f, 723  
     housing boom in, 717, 718  
     inflation in, 717  
     output per capita of, 735t  
*Spanish Miracle*, 62  
 Specialization  
     comparative advantage and, 68  
     gains from trade from, 60–61  
     Ricardian model and. *See* Ricardian model  
 Specialized suppliers, 180–181  
 Specific factors model, 78–90, 149  
     assumptions of, 79–80  
     definition of, 79  
     international trade in, 89–90, 90f  
     prices, wages, and labor allocation and, 83–87, 84f, 85f  
     production possibility frontier and, 80–83, 80f–82f  
     relative prices and income distribution and, 87–89  
 Speculative attacks, 559  
 Speculators, hedgers vs., 397n  
 Spencer, Barbara, 331  
 Spot exchange rates, 388–389, 389f  
 SRM (Single Resolution Mechanism), 724  
 SSM (Single Supervisory Mechanism), 693t, 724  
 Stability and Growth Pact (SGP), 693t, 703  
 Stabilized arrangements, 545n  
 Stagflation, 625  
 Standard trade model, 149–171  
     export subsidies in, 163–164, 165, 166–167, 166f  
     international borrowing and lending and, 167–170  
     international effects of growth and, 159–163  
     production possibilities and relative supply and, 150–151, 151f, 152f  
     production possibility frontier and growth and, 157, 158f, 159  
     relative price determination and, 155, 156f, 157

- Standard trade model (*Continued*)  
 relative prices and demand and, 151–154, 153f, 154f  
 tariffs and, 163–164, 165, 165f, 166  
 terms of trade and, 165–167  
 welfare effect of changes in the terms of trade and, 154–155  
 world relative supply and terms of trade and, 159, 160f
- Statistical discrepancy, 368–369
- Steel, U.S. tariffs on, 298–299
- Stein, Jeremy C., 409n
- Sterilized foreign exchange intervention, 548, 549t  
 evidence on effects of, 566–567  
 with imperfect asset substitutability, 565–566, 565f  
 ineffectiveness of, 560–564
- Sticky prices, law of one price and, 475–476
- Stiglitz, Joseph E., 763
- Stolper, Wolfgang, 122n
- Stolper-Samuelson effect, 122n
- Strategic trade policy, 327. *See also* Trade policy
- Subramanian, Arvind, 325n, 771n, 773n
- Subsidies  
 agricultural, effect on third world, 300  
 export. *See* Export subsidies
- Substitution effect, 153
- Sudden stops, 593  
 in developing countries, 745  
 euro crisis and, 722
- Sugar, U.S. import quota on, 94–95
- Supply  
 long-run real exchange rate and, 474–477, 477f  
 relative prices and, 54–55
- Supply curve  
 forward-falling, 183  
 relative, 57, 57f
- Surplus, in current account, 358, 593, 597, 600, 719
- Sveikauskas, Leo, 136
- Svensson, Lars E. O., 643n
- Swaps, foreign exchange, 390
- Sweden  
 financial crisis in, 760  
 output per capita of, 735t
- Swiss National Bank (SNB)  
 response to 2008 financial crisis, 561–563, 562f  
 swap lines and, 676
- Switzerland, wage rate in, 134t
- Symmetry, floating exchange rates and, 621, 640–641
- T**
- Taiwan  
 economic rise of, 754  
 output per capita of, 735t
- Tanzi, Vito, 741n
- Tariff-rate quota (TRQ), 260–264
- Tariffs, 242–257  
 ad valorem, 242  
 consumer surplus and, 248–249, 249f  
 costs and benefits of, 248–257  
 effects of, 245–246, 246f, 267t  
 international negotiations and. *See* International negotiation, trade policy and  
 measuring amount of protection from, 246–248
- measuring costs and benefits of, 250–252, 251f, 252f  
 optimum, 280  
 persistence of, 257  
 producer surplus and, 249–250, 250f  
 relative demand and supply effects of, 164, 165f  
 and retaliation, 257  
 specific, 242  
 in standard trade model, 163–164, 165, 165f, 166  
 on steel, 298–299  
 supply, demand, and trade in a single industry and, 243–245, 244f, 245f  
 tariff-rate quota, 260–264  
 terms of trade and, 165–166, 280–281, 281f  
 under Trump, 99, 253–256, 253f, 254f, 256f  
 U.S.–European trade dispute regarding airlines and, 259
- Tax avoidance, profit shifting and, 369–370
- Taylor, Alan M., 464n, 575n, 677n
- Taylor, Mark P., 464n, 566n
- Technological change, skill-based, income inequality and, 128–133, 129f, 130f
- Technology, trade policy and, 328–329, 330f, 331
- Temin, Peter, 606n
- Tepper, Alexander, 410, 683n
- Terms of trade, 150  
 export subsidies and, 165–167, 166f  
 tariffs and, 165–166  
 welfare effect of changes in, 154–155  
 world relative supply and, 159, 160f
- Terms of trade argument for a tariff, 280–281, 281f
- Terms of trade gain, tariffs and, 252, 252f
- Terms of trade shocks, developing nations' exposure to, 163
- Texas Instruments, 186
- Thailand  
 Asian financial crisis and, 758–759  
 economic rise of, 754  
 financial crisis in, 761  
 output per capita of, 735t  
 technological efficiency of, 137t
- Thaler, Richard H., 566n
- Theory of the second best, 283
- Third world. *See* Developing countries
- Tobin, James, 656
- Tokatlidis, Ioannis, 749n
- Tokyo Round, 294
- Tower, Edward, 705n
- Toyota, 223, 658–659
- TPP (Trans-Pacific Partnership), 305–306
- Trade  
 amount of, 31–32  
 composition of, 44–46, 44f, 45f, 45t  
 economies of scale and, 178–179, 178f  
 external economies and. *See* External economies of scale  
 factor content of. *See* Factor content of trade  
 fundamental principles of, 47  
 gains from. *See* Gains from trade  
 GDP and, 37–39, 38f, 40–41, 40f, 41t  
 globalization and, 42–44  
 gravity model of, 36, 37–39, 38f  
 impediments to, 40–41, 40f, 41t, 42f  
 income distribution and. *See* Income distribution  
 interregional, 190–192, 190t  
 intertemporal. *See* Intertemporal trade
- intra-European, extent of, 713–714
- intra-industry, 210–211, 211t, 712
- market size and, 216–217, 217f
- models of. *See* Heckscher-Ohlin model; Ricardian model; Standard trade model; Specific factors model
- monopolistic competition and, 205–213
- performance differences across producers and, 214–216, 215f
- political economy of, 93–99
- resources and. *See* Heckscher-Ohlin model
- service offshoring and, 46, 47f
- share in GDP, in Asian countries, 758
- specific factors model of. *See* Specific factors model
- between two-factor economies, in Heckscher-Ohlin model, 123–134
- unemployment and, 95–99, 96f
- Trade barriers, purchasing power parity and, 464–465
- Trade creation, 303
- Trade diversion, 303  
 Mercosur and, 304–305
- Trade imbalances, 351
- Trade liberalization, 294–295  
 since 1985, 320–322, 321f
- Trade-offs. *See* Opportunity cost
- Trade patterns, 31  
 changing, 42–46  
 between developed and developing countries, 138–140, 139f, 140f  
 external economies and, 185–187, 187f  
 relative prices and, 124–125, 124f
- Trade policy, 242–268. *See also* Export subsidies; Tariffs  
 activist, arguments for, 328–335  
 anti-globalization movement and, 336–337  
 Asian economic growth and, 322–325, 323f, 324f  
 controversies about, 327–348  
 in developing countries, 313–326  
 effects of, 267–268, 267t  
 environmental and cultural issues and, 339–340  
 export trade subsidies as, 267  
 globalization and the environment and, 342–346  
 imperfect competition and, 331–335  
 import quotas and, 259–264  
 import substituting industrialization and, 314–319, 320t  
 labor standards and trade negotiations and, 339  
 national procurement as, 267  
 political economy of. *See* Political economy  
 red-tape barriers as, 267  
 strategic, 327  
 trade liberalization since 1985 and, 320–322, 321f  
 trade shocks and, 346–347  
 wages and, 337–338, 338t  
 WTO and national independence and, 340, 342
- Trade protection. *See* Protectionism
- Trade rounds, 293
- Trade shocks, 346–347
- Trade wars  
 agriculture and, 289  
 negotiations to avoid, 290–292  
 problem of, 291, 291f  
 under Trump, 97n, 98–99, 253–256, 253f, 254f, 256f, 276

Trans-Pacific Partnership (TPP), 305–306, 337  
 Transparency, increasing, to avoid financial crises, 763–764  
 Transport costs, in Ricardian model, 70–71  
 Treaty of Rome, 694  
 Trebbi, Francesco, 773n  
 Trebesch, Christoph, 765n  
 Trefler, Daniel, 136, 214  
 Triffin, Robert, 615  
 Trilemma  
   of exchange rate regime, 762–763  
   financial, 669–671, 712  
   monetary, 598–599, 599f  
 TRIPS (Agreement on Trade-Related Aspects of Intellectual Property), 295  
 Troika, 721  
 Trump, Donald  
   global economic consequences of presidency of, 634  
   trade war under, 97n, 98–99, 253–256, 253f, 254f, 256f, 276  
 Tsaiakas, Ilias, 686n  
 Tuna, U.S. imports of, 279  
 Turkey  
   inflation in, 439  
   wage rate in, 134t

**U**

Uncovered interest parity (UIP), 408, 684  
 Underwriting, 658  
 Unemployment, 351  
   politics and, 95–99, 96f  
   trade and, 95–99, 96f  
 UniCredit, assets of, 717t  
 Unilateral transfers, 354  
 United Kingdom. *See also* Britain  
   export pattern of, 139–140, 139f  
   external economy in, 180  
   manufactured goods in trade of, 45, 45t  
   output per capita of, 735t  
   wage rate in, 134t  
 United States  
   agricultural trade protection in, 289  
   air pollution standards of, 297  
   button industry in, 184–185, 184f, 185f  
   Canadian economic integration with, 214  
   capital abundance of, 124  
   central bank of, 371, 675  
   Clean Air Act of, 340  
   clothing industry in, 289, 289t  
   corruption in, 741n  
   dairy industry in, 286  
   employment and Chinese import competition in, 96–98, 97f  
   factor content of exports and imports of, 135–136, 135t  
   foreign sourcing by firms in, 229–230  
   foreign supplier locations for, 230  
   GDP per capita in, 314t  
   gold standard and, 605  
   greenhouse gas emissions of, 345–346  
   housing bust in, 34  
   immigration to, 103–105, 103f, 104f  
   import quota on automobiles in, 284  
   imports and exports as shares of GDP, 27, 28f  
   inflation in, 616t, 624t

interest rates in, 526  
 international investment position of, 372–373, 373t–375t, 376, 376f  
 Japan's semiconductor industry and, 334–335  
 local content requirements in, 266  
 manufactured goods in trade of, 45, 45t  
 monetary standard during 1890s, 603–604  
 NAFTA and. *See* North American Free Trade Agreement  
 output per capita of, 735t  
 per capita real GDP in, 624t  
 Ricardian model and, 72, 72f  
 service trade in, 46, 47f  
 sugar import restrictions of, 94–95  
 tariff on Chinese solar panels, 166–167  
 trade dispute regarding airlines and, 259  
 trading partners of, 36–38, 37f, 38f, 39, 40, 40f, 113  
 Trump trade war of, 97n, 98–99, 253–256, 253f, 254f, 256f, 276  
 tuna imports of, 279  
 unemployment in, 624t  
 USMCA and. *See* United States-Mexico-Canada Agreement  
 wage rate in, 134t  
 U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics, 95  
 U.S. Commerce Department, 220  
 U.S. Farm Bill, 94  
 U.S. Trade Adjustment Assistance program, 95  
 United States-Mexico-Canada Agreement (USMCA), 40, 131, 211, as free trade area, 302, 303  
   local content requirements under, 265  
 Unit labor requirement, 52  
 Upper middle-income economies, 733, 734, 734t  
 urban Hukou, 102  
 Urban workers' wages, 101–102  
 Uruguay Round, 32, 294, 296–298  
   financial crisis in, 760  
   Mercosur and, 305–306  
 USMCA. *See* United States-Mexico-Canada Agreement

**V**

Valencia, Fabián, 666n  
 Vallée, Shahin, 726n  
 Value chains, global, exchange rate effects on export and import prices and, 520–522, 521f  
 Value date, 388  
   money as store of, 419  
 Value effect, of real exchange rate changes, 493  
 Vanpée, Rosanne, 680n  
 Van Reenen, John, 698n  
 Vehicle currency, 388  
   U.S. dollar as, 522  
 Venezuela  
   inflation in, 435, 437f  
   output per capita of, 735t  
   U.S. air pollution standards and, 297  
 Verdelhan, Adrien, 410, 683n, 685n  
 VERs. *See* Voluntary export restraints  
 Vertical FDI, 223, 224f  
 Viner, Jacob, 470n  
 Volatility, excessive, tests for, 685–686  
 Volcker, Paul A., 625

Volkswagen, 223  
 Volosovych, Vadym, 769n  
 Volume effect, of real exchange rate changes, 493  
 Voluntary export restraints (VERs), 264–265  
   effects of, 267t  
 Voluntary restraint agreements (VRAs), 264–265  
 Von Peter, Götz, 677n  
 VRAs (voluntary restraint agreements), 264–265

**W**

Wachovia, 674  
 Wages  
   differences in, between countries, 133–134, 134t  
   in specific factors model, 83–87, 84f, 85f  
   productivity and, 64–65  
   relative. *See* Relative wages  
   social benefits convergence of, in the China, 101–102, 102f  
   trade policy and, 337–338, 338t  
 Walters, Alan, 718n  
 Washington Mutual Bank, 674  
*The Wealth of Nations* (Smith), 27, 734  
 Weinstein, David E., 137, 211, 254n  
 Welfare  
   of changes in the terms of trade and, 154–155  
   with external economies, 187–189, 188f  
 Wells Fargo Bank, 674  
 Werner, Pierre, 695n  
 Werner Report, 695n  
 Werning, Ivan, 712n  
 Wessel, David, 675n  
 West Germany, technological efficiency of, 137t  
 Whitaker, Erin M., 363n  
 Willett, Thomas D., 705n  
 Wolfe, Tom, 182n  
 Wood, Adrian, 127n  
 Woodford, Michael, 439n  
 World Bank, 746  
 World trade. *See* Trade  
 World Trade Organization (WTO), 32, 33–34, 293, 318  
   dispute settlement procedure of, 297  
   GATT vs., 295–296  
   national independence and, 340, 342  
   test of credibility of, 298–299  
   trade under rules of, Brexit and, 697–698  
   on VERs, 265  
 WTO. *See* World Trade Organization  
 Wynne, Mark A., 439n

**Y**

Yuskavage, Robert E., 363n

**Z**

Zero lower bound (ZLB), 524  
 Zhou, Haonan, 683n  
 Zimbabwe  
   inflation in, 439–441, 591  
   output per capita of, 735t  
 ZLB (zero lower bound), 524  
 Zucman, Gabriel, 370n

